Signals and Communication Technology

Walter Fischer

Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology

A Practical Engineering Guide

Fourth Edition

Springer

Signals and Communication Technology

This series is devoted to fundamentals and applications of modern methods of signal processing and cutting-edge communication technologies. The main topics are information and signal theory, acoustical signal processing, image processing and multimedia systems, mobile and wireless communications, and computer and communication networks. Volumes in the series address researchers in academia and industrial R&D departments. The series is application-oriented. The level of presentation of each individual volume, however, depends on the subject and can range from practical to scientific.

"Signals and Communication Technology" is indexed by Scopus.

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/4748

Walter Fischer

Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology

A Practical Engineering Guide

Fourth Edition

Springer

Walter Fischer
Rohde&Schwarz GmbH & Co KG
Training Center
Munich, Germany

ISSN 1860-4862 ISSN 1860-4870 (electronic)
Signals and Communication Technology
ISBN 978-3-030-32184-0 ISBN 978-3-030-32185-7 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface to the Fourth Edition

Eight years have elapsed since the last edition of this book, and the appearance of the first English edition dates even further back to 1.5 decades from now. In both periods many amazing technical innovations were introduced. The most important invention in the last decades was the smart phone and the tablet PC. Both products have changed the world in general and also the world of broadcasting. Movies, as well as TV and audio broadcast services are now transported via both traditional transmission techniques and smart phones or tablet PCs. Especially the young generation uses more and more the IP-based broadcast technology called "streaming".

This current version of the book has been completely revised and extended to the current broadcast technology standards. Practical examples from the introduction phase of DVB-T2 are included as well as new standards like 3DTV, HbbTV, HEVC/H.265/High Efficiency Video Coding, UHDTV Ultra High Definition, 4K, DOCSIS3.1, OTT/streaming, ATSC3.0 and LTE/5G-based broadcast. Concerning audio broadcasting, both its digital aspect such as DAB/DAB+ and its analog form like FM are described.

When the first edition of this book was published, analog television systems represented the technology of the era and nearly all the TV sets in the living rooms were heavy cathode ray tube equipment, featuring big dimensions with a typical screen diameter not wider than 32 inches. Now we are using big flat screens whose diameters often reach up to 60 inches, but are typically not smaller than 40 inches. Such flat screens are no longer heavy and they can also display ultra high definition pictures. Accordingly, the typical program materials are mostly distributed in high definition television resolution.

This work has been published in English and in German languages, and some editions have been even translated into Hungarian and Spanish languages. Many people all over the world on all continents have read this book, giving a lot of positive feedback.

Many participants in my numberless broadcast seminars all over the world have used this book as an additional source of information. On the other hand, I have included many inputs from my seminars, lessons at the

Munich University of Applied Sciences and the Deggendorf Institute of Technology (DIT, THD), as well as experiences and results from field trials and laboratory tests in this book.

Let me express my deep thanks to everybody who helped me to complete this book and who gave me feedback. I would like to express my special thanks to my colleagues at Rohde & Schwarz and to Springer. I am also very pleased to have met Csaba Szombathy from Budapest – he and his translation agency helped me to translate and correct some new chapters. I have also further extended my experience via intensive communication with different broadcasters and broadcast network providers all over the world.

Dipl.Ing.(FH) Walter Fischer
Moosburg an der Isar, near Munich, Germany, August 2019

Table of Contents

1 Introduction

Since about 2010 to 2012, television has really arrived in the age of high-definition TV (HDTV). For this purpose, enough channels have been available since the analog switch-off on satellites, and HDTV flat screens have meanwhile appeared in almost every living room. Screen diagonals have grown steeply compared to just a few years ago. Today, their size averages around 40 to 55 inches. Unpleasant side effects of the first flat screens, like restricted viewing angle and motion blur, have been eliminated; picture quality is now outstanding and incomparably better than that of CRT devices. "Smart TV" and "HbbTV" features are usually also integrated into the sets, merging the world of TV with the world of the Internet. Also, ultra-high-resolution television (UHDTV) has been advertised intensively since 2014, but, although UHDTV devices are on offer and the transmission chain is available, ultra-high-resolution content and the corresponding channel capacities are not yet widespread. However, television is only one part of the broadcasting scene, which, of course, also includes radio. The latter is still mostly received in analog form, although e.g. in Germany, DAB/DAB+ have seen strong growth since 2011, and a rich offering in terms of receivers and content is now available. The term "broadcasting" refers to the transmission of information, be it voice, image or sound, or data transmitted from a single point - the transmitter - to many points - the radio receivers. As a particular feature of broadcasting, the source is unaffected by the number of receivers, i.e. the channel capacity is not impacted as the number of receivers listening to that single transmitter increases. This is the big difference to a mobile radio link or an Internet connection where peer-to-peer communication is used. Also, broadcast networks have so far always been designed for high noise-tolerance and are hence robust in disaster situations. This makes broadcasting a safe medium for distributing information to the population even under difficult conditions.

This book discusses all analog and digital broadcasting standards with regards to both the baseband standards (MPEG) and the transmission standards (DVB, ATSC, ISDB-T, DAB, ...) they use. In addition, it discusses all necessary fundamentals, including

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_1

- analog audio and video signals,
- transforms between time domain and frequency domain,
- analog and digital modulation methods,
- multicarrier modulation methods, OFDM,
- digital video and audio signals,

detailed in their own chapters. The MPEG standards describe the most common source coding methods for multimedia and broadcasting applications, and are of course comprehensively covered in many sections, discussing the MPEG-2 Transport Stream protocol as well as video and audio coding, i.e. the compression of digital video and audio signals. In addition to an introduction to H.262/MPEG-2 video, H.264/MPEG-4/AVC and H.265 / HEVC will also be explained. The chapters that follow cover digital video broadcasting - ATSC, ISDB-T, DAB/DAB+ and DTMB - and discuss all transmission paths they use, including

- terrestrial transmission,
- the satellite transmission path,
- the broadcast broadband cable (CATV), and
- the two-wire cable,

as well as the corresponding transmission standards. Broadcasting is linear in the sense that the user can only choose a program by selecting one or the other channel. Within a specific physical or logical broadcast channel, the participant cannot influence the process. Nevertheless, VoD (Video on Demand), YouTube, etc. already enable "non-linear" TV enjoyment. TV broadcasting over IP in the form of IPTV or OTT (Over the Top TV), better known as "streaming" services, is also addressed, and a separate chapter on the use of the broadband cable for bidirectional services like telephony and Internet over DOCSIS (Data over Cable Service Interface Specification) is now also included.

Rather than simply "describing" standards, the aim was to clarify how they function and to explain them in practical terms wherever possible, using many examples. There are numerous chapters on the corresponding measurement technology, as well as sections on terrestrial broadcasting networks, transmitters and stations. This book also builds on the author's experiences gained in countless seminars, drive tests, presentations and lectures on all continents of the world, as well as on many intensive discussions with colleagues from Rohde & Schwarz, broadcasting corporations, and the industry. Often many phenomena could easily be tested and measured in practice at Rohde & Schwarz, in the field during coverage measurements of DVB-T and DVB-T2 networks, during DVB-T2 field trials in Munich, or in the author's lab in the course of numerous experiments.

Before getting into the technology in the next chapter, a glimpse into the history of this field is given. Video transmissions started already around 1884 with the development of the Nipkow disk by Paul Nipkow. Using a rotating disk with a series of holes along a helical curve, he could decompose images into elements - "lines" - and transfer them from a rotating transmitter disk to a synchronously rotating receiver disk. Both disks were driven by synchronous motors, with a mains frequency of 50 Hz or 60 Hz, depending on the country. A few years before, Heinrich Hertz proved the existence of electromagnetic waves predicted mathematically by Maxwell. Based on these achievements, Marconi made the first information transmissions around 1895. Initially, broadcasting was primarily used to transmit short pieces of information over longer distances wirelessly, rather than using cable telegraphy, to fixed targets on land or mobile targets on water. The 1920s saw the first music transmissions, starting the age of broadcasting as we understand it today. Some of the first attempts to transfer music were made from the transmitter station of Königs-Wusterhausen south of Berlin, regarded as the cradle of radio broadcasting. Broadcast transmissions first used amplitude modulated long-, medium- and short waves. The sound quality left much to be desired, primarily due to the low bandwidth of about 5 kHz and atmospheric disturbances. At the time, such narrowband radio channels were also used to broadcast narrowband TV signals — using Nipkow disks on both ends of the transmission chain — to so-called "Fernsehstuben" (TV viewing rooms) (see also "NBTV" = narrow band TV, John Logie Baird), with about 30 lines per screen. The reason for selecting the mains frequency (50 Hz, 60 Hz) as the refresh rate was the synchronization of the synchronous motors of the Nipkow disks. The 1930s saw the appearance of the first "broadband television" transmissions at a few hundred lines per screen. However, the age of black-and-white television started only after World War II. In Europe the foundations were laid down by adopting the “Gerber standard”. This resulted in two separate TV worlds: one was using 50 Hz with 50 fields and 25 frames per second, the other 60 Hz with 60 fields and 30 frames per second. Frequency shortage at the end of the 1940s prompted Europe to also open up the VHF FM band (VHF band II, 87.5 - 108 MHz) for radio use. The modulation method used in the FM band was frequency modulation that was considerably less susceptible to atmospheric disturbances, resulting in a radio standard which is still used to this day in VHF endpoint equipment in many households, and it doesn't look like that it will completely be replaced by digital broadcasting until around 2030. The initially mono VHF

FM broadcasting was followed in the 1950s by stereo VHF FM broadcasting, somewhat later supplemented by an RDS (Radio Data System) signal. The 1960s saw the advent of color television with three different color transmission methods - NTSC, PAL and SECAM - integrated in a compatible manner into the black-and-white transmission scheme. Teletext appeared in the 1980s, supplementing aired programs with data for the first time. Teletext was developed by the BBC as "British Teletext". The first attempts at high-definition television, HDTV, emerged already in the 1980s, but it took a long time, a further 30 years, to actually introduce it. Further milestones included the D2MAC process (about 1990) and PALplus (about 1991). The D2MAC system first failed due to the deficiency of the "TV-Sat1" satellite, and then disappeared completely. Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) was developed at the end of the 1980s, with the first digital DAB radio transmitters entering into operation even before the advent of the age of digital television. The end of the 1980s saw the addition of satellites and broadband cables to the long-standing terrestrial transmissions. In the mid-1990s, the era of digital television began with the release of the MPEG, DVB and ATSC standards. MPEG is a collection of various baseband norms for digital broadcasting signals (video and audio), aimed at preparing the signals for storage (e.g. DVD) and distribution (broadcasting) through source coding and multiplexing. "MPEG" is the acronym for "Moving Pictures Expert Group". The European "DVB" (Digital Video Broadcasting) project resulted in a series of broadcasting standards for the distribution of TV signals with accompanying sound and data services: the DVB-S standard covers digital TV transmission via satellite, DVB-C is a standard for digital TV transmission via broadband cable, and the DVB-T standard is used for terrestrial digital TV transmission. DVB has also been adopted by many countries outside Europe. At the beginning of the 2000s, digital television in the form of SDTV (Standard Definition Television) had already been launched in some countries using satellite, cable and terrestrial broadcasting. The ATSC (USA), IDSB-T (Japan) and DTMB (China) standards appeared simultaneously and in the wake of DVB. The specifications for H.264/AVC video coding and DVB-S2 as the second generation of digital satellite television, both published in 2003, were used to implement HDTV systems in many countries. But the age of HDTV really arrived only after 2010, when content as well as suitable and affordable TV devices became finally available. Meanwhile, from about 2004, attempts to make television mobile with DVB-H, MediaFLO and T-DMB were undertaken. However, although these were technically functional systems, they failed economically. From 2011, digital radio was expanded further via DAB+, and from this point onwards, significantly more radio content and digital radio devices were available. The appearance of

HbbTV (Hybrid Broadband Broadcast TV) and "Smart TV" marked the beginning of the convergence of television and the Internet: flat screen TVs were increasingly equipped with WLAN or Ethernet connection, and corresponding software or "middleware" as well as preinstalled and downloadable applications. The appearance of UHDTV gave the kickstart to ultra-high-definition television. Analog terrestrial, satellite and now also analog cable television was switched off. The next few years saw a migration from first-generation DVB-T to the second generation DVB-T2. DVB-T2 was closely followed by the release of DVB-C2, a new standard for digital broadcasting over broadband cable. Broadband cable transmission based on DOCSIS has been used since the end of the 1990s also for telephony and Internet. The latest DOCSIS 3.1 standard, released in 2013, is expected to revolutionize the utilization of broadband cable. Broadcasting has meanwhile also discovered the advantages of using twisted pair lines with xDSL and offering streamed services over the Internet, giving rise to a new buzzword: "OTT" (Over-the-Top TV). This concludes the story, and we can now start explaining the technical standards. These are the milestones of radio and TV broadcasting from the discovery of electromagnetic waves to the present (2019):

- Maxwell's equations, 1864
- Heinrich Hertz, proof of the existence of electromagnetic waves, 1886
- Marconi, first news transmissions over electromagnetic waves, 1895
- Nipkow disk, 1884
- Radio over long-, medium and shortwave, 1923
- Narrow-bandwidth television, John Logie Baird, 1926
- Black and white television, 1934
- VHF radio, 1949
- Color television, 1967
- Teletext, early 1980s
- First attempts at HDTV, mid-1980s
- D2MAC, PALplus, early 1990s
- Cable TV, from the mid-1980s
- Satellite television, from the end of the 1980s
- DAB - Digital Audio Broadcasting, developed towards the end of the 1980s
- DAB services available in Germany from mid-1990s
- MPEG, mid-1990s
- DVB, ATSC, mid-1990s

- SDTV, late 1990s
- xDSL, two-wire line, early 2000s
- DOCSIS = Data over Cable System Interface Specification, late 1990s
- DAB expansion from about 2005 onwards in the UK
- DAB+ from about 2008 in Australia, Scandinavia
- DAB/DAB+ — Expansion from 2011 in Germany
- HDTV, high-definition television since 2010 (first steps from 2002)
- HbbTV = Hybrid Broadcast Broadband TV, Smart TV, from 2010 onwards
- UHDTV, ultra-high-definition television from 2014 onwards
- "Linear" and "nonlinear" television
- OTT=Over-the-Top TV, video and audio streaming from about 2010

Table 1.1. Methods and standards for digital television and digital radio

Methods/ standards	Application
JPEG	Still image compression, photography, Internet
Motion JPEG	DVPRO, MiniDV, digital home video camera
MPEG-1	Video CD
MPEG-2	Baseband signal for digital television, DVD-Video
MPEG-4	New video and audio compression algorithms
MPEG-H	See HEVC, High Efficiency Video Coding
H.262	Video encoding (see MPEG-2 video)
H.264	Video encoding, AVC (see MPEG-4, Part 10 Video)
H.265	Video encoding, HEVC (see MPEG-H video)
DVB	Digital Video Broadcasting
DVB-S	Digital television via satellite
DVB-S2	New DVB satellite standard
DVB-C	Digital television over broadband cable
DVB-T	Digital terrestrial television
J83A	= DVB-C
J83B	North American cable standard
J83C	Japanese cable standard
ATSC	North American standard for digital terrestrial television (USA, Canada)

ISDB-T	Japanese standard for digital terrestrial television
DTMB	Chinese standard for digital terrestrial television (Digital Terrestrial Multimedia Broadcasting)
CMMB	Chinese Mobile Multimedia Broadcasting
DAB	Digital Audio Broadcasting
IBOC – HD Radio	Hybrid radio (digital radio)
FMextra	Digital radio broadcasting
T-DMB	South Korean standard for mobile transmission of MPEG video and audio based on DAB (Terrestrial Digital Multimedia Broadcasting)
DVB-H	Digital Video Broadcasting for Handhelds
MHP	Multimedia Home Platform
DRM	Digital Radio Mondiale
MediaFLO	Media Forward Link Only, a mobile TV standard
DVB-SH	DVB for handheld terminals via satellite and terrestrial
DVB-T2	Second Generation Digital Terrestrial Video Broadcasting
DVB-C2	Second Generation Digital Video Broadcasting – Cable
IPTV	Internet TV, TV over xDSL
DOCSIS	Data Over Cable System Interface Specification, IP and telephone over broadband cable

Note: Many terms listed in the table are protected by copyright ©.

Broadcasting means the transmission of information from a transmitter to the receivers (see Fig. 1.1.). The information, motion pictures, associated lip-synchronous sound and complementary data must first be prepared for transmission. During this process, called source coding, video and audio signals are compressed using e.g. the MPEG algorithm in order to achieve acceptable data rates. Subsequently, the video and audio signals are combined into a single data signal — the multiplex signal “MUX” — which is then channel-coded by the modulator to prepare it for the transmission channel.

This is generally understood to mean error protection, Forward Error Correction, FEC. Subsequently, the error-protected data are modulated onto a sinusoidal high-frequency carrier (RF signal). The RF signal is then amplified and transmitted terrestrially, via satellite, or over cable. The receiver then demodulates the RF signal to extract the data stream which is usually affected by transmission errors caused by interference sources (noise, etc.). Channel decoding then repairs these errors to whatever degree possible by applying the transmitter procedures in reverse order. The subsequent source decoding, i.e. decompression, restores the video and audio signals which are then outputted or presented to the users (viewers, listeners). All digital broadcasting standards can be described and represented by the above steps.

For analog TV (ATV), source coding simply means limiting the bandwidth of the video and audio signals and technically implementing this process (CCVS signal, mono, L/R signal, etc.). The video and audio signals are fed to the picture and sound modulator, and the resulting single RF signal containing exactly one program is then transmitted to the receiver. The ATV receiver is tuned to a specific reception channel and plays exactly one program.

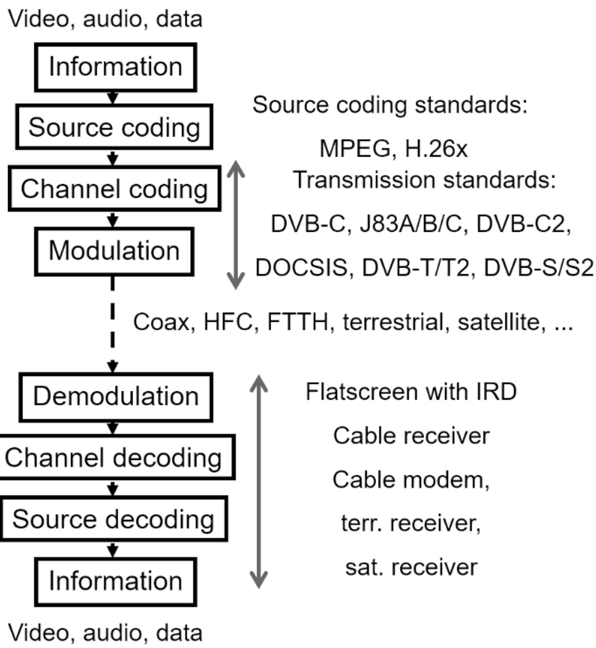


Fig. 1.1. Principle of information transmission in broadcasting

In the case of digital television, some programs or services are source-coded and combined into a digital multiplex signal ("MUX" e.g., an MPEG-2 Transport Stream). This multiplexed signal is then fed to the digital broadcast modulator where error protection is added to the data stream which is then modulated onto an RF carrier using a single-carrier or a multi-carrier modulation process (OFDM). After amplification, the RF signal is then transmitted to the receivers terrestrially, via satellite or over broadband cable. The digital broadcast receivers are tuned to the reception channel from which they can extract multiple programs. Only one selected program (service) is presented to the end user (viewer, listener).

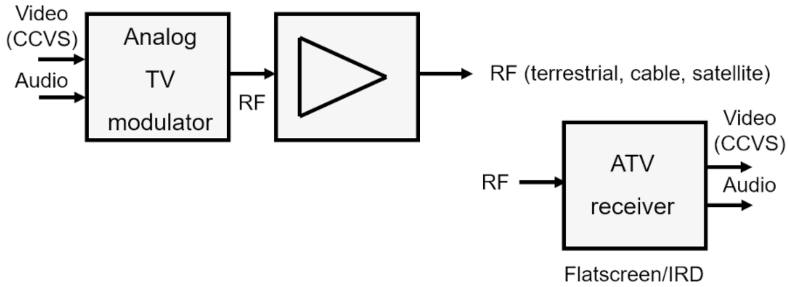


Fig. 1.2. Analog TV transmission chain

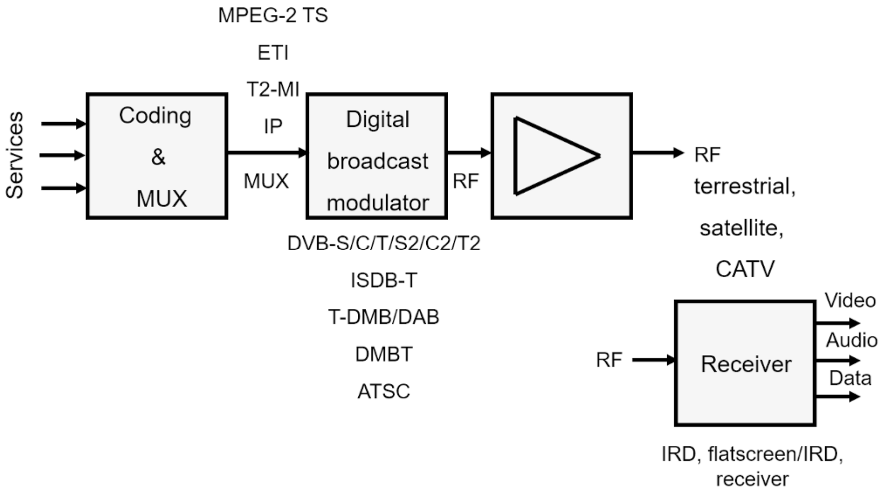


Fig. 1.3. Digital broadcasting chain

Bibliography: [ISO13818-1], [ISO13818-2], [ISO13818-3], [ETS300421], [ETS300429], [ETS300744], [A53], [ITU205], [ETS300401], [ETS101980], [DOCSIS1.0], [DOCSIS2.0], [DOCSIS3.0], [DOCSIS3.1]

[HEVC], [HEVC_IEEE_Overview], [HEVC_IEEE_Comparison], [FKT_2013_HEVC], [NBTV]

2 Analog Television

Throughout the world, there are only two major analog television standards, the 625-line system with a 50 Hz frame rate and the 525-line system with a 60 Hz frame rate. The composite color video-and-blanking signal (CVBS, CCVS) of these systems is transmitted in the following color transmission standards:

- PAL (Phase Alternating Line)
- NTSC (National Television System Committee)
- SECAM (Séquentiel Couleur a Mémoire)

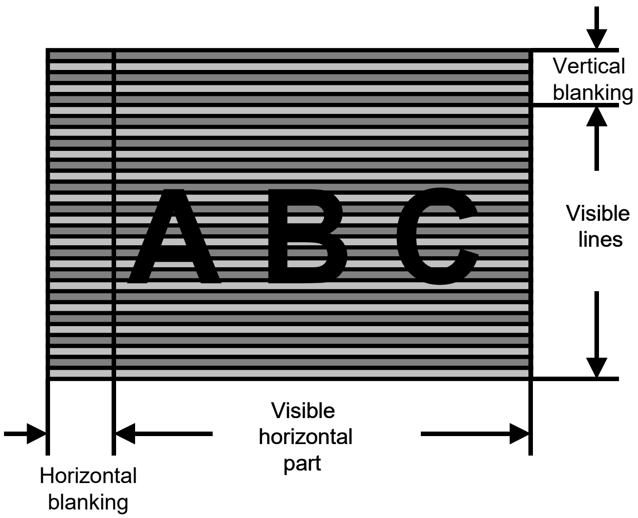


Fig. 2.1. Dividing a frame into lines

PAL, NTSC and SECAM color transmission is possible in 625-line systems and in 525-line systems. However, not all the possible combinations have actually been implemented. The video signal with its composite coding is then modulated onto a carrier, the vision carrier, mostly with negative-going amplitude modulation. It is only in Std. L (France) where posi-

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_2

tive-going modulation (sync inside) is used. The first and second sound subcarrier was usually an FM-modulated subcarrier. In Northern Europe, the second sound subcarrier was a digitally modulated NICAM subcarrier. Although the differences between the methods applied in the various countries are only minor, together they resulted in a multiplicity of standards which are mutually incompatible. The analog television standards are numbered through alphabetically from A to Z and essentially describe the channel frequencies and bandwidths in VHF bands I and III (47 ... 68 MHz, 174 ... 230 MHz) and UHF bands IV and V (470 ... 862MHz); an example is Standard B, G Germany: B =7 MHz VHF, G = 8 MHz UHF.

In the television camera, each field is dissected into a line structure of 625 or 525 lines. Because of the finite beam flyback time in the television receiver, however, a vertical and horizontal blanking interval became necessary and as a result, not all lines are visible but form part of the vertical blanking interval. In a line, too, only a certain part is actually visible. In the 625-line system, 50 lines are blanked out and the number of visible lines is 575. In the 525-line system, between 38 and 42 lines fall into the area of the vertical blanking interval.

To reduce the flickering effect, each frame is divided into two fields combining the even-numbered lines and odd-numbered lines in each case. The fields are transmitted alternately and together they result in a field repetition rate of twice the frame rate. The beginning of a line is marked by the horizontal sync pulse, a pulse which is below the zero volt level in the video signal and has a magnitude of -300 mV. All the timing in the video signal is referred to the front edge of the sync pulse and there exactly to the 50% point. 10 μs after the sync pulse falling edge, the active image area in the line begins in the 625-line system. The active image area itself has a length of 52 μs.

In the matrix in the television camera, the luminance (luminous density) signal (Y signal or black/white signal) is first obtained and converted into a signal having a voltage range from 0 Volt (corresponding to black level) to 700 mV (100% white). The matrix in the television camera also produces the color difference signals from the Red, Green and Blue outputs. It was decided to use color difference signals because, on the one hand, the luminance has to be transmitted separately for reasons of compatibility with black/white television and, on the other hand, color transmission had to conserve bandwidth as effectively as possible. Due to the reduced color resolution of the human eye, it was possible to reduce the bandwidth of the color information. In fact, the color bandwidth is reduced quite significantly compared with the luminance bandwidth: The luminance bandwidth is between 4.2 MHz (PAL M), 5 MHz (PAL B/G) and 6 MHz (PAL D/K, L) whereas the chrominance bandwidth is only 1.3 MHz in most cases.

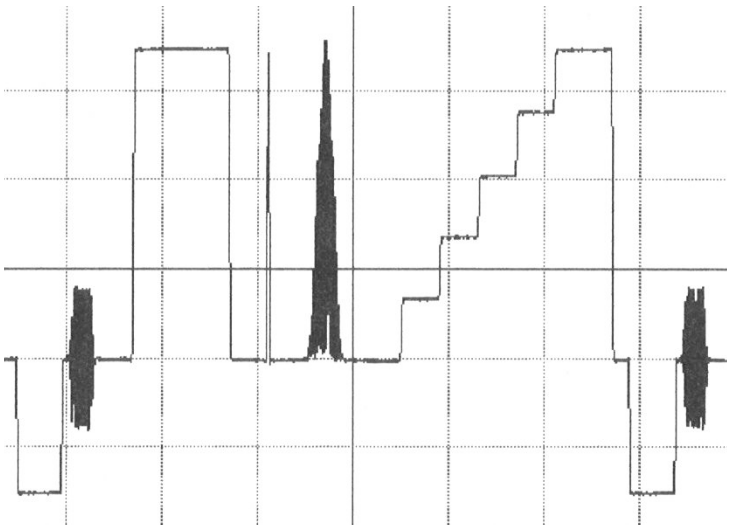


Fig. 2.2. Analog composite video signal (PAL)

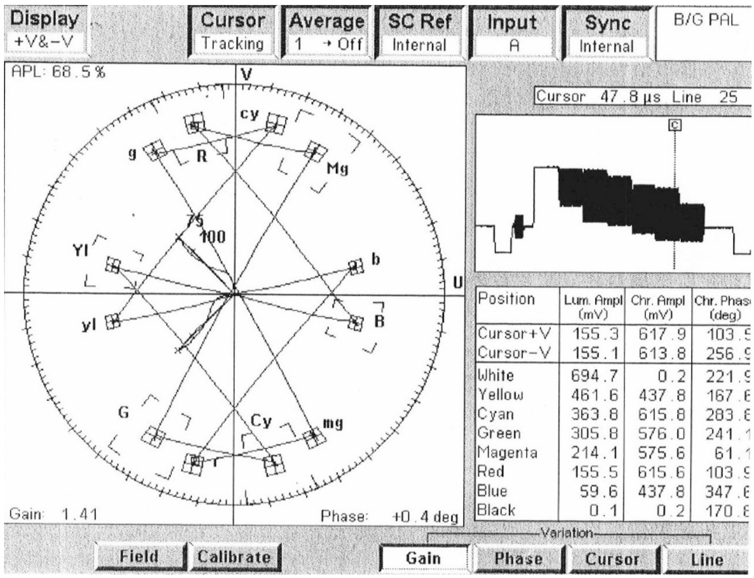


Fig. 2.3. Vector diagram of a composite PAL video signal

In the studio, the color difference signals U=B-Y and V=R-Y were still used directly. For transmission purposes, however, the color difference signals U and V are vector modulated (IQ modulated) onto a color subcarrier in PAL and NTSC. In SECAM, the color information is transmitted frequency-modulated. The common feature of PAL, SECAM and NTSC is that the color information is modulated onto a color subcarrier of a higher frequency which is placed at the upper end of the video frequency band and is simply added to the luminance signal. The frequency of the color subcarrier was selected such that it causes as little interference to the luminance channel as possible. It was frequently impossible, however, to avoid crosstalk between luminance and chrominance and conversely, e.g. if a newsreader was wearing a pinstriped suit. The colored effects which were then visible on the pinstriped pattern are the result of this crosstalk (cross-color or cross-luminance effects).

Vision terminals can have the following video interfaces:

- CVBS, CCVS 75 Ohms 1 V_{PP} (video signal with composite
- coding)
- RGB components (SCART, Peritel)
- Y/C (separate luminance and chrominance to avoid cross color or cross luminance effects)

In the case of digital television, it is advisable to use an RGB (SCART) connection or a Y/C connection for the cabling between the receiver and the TV monitor in order to achieve optimum picture quality.

In digital television only frames are transmitted, no fields. It is only at the very end of the transmission link that fields are regenerated in the set top box or in the decoder of the IDTV receiver. The original source material, too, is provided in interlaced format which must be taken into account in the compression (field coding, de-interlacing).

2.1 Scanning an Original Black/White Picture

At the beginning of the age of television, the pictures were only in "black and white". The circuit technology available in the 1950s consisted of tube circuits which were relatively large and susceptible to faults and consumed a lot of power. The television technician was still a real repairman and, in the case of a fault, visited his customers carrying his box of vacuum tubes.

Let us look at how such a black/white signal, the "luminance signal", is produced. Using the letter "A" as an example, its image is filmed by a TV camera which scans it line by line (see Fig. 2.4.). In the early days, this was done by a tube camera in which a light-sensitive layer, onto which the image was projected by optics, was scanned line by line by an electron beam deflected by horizontal and vertical magnetic fields.

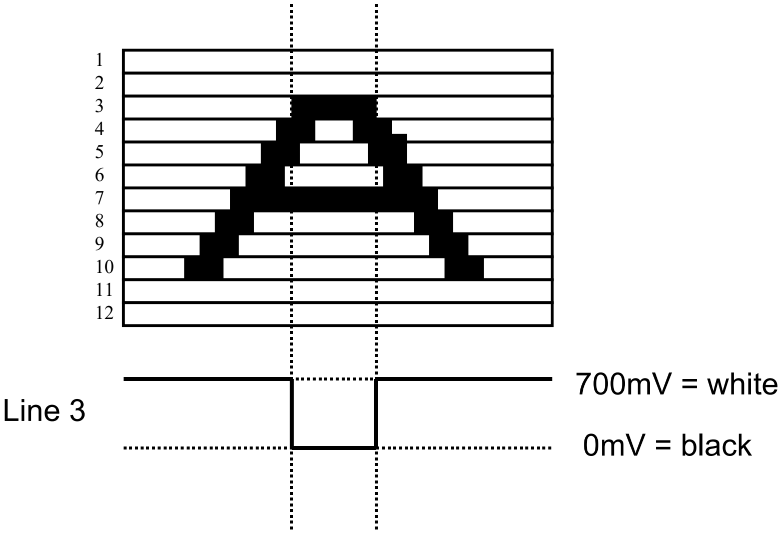


Fig. 2.4. Scanning an original black/white picture

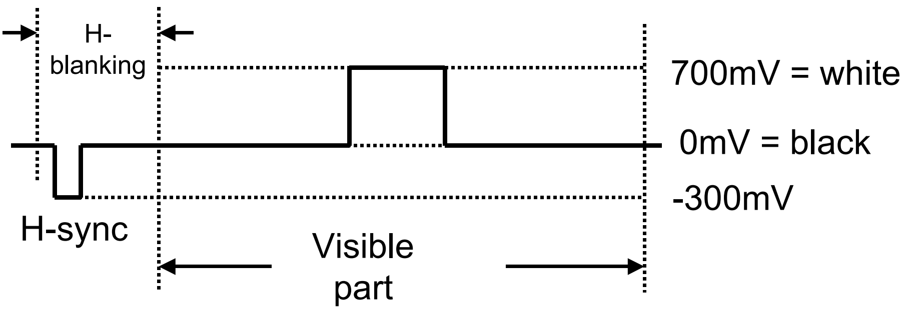


Fig. 2.5. Inserting the horizontal sync pulse

Today, CCD (charge coupled device) or CMOS sensor chips are universally used in the cameras and the principle of the deflected electron beam is now only preserved in TV receivers; and even there the technology was changing to LCD and OLED screens.

The result of scanning the original is the luminance signal where 0 mV corresponds to 100% black and 700 mV is 100% white. The original picture is scanned line by line from top to bottom, resulting in 625 or 525 active lines depending on the TV standard used. However, not all lines are visible. Because of the finite beam flyback time, a vertical blanking interval of up to 50 lines had to be inserted. In the line itself, too, only a certain part represents visible picture content, the reason being the finite flyback time from the right-hand to the left-hand edge of the line which results in the horizontal blanking interval. Fig. 2.4. shows the original to be scanned and Fig. 2.5. shows the associated video signal.

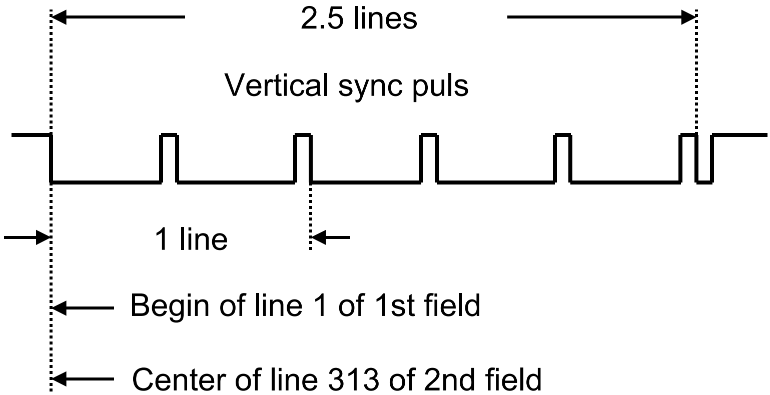


Fig. 2.6. Vertical synchronization pulse

2.2 Horizontal and Vertical Synchronization Pulses

However, it is also necessary to mark the top edge and the bottom edge of the image in some way, in addition to the left-hand and right-hand edges. This is done by means of the horizontal and vertical synchronization pulses. Both types of pulses were created at the beginning of the television age so as to be easily recognizable and distinguishable by the receiver and are located in the blacker than black region below zero volts.

The horizontal sync pulse (Fig. 2.5.) marks the beginning of a line. The beginning is considered to be the 50% value of the front edge of the sync pulse (nominally -150 mV). All the timing within a line is referred to this time. By definition, the active line, which has a length of 52 µs, begins 10 µs after the sync pulse front edge. The sync pulse itself is 4.7 µs long and stays at -300 mV during this time.

At the beginning of television, the capabilities of the restricted processing techniques of the time which, nevertheless, were quite remarkable, had to be sufficient. This is also reflected in the nature of the sync pulses. The horizontal sync pulse (H sync) was designed as a relatively short pulse (appr. 5 µs) whereas the vertical sync pulse (V sync) has a length of 2.5 lines (appr. 160 µs). In a 625-line system, the length of a line including H sync is 64 µs. The V sync pulse can, therefore, be easily distinguished from H sync. The V sync pulse (Fig. 2.6.) is also in the blacker than black region below zero volts and marks the beginning of a frame or field, respectively.

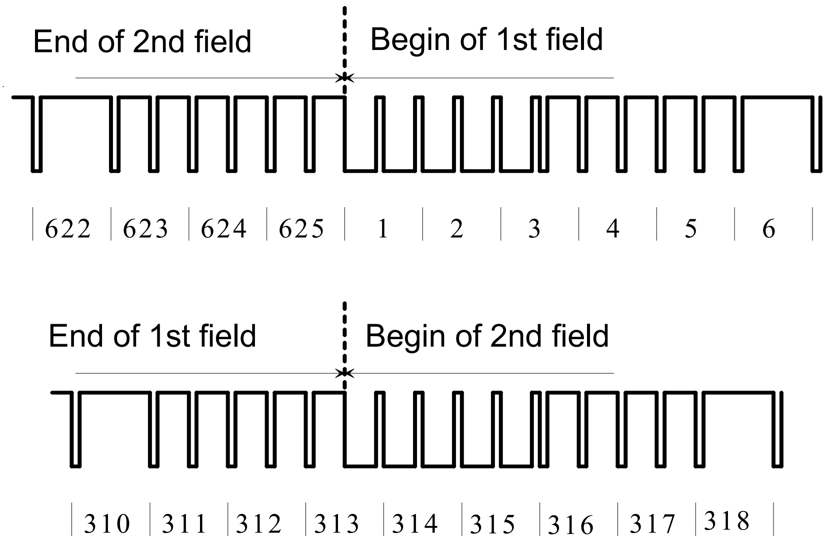


Fig 2.7. Vertical synchronization pulses with pre- and post-equalizing pulses in the 625 line-system

As already mentioned, a frame, which has a frame rate of 25 Hz = 25 frames per second in a 625-line system, is subdivided into 2 fields. This makes it possible to cheat the eye, rendering flickering effects largely invisible. One field is made up of the odd-numbered lines and the other one is made up of the even-numbered lines. They are transmitted alternatingly, resulting in a field rate of 50 Hz in a 625-line system. A frame (beginning of the first field) begins when the V sync pulse goes to the -300 mV level for 2.5 lines at the precise beginning of a line. The second field begins when the, V sync pulse drops to the -300 mV level for 2.5 lines at the center of line 313.

The first and second field are transmitted interlaced with one another, thus reducing the flickering effect. Because of the limitations of the pulse technology at the beginnings of television, a 2.5-line-long V sync pulse would have caused the line oscillator to lose lock. For this reason, additional pre- and post-equalizing pulses were gated in which contribute to the current appearance of the V sync pulse (Fig. 2.7.). Today's signal processing technology renders these unnecessary.

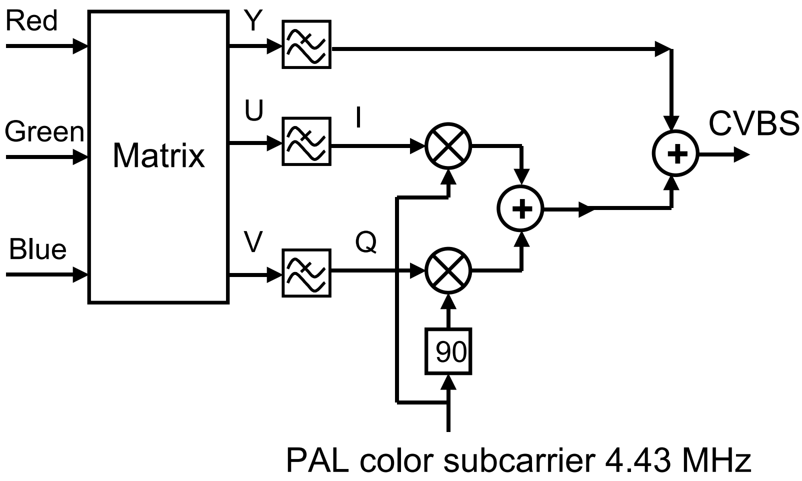


Fig. 2.8. Block diagram of a PAL modulator

2.3 Adding the Color Information

At the beginning of the television age, black/white rendition was adequate because the human eye has its highest resolution and sensitivity in the area of brightness differences and the brain receives its most important information from these. There are many more black/white receptors than color receptors in the retina. But just as in the cinema, television managed the transition from black/white to color because its viewers desired it. Today this is called innovation. When color was added in the sixties, knowledge about the anatomy of the human eye was taken into consideration. With only about 1.3 MHz, color (chrominance) was allowed much less resolution, i.e. bandwidth, than brightness (luminance) which is transmitted with about 5 MHz. At the same time, chrominance is embedded compatibly into the luminance signal so that a black/white receiver was undisturbed but a color receiver was able to reproduce both color and black/white correctly. If a receiver falls short of these ideals, so-called cross-luminance and cross-color effects are produced.

In all three systems, PAL, SECAM and NTSC, the Red, Green and Blue color components are first acquired in three separate pickup systems (initially tube cameras, now CCD and CMOS sensor chips) and then supplied to a matrix where the luminance signal is formed as the sum of R + G + B, and the chrominance signal. The chrominance signal consists of two signals, the color difference signals Blue minus luminance and Red minus luminance. However, the luminance signal and the chrominance signal formed must be matrixed, i.e. calculated, provided correctly with the appropriate weighting factors according to the eye's sensitivity, using the following formula

$$Y = 0.3 \cdot R + 0.59 \cdot G + 0.11 \cdot B;$$
$$U = 0.49 \cdot (B\text{-}Y);$$
$$V = 0.88 \cdot (R\text{-}Y);$$

The luminance signal Y can be used directly for reproduction by a black/white receiver. The two chrominance signals are also transmitted and are used by the color receiver. From Y, U and V it is possible to recover R, G and B. The color information is then available in correspondingly reduced bandwidth, and the luminance information in greater bandwidth ("paintbox principle").

To embed the color information into a CVBS (composite video, blanking and sync) signal intended initially for black/white receivers, a method had to be found which has the fewest possible adverse effects on a black/white receiver, i.e. keeps it free of color information, and at the same time contains all that is necessary for a color receiver.

Two basic methods were chosen, namely embedding the information either by analog amplitude/phase modulation (IQ modulation) as in PAL or NTSC, or by frequency modulation as in SECAM. In PAL and NTSC, the color difference signals are supplied to an IQ modulator with a reduced bandwidth compared to the luminance signal (Fig. 2.8.) The IQ modulator generates a chrominance signal as amplitude/phase modulated color subcarrier, the amplitude of which carries the color saturation and the phase of which carries the hue. An oscilloscope would only show, therefore, if there is color, and how much, but would not identify the hue. This would require a vectorscope which supplies information on both.

In PAL and in NTSC, the color information is modulated onto a color subcarrier which lies within the frequency band of the luminance signal but is spectrally intermeshed with the latter in such a way that it is not visible in the luminance channel. This is achieved by the appropriate choice of color subcarrier frequency. In PAL (Europe), the color subcarrier frequency was chosen by using the following formula

$$f_{SC} = 283.75 \cdot f_H + 25\ \text{Hz} = 4.43351875\ \text{MHz};$$

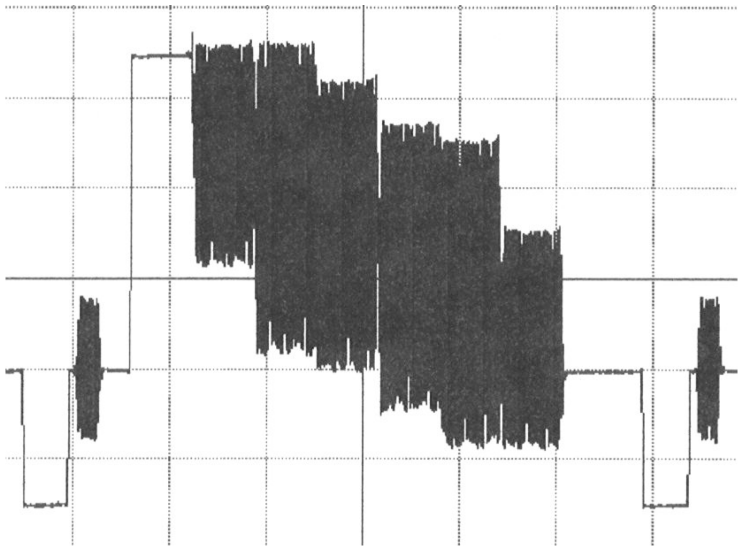


Fig. 2.9. Oscillogram of a CVBS, CCVS (composite color video and sync) signal

In SECAM, the frequency modulated color difference signals are alternately modulated onto two different color subcarriers from line to line. The SECAM process was only used in France and in French-speaking countries in North Africa. Countries of the previous Eastern Block changed from SECAM to PAL in the nineties.

Compared with NTSC, PAL has a great advantage due to its insensitivity to phase distortion because its phase changes from line to line. The color cannot be changed by phase distortion on the transmission path, therefore. NTSC is used in analog television, mainly in North America, where it is sometimes ridiculed as “Never Twice the Same Color” because of the color distortions.

The composite PAL, NTSC or SECAM video signal (Fig. 2.9.) is generated by mixing the black/white signal, the sync information and the chrominance signal and is now called a CCVS (Composite Color, Video and

Sync) signal. Fig. 2.9. shows the CCVS signal of a color bar signal. The color burst can be seen clearly. It is used for conveying the reference phase of the color subcarrier to the receiver so that its color oscillator can lock to it.

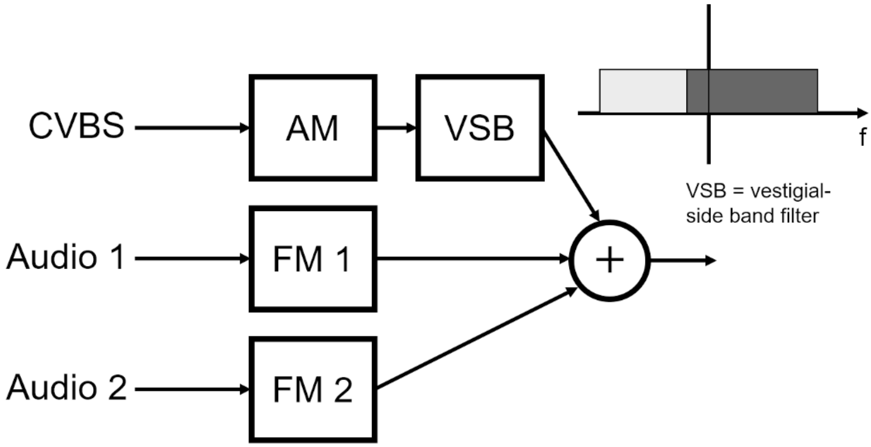


Fig. 2.10. Principle of a TV modulator for analog terrestrial TV and analog TV broadband cable

2.4 Transmission Methods

Analog television was disseminated over three transmission paths which are: terrestrial transmission paths, via satellite and by broadband cable. The priority given to any particular transmission path depends greatly on the countries and regions concerned. In Germany, the traditional analog “antenna TV” had finally only a minor status with fewer than 10%, this term being used mainly by the viewers themselves whereas the actual technical term is “terrestrial TV”. The reason for this was the good coverage by satellite and cable, and more programs.

Transmission of analog television is now switched off in the most countries.

In the terrestrial transmission of analog TV signals, and that by cable, the modulation method used was amplitude modulation, in most cases with negative modulation. Positive modulation is only used in the French Standard L.

The sound subcarriers were frequency modulated in most cases. To save bandwidth, the vision carrier is VSB-AM (vestigial sideband amplitude modulation) modulated, i.e. a part of the spectrum is suppressed by bandpass filtering. The principle is shown in Fig. 2.10. and 2.11. Because of the nonlinearities and the low signal/noise ratio on the transmission link, frequency modulation was used in satellite transmission.

Since these analog transmission paths are losing more and more in significance, they will not be discussed in greater detail in this book and the reader is referred to the appropriate literature, instead.

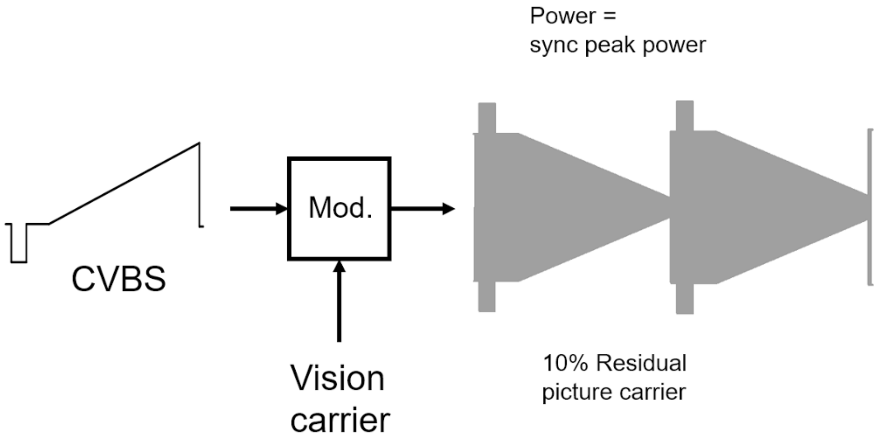


Fig. 2.11. Vision modulator

2.5 Distortion and Interference

Over the entire transmission link, an analog video signal is subjected to influences which have a direct effect on its quality and are immediately visible in most cases. These distortions and interferences can be roughly grouped in the following categories:

- Linear distortion (amplitude and phase distortion)
- Non-linear distortion
- Noise
- Interference
- Intermodulation

Linear distortion is caused by passive and active electronic components. The amplitude or group delay is no longer constant over a certain frequency range which is 0 ... 5 MHz in the case of video. Parts of the relevant frequency range are distorted to a greater or lesser extent, depending on the characteristic of the transmission link involved. As a result, certain signal components of the video signal are rounded. The worst effect is rounding of the sync pulses which leads to synchronization problems in the TV receiver such as, e.g. horizontal "pulling" or "rolling" of the picture from top to bottom. These terms have been known since the early days of television.

Changing of heads from field to field produces similar effects at the top edge of the picture with some older videorecorders, the picture is "pulling".

These effects have become relatively rare thanks to modern receiver technology and relatively good transmission techniques. In the active picture area, linear distortion manifests itself either as lack of definition, ringing, optical distortion or displacement of the color picture with respect to the luminance picture.

Nonlinear distortion can be grouped into

- Static nonlinearity
- Differential gain
- Differential phase

With non-linear distortion, neither the gray steps nor the color subcarrier are reproduced correctly in amplitude and phase. Non-linear distortion is caused by active components (transmitter tubes, transistors) in the transmission link. However, they become only visible ultimately when many processes are added together since the human eye is very tolerant in this respect. Putting it another way: "Although this isn’t the right gray step, who is to know?". And in color television this effect is less prominent, in any case, because of the way in which color is transmitted, particularly with PAL.

One of the most visible effects is the influence of noise-like disturbances. These are simply produced by superimposition of the ever-present gaussian noise, the level of which is only a question of its separation from the useful signal level. I.e., if the signal level is too low, noise becomes visible. The level of thermal noise can be determined in a simple way via the Boltzmann constant, the bandwidth of the useful channel and the normal ambient temperature and is thus almost a fixed constant. Noise is immediately visible in the analog video signal which is the great difference compared with digital television.

Intermodulation products and interference are also very obvious in the video signal and have a very disturbing effect, forming moiré patterns in the picture. These effects are the result of heterodyning of the video signal with an interfering product either from an adjacent channel or interferers entering the useful spectrum directly from the environment. This type of interference is the one most visible and thus also causes the greatest disturbance in the overall impression of the picture. It is also most apparent in cable television because of its multichannel nature.

2.6 Signals in the Vertical Blanking Interval

Since the middle of the seventies, the vertical blanking interval, which was originally used for the vertical flyback, is no longer only "empty" or "black". At first, so-called VITS (vertical insertion test signals), or test lines, were inserted there which could be used for assessing the quality of the analog video signal. In addition, teletext and the data line can be found there. Test lines were used for monitoring the transmission quality of a TV transmission link or section virtually on-line without having to isolate the link. These test lines contain test signals which can be used for identifying the causes of faults.

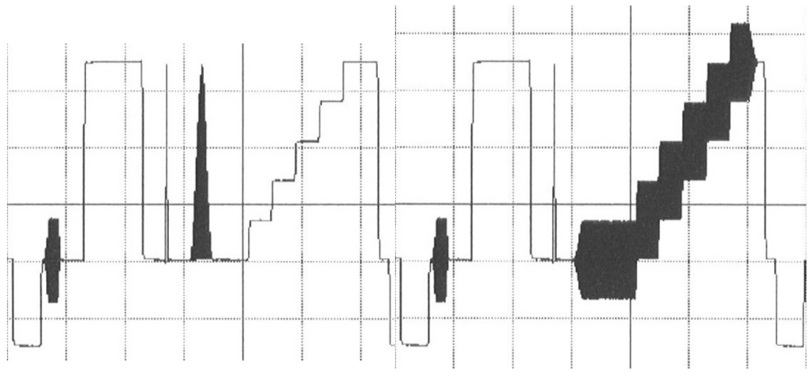


Fig. 2.12. CCIR 17 and 330 test lines

Test line "CCIR 17" (now ITU 17, on the left in Fig. 2.12.) begins with the so-called white pulse (bar) and is used as technical voltage reference for 100% white. Its nominal amplitude is 700 mV. The "roof" of the white pulse is 10 μs long and should be flat and without overshoots. This is followed by the 2T pulse which is a so-called $\cos^2$ pulse with a half-amplitude period of $2T = 2 \cdot 100$ ns = 200 ns. The main components of its spectrum extend to the end of the luminance channel of 5 MHz. It reacts very sensitively to amplitude response and group delay distortion from 0 ...

5 MHz and can thus be used for assessing linear distortion both visually and by measurement. The next pulse is a 20T pulse, a $\cos^2$ pulse with superimposed color subcarrier and with a half-amplitude period of 20T = 20 · 100 ns = 2 µs. It clearly shows linear distortion of the color channel with respect to the luminance channel.

Linear distortion of the color channel with respect to the luminance channel is

- Differential gain of the color channel with respect to the luminance channel
- Luminance-chrominance delay caused by group delay

Non-linear distortion can be easily identified by means of the 5-step gray scale. All five steps must have identical height. If they do not have equal height due to nonlinearities, this is called static nonlinearity (luminance nonlinearity). In test line 330, the gray scale is replaced by a staircase on which the color subcarrier is superimposed. This can be used for identifying non-linear effects on the color cubcarrier such as differential amplitude and phase. The color bursts superimposed on the staircase should all be ideally of the same amplitude and must not have a phase discontinuity at the transition points of the steps.

Teletext is well known by now (Fig. 2.13. and 2.14.). It is a data service offered in analog television. The data rate is about 6.9 Mbit/s, but only in the area of the lines really used in the vertical blanking interval. In actual fact, the data rate is much lower e.g. 260 kbit/s. In each teletext line, 40 useful characters are transmitted. A teletext page consists of 40 characters times 24 lines. If the entire vertical blanking interval were to be used, just short of one teletext page could be transmitted per field. Teletext is transmitted in NRZ (non-return-to-zero) code. A teletext line begins with the 16-bit-long run-in, a sequence of 10101010… for synchronizing the phase of the teletext decoder in the receiver. This is followed by the framing code. This hexadecimal number 0xE4 marks the beginning of the active teletext. After the magazine and line number, the 40 characters of a line of the teletext are transmitted. One teletext page consists of 24 text lines.

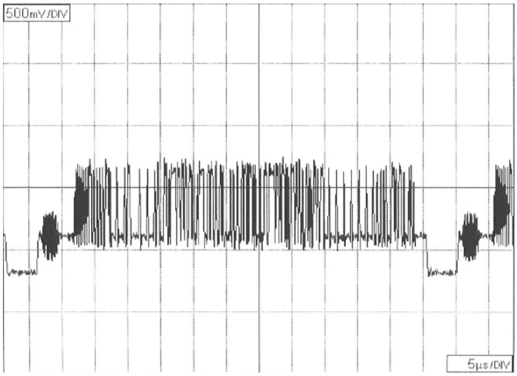


Fig. 2.13. Teletext line

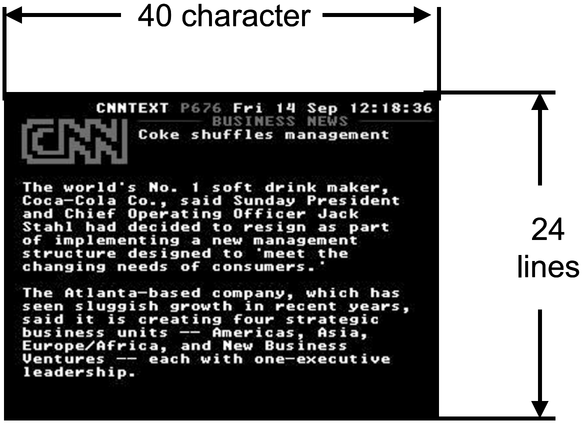


Fig. 2.14. Teletext page

The most important teletext parameters are as follows:

- Non-return-to-zero code
- Data rate: 444 · 15625 kbit/s = 6.9375 Mbit/s
- Error protection: Even parity
- Characters per line: 40
- Lines per teletext page: 24

The data line (e.g. line 16 and corresponding line in the second field, Fig. 2.15.) is used for transmitting control information, signaling and, among other things, the VPS (video program system) data for controlling video recorders. In detail, the data line is used for transmitting the following data:

- Byte 1: Run-in 10101010
- Byte 2: Start code 01011101
- Byte 3: Source ID
- Byte 4: Serial ASCII text transmission (source)
- Byte 5: Mono/stereo/dual sound
- Byte 6: Video content ID
- Byte 7: Serial ASCII text transmission
- Byte 8: Remote control (routing)
- Byte 9: Remote control (routing)
- Byte 10: Remote control
- Byte 11 to 14: Video program system (VPS)
- Byte 15: Reserved

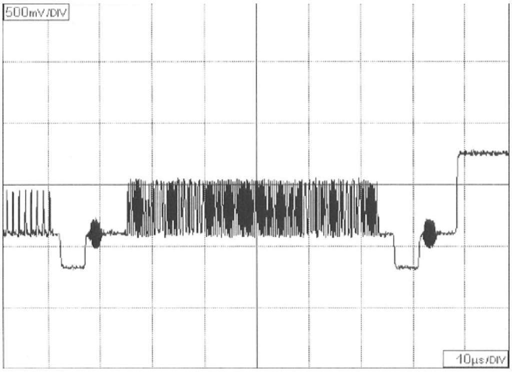


Fig. 2.15. Data line (mostly line 16 in the vertical blanking interval)

The VPS bytes contain the following information:

- Day (5 bits)
- Month (4 bits)
- Hour (5 bits)
- Minute (6 bits) = virtual starting time of the program
- Country ID (4 bits)
- Program source 11) (6 bits)

The transmission parameters of the data line are:

- Line: 16/329
- Code: Return-to-zero code
- Data rate: 2.5 Mbit/s
- Level: 500 mV
- Data: 15 bytes per line

According to DVB, these signals from the vertical blanking interval are "tunneled" via the MPEG-2 transport stream and partially regenerated in the receiver to retain compatibility with analog television. The test line signals, however, are no longer provided.

2.7 Measurements on Analog Video Signals

Analog video signals have been measured since the beginning of the TV age, initially with simple oscilloscopes and vectorscopes and later with ever more elaborate video analyzers, the latest models of which were digital (Fig. 2.22.). These video measurements are intended to identify the distortions in the analog video signal. The following test parameters are determined with the aid of test lines:

- White bar amplitude
- Sync amplitude
- Burst amplitude
- Tilt on the white bar
- 2T pulse amplitude
- 2T K factor
- Luminance-chrominance amplitude on the 20T pulse
- Luminance-chrominance delay on the 20T pulse
- Static nonlinearity on the grayscale
- Differential gain on the grayscale with color subcarrier
- Differential phase on the grayscale with color subcarrier
- Weighted and unweighted luminance signal/noise ratio
- Hum

In addition, an analog TV test receiver also provides information on:

- Vision carrier level
- Sound carrier level
- Deviation of the sound carriers
- Frequencies of vision and sound carriers
- Residual picture carrier
- ICPM (Incidential phase modulation)

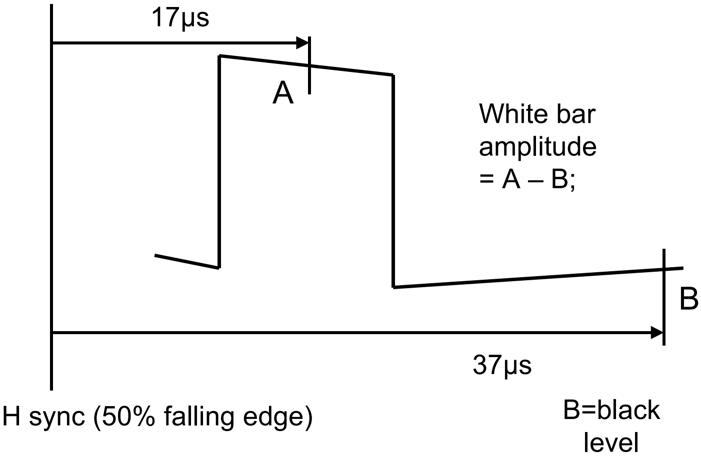


Fig. 2.16. Measuring the white bar amplitude

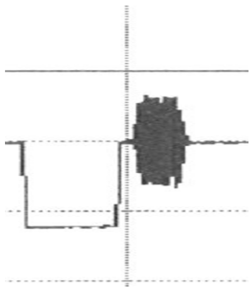


Fig. 2.17. Sync pulse and burst

The most important parameter to be measured on an analog TV signal is the white bar amplitude which is measured as shown in Fig. 2.16. In the worst case, the white bar can also be quite rounded due to linear distortions, as indicated in the figure. The sync amplitude (s. Fig. 2.17.) is used as voltage reference in the terminals and is of special importance for this reason. The sync amplitude is nominally 300 mV below black. The 50% value of the falling edge of the sync pulse is considered to be the timing reference in the analog video signal. The burst (s. Fig. 2.17.) is used as voltage and phase reference for the color subcarrier. Its amplitude is 300 mV_{PP}. In practice, amplitude distortions of the burst have little influence on the picture quality.

Linear distortion leads to tilt on the white bar (Fig. 2.18.). This is also an important test parameter. To measure it, the white bar is sampled at the beginning and at the end and the difference is calculated which is then related to the white pulse amplitude.

The 2T pulse reacts sensitively to linear distortion in the entire transmission channel of relevance. Fig. 2.19. shows the undistorted 2T pulse on the left. It has been used as test signal for identifying linear distortion since the seventies. A 2T pulse altered by linear distortion is also shown on the right in Fig. 2.19. If the distortion of the 2T pulse is symmetric, it is caused by amplitude response errors. If the 2T pulse appears to be unsymmetric, then group delay errors are involved (non-linear phase response).

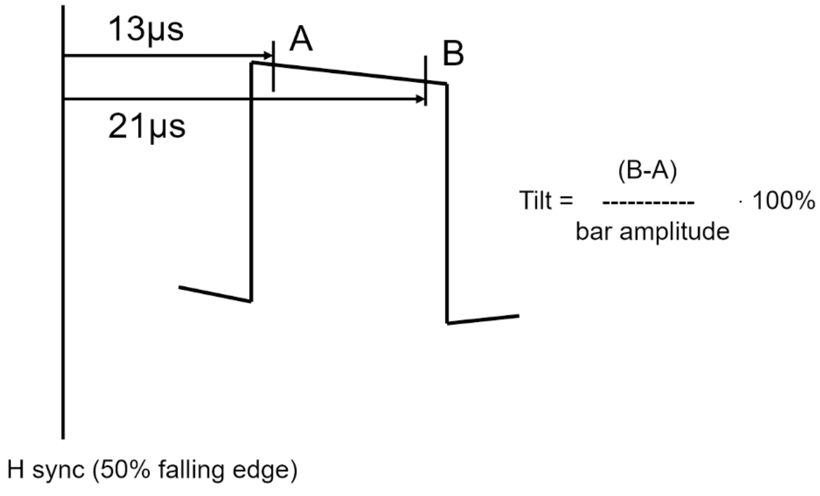


Fig. 2.18. Tilt on the white bar

The 20T pulse (Fig. 2.20., center) was created especially for measurements in the color channel. It reacts immediately to differences between luminance and chrominance. Special attention must be paid to the bottom of the 20T pulse. It should be straight, without any type of indentation. In the ideal case, the 20T pulse, like the 2T pulse, should have the same magnitude as the white pulse (700 mV nominal).

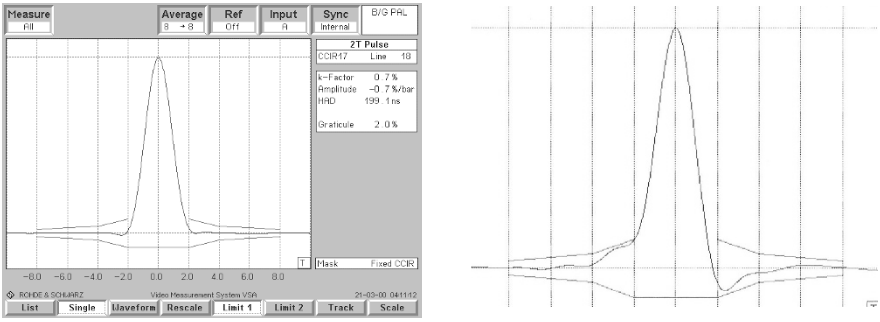


Fig. 2.19. Undistorted (left) and distorted (right) 2T pulse

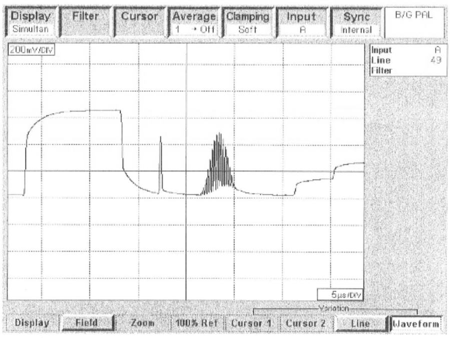


Fig. 2.20. Linearly distorted white pulse, 2T pulse and 20T pulse

Nonlinearities distort the video signal in dependence on modulation. This can be shown best on staircase signals. To this end, the gray scale and the staircase with color subcarrier were introduced as test signal, the steps simply being of different size in the presence of nonlinearitics. Noise and intermodulation can be verified best in a black line (Fig. 2.21.). In most cases, line 22 or line 6 was kept free of information for this purpose but this is not necessarily so any longer, either, since it carries teletext in most cases. To measure these effects, it is only necessary to look for an empty line suitable for this purpose among the 625 or 525 lines and this differs from program to program.

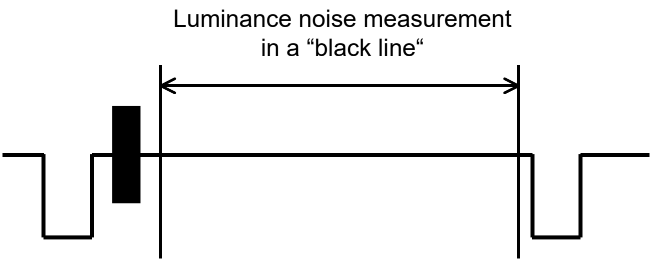


Fig. 2.21. Luminance noise measurement in a ”black line“

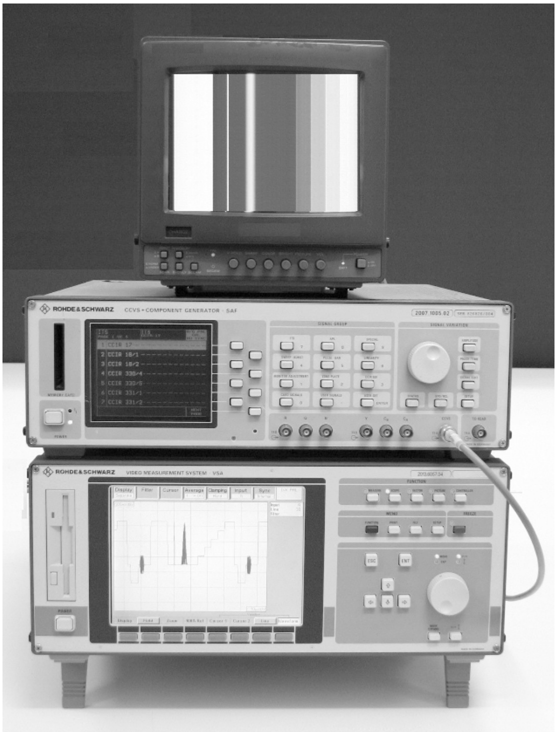


Fig. 2.22. Analog video test and measurement equipment: video test signal generator and video analyzer (Rohde&Schwarz SAF and VSA)

In digital television, test line testing now only makes sense for assessing the beginning (studio equipment) and the end (receiver) of the transmission link. In between - on the actual transmission link - nothing happens that can be verified by this means. The corresponding measurements on the digital transmission links will be described in detail in the respective chapters.

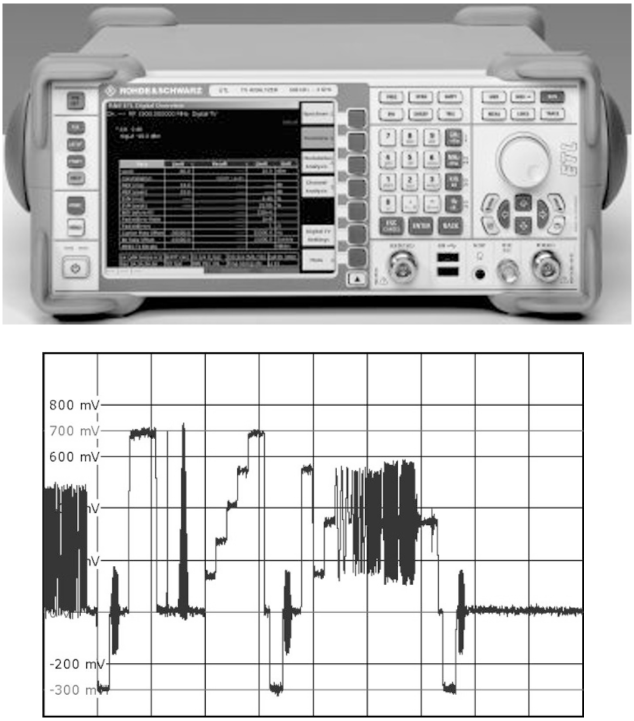


Fig. 2.23. TV Analyzer Rohde&Schwarz ETL for analog and digital TV measurements; ETL offers spectrum analyzer functionality and analog and digital TV measurements

2.8 Analog and Digital TV in a Broadband Cable Network

In some regions there is still both analog and digital TV and FM radio in a broadband cable network. That means analog TV and analog TV measurements are still a topic today.

Fig. 2.23. and 2.24. shows an old example of a mix of analog FM audio and analog and digital TV channels in a broadband cable network (year 2008, Germany and Austria).

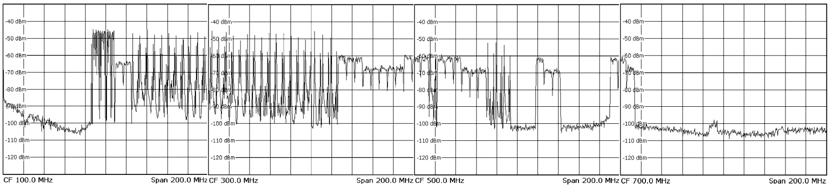


Fig. 2.24. Analog and digital broadband cable channels (example Munich, Germany, 0 … 800 MHz, year 2008)

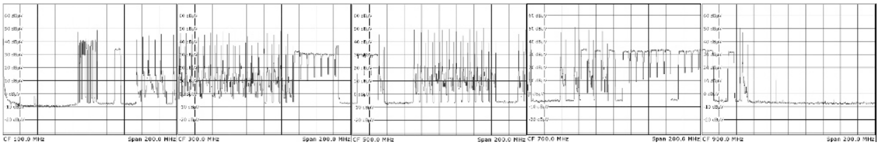


Fig. 2.25. Analog and digital broadband cable channels (example Klagenfurt, Austria, 0 … 1000 MHz, year 2008)

Bibliography: [MÄUSL3], [MÄUSL5], [VSA], [FISCHER6], [ETL]

3 The MPEG Data Stream

The abbreviation MPEG, first of all, stands for Moving Pictures Experts Group, that is to say MPEG deals mainly with the digital transmission of moving pictures. However, the data signal defined in the MPEG-2 Standard can also generally carry data which have nothing at all to do with video and audio and could be Internet data, for example.

MPEG = Moving Pictures Expert Group

MPEG-1	**MPEG-2**	**MPEG-4**	**MPEG-7**	**MPEG-21**
Part1: systems	Part1: systems	Part1: systems	Metadata,	additional
ISO/IEC11172-1	ISO/IEC13818-1	ISO/IEC14496	XML based	“tools“
“PES layer“	“Transportation“		ISO/IEC15938	ISO/IEC21000
			“Multimedia	
Part2: video	Part2: video	Part2: video	Content	
ISO/IEC11172-2	ISO/IEC13818-2	ISO/IEC14496-2	Description	
Part3: audio	Part3: audio	Part3: audio	Interface“	further …
ISO/IEC11172-3	ISO/IEC13818-3	(AAC)		MPEG-A
		ISO/IEC14496-3		MPEG-B
				MPEG-C
	Part6: DSM-CC	Part10: video		MPEG-D
	ISO/IEC13818-6	(AVC, H.264)		…
	Part7: AAC	ISO/14496-10		**MPEG-H**
	ISO/IEC13818-7			**MPEG-DASH**

Fig. 3.1. MPEG standards

As in the MPEG Standard itself, first the general structure of the MPEG data signal will be described in complete isolation from video and audio. An understanding of the data signal structure is also of greater importance in practice than a detailed understanding of the video and audio coding which will be discussed later. This data signal carries typically some or many programs (= services) each consisting of lip-synchronous video, audio and data stream. It is called MPEG-2 transport stream. All that different MPEG-1, MPEG-2, MPEG-4, etc. codecs can be mixed and transported in that MPEG-2 transport stream. There is only the MPEG-2 transport stream and there is no MPEG-4 transport stream.

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_3

3.1 MPEG-Standards and Applications

In 1992, MPEG-1 was created as the first standard for encoding moving pictures accompanied by sound. The aim was to achieve a picture quality close to that of VHS at CD data rates (< 1.5 Mbit/s). MPEG-1 was provided only for applications on storage media (CD, hard disk) and not for transmission (broadcasting) and its data structures correspond to this objective. The audio and video coding of MPEG-1 is quite close to that of MPEG-2 and all the fundamental algorithms and methods are already in place. There are both I, P and B frames, i.e. forward and backward prediction, and naturally there are the DCT-based irrelevance reduction methods already found in JPEG. The picture resolution, however, is limited to about half the VGA resolution (352 x 288). Neither is there any necessity for field encoding (interlaced scanning method). In MPEG-1, there is only the so-called Program Stream (PS) which is composed of multiplexed packetized elementary stream (PES) packets of audio and video. The variable-length (64 kbytes max) audio and video PES packets are simply assembled interleaved in accordance with the present data rate to form a data stream. This data stream is not processed any further since it is only intended to be stored on storage media and not used for transmission. A certain number of audio and video PES packets are combined to form a so-called pack which consists of a header and the payload just like the PES packets themselves. A pack is often based on the size of a physical data sector of the storage medium.

In MPEG-2, the coding methods were developed further in the direction of higher resolution and better quality. In addition, transmission was also considered, in addition to the storage of such data. The MPEG-2 transport stream is the transportation layer, providing much smaller packet structures and more extensive multiplexing mechanisms. In MPEG-1, there is only one program (only one movie), whereas MPEG-2 can accommodate a multiplexed data stream with up to 20 programs and more.

In addition to Standard Definition TV (SDTV), MPEG-2 also supports High Definition TV (HDTV). MPEG-2 is used throughout the world as digital baseband signal in broadcasting.

A Video CD (VCD) contains an MPEG-1 coded data signal as a program stream, i.e. there is one program consisting of multiplexed PES packets. The total data rate is about 1.5 Mbit/s. Many pirate copies of movies were available as Video CD and via download from the Internet or bought on the Asian market.

A Super Video CD (SVCD) carries an MPEG-2 data signal coded with 2.4 Mbit/s, also as a program stream with multiplexed PES packets. A Super Video CD approximately corresponds to VHS type quality, sometimes even better.

On a DVD (Digital Versatile Disk - NOT 'Digital Video Disk'), the data material is MPEG-2 coded with data rates of up to 10.5 Mbit/s and exhibits a much better picture quality than that recorded on VHS tape. A DVD also carries a multiplexed PES data stream. Subtitles and much else besides are also possible.

The DVD is intended for a variety of applications including video, audio and data. In contrast to the CD (approx. 700 Mbytes), the data volume on a DVD is up to 17 Gbytes and it is possible to have 1, 2 or 4 layers with 4.7 Gbytes each per layer (see table below).

Table 3.1. DVD types

Type	Sides	Layers / side	Data [Gbytes]	x CD-ROM
DVD 5	1	1	4.7	7
DVD 9	1	2	8.5	13
DVD 10	2	1	9.4	14
DVD 18	2	2	17.1	25

Technical data of the Video DVD:

- Storage capacity: 4.7 to 17.1 Gbytes
- MPEG-2 Video with variable data rate, 9.8 Mbit/s video max.

Audio:

- Linear PCM (LPCM) with 48 kHz or 96 kHz sampling frequency at 16, 20 or 24 bits resolution
- MPEG Audio (MUSICAM) mono, stereo, 6-channel sound (5.1), 8-channel sound (7.1)
- Dolby Digital (AC3) mono, stereo, 6-channel sound (5.1)

Table 3.2. Digital video standards

Standard	Video coding	Resolution	Video data rate [Mbit/s]	Total data rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG-1	MPEG-1	352 x 288 192 x 144 384 x 288	0.150 - (1.150) - 3.0	max. approx. 3.5 (1.4112)

MPEG-2	MPEG-2	720 x 576 (SDTV, 25 frames per second) different resolutions up to HDTV	up to 15	basically open, from the interfaces up to 270
MPEG-4	MPEG-4 Part 2 and Part 10 (H.264)			
Video CD	MPEG-1	352 x 288	1.150	1.4112
Super VCD	MPEG-2	480 x 576	2.4	2.624
Video DVD	MPEG-2	720 x 576	up to 9.8, variable	10.5
MiniDV	MJPEG variant	720 x 576	25	approx. 30
DVPro	MJPEG variant	720 x 576	25/50	approx. 30/55
Blu-ray Disc	MPEG-2, MPEG-4 AVC, VC-1	1920 x 1080 (3840 x 2160)		36

Apart from MPEG, there are also proprietary methods based on JPEG all of which have that in common that the video material is only DCT coded and not interframe coded. Both DV and MiniDV are such methods. MiniDV has been become widely used in the home video camera field and has revolutionized this field with respect to the picture quality. The data rate is 3.6 Mbyte/s total or 25 Mbit/s video data rate. The picture size is 720 x 576 pixels, the same as in MPEG-2, with 25 frames per second. MiniDV can be edited at any point since it virtually only consists of frames comparable to I frames. DVCPro is the big brother to MiniDV. DVCPro is a studio standard and supports video data rates of 25 and 50 Mbit/s. The 25 Mbit/s data rates corresponds to the MiniDV format. DVCPro and MiniDV are special variants of Motion JPEG. In contrast to MPEG, no quantizer tables are transmitted, neither are quantizer scale factors varied from macroblock to macroblock. Instead, a set of quantizing tables is provided locally, from which the coder selects the most suitable one from macroblock to macroblock. MiniDV and DVPro exhibit a very good picture quality at relatively high data rates and lend themselves easily to postprocessing. Home editing software for the PC is available at a cost of around 100 Euros and provides functions available only to professionals a few years ago. Apart from the actual editing, which is now free of losses and is easy to handle, the software also allows video material to be coded in MPEG-1, MPEG-2, VCD, SVCD, video DVD, Blu-ray or just MPEG-4/AVC or HEVC file format.

MPEG-4 was made into a standard in 1999. At the beginning of the new millenium, a further new video compression standard H.264 was developed and standardized. Compared with MPEG-2, this method is more effective by a factor of 2 to 3 and thus allows data rates which are lower by a factor of 2 to 3, often even with improved picture quality. The relevant standard is ITU-T H.264. H.264 has also been incorporated in the group of MPEG-4 standards as MPEG-4 Part 10.

The most important standard documents covered by the heading MPEG-4 are:

- MPEG-4 Part 1 – Systems, ISO/IEC 14496-1
- MPEG-4 Part 2 – Video Encoding, ISO/IEC 14496-2
- MPEG-4 Part 3 – Audio Encoding, ISO/IEC 14996-3
- MPEG-4 Part 10 – H.264 Advanced Video Coding. ISO/IEC 14496-10

MPEG-4 Part 10 – Advanced Video Coding (AVC) is used for HDTV applications in Europe as part of the DVB project. Whereas HDTV requires data rates of about 15 Mbit/s for the video signal with MPEG-2, these are about 9 Mbit/s or even lower when they are encoded as MPEG-4 AVC signals.

MPEG-7, in contrast and as a supplement to MPEG-2 and -4, deals exclusively with program-associated data, the so-called meta-data, as a complement to MPEG-2 and MPEG-4. The aim is to store background information for a program with the aid of XML- and HTML-based data structures together with the program. MPEG-7 has been a standard since 2001 but has yet to make its debut in practice, at least for the end user.

MPEG-21 was to be transformed into a full standard by 2003 and was intended to contain tools and methods to supplement all other MPEG standards (including end-user-to-end-user applications, e.g. via the Internet). It is not clear what has become of it.

After 2010 there are further MPEG-standards published which are no longer named by a number but by a character which are

- MPEG-A ISO/IEC 23000
- MPEG-B ISO/IEC 23001

- MPEG-C ISO/IEC 23002
- MPEG-D ISO/IEC 23003
- MPEG-E ISO/IEC 23004
- MPEG-V ISO/IEC 23005
- MPEG-M ISO/IEC 23006
- MPEG-U ISO/IEC 23007
- MPEG-H ISO/IEC 23008 (HEVC, H.265)
- MPEG-DASH ISO/IEC 23009

In 2013 a new video codec – ITU-T H.265 was standardized. This video codec is called HEVC – High Efficiency Video Coding and it was also published as MPEG-H part 2 video. HEVC is now in use for UHDTV services and in the DVB-T2 network in Germany for HDTV services allowing video data rates in the range of about 4 Mbit/s. And last but not least MPEG-DASH was developed for IP streaming applications in OTT services ("Over the Top TV").

Table 3.3. MPEG standards

Standard	Description	Status
MPEG-1	Moving pictures and sound, approx. in VHS quality with CD data rate (< 1.5 Mbit/s)	Standard since 1992
MPEG-2	Digital television (SDTV+HDTV)	Standard since 1993
MPEG-3	Existed only temporarily (no relation to MP3)	not applicable
MPEG-4	Multimedia, interactive	Standard since 1999
MPEG-7	Program-associated supplementary data (Meta-data)	Standard since 2001
MPEG-21	Supplementary tools and methods	
MPEG-A MPEG-B MPEG-C MPEG-D MPEG-E MPEG-V MPEG-U	Futher MPEG standards	since approx. 2010
MPEG-H	MPEG-H, part 2 HEVC see also H.265	Standard since 2013
MPEG-DASH	"Dynamic Adaptive Streaming over HTTP (DASH)"	Standard since 2012

3.2 The MPEG-2 Transport Stream

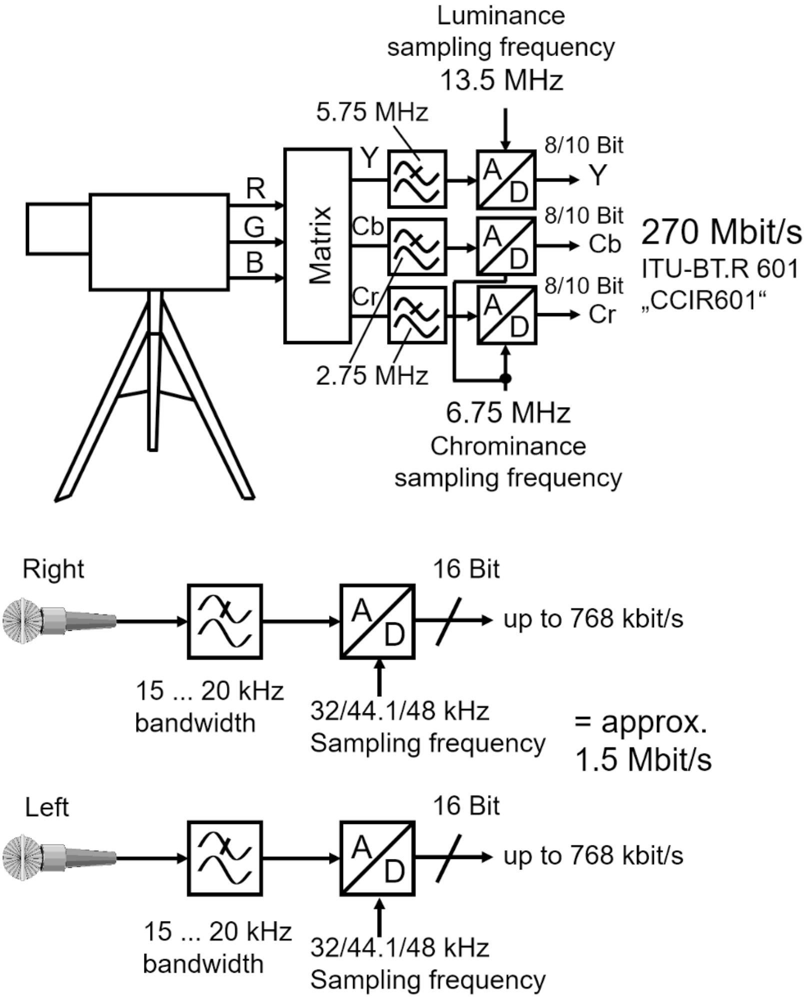


Fig. 3.2. Video and audio data signals

All the same, the description of the data signal structure will begin with the uncompressed video and audio signals. An SDTV (Standard Definition Television) signal without data reduction has a data rate of 270 Mbit/s and a digital stereo audio signal in CD quality has a data rate of about 1.5 Mbit/s (Fig. 3.2.).

The video signals are compressed to about 1 Mbit/s in MPEG-1 and to about 2 - 7 Mbit/s in MPEG-2. The video data rate can be constant or variable (statistical multiplex). The audio signals have a data rate of about 100 - 400 kbit/s (mostly 192 kbit/s) after compression (to be discussed in a separate chapter) but the audio data rate is always constant and a multiple of 8 kbit/s. The compression itself will be dealt with in a separate chapter. The compressed video and audio signals in MPEG are called "elementary streams", ES in brief. There are thus video streams, audio streams and, quite generally, data streams, the latter containing any type of compressed or uncompressed data. Immediately after having been compressed (i.e. encoded), all the elementary streams are divided into variable-length packets, both in MPEG-1 and in MPEG-2 (Fig. 3.3.).

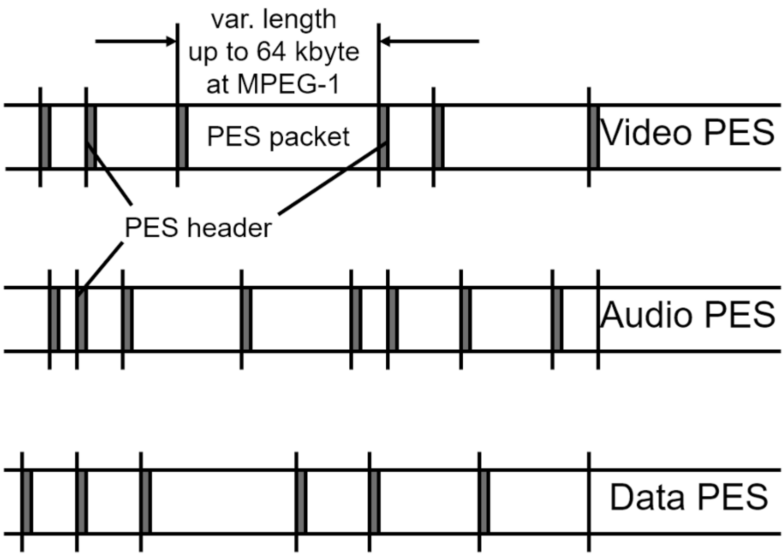


Fig. 3.3. MPEG Elementary Streams

Since it is possible to have sometimes more and sometimes less compression depending on the instantaneous video and audio content, variable-length containers are needed in the data signal. These containers carry one or more compressed frames in the case of the video signal and one or more compressed audio signal segments in the case of the audio signal. These elementary streams (Fig. 3.3.) thus divided into packets are called "packetized elementary streams", or simply PES for short.

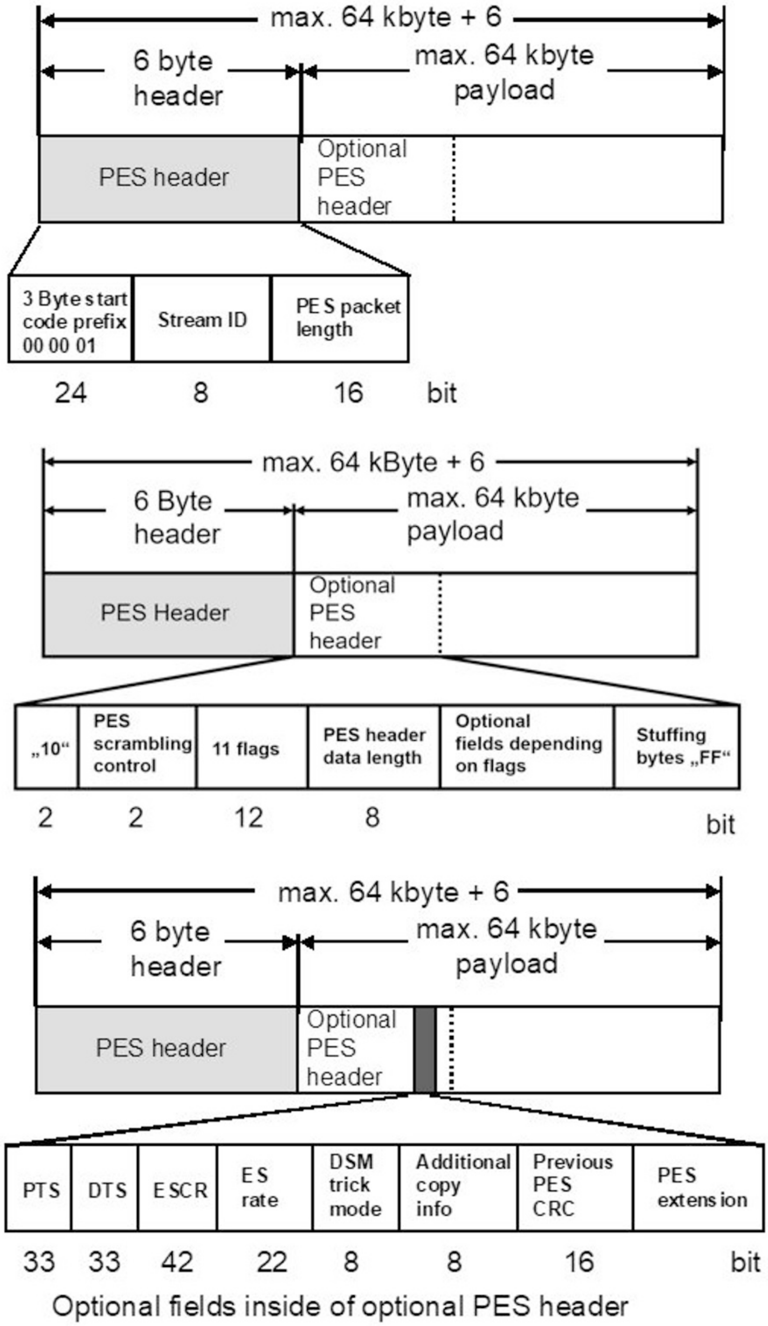


Fig. 3.4. The PES packet

Each PES packet usually has a size of up to 64 kbytes. It consists of a relatively short header and of a payload. The header contains inter alia a 16-bit-long length indicator for the maximum packet length of 64 kbytes. The payload part contains either the compressed video and audio streams or a pure data stream. According to the MPEG Standard, however, the video packets can also be longer than 64 kbytes in some cases. The length indicator is then set to zero and the MPEG decoder has to use other mechanisms for finding the end of the packet.

3.3 The Packetized Elementary Stream (PES)

All elementary streams in MPEG are first packetized in variable-length packets called PES packets. The packets, which primarily have a length of 64 kbytes, begin with a PES header of 6 bytes minimum length. The first 3 bytes of this header represent the "start code prefix", the content of which is always 00 00 01 and which is used for identifying the start of a PES packet. The byte following the start code is the "stream ID" which describes the type of elementary stream following in the payload. It indicates whether it is, e.g. a video stream, an audio stream or a data stream which follows. After that there are two "packet length" bytes which are used to address the up to 64 kbytes of payload. If both of these bytes are set to zero, a PES packet having a length which may exceed these 64 kbytes can be expected. The MPEG decoder then has to use other arrangements to find the PES packet limits, e.g. the start code.

After these 6 bytes of PES header, an "optional PES header" is transmitted which is an optional extension of the PES header and is adapted to the requirements of the elementary stream currently being transmitted. It is controlled by 11 flags in a total of 12 bits in this optional PES header. These flags show which components are actually present in the "optional fields" in the optional PES header and which are not. The total length of the PES header is shown in the "PES header data length" field. The optional fields in the optional header contain, among other things, the "Presentation Time Stamps" (PTS) and the "Decoding Time Stamps" (DTS) which are important for synchronizing video and audio. At the end of the optional PES header there may also be stuffing bytes. Following the complete PES header, the actual payload of the elementary stream is transmitted which can usually be up to 64 kbytes long or even longer in special cases, plus the optional header.

In MPEG-1, video PES packets are simply multiplexed with PES packets and stored on a data medium (Fig. 3.5.). The maximum data rate is about 1.5 Mbit/s for video and audio and the data stream only includes a video stream and an audio stream.

This “Packetized Elementary Stream” (PES) with its relatively long packet structures is not, however, suitable for transmission and especially not for broadcasting a number of programs in one multiplexed data signal.

In MPEG-2, on the other hand, the objective has been to assemble up to 6, 10 or even 20 independent TV or radio programs to form one common multiplexed MPEG-2 data signal. This data signal is then transmitted via satellite, cable or terrestrial transmission links. To this end, the long PES packets are additionally divided into smaller packets of constant length. From the PES packets, 184-byte-long pieces are taken and to these another 4-byte-long header is added (Fig. 3.6.), making up 188-byte-long packets called “transport stream packets” which are then multiplexed.

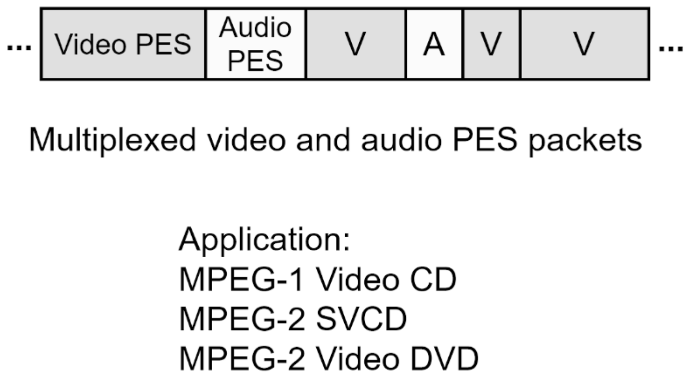


Fig. 3.5. Multiplexed PES packets

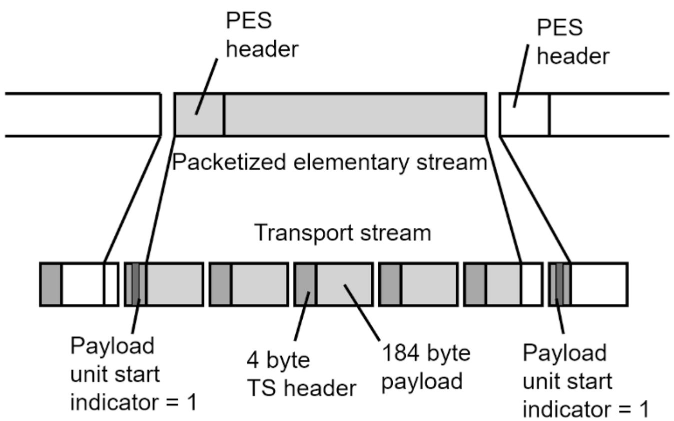


Fig. 3.6. Forming MPEG-2 transport stream packets

To do this, first the transport stream packets of one program are multiplexed together. A program can consist of one or more video and audio signals and an extreme example of this is a Formula 1 transmission with a number of camera angles (track, spectators, car, helicopter) and presented in different languages. All the multiplexed data streams of all the programs are then multiplexed again and combined to form a complete data stream which is called an “MPEG-2 transport stream” (TS for short).

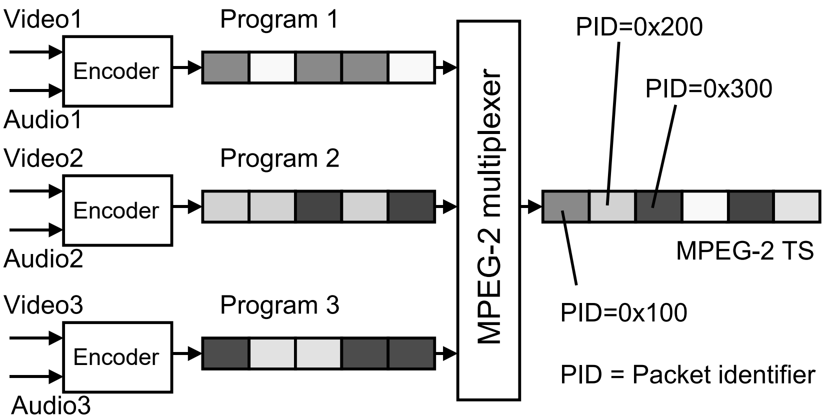


Fig. 3.7. Multiplexed MPEG-2 transport stream packets

An MPEG-2 transport stream contains the 188-byte-long transport stream packets of all programs with all their video, audio and data signals. Depending on the data rates, packets of one or the other elementary streams will occur more or less frequently in the MPEG-2 transport stream. For each program there is one MPEG encoder which encodes all elementary streams, generates a PES structure and then packetizes these PES packets into transport stream packets. The data rate for each program is usually approx. 2 - 7 Mbit/s but the aggregate data rate for video, audio and data can be constant or vary in accordance with the program content at the time. This is then called “statistical multiplex”. The transport streams of all the programs are then combined in a multiplexed MPEG-2 data stream to form one overall transport stream (Fig. 3.7.) which can then have a data rate of up to about 40…55 Mbit/s. There are often up to 6, 8 or 10 or even 20 programs in one transport stream. The data rates can vary during the transmission but the overall data rate has to remain constant. A program can contain video and audio, only audio (audio broadcast) or only data, and the structure is thus flexible and can also change during the transmission. To be able to determine the current structure of the transport stream during the decoding, the transport stream also carries lists describing the structure, so-called “tables”.

3.4 The MPEG-2 Transport Stream Packet

The MPEG-2 transport stream consists of packets having a constant length (Fig. 3.8.). This length is always 188 bytes, with 4 bytes of header and 184 bytes of payload. The payload contains the video, audio or general data. The header contains numerous items of importance to the transmission of the packets. The first header byte is the “sync byte”. It always has a value of 47_{hex} (0x47 in C/C++ syntax) and is spaced a constant 188 bytes apart in the transport stream. It is quite possible, and certainly not illegal, for there to be a byte having the value 0x47 somewhere else in the packet; even this cannot be avoided.

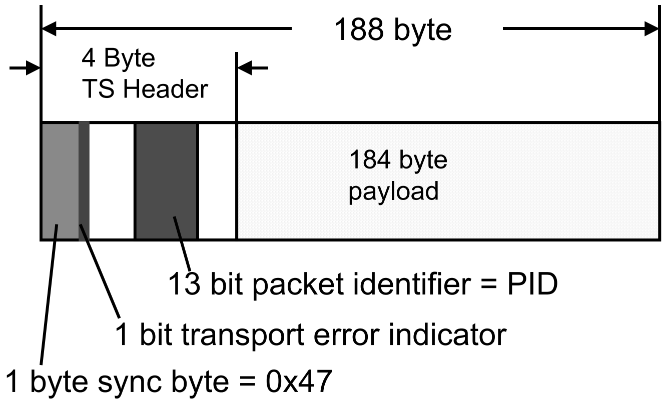


Fig. 3.8. MPEG-2 transport stream packet

The sync byte is used for synchronizing the packet to the transport stream and it is its value plus the constant spacing which is being used for synchronization. According to MPEG, synchronization at the decoder occurs after five transport stream packets have been received. Another important component of the transport stream is the 13 bit-long “packet identifier” or PID for short. The PID describes the current content of the payload part of this packet. The hexadecimal 13 bit number in combination with tables also included in the transport stream show which elementary stream or content this is.

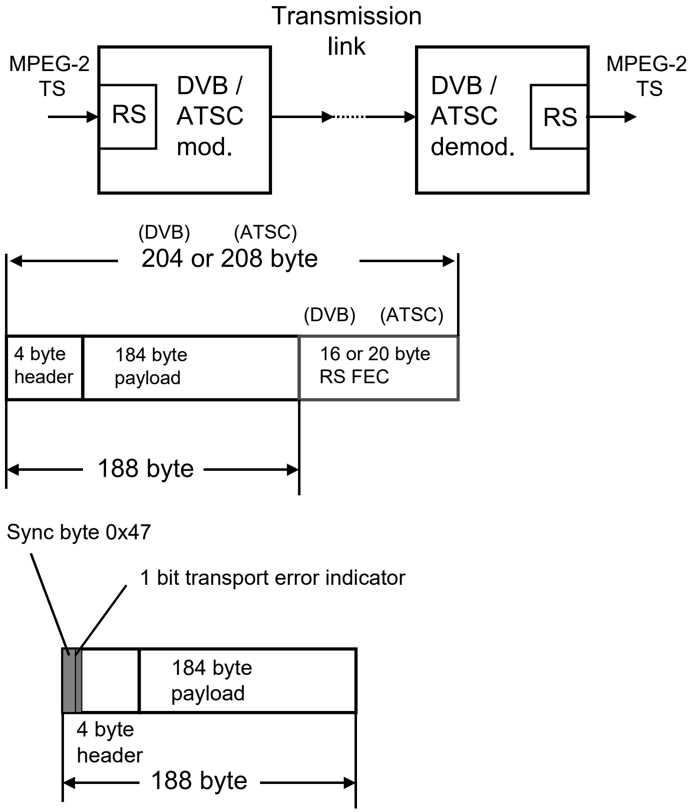


Fig. 3.9. Reed-Solomon FEC

The bit immediately following the sync bit is the “transport error indicator” bit (Fig. 3.8.). With this bit, transport stream packets are flagged as errored after their transmission. It is set by demodulators at the end of the transmission link if e.g. too many errors have occurred and there had been no further possibility to correct these by means of error correction mechanisms used during the transmission. In DVB-x1 (Digital Video Broadcasting, first generation), e.g., the primary error protection used is always the Reed Solomon error correction code (Fig. 3.9.). In one of the first stages of the (DVB-S, DVB-C or DVB-T) modulator, 16 bytes of error protection are added to the initially 188 bytes of the packet. These 16 bytes of error protection are a special checksum which can be used for repairing up to 8 errors per packet at the receiving end. If, however, there are more than 8 errors in a packet, there is no further possibility for correcting the errors, the error protection has failed and the packet is flagged as errored by the transport error indicator. This packet must now no longer be decoded by the MPEG decoder which, instead, has to mask the error which, in most cases, can be seen as a type of "blocking" in the picture.

It may be necessary occasionally to transmit more than 4 bytes of header per transport stream packet. The header is extended into the payload field in this case. The payload part becomes correspondingly shorter but the total packet length remains a constant 188 bytes. This extended header is called an "adaptation field" (Fig. 3.10.). The other contents of the header and of the adaptation field will be discussed later. "Adaptation control bits" in the 4 byte-long header show if there is an adaptation field or not.

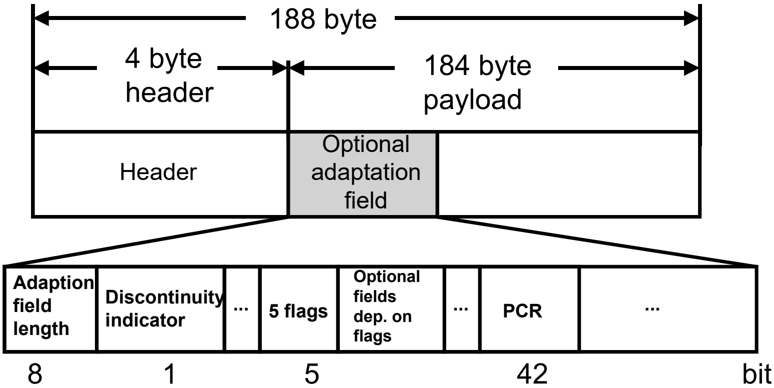


Fig. 3.10. Adaptation field

The structure and especially the length of a transport stream packet are very similar to a type of data transmission known from telephony and LAN technology, namely the "asynchronous transfer mode" or ATM in short. Today, ATM is used both in long-haul networks for telephony and Internet calls and for interconnecting computers in a LAN network in buildings. ATM also has a packet structure. The length of one ATM cell is 53 bytes containing 5 bytes of header and 48 bytes of payload. Right at the beginning of MPEG-2 it was considered to transmit MPEG-2 data signals via ATM links. Hence the length of an MPEG-2 transport stream packet. Taking into consideration one special byte in the payload part of an ATM cell, this leaves 47 bytes of payload data. It is then possible to transmit 188 bytes of useful information by means of 4 ATM cells, corresponding exactly to the length of one MPEG-2 transport stream packet. And indeed, MPEG-2 transmissions over ATM links was in use. Examples of this were found, e.g. in Austria where all national studios of the Austrian broadcasting institution ORF (Österreichischer Rundfunk) were linked via an ATM network (called LNET). In Germany, too, MPEG streams were exchanged over ATM links. But nowadays ATM links are replaced by IP technology.

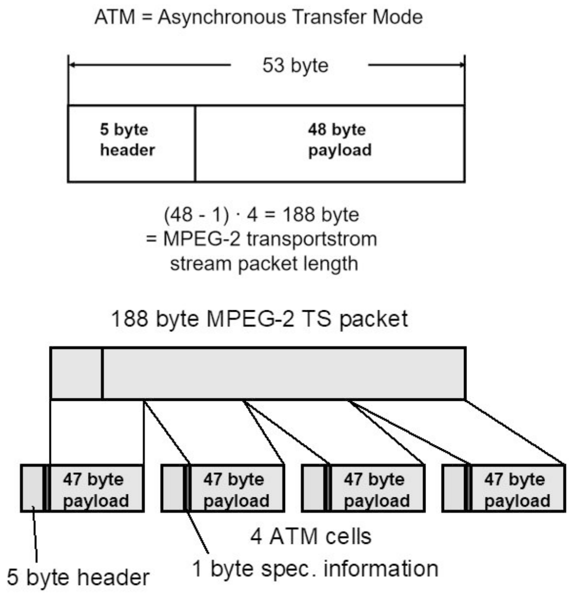


Fig. 3.11. ATM cell

When MPEG signals are transmitted via ATM links, various transmission modes called ATM Adaptation Layers can be applied at the ATM level. The mode shown in Fig. 3.11. corresponds to ATM Adaptation Layer 1 without FEC (i.e. AAL1 without FEC (forward error correction)). ATM Adaptation Layer 1 with FEC (AAL1 with FEC) or ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5) are also possible. The most suitable layer appears to be AAL1 with FEC since the contents are error-protected during the ATM transmission in this case.

The fact that the MPEG-2 transport stream is a completely asynchronous data signal is of particularly decisive significance. There is no way of knowing what information will follow in the next time slot (= transport stream packet). This can only be determined by means of the PID of the transport stream packet. The actual payload data rates in the payload can fluctuate; there may be stuffing to supplement the missing 184 bytes. This asynchronism has great advantages with regard to future flexibility, making it possible to implement any new method without much adaptation. But there are also disadvantages: the receiver must always be monitoring and thus uses more power; unequal error protection as, e.g., in DAB (digital audio broadcasting) cannot be applied and different contents cannot be protected to a greater or lesser degree as required.

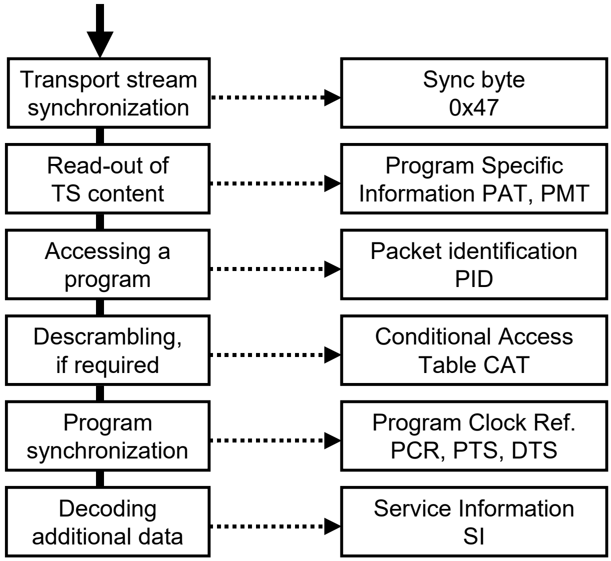


Fig. 3.12. Information for the receiver

3.5 Information for the Receiver

In the following paragraphs, the components of the transport stream which are necessary for the receiver will be considered. Necessary components means in this case: What does the receiver, i.e. the MPEG decoder, need for extracting from the large number of transport stream packets with the most varied contents exactly those which are needed for decoding the desired program? In addition, the decoder must be able to synchronize correctly to this program. The MPEG-2 transport stream is a completely asynchronous signal and its contents occur in a purely random fashion or on demand in the individual time slots. There is no absolute rule which can be used for determining what information will be contained in the next transport stream packet. The decoder and every element on the transmission link must lock to the packet structure. The PID (packet identifier) can be used for finding out what is actually being transmitted in the respective element. On the one hand, this asynchronism has advantages because of the total flexibility provided but there are also disadvantages with regard to power saving. Every single transport stream packet must first be analysed in the receiver.

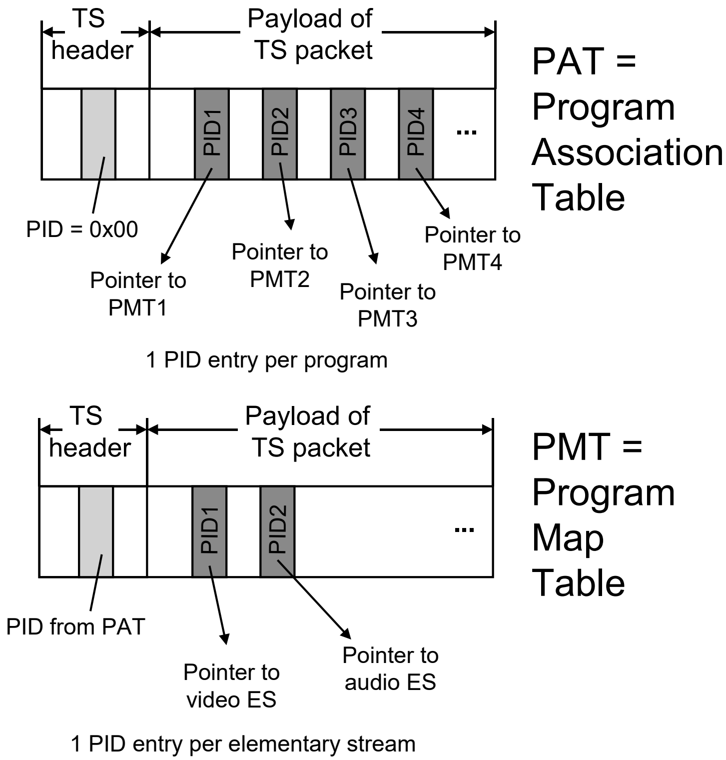


Fig. 3.13. PAT and PMT

3.5.1 Synchronizing to the Transport Stream

When the MPEG-2 decoder input is connected to an MPEG-2 transport stream, it must first lock to the transport stream, i.e. to the packet structure. The decoder, therefore, looks for the sync bytes in the transport stream. These always have the value of 0x47 and always appear at the beginning of a transport stream packet. They are thus present at constant intervals of

188 bytes. These two factors together, the constant value of 0x47 and the constant spacing of 188 bytes, are used for the synchronization. If a byte having a value of 0x47 appears, the decoder will examine the positions of n times 188 bytes before and after this byte in the transport stream for the presence of another sync byte. If there is, then this is a sync byte. If not, then this is simply some code word which has accidentally assumed this value. It is inevitable that the code word of 0x47 will also occur in the continuous transport stream. Synchronization will occur after 5 transport stream packets and the decoder will lose lock after a loss of 3 packets (as quoted in the MPEG-2 Standard).

3.5.2 Reading out the Current Program Structure

The number and the structure of the programs transmitted in the transport stream is flexible and open. The transport stream can contain one program with one video and audio elementary stream, or there can be 20 programs or more, some with only audio, some with video and audio and some with video and a number of audio signals which are being broadcast. It is, therefore, necessary to include certain lists in the transport stream which describe the instantaneous structure of the transport stream.

These lists provide the so-called “program specific information”, or PSI in short (Fig. 3.13.). They are tables which are occasionally transmitted in the payload part. The first table is the “Program Association Table” (PAT). This table occurs precisely once per transport stream but is repeated every 0.5 sec.. This table shows how many programs there are in this transport stream. Transport stream packets containing this table have the value zero as packet identifier (PID) and can thus be easily identified. In the payload part of the program association table, a list of special PIDs is transmitted. There is exactly one PID per program in the program association table (Fig. 3.13.).

These PIDs are pointers, as it were, to other information describing each individual program in more detail. They point to other tables, the so-called “Program Map Tables” (PMT). The program map tables, in turn, are special transport stream packets with a special payload part and special PID. The PIDs of the PMTs are transmitted in the PAT. If it is intended to receive, e.g. program No.3, PID no. 3 is selected in the list of all PIDs in the payload part in the program association table (PAT). If this is, e.g. 0x1FF3, the decoder looks for transport stream packets having PID = 0x1FF3 in their header. These packets are then the program map table for program no. 3 in the transport stream. The program map table, in turn, contains PIDs which are the PIDs for all elementary streams contained in this program (video, audio, data).

Since there can be a number of video and audio streams - as for instance in a movie broadcast in various languages - the viewer must select the elementary streams to be decoded. Ultimately he will select exactly 2 PIDs - one for the video stream and one for the audio stream, resulting e.g. in the two hexadecimal numbers PID1 = 0x100 and PID2 = 0x110. PID1 is then e.g. the PID for the video stream to be decoded and PID2 is the PID for the audio stream to be decoded. From now on, the MPEG-2 decoder will only be interested in these transport stream packets, collect them, i.e. demultiplex them and assemble them again to form the PES packets. It is precisely these PES packets which are supplied to the video and audio decoder in order to generate another video-and-audio signal.

The composition of the transport stream can change during the transmission, e.g. local programs can only be transmitted within certain windows. A TV receiver must, therefore, continuously monitor in the background the instantaneous structure of the transport stream, read out the PAT and PMTs and adapt to new situations. The header of a table contains a so-called version management for this purpose which signals to the receiver whether something has changed in the structure. It is regrettable that this does still not hold true for all DVB receivers. A receiver often recognizes a change in the program structure only after a new program search has been started. In many regions in Germany, so-called "regional window programs" are inserted into the public service broadcast programs at certain times of the day. These are implemented by a so-called "dynamic PMT", i.e. the contents of the PMT are altered and signal changes in the PIDs of the elementary streams.

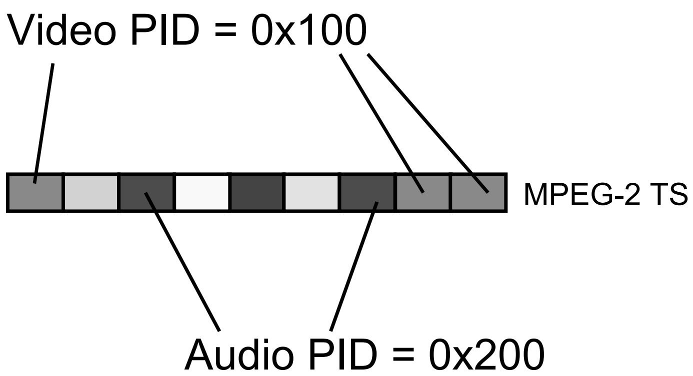


Fig. 3.14. Accessing a program via video and audio PIDs

3.5.3 Accessing a Program

After the PIDs of all elementary streams contained in the transport stream have become known from the information contained in the PAT and the PMTs and the user has committed himself to a program, a video and audio stream, precisely two PIDs are now defined (Fig. 3.14.): the PID for the video signal to be decoded and the PID for the audio signal to be decoded. The MPEG-2 decoder, on instruction by the user of the TV receiver, will now only be interested in these packets. Assuming then that the video PID is 0x100 and the audio PID is 0x110: in the following demultiplexing process all TS packets with 0x100 will be assembled into video PES packets and supplied to the video decoder. The same applies to the 0x110 audio packets which are collected together and reassembled to form PES packets which are supplied to the audio decoder. If the elementary streams are not scrambled, they can now also be decoded directly.

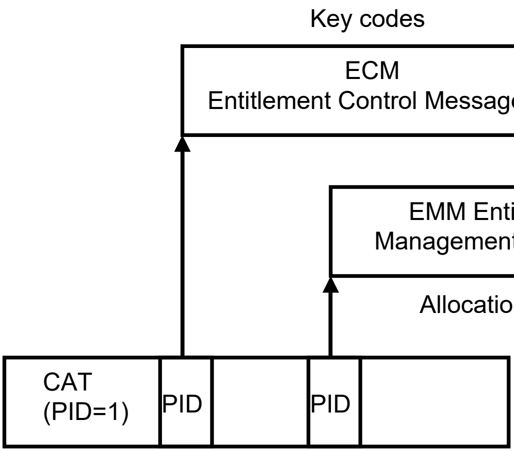


Fig. 3.15. The Conditional Access Table

3.5.4 Accessing Scrambled Programs

However, the elementary streams are transmitted scrambled. All or some of the elementary streams are transmitted protected by an electronic code in the case of pay TV or for licencing reasons involving local restrictions on reception. The elementary streams are scrambled (Fig. 3.17.) by various methods (Viaccess, Betacrypt, Irdeto, Conax, Nagravision etc.) and cannot be received without additional hardware and authorization. This additional hardware must be supplied with the appropriate descrambling and authorization data from the transport stream. For this purpose, a special table is transmitted in the transport stream, the "Conditional Access Table" (CAT) (Fig. 3.15.).

The CAT supplies the PIDs for other data packets in the transport stream in which this descrambling information is transmitted. This additional descrambling information is called ECM (entitlement control message) and EMM (entitlement management message). The ECMs are used for transmitting the scrambling codes and the EMMs are used for user administration. The important factor is that only the elementary streams themselves may be scrambled, and no transport stream headers (or tables, either). Neither is it permitted to scramble the transport stream header or the adaptation field.

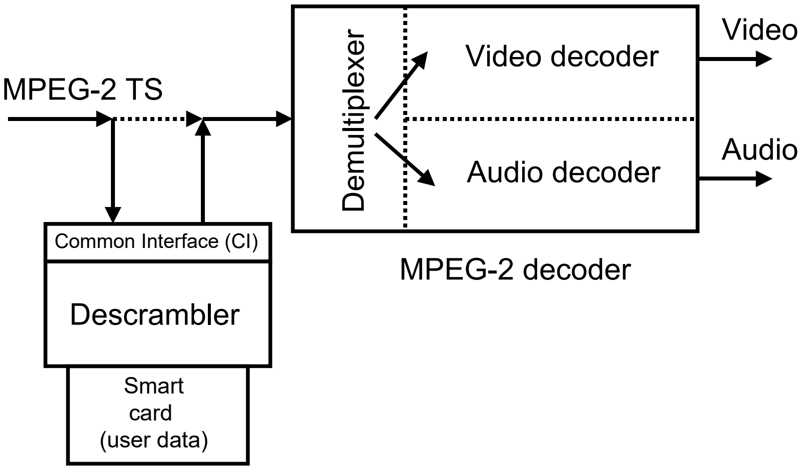


Fig. 3.16. Descrambling in the DVB receiver

The descrambling itself is done outside the MPEG decoder in additional hardware related to the descrambling method, which can be plugged into a so-called "common interface" (CI) in the set-top box. The transport stream is looped through this hardware before being processed further in the MPEG decoder. The information from the ECMs and EMMs and the user's personal code from the smart card then enable the streams to be descrambled.

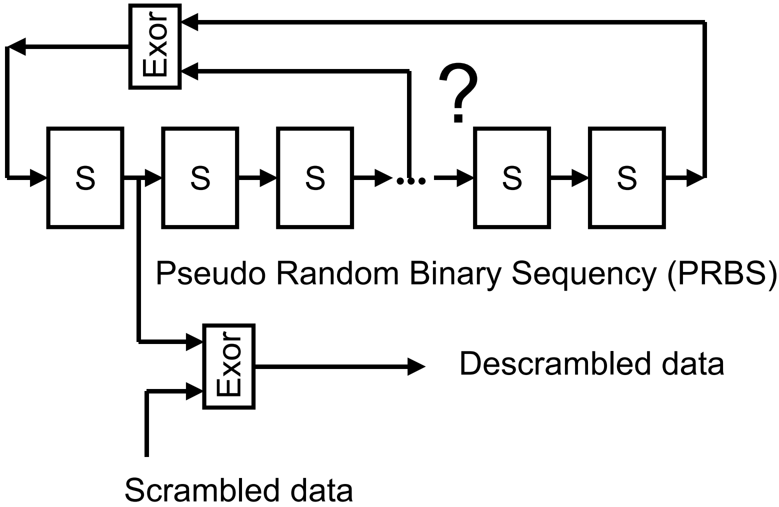


Fig. 3.17. Scrambling and descrambling by PRBS generator in the CA system and the receiver

3.5.5 Program Synchronization (PCR, DTS, PTS)

Once the PIDs for video and audio have been determined and any scrambled programs have been descrambled and the streams have been demultiplexed, video and audio PES packets are generated again. These are then supplied to the video and audio decoder. The actual decoding, however, requires a few more synchronization steps. The first step consists of linking the receiver clock to the transmitter clock. As indicated initially, the luminance signal is sampled at 13.5 MHz and the two chrominance signals are sampled at 6.75 MHz. 27 MHz is a multiple of these sampling frequencies, which is why this frequency is used as reference, or basic, frequency for all processing steps in the MPEG encoding at the transmitter end. A 27 MHz oscillator in the MPEG encoder feeds the “System Time Clock” (STC). The STC is essentially a 42 bit counter which is clocked by this same 27 MHz clock and starts again at zero after an overflow. The LSB positions do not go up to FFF but only to 300. Approximately every 26.5 hours the counter restarts at zero. At the receiving end, another system time clock (STC) must be provided, i.e. another 27 MHz oscillator connected to a 42 bit counter is needed. However, the frequency of this 27 MHz oscillator must be in complete synchronism with the transmitting end, and the 42 bit counter must also count in complete synchronism.

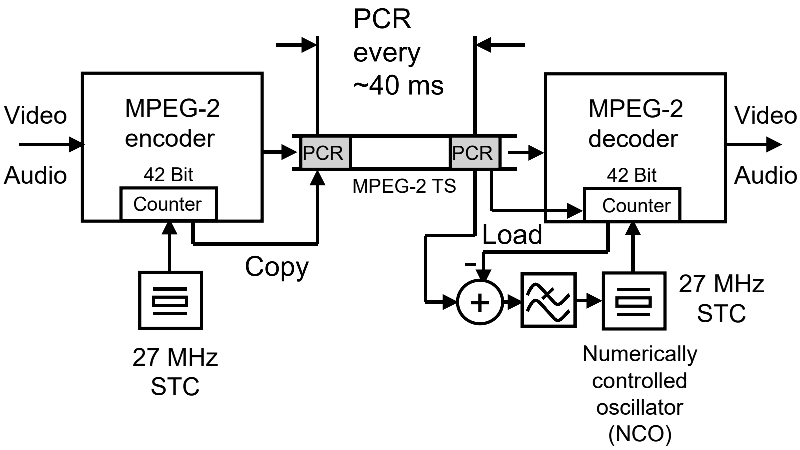


Fig. 3.18. Program Clock Reference

To accomplish this, reference information is transmitted in the MPEG data stream (Fig. 3.18.). In MPEG-2, these are the "Program Clock Reference" (PCR) values which are nothing else than an up-to-date copy of the STC counter fed into the transport stream at a certain time. The data stream thus carries an accurate internal "clock time". All coding and decoding processes are controlled by this clock time. To do this, the receiver, i.e. the MPEG decoder, must read out the "clock time", namely the PCR values, and compare them with its own internal system clock, that is to say its own 42 bit counter.

If the received PCR values are locked to the system clock in the decoder, the 27 MHz clock at the receiving end matches the transmitting end. If there is a deviation, a controlled variable for a PLL can be generated from the magnitude of the deviation, i.e. the oscillator at the receiving end can be corrected. In parallel, the 42 bit count is always reset to the received PCR value, a basic requirement for system initialization and in the event of a program change.

The PCR values must be present in sufficient numbers, that is to say with a maximum spacing, and relatively accurately, that is to say free of jitter. According to MPEG, the maximum spacing per program is 40 ms between individual PCR values. The PCR jitter must be less than ± 500 ns. In early time PCR problems manifest themselves in the first instance in that instead of a color picture, a black/white picture is displayed. PCR jitter problems can occur during the re-multiplexing of a transport stream, among other things. The reason is that e.g., the order of the transport stream packets is changed without the PCR information continued in them also being changed. There is frequently a PCR jitter of up to ± 30 µs even though only ± 500 ns is allowed. This can be handled by many decoders but not by all. The PCR information is transmitted in the adaptation field of a transport stream packet belonging to the corresponding program. The precise information about the type of TS packets in which this is done can be found in the corresponding program map table (PMT). The PMT contains the so-called PCR_PID which, however, corresponds to the video PID of the respective program in most cases. After program clock synchronization has been achieved, the video and audio coding steps are then executed in lock with the system time clock (STC).

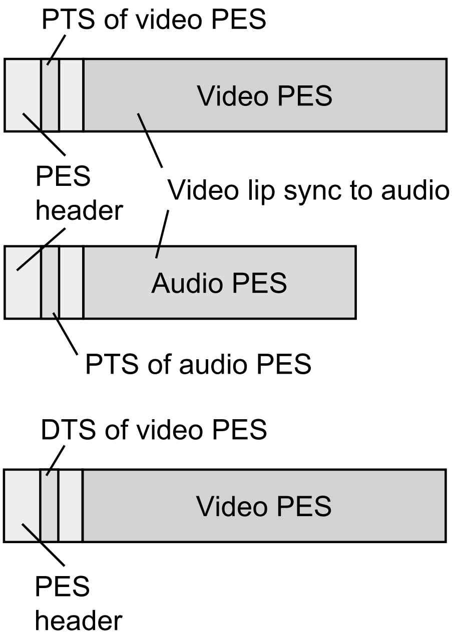


Fig. 3.19. PTS and DTS

However, another problem now presents itself. Video and audio must be decoded and reproduced with lip synchronization. In order to be able to achieve "lip sync", i.e. synchronization between video and audio, additional timing information is keyed into the headers of the video and audio PESs. This timing information is derived from the system time clock (STC, 42 bits). Using the 33 most significant bits (MSB) of the STC, these values are entered into the video and audio PES headers at maximum intervals of 700 ms and are called “Presentation Time Stamps” (PTS)

As will be seen later in the section on video coding, the order in which the compressed picture information is transmitted will differ from the order in which it is recorded. The frame sequence is now scrambled in conformity with certain coding rules, a necessary measure in order to save memory space in the decoder. To recover the original sequence, additional time stamps must be keyed into the video stream. These are called “Decoding Time Stamps” (DTS) and are also transmitted in the PES header.

An MPEG-2 decoder in a TV receiver is then able to decode the video and audio streams of a program, resulting again in video and audio signals, either in analog form or in digital form.

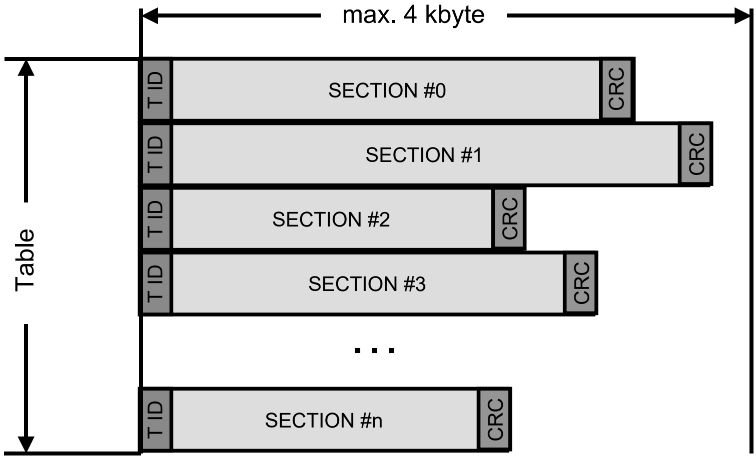


Fig. 3.20. Sections and tables

3.5.6 Additional Information in the Transport Stream (SI/PSI/PSIP)

According to MPEG, the information transmitted in the transport stream is fairly hardware-oriented, only relating to the absolute minimum requirements, as it were. However, this does not make the operation of a TV receiver particularly user-friendly. For example, it makes sense, and is necessary, to transmit program names for identification purposes. It is also desirable to simplify the search for adjacent physical transmission channels. It is also necessary to transmit electronic program guides (EPG) and time and date information. In this respect, both the European DVB Project group and the US ATSC Project group have defined additional information for the transmission of digital video and audio programs which is intended to simplify the operation of TV receivers and make it much more user-friendly.

3.5.7 Non-Private and Private Sections and Tables

To cope with any extensions, the MPEG Group has incorporated an "open door" in the MPEG-2 Standard. In addition to the "Program Specific Information" (PSI), the "Program Map Table" (PMT) and the "Conditional Access Table" (CAT), it created the possibility to incorporate so-called "private sections and private tables" (Fig. 3.20.) in the transport stream. The group has defined mechanisms which specify what a section or table has to look like, what its structure has to be and by what rules it is to be linked into the transport stream.

According to MPEG-2 Systems (ISO/IEC 13818-1), the following was specified for each type of table:

- A table is transmitted in the payload part of one or more transport stream packets with a special PID which is reserved for only this table (DVB) or some types of tables (ATSC).
- Each table begins with a table ID which is a special byte which identifies only this table alone. The table ID is the first payload byte of a table.
- Each table is subdivided into sections which are allowed to have a maximum size of 4 kbytes. Each section of a table is terminated with a 32-bit-long CRC checksum over the entire section.

The "Program Specific Information" (PSI) has exactly the same structure. The PAT has a PID of zero and begins with a table ID of zero. The PMT has the PIDs defined in the PAT as PID and has a table ID of 2. The CAT has a PID and a table ID of one in each case. The PSI can be composed of one or more transport stream packets for PAT, PMT and CAT depending on content.

Apart from the PSI tables PAT, PMT and CAT mentioned above, another table, the so-called "Network Information Table" (NIT) was provided in principle but not standardized in detail. It was actually implemented as part of the DVB (Digital Video Broadcasting) project.

All tables are implemented through the mechanism of sections. There are non-private and private sections (Fig. 3.21.). Non-private sections are defined in the original MPEG-2 Systems Standard. All others are correspondingly private. The non-private sections include the PSI tables and the private ones include the SI sections of DVB and the MPEG-2 DSM-CC (Digital Storage Media Command and Control) sections which are used for data broadcasting. The header of a table contains administration of the version number of a table and information about the number of sections of which a table is made up. A receiver must first of all scan through the header of these sections before it can evaluate the rest of the sections and tables. Naturally, all sections must be broken down from an original maximum length of 4 kbytes to maximally 148 bytes payload length of an MPEG-2 transport stream packet before they are transmitted.

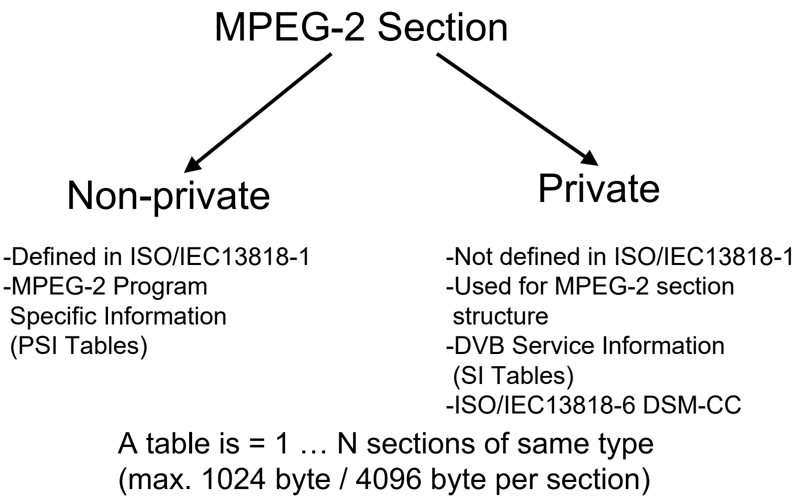


Fig. 3.21. Sections and tables according to MPEG-2

In the case of PSI/SI, the limit of the section length has been lowered to 1 kbyte in almost all tables, the only exception being the EIT (Event Information Table) which is used for transmitting the electronic program guide (EPG). The sections of the EIT can assume the maximum length of 4 kbytes because they carry a large amount of information as in the case of a week-long EPG.

If a section begins in a transport stream packet (Fig. 3.22.), the payload unit start indicator of its header is set to “1”. The TS header is then followed immediately by the pointer which points (in number of bytes) to the actual beginning of the section. In most cases (and always in the case of

PSI/SI), this pointer is set to zero which means that the section begins immediately after the pointer.

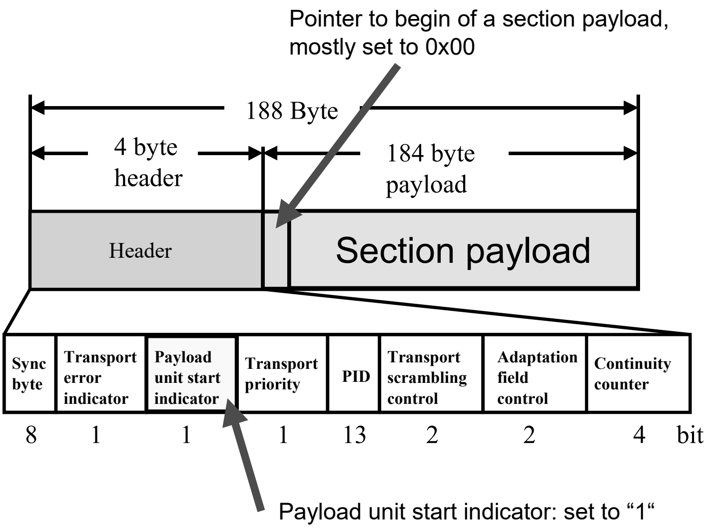


Fig. 3.22. Beginning of a section in an MPEG-2 transport stream packet

```
table_id                                8 Bit
section_syntax_indicator                1
private_indicator                       1
reserved                                2
section_length                          12
if (section_syntax_indicator == 0)
  table_body1() /* short table */
else
  table_body2() /* long table */
if (section_syntax_indicator == 1)
  CRC                                   32 Bit
```

Fig. 3.23. Structure of a section

If the pointer has a value which differs from zero, remainders of the preceding section can still be found in this transport stream packet. This is utilized for saving TS packets, an example being MPE (multi-protocol encapsulation) over DSM-CC sections in the case of IP over MPEG-2 (see DVB-H).

The structure of sections always follow the same plan (Fig. 3.23., Fig. 3.24.). A section begins with the table_ID, a byte which signals the type of table. The section_syntax_indicator bit indicates whether this is a short type of section (bit = 0) or a long one (bit = 1). If it is a long section, this is then followed by an extended header which contains, among other things, the version management of the section and its length and the number of the last section. The version number indicates if the content of the section has changed (e.g. in case of a dynamic PMT or if the program structure has changed). A long section is always concluded with a 32-bit-long CRC checksum over the entire section.

```
table_body1()
{
  for (i=0;i<N;i++)
    data_byte                         8 Bit
}
```

```
table_body2()
{
  table_id_extension                  16 Bit
  reserved                            2
  version_number                      5
  current_next_indicator              1
  section_number                      8
  last_section_number                 8

  for (i=0;i<N;i++)
    data_byte                         8 Bit
}
```

Fig. 3.24. Structure of the section payload

The detailed structure of a PAT and PMT can now also be understood more easily. A PAT (Fig. 3.25, Fig. 3.26) begins with the table_ID = 0x00. Its type is that of a non-private long table, i.e. the version management follows in the header. Since the information about the program structure to be transmitted is very short, a single section is virtually always sufficient (last_section_no = 0) and it also fits inside a transport packet. In the program loop, the program number and the associated program map ID are listed for each program. Program no. zero is a special exception, it informs about the PID of the later NIT (Network Information Table). The PAT is then concluded with the CRC checksum. There is one PAT per transport stream but it is repeated every 0.5 sec. In the header of the table, an unambiguous number, the transport stream_ID, is allocated to the transport stream via which it can be addressed in a network (e.g. a satellite network with many transport streams). The PAT does not contain any text information.

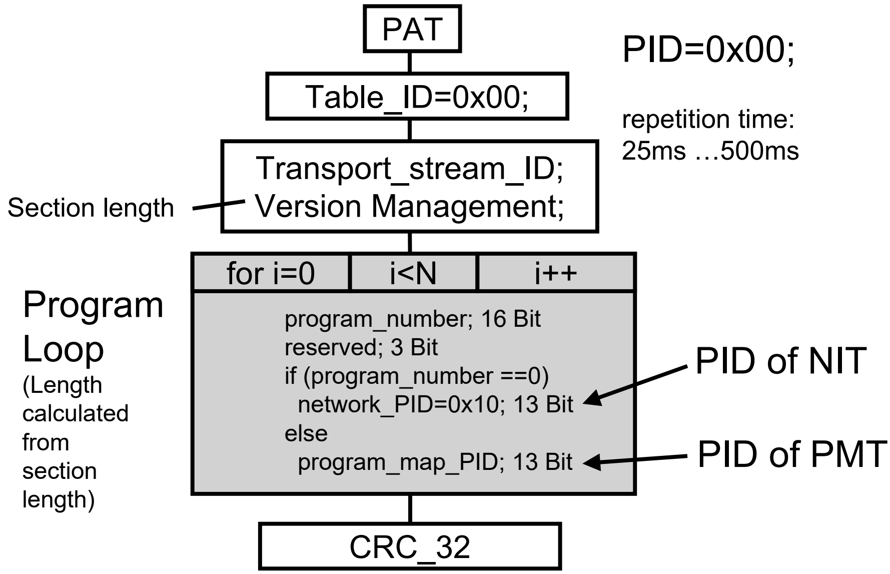
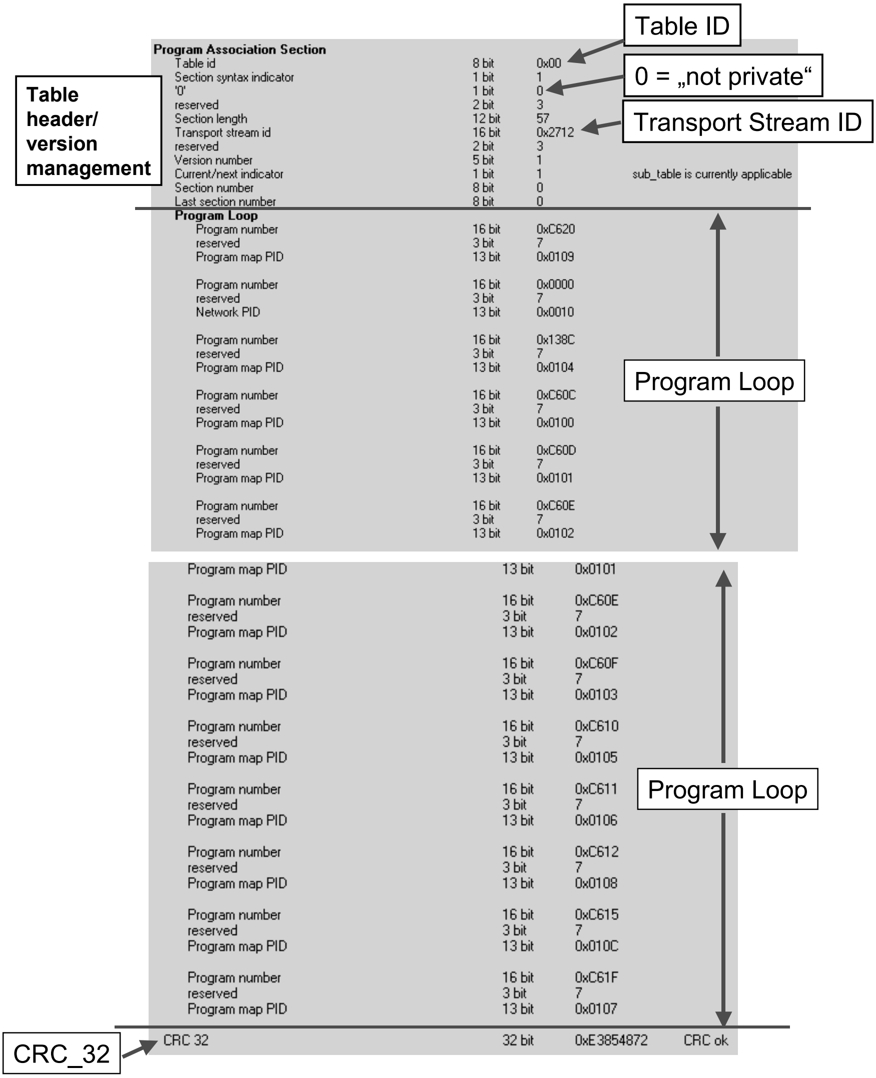


Fig. 3.25. Detailed structure of the PAT

The program map table (PMT) begins with the table_ID = 0x02. The PID is signalled via the PAT and is in the range of 0x20 ... 0x1FFE. The PMT is also a so-called non-private table with version management and concluding CRC checksum. The header of the PMT carries the program_no, already familiar from the PAT. The program_no in PAT and PMT must match, i.e. be equal.



Program Association Section			
Table id	8 bit	0x00	
Section syntax indicator	1 bit	1	
'0'	1 bit	0	
reserved	2 bit	3	
Section length	12 bit	57	
Transport stream id	16 bit	0x2712	
reserved	2 bit	3	
Version number	5 bit	1	
Current/next indicator	1 bit	1	sub_table is currently applicable
Section number	8 bit	0	
Last section number	8 bit	0	
Program Loop			
Program number	16 bit	0xC620	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0109	
Program number	16 bit	0x0000	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Network PID	13 bit	0x0010	
Program number	16 bit	0x138C	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0104	
Program number	16 bit	0xC60C	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0100	
Program number	16 bit	0xC60D	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0101	
Program number	16 bit	0xC60E	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0102	

Program map PID	13 bit	0x0101	
Program number	16 bit	0xC60E	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0102	
Program number	16 bit	0xC60F	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0103	
Program number	16 bit	0xC610	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0105	
Program number	16 bit	0xC611	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0106	
Program number	16 bit	0xC612	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0108	
Program number	16 bit	0xC615	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x010C	
Program number	16 bit	0xC61F	
reserved	3 bit	7	
Program map PID	13 bit	0x0107	
CRC 32	32 bit	0xE3854872	CRC ok

Fig. 3.26. Details of the Program Association Table (practical example)

The header of the PMT is followed by the program_info_loop into which various descriptors can be inserted as required which describe program components in more detail. It does not have to be utilized, however. The actual program components like video, audio or teletext are identified via the stream loop which contains the entries for the respective stream type and the PID of the elementary stream.

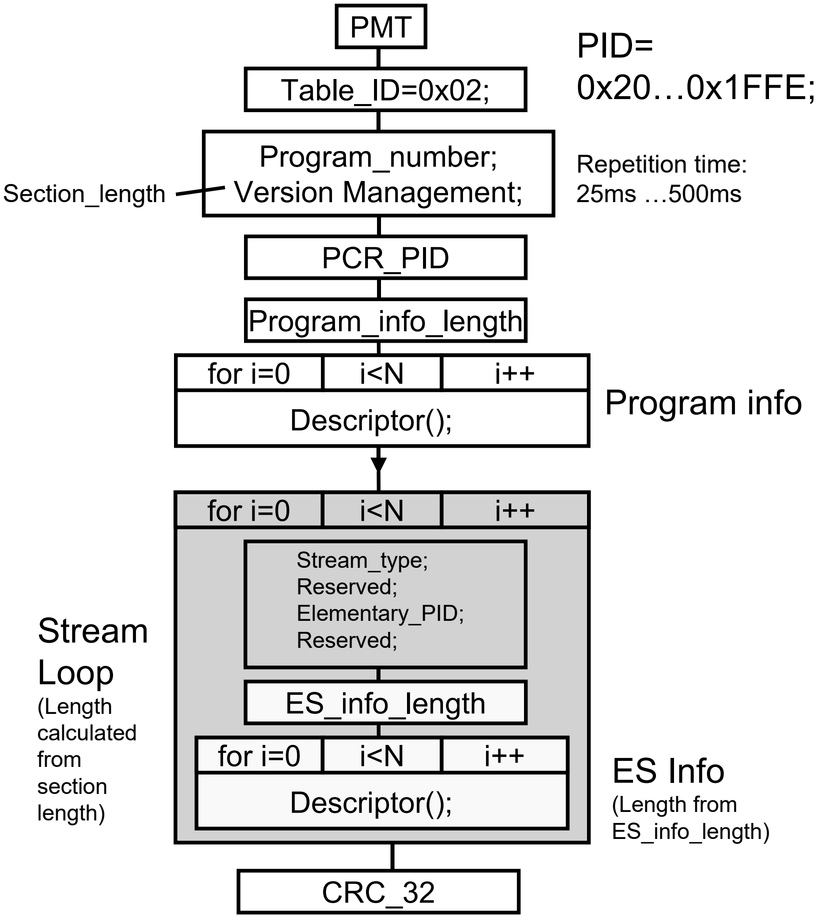


Fig. 3.27. Detailed structure of the Program Map Table

It is possible to include a number of descriptors for each program component in the ES_info_loop. There is one PMT for each program and it is sent out every 0.5 sec. There is no text information in the PMT, either.

Fig. 3.28. shows an actual example of the structure of a Program Map Table, which is quite short in this case. It will be discussed in more detail as representative of many other tables following. The example, recorded with an MPEG-2 analyzer, shows that the PMT begins with the table ID 0x02, a byte which clearly identifies it as such.

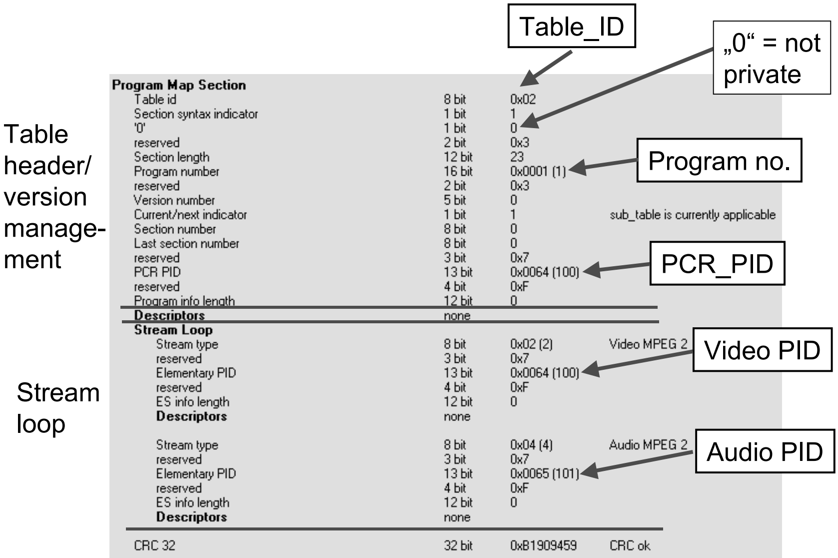


Fig. 3.28. Details of the Program Map Table (practical example)

The section syntax indicator bit is set to “1” and tells one that this is a long table with version management. The subsequent bit is set to “0” and identifies this table as a so/called non/private MPEG table. The section length says how long this current section of this table happens to be, namely 23 bytes long in this case. The field of the table_ID extension contains the program number; there must also be a corresponding entry in the PAT. The version number and the current/next indicator signal a change in the program map table. This information must be continuously checked by a receiver which must respond to a change in the program structure (dynamic PMT) if necessary. The section number tells what section this happens to be and the Last Section No informs about the number of the last section of a table. It is set to zero in this case, i.e. the table consists of only one section.

The PCR_PID (program clock reference–packet identifier) provides the PID on which the PCR value is broadcast. This is the video PID in most cases.

There should now be a program_info_loop but there is none in this example, a fact which is signalled by the length indicator "program_info_length = 0.

However, the stream loop provides information about the video and audio PID. The stream type (see Table 3.4.) shows the type of payload, namely MPEG-2 video and MPEG-2 audio in this case.

Table 3.4. Stream types of the Program Map Table

Value	Description
0x00	ITU-T/ISO/IEC reserved
0x01	ISO/IEC 11172 MPEG-1 video
0x02	ITU-T H.262 / ISO/IEC13818-2 MPEG-2 video
0x03	ISO/IEC 11172 MPEG-1 audio
0x04	ISO/IEC 13818-3 MPEG-2 audio
0x05	ITU-T H222.0 / ISO/IEC 13818-1 private sections
0x06	ITU-T H.222.0 / ISO/IEC 13818-1 PES packets containing private data
0x07	ISO/IEC 13522 MHEG
0x08	ITU-T H.222.0 /ISO/IEC 13818-1 annex A DSM-CC
0x09	ITU-T H.222.1
0x0A	ISO/IEC 13818-6 DSM-CC type A
0x0B	ISO/IEC 13818-6 DSM-CC type B
0x0C	ISO/IEC 13818-6 DSM-CC type C
0x0D	ISO/IEC 13818-6 DSM-CC type D
0x0E	ISO/IEC 13818-1 auxiliary
0x0F-0x7F	ITU-T H.222.0 / ISO/IEC 13818-1 reserved
0x80-0xFF	User private

3.5.8 The Service Information according to DVB (SI)

Taking advantage of the "private section" and "private table" features, the European DVB Group has introduced numerous additional tables intended to simplify the operation of the set-top boxes or quite generally of the DVB receivers. Called "Service Information" (SI), they are defined in ETSI Standard ETS300468.

They are the following tables (Fig. 3.29.): the "Network Information Table" (NIT), the "Service Descriptor Table" (SDT), the "Bouquet Association Table" (BAT), the "Event Information Table" (EIT), the "Running Status Table" (RST), the "Time&Date Table" (TDT), the "Time Offset

Table" (TOT) and, finally, the "Stuffing Table" (ST). These eight tables will now be described in more detail.

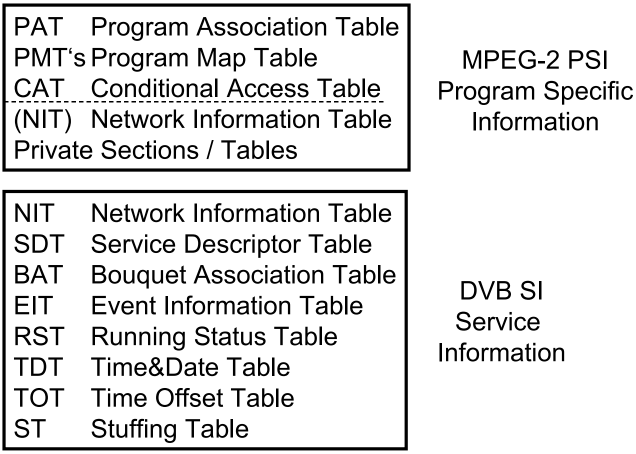


Fig. 3.29. MPEG-2 PSI and DVB SI

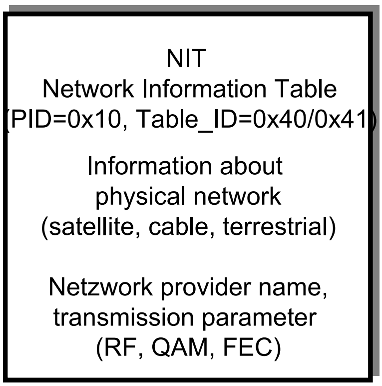


Fig. 3.30. Network Information Table (NIT)

The "Network Information Table" (NIT) (Fig. 3.30., Fig. 3.31., Fig. 3.32.) describes all physical parameters of a DVB transmission channel. It contains, e.g. the received frequency and the type of transmission (satellite, cable, terrestrial) and also all the technical data of the transmission, i.e. error protection, type of modulation etc.. This table has the purpose of optimizing the channel scan as much as possible. A TV receiver is able to store all the parameters of a physical channel when scanning during setup, and it is possible, e.g. to broadcast information about all available physical channels within a network (e.g. satellite, cable), making it possible to do away with the actual physical search for channels.

The NIT contains the following information:

- Transmission path (satellite, cable, terrestrial)
- Received frequency
- Type of modulation
- Error protection
- Transmission parameters

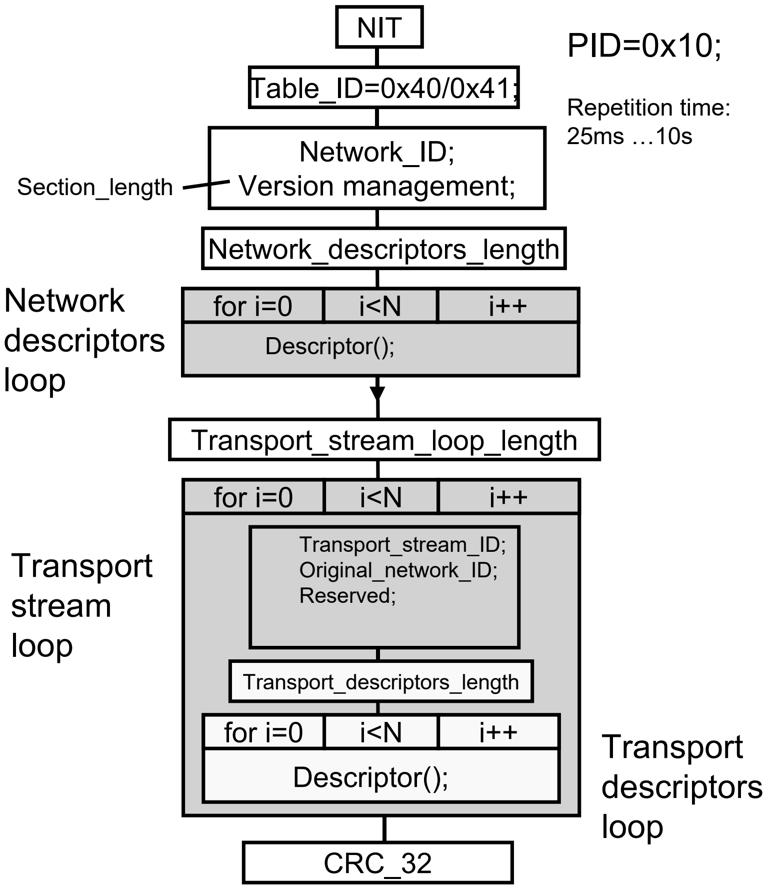


Fig. 3.31. Structure of the Network Information Table (NIT)

The important factor in relation to the NIT is that many TV receivers may behave in a “peculiar” manner if the transmission parameters in the NIT do not match the actual transmission. If, e.g. the transmit frequency given in the NIT does not correspond to the actual received frequency, many receivers, without any indication of reasons, may simply refuse to reproduce any picture or sound.

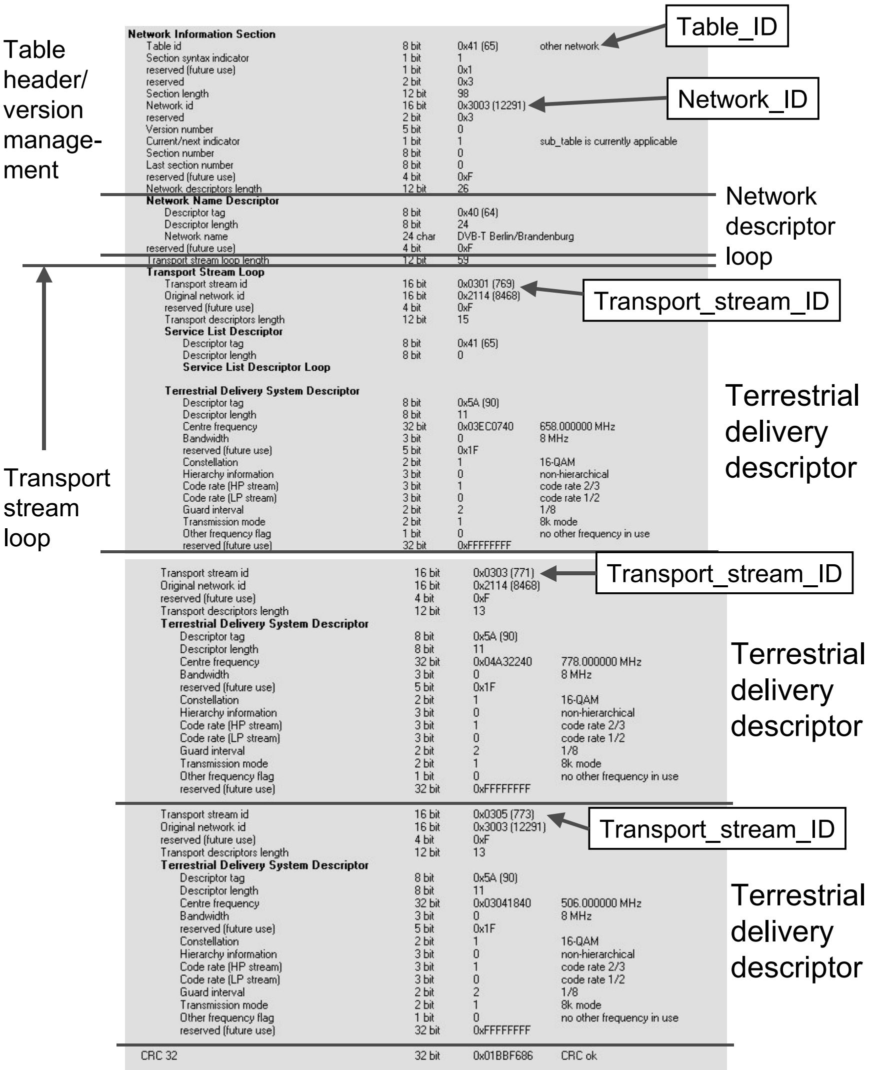


Fig. 3.32. Practical example of a Network Information Table (NIT)

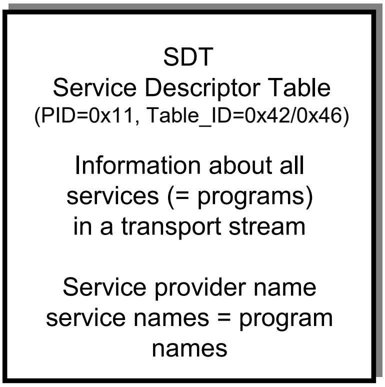


Fig. 3.33. Service Descriptor Table (SDT)

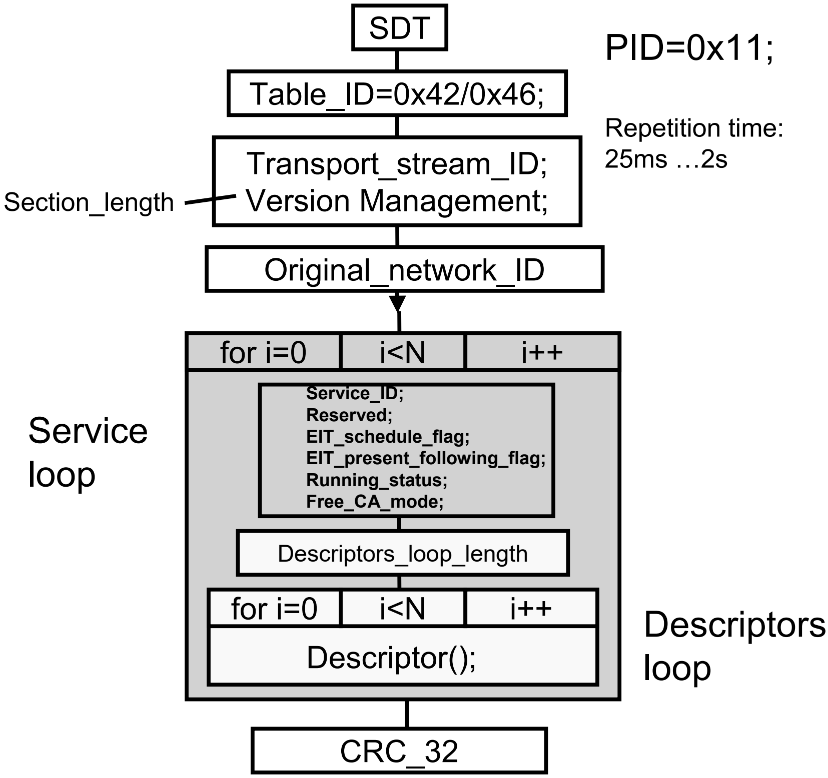


Fig. 3.34. Structure of the Service Descriptor Table (SDT)

The “Service Descriptor Table” (SDT) contains more detailed descriptions of the programs carried in the transport stream, the “services”. Among other things, these are the program titles such as, e.g. “CNN”, “CBS”, “Eurosport”, “ARD”, “ZDF”, “BBC”, “ITN” etc.. That is to say, in parallel with the program PIDs entered in the PAT, the SDT now contains textual information for the user. This is intended to facilitate the operation of the receiving device by providing lists of text.

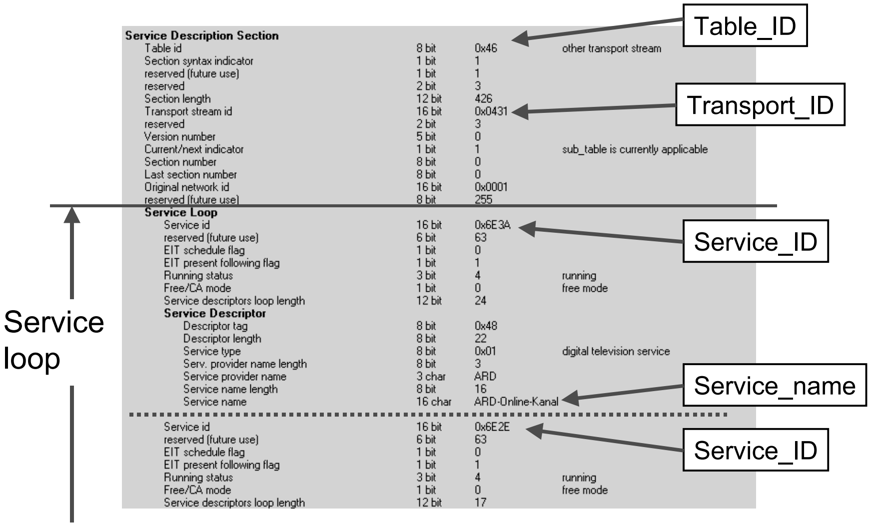


Fig. 3.35. Practical Example of an SDT

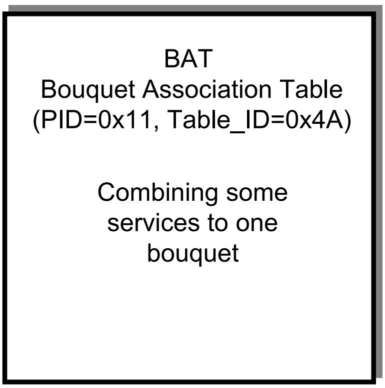


Fig. 3.36. Bouquet Association Table

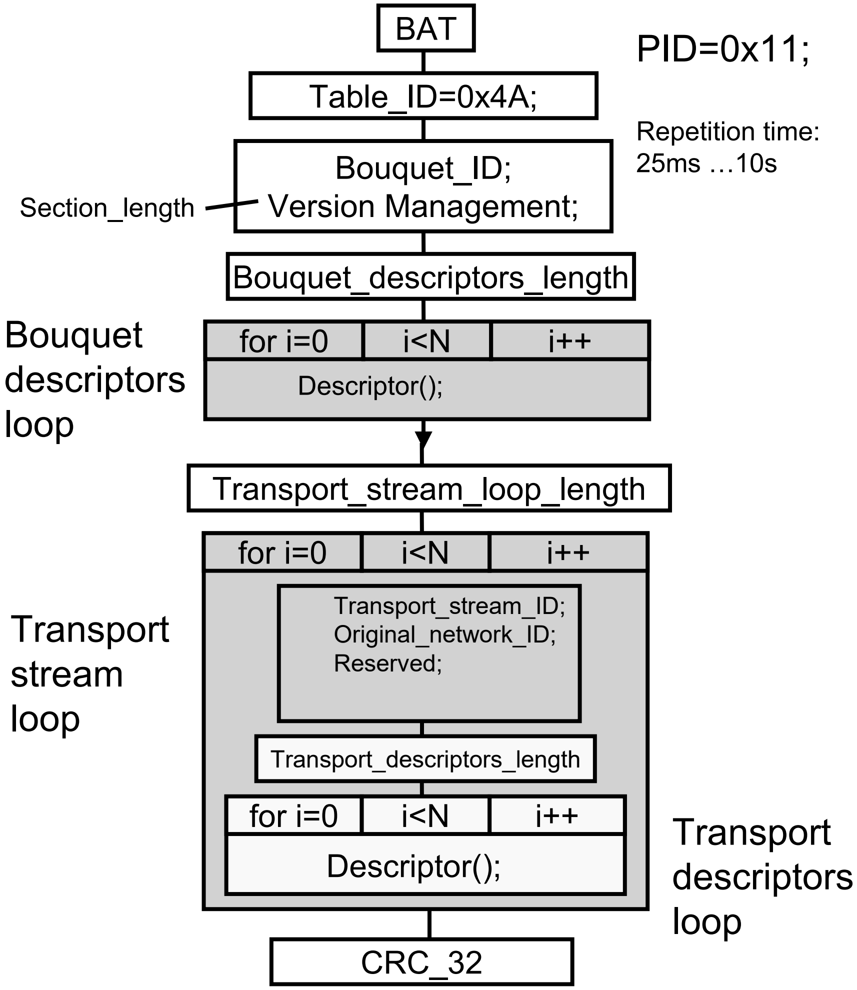


Fig. 3.37. Structure of a Bouquet Association Table (BAT)

A close relative of the Service Descriptor Table is the "Bouquet Association Table" (BAT). SDT and BAT have the same PID and differ only in the table ID. Whereas the SDT describes the program structure of one physical channel, a BAT describes the program structure of several physical channels or of a large number of physical channels.

The BAT is thus nothing else than a multi-channel program table. It provides an overview of all services contained in a group. Program providers can make use of e.g. an entire bouquet of physical channels if a single channel is insufficient for transmitting the complete range of programs provided. An example of this is the pay TV provider “Sky”. A handful of satellite or cable DVB channels are combined here to form a bouquet of this provider’s channels. The associated BAT is transmitted in all individual channels and links this bouquet together.

In fact, however, a bouquet association table is found very rarely in a transport stream. Broadcasters in Germany, and Premiere were broadcasting a BAT for their respective bouquet and sometimes a BAT can be found in networks of cable network providers.

But frequently, the BAT doesn’t exist at all, as already mentioned. When it does exist, it tells by way of so-called linkage descriptors which service of a particular service ID can be found in which transport streams.

Many providers are also transmitting an “electronic program guide” (EPG) which has its own table in DVB, the so-called “event information table”, or EIT for short (Fig. 3.38. and 3.39.). It contains the planned starting and stopping times of all broadcasts of, e.g. one day or one week. The structure which is possible here is very flexible and also allows any amount of additional information to be transmitted. Unfortunately it is true that this feature is not supported by all TV receivers, or only inadequately so.

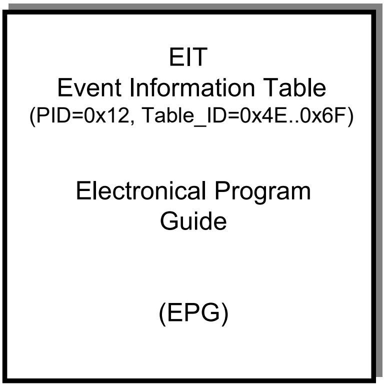


Fig. 3.38. EIT

Frequently, however, there are variations and delays in the planned starting and stopping times of broadcasts. To be able to start and stop, e.g. a video recorder at a given time, the relevant control information is transmitted in the “Running Status Table” (RST). The RST can thus be compared to the VPS (video program system) signal in the data line of an analog TV signal. The RST is currently not being used in practice, or, at least, has not been found by the author in a transport stream anywhere in the world, excepting "synthetic" transport streams. Instead, the data line containing the VPS has been adapted within DVB for controlling video recorders and similar recording media.

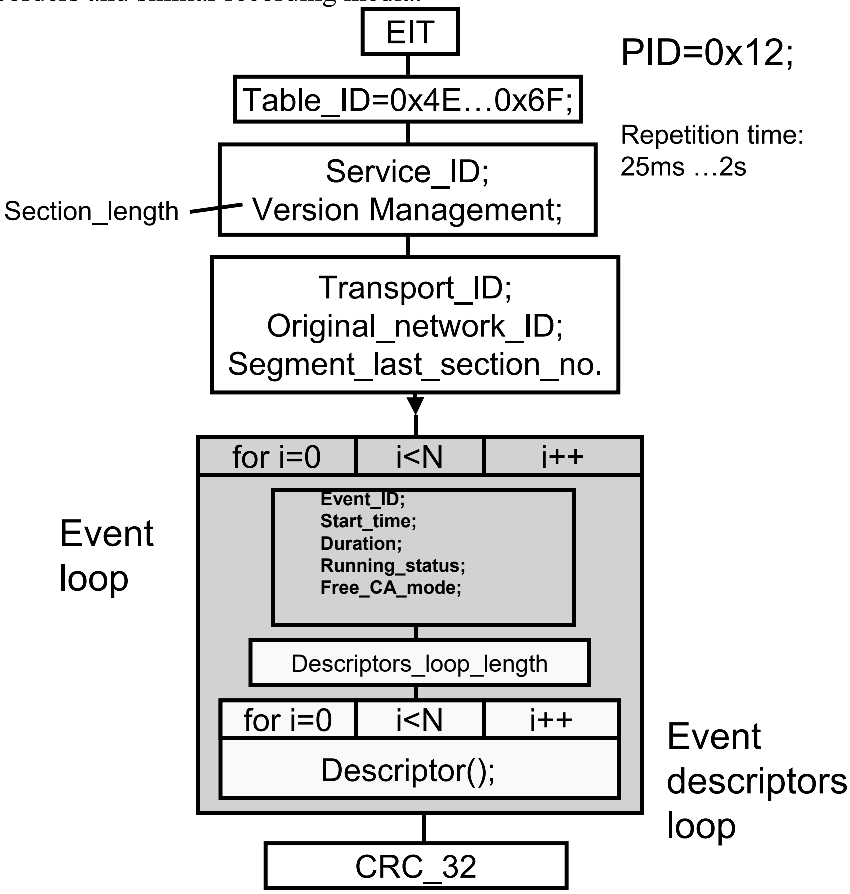
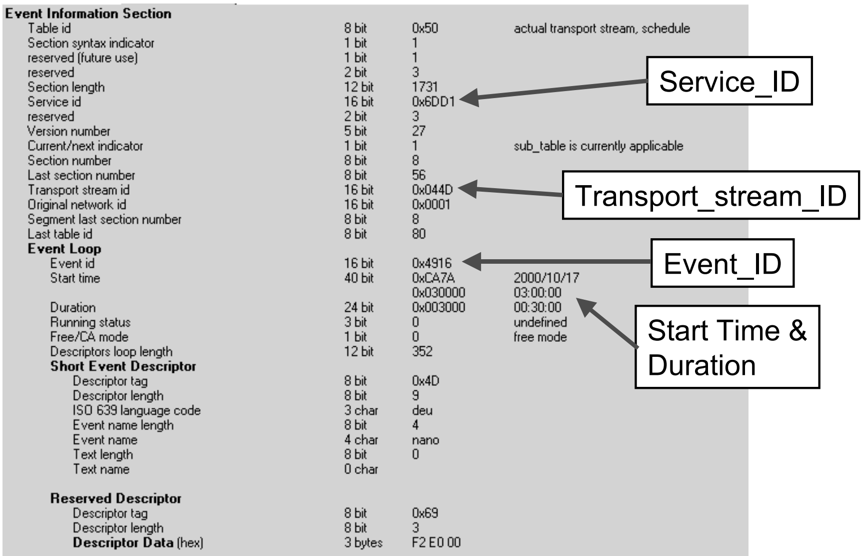


Fig. 3.39. Structure of the Event Information Table (EIT)

The operation of the TV receiver also requires the transmission of the current clock time and the current date. This is done in two stages. In the "Time&Date Table" (TDT) (Fig. 3.42. and 3.43.), Greenwich Mean Time (GMT or UTC), i.e. the current clock time on the Zero-Degree meridian without any daylight saving time shift is transmitted. The respective applicable time offsets can then be broadcast in a "Time Offset Table" (TOT) (Fig. 3.42. and 3.43.) for the various time zones. It depends on the software of the TV receiver how the information contained in the TDT and TOT is evaluated, and to what extent. Complete support for this broadcast time information would require the TV receiver to be informed of its current location and in a country having a number of time zones such as Australia, especially, more attention should be paid to this point.

It may sometimes be necessary to cancel certain information, especially tables in the transport stream. After a DVB-S signal has been received in a CATV head station, it can quite easily happen that, e.g. the NIT must be exchanged or overwritten or that individual programs must be rendered unusable for relaying. This can be done by means of the “stuffing table” (ST) (Fig. 3.44.) which enables information in the transport stream to be overwritten. This happened especially at the beginning of the digital TV age.



Event Information Section			
Table id	8 bit	0x50	actual transport stream, schedule
Section syntax indicator	1 bit	1	
reserved (future use)	1 bit	1	
reserved	2 bit	3	
Section length	12 bit	1731	
Service id	16 bit	0x6DD1	
reserved	2 bit	3	
Version number	5 bit	27	
Current/next indicator	1 bit	1	sub_table is currently applicable
Section number	8 bit	8	
Last section number	8 bit	56	
Transport stream id	16 bit	0x044D	
Original network id	16 bit	0x0001	
Segment last section number	8 bit	8	
Last table id	8 bit	80	
Event Loop			
Event id	16 bit	0x4916	
Start time	40 bit	0xCA7A 0x030000	2000/10/17 03:00:00
Duration	24 bit	0x003000	00:30:00
Running status	3 bit	0	undefined
Free/CA mode	1 bit	0	free mode
Descriptors loop length	12 bit	352	
Short Event Descriptor			
Descriptor tag	8 bit	0x4D	
Descriptor length	8 bit	9	
ISO 639 language code	3 char	deu	
Event name length	8 bit	4	
Event name	4 char	nano	
Text length	8 bit	0	
Text name	0 char		
Reserved Descriptor			
Descriptor tag	8 bit	0x69	
Descriptor length	8 bit	3	
Descriptor Data (hex)	3 bytes	F2 E0 00	

Fig. 3.40. Event Information Table (practical example)

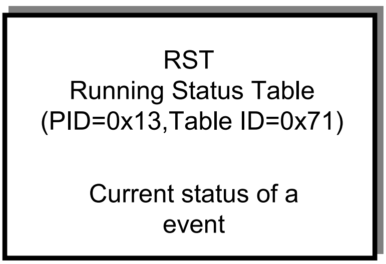


Fig. 3.41. Running Status Table (RST)

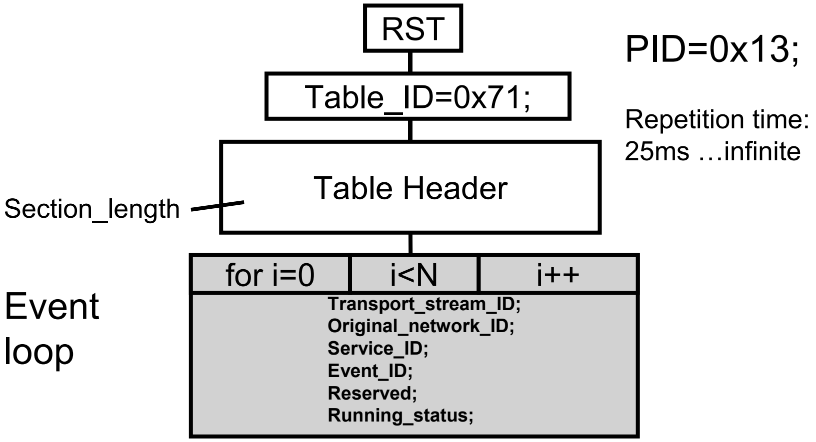


Fig. 3.42. Structure of the Running Status Table (RST)

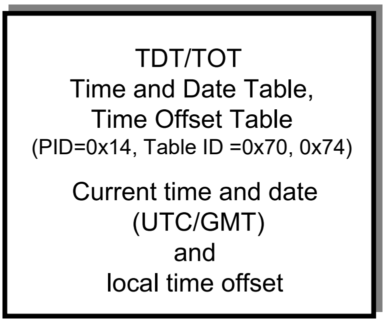


Fig. 3.43. Time and Date Table (TDT) and Time Offset Table (TOT)

The PIDs and the table IDs for the service information have been permanently allocated within DVB in Table 3.5.

The PSI/SI tables are linked to one another via the most varied identifiers (Fig. 3.46.). These are both PIDs and special, table-dependent identifiers. In the PAT, the PMT_PIDs are chained together by way of the prog_no. To each prog_no, a PMT_PID is allocated which refers to a transport stream packet with the corresponding PMT of this associated program. The prog_no can then also be found in the header of the respective PMT. Prog_no = 0 is allocated to the NIT where the PID of the NIT can be found.

Time and Date Section			
Table id	8 bit	0x70	
Section syntax indicator	1 bit	0	
reserved (future use)	1 bit	1	
reserved	2 bit	3	
Section length	12 bit	5	
UTC time	40 bit	0xCA79 0x105827	2000/10/16 10:58:27
Time Offset Section			
Table id	8 bit	0x73 (115)	
Section syntax indicator	1 bit	0	
reserved (future use)	1 bit	0x1	
reserved	2 bit	0x3	
Section length	12 bit	26	
UTC time	40 bit	0xCA79 0x112519	2000/10/16 11:25:19
reserved	4 bit	0xF	
Descriptors loop length	12 bit	15	
Local Time Offset Descriptor			
Descriptor tag	8 bit	0x58 (88)	
Descriptor length	8 bit	13	
Country Loop			
Country code	3 char	DEU	
Country region id	6 bit	0	no time zone extension used
reserved	1 bit	0x1	
Local time offset polarity	1 bit	0	local time is advanced to UTC
Local time offset	16 bit	0x0200	02:00
Time of change	40 bit	0xCA86 0x030000	2000/10/29 03:00:00
Next time offset	16 bit	0x0100	01:00
CRC 32	32 bit	0xD49C603D	CRC ok

Fig. 3.44. Example of a Time and Date Table (TDT and Time Offset Table (TOT)

ST
Stuffing Table
(Table ID=0x72)

Cancellation
of sections
and tables in a
distribution network

e.g. at cable headends

Fig. 3.45. Stuffing Table (ST)

Table 3.5. PIDs and table IDs of the PSI/SI tables

Table	PID	Table_ID
PAT	0x0000	0x00
PMT	0x0020...0x1FFE	0x02
CAT	0x0001	0x01
NIT	0x0010	0x40...0x41
BAT	0x0011	0x4A
SDT	0x0011	0x42, 0x46
EIT	0x0012	0x4E...0x6F
RST	0x0013	0x71
TDT	0x0014	0x70
TOT	0x0014	0x73
ST	0x0010...0x0014	0x72

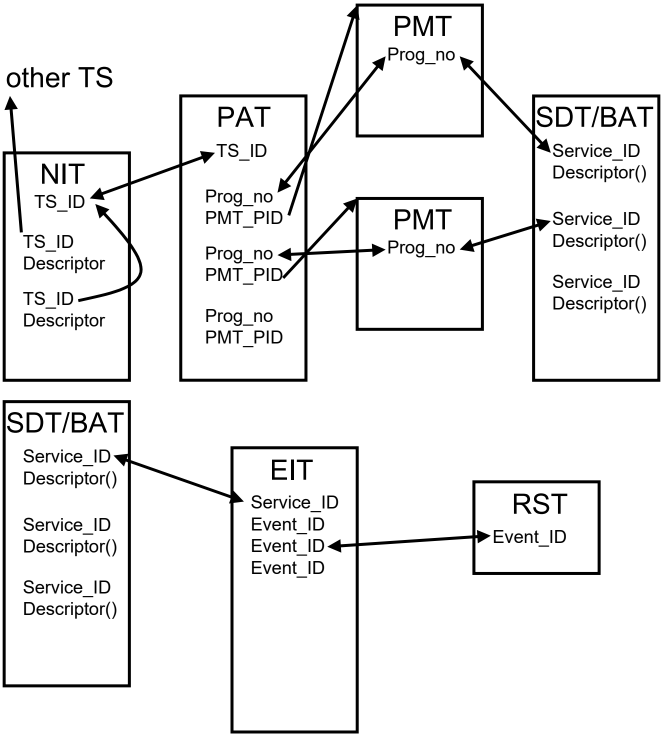


Fig. 3.46. Links between the PSI/SI tables

In the NIT, the physical parameters of all transport streams of a network are described via their TS_IDs. A TS_ID corresponds to the current transport stream; precisely this TS_ID can be found in the header of the PAT at the position of the Table ID extension.

The services (= programs) contained in this transport stream are listed in the service descriptor table via the service IDs. The service IDs must correspond to the prog_no in the PAT and in the PMTs.

This is continued in the EIT: there is an EIT for every service. In the header of the EIT, the table_ID_extension corresponds to the service_ID of the associated program. In the EIT, the events are associated with these by way of event_IDs. If there are associated RSTs, then these are chained to the respective RST via these event_IDs.

Table 3.6. Repetition rates of the PSI/SI tables according to MPEG/DVB

PSI/SI table	Max. interval (complete table)	Min. interval (single sections)
PAT	0.5 s	25 ms
CAT	0.5 s	25 ms
PMT	0.5 s	25 ms
NIT	10 s	25 ms
SDT	2 s	25 ms
BAT	10 s	25 ms
EIT	2 s	25 ms
RST	-	25 ms
TDT	30 s	25 ms
TOT	30 s	25 ms

The repetition rates of the PSI/SI tables are regulated through MPEG-2 Systems [ISO&IEC 13818/1] and DVB/SI [ETS 300468] (Table 3.6)

3.6 The PSIP according to the ATSC

In the US, a separate standard was specified for digital terrestrial and cable TV. This is the ATSC standard, where ATSC stands for Advanced Television System Committee. During the work on the ATSC standard, the decision was made to use the MPEG-2 transport stream with MPEG-2 video and AC-3 Dolby Digital audio as the baseband signal. The type of modulation used is 8 or 16VSB. In addition, it was recognized that other tables going beyond PSI are needed. Like the SI tables in DVB, ATSC, therefore, has the PSIP tables, listed below and described in more detail in the text which follows.

PAT	Program Association Table	MPEG-2 PSI Program Specific Information
PMTs	Program Map Table	
CAT	Conditional Access Table	
Private Tables		

MGT	Master Guide Table	ATSC PSIP Program and System Information Protocol
EIT	Event Information Table	
ETT	Extended Text Table	
STT	System Time Table	
RTT	Rating Region Table	
CVCT	Cable Virtual Channel Table	
TVCT	Terrestrial Virtual Channel Table	

Fig. 3.47. ATSC PSIP tables

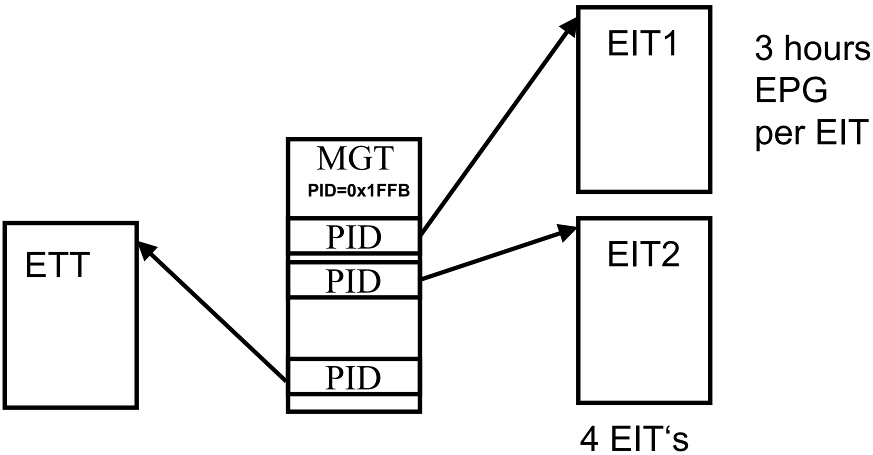


Fig. 3.48. Referencing the PSIP in the MGT

PSIP stands for "Program and System Information Protocol" and is nothing else than another way of representing similar information to that given in the previous section on DVB SI. In ATSC, the following tables are used: the Master Guide Table (MGT) (Fig. 3.47.), the Event Information Table (EIT), the Extended Text Table (ETT), the System Time Table (STT), the Rating Region Table (RRT), and the Cable Virtual Channel Table (CVCT) or the Terrestrial Virtual Channel Table (TVCT).

According to ATSC, the PSI tables defined in MPEG-2 and provided in the MPEG Standard are used for accessing the video and audio streams, i.e. the transport stream carries one PAT and several PMTs. The conditional access information is also referenced via a CAT.

The actual ATSC tables are implemented as "private tables". The Master Guide Table, the main table, so to say, contains the PIDs for some of these ATSC tables. The Master Guide Table can be recognized by the packet ID = 0x1FFB and the table ID = 0xC7. The transport stream must contain at least four Event Information Tables (EIT-0, EIT-1, EIT-2, EIT-3) and the PIDs for these EITs are found in the Master Guide Table. Up to 128 further Event Information Tables are possible but are optional. An EIT contains a 3-hour section of an electronic program guide (EPG). Together with the 4 mandatory EITs, it is thus possible to cover a period of 12 hours. Furthermore, Extended Text Tables can be optionally accessed through the MGT. Each existing Extended Text Table (ETT) is allocated to one EIT. Thus, e.g. ETT-0 contains extended text information for EIT-0. It is possible to have up to a total of 128 ETTs.

Table 3.7. PSIP tables

Table	PID	Table ID
Program Association Table (PAT)	0x0	0x0
Program Map Table (PMT)	über PAT	0x2
Conditional Access Table (CAT)	0x1	0x1
Master Guide Table (MGT)	0x1FFB	0xC7
Terrestrial Virtual Channel Table (TVCT)	0x1FFB	0xC8
Cable Virtual Channel Table (CVCT)	0x1FFB	0xC9
Rating Region Table (RRT)	0x1FFB	0xCA
Event Information Table (EIT)	über PAT	0xCB
Extended Text Table (ETT)	über PAT	0xCC
System Time Table (STT)	0x1FFB	0xCD

In the Virtual Channel Table, which can be present either as Terrestrial Virtual Channel Table (TVCT) or as Cable Virtual Channel Table (CVCT) depending on the transmission path, identification information for the virtual channels, i.e. programs, contained in a multiplexed transport stream are transmitted. The VCT contains, among other things, the program names. The VCT is thus comparable to the SDT table in DVB.

In the System Time Table (STT), all the necessary time information is transmitted. The STT can be recognized by the packet ID = 0x1FFB and the table ID = 0xCD. In the STT, the GPS (Global Positioning System) time and the time difference between GPS time and UTC (Universal Time Coordinated (= GMT)) is transmitted. The Rating Region Table (RRT) can be used for restricting the size of the audience in terms of age or region. In addition to the information about region (e.g. a Federal State in the US), information relating to the minimum age set for the program currently being broadcast is also included. Using the RRT, a type of parental lock can thus be implemented in the TV receiver. The RRT is recognized by the packet ID = 0x1FFB and the table ID = 0xCA.

The PIDs and Table IDs of the PSIP tables are listed in Table 3.7.

3.7 ARIB Tables according to ISDB-T

Like DVB (Digital Video Broadcasting) and ATSC (Advanced Television Systems Committee), Japan, too, has defined its own tables in its ISDB-T (Integrated Services Digital Broadcasting – Terrestrial) standard. These are called ARIB (Association of Radio Industries and Business) tables according to ARIB Std. B.10.

According to the ARIB standard, the following tables are proposed:

Table 3.8. ARIB tables

Type	Name	Note
PAT	Program Association Table	ISO/IEC 13818-1 MPEG-2
PMT	Program Map Table	ISO/IEC 13818-1 MPEG-2
CAT	Conditional Access Table	ISO/IEC 13818-1 MPEG-2
NIT	Network Information Table	like DVB-SI, ETS 300468
SDT	Service Description Table	like DVB-SI, ETS 300468
BAT	Bouquet Association Table	like DVB-SI, ETS 300468
EIT	Event Information Table	like DVB-SI, ETS 300468
RST	Running Status Table	like DVB-SI, ETS 300468
TDT	Time&Date Table	like DVB-SI, ETS 300468
TOT	Time Offset Table	like DVB-SI, ETS 300468
LIT	Local Event Information Table	
ERT	Event Relation Table	
ITT	Index Transmission Table	
PCAT	Partial Content Announcement Table	
ST	Stuffing Table	like DVB-SI, ETS 300468
BIT	Broadcaster Information Table	
NBIT	Network Board Information Table	

LDT and others	Linked Description Table
ECM	Entitlement Control Message
EMM	Entitlement Management Message
DCT	Download Control Table
DLT	Download Table
SIT	Selection Information Table
SDTT	Software Download Trigger Table
DSM-CC	Digital Storage Media Command & Control

Table 3.9. PID's and table IDs of the ARIB tables

Table	PID	Table ID
PAT	0x0000	0x00
CAT	0x0001	0x01
PMT	über PAT	0x02
DSM-CC	über PMT	0x3A...0x3E
NIT	0x0010	0x40, 0x41
SDT	0x0011	0x42, 0x46
BAT	0x0011	0x4A
EIT	0x0012	0x4E...0x6F
TDT	0x0014	0x70
RST	0x0013	0x71
ST	all except 0x0000, 0x0001, 0x0014	0x72
TOT	0x0014	0x73
DIT	0x001E	0x7E
SIT	0x001F	0x7F
ECM	via PMT	0x82...0x83
EMM	via CAT	0x84...0x85
DCT	0x0017	0xC0
DLT	via DCT	0xC1
PCAT	0x0022	0xC2
SDTT	0x0023	0xC3
BIT	0x0024	0xC4
NBIT	0x0025	0xC5, 0xC6
LDT	0x0025	0xC7
LIT	via PMT or 0x0020	0xD0

The BAT, PMT and CAT tables fully correspond to the MPEG-2 PSI. Similarly, the NIT, SDT, BAT, EIT, RST, TDT. TOT and ST tables have exactly the same structure as in DVB SI and also have the same functionality. The ARIB Standard thus also makes reference to ETSI 300468.

3.8 DTMB (China) Tables

China, too, have their own digital terrestrial television standard named DTMB – Digital Terrestrial Multimedia Broadcasting. It can be assumed that there is also an independent or modified or copied table of comparable significance to DVB-SI but there have been no publications regarding what modifications, if any, were made (… maybe in Chinese language …).

3.9 Other Important Details of the MPEG-2 Transport Stream

In the section below, other details of the MPEG-2 transport stream will be discussed in more detail.

Apart from the sync bytes (synchronization to the transport stream) already mentioned, the transport stream error indicator and the packet identifier (PID), the transport stream header also contains:

- Payload Unit Start Indicator
- Transport Priority
- Transport Scrambling Control
- Adaptation Field Control
- Continuity Counter

The Payload Unit Start Indicator is a bit which marks the start of a payload. If this bit is set, it means that a new payload is starting in this transport stream packet: this transport stream packet contains either the start of a video or audio PES packet plus PES header, or the beginning of a table plus table ID as the first byte in the payload part of the transport stream packet.

3.9.1 The Transport Priority

This bit indicates that this transport stream packet has a higher priority than other TS packets with the same PID.

3.9.2 The Transport Scrambling Control Bits

The two Transport Scrambling Control Bits show whether the payload part of a TS packet is scrambled or not. If both bits are set to zero, this means that the payload section is transmitted unscrambled. If one of the two bits is not zero, the payload is transmitted scrambled. A Conditional Access Table is then needed to descramble the payload.

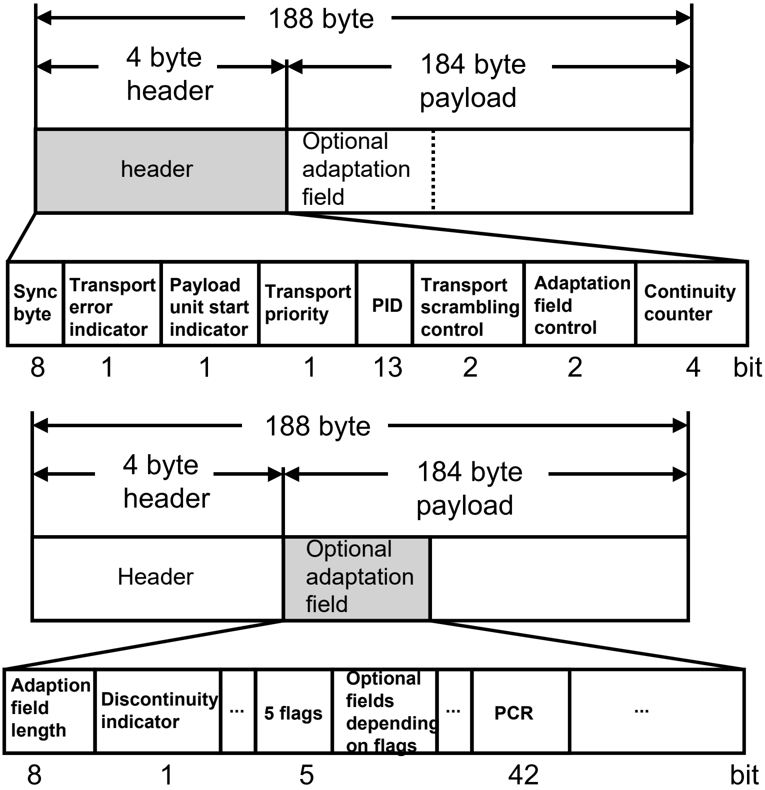


Fig. 3.49. Other details in the MPEG-2 transport stream

3.9.3 The Adaptation Field Control Bits

These two bits indicate whether there is an extended header, i.e. an adaptation field, or not. If both bits are set to zero, there is no adaptation field. If there is an adaptation field, the payload part is shortened and the header becomes longer but the total packet length remains a constant 188 bytes.

3.9.4 The Continuity Counter

Each transport stream packet with the same PID carries its own 4-bit counter. This is the continuity counter which continuously counts from 0 - 15 from TS packet to TS packet and then begins again from 0. The continuity counter makes it possible to recognize missing TS packets and to identify an errored data stream (counter discontinuity). It is possible, and permissible, to have a discontinuity with a program change which is then indicated by the Discontinuity Indicator in the adaptation field.

Bibliography: [ISO13818/1], [ETS 300468], [A53], [REIMERS], [SIGMUND], [DVG], [DVDM], [GRUNWALD], [FISCHER3], [FISCHER4], [DVM], [ARIB], [ISO/IEC23008], [ISO/IEC23009]

4 Digital Video Signal According to ITU-BT.R.601 (CCIR 601)

Uncompressed digital video signals have been used for some time in television studios. Based on the original CCIR Standard CCIR 601, designated as IBU-BT.R601 today, this data signal is obtained as follows:

To start with, the video camera supplies the analog Red, Green and Blue (R, G, B) signals. These signals are matrixed in the camera to form luminance (Y) and chrominance (color difference C_B and C_R) signals.

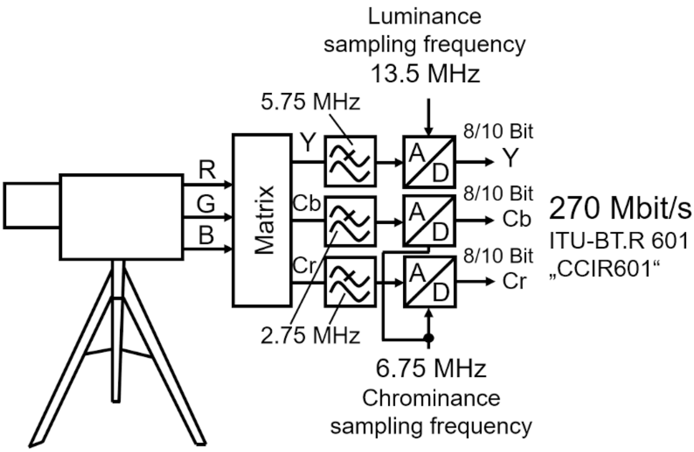


Fig. 4.1. Digitization of luminance and chrominance

These signals are produced by simple addition or subtraction of R = Red, G = Green, B = Blue:

$$Y = (0.30 \cdot R) + (0.59 \cdot G) + (0.11 \cdot B);$$

$$C_B = 0.56 \cdot (B\text{-}Y);$$

$$C_R = 0.71 \cdot (R\text{-}Y);$$

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_4

The luminance bandwidth is then limited to 5.75 MHz using a low-pass filter. The two color difference signals are limited to 2.75 MHz, i.e. the color resolution is clearly reduced compared with the brightness resolution. This principle is familiar from children's books where the impression of sharpness is simply conveyed by printed black lines. In analog television (NTSC, PAL, SECAM), too, the color resolution is reduced to about 1.3 MHz. The low-pass-filtered Y, C_B and C_R signals are then sampled and digitized by means of analog/digital converters. The A/D converter in the luminance branch operates at a sampling frequency of 13.5 MHz and the two C_B and C_R color difference signals are sampled at 6.75 MHz each.

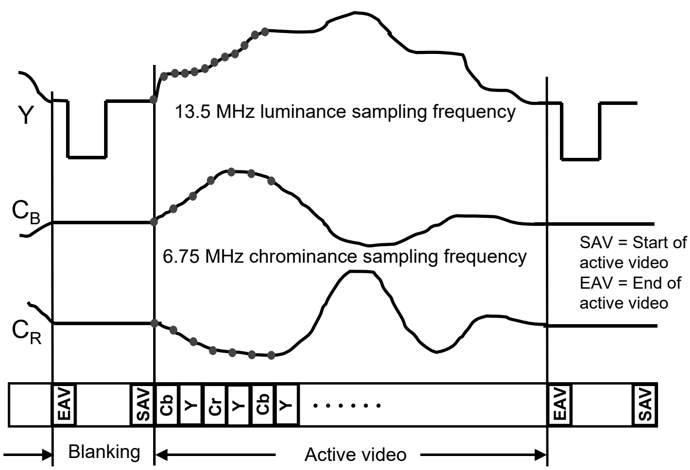


Fig. 4.2. Sampling of the components in accordance with ITU-BT.R601

This meets the requirements of the sampling theorem: There are no more signal components above half the sampling frequency. The three A/D converters can all have a resolution of 8 or 10 bits. With a resolution of 10 bits, this will result in a gross data rate of 270 Mbit/s which is suitable for distribution in the studio but much too high for TV transmission via existing channels (terrestrial, satellite or cable). The samples of all three A/D converters are multiplexed in the following order: C_B Y C_R Y C_B Y ... In this digital video signal (Fig. 4.1.), the luminance value thus alternates with a C_B value or a C_R value and there are twice as many Y values as there are C_B or C_R values. This is called a 4:2:2 resolution, compared with the resolution immediately after the matrixing, which was the same for all components, namely 4:4:4.

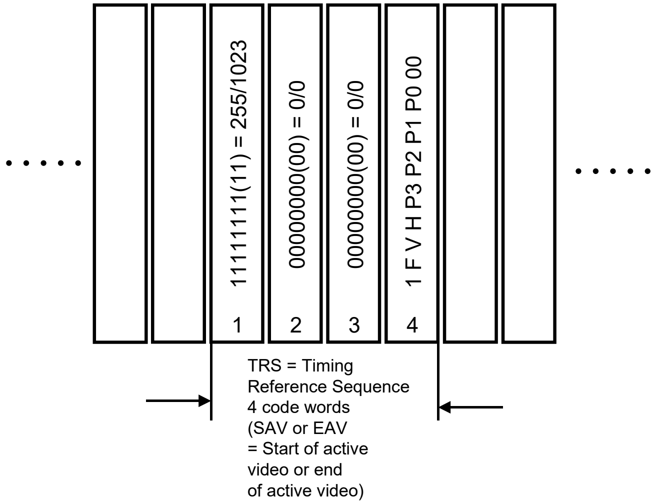


Fig. 4.3. SAV and EAV code words in the ITU-BT.R601 signal

This digital signal can be present in parallel form at a 25 pin sub-D connector or serially at a 75 Ohm BNC socket. The serial interface is called SDI which stands for serial digital interface and has become the most widely used interface because a conventional 75-Ohm BNC cable can be used.

Within the data stream, the start and the end of the active video signal is marked by special code words called SAV (start of active video) and EAV (end of active video), naturally enough (Fig. 4.2.). Between EAV and SAV, there is the horizontal blanking interval which does not contain any information related to the video signal, i.e. the digital signal does not contain the sync pulse. In the horizontal blanking interval, supplementary information can be transmitted such as, e.g. audio signals (embedded audio).

The SAV and EAV code words (Fig. 4.3.) consist of four 8 or 10 bit code words each. SAV and EAV begins with one code word in which all bits are set to one, followed by two words in which all bits are set to zero. The fourth code word contains information about the respective field or the vertical blanking interval, respectively. This fourth code word is used for detecting the start of a frame, field and active picture area in the vertical direction. The most significant bit of the fourth code word is always 1. The next bit (bit 8 in a 10 bit transmission or bit 6 in an 8 bit transmission) flags the field; if this bit is set to zero, it is a line of the first field and if it is set to one, it is a line of the second field. The next bit (bit 7 in a 10 bit transmission or bit 5 in an 8 bit transmission) flags the active video area in the vertical direction. If this bit is set to zero, then this is the visible active video area and if not, it is the vertical blanking interval. Bit 6 (10 bit) or bit 4 (8 bit) provides information about whether the present code word is an SAV or an EAV. It is SAV if this bit is set to zero and EAV if it is not. Bits 5...2 (10 bit) or 3...0 (8 bit) are used for error protection of the SAV and EAV code words. Code word 4 of the timing reference sequence (TRS) contains the following information:

- F = Field (0 = 1st field, 1 = 2nd field)
- V = Vertical blanking (1 = vertical blanking interval active)
- H = SAV/EAV identification (0 = SAV, 1 = EAV)
- P0, P1, P2, P3 = Protection bits (Hamming code)

Neither the luminance signal (Y) nor the color difference signals (C_B, C_R) use the full dynamic range available for them. There is a prohibited range which is reserved as headroom, on the one hand, and, on the other hand, allows SAV and EAV to be easily identified. A Y signal ranges between 16 and 64 decimal (8 bits) or 240 and 960 decimal (10 bits).

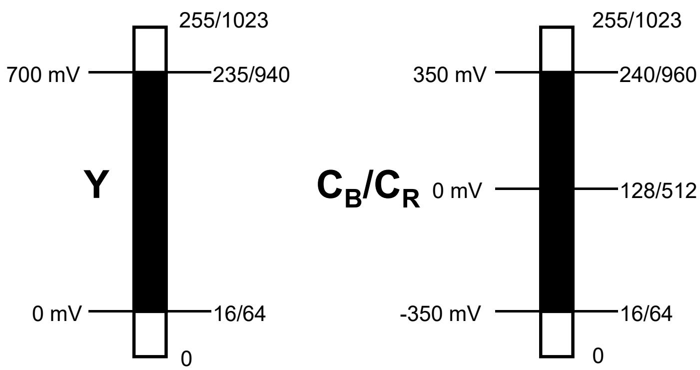


Fig. 4.4. Level diagram

The dynamic range of C_B and C_R is 16 to 240 decimal (8 bits) or 64 to 960 decimal (10 bits). The area outside this range is used as headroom and for sync identification purposes.

This video signal conforming to ITU-BT.R601, which is normally available as an SDI (Serial Digital Interface) signal, forms the input signal to an MPEG SDTV encoder.

Physically the SDI signal is scrambled and NRZI encoded (NRZI = Non-Return-to-Zero code Inverted). The SDI spectrum is a sin(x)/x function with its first zero at 270 MHz.

Bibliography: [ITU601], [MÄUSL4], [GRUNWALD]

5 Video Signal Formats for HDTV and UHDTV

From the 1950s up until about 2002, analog and digital TV had a resolution of 625 or 525 lines. This format is also called Standard Definition Television or SDTV. Many countries, however, are already broadcasting in High Definition Television - HDTV - format. This increases the number of visible lines to 1080 and the number of visible pixels to 1920 per line. And it's not over yet with HDTV: Ultra High Definition, providing an even sharper TV screen picture, is already coming.

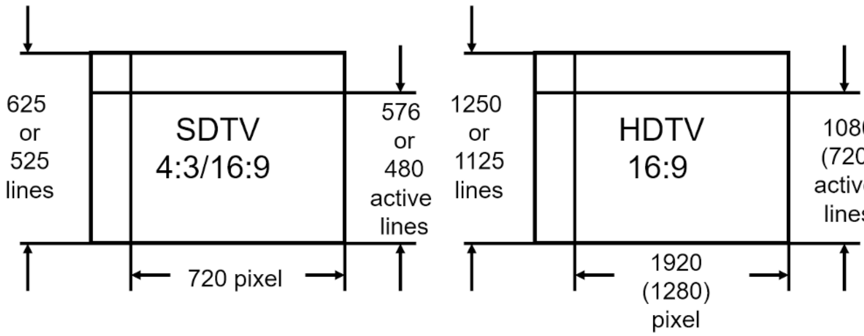


Figure 5.1. SDTV and HDTV resolution

Since the late 1980s, there have been efforts to switch from SDTV to HDTV. The first attempt was Japan's MUSE, developed by the Japanese broadcaster NHK (Nippon Hoso Kyokai). Europe also worked on HDTV at the end of the 1980s, but its HD-MAC system (High Definition Multiplexed Analog Components) was never marketed. The US decided in the mid-1990s to broadcast HDTV based on the ATSC (Advanced Television System Committee) standard. Australia adopted the digital terrestrial DVB-T standard and decided to also use it for broadcasting HDTV. Japan, the US and Australia are currently using MPEG-2 for their HDTV implementations. In Europe, the introduction of HDTV using the MPEG-4-AVC format started in 2003 but HDTV only really took off after 2010; and soon after it became standard in living rooms, UHDTV devices appeared at the Berlin Radio Show in 2013, to be marketed within less than a year even

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_5

though there was no content available for it. Meanwhile, UHDTV cameras have appeared even for domestic use.

5.1 Image Formats

The known screen resolutions in pixels and their respective screen aspect ratios (width/height) are as follows:

- VGA 640 x 480 (4:3)
- SVGA 800 x 600 (4:3)
- XGA 1024 x 768 (4:3)
- SXGA 1280 x 1024 (5:4)
- UXGA 1600 x 1200 (4:3)
- HDTV 1920 x 1080 (16:9)
- QXGA 2048 x 1536 (4:3)

Initially, HDTV was to have twice the number of lines with twice the number of pixels per line compared to standard definition pictures.

This would yield

- a total of 1250 lines with 1440 active pixels (4:3) and 1152 active lines for a 625-line system, and
- a total of 1050 lines with 1440 active pixels (4:3) and 960 active lines for a 525-line system

for this HDTV system.

The usual field rate is 50 Hz for a 625-line system and 60 Hz for a 525-line system, due to the mains frequency used in the countries that first developed the technology. Transitioning to HDTV is accompanied by a drive to change the aspect ratio to 16:9 from the 4:3 ratio normally used with SDTV, although SDTV was also used to air 16:9 broadcasts.

However, the resolution used in the US for ATSC and HDTV is 1280 x 720 at 60 Hz, while the usual HDTV resolution over DVB-T used in Australia is 1920/1440 x 1080 pixels at 50 Hz.

Table 5.1. Image formats

Format	Horizontal	Vertical	Aspect Ratio	Pixels
VHS	320	240	4:3	76800
SDTV	720	576	4:3/16:9	414720
VGA	640	480	4:3	307200
HDTV	1920 1280	1080 720	16:9	2073600 921600
WUXGA	1920	1200	16:10	2304000
2K	2048	1536	4:3	3145728
UHDV-1	3840	2160	16:9	2359296
4K	4096	3072	4:3	12582912
UHDV-2	7680	4320	16:9	33177600
UHXGA	7680	4800	16:10	36864000
8K	8192	6144	4:3	50331648

Table 5.2. Aspect ratios

Aspect ratio	Known as	Application
4:3 (1.33:1)		TV
16:9 (1.78:1)	Widescreen TV	TV
1.85:1	Widescreen	Cinema
2.35:1	Cinemascope	Cinema
16:10		PC

In early 2004, Europe started airing EURO1080, an MPEG-2 coded HDTV channel over satellite, using 1080 active lines and a resolution of 1920 pixels per line at a field rate of 50 Hz. This channel was later renamed to HD1 and its transmission format was changed. When HDTV was rolled out in Europe, the decision was made to use the twice as efficient MPEG-4 coding as per MPEG-4/Part-10 H.264 – Video Coding (AVC, Advanced Video Coding).

5.2 Uncompressed HDTV Baseband Signal

The following section describes the uncompressed HDTV baseband signal as defined in ITU-R BT.709 and ITU-R BT.1120.

The ITU has generally agreed on a total line count of 1250 lines for the 50 Hz system and 1125 lines for the 60 Hz system, both with 1080 active lines (Fig. 5.1). The number of active pixels per line is 1920 in both systems. This image format with 1920 pixels x 1080 lines is called the Common Image Format (CIF). The sampling rate of the luminance signal is 74.25 MHz (Fig. 5.2), and the $Y{:}C_B{:}C_R$ format is 4:2:2. The sampling rate of the color difference components is 0.5 x 74.25 MHz = 37.125 MHz. For the 1250-line system with a field rate of 50 Hz, ITU-R.BT 709 specified 72 MHz and 36 MHz for the luminance and chrominance sampling rate, respectively. To avoid aliasing, low-pass filtering is used prior to sampling to limit the bandwidth of the luminance signal to 30 MHz and that of the chrominance signals to 15 MHz.

For the 1125/60 system (Fig. 5.2) and a resolution of 10 bits, this yields a gross physical data rate of

Y: 74.25 x 10 Mbps = 742.5 Mbps
C_B: 0.5 x 74.25 x 10 Mbps = 371.25 Mbps
C_R: 0.5 x 74.25 x 10 Mbps = 371.25 Mbps

1.485 Gbps gross data rate (1125/60)

For the 1250/50 system (Fig. 5.2) that uses somewhat lower sampling rates, the gross physical data rate at a resolution of 10 bits is

Y: 72 x 10 Mbps = 720 Mbps
C_B: 0.5 x 72 x 10 Mbps = 360 Mbps
C_R: 0.5 x 72 x 10 Mbps = 360 Mbps

1.44 Gbps gross data rate (1250/50)

The scanning method can be interlaced or progressive. Progressive scanning is primarily used in flat panel displays like LCD and OLED screens where the technology supports full screen rendering only and interlacing could lead to unattractive artifacts. For progressively scanned 50/60 fields, sampling rates are doubled to 148.5 MHz / 144 MHz for the luminance signal and 74.2 MHz / 72 MHz for the color difference components, with gross data rates also doubled to 2.97 Gbps / 2.88 Gbps.

The structure of the uncompressed digital HDTV data signal complies with ITU-R BT.601. The standard also defines a parallel and a serial (HD-SDI) interface.

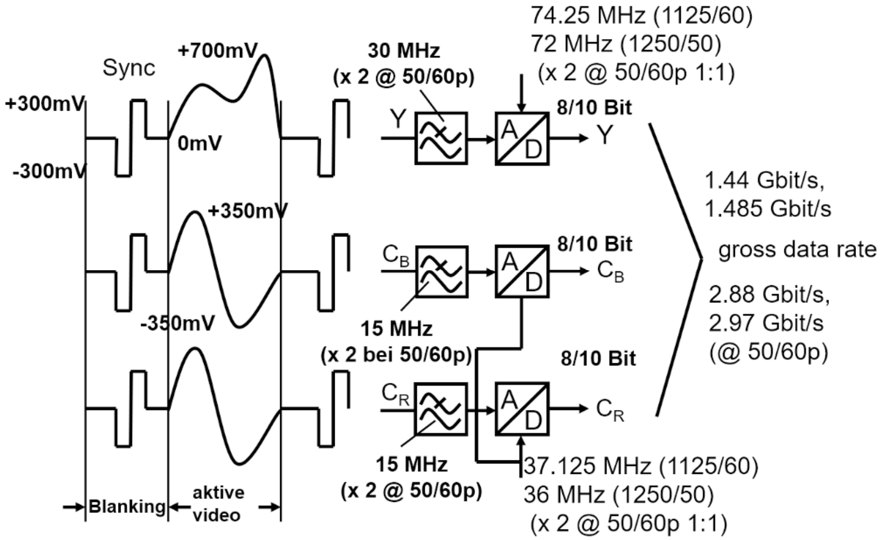


Figure 5.2. Sampling of an HDTV (High Definition Television) signal in accordance with ITU-R.BT.709

European receiver manufacturers have defined the logos "HD Ready" and "Full HD" to identify the characteristics of a display or projector. "HD Ready" defines a display or projector that provides the following features:

- a physical resolution of at least 720 lines
- 16:9 aspect ratio
- support for a resolution of 1280 x 720 at 50 Hz or 60 Hz field rate, progressive
- support for a resolution of 1920 x 1080 at 50 Hz or 60 Hz field rate, interlaced
- analog Y Pb Pr interface
- digital DVI or HDMI interface
- HDCP encryption in the digital interface

Table 5.3. Specification of the 1920x1080 HD production format

HDTV system	1125/60	1125/60	1250/50 or 1125/50	1250/50 or 1125/50
Number of active lines	1080	1080	1080	1080
Field rate and frame rate	60 Hz interlaced (2:1)	60 Hz progressive (1:1)	50 Hz interlaced (2:1)	50 Hz progressive (1:1)
Line frequency	33.75 kHz	67.5 kHz	31.25 kHz	62.5 kHz
Aspect ratio	16:9	16:9	16:9	16:9
Samples per active line	1920	1920	1920	1920
Number of active lines	1080	1080	1080	1080
Sampling frequency Y	74.25 MHz	148.5 MHz	74.25 MHz	148.5 MHz
Sampling period Y	13.46 ns	6.73 ns	13.46 ns	6.73 ns
Active line duration	25.85µs	12.92µs	25.85µs	12.92µs
Horizontal blanking interval	12.7 %	12.7 %	19.2 %	19.2 %

Table 5.3. (from [MÄUSL6], [ITU1120])

DVI (Digital Visual Interface), already familiar from the world of PC where it has replaced the traditional VGA interface, allows a data rate of 1.65 Gbps. HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface) supports data rates of up to 18 Gbps and transports both images and sound. HDCP (High Bandwidth Digital Content Protection) protects digital HD content at the DVI and HDMI interface from unauthorized copying as required by the film industry. The HDMI interface, currently available in versions 1.4a and 2.0, has meanwhile become the standard interface in multimedia devices like flat panel displays, Blu-ray disk players, cameras, projectors, etc. as well as in PCs. Devices proving HDMI version 2.1 are expected in 2019.

"Full HD" provides the full 1920 x 1080 physical pixel resolution, unlike "HD Ready". Flat panel displays currently available have at least "Full HD" resolution, HD Ready is history. Many displays on the market already support UHD resolution.

In February 2010, German broadcasters ARD and ZDF launched a full HDTV program on the occasion of the Vancouver Winter Olympics. The analog switch-off via satellite in April 2012 (Germany) was also the starting date of many further HDTV programs.

HDTV has been rolled out, but the next contender, UHDTV, is already in the offing and already available for some streaming VoD services.

5.3 Physical Video Interface Signals Up To UHDTV

Let us now have a look at all video signal formats currently used in studios up to UHDTV, listed in Table 5.3. Up until now, video signals have been transferred by 75 Ohm coaxial cables (color: green). The formats range from the analog CCVS signal with a bandwidth of 5 MHz through SDI and HD-SDI supporting 270 Mbps and 1.485 Gbps, respectively, to the use of four parallel 75 Ohm coaxial cables with a combined data rate of 12 Gbps (Quad 3G/HD/SDI) used in UDTV.

For decades, the bandwidth of analog video signals was 5 MHz, and although they hardly play any role in professional circles, almost all terminals from flat panel displays to mobile phones, projectors, etc. still come with an analog video input or output with selectable PAL, SECAM or NTSC format. Since the 1990s, the camera signal format used in studios has been SDI (Serial Digital Interface) with a resolution of 10 bits and a data rate of 270 Mbps for SDTV. HDTV has also been increasingly gaining ground since about 2003. Studios use an HD-SDI signal for this format, providing a data rate of 1.485 Mbps at a resolution of 10 bits. The common camera signal format here is usually 1080i. Higher refresh rates require even higher data rates. The next step in this direction was 3G-HD-SDI that corresponds to a high definition digital TV signal with a data rate of up to 3 Gbps over a 75 Ohm coaxial cable. Some technologies also use two coaxial cables in parallel, like for instance Dual-Link-HD-SDI. There are also some current UHDTV applications that use four parallel 75 Ohm coaxial cables to distribute the up to 12 Gbps UHDTV signal in the case of Quad-3G-HD-SDI, with each of the Quad-3G-HD-SDI cables transferring one fourth of the UHDTV picture. The future will bring other physical media into play, e.g. a CAT6 cable with RJ45 connectors for 802.AVB signals or "SDI over IP" as specified in the SMPTE2022 standard.

Table 5.4. Physical video signal formats up to UHDTV

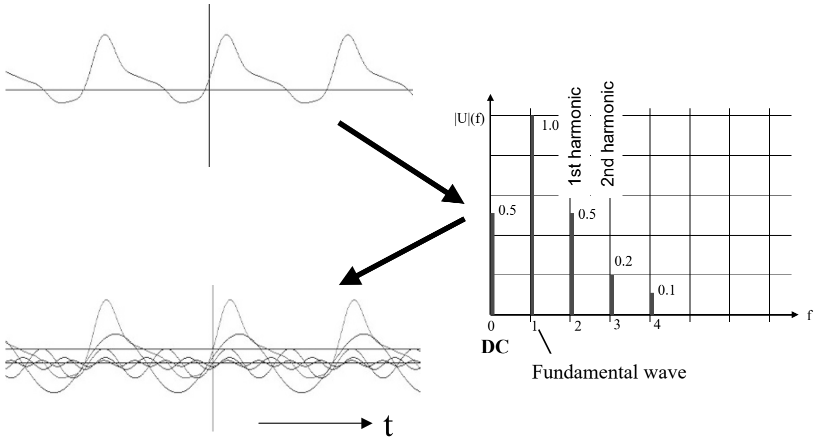
Video signal format	Physical interface	Data rate	Standard	Format
SDI Serial Digital Interface	75 Ohm, coax, BNC	270 Mbps	ITU-T B.801	one data stream over one cable
HD-SDI High Definition Serial Digital Interface	75 Ohm, coax, BNC	1.485 Gbps	ITU-T B1120-3	one data stream over one cable
Dual Link HD-SDI	2 x 75 Ohm, coax	2 x 1.485 Gbps		one data stream over 2 cables 1080p50/60 4:2:2 or 1080p50/60 4:4:4
3G/HD/SDI	75 Ohm, coax	3 Gbps		one data stream over one cable 1080p50/60 4:2:2 or 1080p50/60 4:4:4
Dual Stream 3G/HD/SDI	2 x 75 Ohm, coax	3 Gbps		2 data streams with 1.485 Gbps each (1080p 4:2:2) + (1080p 4:2:2) e.g. for 3D left and right channel
Quad 3G-HD-SDI	4 x 75 Ohm, coax	12 Gbps		one data stream over 4 cables

802.AVB	Gigabit Ethernet, RJ45		AVB = Audio Video Bridge
SDI over IP	Gigabit Ethernet	SMPTE2022	

Bibliography: [MÄUSL6], [ITU709], [ITU1120], [UHDTV], [802.AVB], [SMPTE2022]

6 Transforms to and from the Frequency Domain

In this chapter, principles of transforms to and from the frequency domain are discussed. Although it describes methods which are used quite generally throughout the field of electrical communication, a thorough knowledge of these principles is of great importance to understanding the subsequent chapters on video encoding, audio encoding and Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex (OFDM), i.e. DVB-T and DAB. Experts, of course, can simply skip this chapter.



$$u(t) = 0.5 + 1.0\sin(t+0.2)+0.5\sin(2t)+0.2\sin(3t-1)+0.1\sin(4t-1.5);$$

Fig. 6.1. Fourier Analysis of a periodic time domain signal

Signals are normally represented as signal variation with time. An oscilloscope, for example, shows an electrical signal, a voltage, in the time domain. Voltmeters provide only a few parameters of these electrical signals, e.g. the DC component and the RMS value. These two parameters can also be calculated from the voltage variation by using a modern digital oscilloscope. A spectrum analyzer shows the signal in the frequency domain. It is possible to think of any time domain signal as being composed of an infi-

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_6

nite number of sinusoidal signals of a certain amplitude, phase and frequency.

The time domain signal is obtained by adding together all the sinusoidal signals at every point in time, i.e. the original signal is obtained from the superposition. A spectrum analyzer, however, only shows us the information about the amplitude or power of these sinusoidal part-signals, the harmonics.

A periodic time domain signal can be resolved into its harmonics mathematically by means of Fourier Analysis (Fig. 6.1.). This signal, which can have any shape, can be thought of as being composed of the fundamental wave which has the same period length as the signal itself, and of the harmonics which are simply multiples of the fundamental. In addition, each time domain signal also has a certain DC component. This direct voltage corresponds to a zero frequency. Non-periodic signals can also be represented in the frequency domain. but non-periodic signals do not have a line spectrum but a continuous spectrum. Thus, the spectral band contains spectral lines not only at certain points but at any number of points.

$$H(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} h(t) e^{-j2\pi ft} dt; \text{ Fourier Transform (FT)}$$

$$h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H(f) e^{j2\pi ft} df; \text{ Inverse Fourier Transform (IFT)}$$

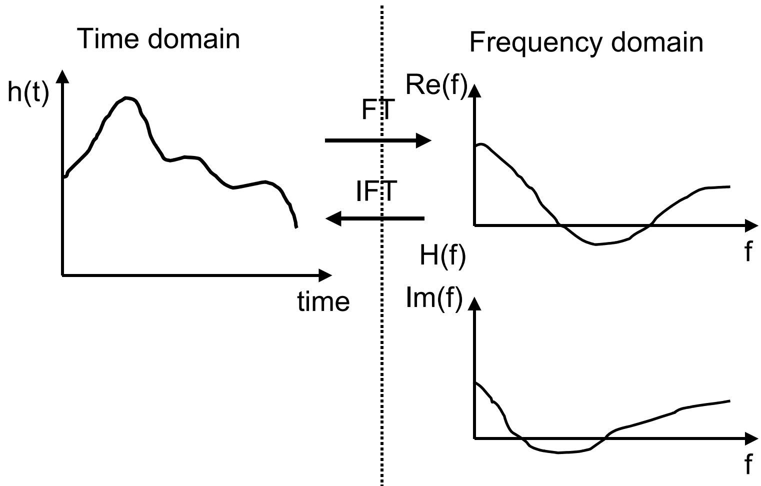


Fig. 6.2. Fourier Transform

6.1 The Fourier Transform

The spectrum of any time domain signal can be obtained mathematically by means of the so-called Fourier Transform (Fig. 6.2.). This is an integral transform in which the time domain signal has to be observed from minus infinity to plus infinity. Such a Fourier Transform can thus only be solved correctly if the time domain signal can be described in unambiguous terms mathematically. The Fourier Transform then calculates the variation of the real components and the variation of the imaginary components versus frequency from the time domain signal. It is possible to assemble any sinusoidal signal of any amplitude, phase and frequency from a cosinusoidal signal component of this frequency with a special amplitude and from a sinusoidal signal component of this frequency and special amplitude. The real component accurately describes the amplitude of the cosinusoidal component and the imaginary component accurately describes the amplitude of the sinusoidal component.

In the vector diagram (Fig. 6.3.), the vector of a sinusoidal quantity is obtained by the vectorial addition of the real and imaginary parts, i.e. of the cosine and sine components. The Fourier Transform thus provides the information about the real part, i.e. the cosine component, and the imaginary part, i.e. the sine component, at any point in the spectrum in infinitely fine resolution. The Fourier Transform is possible forwards and backwards and is referred to as Fourier Transform (FT) and Inverse Fourier Transform (IFT), respectively.

The Fourier transform turns a real time domain signal into a complex spectrum which is composed of real parts and imaginary parts as described. The spectrum consists of positive and negative frequencies and the negative frequency range does not provide any additional information about the time domain signal in question. The real part is mirror-symmetrical with respect to the zero frequency and Re(-f) = Re(f) holds true whereas the imaginary part is point-to-point-symmetrical and Im(-f) = -Im(f) holds true. The Inverse Fourier Transform supplies a single real time domain signal again from the complex spectrum. The Fourier Analysis, i.e. the analysis of the harmonics, is nothing else than a special case of a Fourier Transform where the Fourier Transform is simply applied to a periodic signal and the integral can then be replaced by a summation formula. The signal can be unambiguously described since it is periodic. The information over one period is sufficient.

By applying Pythagoras's theorem or the arc-tangent-function, respectively, amplitude and phase information can be obtained from the real and imaginary parts if required (Fig. 6.4.). The group delay characteristic is obtained by differentiating the phase variation with frequency.

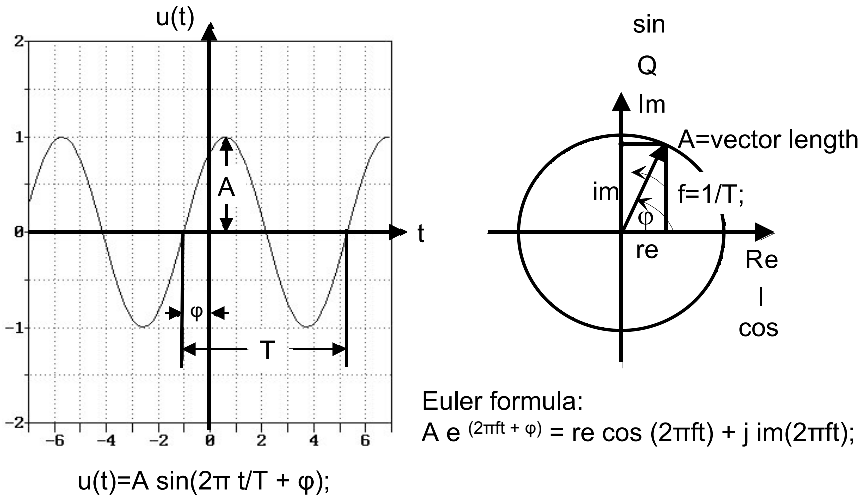


Fig. 6.3. Vector diagram of a sinusoidal signal

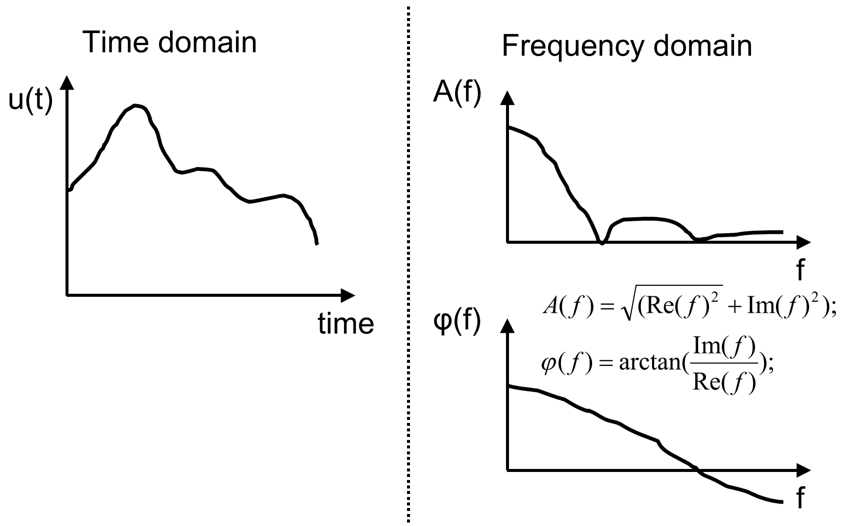


Fig. 6.4. Amplitude and phase characteristic

6.2 The Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT)

Signals of a quite general format cannot be described mathematically; there are no periodicities and they would have to be observed for an infinite period of time which is impossible in practice. There is thus no possible mathematical or numerical approach for calculating its spectrum. One solution which approximately supplies the frequency band is the Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT). Using, e.g. an analog/digital converter, the signal is sampled at discrete points in the time domain at intervals Δt=ts and observed only within a limited time window at N points (Fig. 6.5.).

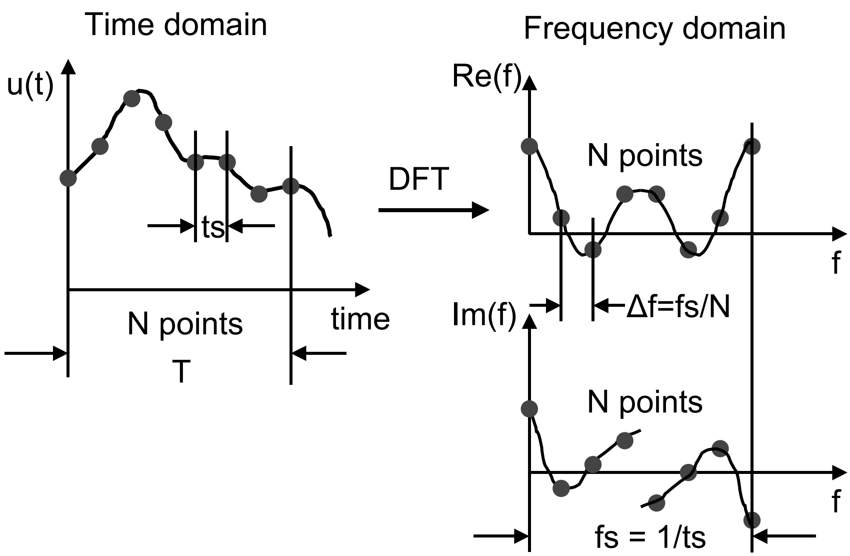


Fig. 6.5. Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT)

Instead of an integral from minus infinity to plus infinity, only a summation formula has to be solved then and this can even be done purely numerically by means of digital signal processing. The discrete Fourier transform results in N points for the real part(f) and N points for the imaginary part(f) in the spectral band.

The Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) and the Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform (IDFT) are obtained through the following mathematical relations:

$$H_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} h_k e^{-j2\pi k \frac{n}{N}} = -\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} h_k \cos(2\pi k \frac{n}{N}) - j\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} h_k \sin(2\pi k \frac{n}{N});$$

$$h_k = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} H_n e^{j2\pi k \frac{n}{N}};$$

The frequency band thus no longer has an infinitely fine resolution and is described only at discrete frequency interpolation points. The band extends from DC to half the sampling frequency and then continues symmetrically or point-to-point-symmetrically up to the sampling frequency. The real-time graph is symmetrical up to half the sampling frequency and the imaginary part is point-to-point-symmetrical. The frequency resolution is a function of the number of points in the window of observation and on the sampling frequency.

The following applies: $\Delta f = \frac{f_s}{N}; \Delta t = \frac{1}{f_s};$

The Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT), in reality, actually corresponds to a Fourier analysis within the observed time window of the band-limited signal. It is thus assumed that the signal in the observed time window continues periodically. This assumption results in “uncertainties” in the analysis so that the Discrete Fourier Transform can only supply approximate information about the actual frequency band. ‘Approximate’ in as much as the areas preceding and following the time window are not taken into consideration and the signal window is sharply truncated. However, the DFT can be solved by simple mathematical and numerical means and it functions both forwards and in the reverse direction in the time domain (Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform – IDFT, Fig. 6.6.). The result of performing a DFT on a real time domain signal interval is a discrete complex spectrum (real and imaginary parts). The IDFT transforms the complex spectrum back into a real time domain signal again. In reality, however, the section of time domain signal cut out and transformed into the frequency domain has been converted into a periodic signal.

Once a rectangular time domain signal segment has been windowed, the spectrum corresponds to a convolution of a sin(x)/x function with the original spectrum of the signal. This produces different effects which in a spectrum analysis done by means of the DFT disturb and affect the measurement result to a greater or lesser extent. In test applications, therefore, the choice would be not to select a rectangular window function but, e.g. $\cos^2$ function which would cut out a smoother window and lead to fewer disturbances in the frequency domain. Various types of window function are used, e.g. rectangular windows, Hanning windows, Hamming windows, Blackman windows etc.. Windowing means that the signal segment is first cut out to a rectangular shape and then multiplied by the window function.

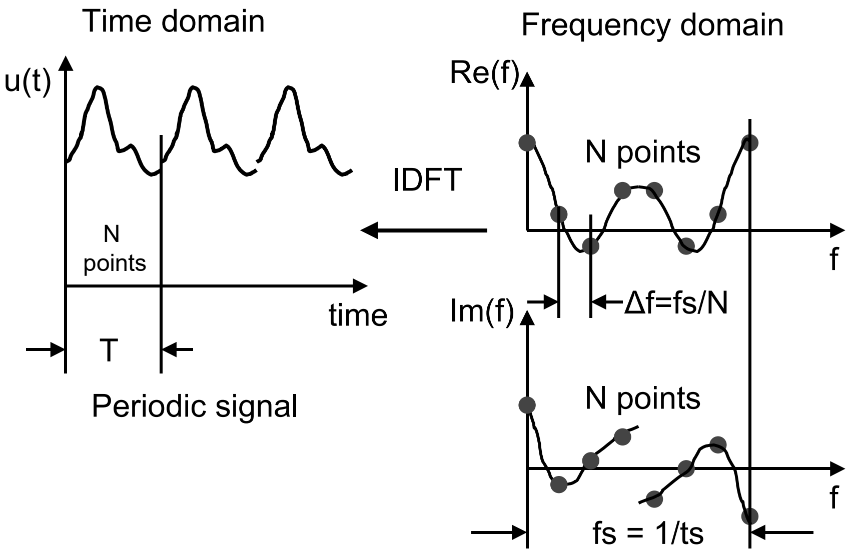


Fig. 6.6. IDFT

6.3 The Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)

The Discrete Fourier Transform is a simple but fairly time-consuming algorithm. However, if the number of points N within the window of observation is restricted to $N=2^x$, i.e. a power of two (Cooley, Tukey, 1965), a more complex, but less time-consuming algorithm, the Fast Fourier Transform (FFT), can be used. This algorithm itself provides exactly the same result as a DFT but is much faster and is restricted to $N=2^x$ points (2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, ...,256, …,1024, 2048, …,8192, ...). The Fast Fourier Transform can also be inverted (Inverse Fast Fourier Transform - IFFT).

The FFT algorithm makes use of methods of linear algebra. The samples are presorted in co-called bit reversal and then processed by means of butterfly operations. These operations are implemented as machine codes in signal processors and special FFT chips.

The number of multiplications given below shows the time gained by the FFT compared with the DFT:

Number of multiplications needed:

DFT: $N \cdot N$

FFT; $N \cdot \log(2N)$

The FFT has long been used in the field of acoustics (surveying concert halls and churches) and in geology (searching for minerals, ores and oil). However, the analyses were performed off-line with fast computers, using a Dirac impulse to excite the medium to be examined (hall, rocks) and then recording the impulse response of the medium under investigation. A Dirac impulse is a very short and very strong impulse, an example of an acoustical Dirac impulse being a pistol shot and a geological Dirac impulse being the explosion of a blasting charge.

Back in 1988, a 256 point FFT still consumed minutes of PC time. Today, an 8192 point FFT (8k FFT) takes less than one millisecond of computing time! This opens the door for new and interesting applications such as video and audio compression or Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex (OFDM). FFT has also been used increasingly for spectrum analysis in analog video testing and for detecting the amplitude and group delay response of video transmission links since the late 1980s. In modern storage oscilloscopes, too, this interesting test function is frequently found today and makes it possible to perform a low-cost spectrum analysis, especially also in audio test engineering.

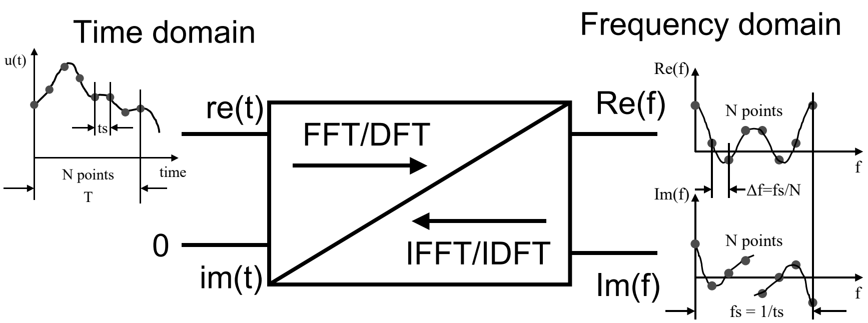


Fig. 6.7. Implementation and practical applications of DFT and FFT

6.4 Implementation and Practical Applications of DFT and FFT

The Fourier Transform, the Discrete Fourier Transform and the Fast Fourier Transform are all defined through the field of complex numbers. This means that both the time domain signal and the frequency domain signal have real and imaginary parts. Typical time domain signals are, however, always purely real, i.e. the imaginary part is zero at every point in time. The imaginary part must, therefore, be set to zero before the Fourier Transform or its numerical variations DFT and FFT are performed.

When DFT or FFT and IDFT or IFFT are performed in practice two input signals are required (Fig. 6.7.). The input signals are implemented as real-part and imaginary-part tables and correspond to the sampled time or frequency domain. As the N samples of a typical time domain signal are always real, the corresponding imaginary part must be set to zero for each of the N points. This means that the imaginary-part table for the time domain must be filled with zeros. When the inverse transform is performed, the imaginary part of the time domain signal must again be zero assuming that the frequency range for the real part is about half the sampling frequency and the frequency range for the imaginary part is point-to-point symmetric about half the sampling frequency. If these symmetries are not present in the frequency domain, a complex time domain signal is output, i.e. the signal also has imaginary components in the time domain.

6.5 The Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT)

The Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT), and thus also the Fast Fourier Transform which is a special case of the DCT, is a cosine-sine transform as can be seen from its formula; it is an attempt to assemble a time-domain signal segment by the superposition of many different cosine and sine signals of different frequency and amplitude. A similar result can also be achieved by using only cosine signals or only sine signals.

They are then called Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT) (Fig. 6.8.) or Discrete Sine Transform (DST) (Fig. 6.9.). Compared with the DFT, the sum of single signals required remains the same but twice as many cosine or sine signals are required. In addition, half-integral multiples of the fundamental are needed as well as integral multiples. The Discrete Cosine Transform (Fig. 6.8.), especially, has become quite important for audio and video compression.

The formulas of the Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT) and the Discrete Sine Transform (DST) are:

$$F_k = \sum_{z=0}^{N-1} f_z \cos\left(\frac{\pi k(z+\frac{1}{2})}{N}\right); \; F_k = \sum_{z=0}^{N-1} f_z \sin\left(\frac{\pi z k}{N}\right);$$

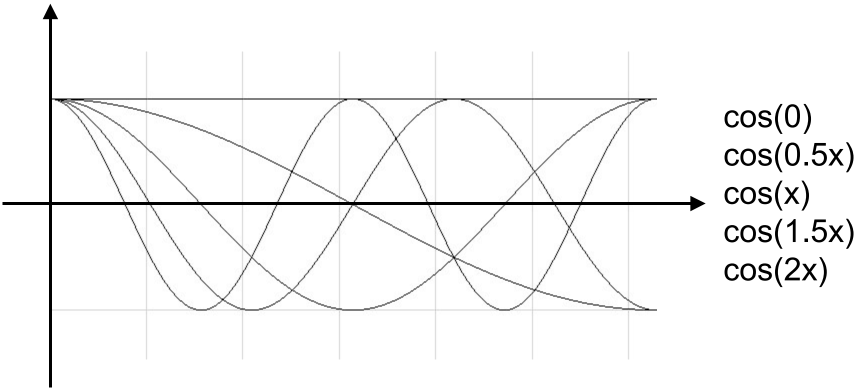


Fig. 6.8. Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT)

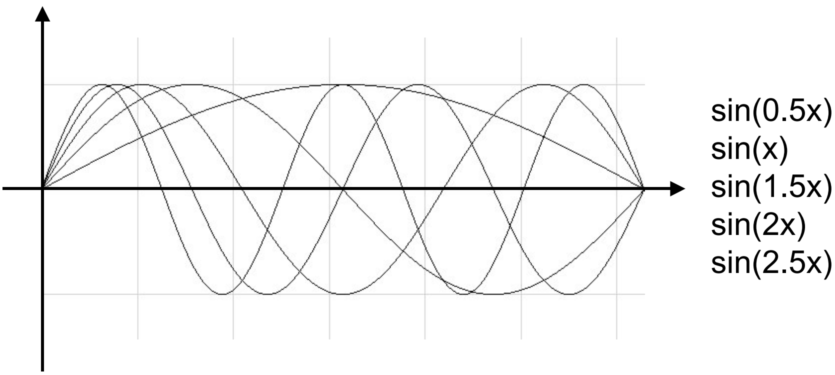
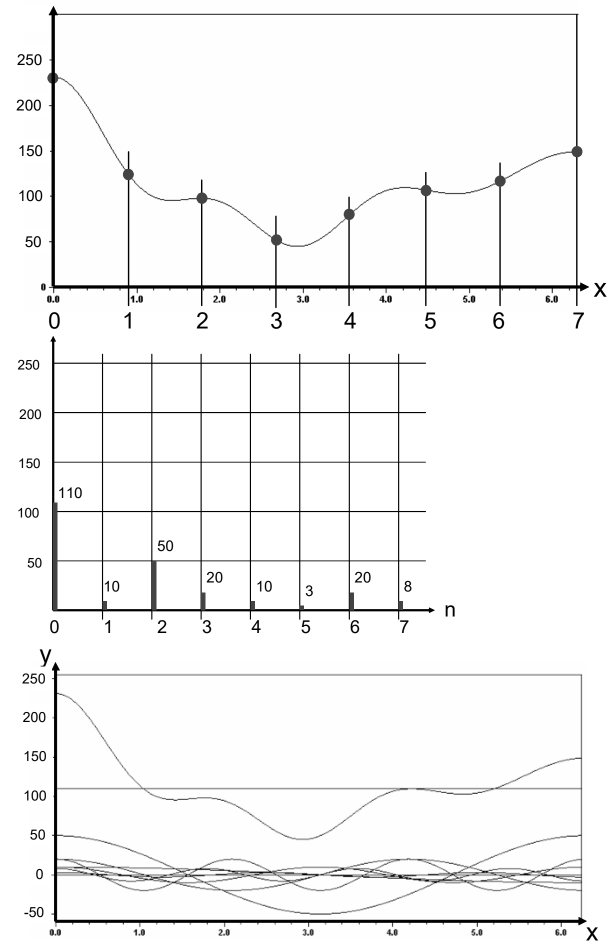


Fig. 6.9. Discrete Sine Transform (DST)

The DCT supplies, in the time domain, the amplitudes of the cosine signals from which the time interval analyzed can be assembled. The zero coefficient corresponds to the DC component of the signal segment. All the other coefficients first describe the low-frequency components, then the medium-frequency and then the higher-frequency components of the signal or, respectively, the amplitudes of the cosine functions from which the time-domain signal segment can be generated by adding them together. The response of the DCT is relatively gentle at the edges of the signal segment cut out and will lead to lesser discontinuities if a signal is transformed and retransformed segment by segment. This may well be the reason why the DCT has attained such great importance in the field of compression.



y(x)=110+10cos(0.5x)+50cos(x)+20cos(1.5x)
+10cos(2x)+3cos(2.5x)+20cos(3x)+8cos(3.5x);

Fig. 6.10. DCT and IDCT example; top original function, center DCT coefficients, bottom cosine base functions and superimposed curve.

The DCT is the algorithm at the core of the JPEG and MPEG image compression (digital photography and video) in which an image is transformed two-dimensionally block by block into the frequency domain and compressed block by block. It is of particular importance that the block edges cannot be recognized in the image after its decompression (no discontinuities at the edges).

The discrete cosine transform does not supply the coefficients in the frequency domain in pairs, i.e. separated according to real and imaginary parts and does not provide any information about the phase, only about the amplitude. Neither does the amplitude characteristic correspond directly to the result of the DFT. But this type of frequency transform is adequate for many applications and is also possible in both directions (Inverse Discrete Cosine Transform - IDCT) (Fig. 6.10.).

In principle, of course, there is also a Discrete Sine Transform (Fig. 6.9) where it is attempted to duplicate a time domain signal by the superposition of pure sinusoidal signals.

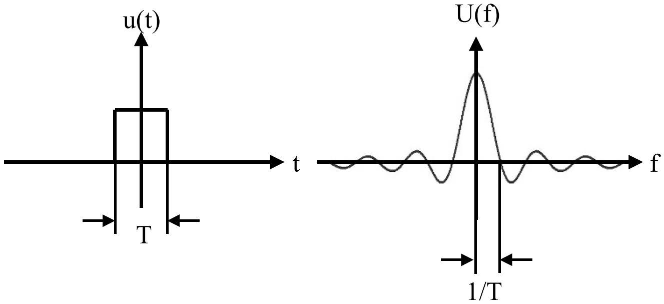


Fig. 6.11. Fourier Transform of a single squarewave pulse

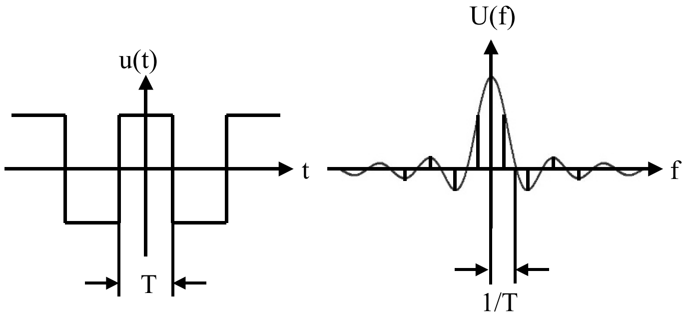


Fig. 6.12. Fourier Transform of a periodic square-wave pulse

6.6 Time Domain Signals and their Transforms in the Frequency Domain

In the following paragraphs, some important time-domain signals and their transforms in the frequency domain will be discussed. The purpose of these observations is to get some feel for the results of the Fast Fourier Transform.

Let us begin with a periodic square-wave signal (Fig. 6.12.): since it is a periodic signal, it has discrete lines in the frequency spectrum; all discrete spectral lines of the square-wave signal are located at integral multiples of the fundamental frequency of the square-wave signal. Most of the energy will be found in the fundamental wave itself. If there is a DC component, it will result in a spectral line at zero frequency (Fig. 6.14.). The envelope of the spectral lines of the fundamental and the harmonics is the sin(x)/x function.

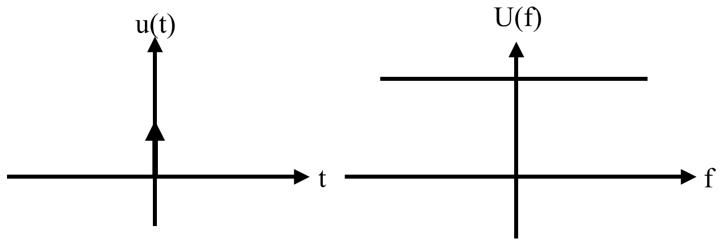


Fig. 6.13. Fourier Transform of a Dirac impulse

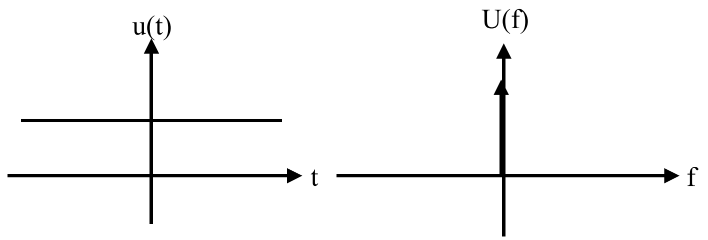


Fig. 6.14. Fourier Transform of a pure direct voltage (DC)

If then the duration of the period T of the square-wave signal is allowed to tend towards infinity, the discrete spectral lines move closer and closer together until a continuous spectrum of a single pulse is obtained (Fig. 6.11.).

The spectrum of a single square-wave pulse is a sin(x)/x function. If then the pulse width T is allowed to become narrower and narrower and to tend towards zero, all zero points of the sin(x)/x function will tend towards infinity. In the time domain, this provides an infinitely short pulse, a so-called Dirac impulse, the Fourier Transform of which is a straight line; i.e. the energy is distributed uniformly from zero frequency to infinity (Fig. 6.13.). Conversely, a single Dirac needle at f=0 in the frequency domain corresponds to a direct voltage (DC) in the time domain.

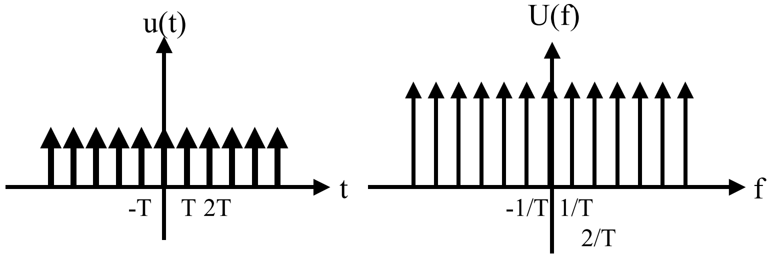


Fig. 6.15. Fourier Transform of a sequence of Dirac impulses

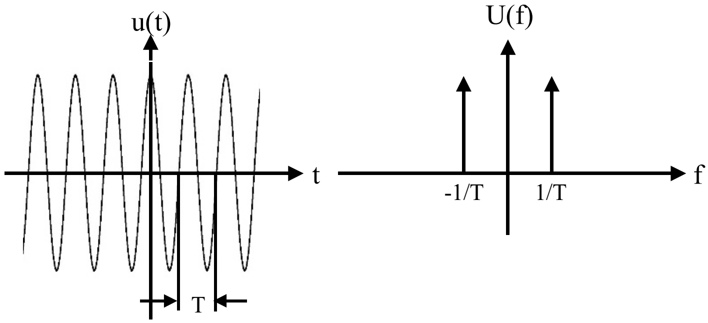


Fig. 6.16. Fourier Transform of a sinusoidal signal

A sequence of Dirac impulses spaced apart at intervals T from one another again results in a discrete spectrum of Dirac needles spaced apart by 1/T (Fig. 6.15.). The Dirac impulse train is of importance when considering a sampled signal. Sampling an analog signal has the consequence that this signal is convoluted with a sequence of Dirac impulses.

To conclude, a purely sinusoidal signal will be considered. Its Fourier transform is a Dirac needle at the frequency of the sinewave fs and –fs (Fig. 6.16.).

6.7 Systematic Errors in DFT or FFT, and How to Prevent them

To obtain the precise result of the Fourier Transform, a time-domain signal would have to be observed for an infinitely long period of time. In the case of the Discrete Fourier Transform, however, a signal segment is only observed for a finite period of time and transformed. The result of the DFT or FFT, respectively, will thus always differ from that of the Fourier Transform. It has been seen that, in principle, this analyzed time segment is converted into periodic signals in the DFT, i.e., the result of the DFT must be considered to be the Fourier Transform of this converted time segment.

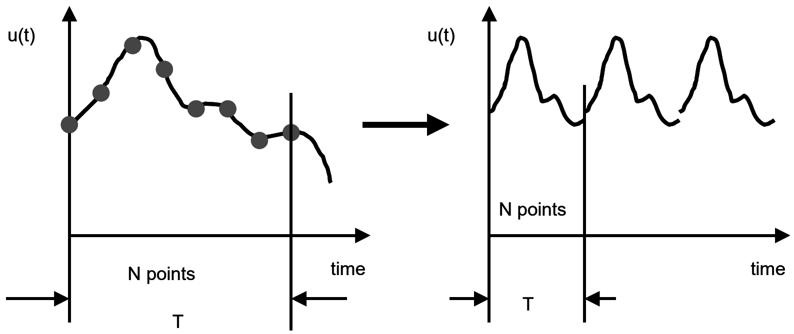


Fig. 6.17. Conversion of a signal segment into periodic signals by the DFT or FFT, resp.

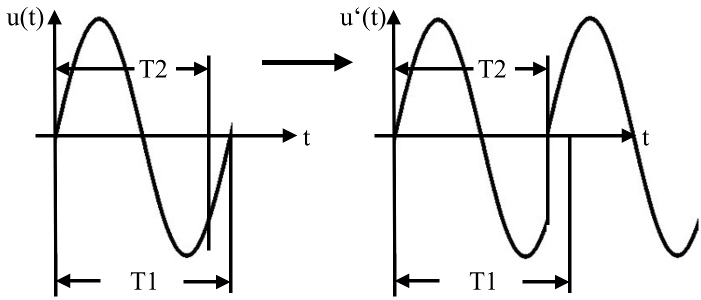


Fig. 6.18. Windowing (T1, T2) a sinusoidal signal

It is clear that, naturally, the result of the transform depends greatly on the type and position of the "cutting-out" process, the so-called windowing. This can be visualized best by performing the DFT on a sinusoidal signal. If exactly one sample is taken from the sinusoidal signal so that it has a length of a multiple n=1, 2, 3 etc of the period, the result of the DFT will exactly match that of the Fourier transform because converting this time segment into periodic signals will again produce a signal which is exactly sinusoidal.

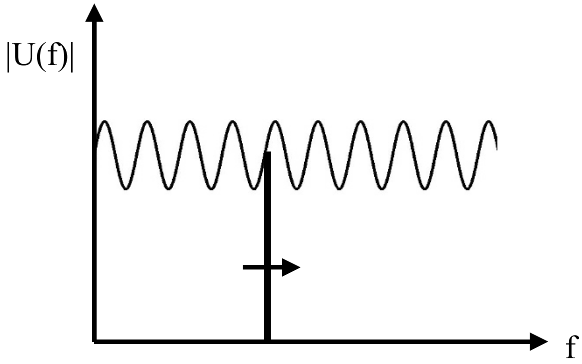


Fig. 6.19. Picket fence effect

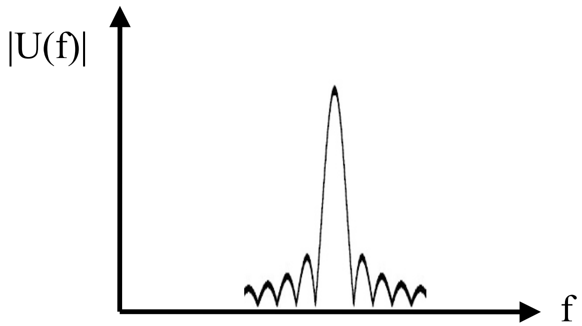


Fig. 6.20. Dispersal of the energy to main and side lobes

If, however, the length of the window (Fig. 6.18.) cut out differs from the length of the period, the result of the transform will differ more or less from the expected value depending on the number of cycles included. A sample of less than one fundamental wave will have the worst effect. A Dirac needle will become a wider “lobe”, in some cases with “sidelobes”. The amplitude of the main lobe will correspond more or less to the expected value. Leaving the period of observation constant and varying the frequency of the signal, the amplitude of the spectral line will fluctuate and will correspond to the expected value whenever there is exactly one multiple of the period within the window of observation; in between that it will become smaller and assume the exact value time and again. This is called the “picket fence” effect (Fig. 6.19.).

The fluctuation in the amplitude of the spectral line is caused by a dispersal of the energy due to a widening of the main lobe and by the appearance of sidelobes (Fig. 6.20.).

In addition, aliasing products may appear if the measurement signal is not properly band-limited; moreover quantization noise becomes visible and will limit the dynamic range.

These systematic errors can be prevented or suppressed by programming an observation time of corresponding length, by good suppression of aliasing products and by using A/D converters having a correspondingly high resolution. In the next section, “windowing” will be discussed as a further aid in suppressing DFT system errors.

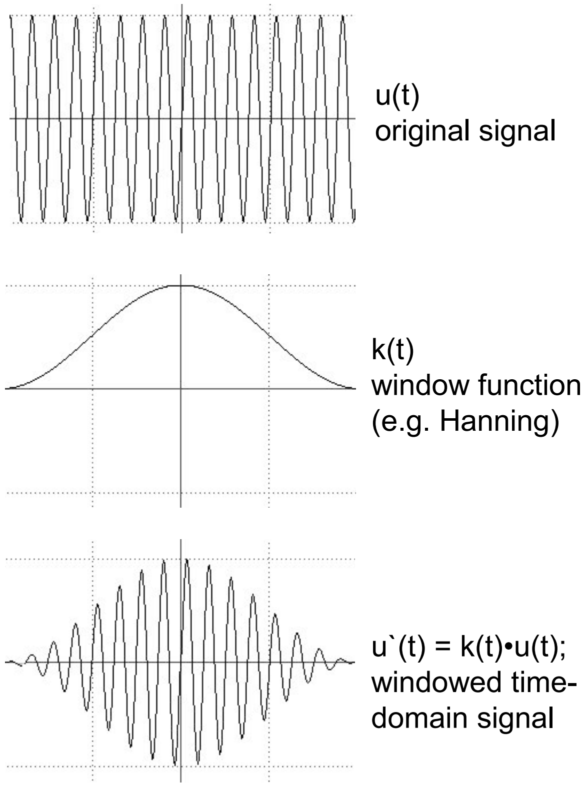


Fig. 6.21. Multiplying a signal by a window function

6.8 Window Functions

In the last section it was shown that windows with abrupt or "hard" edge transitions produced spurious effects, so-called leakage, as picket fence effect and sidelobes. The main lobe is dispersed depending on whether an integral multiple of the period has been sampled or not.

These leakage effects can be reduced by using soft windowing, i.e. a window function with soft edges, instead of a rectangular window with hard rectangular edges.

Fig. 6.21. shows that in windowing, the original signal is weighted, i.e. multiplied by the window function k(t). The signal is cut out softly towards the edge. The window function shown is the Hanning window function - a simple cosine squared window which is the most commonly used window. The sidelobes are attenuated more and the picket fence effect is reduced.

There are a number of windows used in practice, examples of which are:

- Rectangular window
- Hanning window
- Hamming window
- Triangular window
- Tukey window
- Kaiser Bessel window
- Gaussian window
- Blackman window

Depending on the window selected, the main lobes are widened to a greater or lesser extent, the sidelobes are attenuated more or less, and the picket fence effect is reduced to a greater or lesser extent. Rectangular windowing means maximum or no cutting out, the Hanning cosine squared window was shown in the Figure. Regarding the other windows, reference is also made to the relevant literature references and to the article by [HARRIS].

Bibliography: [COOLEY], [PRESS], [BRIGHAM], [HARRIS], [FISCHER], [GIROD], [KUEPF], [BRONSTEIN]

7 Video Coding (MPEG-2, MPEG-4/AVC, HEVC)

The data rates of uncompressed digital video signals range from 270 Mbit/s (SDTV) through 1.5 Gbit/s (HDTV) or 3 Gbit/s (HDTV) to 12 Gbit/s (UHDTV). However, these data rates are too high for efficient storage or transmission, so they need to be first compressed using a so-called perceptual coding to reduce the amount of data. This process is called source coding. In digital TV broadcasting this compression is one of the tasks of the so-called headend, but such operations are sometimes also performed when the video signals are recorded (reportage camera, home video camera, mobile phone, etc.).

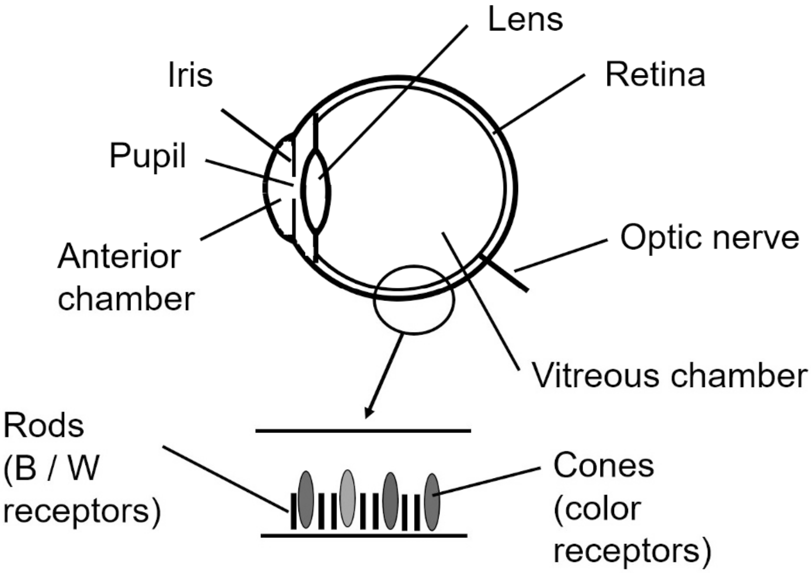


Fig. 7.1. Anatomics of the human eye

After source coding, the video data rate will usually be in the range of 1 ... 15 Mbit/s, depending on the algorithm used (MPEG-1 video, MPEG-2 video, MPEG-4 AVC/H.264 or MPEG-H/H.265/HEVC), the video codec, and the desired image quality (SDTV, HDTV, UHDTV, etc.). The process

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_7

involves redundancy reduction and irrelevance reduction, resulting in very high compression factors, exceeding 1 to 100. This chapter will explain the basics of video coding and the specifics of the compression standards MPEG-2 video (H.262), MPEG-4 Part 10/AVC (H.264) and MPEG-H Part 2/HEVC (H.265).

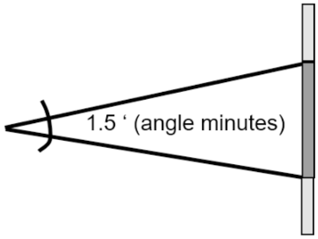


Fig. 7.2. Human eye: limit angle of perceptibility of structures

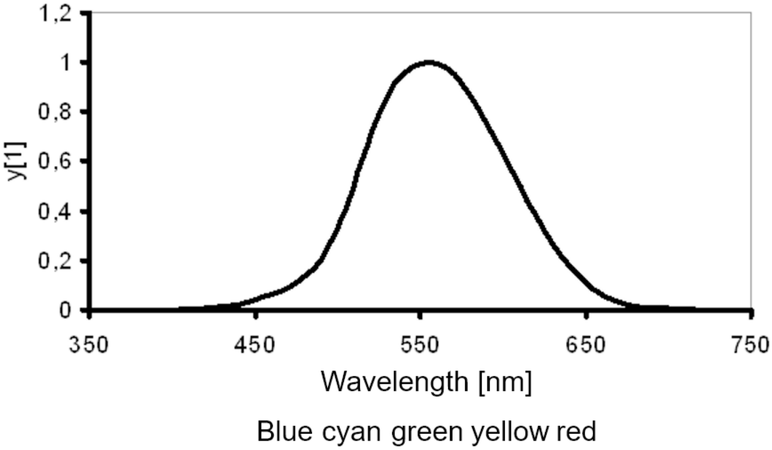


Fig. 7.3. Luminance sensitivity of the human eye

7.1 Video Compression

To compress data, it is possible to remove redundant or irrelevant information from the data stream. Redundant means superfluous, irrelevant means unnecessary. Superfluous information is information which exists several times in the data stream, or information which has no information content, or simply information which can be easily and losslessly recovered by mathematical processes at the receiving end. Redundancy reduction can be achieved, e.g. by variable-length coding. Instead of transmitting ten zeroes, the information ‘ten times zero’ can be sent by means of a special code which is much shorter.

The alphabet of the Morse code, too, uses a type of redundancy reduction. Letters which are used frequently are represented by short code sequences whereas letters which are used less frequently are represented by longer code sequences. In information technology, this type of coding is called Huffman coding or variable length coding.

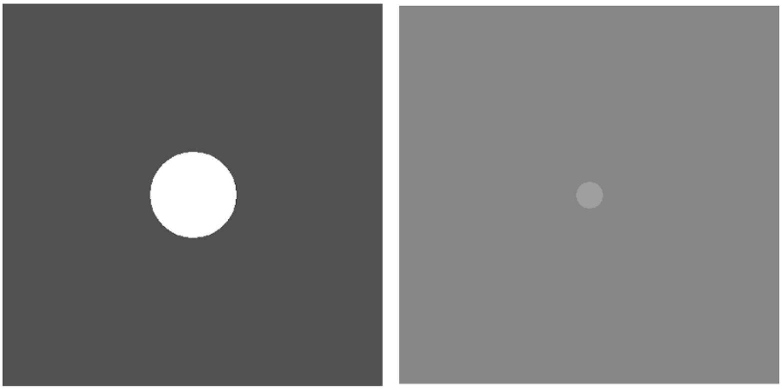


Fig. 7.4. Perception test for coarse and fine image structures

Irrelevant information is the type which cannot be perceived by the human senses. In case of the video signal, they are the components which the eye does not register due to its anatomy. The human eye (Fig. 7.1.) has far fewer color receptors than detection cells for brightness information. For this reason, the “sharpness in the color” can be reduced which means a reduction in the bandwidth of the color information. The receptors for black/white are called rods and the color receptors are cones, both of which are located on the retina of the eye, behind the lens. The lens focuses the image sharply onto the retina. The rods have their main function in night vision and are much more sensitive and present in much greater numbers. The limit angle of the perceptibility of structures is a function of the number of rods in the human eye and is about 1.5 minutes of angle (Fig. 7.2.). There are red-, green- and blue-sensitive cones, the sensitivity to green being much more pronounced than that for blue and red and that for red, in turn, being greater than that for blue (Fig. 7.3.). This also finds its expression in the matrixing formula for forming the luminance signal:

$$Y = 0.30 \cdot R + 0.59 \cdot G + 0.11 \cdot B$$

It is also known that we cannot discern fine structures in a picture, e.g. thin lines, as well as coarse structures. This can be illustrated well by perception tests (Fig. 7.4). If, e.g., one varies the size of a spot and its brightness against a background, the color of which can also be varied, it can be demonstrated that at some point the human eye can no longer see a small spot which differs only slightly from the background. This is precisely the main point of attack for data reduction methods like JPEG and MPEG, where coarse structures are transmitted with much greater accuracy, i.e. with many more bits, than fine structures, performing, in fact, an irrelevance reduction, a so-called perception coding. However, irrelevance reduction is always associated with an irretrievable loss of information which is why the only method considered in data processing is redundancy reduction as, e.g. in the well-known ZIP files.

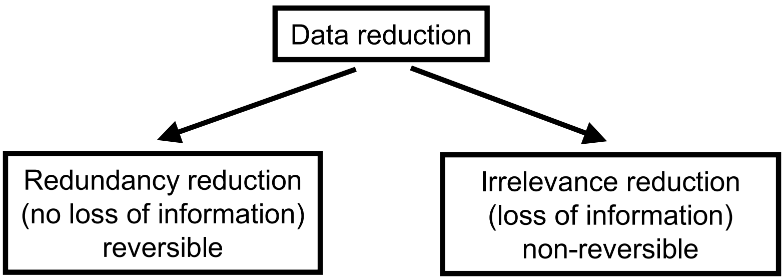


Fig. 7.5. Data reduction

In MPEG, the following steps are carried out in order to achieve a data reduction factor of up to 130:

- 8 bits resolution instead of 10 bits (irrelevance reduction)
- Omitting the horizontal and vertical blanking interval (redundancy reduction)
- Reducing the color resolution also in the vertical direction (4:2:0) (irrelevance reduction)
- Differential pulse code modulation (DPCM) of moving pictures (redundancy reduction)

- Discrete cosine transform (DCT) followed by quantization (irrelevance reduction)
- Zig-zag scanning with variable-length coding (redundancy reduction)
- Huffman coding (redundancy reduction)

Let us begin again with the analog video signal from a television camera. The red, green and blue (RGB) output signals are matrixed to become Y, C_B and C_R signals. After that, the bandwidth of these signals is limited and they are analog/digital converted. According to ITU-R BT.601, this provides a data signal with a data rate of 270 Mbit/s. The color resolution is reduced in comparison with the brightness resolution, making the number of brightness samples twice that of the C_B and C_R values and resulting in a 4:2:2 signal; there is thus already an irrelevance reduction in ITU-R BT.601. It is this 270 Mbit/s signal which must be compressed to about 2...7 (15) Mbit/s in the MPEG video coding process.

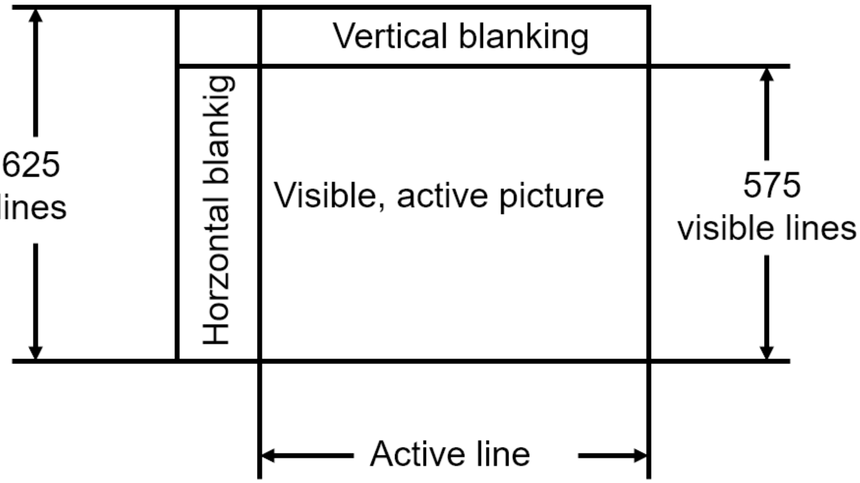


Fig. 7.6. Horizontal and vertical blanking

7.1.1 Reducing the Quantization from 10 Bits to 8

In analog television, the rule of thumb was that when a video signal has a signal/noise ratio, referred to white level and weighted, of more than 48 dB, the noise component is just below the threshold of perception of the human eye. Given the appropriate drive to the A/D converter, the quantization noise from the 8 bit resolution is already well below this threshold so that a 10 bit resolution in Y, C_B and C_R is unnecessary outside the studio. In the studio, 10 bit resolution is better because post-processing is easier and gives better results. Reducing the data rate from 10 bits to 8 bits compared with ITU-R BT.601 means a reduction in the data rate of 20 % ((10-8)/10 = 2/10 = 20 %), but this is an irrelevance reduction and the original signal cannot be recovered in the decoding at the receiving end. According to the rule of thumb that S/N [dB] = 6·N, the quantization noise level has now risen by 12 dB.

7.1.2 Omitting the Horizontal and Vertical Blanking Intervals

The horizontal and vertical blanking intervals of a digital video signal according to ITU-R BT.R601 (Fig. 7.6.) do not contain any relevant information, not even teletext. These areas can contain supplementary data such as sound signals but these must be transmitted coded separately according to MPEG. The horizontal and vertical blanking intervals are, therefore, left out completely in MPEG. The horizontal and vertical blanking intervals and all signals in them can be regenerated again without problems at the receiving end.

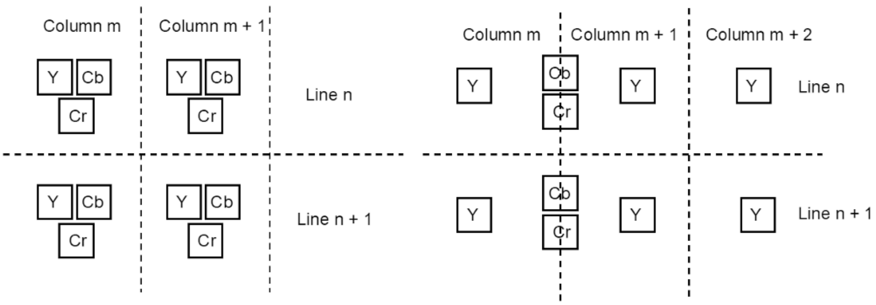


Fig. 7.7. 4:4:4 and 4:2:2 resolution

A PAL signal has 625 lines, only 575 of which are visible. The difference of 50 lines, divided by 625, is 8 % which is the saving in data rate achieved when the vertical blanking is omitted. The length of one line is 64 µs but the active video area is only 52 µs which, divided by 64, amounts to a further saving of 19 % in the data rate. Since there is some overlap in the two savings, the total result of this redundancy reduction is about 25 %.

7.1.3 Reduction in Vertical Color Resolution (4:2:0)

The two color difference signals C_B and C_R are sampled at half the data rate compared with the luminance signal Y. In addition, the bandwidth of C_B and C_R is also reduced to 2.75 MHz in comparison with the luminance bandwidth of 5.75 MHz - a 4:2:2 signal (Fig. 7.7.). However, the color resolution of this 4:2:2 signal is only reduced in the horizontal direction. The vertical color resolution corresponds to the full resolution resulting from the number of lines in a television frame.

However, the human eye cannot distinguish between horizontal and vertical as far as color resolution is concerned. It is possible, therefore, to also reduce the color resolution to one half in the vertical direction without perceptible effect. MPEG-2 does this usually in one of the first steps and the signal then becomes a 4:2:0 signal (Fig.7.8.). Four Y pixels are now in each case associated with only one C_B value and one C_R value each. This type of irrelevance reduction results in another saving of exactly 25 % data rate.

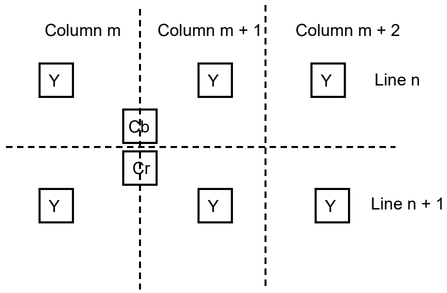


Fig. 7.8. 4:2:0 resolution

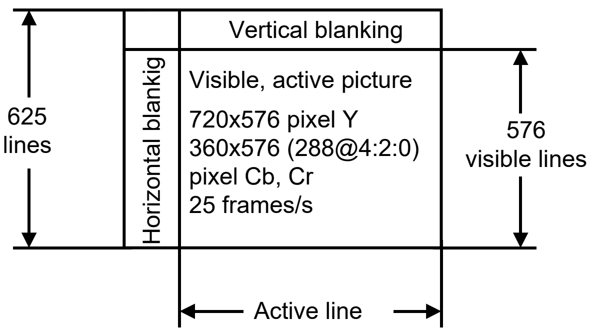


Fig. 7.9. Physical parameters of a SDTV signal

7.1.4 Further Data Reduction Steps

The data reduction carried out up to now has produced the following result: Beginning with an original data rate of 270 Mbit/s, this ITU-R BT.601 signal has now been compressed to 124.5 Mbit/s, i.e. to less than half its original rate, by applying the following steps:

- ITU-R BT.601 = 270 Mbit/s
- 8 bits instead of 10 (-20%) = 216 Mbit/s
- Hor. and vert. blanking (appr. -25%) = 166 Mbit/s
- 4:2:0 (-25%) = 124.5 Mbit/s

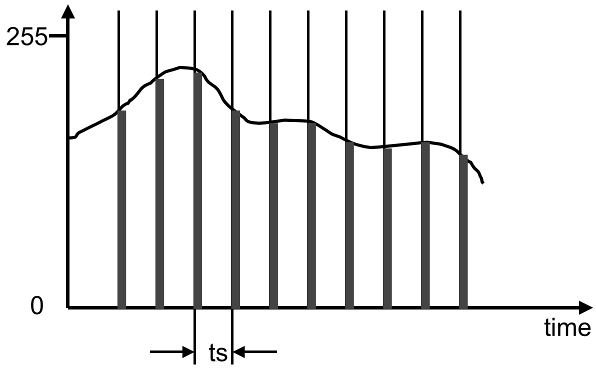


Fig. 7.10. Pulse Code Modulation

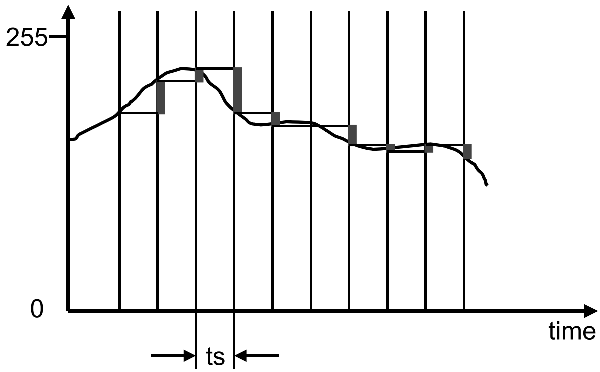


Fig. 7.11. Differential Pulse Code Modulation

There is, however, still a large gap between the 124.5 Mbit/s now achieved and the required 2...6 Mbit/s with its upper limit of 15 Mbit/s, and this gap needs to be closed by means of further steps which are much more complex.

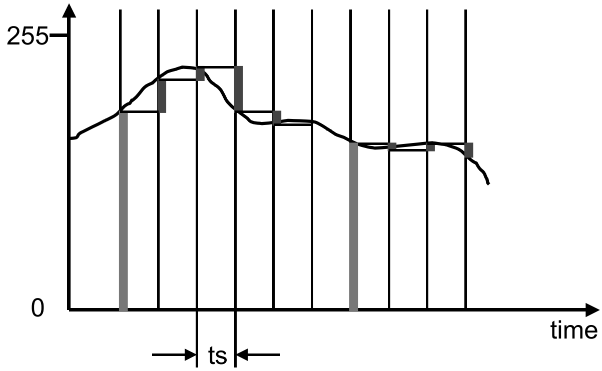


Fig. 7.12. Differential Pulse Code Modulation with reference values

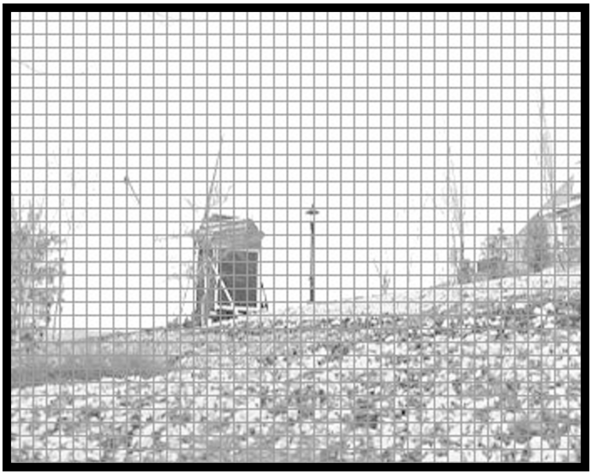


Fig. 7.13. Dividing a picture into blocks and macroblocks

7.1.5 Differential Pulse Code Modulation of Moving Pictures

Adjoining moving pictures differ only very slightly from each other. They contain stationary areas which won't change at all from frame to frame; there are areas which only change their position and there are objects which are newly added. If each frame were to be transmitted completely every time, some of the information transmitted would always be the same, resulting in a very high data rate. The obvious conclusion is to differentiate between these types of picture areas and to transmit only the difference, i.e. the delta value, from one frame to the next. This particular method of redundancy reduction, which is based on a method which has been known for a long time, is called differential pulse code modulation (DPCM).

What then is differential pulse code modulation? If a continuous analog signal is sampled and digitized, discrete values, i.e. values which are no longer continuous, are obtained at equidistant time intervals (Fig.7.10.). These values can be represented as pulses spaced apart at equidistant intervals, which corresponds to a pulse code modulation. The height of each pulse carries information in discrete, non-continuous form about the current state of the sampled signal at precisely this point in time.

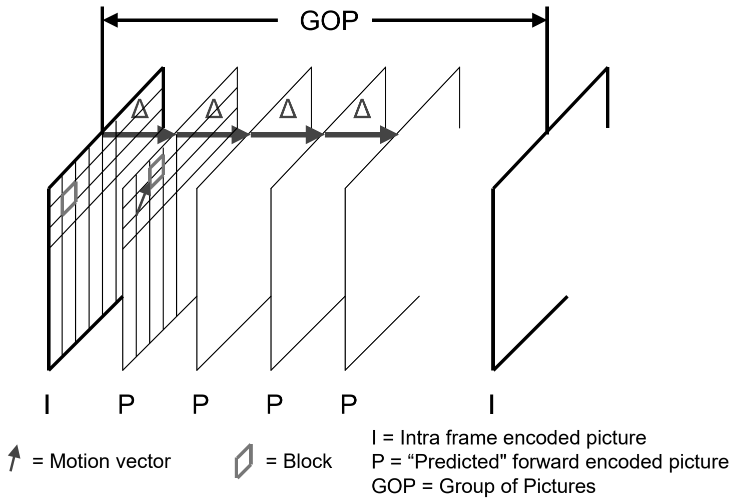


Fig. 7.14. Forward predicted delta frames

In reality, the differences between adjacent samples, i.e. the PCM values, are not very large because of the previous band-limiting. If only the difference between adjacent samples is transmitted, transmission capacity can be saved and the required data rate is reduced. This type of pulse code modulation is a relatively old idea and is now called differential pulse code modulation (Fig. 7.11.).

The problem with the usual DPCM is, however, that after a switch-on or after transmission errors it takes a very long time until the demodulated time domain signal again matches the original signal to some extent. This problem can be eliminated though by employing the small trick of transmitting at regular intervals firstly complete samples, then a few differences followed again by a complete sample etc. (Fig.7.12.) This very closely approaches the differential pulse code modulation method used in the MPEG-1/-2 image compression.

Before a frame is examined for stationary and moving components, it is first divided into numerous square blocks of 16x16 luminance pixels and 8x8 C_B and C_R pixels each (Fig.7.13.). Due to the 4:2:0 pattern, 8x8 C_B pixels and 8x8 C_R pixels are in each case overlaid on one layer of 16x16 luminance pixels each. This arrangement is now called a macroblock (Fig.7.25.). One single frame is composed of a large number of macroblocks and the horizontal and vertical number of pixels is selected to be such that it is divisible by 16 and also by 8 (Y: 720 x 576 pixels). At certain intervals complete reference frames, so-called I (intracoded) frames, formed without forming the difference, are then repeatedly transmitted and interspersed between them the delta frames (interframes).

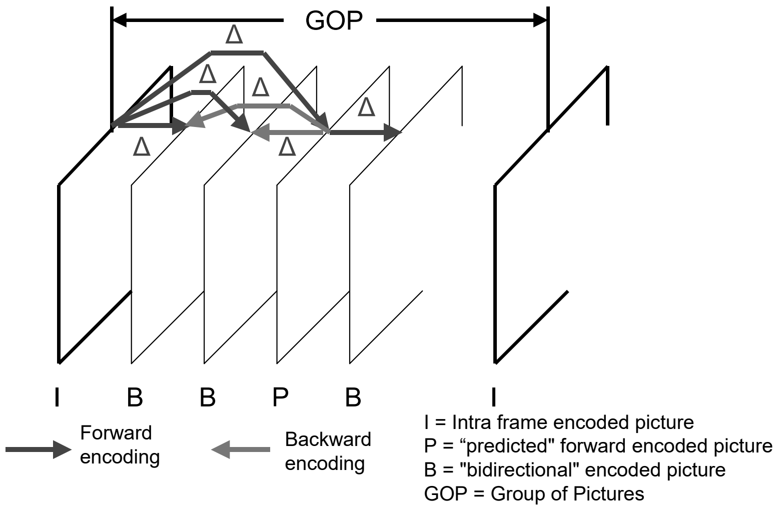


Fig. 7.15. Bidirectionally predicted delta frames

Forming the difference is done at macroblock level, i.e. the respective macroblock of a following frame is always compared with the macroblock of the preceding frame. Put more precisely, this macroblock is first examined to see whether it has shifted in any direction due to movement in the picture, has not shifted at all or whether the picture information in this macroblock is completely new. If there is a simple displacement, only a so-called motion vector is transmitted. In addition to the motion vector, it is also possible to transmit the difference, if any, with respect to the preceding macroblock. If the macroblock has neither shifted nor changed in any way, nothing needs to be transmitted at all. If no correlation with an adjoining preceding macroblock can be found, the macroblock is completely recoded. Such pictures produced by simple forward prediction are called P (predicted) pictures (Fig.7.14.).

Apart from unidirectionally forward predicted frames there are also bidirectionally, i.e. forward and backward, predicted delta frames, so-called B pictures. The reason for this is the much lower data rate in the B pictures compared with the P pictures or even I pictures, which becomes possible as a result of this. The arrangement of frames occurring between two I pictures, i.e. complete pictures, is called a group of pictures (GOP) (Fig.7.14.).

The motion estimation for obtaining the motion vectors proceeds as follows: Starting with a delta frame to be encoded, the system looks in the preceding frame (forward prediction P) and possibly also in the subsequent frame (bidirectional prediction B) for suitable macroblock information in the environment of the macroblock to be encoded. This is done by using the principle of block matching within a certain search area around the macroblock.

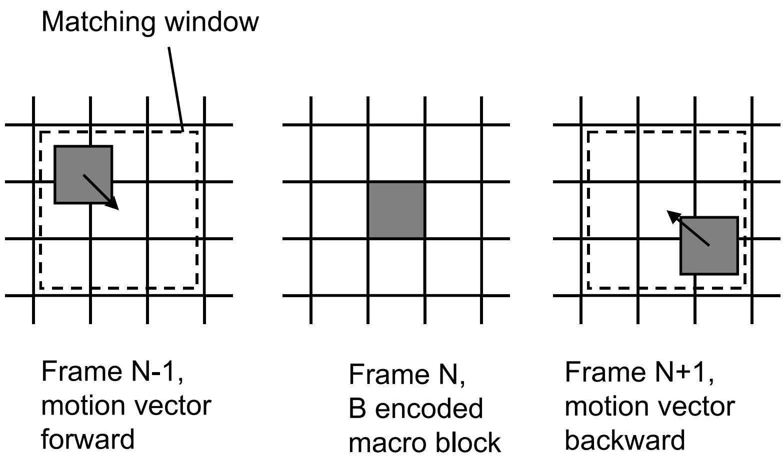


Fig. 7.16. Motion vectors

If a matching block is found in front, and also behind in the case of bidirectional coding, the motion vectors are determined forward and backward and transmitted. In addition, any additional block delta which may be necessary can also be transmitted, both forward and backward. However, the block delta is coded separately by DCT with quantization, described in the next chapter, a method which saves a particularly large amount of storage space.

A group of pictures (GOP) then consists of a particular number and a particular structure of B pictures and P pictures arranged between two I pictures. A GOP usually has a length of about 12 frames and corresponds to the order of I, B, B, P, B, B, P, ... The B pictures are thus embedded between I and P pictures. Before it is possible to decode a B picture at the receiving end, however, it is absolutely necessary to have the information of the preceding I and P pictures and that of the following I or P picture in each case. But according to MPEG, the GOP structure can be variable. So that not too much storage space needs to be reserved at the receiving end, the GOP structure must be altered during the transmission so that the respective backward prediction information is already available before the actual B pictures. For this reason, the frames are transmitted in an order which no longer corresponds to the original order.

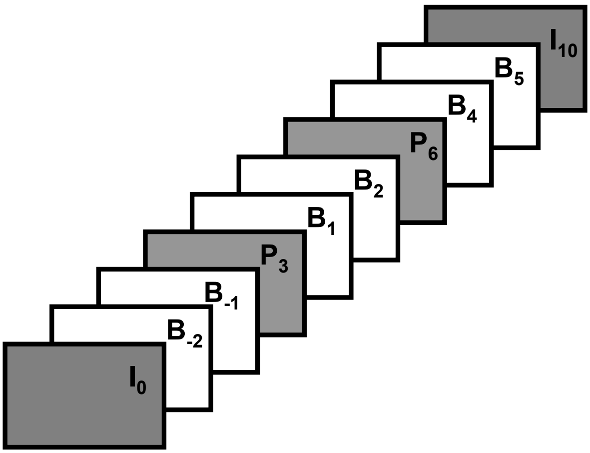


Fig. 7.17. Order of picture transmission

Instead of the order I_0, B_1, B_2, P_3, B_4, B_5, P_6, B_7, B_8, P_9, the pictures are now transmitted in the following order: I_0, B_{-2}, B_{-1}, P_3, B_1, B_2, P_6, B_4, B_5, P_9, etc. (Fig. 7.17.). That is to say, the P or I pictures following the B pictures are now available at the receiving end before the corresponding B pictures are received and must be decoded. The storage space to be reserved at the receiving end is now calculable and limited. To be able to restore the original order, the frame numbers must be transmitted coded in some way. For this purpose, the DTS (decoding time stamp) values contained in the PES header are used, among other things (see Section 3, The MPEG Data Stream).

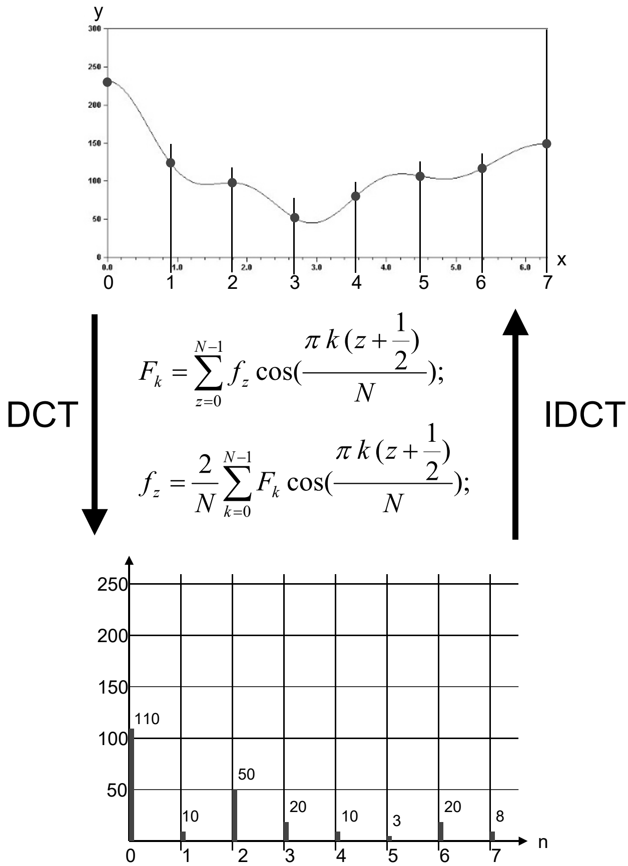


Fig. 7.18. One-dimensional Discrete Cosine Transform

7.1.6 Discrete Cosine Transform Followed by Quantization

A very successful method for still-frame compression has been in use since the end of the eighties: the JPEG method, which today is also being used for digital cameras and produces excellent picture quality. JPEG stands for Joint Photographic Experts Group, i.e. a group of experts in the coding of still frames. The basic algorithm used in JPEG is the Discrete Cosine Transform (Fig.7.18.), or DCT in brief. This DCT also forms the central algorithm for the MPEG video coding method.

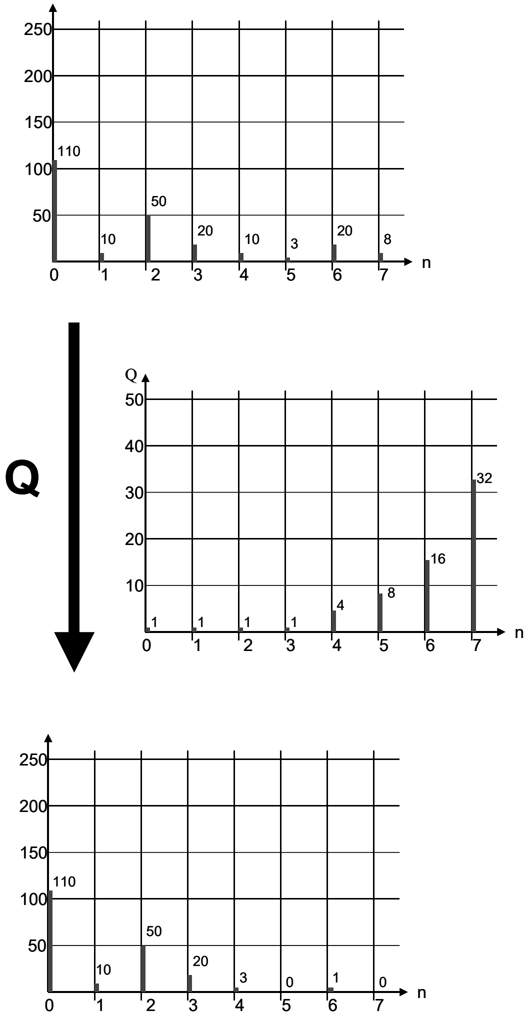
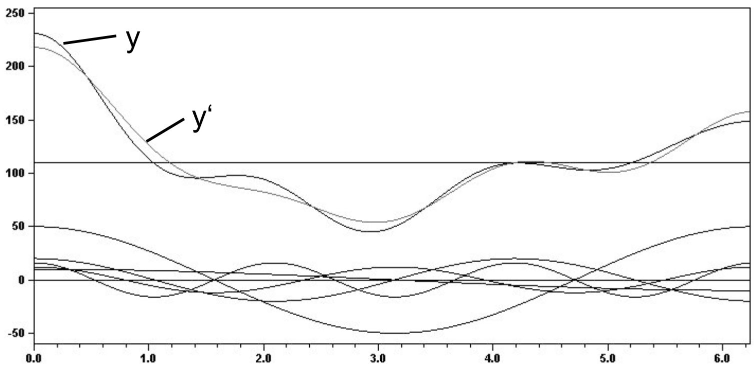


Fig. 7.19. Quantization of the DCT coefficients (top: DCT coefficient F[], center: quantization factors q[], bottom: quantized DCT coefficients F'[])

The human eye perceives fine structures in a picture differently from coarse structures. In analog video test engineering it was already known that low-frequency picture disturbances, i.e. picture disturbances which correspond to coarse image structures or interfere with these are perceived more readily than high-frequency disturbances, i.e. those corresponding to fine image structures or interfering with these.

For this reason, the signal/noise ratio had been measured weighted, i.e. referred to the sensitivity of the eye, even at the beginning of video testing. It was possible to allow for much more noise in the direction of higher-frequency image structures than with coarse, low-frequency image components. This knowledge is utilized in JPEG and in MPEG. Low-frequency, coarse image components are coded with finer quantization and fine image components are coded with coarser quantization in order to save data rate. But how to separate coarse components from medium and fine image components? It is done by means of transform coding (Fig.7.18.).

Firstly, a transition is made from the time domain of the video signal into the frequency domain. The Discrete Cosine Transform is a special case of the Discrete Fourier Transform or the Fast Fourier Transform, respectively.



$y(x)=110+10\cos(0.5x)+50\cos(x)+20\cos(1.5x)+10\cos(2x)+3\cos(2.5x)+20\cos(3x)+8\cos(3.5x);$

$y'(x)=110+10\cos(0.5x)+50\cos(x)+20\cos(1.5x)+12\cos(2x)+0\cos(2.5x)+16\cos(3x)+0\cos(3.5x);$

Fig. 7.20. Original curve (y) and quantized Curve (y')

These transforms are dealt with in a separate Section (5) of this book. To begin with a simple example: Using the DCT, 8 samples in a video line are transformed into the frequency domain (Fig.7.18.). This again provides 8 values which, however, no longer correspond to video voltage values in the time domain but to 8 power values in the frequency domain, graded into DC, low- and medium- to high-frequency components within these 8 transformed video voltage values. The first value (DC coefficient) in the frequency domain corresponds to the energy of the video component with the lowest frequency in this section up to medium- or higher-frequency signal components. The information in one video signal section has now been processed in such a way that an irrelevance reduction can be performed which corresponds to the sensitivity characteristic of the human eye.

In a first step in this process, these coefficients are quantized in the frequency domain, i.e. each coefficient is divided by a certain quantization factor (Fig.7.19.). The higher the value of the quantization factor, the coarser the quantization. In the case of coarse image structures, the quantization must be changed only a little or not at all and in the case of fine image structures, the quantization is reduced more, meaning that the quantization factors increase in the direction of finer image structures. Due to the quantization, many values which have become zero are obtained as the fineness of the image structure increases, that is to say in the direction of higher frequency coefficients.

183	198	220	239	244	236	222	211
198	209	222	231	229	215	198	186
144	154	170	184	190	190	185	180
162	164	166	167	165	161	157	154
195	191	185	180	178	178	179	181
174	168	161	156	160	170	183	192
174	160	138	119	112	115	125	133
152	138	119	105	104	115	133	146

f(x,y)

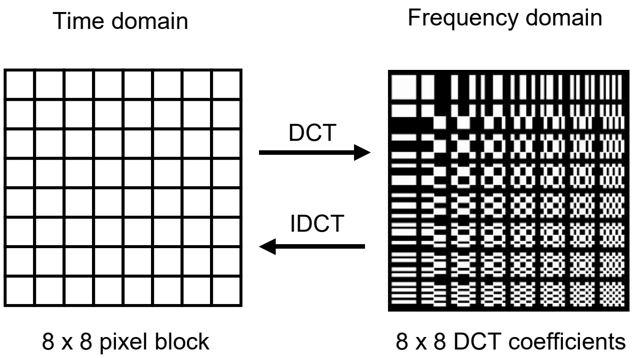
Fig. 7.21. 8 x 8 pixel block

55	70	92	111	116	108	94	83
70	81	94	103	101	87	70	58
16	81	42	56	62	62	57	52
34	36	38	39	37	33	29	26
67	63	57	52	50	50	51	53
46	40	33	28	32	42	55	64
46	32	10	-9	-16	-13	-3	5
24	10	-9	-23	-24	-13	5	18

Fig. 7.22. Subtracting 128

These values can then be coded in a special space-saving way. However, the characteristic recovered by decoding at the receiving end after the quantization then no longer corresponds perfectly to the original curve (Fig.7.20.) and exhibits quantization errors.

In practice, however, the coding in JPEG and MPEG is two-dimensional transform coding. For this, the picture is divided into 8 x 8 pixel blocks (Fig.7.13.). Each 8 x 8 pixel block (Fig.7.23.) is then transformed into the frequency domain by means of the two-dimensional Discrete Cosine Transform. Before that is done, the value 128 is first subtracted from all pixel values in order to obtain signed values (Fig.7.22.).



DC coefficient

1384	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
216	-36	-99	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
99	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
-58	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	-60	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

F(v,u) = DCT(f(x,u));

Fig. 7.23. Two-dimensional DCT

The result (Fig.7.23.) of the two-dimensional Discrete Cosine Transform of an 8 x 8 pixel array is another 8 x 8 pixel array, but now in the frequency domain. The first coefficient of the first row is the DC coefficient which corresponds to the DC component of the entire block. The second coefficient corresponds to the energy of the coarsest image structures in the horizontal direction and the last coefficient of the first row corresponds to the energy of the finest image structures in the horizontal direction. The first column of the 8 x 8 pixel block contains from top to bottom the energies of the coarsest image structures down to the finest image structures in the vertical direction. The coefficients of the coarse to fine image structures in the diagonal direction can be found diagonally.

8	16	19	22	26	27	29	34
16	16	22	24	27	29	34	37
19	22	26	27	29	34	34	38
22	22	26	27	29	34	37	40
22	26	27	29	32	35	40	48
26	27	29	32	35	40	48	58
26	27	29	34	38	46	56	69
27	29	35	38	46	56	69	83

Q(v,u)

scale_factor = 2 ;

173	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	-1	-2	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

QF(v,u) = F(v,u) / Q(v,u) / scale_factor ;

Fig. 7.24. Quantization after the DCT

The next step is the quantization (Fig.7.24.). All coefficients are divided by suitable quantization factors. The MPEG standard defines quantization tables but these can be exchanged by any encoder which can replace them with its own tables. These are then made known to the decoder by being transmitted to it. The quantization usually results in a great number of values which have now become zero. After the quantization, the matrix is also relatively symmetric to the diagonal axis from top left to bottom right. The matrix is, therefore, read out in a zig-zag scanning process which then provides a large number of adjacent zeroes. These can then be variable-length coded in the next step, resulting in a very large data reduction. The quantization is the only 'adjusting screw' for controlling the data rate of the video elementary stream.

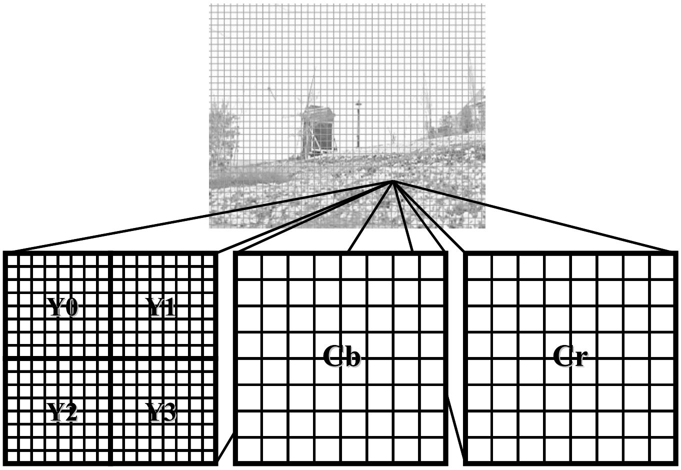
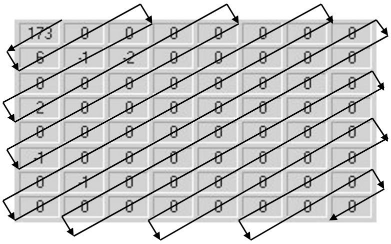


Fig. 7.25. Macroblock Structure with 4:2:0

With 4:2:0, four 8 x 8 Y pixel blocks and one 8 x 8 C_B and 8 x 8 C_R pixel block each are combined to form one macroblock (Fig.7.25.). The quantization for Y, C_B and C_R can be changed by means of a special quantizer scale factor from macroblock to macroblock. This factor alters all quantization factors either of the standard MPEG tables or of the quantization tables provided by the encoder, by a simple multiplication by a certain factor. The complete quantization table can only be exchanged at sequence level at certain times, as will be seen later.

This transform coding followed by quantization must be performed for the Y pixel plane and for the C_B and C_R planes.

In the case of I frames, all macroblocks are coded in the manner described above. In the case of P and B frames, however, the pixel differences are transform-coded from macroblock in one frame to macroblock in another frame. I.e., first the macroblock of the preceding frame may have to be shifted to a suitable position with the aid of the motion vector of the macroblock and then the difference with respect to the macroblock at this position is calculated. Using the DCT, these 8 x 8 difference values are then transformed into the frequency domain and then quantized. The same also applies to the backward prediction of B pictures.



173	6	0	0	-1	0	2	0
-2	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

QFS(v,u)

Fig. 7.26. Zig-zag scanning

173	6	0	0	-1	0	2	0
-2	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RLC

173, 6, 2*0, -1, 1*0, 2, 1*0, -2, 6*0, -1, 13*0, -1, 34*0

Fig. 7.27. Run-length coding (RLC)

7.1.7 Zig-Zag Scanning with Run-Length Coding of Zero Sequences

After the zig-zag scanning (Fig.7.26.) of the quantized DCT coefficients, a large number of adjacent zeroes is obtained. Instead of these many zeroes, only their number is then simply transmitted by using run-length coding (RLC) (Fig.7.27.), transmitting, e.g. the information 10 times 0 instead of 0, 0, 0, ...0. This type of redundancy reduction, in conjunction with DCT and quantization, provides the main gain in the data compression.

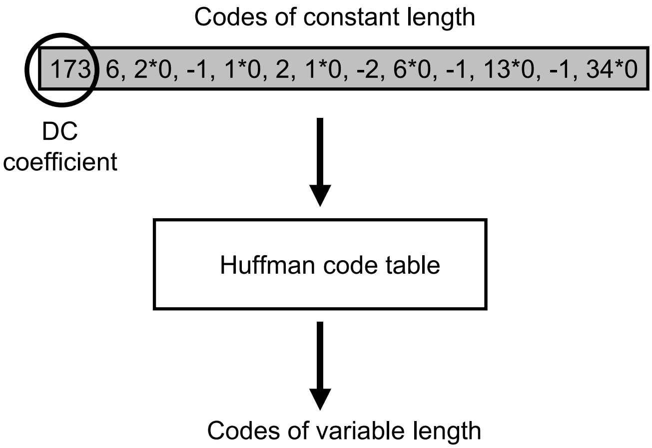


Fig. 7.28. Huffman coding (variable length coding - VLC)

7.1.8 Huffman Coding

Codes occurring frequently in the RLC-coded data stream are also subjected to Huffman coding (Fig.7.28.), i.e., the code words are suitably recoded, resulting in further redundancy reduction. In this type of coding, the codes used frequently are recoded into particularly short codes as in Morse code.

7.2 Summary

By using a few methods of redundancy reduction and irrelevance reduction, it has been possible to reduce the data rate of a standard definition television signal with an initial data rate of 270 Mbit/s in the 4:2:2 format according to ITU BT.R601 to about 2...6 Mbit/s with an upper limit of 15 Mbit/s. The heart of this compression method can be considered to be a differential pulse code modulation with motion compensation in combination with DCT transform coding. MPEG-2 signals intended for distribution to homes have their color resolution reduced both in the horizontal and in the vertical direction. This is then the 4:2:0 format. For studio-studio contribution, MPEG also provides the 4:2:2 format and the data rate is naturally somewhat higher.

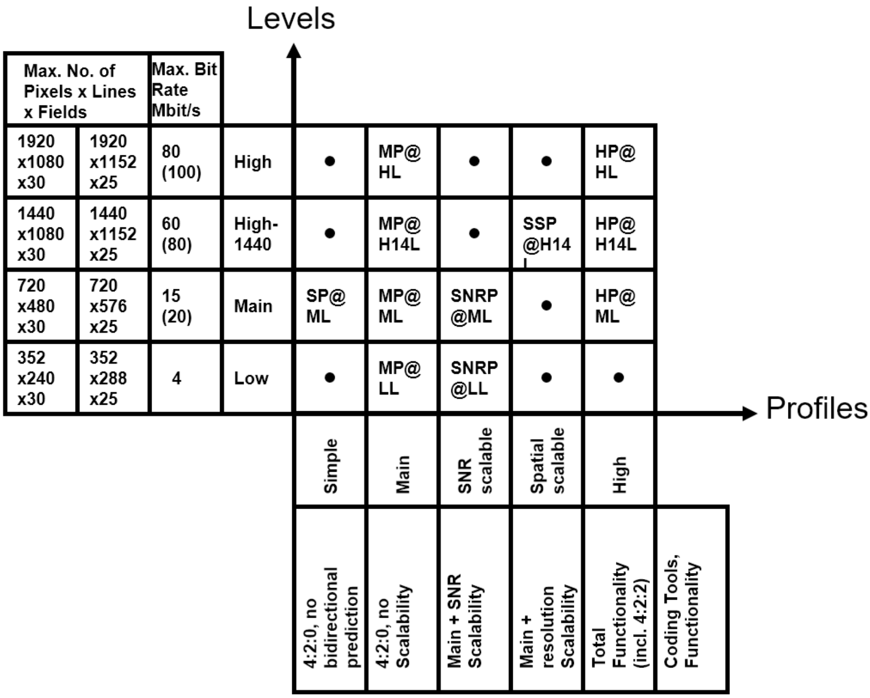


Fig. 7.29. MPEG-2 profiles and levels

Standard Definition (4:2:0) is called Main Profile@Main Level (Fig.7.29.) and Standard Definition (4:2:2) is called High Profile@Main Level. However, the MPEG standard also implements High Definition Television, both as a 4:2:0 signal (Main Profile@High Level) and as a 4:2:2 signal (High Profile@High Level). At over 800 Mbit/s, the initial data rate of an HDTV signal is clearly higher than that of an SDTV signal but the compression processes in HDTV, SDTV and 4:2:2 and 4:2:0 are the same as described before. The resultant signals only differ in their different quality and, naturally, their data rate.

The quality of a 6 Mbit/s SDTV signal in 4:2:0 format approximately corresponds to the quality of a conventional analog TV signal. In practice, however, there are data rates ranging from 2 to 7 Mbit/s which, naturally, determines the picture quality. Correspondingly high data rates are needed, especially for sports broadcasts.

The data rate of the elementary video stream can be constant or can vary depending on the current picture content. The data rate is controlled by changing the quantization factors in dependence on the level of the output buffer of the MPEG encoder (Fig.7.30.).

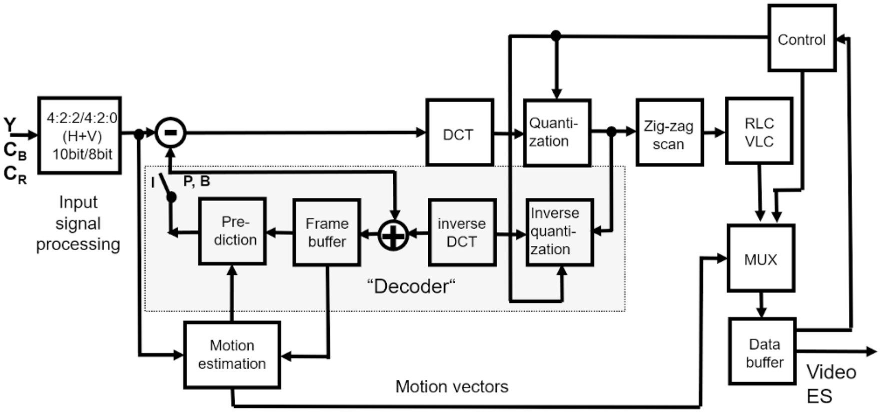


Fig. 7.30. MPEG-2 encoder

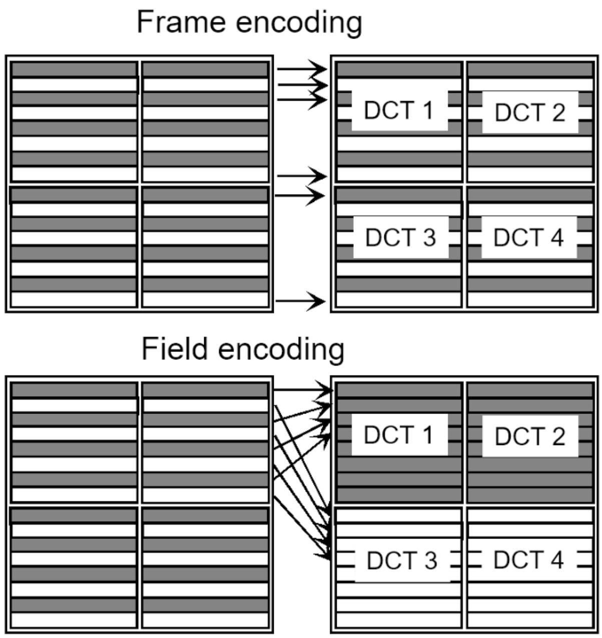


Fig. 7.31. Frame/field coding of macroblocks

The macroblocks of an I, P or B picture can be coded in various ways. The most numerous variants occur especially in the case of the B picture where a macroblock can be coded in the following ways:

- Intraframe coded (completely new)
- Forward coded
- Forward and backward coded
- Skipped (not coded at all)

The type of coding is decided by the encoder (Fig.7.30.) with reference to the current picture content and the available channel capacity (data rate).

In contrast to analog television, no fields are transmitted but only frames. The fields are then recreated at the receiving end by reading out the frame buffer in a particular way.

There is, however, a special type of DCT coding which results in better image quality for the interlaced scanning method. This involves frame and field coding of macroblocks (Fig.7.31.). In this method, macroblocks are first recoded line by line before being subjected to DCT coding.

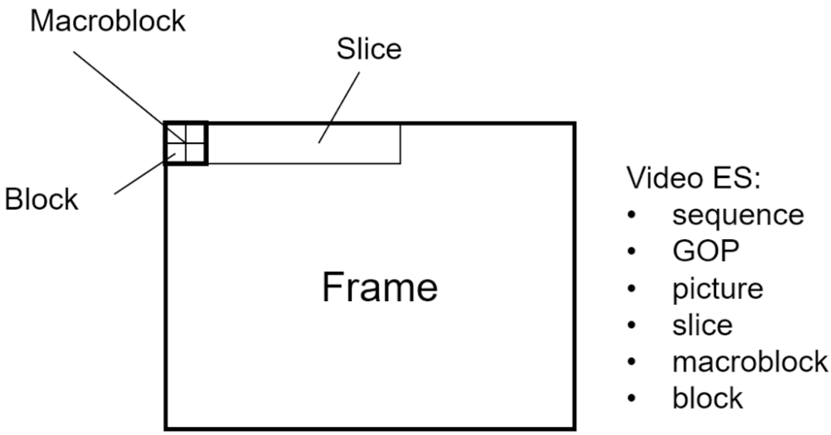


Fig. 7.32. Block, macroblock, slice and frame in MPEG-2 video

7.3 Structure of the Video Elementary Stream

The smallest unit of the video stream is a block consisting of 8 x 8 pixels. Each block is subjected to a separate Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT) during the encoding. In the case of a 4:2:0 profile, four luminance blocks and one C_B block and one C_R block in each case together form one macroblock. Each macroblock can exhibit a different amount of quantization, i.e. be compressed to a greater or lesser extent. To this end, the video encoder can select different scaling factors by which each DCT coefficient is additionally divided. These quantizer scaling factors are the actual “set screws” for the data rate of the video PES stream. The quantization table itself cannot be exchanged from macroblock to macroblock. Each macroblock can be either frame encoded or field encoded. This is decided by the encoder on the basis of necessity and opportunity. One necessity for field encoding arises from the existence of motion components between the first and second field and an opportunity is presented by the available data rate.

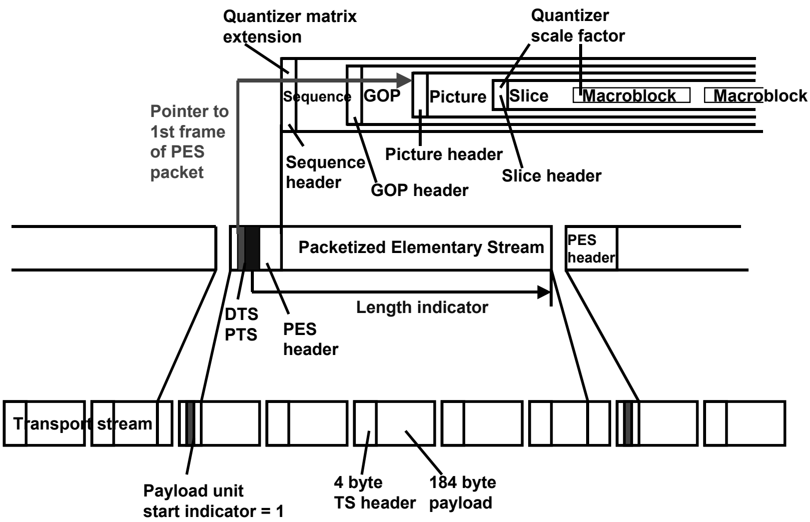


Fig. 7.33. Structure of MPEG-2 video elementary stream

Together, a certain number of macroblocks in a row form a slice (Fig.7.32.). Each slice starts with a header which is used for resynchronization, e.g. in the case of bit errors. At the level of the video stream, error concealment mainly takes place at slice level, i.e. in the case of bit errors, the MPEG decoders copy the slice of the preceding frame into the current frame. The MPEG decoder can resynchronize itself again with the beginning of a new slice. The shorter the slices, the lower the interference caused by bit errors.

Many slices together will then form a frame (picture). A frame, too, starts with a header, the picture header. There are different types of frames, called I (intraframe) frame, P (predicted) frame and B (bidirectionally predicted) frame. Because of the bidirectional differential coding, the order of the frames does not correspond to the original order and the headers and especially the PES headers, therefore, carry a time stamp so that the original order can be restored (DTS = Decoding Time Stamps).

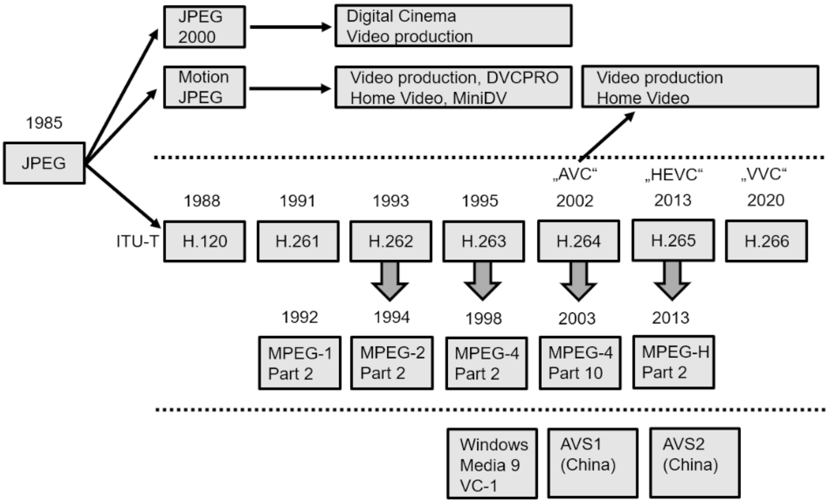


Fig. 7.34. History of the development of video coding

Together, a certain number of frames corresponding to a coding pattern of the I, P and B frame coding predetermined by the encoder, form a group of pictures (GOP). Each GOP has a GOP header. In broadcasting, relatively short GOPs are used which, as a rule, have a length of about 12 frames, i.e about half a second. The MPEG decoder can only lock to the signal and begin to reproduce pictures when it receives the start of a GOP, i.e. the first I frame. Longer GOPs can be chosen for mass storage devices such as the DVD since it is easy to position their read head on the first I frame.

One or more GOPs produce a sequence, each of which also starts with a header. At the sequence header level, it is possible to change essential video parameters such as the quantization table. If an MPEG encoder uses its own table which differs from the standard, this is where it will be found or, respectively, where the decoder is informed of this.

The structure of the video PES stream (Fig. 7.33.) described above is embedded wholly or partially in the video PES packets. The manner of this embedment and the length of a PES packet are determined by the video encoder. On mass storage devices such as the DVD, the PES packets are additionally inserted in so-called packs. PES packets and packs also start with a header.

7.4 More Recent Video Compression Methods

Time has not stood still. Today, more modern, more advanced compression methods such as MPEG-4 Part 10 Advanced Video Coding (AVC) (H.264), Windows Media 9 (= VC-1) or HEVC are available. With data rates which are lower by a factor of 2 to 3, a better image quality than with MPEG-2 can be achieved in many cases. Although the basic principle of video coding has not changed, the difference lies in the details. Thus, variable transform block sizes are used e.g. in H.264. Fig.7.34. shows the history of the development of video coding. As has already been mentioned several times, establishment of the JPEG standard was also a milestone of sorts for motion picture coding. DCT was used for the first time in JPEG and was only replaced by a similar transform, an integer transform, in MPEG-4 Part 10 (= H.264). Video coding was developed as part of the ITU-T H.xxx standards and then incorporated in the series of MPEG video coding methods as MPEG-1, MPEG-2 and MPEG-4. MPEG-2 Part 2 Video corresponds to H-262, MPEG-4 Part 2 Video to H.263 and MPEG-4 Part 10 AVC (Advanced Video Coding), finally, to ITU-T H.264.

7.5 MPEG-4 Advanced Video Coding

Compared with MPEG-2, the much improved MPEG-4 Part 10 AVC (H.264) video codec enables the data rates to be decreased by 30 to 50%. This means that an SDTV signal can now be compressed to approx. 1.5 ... 3 Mbit/s compared with a data rate of 2 ... 7 Mbit/s, the original uncompressed data rate having been 270 Mbit/s. Using MPEG-4, an HDTV signal can be shrunk to about 10 Mbit/s from its original 1.5 Gbit/s. MPEG-2 would have required about 20 Mbit/s for this.

MPEG-4 Part 10 Advanced Video Coding (H.264) is distinguished by the following features:

- Formats 4:2:0, 4:2:2 and 4:4:4 are supported
- Up to 16 reference frames maximum
- Improved motion compensation (1/4 pixels accuracy)
- Switching P (SP) and Switching I (SI) frames
- Higher accuracy due to 16 bit implementation

- Flexible macroblock structure (16x16, 16x8, 8x16, 8x4, 4x8, 4x4)
- 52 selectable sets of quantization tables
- Integer or Hadamard transform instead of a DCT (block size 4x4 or 2x2 pixels, resp.)
- In-loop deblocking filter (eliminates blocking artefacts)
- Flexible slice structure (better bit error performance)
- Entropy encoding; variable length coding (VLC) and context adaptive binary arithmetic coding (CABAC)

The details are as follows:

In MPEG-2 video coding, a 4:2:0 format macroblock consists of 4 luminance blocks of 8x8 pixels and one C_B and C_R block each of 8x8 pixels. MPEG-4 provides much more flexibility in this respect. Here, a macroblock has a size of either 16x16, 16x8, 8x16, 8x4, 4x8 or 4x4 pixels in the luminance layer. The block itself comprises either 4x4 or 2x2 pixels whereas it was always fixed at 8x8 pixels in MPEG-2 and MPEG-1.

The accuracy of the motion compensation is now 1/4 pixel instead of 1/2 pixel in MPEG-2. In the MPEG-2 interframe coding it was only possible to use one reference in each direction. In MPEG-4, it is possible to form several reference frames which enables the data rate to be reduced considerably.

In MPEG-2, a slice was always a multiple of macroblocks in the horizontal direction whereas MPEG-4 provides for a flexible macroblock allocation in a slice.

But it is mainly in the field of transform coding that MPEG-4 shows great changes.

In principle, MPEG-2 transform coding by means of the DCT is actually performed by a matrix multiplication in the encoder which is then inverted in the decoder. For this purpose, a lookup table is stored in the hardware. The formula for the two-dimensional DCT is:

$$F(u,v) = \frac{2}{N} C(u)C(v) \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \sum_{y=0}^{N-1} f(x,y) \cos\frac{(2x+1)u\pi}{2N} \cos\frac{(2y+1)v\pi}{2N}$$

$$C(u), C(v) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \text{for } u,v = 0 \\ 1 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Fig. 7.35. Definition of Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT)

It can be split into matrix multiplications based on a matrix of cosine values:

$M_{ab}[] \longrightarrow a \qquad M_{ab}[\ ] = \cos(\frac{(2a+1)b\pi}{16});$

$\downarrow b$

cos(0) =1	cos(0) =1	cos(0) =1	cos(0) =1	cos(0) =1	cos(0) =1	cos(0) =1	cos(0) =1
cos(π/16) =0.9808	cos(3π/16) =0.8315	cos(5π/16) =0.5556	cos(7π/16) =0.1951	cos(9π/16) =-0.1951	cos(11π/16) =-0.5556	cos(13π/16) =-0.8315	cos(15π/16) =-0.9808
cos(π/8) =0.9239	cos(3π/8) =0.3827	cos(5π/8) =-0.3827	cos(7π/8) =-0.9239	cos(9π/8) =-0.9239	cos(11π/8) =-0.3827	cos(13π/8) =0.3827	cos(15π/8) =0.9239
cos(3π/16) =0.8315	cos(9π/16) =-0.1950	cos(15π/16) =-0.9808	cos(21π/16) =-0.5556	cos(27π/16) =0.5556	cos(33π/16) =0.9808	cos(39π/16) =0.1951	cos(45π/16) =-0.8315
cos(π/4) =0.7071	cos(3π/4) =-0.7071	cos(5π/4) =-0.7071	cos(7π/4) =0.7071	cos(9π/4) =0.7071	cos(11π/4) =-0.7071	cos(13π/4) =-0.7071	cos(15π/4) =0.7071
cos(5π/16) =0.5556	cos(15π/16) =-0.9807	cos(25π/16) =0.1951	cos(35π/16) =0.8315	cos(45π/16) =-0.8315	cos(55π/16) =-0.1951	cos(65π/16) =0.9808	cos(75π/16) =-0.5556
cos(3π/8) =0.3827	cos(9π/8) =-0.9239	cos(15π/8) =0.9239	cos(21π/8) -0.3827	cos(27π/8) =-0.3827	cos(33π/8) =0.9239	cos(39π/8) =-0.9239	cos(45π/8) =0.3827
cos(7π/16) =0.1951	cos(21π/16) =-0.5556	cos(35π/16) =0.8315	cos(49π/16) =-0.9808	cos(63π/16) =0.9808	cos(77π/16) =-0.8315	cos(91π/16) =0.5556	cos(105π/16) =-0.1951

Fig. 7.36. Cosine matrix lookup table

The Discrete Cosine Transform can be represented and executed as a matrix multiplication in both directions:

$F[] = C \cdot f[] \cdot M_{ab}[] \cdot M_{ab}[]^T;$

where $M_{ab}[]^T$ is the transposed matrix of $M_{ab}[]$, i.e. columns and rows have been swapped. This makes it possible to simultaneously perform both a horizontal and a vertical transformation, i.e. two-dimensional transformation. Linking it to matrix C makes the matrix M_{ab} into a so-called orthonormal matrix which is of great practical significance for implementing the transformation process. An orthogonal matrix is a matrix in which the inverted matrix corresponds to the transposed matrix. The following thus applies in the case of an orthogonal matrix:

$M^T = M^{-1};$

An orthogonal matrix has the additional property that the vectors of the matrix all have the same length. The matrix of cosine values becomes an orthonormal matrix if the first row is multiplied by 1/√2 which is achieved by multiplying it by matrix C. Reversing the transformation process requires an inverted matrix.

Naturally, inverting the multiplication

$M_1 = M_2 \cdot M_3$

is not

$M_2 = M_1/M_3^{-1}$

but is defined by

$M_2 = M_1 \cdot M_3^{-1}$;

i.e. by the multiplication by the transposed matrix.

In principle, a matrix multiplication is defined as follows:

$$A \cdot B = \left[\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij} \cdot b_{jk} \right];$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11}, a_{12} \\ a_{21}, a_{22} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} b_{11}, b_{12} \\ b_{21}, b_{22} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}b_{11} + a_{12}b_{21}, a_{11}b_{21} + a_{12}b_{22} \\ a_{21}b_{11} + a_{22}b_{21}, a_{21}b_{12} + a_{22}b_{22} \end{bmatrix};$$

Fig. 7.37. Definition of a matrix multiplication

Apart from the Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT), other transformation processes are also conceivable for compressing frames and can be represented as matrix multiplications, these being the

- Karhunen Loeve Transform (1948/1960)
- Haar's Transform (1910)
- Walsh-Hadamard Transform (1923)
- Slant Transform (Enomoto, Shibata, 1971)
- Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT, Ahmet, Natarajan, Rao, 1974)
- Short Wavelet Transform

A great advantage of the DCT is the great energy concentration (Fig. 7.38.) to a very few values in the spectral domain, and the avoidance of Gibbs' phenomenon which would lead to overshoots in the inverse transformation and thus to clearly visible blocking. Gibbs' phenomenon (Fig. 7.39.), known from DCT, is based on the sinusoidal component of this transformation process.

183	198	220	239	244	236	222	211
198	209	222	231	229	215	198	186
144	154	170	184	190	190	185	180
162	164	166	167	165	161	157	154
195	191	185	180	178	178	179	181
174	168	161	156	160	170	183	192
174	160	138	119	112	115	125	133
152	138	119	105	104	115	133	146

- DCT performs energy concentration
- information can now be stored in a few values
- many values are zeroes

1384	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
216	-36	-99	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
99	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
-58	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	-60	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Fig. 7.38. Energy concentration of the DCT

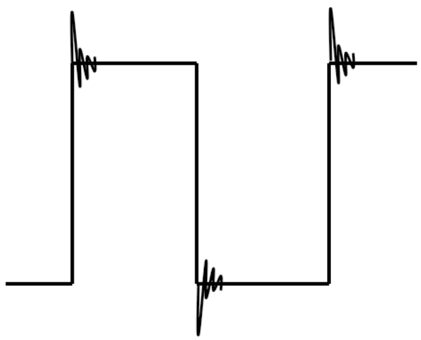


Fig. 7.39. Gibbs' phenomenon

Since the cosine matrix of the DCT has now been converted into 1/√2 by the conversion of the first row which consisted of all ones, and has thus become orthonormal, implementation of the transform and its inverse is quite simple.

The transform and its inverse can now be represented as follows:

$$F = f \cdot M_{ab} \cdot M_{ab}^{T};$$

$$f = F \cdot M_{ab}^{T} \cdot M_{ab};$$

During the quantization, the results of the transform and its inverse were additionally influenced by a scalar multiplication

$$F = f \cdot M_{ab} \cdot M_{ab}^{T} \cdot Q;$$

$$f = F \cdot M_{ab}^{T} \cdot M_{ab} \cdot Q`;$$

If only ones are entered in Q and Q', nothing changes. However, the quantization of the DCT coefficients is reduced towards higher frequencies via Q.

In various transformation methods, only other matrices M_{ab} are used, in principle, i.e. "basic functions" from which it is attempted to represent the original functions are others. In the case of the DCT, these are cosine patterns.

In MPEG-4, these basic patterns, or the coefficients of the matrix M_{ab}, respectively, are replaced by others. In the case of MPEG-4, this is called an integer matrix multiplication or also Hadamard transformation. The transformation matrices used in MPEG-4 AVC are the following:

$$T=\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad H=\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad C=\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

T = integer transform for luma and chroma samples
H = Hadamard transform for luma DC coefficients
C = Hadamard transform for chroma DC coeffients

Fig. 7.40. Transformation matrices in MPEG-4 AVC

The matrices used in MPEG-4 AVC have a size of only 4x4 or 2x2 pixels, respectively. In the case of luminance, the transformation is performed in two steps. In the first step, the original 4x4 pixel blocks are transformed into the spectral domain by means of the matrix T. Following this, the DCT coefficients of 16 blocks are again transformed by means of the Hadamard matrix H so that they can be compressed further (Fig. 7.41.)

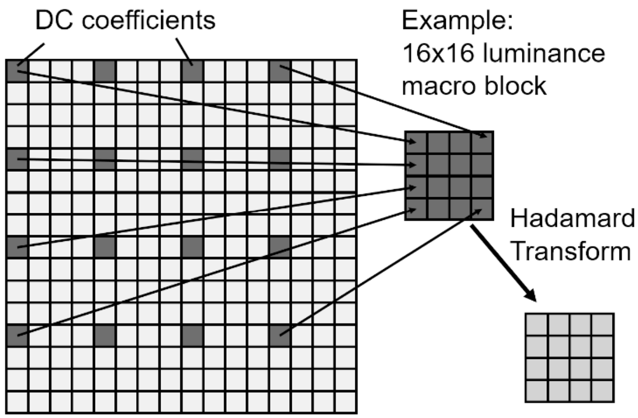


Fig. 7.41. Hadamard transform of the DC coefficients in MPEG-4 AVC

In MPEG-2, it is either the matrices specified in the Standard which are used, or they are specified by the encoder and modified and in each case transmitted to the receiver in the sequence header at the beginning of a sequence. In addition, in MPEG-2, each coefficient is divided by the quantizer scale factor which ultimately determines the actual data rate. MPEG-4 uses a set of 52 quantization matrices.

MPEG-4 also uses a deblocking filter (Fig. 7.42.) which is intended to additionally suppress the visibility of blocking artefacts. This is also aided by the smaller block size and the variable macroblock and slice size.

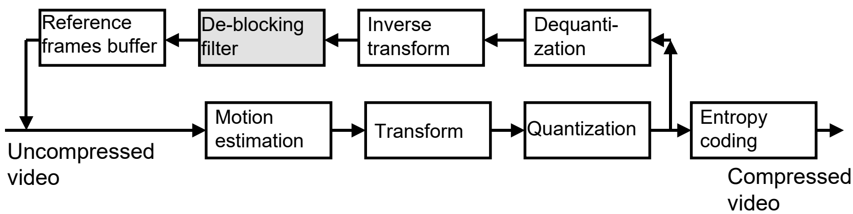


Fig. 7.42. Deblocking filter in MPEG-4

Like MPEG-2, MPEG-4 also has profiles and levels. SDTV (standard definition TV) largely corresponds to Main Profile @ Level 3 (MP@L3). HDTV (high definition TV) is then Main Profile @ Level 4 (MP@L3).

Table 7.1. MPEG-4 AVC profiles

Coding tools	Baseline profile	Extended profile	Main profile
I, P slices	x	x	x
CAVLC	x	x	x
Error resilience	x	x	
SP and SI slices		x	
B slices		x	x
Interlaced coding		x	x
CABAC			x

Table 7.2. MPEG-4 levels

Level number	Typical picture size	Max. frame rate for typ. picture size	Max. compressed bit rate	Max. number of reference frames of typ. picture size
1	QCIF	15	64 kbit/s	4
1.1	320 x 240	10	192 kbit/s	3
	QCIF	30		9
1.2	CIF	15	384 kbit/s	6
1.3	CIF	30	768 kbit/s	6
2	CIF	30	2 Mbit/s	6
2.1	HHR	30/25	4 Mbit/s	6
2.2	SD	15	4 Mbit/s	5
3	SD	30/25	10 Mbit/s	5
3.1	1280 x 720p	30	14 Mbit/s	5
3.2	1280 x 720p	60	20 Mbit/s	4
4	HD 720p, 1080i	60p/30i	20 Mbit/s	4
4.1	HD 720p, 1080i	60p/30i	50 Mbit/s	4
4.2	1920 x 1080p	60p	50 Mbit/s	4
5	2k x 1k	72	135 Mbit/s	5
5.1	2k x 1k	120	240 Mbit/s	5
	4k x 2k	30		

MPEG-4 Part 10 AVC allows an image compression which is more effective by at least 30% up to 50%, with better image quality. The SDTV data rate after compression is now less than 3 Mbit/s and the HDTV data rate is less than 10 Mbit/s. MPEG-4 AVC also makes it possible to use clearly less than 1 Mbit/s for mobile TV with SDTV quality.

MPEG-4 AVC is used today for HDTV in DVB-S2 and was used in mobile TV as part of DVB-H and T-DMB. MPEG-4 AVC can be incorporated without problems in the MPEG-2 transport stream. On the contrary, there have been no attempts at changing anything in the transport layer. The lip synch mechanisms are the same, too, and have their origin in the MPEG-1 PES layer.

7.6 HEVC — High Efficiency Video Coding, UHDTV

MPEG-2 video coding has been used very successfully in digital television since the 1990s, primarily for Standard Definition Television (SDTV) at data rates of about 3 to 6 Mbit/s, but also for High Definition Television (USA/ATSC V1.0, Australia/DVB-T) at data rates of about 20 Mbit/s per program. DVDs apply MPEG-2 video coding. Since 2003, MPEG-4 Part 10, Advanced Video Coding (AVC) or H.264 has seen increasing use in all application areas where compressed video signals are needed. H.264 / AVC saves about half the data rate compared to MPEG-2 video, making SDTV with about 1.5 to 3 Mbit/s and HDTV with approximately 10 Mbit/s per video signal per program possible. By today, high definition television has become standard; there is at least one flat screen in every modern household, and screen diagonals have increased from about 30 inches to 50 or more. Meanwhile, the next generation HDTV, called UHDTV (Ultra High Definition Television), is emerging with resolutions of at least 3840 x 2160 pixels, i.e. at least double that of Full HD. This once again brings the data rates of compressed UHDTV streams above 30 Mbit/s, so new video codecs are needed. The following section describes ITU-T H.265, the standard for High Efficiency Video Coding (HEVC), also taking a closer look at modern professional video interfaces.

7.6.1. Image Formats

For decades, the TV sets in homes had a screen format of 4:3. This “aspect ratio” or width-to-height ratio was a compromise for the mechanically easy manufacturing of picture tubes. The human field of view, however, actually has a different shape, which is why cinemas have much wider screen sizes. Table 5.2 in Chapter 5 lists the usual picture formats.

PALplus brought about the 16:9 aspect ratio, which has become the flat screen standard since HDTV appeared. Flat screens can be manufactured in any aspect ratio. In analog television, the video bandwidth of typically 5 MHz determined the image resolution and hence the image sharpness. For decades, there was only SDTV (Standard Definition TV), although for a long time it did not come under this name; nor was the term “pixel” used in analog TV, although it had, of course, a long history of use in the computer world. From the 1980s, repeated attempts were made to introduce high-definition television, HDTV, which became a reality only many decades later with the help of digital television around the year 2010. SDTV (720 x 576 pixels) then first turned into HD-Ready, then Full HD, and finally simply HDTV (1920 x 1080 pixels). Meanwhile, numerous flat screen TVs with four times the number of pixels of HDTV are available as UHDTV devices. UHDTV, the abbreviation for Ultra High Definition Television, promises even more image details. Yet, although UHDTV devices are already available, end users are still not offered UHDTV content. Table 5.1 in Chapter 5 lists the typical screen resolutions and video signal formats.

Until the 3D movie “Avatar” in 2008, almost all cinemas had been analog, i.e. they played 35 mm films that had been in use for a century. Since 3D movies are economically viable only in digital format, movie theaters increasingly migrated to digital projectors that typically provide 2K resolution (2048 x 1536 pixels) at 24 or 30 frames per second. Due to the low refresh rate in cinemas, the so-called “cinema effect” still exists, and also causes motion blur. However, cinema frame rates will also increase; in the future, cinemas will use a resolution of 4K or 8K at significantly higher frame rates. Image formats with a trailing “K” mean cinema formats, although the “K” stands for “Kilo”. The TV formats are SDTV, HDTV, UHD-1 and UHD-2, and they always have slightly fewer pixels per line than their comparable cinema resolutions, e.g. HDTV has 1920 instead of 2048 pixels per line or UHD-1 has 3840 instead of 4096 pixels per line. Still, UHD-1 is incorrectly advertised with the label "4K".

The physical video signal formats up to and including UHDTV are detailed in Chapter 5.

7.6.2. Video Coding Methods

The basics of video coding have already been presented in detail and discussed in terms of the most commonly used standards:

- MPEG-2 video coding, also known as H.262
- MPEG-4 Part 10 video coding, also known as AVC (Advanced Video Coding or H.264)

MPEG-2 video has been around in digital TV technology since the mid-1990s, and also in DVD video, primarily for SDTV. Only the USA (ATSC 1.0), Japan and Australia (DVB-T) are still using MPEG-2 video also for HDTV. MPEG-4 Part 10/AVC/H.264 video appeared in about 2005, and is now used for SDTV, HDTV, and all kinds of streaming. H.264 reduced the video data rate to about half of that of H.262. The typical compressed video data rates are:

- SDTV in MPEG-2: about 3 to 5 Mbit/s
- HDTV in MPEG-2: about 18 to 20 Mbit/s
- SDTV in MPEG-4/AVC: about 1.5 to 3 Mbit/s
- HDTV in MPEG-4/AVC: about 8 to 12 Mbit/s

Now H.265 is set to halve video data rates yet again, and make room for future UHDTV formats.

7.6.3. The Place of H.265 in the MPEG World

So far, the standards MPEG-1, MPEG-2, and MPEG-4 have existed and have been described in the following documents:

MPEG-1
ISO/IEC 11172-1 MPEG-1 systems
ISO/IEC 11172-2 MPEG-1 video
ISO/IEC 11172-3 MPEG-1 audio (layers I, II, III)
…
MPEG-2:
ISO/IEC 13818-1 MPEG-2 systems
ISO/IEC 13818-2 MPEG-2 video
ISO/IEC 13818-3 MPEG-2 audio (layers I, II, III)
ISO/IEC 13818-6 DSM-CC (data broadcasting)
ISO/IEC 13818-7 MPEG-2 Advanced Audio Coding
…
MPEG-4:
ISO/IEC 14496-1 MPEG-4 systems
ISO/IEC 14496-2 MPEG-4 Part 2 video
ISO/IEC 14496-3 MPEG-4 AAC audio
ISO/IEC 14496-10 MPEG-4 Part 10 Advanced Video Coding
…

There is no “MPEG-3” standard, nor MPEG-5 or MPEG-6. MPEG-7 has a metadata definition, but since it barely affects the broadcasting world, it won’t be discussed further here. With newer MPEG standards, the nomenclature has been changed, with further MPEG standards included as

MPEG-A	ISO/IEC 23000
MPEG-B	ISO/IEC 23001
MPEG-C	ISO/IEC 23002
MPEG-D	ISO/IEC 23003
MPEG-E	ISO/IEC 23004
MPEG-V	ISO/IEC 23005
MPEG-M	ISO/IEC 23006
MPEG-U	ISO/IEC 23007
MPEG-H	**ISO/IEC 23008**
MPEG-DASH	ISO/IEC 23009

The most important of these are MPEG-H and MPEG-DASH.

What radio and, most importantly, television will look like in the future is anybody’s guess. Today, we hear the terms “linear broadcasting” or “linear television” in the sense that the audience or the listeners “consume” what the broadcaster is currently transmitting based on its program schedule. If we want something else, all we can do is to switch to a different channel. Alternative approaches are called VoD (Video on Demand) or nonlinear television, etc. Besides the classical broadcasting paths – terrestrial, cable, and satellite –, there is also the option of streaming over IP. An increasing number of TV and radio programs are transferred over the Internet. This is called OTT (Over the Top TV). OTT offers video and audio streaming formats over the Internet for various terminal devices like smartphones, tablets, and PCs running different operating systems, MPEG-DASH extends the proprietary streaming formats with standardized formats:

MPEG-DASH
”Dynamic Adaptive Streaming over HTTP (DASH)” ISO/IEC 23009

The new video codec discussed in the following sections is also known as MPEG-H:

MPEG-H
MPEG-H ISO/IEC 23008

"High Efficiency Coding and Media Delivery in Heterogeneous Environment"

MPEG-H part 2 ISO/IEC 23008-2 corresponds to video codec ITU-T H.265 HEVC

MPEG-H Part 1: Digital Container
MPEG-H Part 2: High Efficiency Video Coding
MPEG-H Part 3: 3D Audio
MPEG-H Part 5: HEVC Conformance Testing ...
MPEG-H Part 8: ...

This was the brief overview of the new video codec related standards.

7.6.4. Video Coding Steps in H.265

H.265 is another hybrid image coding standard which consists of the following processing steps:

- Input signal scaling (8 bits instead of 10 bits, elimination of the horizontal and vertical blanking sections, 4:2:0 color subsampling instead of 4:2:2, etc.)
- Transform coding (DCT, Discrete Cosine Transform, etc.) with quantization
- Coding of individual images (intra-frame coding)
- Differential image coding (inter-frame coding)
- Entropy coding (redundancy reduction, Run Length coding, etc.)
- De-blocking filtering (from H.264 onwards, for suppressing artifacts of transform coding)

The image compression algorithm uses

- Intra-frame coding (the coding of still image components), and
- Inter-frame coding (coding of video image differences).

Terms like GOP (Group of Pictures), I, P, and B images are completely absent in H.265; instead, references are made to intra-coded, predictive, and bidirectionally coded slices. In MPEG-2, a slice was a horizontal series of macro blocks; in H.264 and H.265, slices can be formed over an image relatively arbitrarily, and can also be processed by encoders running in parallel. New terms in H.265 are Coding Trees, Coding Quadtrees, Coding Tree Units, Coding Tree Blocks, Transform Unit, and Transform Blocks. HEVC specifies profiles, levels, and tiers.

All video coding methods first divide the images into macroblocks, then the macro blocks into even smaller units down to blocks. Each block consists of N x N pixels. How a macroblock is divided into blocks depends on the method; here H.262, H.264 and H.265 operate differently. A macroblock always describes an image element consisting of luminance (Y) and chrominance (Cb, Cr) components. Several macroblocks form a slice to make it easier to find a new starting point for decoding in case of bit errors, and also to enable parallelized video coding. Here once again, the video compression methods differ.

Differential image coding is performed at the macroblock level, while transform coding takes place at the block level. During the latter procedure, a block or a motion-estimated block difference is transformed from the original domain to the frequency domain, using e.g.

- DCT (Discrete Cosine Transform) in MPEG-2
- Hadamard transform
- Short Wavelet Transform in JPEG2000
- in H.265, also DST (Discrete Sine Transform)

Block size is always

- 8 x 8 pixels in H.262/MPEG-2
- 4 x 4 pixels and 2 x 2 pixels in H.264/MPEG-4 AVC
- 64 x 64, 32 x 32, 16 x 16, 8 x 8, and 4 x 4 in H.265/HEVC

Transform is performed for all blocks of the luminance and chrominance components.

Differential coding (prediction) during intra-frame coding occurs

- only for the DC coefficients in MPEG-2/H.262
- also between macroblock partitions in MPEG-4 AVC/H.264
- within ranges of a coding quadtree in H.265, using DCT or DST

Differential coding is used by all video compression methods when the difference between the frames is processed, i.e. during inter-frame coding if activated. This involves calculating the differences between the consecutive frames in the forward, backward or both directions, with:

- MPEG-2/H.262 calculating a difference for only one image in the forward, backward or both directions

- MPEG-4/AVC/H.264 involving up to 9 images in the differential coding
- H.265/HEVC coding differences only within slices over a number of images comparable to that in H.264; there are purely intra-coded slices, P-slices, and B-slices

Regarding the further subdivision of macroblocks:

- MPEG-2-Video/H.262 divides a macroblock into several blocks with 8 x 8 pixels for luminance and chrominance
- MPEG-4/AVC/H.264 divides a macroblock into several partitions with 4 x 4 pixels for luminance and 2 x 2 pixels for chrominance
- H.265/HEVC: the notion of “macroblock” is replaced by “coding tree unit”, consisting of “coding tree blocks” with increasingly fine-grained subdivisions according to the current image content into “coding quadtrees”, as well as down to smaller or larger “coding blocks” and “transform blocks” of N x N pixels (32 x 32, 16 x 16, 8 x 8, and 4 x 4)

7.6.5. HEVC in Detail

This section will describe the essentials of HEVC (High Efficiency Video Coding, also known as H.265). The table below is a comparison of H.261, H.262, H.264, and H.265.

The key features of HEVC are:

- Resolutions of up to 8K
- Coding Tree Units (CTU), Coding Tree Block (CTB), Coding Unit (CU), Coding Block (CB), Transform Unit (TU), Transform Block (TB) – structure
- Multiple Reference Pictures
- Advanced Motion Vector Signaling
- Motion compensation at higher accuracy
- Dependent Slice Segments
- DCT – Discrete Cosine Transform for pixel blocks of 4x4, 8x8, 16x16, and 32x32 pixels
- Improved intra-prediction by shifting a block within a single image in 34 possible directions
- DST – Discrete Sine Transform for 4x4 luminance intra-prediction residuals

- De-blocking-filter
- 8-bit and 10-bit profiles (“deep color space”)

HEVC/H.265 defines tiers, levels, and profiles. The two tiers of HEVC are called Main tier and High tier, resp. The Main tier is intended for standard usage, while the High tier is intended for professional applications. There are three profiles: Main Profile, Main 10 Profile, and Main Still Picture Profile. The Main Profile and the Main 10 Profile differ in the possible resolution, i.e. 8 bits, or 8, 9, and 10 bits, resp. The levels describe the maximum possible resolutions, refresh rates, and data rates. A “High tier” is not defined in all levels.

Table 7.3. Comparison of H.261, H.262, H.264, and H.265

	H.261	H.262 MPEG-2 video	H.264/AVC	H.265/HEVC
Resolution (pixels)	QCIF (174x144), CIF (352x288)	up to 1920x1080	up to 4096x2304	up to 8192x4320
Color sub-sampling	4:2:0	4:2:0, 4:2:2, 4:4:4	4:2:0, 4:2:2, 4:4:4	4:2:0, (4:2:2), (4:4:4)
Interlacing	No	Yes	Yes	to date No
Block size	16x16	16x16	16x16	8x8, 16x16, 32x32, 64x64
Intra-partition size	16x16	16x16	16x16, 8x8, 4x4	4x4, 8x8, 16x16, 32x32
In-loop Filter	No	No	De-blocking	De-blocking, advanced
Transform	8x8 DCT	8x8 DCT	4x4, 8x8 Integer DCT	4x4, 8x8, 16x16, 32x32 Inte-

				ger DCT, 4x4-Integer DST, Transform Skip
Entropy Coding	Zig-zag scan, VLC	Zig-zag scan, VLC	Zig-zag scan, CAVLC, CABAC	Horizontal, vertical and diagonal scan, CABAC

Table 7.4. Profiles in HEVC

Profile	Description
Main Profile	4:2:0, 8-bit
Main 10 Profile	4:2:0, 8 to 10 bits
Main Still Picture Profile	4:2:0, 8-bit

The HEVC standard does not contain the terms "Group of Pictures" (GOP), I-, P- and B-pictures that were present in the previous standards, but the term GOP is used again in the "colloquial" language of various publications. An H.265 data stream or a H.265 GOP begins with a so-called IDR (Instantaneous Decoding Refresh) or a CRA (Clean Random Access); at this point, an intra-coded image is transmitted, where the decoder can reset (e.g. when the user switches from one program to the next).

In HEVC, each image is decomposed into larger or smaller slices (with the same flexibility as in H.264). A slice enables parallel video coding and also facilitates re-synchronization during decoding; it is decomposed into Coding Tree Units that in turn consist of Coding Tree Blocks of the Y, C_B, C_R components. The term “Coding Tree Unit” replaces the term “Macroblock” of the earlier standards. Video coding in H.265 is organized within the slices; it has intra-slices, predicted slices, and bidirectional slices. A Coding Tree Unit consists of up to 64x64 pixels and is the smallest common multiple for all three layers: luminance, C_B and C_R. A Coding Tree Unit consists of Coding Blocks. Each Coding Bock consists of N x N pixels. And it is at this point – when a Coding Block is broken down into Transform Blocks and pixels – where H.265/HEVC deviates from its predecessor standards H.262 (MPEG-2 video) and H.264 (MPEG-4 AVC).

In H.265, a "Unit" is always the combination of all Component Layers, and a “Block” in H.265 describes a range of N x M or N x N pixels within a Component Layer (Y, C_B, C_R), i.e. a “Unit” consists of “Blocks”.

Table 7.5. Levels in HEVC

Level	Resolution [pixels, n x m]	Maximal refresh rate [1/s]	Main Tier Max. data rate [Mbit/s]	High Tier Max. data rate [Mbit/s]
1	128x96 176x144	33.7 15	0,128	--
2	176x144 352x288	100 30	1.5	--
2.1	352x288 640x360	60 30	3	--
3	640x360 720x576 960x540	67.5 37.5 30	6	--
3.1	720p HD	33	10	-
4	720p HD 1080p HD	68 32	12	30
4.1	720p HD 1080p HD	136 64	20	50
5	720p HD 1080p HD 3840x2160	272 128 32	25	100
5.1	720p HD 1080p HD 3840x2160	300 256 64	40	160
5.2	1080p HD 3840x2160	300 128	60	240
6	3840x2160 7680x4320	256 32	60	240
6.1	3840x2160 7680x4320	300 64	120	480
6.2	7680x4320	128	240	800

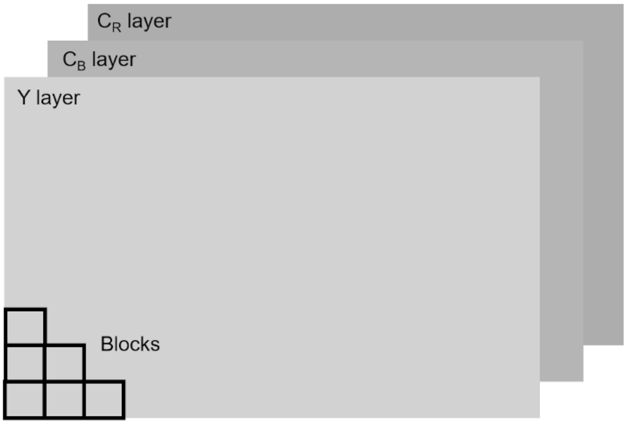


Fig. 7.43. Block formation in all three layers in H.262 to H.265; in H.265, the term “Block” is replaced by the notion of “Coding Tree Block”, “Transform Block”, etc. and has a more granular subdivision.

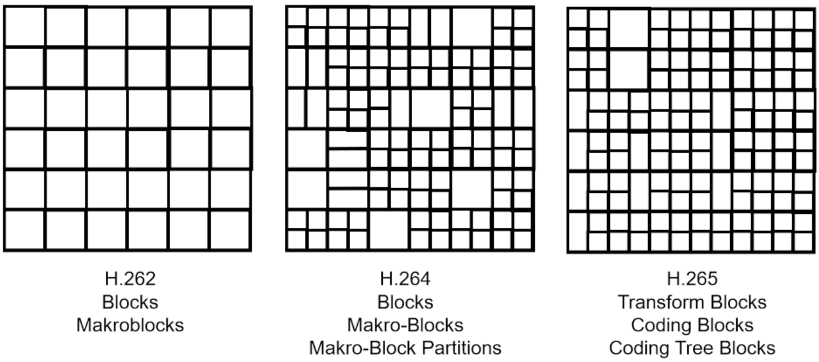


Fig. 7.44. Block division in H.262, H.264 and H.265

In H.265/HEVC, a Coding Tree Block is then further decomposed into smaller “Tiles” according to the current partial image content, using so-called Coding Quadtree procedures. This subdivision is performed for all layers (luminance and chrominance) and leads to different sized Prediction Blocks (PB), Coding Blocks (CB), and Transform Blocks (TB). Intra- and inter-frame coding takes place at the Prediction Block level, while transform coding is performed at the Transform Block level. The maximal and minimal size of a Transform Block is 32 x 32 pixels and 4 x 4 pixels, resp. The maximal size of a Prediction Block is 64 x 64 pixels.

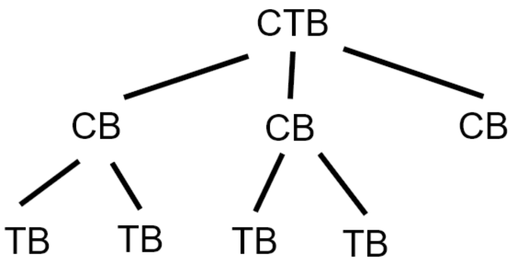


Fig. 7.45. Subdivision, refining a Coding Tree Block (CTB) into Coding Blocks (CB) and Transform Blocks (TB)

The transition from H.262/MPEG-2 through H.264/MPEG-4 to H.265/HEVC can be seen as a progressively finer subdivision of the macroblock structures – with “macroblock” called “Coding Tree Unit” in HEVC –, aiming to increasingly adapt “as needed” to the current image content to be encoded. Accordingly, the HEVC video coder can apply macroblocks where there are few image details, and select finer structures where more image details need to be encoded (see also Figs. 7.43. and 7.49.). In H.262, the lowest level of detail was the block or macroblock; in H.264, macroblocks were decomposed into macroblock partitions as needed; and in H.265, the Coding Tree Block is decomposed along so-called Coding Quadtrees as needed.

HEVC/H.265 uses the following block hierarchy:

- CTU (Coding Tree Unit, consisting of Coding Tree Blocks of the components Y, C_B, C_R)
- CU (Coding Unit)
- PU (Prediction Unit, a unit of 64 x 64, … 4 x 4 pixels over which intra- or inter-prediction is performed)
- TU (Transform Unit, multiple Transform Blocks with the same type of transform coding)
- CTB (Coding Tree Block)
- CB (Coding Block)
- PB (Prediction Block)
- TB (Transform Block, N x N block subjected to transform coding)

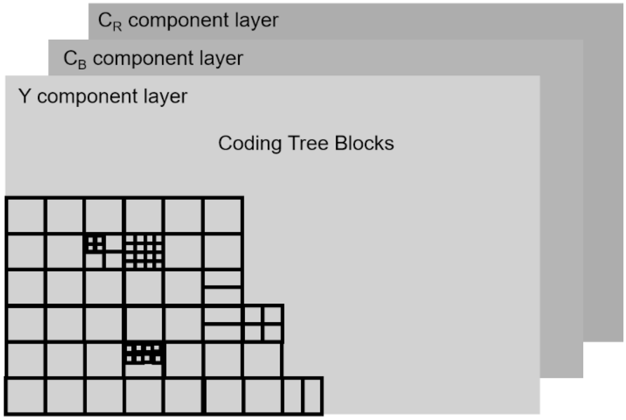


Fig. 7.46. Refining of Coding Tree Blocks along coding quadtree structures

At the end, a Transform Block (an N x N block of a certain size) is designated for each component layer (Y, C_B, C_R), which is then subjected to transform coding (Fig. 7.48.) to convert it into the frequency domain. Energy concentration to a few values and quantization are performed in this latter domain. Transform coding (Fig. 7.48.) uses DCT (Discrete Cosine Transform), whereby the maximal block size is 32 x 32 pixels and the minimal block size is 4 x 4 pixels. During intra-coding, DST (Discrete Sine Transform) is also possible. Transform is followed by quantization, the first lossy step (irrelevance reduction). Entropy coding is then performed using CABAC (Context-based Adaptive Binary Arithmetic Coding) to decrease redundancy.

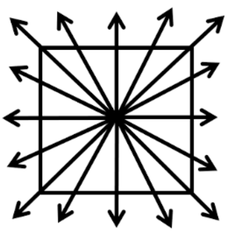


Fig. 7.47. Intra-coding by shifting a block within an image in H.264 (8 modes) and H.265 (34 modes)

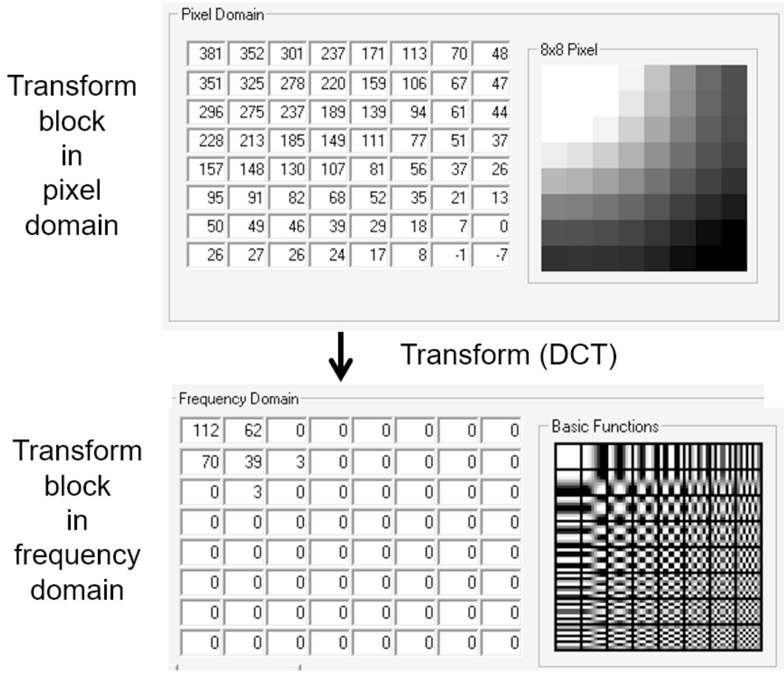


Fig. 7.48 Transform coding

In H.262, differential coding existed only at the differential image level, i.e. during inter-frame coding. While mostly left unmentioned, differential coding between adjacent blocks is done also for the DC coefficients in H.262/MPEG-2 video. This means that intra-frame coding (the coding of image components within an image) is performed in H.262 using DCT transform coding and a differential coding of the DC values of the transformed block.

In H.264, intra-coding (i.e. the coding of individual frames) is extended in the sense that a block can also be coded by shifting blocks and describing these with shift vectors (Fig. 7.47.); the difference is then DC-coded.

H.265 provides significantly more granular block shift vectors (34 direction angles instead of 8 in the predecessor standard H.264) for intra-coding (Fig. 7.47.). Also, DST (Discrete Sine Transform) can now also be used for coding adjacent blocks within a single image if this leads to more efficient results. Using DST here makes sense, because it may be better at pattern description within a single image (image background). This does not contradict the Gibbs phenomenon described earlier.

The following deblocking filter has the task of smoothing eventual blocking artifacts caused by transform coding. The deblocking filter performs a targeted search for edges not originally present in the image, and eliminates them as best as it can.

Figure 7.48. shows the block diagram of a hybrid HEVC video encoder. As can be seen, the HEVC encoder also includes a HEVC decoder.

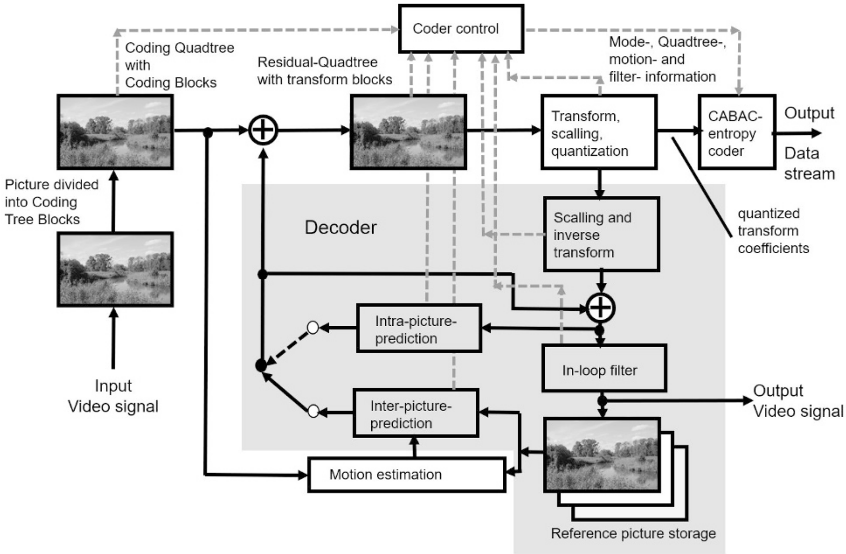


Fig. 7.49. Block diagram of a HEVC encoder with integrated decoder [FKT_2013_HEVC]

7.6.6. Summary, Outlook, and the Path to UHDTV

HEVC is an improvement and refinement over the hybrid image coding method (Fig. 7.48.) of the predecessor standard AVC, making it possible to reduce the data rate by about another 50 percent. While intra-frame coding in H.262 applied to only the transform coding of the blocks and the differential coding of the DC values, H.264 extended this towards the differential coding of the blocks. H.265 brought further evolution. While a macroblock was subdivided into blocks in H.262, a macroblock in H.264 consists of macroblock partitions composed of blocks, and H.265 replaces the term “macrobock” by “Coding Tree Unit” and further subdivides it over coding quadtrees.

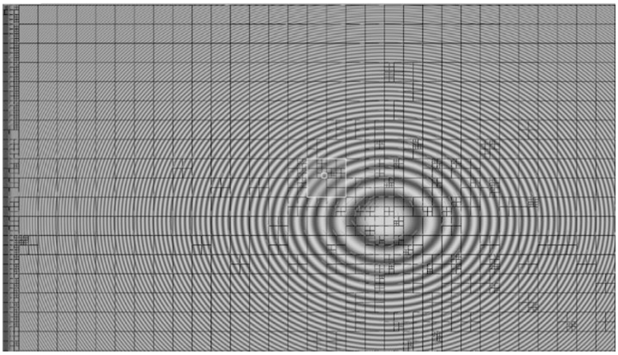


Fig. 7.50. Example of coding tree structures in HEVC

The clear trend of significantly increasing the screen diagonals of TV sets over what used to be standard for decades, often combined with extremely slim dimensions in terms of depth, makes the devices very easy to integrate into the living room. However, this also means higher requirements in terms of image quality. UHDTV (Ultra High Definition Television) aims to meet these expectations; however, the UHDTV data rates of the uncompressed video material are now around 12 Gbit/s and will keep increasing as refresh rates are further increased. This is accompanied by the need for better image compression, which can currently be satisfied with H.265 (HEVC). At the same time, HEVC can be used to decrease the video data rate of compressed SDTV signals to below 1 Mbit/s and the video data rate of HDTV signals to below 4 Mbit/s.

Immedately after finishing the HEVC coding standard the development of the next generation video codec was started; its name will be “VVC“ = “Versatile Video Coding“ and its standard name will be “H.266“. Publishing is expected arround the year 2020.

Bibliography: [ITU13818-2], [TEICHNER], [GRUNWALD], [NELSON], [MÄUSL4], [REIMERS], [ITU-T H.264], [HEVC], [FKT_2013_HEVC]

8 Audio Coding

8.1 Digital Audio Source Signal

The human ear has a dynamic range of about 140 dB and a hearing bandwidth of up to 20 kHz. High-quality audio signals must, therefore, match these characteristics. Before the analog audio signals are sampled and digitized, they have to be band-limited by means of a low-pass filter. Then analog-to-digital conversion is performed at a sampling rate of 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz (and now also at 96 kHz), and with a resolution of at least 16 bits. The 44.1 kHz sampling rate corresponds to that of audio CDs, 48/96 kHz are studio quality. While the 32 kHz sampling frequency is still provided for in the MPEG standard, it is in fact obsolete. A sampling rate of 48 kHz at 16 bit resolution yields a data rate of 786 kbit/s per channel, which means approx. 1.5 Mbit/s for a stereo signal (Fig. 8.1.).

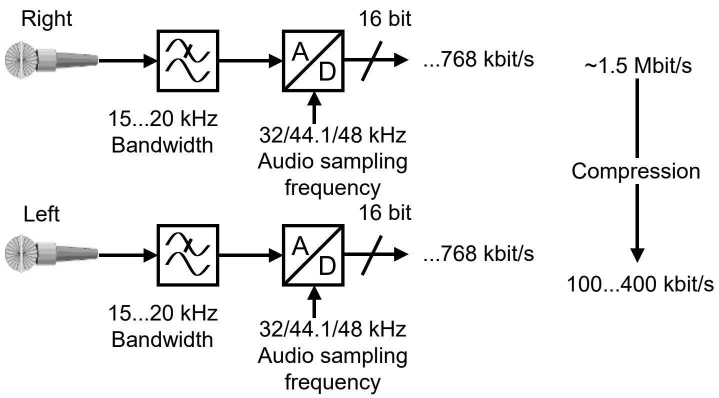


Fig. 8.1. Digital audio source signal

The objective of audio compression is to reduce the 1.5 Mbit/s data rate to between about 100 kbit/s and 400 kbit/s. MP3 audio files, which are

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_8

very widely used today, often have a data rate below 64 kbit/s. Similarly as with video compression, this is achieved by way of redundancy reduction and irrelevance reduction. In redundancy reduction, superfluous information is simply omitted; there is no loss of information. By contrast, in irrelevance reduction information is eliminated that cannot be perceived at the receiving end, in this case the human ear. All audio compression methods are based on a psychoacoustic model, i.e. they make use of the "imperfection" of the human ear to remove irrelevant information from the audio signal. The human ear is not capable of perceiving sound events close to strong sound pulses in frequency or in time. This means that, to the ear, certain sound events will mask other sound events of lower amplitude.

8.2 History of Audio Coding

In the year 1988, the MASCAM method was developed at the Institut für Rundfunktechnik (IRT) in Munich in preparation for the digital audio broadcasting (DAB) system. From MASCAM, the MUSICAM (masking pattern universal subband integrated coding and multiplexing) method was developed in 1989 in cooperation with CCETT, Philips and Matsushita.

MUSICAM-coded audio signals are used in DAB. MASCAM and MUSICAM are both based on subband coding. The audio signal is split into a large number of subbands, each of which is subjected to irrelevance reduction to a greater or lesser degree.

At the same time as the subband coding method was developed, the Fraunhofer Gesellschaft together with Thomson devised the ASPEC (Adaptive Spectral Perceptual Entropy Coding) method, which is based on transform coding. The audio signal is transformed from the time to the frequency domain using DCT (Discrete Cosine Transform), and then irrelevant signal components are removed.

Both the subband-coding MUSICAM and the transform-coding ASPEC method were included in the MPEG-1 audio compression method, which was established in 1991 (ISO/IEC 11172-3 standard). MPEG-1 audio comprises three possible layers: layer II essentially use MUSICAM coding, and layer III principally uses ASPEC coding. MP3 audio files are coded to MPEG-1 layer III. MP3 is often mistaken for MPEG-3. MPEG-3 was originally aimed at implementing HDTV (high definition television), but HDTV was already integrated in the MPEG-2 standard, so MPEG-3 was skipped and abandoned altogether. Therefore the MPEG-3 standard does not exist.

In MPEG-2 audio, the three layers of MPEG-1 audio were taken over, and layer II was extended to form layer II MC (multichannel). The ISO/IEC 13818-3 MPEG-2 audio standard was adopted in 1994.

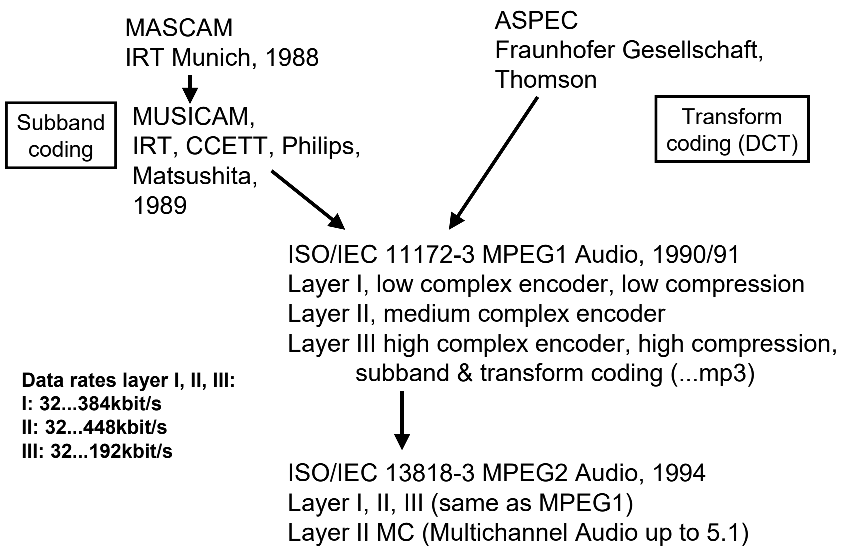


Fig. 8.2. Development of MPEG audio [DAMBACHER]

Simultaneously with MPEG audio, the Dolby digital audio standard (also known as AC-3 audio) was developed by Dolby Labs in the USA. This standard was laid down in 1990 and first presented to the public in the movie "Star Trek VI" shown in December 1991. Nowadays, many movies employ the Dolby digital technique. In the USA, digital terrestrial TV broadcasts to ATSC use AC-3 audio coding exclusively. Some other countries too introduced AC-3 audio in addition to MPEG audio. The use of both AC-3 audio and MPEG audio is meaningful, if only because of the fact that this does away with the recoding of movies. As from the point of quality, there is practically no difference between MPEG audio and Dolby digital. Modern MPEG decoder chips, therefore, support both methods. DVD video discs too may use Dolby digital AC-3 audio in addition to PCM audio and MPEG audio. Below is a short overview of the development of Dolby digital:

- 1990 Dolby digital AC-3 audio

- 1991 First AC-3 audio coded movie show
- Dec. 1991 "Star Trek VI" coded in AC-3 audio

Today:

- AC-3 audio is used as standard in many movies, in ATSC and, in addition to MPEG audio, in MPEG-2 transport streams all over the world, and on DVDs.
- Dolby AC-3 audio transform coding based on Modified Discrete Cosine Transform (MDCT); 5.1 audio channels (left, center, right, left surround, right surround, subwoofer), 128 kbit/s per channel.

MPEG, too, has come up with new audio coding methods:

- MPEG-2 AAC ISO/IEC 13818-7
  AAC = Advanced Audio Coding
- MPEG-4 ISO/IEC 14496-3:
  AAC and AAC Plus

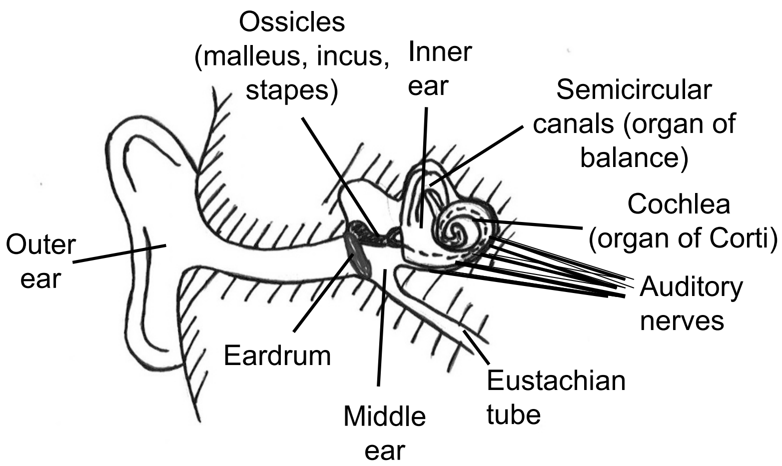


Fig. 8.3. Anatomy of the human ear

8.3 Psychoacoustic Model of the Human Ear

In the following section, the process of audio compression will be discussed. Redundancy reduction (lossless) and irrelevance reduction (lossy) lower the data rate of the original audio signal by about 90 %. Irrelevance reduction relies on the psychoacoustic model of the human ear, which essentially goes back to Professor Zwicker, former holder of a professorship for electroacoustics at the Technical University of Munich. This type of reduction is based on what is referred to as perceptual coding. This means that audio components which are not perceived by the human ear are not transmitted.

Let us first have a look at the anatomy of the human ear (Fig. 8.3., 8.4.). The ear consists of three main parts: the outer ear, the middle ear, and the inner ear. The outer ear performs the functions of impedance matching, sound transmission over air, and acts as a filter with a slight resonance step-up in the region of 3 kHz. It is in the same region, i.e. from 3 kHz to 4 kHz, that the human ear exhibits its maximum sensitivity. The eardrum or tympanic membrane converts sound waves to mechanical vibrations, which are transmitted via the malleus, incus and stapes to a membranous window leading to the sensory inner ear. The air pressure must be the same, ahead of and behind the eardrum. This is ensured by a tube connecting the region behind the eardrum with the pharynx; the tube is called the Eustachian tube. Everyone knows the problem of pressure building up in the ear when climbing large heights. By swallowing, the mucous membrane in the Eustachian tube provides for pressure compensation.

In the inner ear we find the organ of balance, which is made up of several liquid-filled arches, and the cochlea. The cochlea is the actual hearing organ (organ of Corti) by which sound is directly perceived. If the cochlea were to be uncoiled, the sensors for the high frequencies would be found at its entrance, then the sensors for the medium frequencies, and at the end of the cochlea would be the sensors for the low frequencies.

The cochlea consists of a spiral canal in which lies a smaller membranous spiral passage that becomes wider from the front to the rear. On the inner membrane rest the frequency-selective sound-collecting sensors from which the auditory nerves extend to the brain. The auditory nerves transport electrical signals with an amplitude of approx. 100 mV_{pp}. The repetition rate of the electrical pulses is in the order of 1 kHz. The information contained in this rate is the volume of a tone at a given frequency. The louder the tone, the higher the repetition rate. Each frequency sensor communicates with the brain via a separate neural line. The frequency selectivity of the sensors is highest at low frequencies and decreases towards higher frequencies.

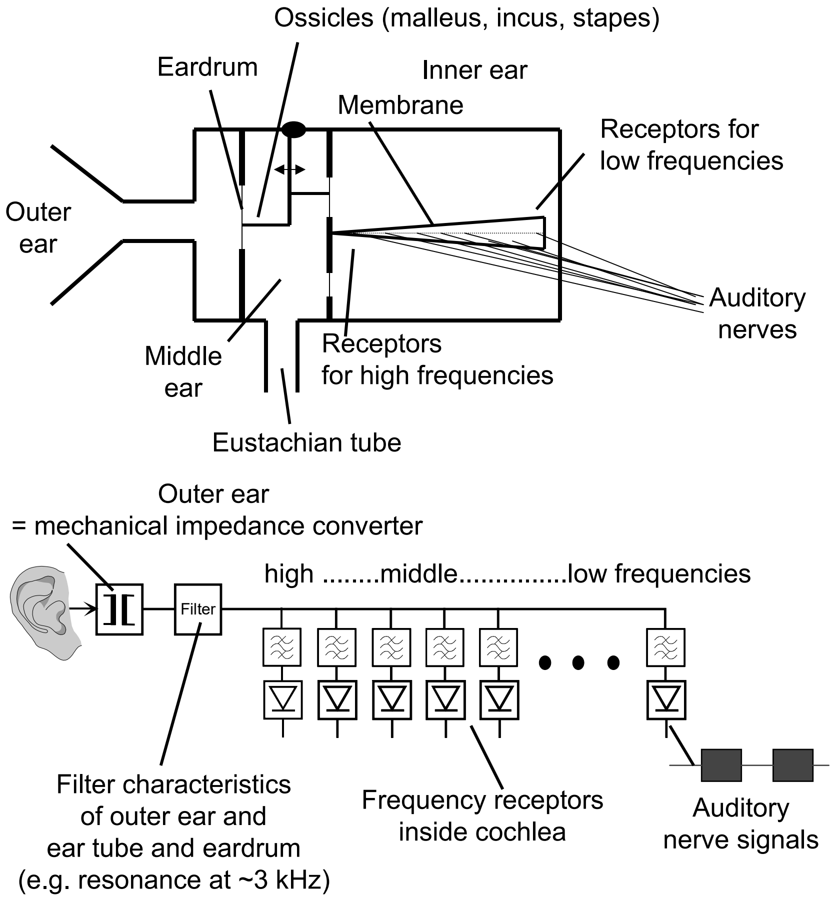


Fig. 8.4. Technical model of the human ear

In the following section, we want to investigate those characteristics of the human ear that are of interest for audio coding. To begin with, the sensitivity of the ear is to a great extent dependent on frequency. Sound signals below 20 Hz and above 20 kHz are practically not audible. The maximum sensitivity of the ear is in the range around 3 kHz to 4 kHz; outside this range the sensitivity decreases towards higher or lower frequencies. Sounds with a level below a certain threshold (referred to as threshold of audibility) are not perceived by the human ear. The threshold of audibility is frequency-dependent. Any components of audio signals whose level is below the audibility threshold need not be transmitted; they are irrelevant for the human ear. Fig. 8.5. illustrates the general relationship of audibility threshold versus frequency.

The next characteristic of the human ear that is of significance for audio coding is a characteristic known as masking. For example, a sinusoidal carrier at 1 kHz with constant amplitude is applied to the ear of a test person, and the region around 1 kHz is investigated by applying other sinusoidal carriers, the frequency and amplitude of which is varied. It will be found that the other test signals are not audible below a certain frequency-dependent level threshold around 1 kHz. This is known as the masking threshold (Fig. 8.6.). The shape of the masking threshold depends on the frequency of the masking signal. The higher the frequency of the masking signal, the wider the masked range.

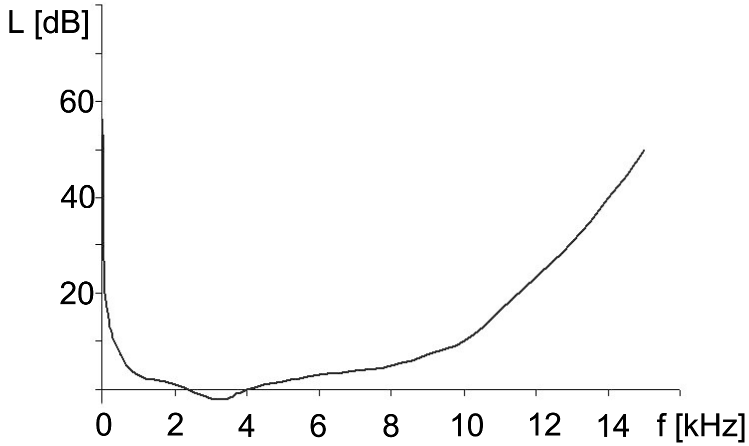


Fig. 8.5. Threshold of audibility

This characteristic of the ear is known as masking in the frequency domain (Fig. 8.6.). The relevant factor for audio coding is the fact that audio components below a defined masking threshold need not be transmitted.

However, masking not only occurs in the frequency domain but also in the time domain (Fig. 8.7.). A strong pulse in the time domain masks sound signals before and after the pulse, provided the levels of these signals are below a certain threshold. This effect, and in particular premasking, is difficult to imagine but very well explicable. It is due to the finite time resolution of the human ear in conjunction with the way signals are transported to the brain via the auditory nerves.

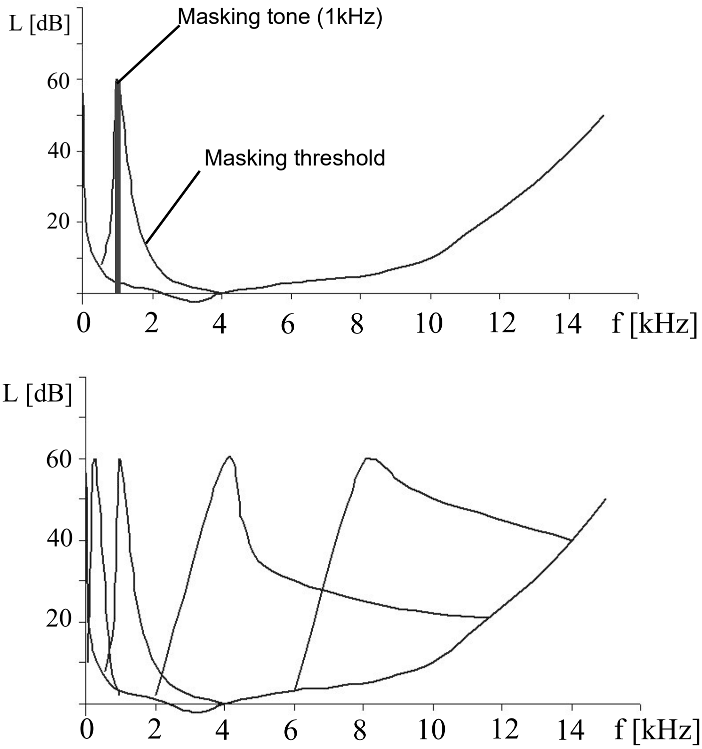


Fig. 8.6. Masking in the frequency domain

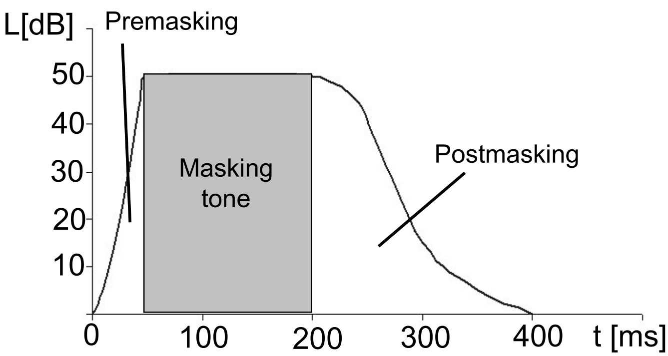


Fig. 8.7. Masking in the time domain

The audio compression methods known so far use masking only in the frequency domain, the techniques employed being very similar in all cases.

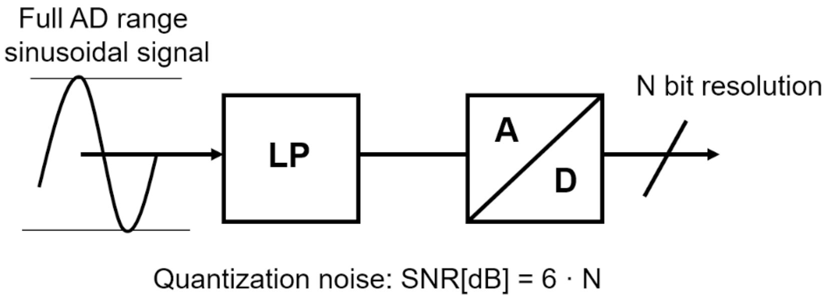


Fig. 8.8. Quantization noise

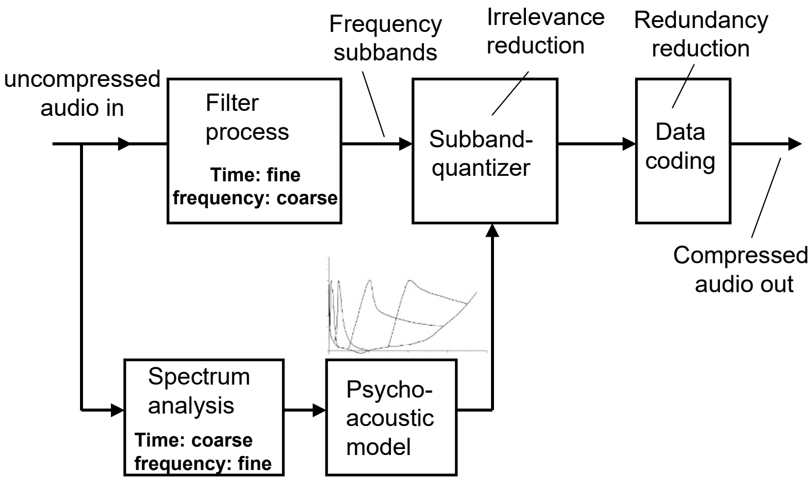


Fig. 8.9. Principle of audio coding based on perceptual coding

8.4 Basic Principles of Audio Coding

Prior to discussing the principle of irrelevance reduction for audio signals, quantization noise will be examined briefly. If an analog-to-digital converter is driven to full modulation with a sinusoidal signal, an signal to noise ratio (SNR) of approx. 6 · N dB (rule of thumb) is obtained for a resolution of N bits due to quantization noise (Fig. 8.8.). This means that approx. 48 dB are obtained for 8 bit resolution and 96 dB for 16 bit resolution. Audio signals are usually sampled with 16 bits or more. 16 bit resolution, however, still does not match the dynamic range of the human ear, which is about 140 dB.

Let us now discuss the basic principle of audio coding (Fig. 8.9.). The digital audio source signal is split into two branches in the coder, filtered and taken to a frequency analyzer. The frequency analyzer performs spectrum analysis by means of a Fast Fourier transform (FFT) and determines the components of the audio signal with low time resolution and high frequency resolution.

Based on the knowledge of the psychoacoustic model (masking effect), irrelevant frequency components of the current signal can be identified.

Simultaneously with spectrum analysis, the audio signal undergoes filtering by which it is split into many subbands. It may happen that a complete subband is masked by signals of other subbands, i.e. the signal level in this subband is below the masking threshold. If this is the case, the subband in question need not be transmitted; the information carried in this band is completely irrelevant to the human ear. The filtering process by which the audio signal is spread to subbands must use very high time resolution so that no information in the time domain will be lost. In contrast for the frequency domain, coarse resolution will do. As far as irrelevance reduction is concerned, there is another possibility. Sometimes, signals in a subband are above the masking threshold, but only by a slight margin. In such cases, quantization in the subband concerned is reduced to the extent that quantization noise in this band is below the masking threshold and is therefore not audible.

Likewise, signals below the threshold of audibility need not be transmitted. Here, too, coarser or finer quantization can be selected depending on the different audibility thresholds of the subbands so that the resulting quantization noise always remains below the threshold. Lower bit resolution is possible especially at higher frequencies.

The decision of whether a subband is to be suppressed completely, or if coarser or finer quantization is to be applied is made in the "psychoacoustic model" block, which is fed with the information from the spectrum analysis block. Quantization is suppressed or controlled by means of the subband quantizer. It may be followed by redundancy reduction, which is effected by a special data coding. After these processes are completed, the compressed audio signal is available.

Perceptual coding may be implemented in various ways. There is pure subband coding and transform coding, and there are mixed forms which are referred to as hybrid coding.

8.5 Subband Coding in Accordance with MPEG Layer I, II

First the method of subband coding will be discussed. In accordance with MPEG layer I and II (Fig. 8.10.), the audio signal is passed through a filter bank of 32 filters that split the signal into frequency subbands of 750 Hz. For each subband there is a separate quantizer controlled by an FFT block and a psychoacoustic model. The quantizer either completely suppresses the subband in question or reduces the number of quantization steps. In the case of layer II coding, FFT is carried out every 24 milliseconds on 1024 samples. This means that the information fed to the psychoacoustic model changes every 24 milliseconds. During the 24 ms intervals, the subbands are subjected to irrelevance reduction in accordance with the information received from the psychoaoustic model block. In other words, the signal is treated as if its composition had not altered for 24 ms.

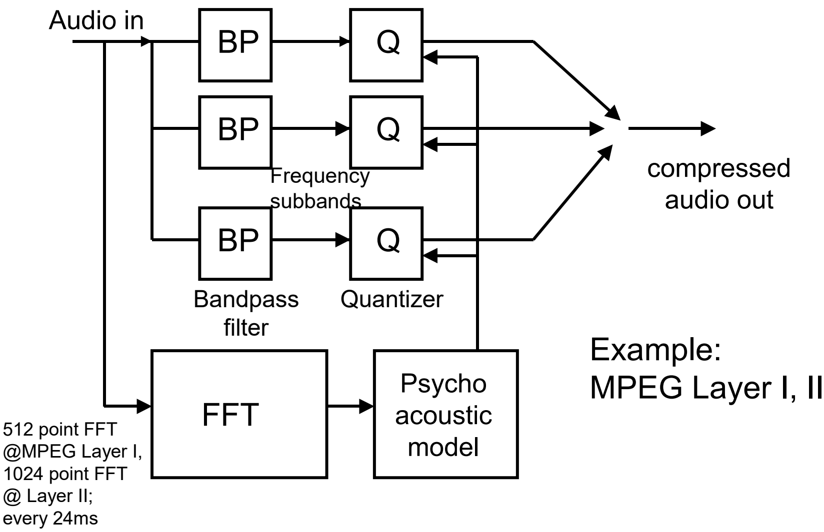


Fig. 8.10. Subband coding using 32 bandpass filters in MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 layer I, II

Because of the different audibility thresholds, bit allocation and thus quantization is different for the different subbands. Quantization must be finest at low frequencies; it may be reduced towards higher frequencies.

Fig. 8.11. illustrates the principle of irrelevance reduction in audio transmission by means of two examples. In one subband, there is a signal at about 5 kHz with a level above the masking threshold. In the case of this

subband, only the number of quantization steps can be reduced. In another subband, we find a signal at about 10 kHz with a level below the masking threshold. This means that this subband is fully masked by signals of neighbouring subbands and can therefore be suppressed completely.

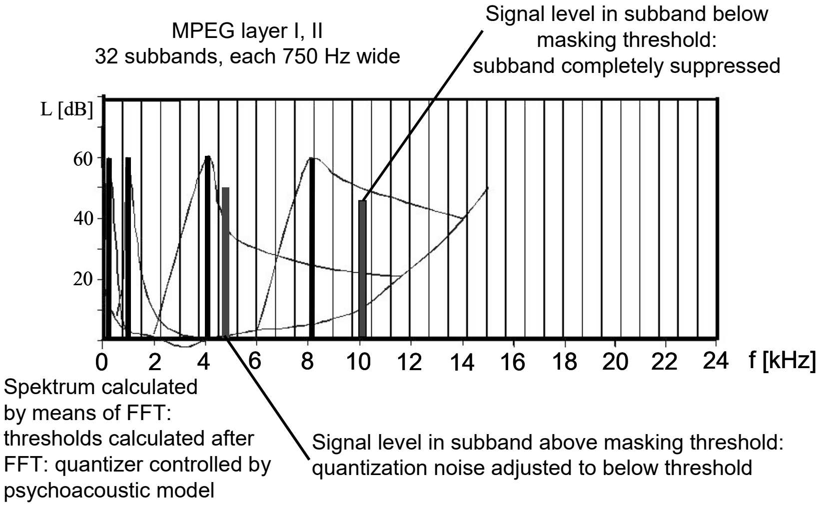


Fig. 8.11. Irrelevance reduction utilizing masking effects

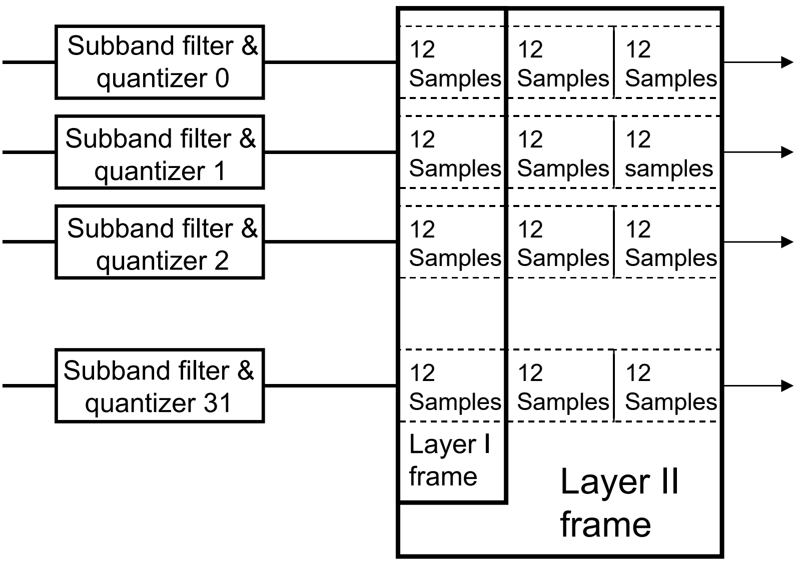


Fig. 8.12. MPEG-2 layer I, II data structure

In irrelevance reduction, subbands are also evaluated as to whether they contain harmonics of signals belonging to a lower subband, i.e. whether the masked signals are tonal (harmonic) or non-tonal components. Only non-tonal, masked signals may be completely suppressed.

In MPEG coding, a certain number of samples are always combined into frames. A layer I frame is formed with 12 samples for each subband. A layer II frame is formed with 3 x 12 samples for each subband (Fig. 8.12.).

For each 12-sample block, the highest sample is determined. This sample is used as a scaling factor which is applied to all 12 samples of the block to provide for redundancy reduction (Fig. 8.13.).

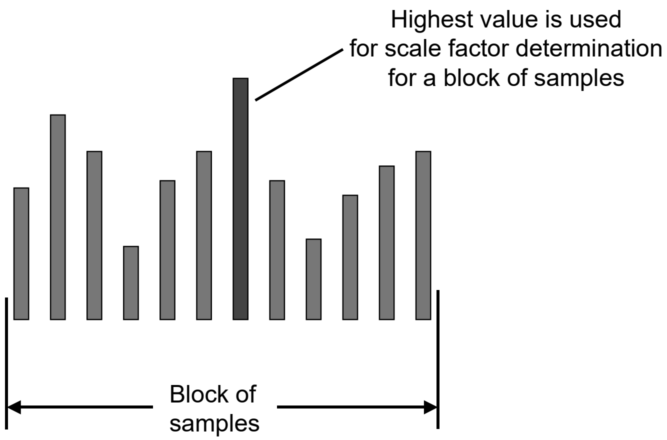


Fig. 8.13. Redundancy reduction to MPEG-2 layer I, II

8.6 Transform Coding for MPEG Layer III and Dolby Digital

Transform coding, in contrast to subband coding, uses no filter bank for subband filtering; the splitting of audio information in the frequency domain is effected by a variation of the Discrete Fourier Transform. Using a Discrete Cosine Transform (DFT) or Modified Discrete Cosine Transform (MDFT), the audio signal is processed to give 256 or 512 spectral power values. At the same time, in the same way as with subband coding, A Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) is carried out with relatively high resolution in the frequency domain. Controlled by the psychoacoustic model created from the FFT output data, the power values of the audio signal obtained through MDFT are subjected to coarser or finer quantization or are suppressed completely. The advantage of this method over subband coding is that it offers higher frequency resolution for the process of irrelevance reduction. This type of coding is used, for example, in Dolby Digital AC-3 Audio (Fig. 8.14.) (AC-3 stands for audio coding 3).

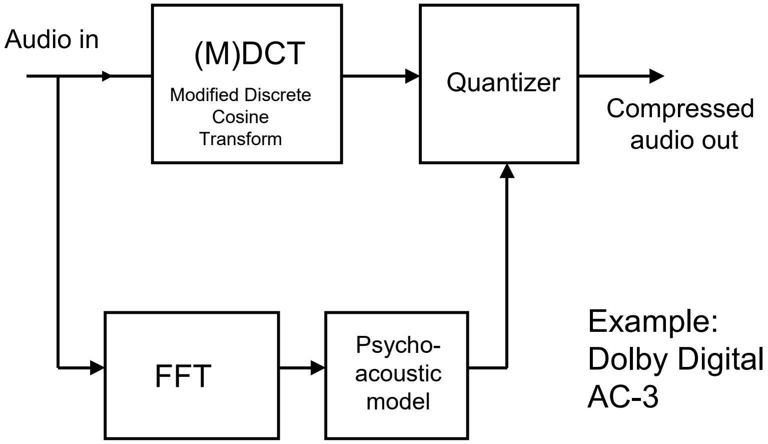


Fig. 8.14. Transform coding

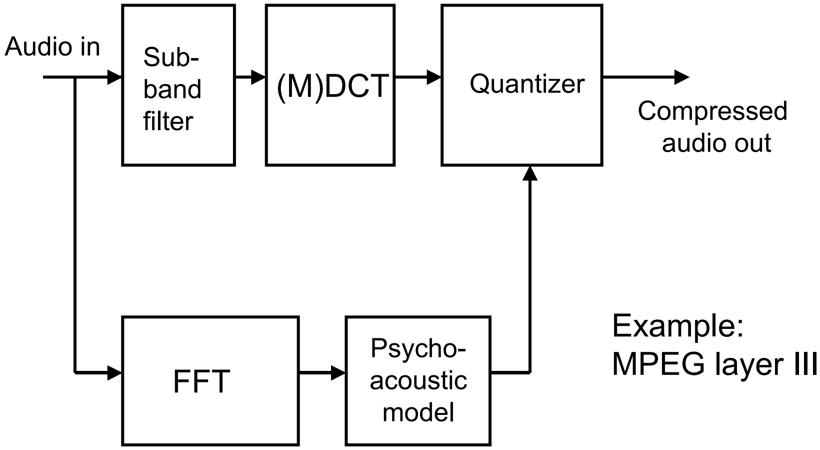


Fig. 8.15. Hybrid subband and transform coding

There is also mixed subband coding and transform coding. which is known as hybrid coding. For example, in MPEG layer III coding, subband filtering is performed prior to (M)DCT (Fig. 8.15.). This means that first a coarse splitting into subbands takes place, then (M)DCT is applied to each subband to obtain a finer resolution. After (M)DCT, data are subjected to irrelevance reduction controlled by the psychoacoustic model, which in turn is fed with information from the Fast Fourier Transform. Audio data coded to MPEG layer III are commonly referred to as MP3 audio files and are used all over the world today.

8.7 Multichannel Sound

In multichannel audio coding, irrelevances between the channels can be determined and omitted in transmission. This means that the channels are investigated for correlated components that do not contribute to the spatial hearing impression. This procedure is employed, for example, in MPEG layer II MC and Dolby digital 5.1 surround. In 5.1 audio, the following channels are transmitted: left, center, right, left surround, right surround and a low-frequency enhancement (LFE) channel for a subwoofer.

Fig. 8.16. shows the loudspeaker configuration for 5.1 multichannel audio.

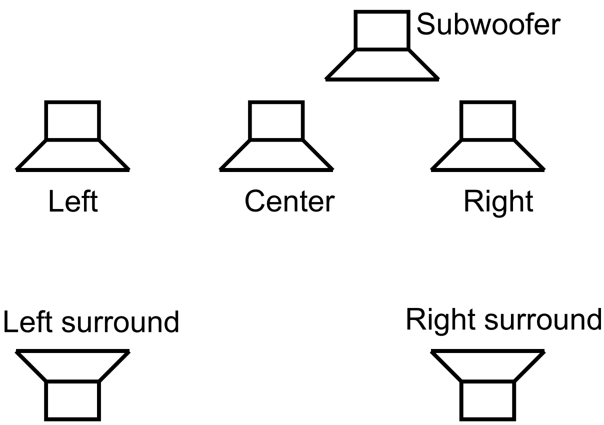


Fig. 8.16. Multichannel audio

The more detailed structure of these audio coding methods is not relevant in terms of practical applications and will not be further discussed here. For more information, consult the relevant literature and the standards.

8.8 New Developments - MPEG-4

Time has not stood still in the field of audio compression, either. MPEG-4 Advanced Audio Coding - MPEG-4 AAC - is a standard which contains a number of newly developed audio codecs. Fig. 8.17. shows once again the complete development history of audio compression including MPEG-4 AAC. MPEG-4 AAC = ISO/IEC 14493-3, i.e. MPEG-4 Part 3 includes both the previous MPEG-2 AAC codec and various new MPEG-4 audio codecs up to the MPEG-4 HE (High Efficiency) AAC, which is equivalent to the AAC+ developed by Coding Technologies in Nuremberg. AAC+ allows broadcasting-type audio quality at data rates of 64 kbit/s, i.e. 1/3 of the data rate in comparison with MPEG-1 Layer II.

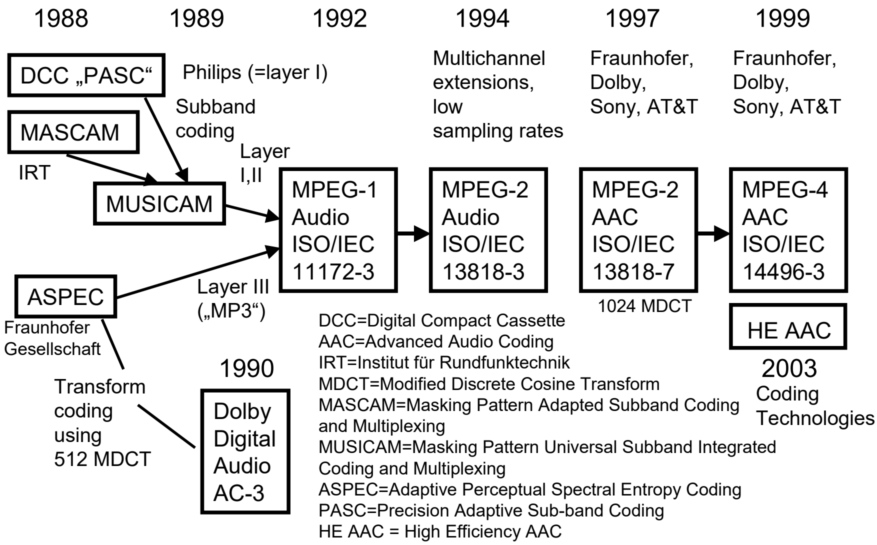


Fig. 8.17. History of the development of audio coding

The magic word of the latest audio coding method is "Spectral Band Replication" (SBR), i.e. the effective transmission and recovery of higher-frequency audio components. This audio compression method was used by all mobile TV standards. DAB+ and DRM also use the latest MPEG-4

AAC algorithms. Fig. 8.18. once again shows the audio structure of all MPEG standards. The audio coding method is always described in Part 3 of the respective MPEG standard. DVB uses currently MPEG-1 Layer II Audio with a data rate of 192 kbit/s in most cases. The MPEG-2 extensions do not provide any advantages in DVB. Multichannel capability is implemented via Dolby Digital Audio transmitted in parallel. And DVB does not need the lower sampling rates provided by MPEG-2 Layer II Audio. Audio players mostly supported MPEG-1 Layer III Audio, MPEG-2 Layer III Audio or MPEG-4 AAC. These devices, called MP3 players in most cases, are known to everyone by now and are also replacing almost every other audio recording and replaying device.

MPEG-1 Part 3	**MPEG-2 Part 3**	**MPEG-4 Part 3**
Layer I	Layer I	(includes MPEG-2 AAC)
(Philips, DCC, PASC)		AAC LC
Layer II	Layer II	AAC LTP
(DAB, MUSICAM)		AAC scalable
Layer III	Layer III	Twin VQ
(ASPEC, Fraunhofer, MP3)	(all layers:	CELP
	low sampling	HVXC
	rates and	TTSI
	multichannel 3/2	BSAC
	+LFE)	HE AAC = AAC+

MPEG-2
Part 7
AAC

Fig. 8.18. Audio codec structure in MPEG

Bibliography: [ISO13818-1], [DAMBACHER], [DAVIDSON], [THIELE], [TODD], [ZWICKER]

9 Teletext, Subtitles and VPS for DVB

In analog television, teletext, subtitles and VPS (Video Program System for VCR control) have been much used supplementary services for many years. Apart from being able to create completely new, comparable services in DVB, standards were set up for enabling these familiar services to be incorporated compatibly in MPEG-2 data streams conforming to DVB. The approach is for the DVB receiver to insert these services back into the vertical blanking interval at the composite CVBS video output. This does not affect any parallel DVB data services such as EPG (Electronic Program Guide) or MHP (Multimedia Home Platform).

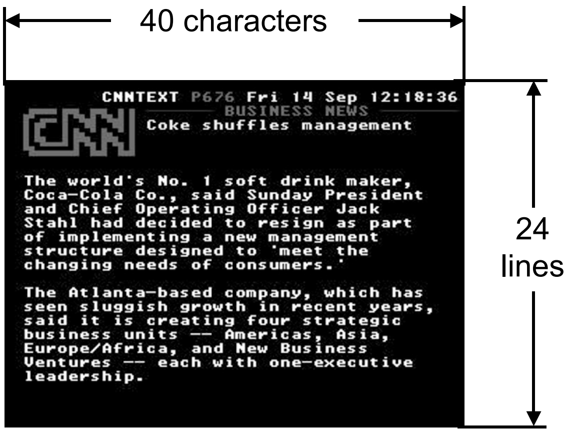


Fig. 9.1. Teletext page

9.1 Teletext and Subtitles

In analog TV, teletext (Fig. 9.1.) is inserted with roll-off filtering as an NRZ (non-return-to-zero) coded supplementary signal into the vertical blanking interval. In DVB, by contrast, a teletext elementary stream is simply multiplexed directly into the MPEG-2 transport stream. The tele-

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_9

text data are processed to give magazines and lines, i.e. the same structure as in British teletext, and combined to form a packetized elementary stream. A teletext page according to the British or EBU standard is composed of 24 lines of 40 characters each. The data of each line are transmitted in a teletext line in the vertical blanking interval.

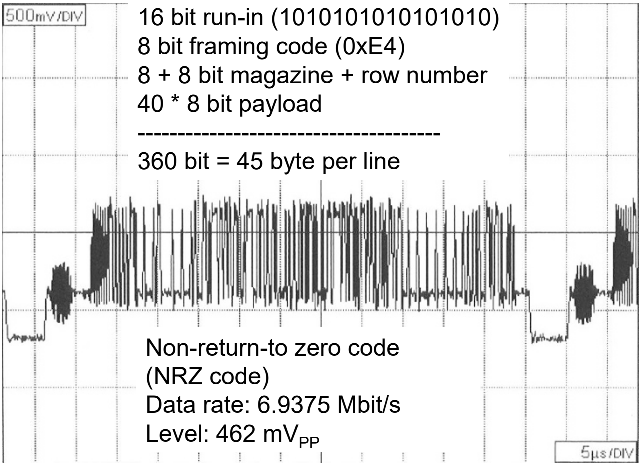


Fig. 9.2. Analog TV teletext in the vertical blanking interval

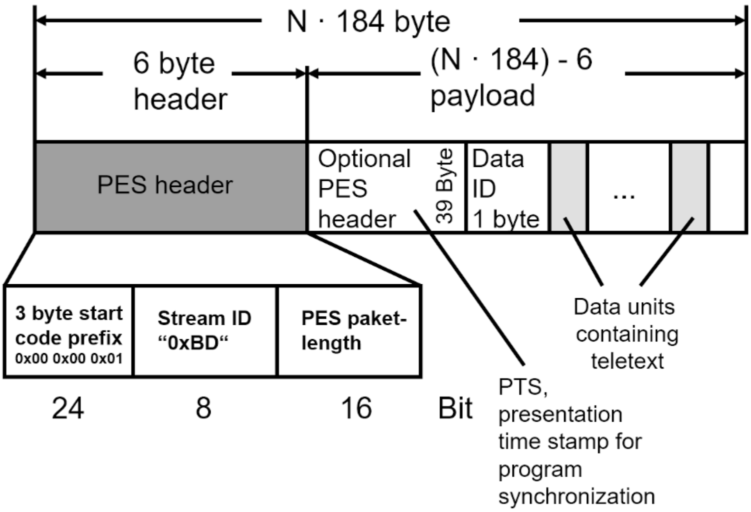


Fig. 9.3. PES Packet with teletext

The analog TV teletext line shown in Fig. 9.2. begins with the 16-bit-long run-in (1010 sequence) followed by the 1-byte-long framing code with a value of 0xE4. This marks the beginning of the active teletext. It is followed by the magazine and line number of 1 byte each. After that, 40 payload characters consisting of 7 bits payload and 1 (even) parity bit are transmitted. The total amount of data per line is 360 bits (= 45 bytes) and the physical data rate is 6.9375 Mbit/s; but the averaged teletext data rate is only about 260 kbit/s. In DVB teletext (ETS 300472), the teletext data are inserted into the PES packets after the framing code (Fig. 9.3.). The 6-byte PES header starts with a 3-byte start code (0x00 0x00 0x01) which is followed by the stream ID 0xBD which corresponds to a "Private_Stream_1". Next comes a 16-bit (= 2-byte) length indicator which in the case of teletext is always set so that the total PES length corresponds to an integral multiple of 184 bytes.

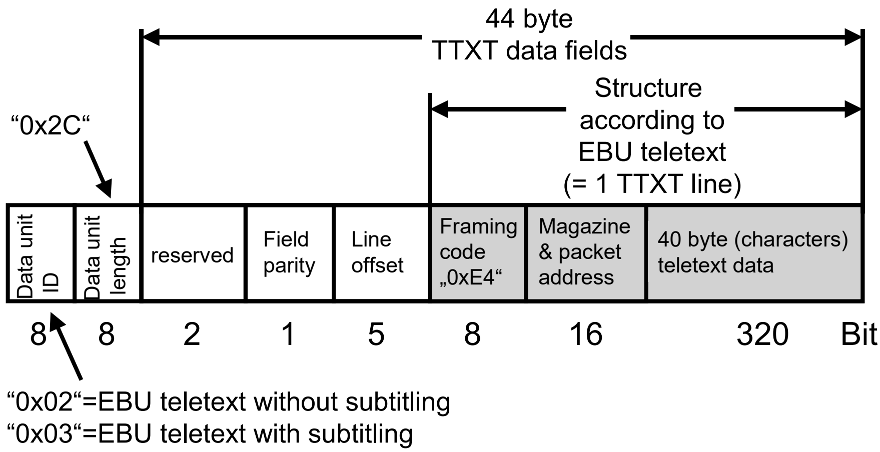


Fig. 9.4. Teletext data block in a PES packet

Then comes a 39 byte optional PES header so that the overall PES header length for teletext is 45 bytes. The actual teletext information is divided into blocks of 44 bytes. The last 43 bytes are identical to the structure of a teletext line of an EBU TTXT after the run-in-code. These bytes include the magazine and line information as well as the actual 40 bytes of teletext characters per line. A teletext page consists of 24 lines of 40 characters and the coding is identical to that of EBU or British teletext.

The teletext, processed to form long PES packets, is divided into short transport stream packets comprising the 184 byte payload and a 4 byte transport stream header, and multiplexed into the transport stream for transmission the same as video and audio data.

The packet identifiers (PIDs) of transport stream packets containing teletext are included as PIDs for private streams in the program map table (PMT) of the respective program (Fig. 9.5.).

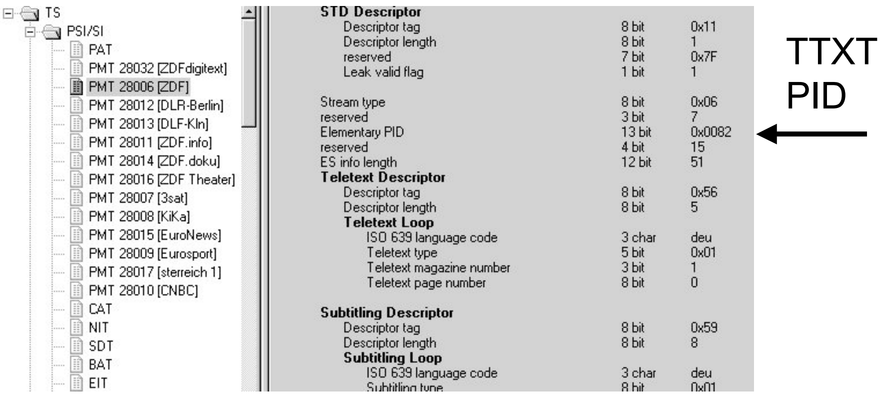


Fig. 9.5. Entry of a teletext service in a Program Map Table (PMT)

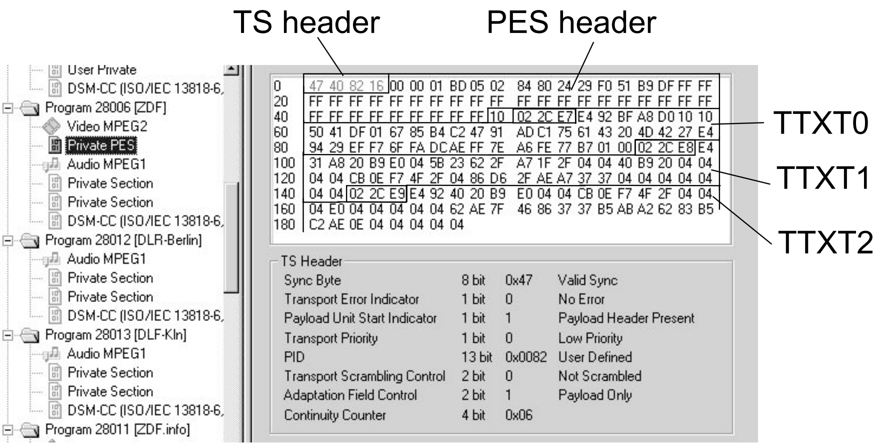


Fig. 9.6. Transport stream packet with teletext content

These PIDs can then be used for accessing transport stream packets containing teletext. A transport stream packet containing a PES header can be recognized by its payload start indicator bit being set. The payload unit of this packet contains the 45 byte PES header and the first teletext packets. The further teletext packets follow in the next transport stream packets having the same PID. The length of a teletext PES packet is adjusted so that an integral number of many transport stream packets will yield one complete PES packet. After a teletext PES packet has been completely transmitted, it will be retransmitted or a new packet sent if there are any changes to the teletext. Immediately preceding the teletext data in the PES packet, the field parity and the line offset indicate the field and line in which the teletext data are to be inserted back into the composite video signal by the DVB receiver.

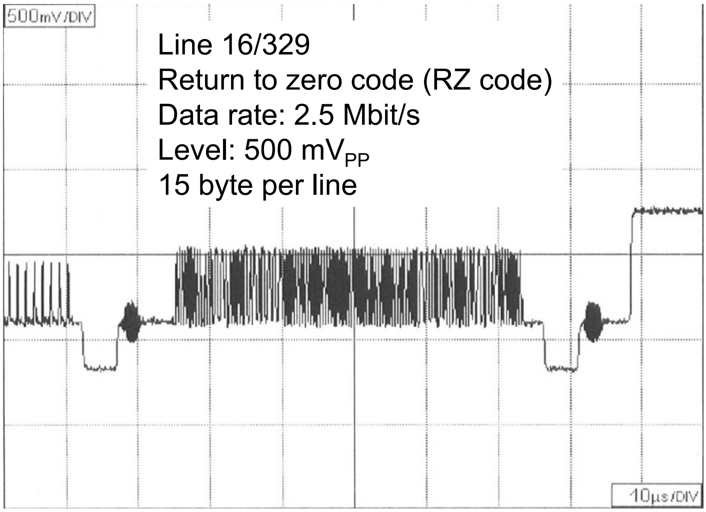


Fig. 9.7. Analog TV data line in the vertical blanking interval

9.2 Video Program System

VPS, the video program system for controlling video recorders, has long been known and used in public-service TV broadcasting, especially in Europe. It can be used for controlling recording in video recorders via the data line, mostly line 16 in the first field. In the data line (Fig. 9.7.), 15 bytes are transmitted in RZ (return-to-zero) coding, including the VPS information. According to ETSI ETS 301775, bytes 3 to 15 of the data line are simply inserted into the payload part of a PES packet, similarly to DVB teletext (Fig. 9.8. and 9.9.). The data unit ID is set to 0xC3 in this case, corresponding to the VBI (vertical blanking interval) according to DVB. As in DVB teletext, this is followed by the Data Unit Length, the field ID and the line number in the field.

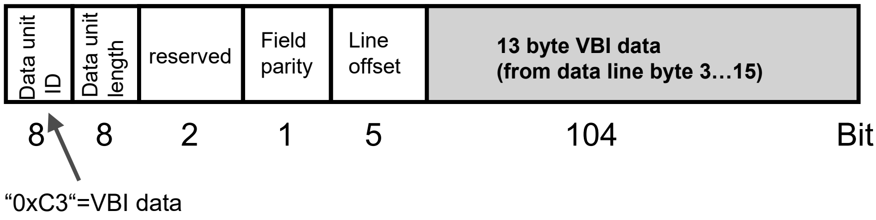


Fig. 9.8. PES packet with VBI data

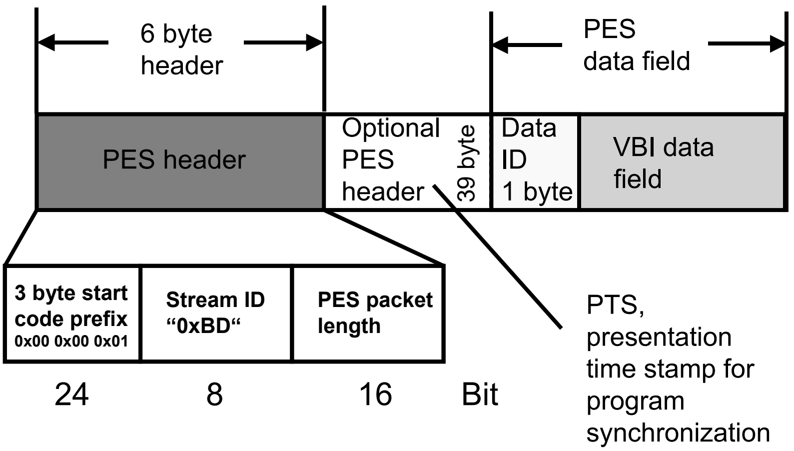


Fig. 9.9. VBI data field

The data line (Fig. 9.7.) contains the following information:

- Byte 1: Run-in 10101010
- Byte 2: Start code 01011101
- Byte 3: Source ID
- Byte 4: Serial ASCII text transmission (source)
- Byte 5: Monaural/stereo/binaural
- Byte 6: Video content ID

- Byte 7: Serial ASCII text transmission
- Byte 8: Remote control (routing)
- Byte 9: Remote control (routing)
- Byte 10: Remote control
- Byte 11 to 14: Video Program System
- Byte 15: reserved

4 bytes of VPS data (bytes 11 to 14):

- Day (5 bits)
- Month (4 bits)
- Hour (5 bits)
- Minute (6 bits)
- Country (4 bits)
- Program source ID (6 bits)

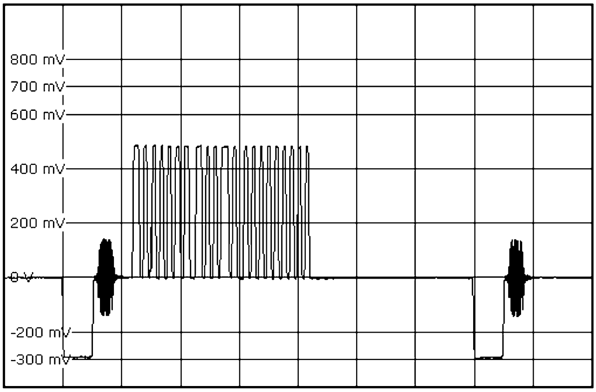


Fig. 9.10. WSS signal in line 23 of an analog TV signal

9.3 WSS – Wide Screen Signalling

Since PALplus so-called wide screen signalling (WSS) can be provided in video line 23. WSS informs the monitor or display about the current display format 4:3 or 16:9. For this purpose a digital control signal can be inserted into the first part of line 23 (Fig. 9.10.). A WSS signal can also be tunnelled via DVB in private PES packets. The principle is the same as for teletext and VPS. For technical reasons, this signal is visible on some TV screens at the top the left-hand side of the picture (Fig. 9.11.).

Fig. 9.11. Visible WSS signal on a TV screen (top, left-hand side)

```
5th Stream
Stream type                           8 bit  0x06 (6)    Private PES
reserved                              3 bit  0x7
Elementary PID                       13 bit  0x0C8F (3215)
reserved                              4 bit  0xF
ES info length                       12 bit  10
Teletext Descriptor
 Descriptor tag                       8 bit  0x56 (86)
 Descriptor length                    8 bit  5
 Teletext Loop
  ISO 639 language code              3 char  ger
  Teletext type                       5 bit  0x01        initial teletext page
  Teletext magazine number            3 bit  1
  Teletext page number                8 bit  0
Stream Identifier Descriptor
 Descriptor tag                       8 bit  0x52 (82)
 Descriptor length                    8 bit  1
 Component tag                        8 bit  0x04 (4)
```

Fig. 9.12. Declaration of teletext in a PMT

9.4 Practical examples

In this chapter, the screen shots from a MPEG analyzer show some practical examples of teletext, VBI and WSS tunnelling in a DVB compliant MPEG-2 transport stream (Fig. 9.12., 9.13., 9.14., 9.15.).

4th Stream			
Stream type	8 bit	0x06 (6)	Private PES
reserved	3 bit	0x7	
Elementary PID	13 bit	0x0C8E (3214)	
reserved	4 bit	0xF	
ES info length	12 bit	19	
VBI Data Descriptor			
Descriptor tag	8 bit	0x45 (69)	
Descriptor length	8 bit	6	
Data service id	8 bit	0x04 (4)	VPS
Data service descriptor length	8 bit	1	
reserved	2 bit	0x3	
Field parity	1 bit	1	
Line offset	5 bit	16	
Data service id	8 bit	0x05 (5)	WSS
Data service descriptor length	8 bit	1	
reserved	2 bit	0x3	
Field parity	1 bit	1	
Line offset	5 bit	23	
User Defined Descriptor			
Descriptor tag	8 bit	0xC3 (195)	
Descriptor length	8 bit	6	
Descriptor Data (hex)	6 byte	04 01 F0 05 01 F7	
Stream Identifier Descriptor			
Descriptor tag	8 bit	0x52 (82)	
Descriptor length	8 bit	1	
Component tag	8 bit	0x06 (6)	

Fig. 9.13. Declaration of VBI and WSS in a PMT [DVM]

Packetized Elementary Stream (PES)			
Packet Start Code Prefix	24 bit	0x000001	
Stream Id	8 bit	0xBD	privat
PES packet length	16 bit	1282	
PES header data			
...			
PES data			
Data identifier	8 bit	0x10	EBU da
data_unit_id	8 bit	0x02	EBU Te
data_unit_length	8 bit	44	
txt_data_field (includes one line of text)			
reserved_future_use	2 bit	3	
field_parity	1 bit	1	first
line_offset	5 bit	7	videol
framing_code	8 bit	0xE4	bit re
magazine_and_packet_address	16 bit	0xD91C	magazi
data_block		0xE0234F75E337F746	
data block in bit reverse		0x07 D r . G l o	
data_unit_id	8 bit	0x02	EBU Te
data_unit_length	8 bit	44	
txt_data_field (includes one line of text)			

Fig. 9.14. Teletext transmission in a private PES packet [DVM]

```
txt_data_field (includes one line of text)
  reserved_future_use               2 bit  3
  field_parity                      1 bit  1           first videofie
  line_offset                       5 bit  8           videoline 8
  framing_code                      8 bit  0xE4        bit reverse 0x
  magazine_and_packet_address      16 bit  0x7AF4      magazine: 3
  data_block                               0xE0234F75B3864F2F977604CB
  data block in bit reverse                0x07 D r . M a r t i n
data_unit_id                        8 bit  0x02        EBU Teletext n
data_unit_length                    8 bit  44
txt_data_field (includes one line of text)
  reserved_future_use               2 bit  3
  field_parity                      1 bit  1           first videofie
  line_offset                       5 bit  9           videoline 9
  framing_code                      8 bit  0xE4        bit reverse 0x
  magazine_and_packet_address      16 bit  0xD9F4      magazine: 3
  data_block                               0xE00B4FF7677504CB97B6F776
  data block in bit reverse                0x07 P r o f .   S i m c
data_unit_id                        8 bit  0x02        EBU Teletext n
data_unit_length                    8 bit  44
```

```
vps_data_field (includes one line of vertical blanking)
  reserved_future_use               2 bit  3
  field_parity                      1 bit  1           first videofiel
  line_offset                       5 bit  16          videoline 16
  not_relevant                      8 bit  0xB1
  not_relevant                      8 bit  0x62
  PCS                               8 bit  0xA0
  not_relevant                      8 bit  0x00
  not_relevant                      8 bit  0x00
  not_relevant                      8 bit  0x00
  not_relevant                      8 bit  0x00
  not_relevant                      8 bit  0x00
  Net or provider bin               2 bit  0x3
  Day                               5 bit  24
  Month                             4 bit  8
  Hour                              5 bit  10
  Minute                            6 bit  30
  Country                           4 bit  0xD
  Net or provider bin               6 bit  0x01
  Programmetype bin                 8 bit  0xFF
stuffing_bytes all                  8 bit  0xFF
```

```
wss_data_field
  reserved_future_use               2 bit  3
  field_parity                      1 bit  1
  line_offset                       5 bit  23
  Aspect ratio                      4 bit  0xE
  Film bit                          1 bit  0x0
  Colour coding bit                 1 bit  0x1
  Helper bit                        1 bit  0x0
  reserved bit                      1 bit  0x0
  Subtitles within Teletext bit     1 bit  0x0
  Subtitling mode                   2 bit  0x0
  Suround sound bit                 1 bit  0x0
  Copyright information             2 bit  0x0
  reserved_future_use               2 bit  3
stuffing_bytes all                  8 bit  0xFF
data_unit_id                        8 bit  0x02
data_unit_length                    8 bit  44
```

Fig. 9.15. Teletext, VBI and WSS data blocks in a PES packet [DVM]

9.5 Further Program Associated Data

Today modern TV flatscreens are advertised by using the logo “HbbTV“ or “Smart TV“. Those flatscreens allow futher functionalities or applications. That will be described in further chapters later on. For that „“Smart TV“ applications further program associated data also need to be transported.
In the US teletext is unknown but there are similar services like the European subtitles. They are called “Closed Capturing“ and they need to be offered by law. “Closed Capturing“ data are directly transported in the video elementary stream. In analog US TV “Closed Capturing“ data was transported in line 21 (acc. to EIA-608-A) of the vertical blanking interval (Fig. 9.16.) and Fig. 9.17.). The relevant standard for the transmission of “Closed Capturing“ inside ATSC is EIA-708-B.

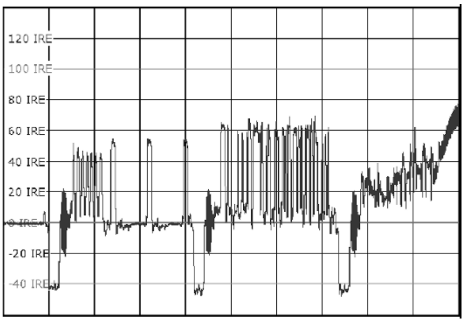


Fig. 9.16. “Closed Capturing“ data in line 21 of an analog Std.M TV signal

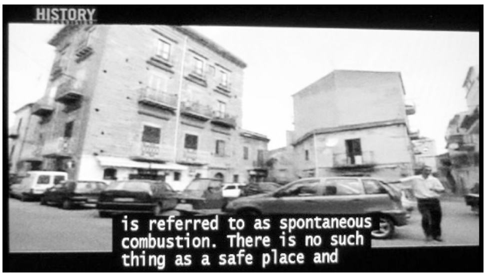


Fig. 9.17. “Closed Capturing“ text window (example from US)

Bibliography: [ETS 300472], [ETS 301775], [DVM], [EIA-608-A], [EIA-708-B]

10 Physical AV Interface Signals

Analog SDTV (Standard Definition Television) video signals have a bandwidth of about 4.2 MHz to 6 MHz and are transferred over 75-Ohm coaxial cables. In the professional era and the more sophisticated consumer electronics segment, these are usually green-jacketed cables equipped with BNC plugs. When terminated with exactly 75 Ohms, the analog video signals have an amplitude of 1 V_{pp}. Analog video signals are encountered in various formats, namely

- inherently coded composite video signal, also called FBAS or CVBS, CCVS in PAL, SECAM and NTSC,
- RGB coded component video signal, or
- YUV signal.

A frequently asked question is why video technology uses a 75-Ohm system. The reason is that coaxial cables with an impedance of 75 Ohms have a lower attenuation. Wherever attenuation is important, cables with an impedance of 75 Ohms are used throughout in radio technology, which also applies to both video and antenna cables (whether terrestrial, broadband, or satellite). In the consumer segment, all video and audio input and output interfaces are equipped with RCA sockets and plugs without exception, or the signals are transferred via a so-called SCART interface.

Fig. 10.1. RCA sockets, for component video signals in this example

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_10

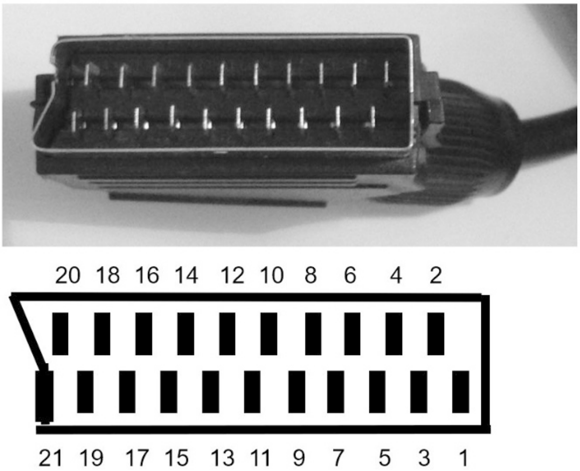


Fig. 10.2. Pinout of SCART plugs

Table 10.1. Pinout of SCART plugs

Pin	Signal
1	Audio output, right
2	Audio input, right
3	Audio output, left/mono
4	Audio ground
5	RGB - blue ground (ground for pin 7)
6	Audio input left/mono
7	RGB Blue, S-Video down, Component P_B up
8	Status and Aspect Ratio up 0...0.4V – off 5…8V – on/16:9 9.5…12V on/4:3
9	RGB Green ground (ground for pin 11)
10	Clock / Data 2 / Control bus
11	RGB Green Component Y
12	Reserved / Data 1
13	RGB Red ground (ground for pin 15)

Pin	Signal
14	Data signal ground (ground for pins 8, 10, 12)
15	RGB Red up S-Video C up Component P_R up
16	Blanking signal up RGB-selection voltage up 0...0.4V composite 1…3V RGB
17	Composite video ground (ground for pins 19, 20)
18	Blanking signal ground (ground for pin 16)
19	Composite video output S-Video Y output
20	Composite video input S-Video Y input
21	Shell/Chassis

Analog audio signals typically have a signal level of 0dBu (1 mW on 600 Ohms) or +6 dBu (note the lowercase "u") and are available on

- XLR plugs and XLR sockets (professional segment), or
- RCA plugs and RCA sockets (consumer segment).

The input impedance of the interface is in the range 600 Ohms to 100 kOhms.

10.1 Physical Interfaces for Digital Video Signals

The first interfaces for digital TV signals were implemented as parallel interfaces using the 25-pin D-sub connector familiar from PC printer interfaces. Due to noise immunity, the signals were transferred as Low Voltage Differential Signals (LVDS) over twisted pair cables. Nowadays 75-Ohm coax technology is used exclusively in this area as well. Digital video signals are transmitted as serial information at a data rate of 270 Mbit/s over 75-Ohm coaxial cables mounted with the popular and robust BNC plugs. Both uncompressed video signals as per standard 601 and compressed video signals are transmitted in the same manner. The distribution paths in the studio are the same, as are the cables, amplifiers, and cable equalizers. The engineering slang often calls this SDI or TS-ASI. TS-ASI and SDI use the same physical interface, only the content is different. SDI (Serial Digital Interface) carries the uncompressed serial digital video signal as per standard 601 at a data rate of 270 Mbit/s. TS-ASI (Transport Stream - Asynchronous Serial Interface) is an MPEG-2 transport stream on a serial interface. The interface is physically identical to the SDI interface, but instead of SDI, it carries a transport stream at a data rate considerably lower than possible over this serial physical transmission path; hence "asynchronous". In terms of data rate, the transport stream is asynchronous to the 270 Mbit/s constant data rate on the TS-ASI interface. For example, if the data rate of the transport stream is 38 Mbit/s, the remainder of the 270 Mbit/s data rate is padded with stop information. Working with a constant 270 Mbit/s data rate brings the obvious advantage that studios can use uniform distribution paths for 601 signals and MPEG-2 transport streams. Meanwhile, further digital video interfaces like HD-SDI, DVI and HDMI have also appeared. The physical interfaces used for digital TV signals are the following:

- parallel interface for uncompressed digital video signals
- SDI interface
- HD-SDI interface
- 3G/HD/SDI interface
- TS parallel interface
- TS-ASI parallel interface
- SMPTE310
- BCMUX interface (ISDB-T)
- DVI interface
- HDMI interface

10.2 "CCIR 601" Parallel and Serial Interface

Uncompressed SDTV video signals have a data rate of 270 Mbit/s and they are distributed parallelly over twisted pair cables, or serially over 75-Ohm coaxial cables. The parallel interface is a 25-pin D-Sub socket familiar from, among others, the PC printer port. The signals have LVDS (Low Voltage Differential Signalling) format, which means that instead of TTL voltage levels, ECL levels (800 mV_{pp}) are used. Additionally, each data bit is transmitted together with its inverted value to keep the noise level over twisted pairs to a minimum. Table 10.2 shows the pinout of the 25-pin parallel port, along with the pinout of the parallel MPEG-2 transport stream interface — though it has been largely replaced by the serial "CCIR 601" line, also known as SDI (Serial Digital Interface). The connector of this latter one is a 75-Ohm BNC socket with a voltage level of 800 mV_{pp}, used with the usual 75-Ohm video cables. In contrast to the parallel interface, signals can be distributed over longer distances using cable equalizers.

Table 10.2. Parallel CCIR 601 and Transport Stream interface

Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal
1	Clock	14	Clock inverted
2	System ground	15	System ground
3	601 data bit 9 (MSB) TS data bit 7 (MSB)	16	601 data bit 9 (MSB) inverted TS data bit 7 (MSB) inverted
4	601 data bit 8 TS data bit 6	17	601 data bit 8 inverted TS data bit 6 inverted
5	601 data bit 7 TS data bit 5	18	601 data bit 7 inverted TS data bit 5 inverted
6	601 data bit 6 TS data bit 4	19	601 data bit 6 inverted TS data bit 4 inverted
7	601 data bit 5 TS data bit 3	20	601 data bit 5 inverted TS data bit 3 inverted
8	601 data bit 4 TS data bit 2	21	601 data bit 4 inverted TS data bit 2 inverted
9	601 data bit 3 TS data bit 1	22	601 data bit 3 inverted TS data bit 1 inverted
10	601 data bit 2 TS data bit 0	23	601 data bit 2 inverted TS data bit 0 inverted
11	601 data bit 1 TS data valid	24	601 data bit 1 inverted TS data valid inverted
12	601 data bit 0 TS packet sync	25	601 data bit 0 inverted TS packet sync inverted
13	Shell/Chassis		

10.3 Synchronous Parallel Transport Stream Interface (TS PARALLEL)

The parallel MPEG-2 transport stream interface is designed to be fully compatible with the "CCIR 601" interface. Here, too, LVDS (Low Voltage Differential Signalling) signals are used at ECL (Emitter Coupled Logic) levels and are transferred as balanced signals over twisted pairs. The connector is once again a 25-pin D-sub plug, and its pinout is compatible with that of the "CCIR 601" interface. The pinout of the data signal, which contains only 8 bits in contrast to the "CCIR 601" signal, is shown in Table 10.2 in the previous section (Table 10.2.).

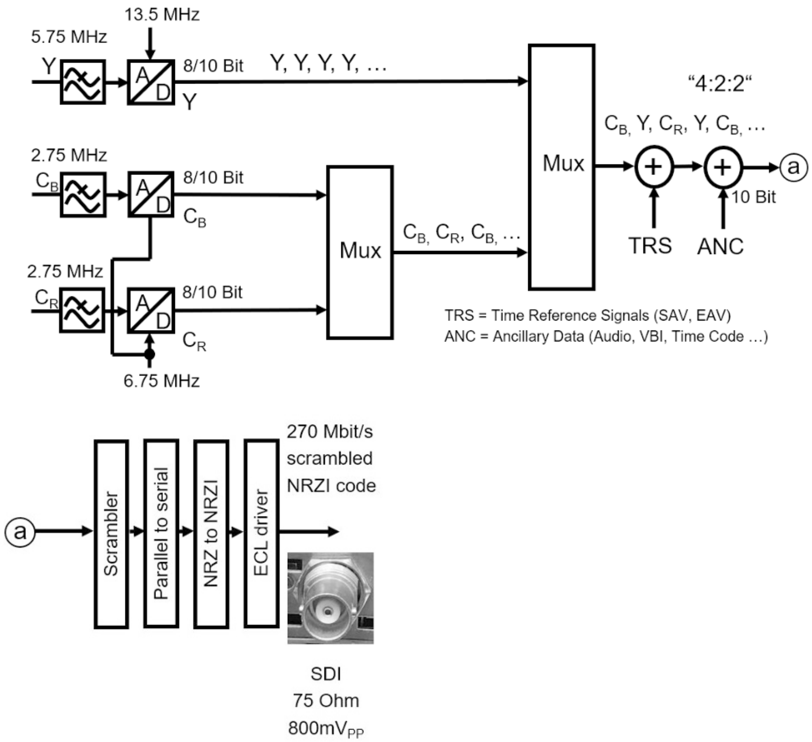


Fig. 10.3. SDI interface, block diagram (scrambled NRZI code, ECL level); NRZI = Non-Return-to-Zero Inverted.

The data stream transmitted over this parallel transport stream interface (see Figs. 10.3, 10.4, and 10.5) is always synchronized to the MPEG-2 transport stream to be transmitted, i.e. if the transport stream has a data rate of e.g. 38 Mbit/s, then the data rate of the parallel TS interface will also be 38 Mbit/s. The transport stream remains unchanged.

However, the packet sizes supported by the Transport Stream interface can be 188, 204 or 208 bytes. The 204-byte or 208-byte packet sizes come from the Reed-Solomon error protection used in the transmission link of

DVB and ATSC signals, respectively. Any data sent via the transmission stream interface in addition to the 188 bytes are considered as dummy bytes and their content can be ignored. Many devices can be configured to these various packet sizes or support all formats.

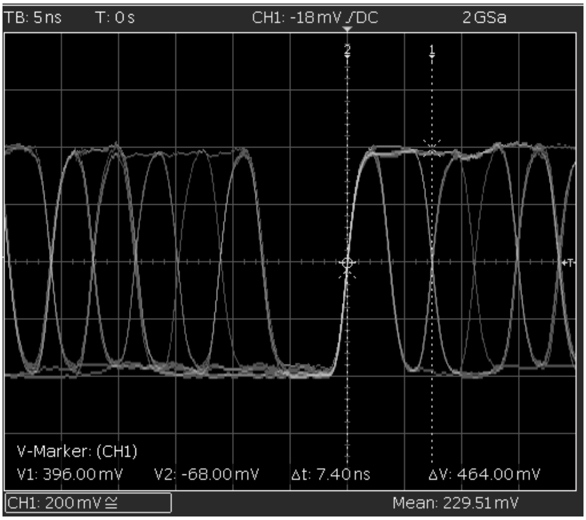


Fig. 10.4. SDI signal in time domain (NRZI code)

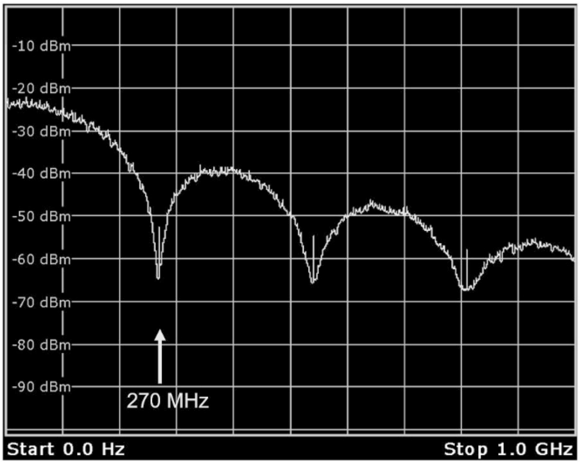


Fig. 10.5. SDI spectrum; sin(x)/x function with zeros at multiples of 270 MHz

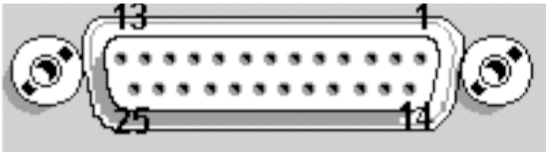


Fig. 10.6. Parallel transport stream interface

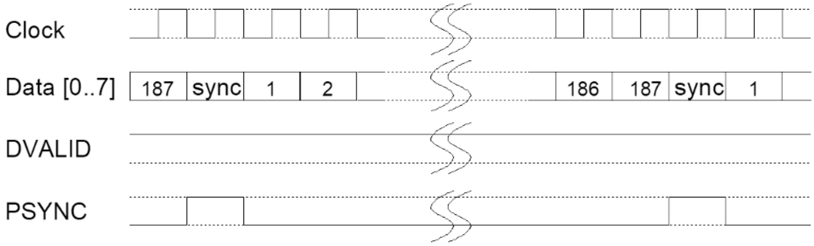


Fig. 10.7. Transmission format via a TS parallel interface using 188-byte packets [DVG]

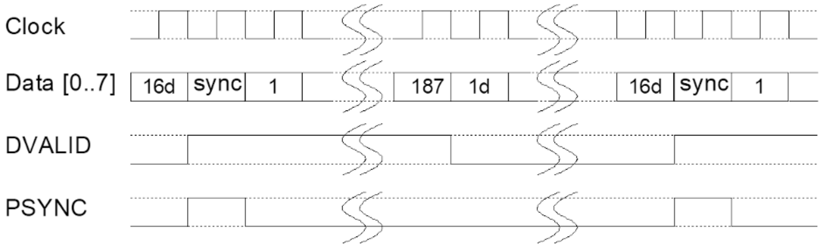


Fig. 10.8. Transmission format using 188-byte packets and 16 dummy bytes [DVG]

Fig. 10.9. TS-ASI connector (75 Ohms, BNC)

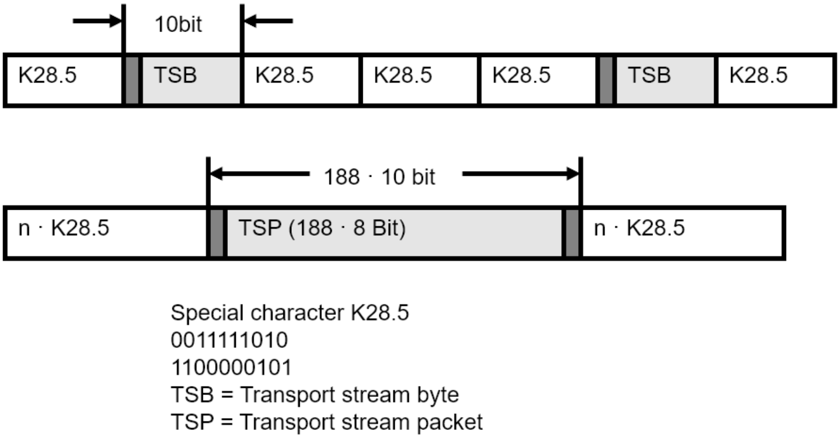


Fig. 10.10. TS-ASI in single-byte mode (top) and burst mode (bottom)

The 188 bytes of the Transport Stream packet can be extended by 16 additional information bytes, as is the case with ISDB-T when using the BCMUX format. ISDB-T uses these 16 bytes to identify the multiplexing, i.e. the layer used.

10.4 Asynchronous Serial Transport Stream Interface (TS-ASI)

The asynchronous serial transport stream interface (Fig. 10.9.) has a constant data rate of 270 Mbit/s and can transmit (8-bit) data bytes at up to 27 MB/s. Due to the fixed 270 Mbit/s data rate of this interface, it is not in sync with the actual MPEG-2 transport stream. However, the advantage is that TS-ASI can use the same distribution system as SDI. Each byte is complemented with two additional bits based on a standardized table. They serve on the one hand to identify the data bytes (dummy bytes) used to fill up the 27 MB/s data rate, and, on the other hand, to prevent a DC voltage component in the serial signal.

The connector used is a 75-Ohm BNC socket with a level of 800 mV_{pp} (+/-10 %).

The TS-ASI interface can be operated in two modes: burst- or single byte mode (Fig. 10.10.). In the burst mode, the TS packets remain unchanged and dummy packets are inserted to reach the 270 Mbit/s data rate, while in single-byte mode, dummy bytes are inserted as "padding" to reach the 270 Mbit/s output data rate.

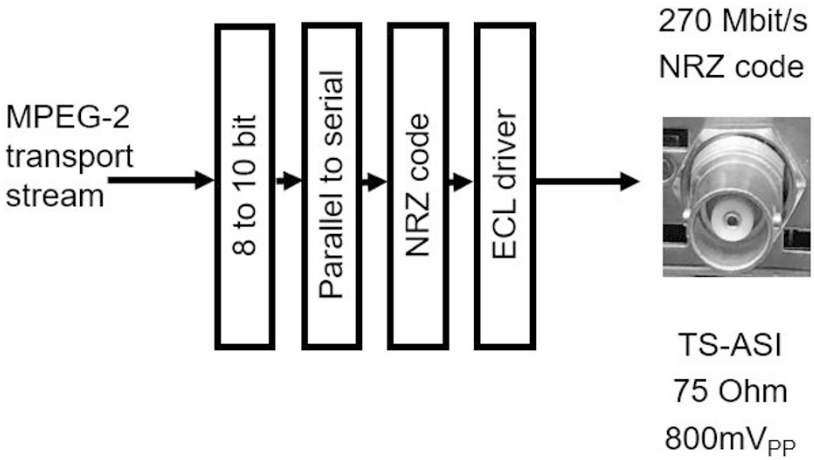


Fig. 10.11. TS-ASI interface, block diagram (no scrambler, NRZ code, ECL level)

10.5 SMPTE310 Interface

A special type of the TS-ASI line is the SMPTE310 interface defined for ATSC. This is a serial synchronous data interface that operates at the fixed 19.39 Mbit/s data rate of the ATSC standard and uses a BNC connector.

10.6 ISDB-T BCMUX

The Japanese ISDB-T standard defines three physical layers for transferring three different transport streams, each with different physical parameters (error correction, modulation method). The BCMUX format has been defined to enable these three transport streams to be delivered to the transmitter locations as a single signal (see also Chapter 25, ISDB-T). In order to achieve this, a further 16 bytes are appended to the 188 bytes of the transport stream packet to signal the layer the given transport stream packet belongs to.

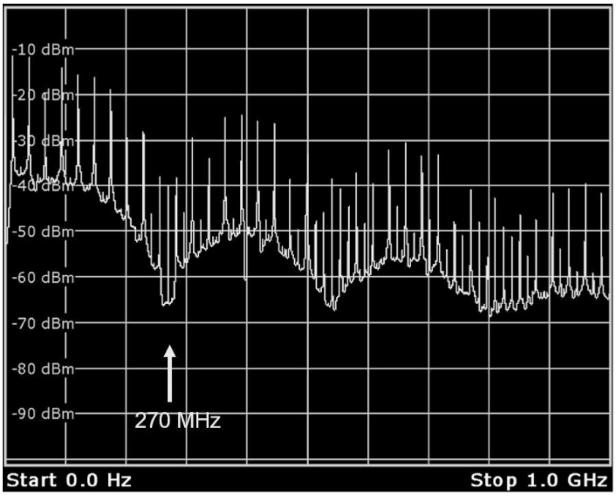


Fig. 10.12. TS-ASI spectrum (different spectrum distribution in comparison to SDI because of non-scrambled NRZ code); because of pure NRZ code the TS-ASI signal need to have the right polarity.

10.7 DVI Interface

DVI (Digital Visual Interface) is an interface standard that has, for now, replaced the VGA interface used with displays in the PC world. It comes in two versions: DVI-I (Integrated) and DVI-D (Digital). The DVI-I interface additionally contains the analog VGA components, i.e. it can be converted to a VGA interface using a passive adapter plug. The DVI-D interface contains the digital monitor signals only. The DVI line has a data rate of 1.65 Gbit/s. It can be used to transfer the signals of HD Ready monitors or beamers (projectors).

Fig. 10.13. The DVI interface (left: DVI-D; right: DVI-I)

Table 10.3. Pinout of the DVI interface

Pin	Signal
01	TMDS Data 2-
02	TMDS Data 2+
03	TMDS data 2/4 shield
04	TMDS Data 4-
05	TMDS Data 4+
06	DDC clock
07	DDC data
08	Analog vertical sync
09	TMDS Data 1-
10	TMDS Data 1+
11	TMDS data 1/3 shield
12	TMDS Data 3-
13	TMDS Data 3+
14	+5 V
15	+5 V ground
16	Hot plug detect
17	TMDS Data 0-
18	TMDS Data 0+
19	TMDS data 0/5 shield
20	TMDS Data 5-
21	TMDS Data 5+
22	TMDS clock shield
23	TMDS clock+
24	TMDS clock-
C1	Analog Red
C2	Analog Green
C3	Analog Blue
C4	Analog horizontal sync
C5	Analog ground

TMDS = Transmission Minimized Digital Signalling
DDC = Display Data Channel

10.8 HD-SDI interface

HD-SDI (High Definition Serial Digital Interface) is the “big brother" of the SDI interface. It is used to distribute uncompressed HD video at a data rate of 1.485 Gbit/s and a resolution of 10 bits, or to supply signals to a HD MPEG encoder. The corresponding transfer medium can be a co-axial 75-Ohm / 800 mV line with BNC connectors or an optical link. The 3G HD-SDI interface supports data rates of up to 3 Gbit/s. Table 10.4. lists all currently used physical SDI formats.

Table 10.4. Physical SDI formats

Standard	Abbreviation	Data rate	Example
SMPTE259M	SD-SDI	270 Mbit/s	576i, 480i
SMPTE344M	ED-SDI	540 Mbit/s	576p, 480p
SMPTE292M	HD-SDI	1.485 Gbit/s	720p, 1080i
SMPE372M	Dual Link HD-SDI	2.970 Gbit/s	1080p
SMPTE424M	3G-SDI	2.970 Gbit/s	1080p
SMPTE ST 2081	6G-UHD-SDI	6 Gbit/s	4K
SMPTE ST 2082	12G-UHD-SDI	12 Gbit/s	4K

10.9 DVB-IP interface

In an increasing number of applications, the TS-ASI interface that handles the MPEG-2 transport stream is replaced by the Gigabit Ethernet interface (CAT6 cable, RJ45 connector). This DVB-IP interface will completely supplant the TS-ASI in the medium term. It can be used to distribute multiple transport streams over a single interface, with stream addressing based on "sockets" (known from the PC world), which consist of a port number and an IP address.

10.10 SDI over IP, AVB

Uncompressed video signals beyond HD (4K, UHD-1) are currently mostly transmitted over four parallel 3G HD-SDI cables transporting one quadrant each. Two other alternatives offer more practical solutions:

- 802.AVB (Audio Video Bridge)
- SDI over IP – SMPTE2022

Both rely on IP cable structures. 802.AVB replaces all ISO/OSI layers with its own protocols, while SDI over IP, i.e. SMPTE2022, leaves the lowest ISO/OSI layer untouched.

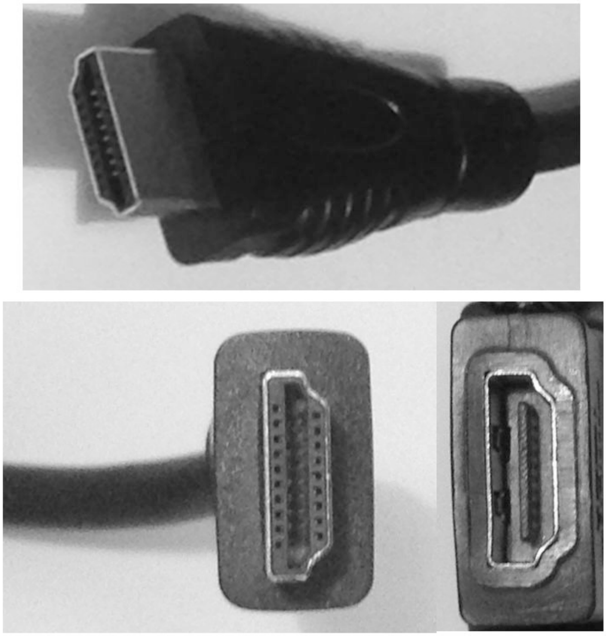


Fig. 10.14. The HDMI interface

10.11 HDMI – High Definition Multimedia Interface

In the age of analog television, SCART (Fig. 10.2) was the mostly used interface to connect external devices to the TV set and distribute both the video signal – as an inherently coded CVBS signal (composite video) or as component video (RGB) –, and the audio signals (left, right). The VGA (Video Graphics Array) and the DVI interface, both known from the PC world, carry the video signal only. DVI (Digital Visual Interface) was developed as a digital stand-in for the analog VGA interface. The HDMI interface (Fig. 10.14.), signal-compatible with the DVI, appeared around 2003. A purely passive adapter plug can be used to convert between DVI and HDMI. In the age of HDTV (high-resolution TV), the HDMI interface is the primary connection between flat screen TVs and external video and audio sources like DVD players, Blu-ray players or AV receivers. The requirement of the movie industry for a copy protection mechanism was met with HDCP (High Bandwidth Digital Content Protection) implemented in HDMI. The following sections discuss the essential features and data protocols of the HDMI interface.

10.11.1 HDMI – Development Path and Versions

When the HDMI standard was published in 2003, HDTV was still in its infancy. All current devices are equipped with at least HDMI v1.4 interfaces, and products for the UHDTV segment are already shipped with HDMI V2.0.

The various HDMI versions support different functionalities, data rates, and connector types as listed below:

- HDMI version 1.0, published in 2002: up to 3.96 Gbit/s, type A connector
- HDMI version 1.1, published in 2004: up to 3.96 Gbit/s with type A connector and up to 7.92 Gbit/s with type B connector, DVD-Audio
- HDMI version 1.2, published in 2005: connector and data rates as in 1.1, but now also SACD audio
- HDMI version 1.2a, published in 2005: as 1.2, but now also CEC support
- HDMI version 1.3, published in 2006: up to 8.16 Gbit/s, connector type C added (mini-HDMI), now also Dolby Digital Plus audio
- HDMI version 1.3abc, published in 2006: up to 8.16 Gbit/s, first to support 3D
- HDMI version 1.4, published in 2009: up to 8.16 Gbit/s, connector type D added (micro-HDMI), now also 4K/2K resolution, HDMI Ethernet channel, Audio Return Channel
- HDMI version 1.4a, published in 2010: further 3D standardization (Side-by-Side, Top-and-Bottom, etc.)

- HDMI version 2.0, published in 2014: data rates up to 14.4 Gbit/s, supports 4Kp50/60
- HDMI version 2.0a, published in 2015: supports HDR (High Dynamic Range)
- HDMI version 2.0b, published in 2016: HDR functions extended with HLG
- HDMI version 2.1, published in 2017: data rates up to 42.6 Gbit/s, extended with Display Stream Compression, supports all 4K image formats and beyond

The evolution of HDMI standards resulted in the introduction of various connector types, increasing data rates, and an audio return channel in the HDMI cable implemented specifically for AV receivers.

10.11.2 Mechanical Implementation

The HDMI interface can be found on flat screen TVs and their typical connected external devices, as well as on mobile phones, video cameras, action cams, vehicles, etc. The connectors must fulfill the various load constraints of these applications, or simply just the need to be sufficiently small or even mechanically compatible with other interface formats. Accordingly, HDMI connectors come in various physical shapes and sizes to fit to a given application.

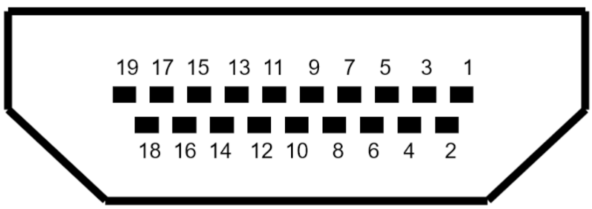


Fig. 10.15. Pinout of the standard HDMI type A plug

HDMI connectors come in the following formats:

- Standard type A with 19 signal wires, a physically relatively large connector
- Type B (29-pole, has not penetrated the market)
- Type C "mini" (19-pole)

- Type D "micro" (19-pole)
- Type E "automotive"

Mini and micro are primarily used in mobile phones, tablet PCs and cameras. Type E has been designed for automotive applications.

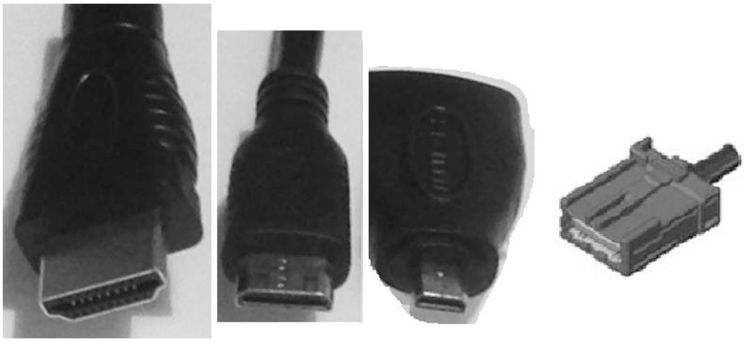


Fig. 10.16. HDMI plug types (from left): type A ("standard"), type C ("mini"), type D ("micro") and type E ("automotive")

Table 10.5. HDMI pinout

Pin #, Plug type A	Pin #, Plug type D	Signal	Description
1	3	TMDS Data 2+	
2	4	TMDS Data 2 GND	Ground
3	5	TMDS Data 2-	
4	6	TMDS Data 1+	
5	7	TMDS Data 1 GND	Ground
6	8	TMDS Data 1-	
7	9	TMDS Data 0+	
8	10	TMDS Data 0 GND	Ground
9	11	TMDS Data 0-	
10	12	TMDS Clock+	
11	13	TMDS Clock GND	Ground
12	14	TMDS Clock-	
13	15	CEC	
14	2	Reserved, or HEC data-	

15	17	SCL	I2C bus for DDC Clock
16	18	SDA	I2C bus for DDC Data
17	16	DDC/CEC/HEC GND	Ground
18	19	+5V, max. 55 mA	Supply voltage
19	1	Hot plug detect, HEC data+	

10.11.3 HDMI Interface Functions

The HDMI interface offers the following functions (Fig. 10.12):

- Video and audio transmission (encrypted where needed)
- Exchange of capabilities of the source and sink, negotiation of formats used
- Remote control of devices (CEC — Consumer Electronics Control)
- Audio return channel from the TV to the AV receiver (ARC — Audio Return Channel)
- Hot plug detect (HPD)
- Power supply (5 V, max. 55 mA) e.g. for power amplifier/equalizer
- Also Ethernet data link

The HDMI interface is used to transfer video and audio data signals (encrypted where needed – HDCP) from a source (receiver, Blu-ray player, etc.) to a target device (flat screen TV) over its so-called TMDS (Transition-Minimized Differential Signalling) lines. This transmission is directional and has a very high data rate. The data must be encrypted in certain cases to prevent access by third parties. However, this content protection (HDCP) will only be activated if requested by the source (Blu ray, TV service, etc.). The key to be used for the transfer is negotiated by the two devices (source and sink) over the HDMI interface.

HDMI also provides for device remote control, allowing e.g. a connected Blu-ray player to be handled from the TV's remote controller; this communication is also transferred over the HDMI cable.

HDMI cables can be hot plugged and unplugged. The connected devices must be able to automatically detect this and react on it. This feature is called HPD (Hot Plug Detect).

Devices connected via an HDMI cable exchange their physical capabilities, i.e. each one informs the other what it is and which video and audio formats it supports. Then both devices agree on a common compatible format for video and audio.

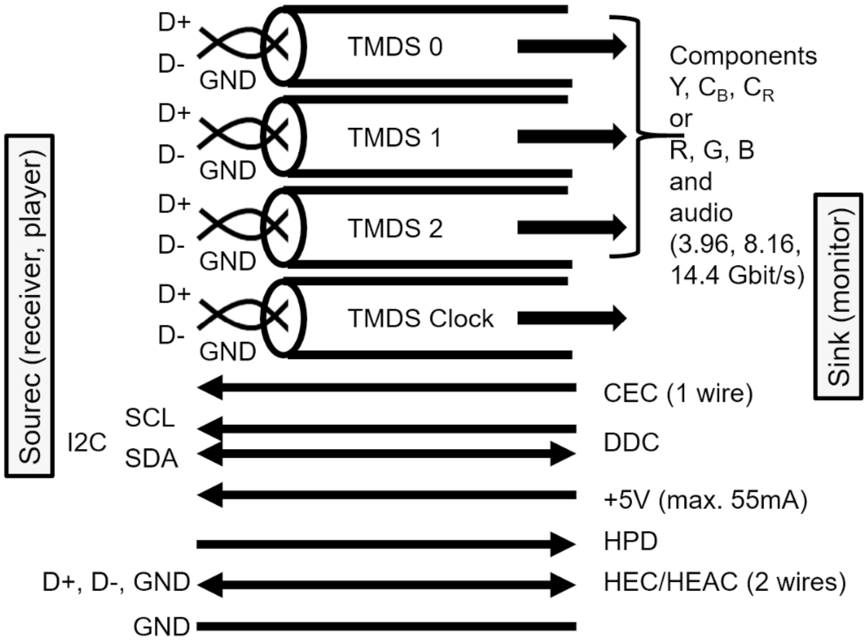


Fig. 10.17. HDMI interface signals

If the home theater includes an AV receiver, the latter is responsible for providing surround sound. To this end, the audio signal of the video must be fed from the TV set to the AV receiver. To save an additional cable, the return channel of the HDMI cable can be used to supply the audio from the TV set to the AV receiver.

The HDMI cable includes a supply line providing 5 V and a maximal output current of 55 mA, which can be used to power e.g. line amplifiers, equalizers.

10.11.4 HDMI Interface Signal Formats

The HDMI interface signal formats are as follows:

- TMDS: Transition-Minimized Differential Signalling
- I^2C bus: serial bidirectional data bus

- CEC: Consumer Electronic Control
- HEC: HDMI Ethernet Channel
- HEAC: HDMI Ethernet and Audio Channel
- DDC: Display Data Channel
- and the supply voltage

TMDS (Transition-Minimized Differential Signalling) is a directional high-speed serial transmission of video and audio data from the source to the sink over three shielded wire pairs (0, 1, 2) at ECL level (800 mVpp) and a line impedance to ground of 50 Ohms. The data rates provided by TMDS are as follows:

- up to 1.65 Gbit/s (DVI — Digital Visual Interface)
- up to 3.96 Gbit/s (HDMI 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
- up to 8.16 Gbit/s (HDMI 1.3, 1.4)
- up to 14.4 Gbit/s (HDMI 2.0)

In addition to the three wire pairs used for data, TMDS uses a fourth shielded wire pair for transmitting the TMDS clock. The actual data rate and hence the actual clock frequency depends on the content to be transmitted. Data sent over the TMDS lines are encrypted where needed using HDCP, and 8b/10b channel coding is used to ensure that the TMDS signals do not contain any DC component. The video signals also include horizontal and vertical blanking intervals. HDMI supports the formats RGB 4:4:4, YCbCr 4:4:4, YCbCr 4:2:2, and YCbCr 4:2:0 with color spaces providing resolutions of up to 24, 30, 36, and 48 bits. Data and audio are transmitted in the blanking intervals, i.e. audio signals are embedded in the video signal and transmitted as Data Islands.

The initial purpose of using three wire pairs in the HDMI interface plus one for the TMDS clock was to enable the transfer of exactly three video signal components, namely

- R G B or
- Y C_B C_R

at an initial resolution of 8 bits. The 8-bit payload was then subjected to 8b/10b coding, resulting in 10-bit codes. A 10-bit value appearing on each of the three TMDS lines constitutes a TMDS signal. Initially, line TMDS 0 was assigned to R, TMDS 1 to G, and TMDS 2 to R for a 4:4:4 RGB signal. Meanwhile, however, a number of video signals with higher resolutions have been defined, so this general line assignment no longer holds.

The I^2C bus, a long-time staple of consumer electronics, is a bidirectional serial data bus consisting of a data (SDA) and a clock line (SCL). The role of this bus is to transmit DDC data.

DDC (Display Data Channel) data, stored in the so-called E-EDID (Enhanced Extended Display Identification Data) memory of the device, represent the physical capabilities of the device and are exchanged upon connection.

The HEC (HDMI Ethernet Channel) or HEAC (HDMI Ethernet and Audio Channel) channel consists of two shielded wire pairs (HEC Data- and HEC Data+) used to transmit Ethernet data, and, importantly, the ARC (Audio Return Channel).

The supply voltage (5 V, max. 55 mA) can be used to power line amplifiers, qualizers where needed.

Optionally, a device, typically the flat screen TV, can use the CEC line of the HDMI cable to remotely control devices connected to it.

Table 10.6. Usual video formats on HDMI, technical parameters

Video Identification Code (VIC)	Resolution, refresh rate	Pixel clock
1	640x480p (VGA), 59.94/60 Hz	25,175 MHz
2, 3	720x480p, 59.94/60 Hz	27,000 MHz
17, 18	720x576p, 50 Hz	27,000 MHz
6,7	720 (1440)x480i, 59.94/60 Hz	27,000 MHz
21, 22	720 (1440)x576i, 50 Hz	27,000 MHz
4	1280x720p, 59.94/60 Hz	74,250 MHz
19	1280x720p, 50 Hz	74,250 MHz
5	1920x1080i, 59.94/60 Hz	74,250 MHz
20	1920x1080i, 50 Hz	74,250 MHz
16	1920x1080p, 59.94/60 Hz	148,500 MHz
31	1920x1080p, 50 Hz	148,500 MHz
34	1920x1080i, 29.97/30 Hz	74,250 MHz
101	4096x2160p, 50 Hz	594,000 MHz
102	4096x2160p, 59.94 Hz	594,000 MHz

The sample calculation below explains how to determine the HDMI data rate and the pixel clock from the video format. Note that data on the TMDS lines are always 8b/10b coded, i.e. each symbol is transmitted as 10 bits, but the actual payload is only 8 bits/symbol. The additional two bits are specifically coded (for DC-free output).

Sample calculation for **1920x1080p30, if the color depth is 12 bits** for each color component:

d_{tmds}=(1920 + 280) · (1080 + 45) · 30 Hz · 3 · 12 bits · 10/8 = 3.34 Gbit/s

(with a H blanking interval of 280 pixels and a V blanking interval of 45 lines)

Consequently, the data rate of each TMDS line is about 1.11 Gbit/s.

For the pixel clock in this example, we obtain

f_{pixel} = 1.11 Gbit/s / (12 · 10/8) = 74.25 MHz.

10.11.5 HDMI Measurement Technology

The interfaces of AV consumer products need to be tested, including the HDMI interface, whether output or input. Devices for HDMI protocol analysis and physical time-domain analysis ("eye pattern") are commercially available (see Rohde&Schwarz VTC, VTE, VTX).

Fig. 10.18 shows the eye patterns of TMDS signals on the HDMI interface for different cable lengths. The eye gets noticeably smaller at increasing cable lengths. Fig. 10.19 shows the parameter values measured on the HDMI interface for SDTV, HDTV and UHDTV signals.

10.11.6 HDMI – Summary and Outlook

The HDMI interface interconnects audiovisual devices built in line with the SDTV or HDTV standard or the new UHDTV standard. The sets use the HDMI interface to exchange video and audio content, and to control other units. Already in the Gigahertz range, the bandwidths and data rates of the HDMI cable will continue to grow. Cable length and cable quality are significant restricting factors that limit connections to about 3–5 m, although the HDMI standard provides for cable lengths of up to 15 m. While 10 m long and even longer HDMI cables are commercially available, their usability depends heavily on the quality of the cable, as well as on the quality of the input and output interface of the device to be connected.

Using such excessive cable lengths is not advisable, as clearly proved by practical experiences with laptops and various connected projectors in various seminar environments. The recommended method for bridging longer distances is to convert e.g. to optical signals and back, or to use a distribution system based on CAT6 cables. However, some contemporary devices with HDMI interfaces are already available with HDMI cable equalizers for compensating cable losses.

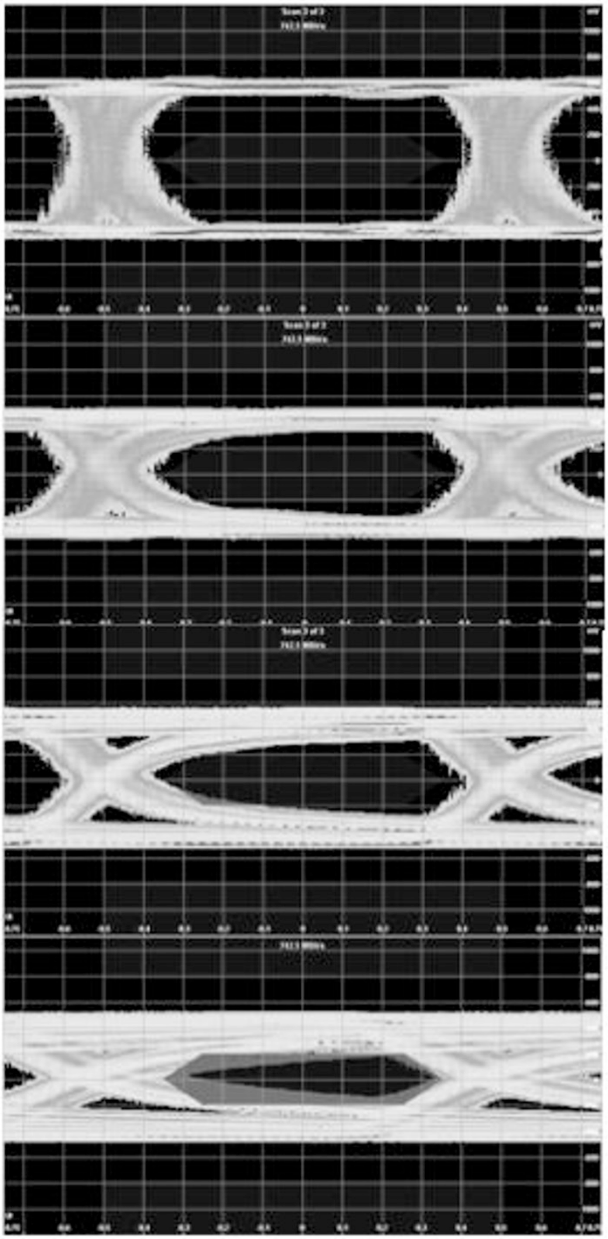


Fig. 10.18. Time domain analysis using the Video Test Center (VTC) of Rohde & Schwarz; eye pattern of a TMDS signal for various cable lengths (0 m, 3 m, 10 m)

Video Code	Pixel Clock	TMDS Char Clk	Input	Standard
720 (1440) x 576i @ 50Hz (22)	27.000MHz	27.000MHz	HDMI [L1]	HDMI 2.0

Video Code (derived from AVI InfoFrame)			720 (1440) x 576i @ 50Hz (22)
Pixel Clock	27.000 000MHz	Vertical Frequency	50.000Hz
Video Format	Interlaced	Horizontal Frequency	15.625kHz
Horizontal Video Parameters		Vertical Video Parameters	
H Total Pixels	1 728	V Total Lines	625
H Active Pixels	1 440	V Active Lines	576
H Front Porch Pixels	24	V Front Porch Lines	2
H Sync Pixels	126	V Sync Lines	3
H Back Porch Pixels	138	V Back Porch Lines	19
H Sync Polarity	Negative	V Sync Polarity	Negative

Video Code	Pixel Clock	TMDS Char Clk	Input	Standard
1280 x 720p @ 50Hz (19)	74.250MHz	74.250MHz	HDMI [L1]	HDMI 2.0

Video Code (derived from AVI InfoFrame)			1280 x 720p @ 50Hz (19)
Pixel Clock	74.250 000MHz	Vertical Frequency	50.000Hz
Video Format	Progressive	Horizontal Frequency	37.500kHz
Horizontal Video Parameters		Vertical Video Parameters	
H Total Pixels	1 980	V Total Lines	750
H Active Pixels	1 280	V Active Lines	720
H Front Porch Pixels	440	V Front Porch Lines	5
H Sync Pixels	40	V Sync Lines	5
H Back Porch Pixels	220	V Back Porch Lines	20
H Sync Polarity	Positive	V Sync Polarity	Positive

Video Code	Pixel Clock	TMDS Char Clk	Input	Standard
1920 x 1080i @ 50Hz (20)	74.250MHz	74.250MHz	HDMI [L1]	HDMI 2.0

Video Code (derived from AVI InfoFrame)			1920 x 1080i @ 50Hz (20)
Pixel Clock	74.250 000MHz	Vertical Frequency	50.000Hz
Video Format	Interlaced	Horizontal Frequency	28.125kHz
Horizontal Video Parameters		Vertical Video Parameters	
H Total Pixels	2 640	V Total Lines	1 125
H Active Pixels	1 920	V Active Lines	1 080
H Front Porch Pixels	528	V Front Porch Lines	2
H Sync Pixels	44	V Sync Lines	5
H Back Porch Pixels	148	V Back Porch Lines	15
H Sync Polarity	Positive	V Sync Polarity	Positive

Video Code	Pixel Clock	TMDS Char Clk	Input	Standard
3840 x 2160 @ 50Hz (96)	594.000MHz	297.000MHz	HDMI [L1]	HDMI 2.0

Video Code (derived from AVI InfoFrame)			3840 x 2160 @ 50Hz (96)
Pixel Clock	594.000 000MHz	Vertical Frequency	50.000Hz
Video Format	Progressive	Horizontal Frequency	112.500kHz
Horizontal Video Parameters		Vertical Video Parameters	
H Total Pixels	2 640	V Total Lines	2 250
H Active Pixels	1 920	V Active Lines	2 160
H Front Porch Pixels	528	V Front Porch Lines	8
H Sync Pixels	44	V Sync Lines	10
H Back Porch Pixels	148	V Back Porch Lines	72
H Sync Polarity	Positive	V Sync Polarity	Positive

Fig. 10.19. HDMI video parameters of mainstream broadcasting video formats (SDTV 720x576i, HDTV 720p, HDTV 1080i, and UHD-1 3840x2150p50), measured by the Video Test Center (VTC) of Rohde & Schwarz

Bibliography: [GRUNWALD], [DVG], [DVMD], [DVQ], [FISCHER4], [ITU601], [REIMERS], [TAYLOR], [HDMI1.4], [HDMI2.0], [7BM85_0E]

11 Measurements on the MPEG-2 Transport Stream

With the introduction of digital television, neither the hopes of the users nor the fears of the test equipment makers were confirmed: there is still a large need for test instruments for digital television, but of a different type. Where it was mainly video analyzers for evaluating the test lines of an analog baseband signal in analog television, it is mainly MPEG test decoders and MPEG transport stream analyzers which are being used in digital TV. Every multiplex center output or in other words a “broadcast headend” output (see also chapter 45 “Studio, Playout, Headend, …”) need to be checked and monitored. Sometimes operators provide also transport stream monitoring at the transmitter station input.

The input interface of a MPEG-2 test decoder or a MPEG transport stream analyzer is either a serial TS-ASI BNC (75 Ohm, 800mV$_{PP}$) connector or an IP interface (RJ45), or both at the same time. A former interface was also a parallel 25-pin Sub-D connector.

The MPEG analyzer consists of the essential circuit blocks of MPEG decoder, MPEG analyzer - usually a signal processor - and a control computer which acquires all the results, displays them on the display and performs and manages all operating and control operations. A test decoder is capable of decoding all the video and audio signals contained in the transport stream and of performing numerous analyses and measurements on the data structure. The MPEG-2 transport stream analysis is a special type of logic analysis.

The Measurement Group in the DVB Project has defined numerous measurements on the MPEG-2 transport stream within its Measurement Guidelines ETR 290. These measurements will be described in more detail in the following chapters. According to ETR 290, the errors to be detected by means of these measurements were graded into three levels of priority: Priority 1, 2, 3.

MPEG-2 transport stream errors:

- Priority 1 - no decodability

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_11

- Priority 2 - partially no decodability
- Priority 3 - errors in the supplementary information/SI

If there is a Priority 1 error, there is often no chance to lock to the transport stream or even to decode a program. Priority 2, in contrast, means that there is partially no possibility of reproducing a program faultlessly. The presence of a category 3 error, on the other hand, only indicates errors in the broadcasting of the DVB service information. The effects are then dependent on how the set-top box used reacts.

Apart from the category 3 errors, all measurements can also be applied with the American ATSC standard where comparable analyses can be made on the PSIP tables.

The following measurements on the MPEG-2 transport stream are defined in the DVB Measurement Guidelines ETR 290:

Table 11.1. MPEG measurement to ETR290 / TR101290 [ETR290]

Measurement	Priority
TS_sync_loss	1
Sync_byte_error	1
PAT_error	1
PMT_error	1
Continuity_count_error	1
PID_error	1
Transport_error	2
CRC_error	2
PCR_error	2
PCR_accuracy_error	2
PTS_error	2
CAT_error	2
SI_repetition_error	3
NIT_error	3
SDT_error	3
EIT_error	3
RST_error	3
TDT_error	3
Undefined_PID	3

11.1 Loss of Synchronisation (TS_sync_loss)

The MPEG-2 transport stream consists of 188-byte-long data packets composed of 4 bytes of header and 184 bytes of payload. The first byte of the header is the synchronization or sync byte which always has the value 0x47 and occurs at constant intervals of 188 bytes. In special cases a spacing of 204 or 208 bytes is also possible, namely when the data frame with Reed Solomon error protection according to DVB or ATSC is similar. The additional 16 or 20 bytes are then dummy bytes and can be simply ignored. At any rate, there is no useful information present since it is not the Reed Solomon coder and decoder which represent the first or, respectively, last element of the transmission link but the energy dispersal unit, and thus any Reed Solomon error protection bytes present would not fit in with the actual transport stream packet. According to DVB, synchronism is achieved after 5 successive sync bytes have been received at correct intervals and with the correct content. When 3 successive sync bytes or transport stream packets have been lost, the MPEG-2 decoder or the corresponding transmission device drops lock again.

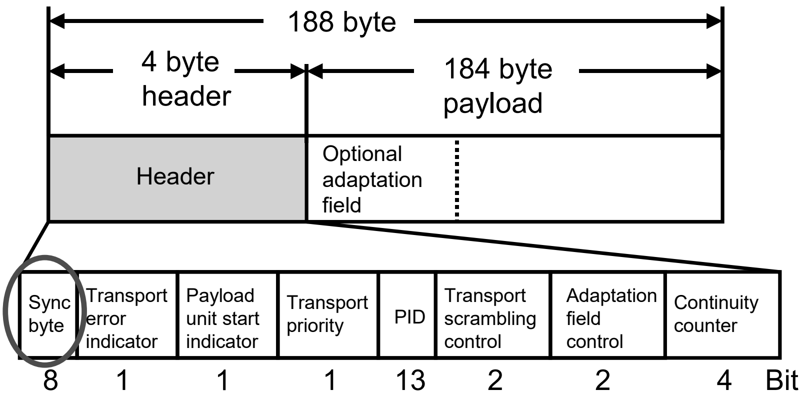


Fig. 11.1. TS_sync_loss

The state of loss of transport stream synchronization, which may occur either because of severe interference or simply because of a break in a line, is called "TS_sync_loss" (Fig. 11.1.).

"TS_sync_loss" occurs when

- the content of the sync bytes of at least 3 successful transport stream packets is not equal to 0x47.

The conditions of synchronization (acquisition of lock, loss of lock) can be adjusted in test decoders.

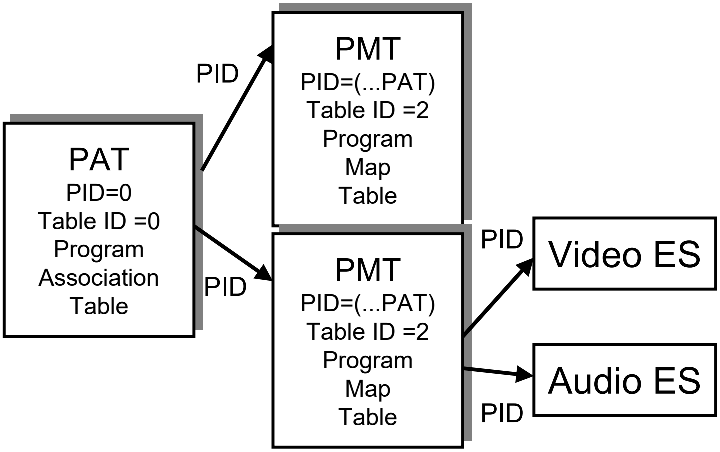


Fig. 11.2. PAT and PMT errors

11.2 Errored Sync Bytes (sync_byte_error)

As explained in the previous chapter, the state of synchronism with the transport stream is considered to be the reception of at least 5 correct sync bytes. Loss of synchronism occurs after the loss of 3 correctly received sync bytes. However, incorrect sync bytes may occur occasionally here and there in the transport stream due to problems in the transmission link. This state, caused in most cases by too many bit errors, is called "sync_byte_error" (Fig. 11.2.).

A "sync_byte_error" occurs when

- the content of a sync byte in the transport stream header is not equal to 0x47.

11.3 Missing or Errored Program Association Table (PAT) (PAT_error)

The program structure, i.e. the composition of the MPEG-2 transport stream is variable or, in other words, open. For this reason, lists for describing the current transport stream composition are transmitted in special TS packets in the transport stream. The most important one of these is the Program Association Table (PAT) which is always transmitted in transport stream packets with PID=0 and Table ID=0. If this table is missing or is errored, identification, and thus decoding, of the programs becomes impossible. In the PAD, the PIDs of all Program Map Tables (PMTs) of all programs are transmitted. The PAT contains pointer information to many PMTs. A TV receiver will find all necessary basic information in the PAT.

A PAT which is missing, is transmitted scrambled, is errorred or is transmitted not frequently enough will lead to an error message “PAT error”. The PAT should be transmitted free of errors and unscrambled every 500 ms at a maximum.

A PAT error occurs when:

- the PAT is missing
- the repetition rate is greater than 500 ms
- The PAT is scrambled
- the table ID is not zero

Details in the PAT are not checked at that time.

11.4 Missing or Errored Program Map Table (PMT) (PMT_error)

For each program, a Program Map Table (PMT) is transmitted at maximum intervals of 500 ms. The PIDs of the MAPs are listed in the PAT. The PMT contains the respective PIDs of all elementary streams belonging to this program. If a PMT referred to in the PAT is missing, there is no way for the TV receiver or decoder to find the elementary streams and to demultiplex and decode them. A PMT listed in the PAT and is missing, errored or scrambled will lead to the error message “PMT_error”.

A “PMT error” occurs when:

- a PMT listed in the PAT is missing
- a section of the PMT is not repeated after 500 ms at the latest
- a PMT is scrambled
- the table ID is not 2

Details in the PMT are not checked.

Like any other table, the PMTs can also be divided into sections. Each section begins with the table_ID=2 and with a PID, specified in the PAT, of between 0x0010 and 0x1FFE according to MPEG-2 and between 0x0020 and 0x1FFE according to DVB. PID 0x1FFF is intended for the zero packets.

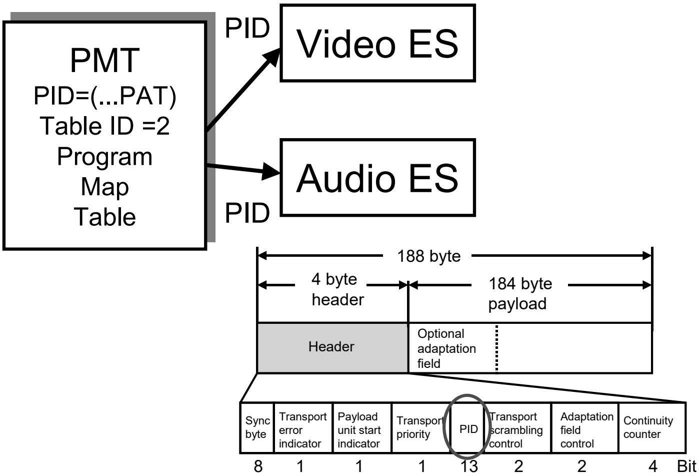


Fig. 11.3. PID_error

11.5 The PID_Error

The PIDs of all elementary streams of a program are contained in the associated program map table (PMT). The PIDs are pointers to the elementary streams: they are used for the addressed access to the corresponding packets of the elementary stream to be decoded. If a PID is listed in some PMT but this is not contained in any packet in the transport stream, there is no way for the MPEG decoder to access the corresponding elementary stream since this is now not contained in the transport stream or has been multiplexed with the wrong PID information. This is what one might call a "classical PID_error". The time limit for the expected repetition rate of transport packets having a particular PID must be set in dependence on application during the measuring. This is usually of the order of magnitude of half a second but is a user-definable quantity, in any case.

A “PID_error” (Fig. 11.3.) occurs when

- transport stream packets with a PID referred to in a PMT are not contained in the transport stream or
- if their repetition rate exceeds a user-definable limit which is usually of the order of magnitude of 500 ms.

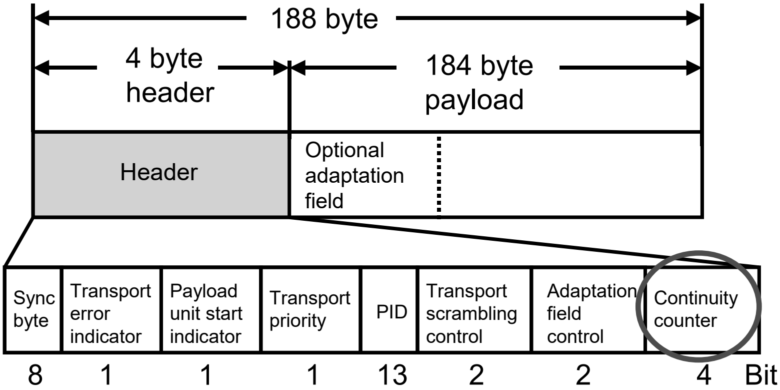


Fig. 11.4. Continuity_count_error

11.6 The Continuity_Count_Error

Each MPEG-2 transport stream packet contains in the 4-byte-long header a 4-bit counter which continuously counts from 0 to 15 and then begins at zero again after an overflow (modulo 16 counter). However, each transport stream packet of each PID has its own continuity counter, i.e. packets with a PID=100, e.g., have a different counter, as do packets with a PID=200. It is the purpose of this counter to enable one to recognize missing or repeated transport stream packets of the same PID in order to draw attention to any multiplexer problems.

Such problems can also arise as a result of errored remultiplexing or sporadically due to bit errors on the transmission link. Although MPEG-2 allows discontinuities in the transport stream, they must be indicated in the adaptation field, e.g. after a switch-over (discontinuity indicator=1). In the case of zero packets (PID=0x1FF), on the other hand, discontinuities are allowed and is not checked, therefore.

A continuity_error (Fig. 11.4.) occurs when

- the same TS packet is transmitted twice without a discontinuity being indicated, or
- if a packet is missing (count incremented by 2) without a discontinuity being indicated, or
- the sequence of packets is completely wrong.

Note: The way in which an MPEG decoder reacts to a continuity counter error when the packet sequence is, in fact, correct depends on the decoder and the decoder chip used in it.

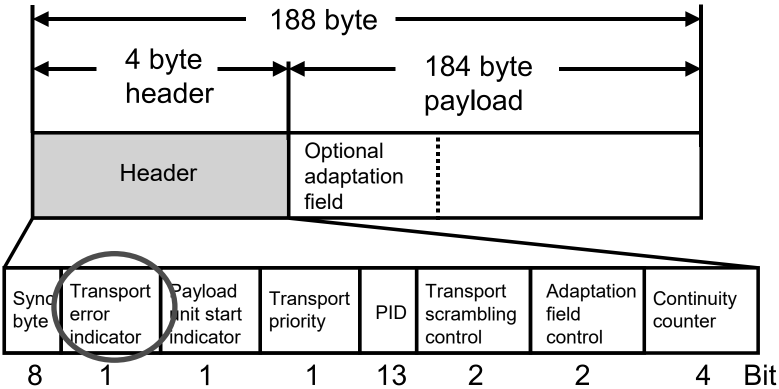


Fig. 11.5. Transport_error

11.7 The Transport_Error (Priority 2)

Every MPEG-2 transport stream packet contains a bit called Transport Error Indicator which follows directly after the sync byte. This bit flags any errored transport stream packets at the receiving end. During the transmission, bit errors may occur due to various types of influences. If error protection (at least Reed Solomon in DVB and ATSC) is no longer able to repair all errors in a packet, this bit is set. This packet can no longer be utilized by the MPEG decoder and must be discarded.

A transport_error (Fig. 11.5.) occurs when

- the transport error indicator bit in the TS header is set to 1.

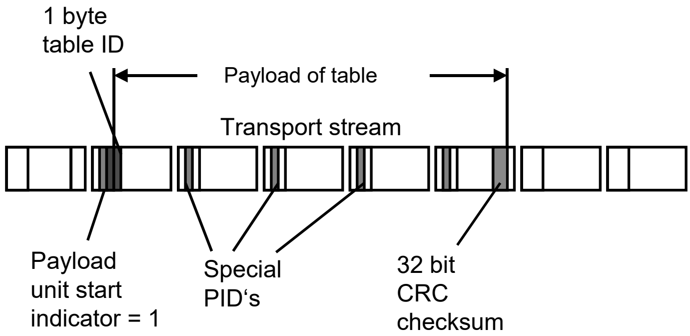


Fig. 11.6. CRC_error

11.8 The Cyclic Redundancy Check Error

During the transmission, all tables in the MPEG-2 transport stream, whether they are PSI tables or other private tables according to DVB (SI tables) or according to ATSC (PSIP tables), are protected by a CRC checksum. It is 32 bits long and is transmitted at the end of each sector. Each sector, which can be composed of many transport stream packets, is thus additionally protected. A CRC error has occurred if these checksums do not match the content of the actual section of the respective table. The MPEG decoder must then discard this table content and wait for this section to be repeated. The cause of a CRC error is in most cases interference on the transmission link. If a set top box or decoder were to evaluate such errored table sections it could become "confused".

A CRC_error (Fig. 11.6.) occurs when

- a table (PAT, PMT, CAT, NIT,...) in a section has a wrong checksum which doesn't match its content.

11.9 The Program Clock Reference Error (PCR_Error, PCR_Accuracy)

All coding processes at the MPEG encoder end are derived from a 27 MHz clock reference. This 27 MHz clock oscillator is coupled to a 42 bit-long counter which provides the System Time Clock (STC). For each program, a separate system time clock (STC) is used. To be able to link the MPEG decoder to this clock, copies of the current program system time are transmitted about every 40 ms per program in the adaptation field. The PMT of the respective program carries information about the TS packets in which this clock time can be found.

The STC reference values are called Program Clock Reference (PCR). They are nothing else than a 42 bit copy of the 42 bit counter. The MPEG-2 decoder links itself to these PCR values via a PLL and derives its own system clock from them.

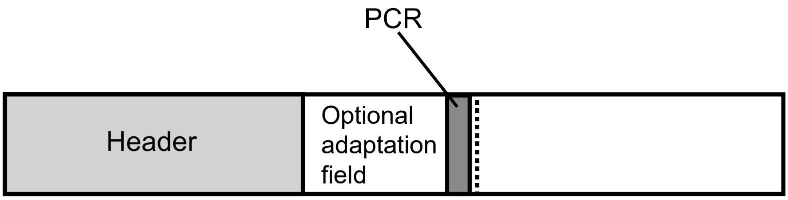


Fig. 11.7. PCR value

If the repetition rate of the PCR values is too slow, it may be due to the fact that the PLL of the receiver has problems in locking to it. MPEG-2 specifies that the maximum interval between two PCR values must not exceed a period of 40 ms. According to the DVB Measurement Guidelines, a PCR_error has occurred if this time is exceeded.

The timing of the PCR values with respect to one another should also be relatively accurate, i.e. there should not be any jitter. Jitter may occur, for example, if the PCR values are not corrected, or are corrected inaccurately, during remultiplexing.

If the PCR jitter exceeds ±500 ns, a PCR_accuracy_error has occurred. PCR jitter frequently extends into the ±30 μs range which can be handled by many set top boxes, but not by all. The first indication that the PCR jitter is too great is a black/white picture instead of a colour picture. The actual effect, however, depends on how the set top box is wired to the TV receiver. An RGB connection (e.g. via a SCART A/V cable) is certainly less critical than a composite video cable connection.

A PCR_error occurs when:

- the difference between two successive PCR values of a program is greater than 100 ms and no discontinuity is indicated in the adaptation field

- the time interval between two packets with PCR values of a program is more than 40 ms

A PCR_accuracy_error occurs when:

- the deviation between the PCR values is greater than ±500 ns (PCR jitter)

11.10 The Presentation Time Stamp Error (PTS_Error)

The Presentation Time Stamps (PTS) transmitted in the PES headers contain a 33 bit-long timing information item about the precise presentation time. These values are transmitted both in the elementary video streams and in the elementary audio streams and are used, e.g. for lip synchronisation between video and audio. The PTS values are derived from the system time clock (STC) which has a total width of 42 bits but only the 33 MSBs are used in this case. The spacing between two PTS values must not be greater than 700 ms to avoid a PTS error.

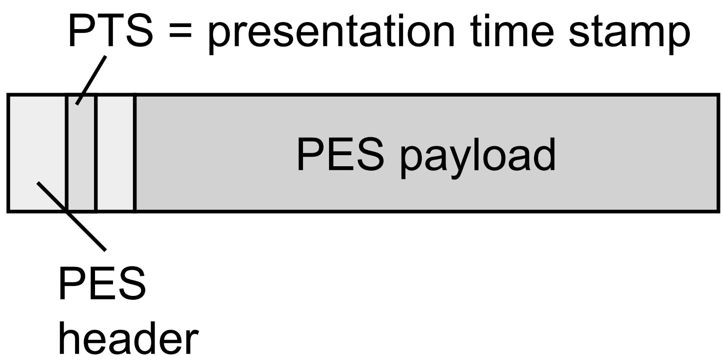


Fig. 11.8. PTS value in the PES header

A PTS_error occurs when:

- the spacing between two PTS values of a program is greater than 700 ms

Although real PTS errors occur only rarely, a perceptible lack of lip sync between video and audio happens quite frequently. In practice, the causes of this are difficult to detect and identify during a broadcast and can be attributable both to older MPEG chips and to faulty MPEG decoders. The direct measurement of lip synchronism would be an important test parameter.

11.11 The Conditional Access Table Error (CAT_Error)

An MPEG-2 transport stream packet can contain scrambled data but only the payload part must be scrambled and never the header or the adaptation field. A scrambled payload part is flagged by two special bits in the TS header, the Transport Scrambling Control bits. If both bits are set to zero, there is no scrambling. If one of the two is not zero, the payload part is scrambled and a Conditional Access Table (CAT) is needed to descramble it. If this is missing or only rarely there, a CAT_error occurs. The CAT has a 1 as PID and also a 1 as table ID. Apart from the EIT in the case of the transmission of a program guide, all DVB tables must be unscrambled.

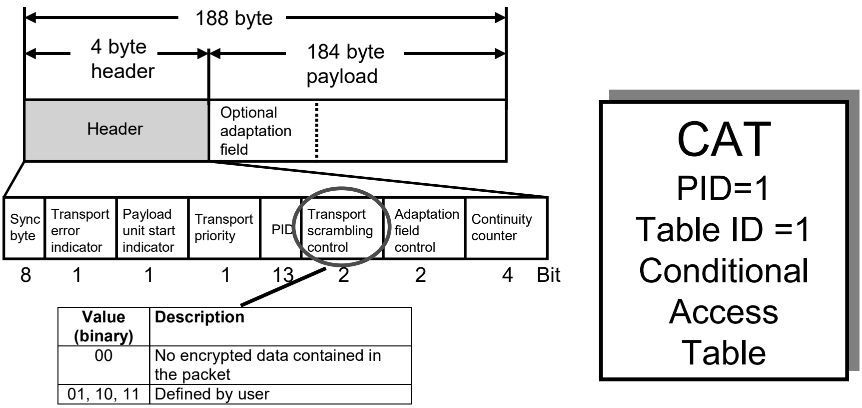


Fig. 11.9. CAT_error

A CAT_error (Fig. 11.9.) occurs when:

- a scrambled TS packet has been found but no CAT is being transmitted

- a CAT has been found by means of PID=1 but the table ID is not equal to 1

11.12 Service Information Repetition Rate Error (SI_Repetition_Error)

All the MPEG and DVB tables (PSI/SI) must be regularly repeated at minimum and maximum intervals. The repetition rates depend on the respective type of table.

The minimum time interval of the table repetition rate (s. Table 11.2.) is normally about 25 ms and the maximum is between 500 ms and 30 s or even infinity.

Table 11.2. PSI/SI table repetition time

Service information	Max. interval (complete table)	Min. intervall (single sections)
PAT	0.5 s	25 ms
CAT	0.5 s	25 ms
PMT	0.5 s	25 ms
NIT	10 s	25 ms
SDT	2 s	25 ms
BAT	10 s	25 ms
EIT	2 s	25 ms
RST	-	25 ms
TDT	30 s	25 ms
TOT	30 s	25 ms

A SI_repetition_error occurs when:

- the time interval between SI tables is too great
- the time interval between SI tables is too small

The limit values depend on the tables.

Since not every transport stream contains all the types of tables, the test decoder must be capable of activating or deactivating the limit values.

11.13 Monitoring the NIT, SDT, EIT, RST and TDT/TOT Tables

In addition to the PSI tables of the MPEG-2 standard, the DVB Group has specified the NIT, SDT/BAT, EIT, RST and TDT/TOT SI tables.

The DVB Measurement Group recognized that these tables needed to be monitored for presence, repetition rate and correct identifiability. This does not include checking the consistency, i.e. the content of the tables. A SI table is identified by means of the PID and its table ID. This is because there are some tables which have the same PID and can thus only be recognized from the table ID (SDT/BAT and TDT/TOT).

Table 11.3. SI tables

Service Information	PID [hex]	Table_id [hex]	Max. Interval [sec]
NIT	0x0010	0x40, 0x41, 0x42	10
SDT	0x0011	0x42, 0x46	2
BAT	0x0011	0x4A	10
EIT	0x0012	0x4E to 0x4F, 0x50 to 0x6F	2
RST	0x0013	0x71	-
TDT	0x0014	0x70	30
TOT	0x0014	0x73	30
ST	0x0010 to 0x0013	0x72	-

A NIT_error, SDT_error, EIT_error, RST_error or TDT_error occurs when:

- a corresponding packet is contained in the TS but has the wrong table index
- the time interval between two sections of these SI tables is too great or too small

11.14 Undefined PIDs (Unreferenced_PID)

All PIDs contained in the transport steam are conveyed to the MPEG decoder via the PAT and the PMTs. There are also the PSI/SI tables. However, it is perfectly possible that the transport stream contains TS packets whose PID is not indicated by this mechanism, the so-called unreferenced PIDs. According to DVB, an unreferenced PID may be contained there only for half a second during a program change.

An unreferenced_PID (Fig. 11.10.) occurs when

- a packet having an unknown PID is contained in the transport stream and is not referenced within a PMT after half a second at the latest.

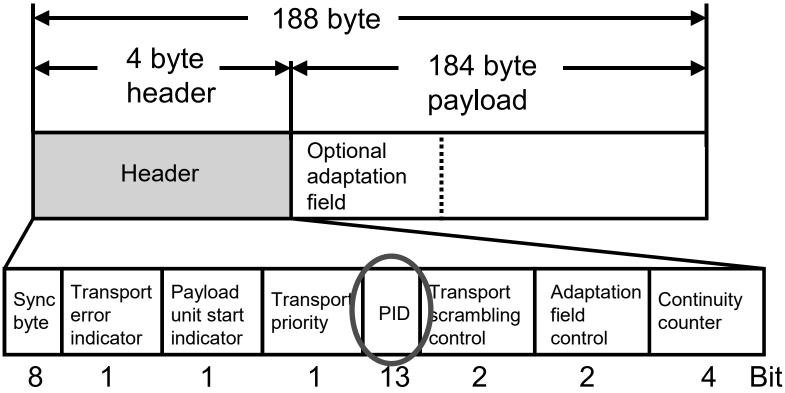


Fig. 11.10. Unreferenced PID

11.15 Errors in the Transmission of Additional Service Information

Apart from the usual information, additional service information (SI_other_error) can be transmitted for other channels, according to DVB. These are the NIT_other, SDT_other and EIT_other tables.

The SI_other tables can be recognized from the PIDs and table_IDs in Table 10.4. also lists the time limits.

An SI_other_error occurs when:

- the time interval between SI_other tables is too great
- the time interval between SI_other tables is too small

Table 11.4. SI Other

Service information	Table_ID	Max. interval (complete table)	Min. interval (single sections)
NIT_OTHER	0x41	10 s	25 ms
SDT_OTHER	0x46	2 s	25 ms
EIT_OTHER	0x4F, 0x60 to 0x6F	2 s	25 ms

11.16 Faulty tables NIT_other_error, SDT_other_error, EIT_other_error

In addition to monitoring the 3 SI_other tables overall, they can also be monitored individually:

A NIT_other_error, SDT_other_error, EIT_other_error occurs when

- the time interval between sections of these tables is too great.

11.17 Monitoring an ATSC-Compliant MPEG-2 Transport Stream

According to the DVB Measurement Guidelines, the following measurements can be made unchanged on an ATSC-compliant MPEG-2 transport stream:

- TS_sync_error
- Sync_byte_error
- PAT_error
- Continuity_count_error
- PMT_error
- PID_error
- Transport_error
- CRC_error
- PCR_error
- PCR_accuracy_error
- PTS_error
- CAT_error

It is only necessary to adapt all Priority 3 measurements to the PSIP tables.

Fig. 11.11. MPEG-2 analyzer, Rohde&Schwarz, on the left: DVM400, on the right: DVM100

Fig.. 11.12. MPEG analyzer DVMS family, Rohde&Schwarz

Modern MPEG analyzers (Fig. 11.11., 11.12.) additionally offers much more measurement features like template function, “golden transport stream”, buffer analysis, graphical PCR jitter measurement, table interpreter function, teletext analysis, EPG analysis, etc. Such MPEG analyzers can process transport streams according to

- DVB conform content (PSI/SI)
- ATSC conform content (PSI/PSIP)
- ISDB-T BTS (ARIB) “broadcast transport stream”
- T2-MI

For a MPEG transport stream analyzer it doesn't matter which video or audio encoding standard (MPEG-2/H.262, MPEG-4/AVC/H.264 or HEVC/H.265, MPEG-1 audio, AC-3 audio, MPEG-4 audio) is in use. MPEG transport stream analysis is always possible even if the elementary streams are scrambled.

Bibliography: [TR100290], [DVMD], [DVM], [DVMS]

12 Picture Quality Analysis of Digital TV Signals

The picture quality of digital TV signals is subject to quite different effects and influences than that of analog TV signals. Whereas noise effects in analog TV signals manifest themselves directly as ‘snow’ in the picture, they initially only produce an increase in the channel bit error rate in digital television. Due to the error protection included in the signal, however, most of the bit errors can be repaired up to a certain limit and are thus not noticeable in the picture or the sound. If the transmission path for digital television is too noisy, the transmission breaks down abruptly (‘brick wall’ effect, also called ‘fall-off-the-cliff’). Neither does linear or nonlinear distortion have any direct effect on the picture and sound quality in digital television but in the extreme case it, too, leads to a total transmission breakdown. Digital TV does not require VITS (vertical insertion test signal) lines for detecting linear and nonlinear distortion or black-level lines for measuring noise, neither are they provided there and would not produce any test results concerning the transmission link if they were. Nevertheless, the picture quality can still be good, bad or indifferent but it now needs to be classified differently and detected by different means. There are mainly two sources which can disturb the video transmission and which can cause interference effects of quite a different type:

- the MPEG encoder or sometimes also the multiplexer
- the transmission link from the modulator to the receiver

The MPEG-2 encoder has a direct effect on the picture quality due to the more or less severe compression imposed by it. The transmission link introduces interference effects resulting in channel bit errors which manifest themselves as large-area blocking effects, as frozen picture areas or frames or as a total loss of transmission. If the compression of the MPEG-2 encoder is too great, it causes blocks of unsharp picture areas. All these effects are simply called blocking. This section explains how the effects caused by the MPEG-2 video coding are produced and analyzed.

All video compression algorithms work in blocks, i.e. the image is in most cases initially divided into blocks of 8 x 8 pixels. Each of these

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_12

blocks is individually compressed to a greater or lesser extent, independently of the other blocks. In the case of MPEG-2, the image is additionally divided into 16 x 16 pixels called macroblocks which form the basis for the interframe coding. If the compression is excessive, the block boundaries become visible and blocking occurs. There are discontinuities between blocks in the luminance and chrominance signals and these are perceptible. With a predetermined compression, the amount of blocking in an image also depends on the picture material, among other things. Some source images can be compressed without problems and almost without errors at a low data rate whereas other material produces strong blocking effects when compressed. Simple moving picture sources for moving-picture compression are, for example, scenes with little movement and little detail. Animated cartoons, but also classical celluloid films, can be compressed without loss of quality with relatively few problems. The reason for this is, among other things, that there is no movement between the first and second fields. In addition, the image structures are relatively coarse in animated cartoons. The most critical sources are sports programs, and this, in turn, depends on the type of sport. By their nature, Formula I programs will be more difficult to compress without interference than programs involving the thinker's sport of chess. In addition, however, the actual picture quality depends on the MPEG-2 encoder and the algorithms used there. In recent years, the picture quality has clearly improved in this department. Fig. 12.1. shows an example of blocking.

Apart from the blocking, the excessively compressed image also shows the DCT structures, i.e. patterned interference suddenly occurs in the picture.

The decisive factor is that it is always the MPEG-2 encoder which is responsible for such interference effects. Although it is difficult to measure good or bad picture quality caused by compression processes, it can be done. Of course, picture quality will never be 100% measurement - there is always some subjectivity involved. Even so-called objective video quality analyzers are calibrated by test persons using subjective tests. At least, this applies to analyzers which do not use a reference signal for quality assessment, but in practice, there is no reference signal with which the compressed video signal could be compared. The requirement that it should be possible to use reference signals is unrealistic, at least with regard to transmission testing.

The basis for all video quality analyzers throughout the world - and there are not many - is the ITU-R BT.500 standard. This standard describes methods for subjective video quality analysis where a group of test persons analyses video sequences for their picture quality.

Fig. 12.1. Blocking effects with excessive compression

12.1 Methods for Measuring Video Quality

The Video Quality Experts Group (VQEG) in the ITU has defined methods for assessing picture quality which have then been incorporated in the ITU-R BT.500 standard.

In principle, these are two subjective methods for picture quality assessment by test persons, namely:

- the DSCQS (Double Stimulus Continual Quality Scale) method
- the SSCQE (Single Stimulus Continual Quality Evaluation) method

The two methods basically differ only in that one method makes use of a reference video signal and the other one does not have a reference signal. The basis is always a subjective picture quality analysis by a group of test persons who assess an image sequence in accordance with a particular procedure. It is then attempted to reproduce these subjective methods by means of objective methods in a test instrument by performing picture analyses on the macroblocks and using adaptation algorithms.

12.1.1 Subjective Picture Quality Analysis

In subjective picture quality analysis, a group of test persons assesses an image sequence (SSCQE - Single Stimulus Continual Quality Scale Method, Fig. 12.2.) or compares an image sequence after compression with the original (DSCQS - Double Stimulus Continual Quality Scale Method) and issues marks on a quality scale from 0 (Bad) to 100 (Excellent) by means of a sliding control. The positions of the sliding controls are detected by a computer connected to them which continually determines (e.g. every 0.5 sec) a mean value of all the marks issued by the test persons.

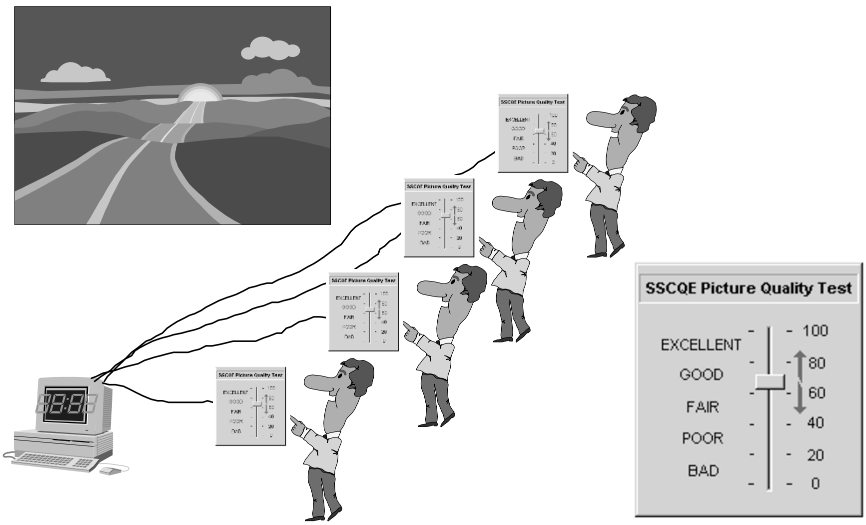


Fig. 12.2. Subjective Picture Quality Analysis

A video sequence will then provide a picture quality value versus time, i.e. a quality profile of the video sequence.

12.1.2 Double Stimulus Continual Quality Scale Method DSCQS

In the Double Stimulus Continual Quality Scale method according to ITU-R BT.500, a group of test persons compares an edited or processed video sequence with the original video sequence. The result obtained is a comparative quality profile of the edited or processed video sequence, i.e. a picture quality value from 0 (Bad) to 100 (Excellent) versus time.

The DSCQS method always requires a reference signal, on the one hand, but, on the other hand, the purely objective analysis can then be performed very simply by forming the difference. In practice, however, a reference signal is frequently no longer provided. Transmission link measurements cannot be performed using this method. There are test instruments on the market which reproduce this method (Tektronix).

12.1.3 Single Stimulus Continual Quality Evaluation Method SSCQE

Since the Single Stimulus Continual Quality Evaluation method SSCQE deliberately dispenses with a reference signal, this method can be used much more widely in practice. In this method, a group of test persons only assesses the processed video sequence and issues marks from 0 (Bad) to 100 (Excellent) which also provides a video quality profile versus time.

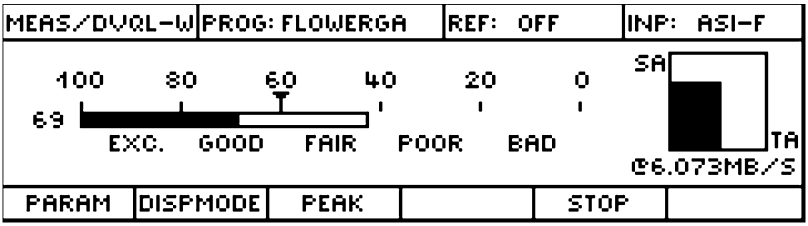


Fig. 12.3. Objective picture quality analysis using a test instrument [DVQ]

12.2 Objective Picture Quality Analysis

In the following sections, an objective test method for assessing the picture quality analysis in accordance with the Single Stimulus Continual Quality Scale Evaluation method is described. A digital picture analyzer operating in accordance with this method may provide by Fig. 12.3.

Since the DCT-related artefacts of a compressed video signal are always associated with blocking, an SSCQE type digital picture analyzer will attempt to verify the existence of this blocking in the picture. To be able to do this, the macroblocks and blocks must be analyzed in detail.

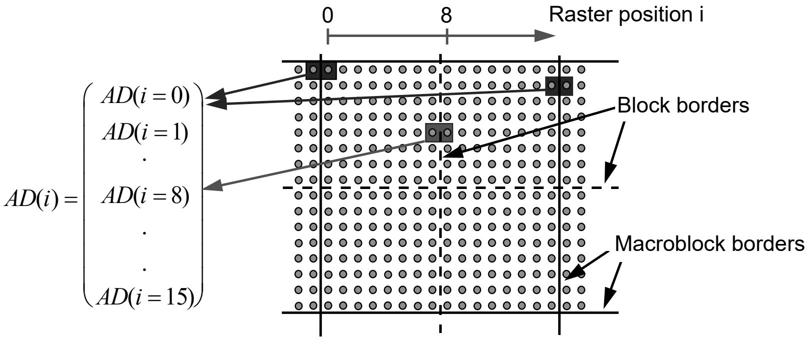


Fig. 12.4. Pixel difference at the block and macroblock boundaries

In a test procedure developed by the Technical University of Braunschweig (Germany) and Rohde&Schwarz, the differences between adjoining pixels within a macroblock are formed. Pixel difference means that simply the amplitude values of adjacent pixels of the Y signal within a macroblock, and also separately those of the Cb and Cr signals are subtracted. For each macroblock, 16 pixel differences are then obtained per line, e.g. for the Y signal. Then all 16 lines are analyzed. The same is also done vertically which also provides 16 pixel differences per column for the macroblock of the Y signal. This analysis is performed for all columns within the macroblock. The pixel differences at the block borders are of special significance here and will be particularly large in the case of blocking.

The pixel differences of all macroblocks within a line are then combined by adding them together in such a way that 16 individual values are obtained per line (Fig. 12.4.). The 16 pixel difference values of the individual lines are then also added together within a frame, resulting in 16 values per frame as pixel difference values. This, finally. provides information about the mean pixel difference 0 ... 15 in the horizontal and vertical direction within all macroblocks. The same process is repeated for Cb and Cr, i.e. the color difference signals.

Considering then the pixel differences of a video sequence with good picture quality and one with poor picture quality, it can be seen quite clearly what this objective test method for assessing the picture quality amounts to:

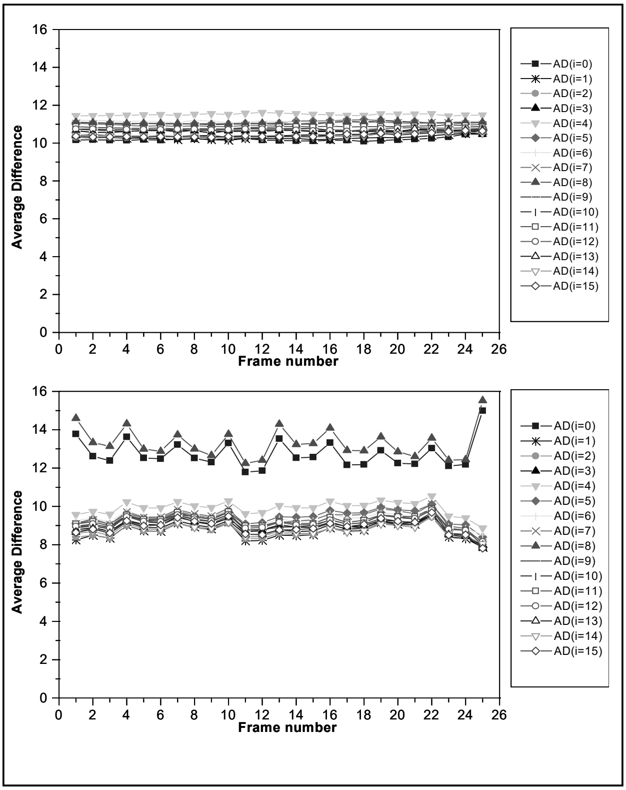


Fig. 12.5. Averaged macroblock pixel differences in a video sequence with good picture quality (top, flower garden/original, 6 Mbit/s) and with poorer picture quality (bottom, flower garden/MPEG-2, 2 Mbit/s)

Fig. 12.5. shows clearly that the pixel amplitude differences in the "good" video sequence are very close to each other for all 16 pixel differences within the macroblocks. In the present example, they are all at about 10 ... 12.

In a video sequence with "poor" quality (bottom display) with blocking, it can be seen that the macroblock borders exhibit greater jumps, i.e the pixel differences are greater there.

It can be seen clearly that pixel differences No. 0 and No. 8, in the bottom display, are obviously greater than the remaining difference values.

No. 0 corresponds to the macroblock border and No. 8 corresponds to the block boundary within a macroblock.

Clearly, this simple analysis of the pixel amplitude differences makes it possible to verify the existence of blocking (Fig. 12.6.).

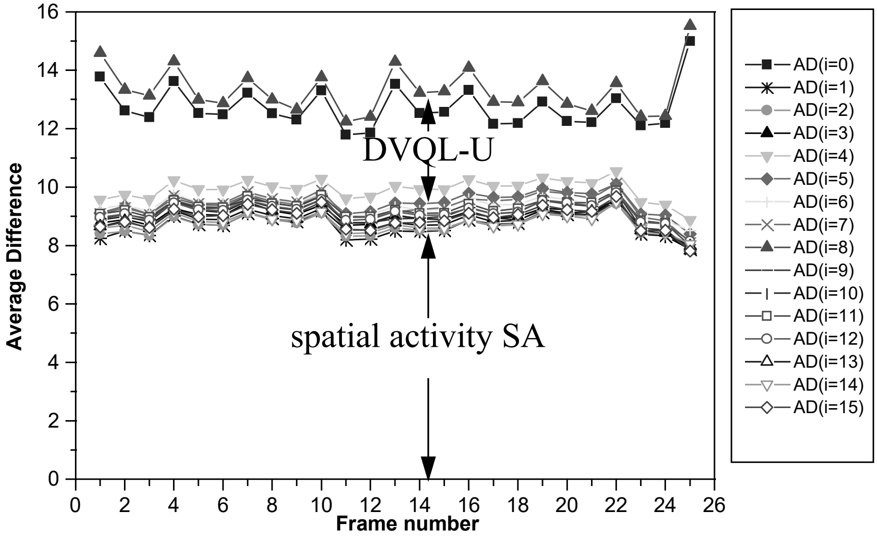


Fig. 12.6. Determining digital video quality level unweighted (DVQL-U) and spatial activity (SA) from the macroblock pixel differences

The basic test value of a Digital Video Quality Analyzer by Rohde&Schwarz for calculating the picture quality of DCT coded video sequences is the picture quality test value DVQL-U (digital video quality level - unweighted). DVQL-U is used as absolute value for the existence of blocking type interference patterns within an original frame. In contrast to DVQL-W (digital video quality level - weighted), DVQL-U is a direct measure of these blocking types of interference. Depending on the original frame, however, the test value is not always correlated with the impression of quality of a subjective observation.

To bring the objective picture quality test value closer to the subjectively perceived picture quality, other quantities in the moving picture must also be taken into consideration. These are:

- the spatial activity (SA)
- the temporal activity (TA)

This is because both spatial and temporal activity can render blocking structures invisible, i.e. they can mask them. These artifacts in the picture are then simply not seen by the human eye.

The spatial activity is a measure of the existence of fine structures in the picture. A picture rich in detail, i.e. one with many fine structures, exhibits high spatial activity. An unstructured monochrome picture, on the other hand, would correspond to a spatial activity of zero. The maximum theoretically achievable spatial activity would occur if a white pixel always alternates with a black pixel both horizontally and vertically in a frame (fine grid pattern).

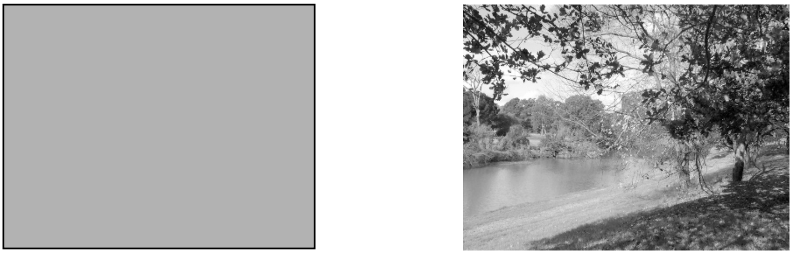


Fig. 12.7. Low (left) and high (right) spatial activity

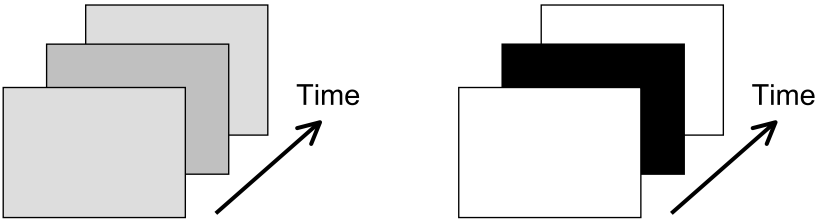


Fig. 12.8. Low (left) and high (right) temporal activity

In addition to the spatial activity in the picture (Fig. 12.7.), the temporal activity (TA) must be taken into consideration (Fig. 12.8.). The temporal activity is an aggregate measure of the change (movement) in successive frames. The maximum temporal activity which could be achieved in theory would be if all pixels were to change from black to white or conversely in successive frames. Accordingly, a temporal activity of 0 corresponds to a sequence of frames without movement.

The two parameters SA and TA must be included when calculating the weighted video quality from the unweighted DVQL (blocking level).

In a first process, the unweighted digital quality level DVQL-U for all Y, Cb and Cr signals and the spatial activity SA and temporal activity TA are determined in the above-mentioned digital video quality analyzer.

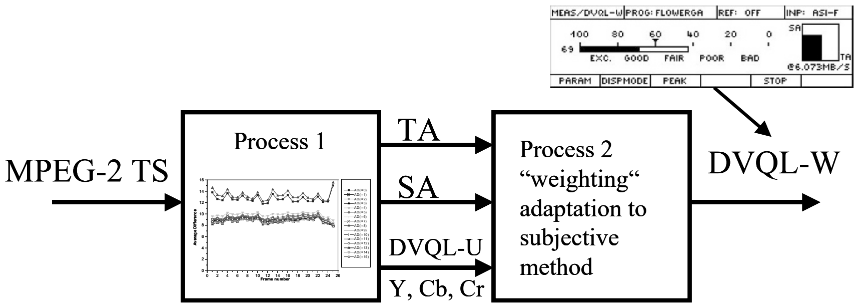


Fig. 12.9. Using the digital video quality analyzer [DVQ]

Weighting is then performed in a second process which thus takes into account subjective factors. The display of the digital video quality analyzer shows both the digital video quality level - weighted or unweighted - and the spatial and temporal activity. The analyzer is also able to detect decoding problems, in addition to the video quality: These problems include:

- Picture freeze (TA = 0)
- Picture loss (TA = 0, SA = 0)
- Sound loss

Digital video quality analyzers are mainly used close to the MPEG-2 encoding stages since the transmission has no further effect on the video quality itself. Naturally, such an analyzer will also detect the decoding problems caused by bit errors produced by the transmission link. Since in many cases the network operator is not the program provider, as well, digital video quality analyzers are often also found at the network termination end so that objective measurement parameters are available as a basis for any discussion between network operator and program provider. Digital video quality analyzers are also of great importance in the testing of MPEG-2 encoders.

12.3 Summary and Outlook

Artefacts caused by the MPEG encoding process lead to a picture quality which is more or less good. This is apparent as

- Blocking (visible block transitions)
- Blurring (lack of high frequencies)
- "Mosquito" noise (visible DCT structures)

In the case of the more recent image coding methods such as MPEG-4 AVC or HEVC, however, other approaches must be used in picture quality assessment. E.g., deblocking filters are used here in an attempt to keep blocking as invisible as possible. The only objective information is provided by an analysis of the quantization performed by the encoder. Such measurements are supported by the MPEG analyzer DVM [DVM] or DVMS [DVMS].

However, the influence of the distribution and transmission paths in the digital TV network remains the same. It leads to bit errors which, in turn, can lead to a "fall-off-the-cliff" at some time (Fig. 12.11.), either it works or it no longer works at some time. In a transition case, slice structures become apparent as can be seen in Fig. 12.11.

Fig. 12.10. Digital video quality analyzer, Rohde&Schwarz [DVQ] for MPEG-2-video-based video coding quality measurements

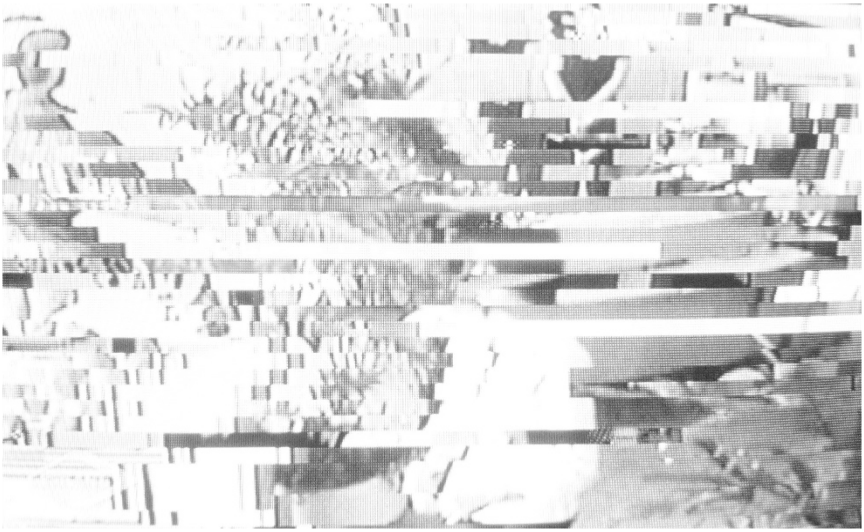


Fig. 12.11. Picture disturbances caused by interference during the transmission (bit errors); slice-like structures ("slicing") are recognizable which are caused here by severe rain during satellite reception.

Bibliography: [ITU500], [DVQ], [DVM], [DVMS]

13 Basic Principles of Digital Modulation

To begin with, this chapter quite generally creates a basis for an approach to the digital modulation methods. Following this chapter, it would also be possible to continue e.g. in the field of mobile radio technology (GSM, IS95, UMTS, LTE, 5G) as the basic knowledge discussed here applies to the field of communication technology and its applications overall. However, its prime intent is to create the foundation for the subsequent chapters on DVB-S, DVB-C, OFDM/COFDM, DVB-T, ATSC and ISDB-T. Experts, of course can simply skip this chapter.

13.1 Introduction

Analog transmission of information has long been effected by means of amplitude modulation (AM) and frequency modulation (FM). The information to be transmitted is impressed on the carrier by varying either its amplitude or frequency or phase, this process being referred to as modulation.

To transmit data signals, i.e. digital signals, amplitude or frequency shift keying was used in the early times of data transmission. To transmit a data stream of e.g. 10 Mbit/s by means of simple amplitude shift keying (ASK), a bandwidth of at least 10 MHz is required if a non-return-to-zero code (NRZ) is used. According to the Nyquist theorem, a bandwidth corresponding to at least half the data rate is required for the NRZ baseband signal. Using ASK produces two sidebands and that gives a RF signal with a bandwidth which is equal to the data rate of the baseband signal. The bandwidth actually required is even larger because of the signal filtering necessary to suppress adjacent-channel interference.

An analog telephone channel was about 3 kHz wide. Initially, a data rate of 1200 bit/s could be achieved for this channel. Today, with VDSL 50 to 100 Mbit/s is no problem any more. Fax and modem links operated at up to 56 kbit/s. This quantum leap ahead was possible only through the use of modern digital modulation methods known as IQ modulation. IQ modulation is basically a form of amplitude modulation.

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_13

We know the following modulation methods:

- Amplitude modulation
- Frequency modulation
- Phase modulation
- Amplitude shift keying (ASK)
- Frequency shift keying (FSK)
- Phase shift keying (PSK)
- Amplitude and phase shift keying (QAM)

What we want is to reduce the bandwidth for data signal transmission. This is possible only by using modern digital modulation methods. Our aim is to cut the required bandwidth by several factors relative to the data rate of the signal transmitted.

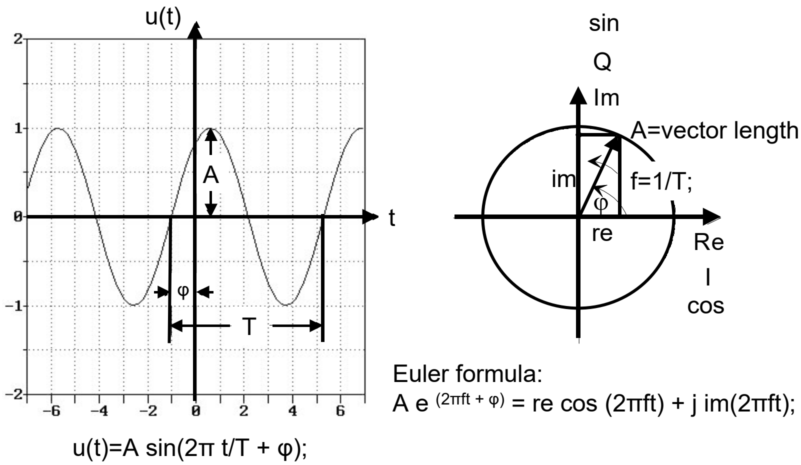


Fig. 13.1. Vector representation of a sinusoidal signal

It is obvious that this will not go without disadvantages, i.e. susceptibility to noise and interference will increase. In the following, the digital modulation methods will be discussed.

Before entering into this subject, we should like to point out that in electrical engineering it is customary to represent sinusoidal quantities by means of vectors (s. Fig. 13.1.). Each sinusoidal quantity can be unambiguously described by its amplitude and zero-phase angle. Moreover, the frequency must be known. In the vector representation, the rotating vector at the time t = 0 is shown. The vector is then at the zero-phase angle and its length corresponds to the amplitude of the sinusoidal quantity.

Fig. 13.1. represents a sine signal in the time domain and in the form of a vector. The rotating vector, whose length corresponds to the amplitude, is shown at zero-phase angle φ. The sine signal is obtained by projecting the rotating vector on the vertical axis (Im) and recording the position of the vector tip versus time. The corresponding cosine signal is obtained by projecting the rotating vector on the horizontal axis (Re).

The vector can be split into its real part and its imaginary part, terms which are derived from the theory of complex numbers in mathematics. The real part corresponds to the projection onto the horizontal axis and is calculated from $Re = A \cdot \cos\varphi$. The imaginary part corresponds to the projection onto the vertical axis and can be calculated from $Im = A \cdot \sin\varphi$. The length of the vector is related to the real part and the imaginary part via Pythagoras' theorem

$$A = \sqrt{\mathrm{Re}^2 + \mathrm{Im}^2};.$$

The real part can also be imagined to be the amplitude of a cosine signal and the imaginary part as the amplitude of a sine signal.

Any desired sine or cosine signal can be obtained by the superposition of a sine and a cosine signal of the same frequency and the desired amplitudes.

The real part is also called the I, or in-phase, component and the imaginary part is called the Q, or quadrature, component, where in-phase stands for 0^0 phase angle to a reference carrier and quadrature stands for 90^0 phase angle. The terms real part, imaginary part, cosine and sine component and I and Q component will appear time and again in the sections to follow.

13.2 Mixer

We will see that the mixer is one of the most important electronic components that make up an IQ modulator. A mixer is basically a multiplier. The modulation signal is usually converted to the IF by means of a carrier signal. As a result, two sidebands about the carrier are obtained. This type of modulation is known as double-sideband amplitude modulation with suppressed carrier. The mixer shown in Fig. 13.2. is basically a double switch driven by the carrier. It reverses the polarity of the modulation signal at the carrier frequency.

In the case of a purely sinusoidal modulation signal, two spectral lines are obtained – one above and one below the carrier frequency – each spaced from the carrier at an offset of the modulation frequency. Moreover, sub-harmonics at an offset of the carrier frequency are produced. The latter have to be suppressed by means of a lowpass filter.

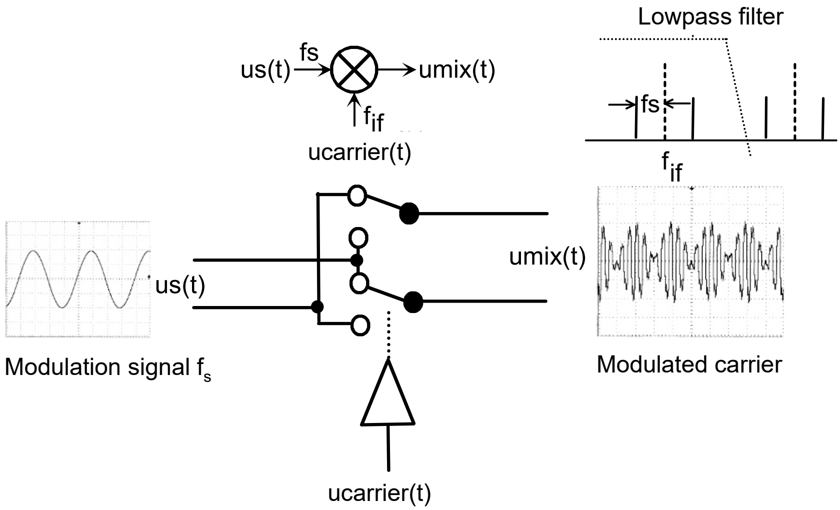


Fig.13.2. Mixer and mixing process. Amplitude modulation with suppressed carrier

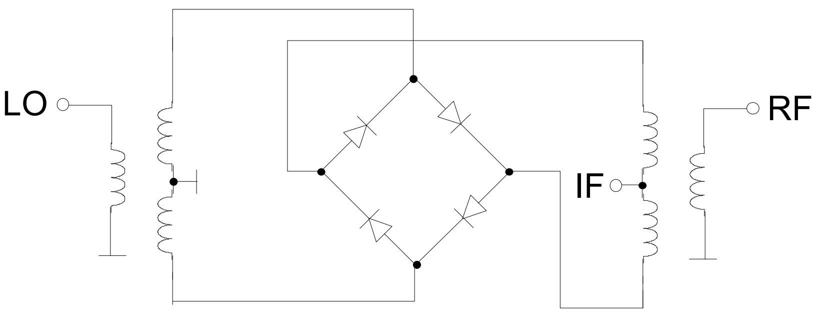


Fig. 13.3. Block diagram of a double-balanced mixer

Fig. 13.3. is a block diagram of a modern analog double-balanced mixer. The polarity of the modulation signal is switched by 4 PIN diodes. The carrier signal (LO = local oscillator) is coupled in via an RF transformer, and the modulation product is coupled out via an RF transformer. The modulation signal is fed DC-coupled.

Mixers are today often implemented in the form of purely digital multipliers which, except for quantization noise and rounding errors, have an ideal behaviour.

If a direct voltage is applied as modulation signal, the carrier itself appears at the output of the mixer. Superimposing a sinusoidal signal on the DC leads to normal amplitude modulation with unsuppressed carrier. (Fig. 13.4.).

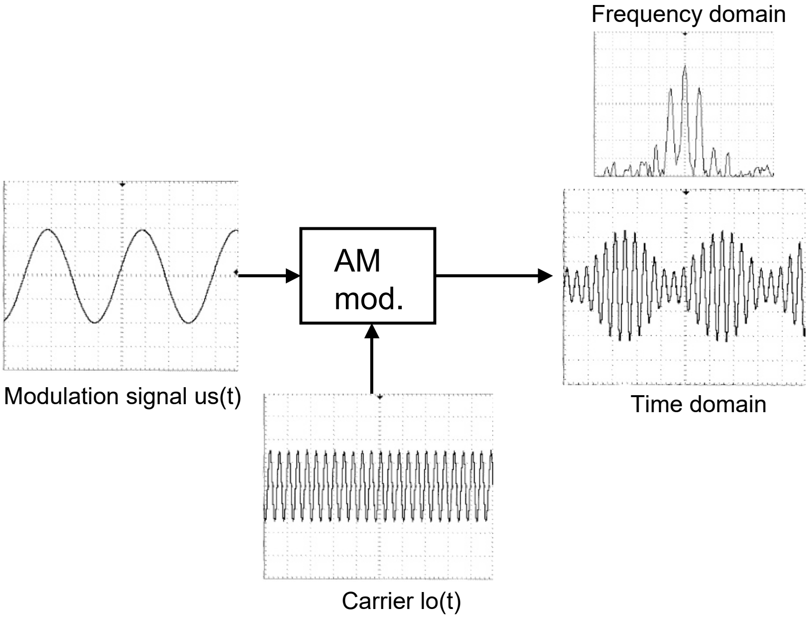


Fig. 13.4. “Normal“ amplitude modulation with unsuppressed carrier

13.3 Amplitude Modulator

In amplitude modulation, the information is contained in the amplitude of the carrier. The modulation signal changes (modulates) the carrier amplitude. This is effected by means of an AM modulator.

Fig. 13.4. illustrates "normal" AM modulation, in which the carrier is not suppressed. A sinusoidal modulation signal varies the carrier amplitude and so is impressed on the carrier as an envelope. In the example in Fig. 13.4., both the carrier and the modulation signal are sinusoidal signals. Looking at the spectrum, we not only find a spectral line at the carrier fre-

quency but also two sidebands spaced from the carrier at an offset of the modulation frequency. For example, if a 1 MHz carrier is amplitude-modulated with a sinusoidal 1 kHz signal, a modulation spectrum with the carrier signal at 1 MHz and two sideband signals at 1 kHz above and below the carrier will be obtained. The bandwidth is 2 kHz in this case.

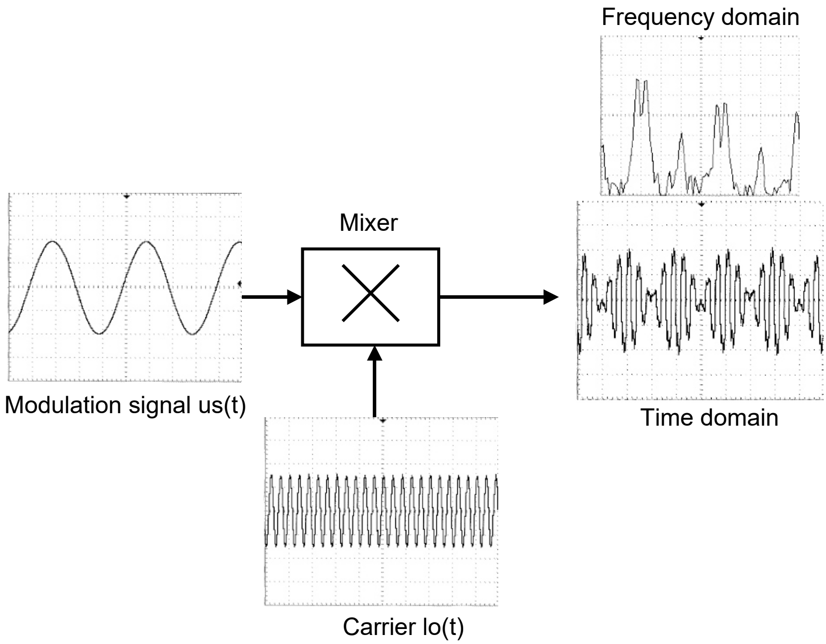


Fig. 13.5. Amplitude modulation with suppressed carrier

As mentioned above, the carrier is suppressed by the mixer. If a mixer is used for amplitude modulation and the modulation signal itself has no DC component, no spectral line at the carrier frequency will be found in the modulation spectrum. There are only the two sidebands. Fig. 13.5. shows amplitude modulation effected by means of a double-balanced mixer. In the modulation spectrum, we find not only the two sidebands but also harmonic sidebands about multiples of the carrier frequency. The latter have to be suppressed by lowpass filters. Fig. 13.5. also shows a typical amplitude-modulated signal in the time domain with suppressed carrier. The bandwidth is the same as with "normal" amplitude modulation, i.e. with unsuppressed carrier.

13.4 IQ Modulator

In colour television, quadrature modulation or IQ modulation has been used for a long time for the transmission of colour information. With PAL or NTSC colour subcarriers, the chrominance information is contained in the phase of the subcarrier and the colour saturation, or colour intensity, in the amplitude of the subcarrier. The colour subcarrier is superimposed on the luminance signal.

The modulated colour subcarrier is generated by means of an IQ modulator or quadrature modulator, where "I" stands for in-phase and "Q" for quadrature phase.

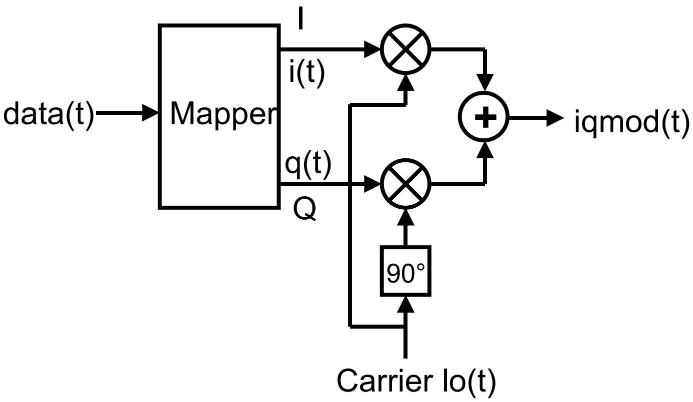


Fig. 13.6. IQ modulator

An IQ modulator (see Fig. 13.6.) has an I path and a Q path. The I path incorporates a mixer which is driven with 0° carrier phase. The mixer in the Q path is driven with 90° carrier phase. This means that I stands for 0° and Q for 90° carrier phase. I and Q are orthogonal to each other. In the vector diagram, the I axis coincides with the real axis and the Q axis with the imaginary axis.

PAL or NTSC modulators, too, incorporate an IQ modulator. For digital modulation, a mapper is connected ahead of the IQ modulator. The mapper is fed with the data stream data(t) to be transmitted; the output signals i(t) and q(t) of the mapper are the modulation signals for the I and the Q mixer. i(t) and q(t) are no longer data signals but signed voltages.

If i(t)=0, the I mixer produces no output signal, if q(t)=0, the Q mixer produces no signal. If i(t) is at 1 V, for example, the I mixer will output a carrier signal with constant amplitude and 0° carrier phase. If q(t), on the other hand, is at 1 V, the Q mixer will output a carrier signal with constant amplitude and 90° carrier phase (s. Fig. 13.10.).

The I and Q modulation products are combined in an adder.

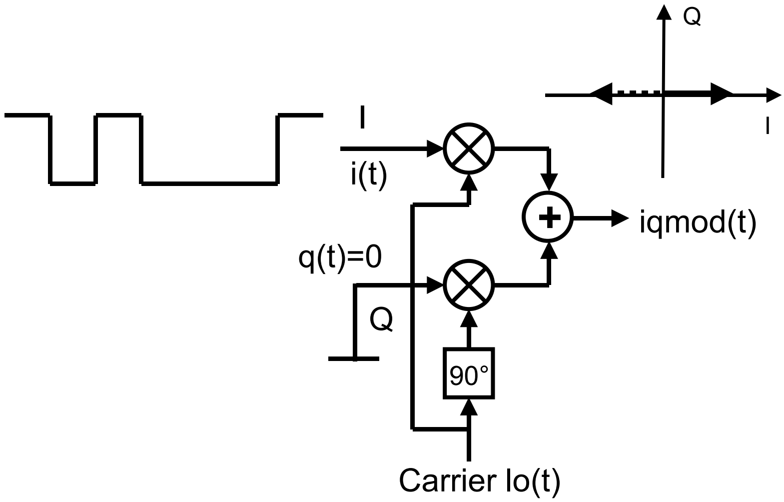


Fig. 13.7. IQ modulator, I path only

The product iqmod(t) is, therefore, the sum of the output signals of the I mixer and the Q mixer. If the Q mixer supplies no output signal, iqmod(t) corresponds to the output signal of the I path and vice versa.

Since the output signals of the I and the Q path are sine and cosine signals of the same frequency (carrier frequency) and differ only in amplitude, a sinusoidal output signal iqmod(t) of variable amplitude and phase is obtained through the superposition of the sinusoidal I output signal and the cosinusoidal Q output signal. Therefore, with the aid of control signals i(t) and q(t), we can vary the amplitude and phase of iqmod(t).

With the IQ modulator, we can generate pure amplitude modulation, pure phase modulation, or combined amplitude and phase modulation. A sinusoidal modulator output signal can thus be controlled in amplitude and phase.

The following applies to the amplitude and phase of iqmod(t):

$$A = \sqrt{(Ai)^2 + (Aq)^2};$$

$$\varphi = \arctan(\frac{Aq}{Ai});$$

where Ai is the amplitude of the I path and Aq the amplitude of the Q path.

From the incoming data stream data(t), the mapper generates the two modulation signals i(t) and q(t). We will see later that bit groups are combined to create certain patterns for i(t) and q(t), i.e. for the modulation signals of the I and the Q path.

Let us first look at the I path only (Fig. 13.7.). The Q path is driven with q(t)=0, i.e. it delivers no output signal and so does not contribute to iqmod(t). We now apply alternately +1 V and -1 V to the I path modulation input, so that i(t)=+1 V or i(t)= -1 V. Looking at the output signal iqmod(t), we see that the carrier lo(t) is present and switched only in phase between 0° and 180°. By varying the amplitude of i(t), we can vary the amplitude of iqmod(t).

For the vector diagram this means that the vector changes between 0° and 180° and varies in length but always remains on the I axis as long as only i(t) is present and being varied (Fig. 13.7).

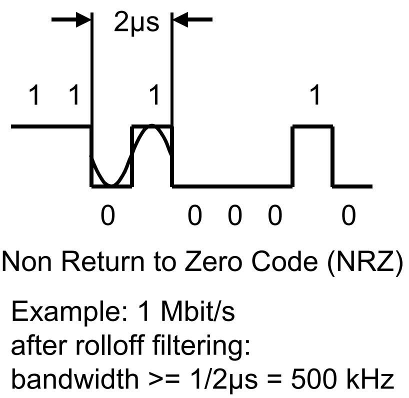


Fig. 13.8. NRZ code

This is a suitable point for discussing fundamentals relating to bandwidth conditions in the baseband and at RF. In the extreme case, the bandwidth of a data signal with an NRZ (non-return to zero) code (Fig. 13.8.) at a data rate of 1 Mbit/s can be cut (filtered) to such an extent that 500 kHz bandwidth are just sufficient to ensure reliable decoding. With using much mathematics, this can be explained quite simply by the fact that 01 alternations represent the highest frequency; i.e. the period has a length of 2 bits and is thus 2 μs in the case of a data rate of 1 Mbit/s. The reciprocal of 2 μs is then 500 kHz and the minimum baseband bandwidth for transmitting an NRZ code is then:

$f_{baseband\_NRZ}$ [Hz] $\geq 0.5 \cdot$ data $rate_{NRZ}$ [bits/s];

If such a filtered NRZ code (Fig. 13.8.) is then supplied, e.g. without DC to a mixer as in the I path of this IQ modulator, two sidebands having each the bandwidth of the input baseband signal (Fig. 13.9.) are produced at RF. The minimum bandwidth required at RF is thus:

f_{RF_NRZ} [Hz] $\geq$ data $rate_{NRZ}$ [bits/s];

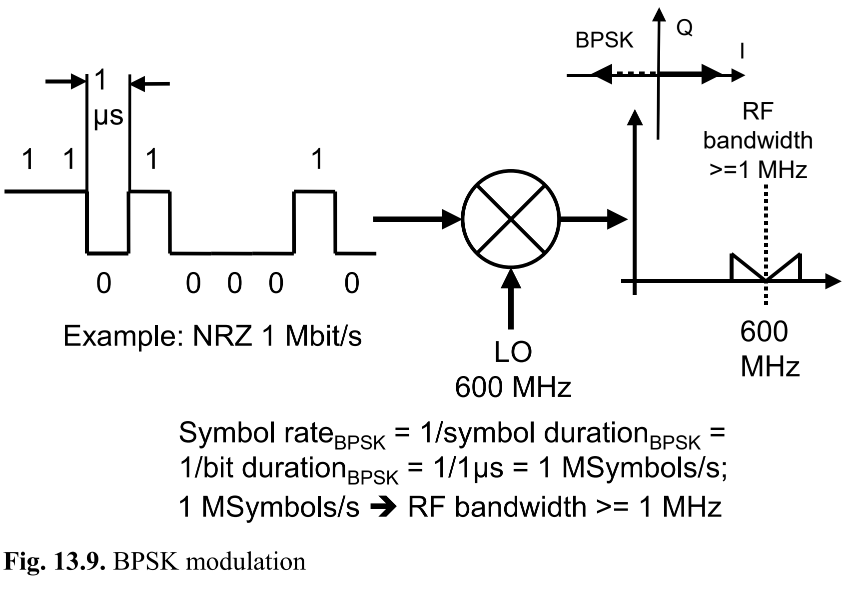


Fig. 13.9. BPSK modulation

In this type of modulation, therefore, the ratio between data rate and minimum bandwidth required at RF is 1:1. This type of modulation is called binary phase shift keying, or biphase shift keying, BPSK. With BPSK, a data rate of 1 Mbit/s requires a minimum bandwidth of 1 MHz at RF level. The duration of one stable state of the carrier is called a symbol and in BPSK, a symbol has exactly the same duration as one bit. The reciprocal of the symbol duration is called the symbol rate.

Symbol rate = 1/symbol duration;

With a data rate of 1 Mbit/s with BPSK (Fig. 13.9.), the symbol rate is 1 MSymbol/s. The minimum bandwidth required always corresponds to the symbol rate, i.e. 1 MSymbol/s requires a minimum bandwidth of 1 MHz.

Now let us assume that i(t) is zero and there is only a q(t) output signal. We now switch q(t) between +1 V and -1 V. iqmod(t) corresponds to the output signal of the Q mixer; there is no contribution from the I path. Again, a sine signal is obtained for iqmod(t), but with phase 90° or 270°. By varying the amplitude of q(t), the amplitude of iqmod(t) can be varied. For the vector diagram this means that the vector changes between 90° and 180° and varies in length along the Q axis (imaginary axis).

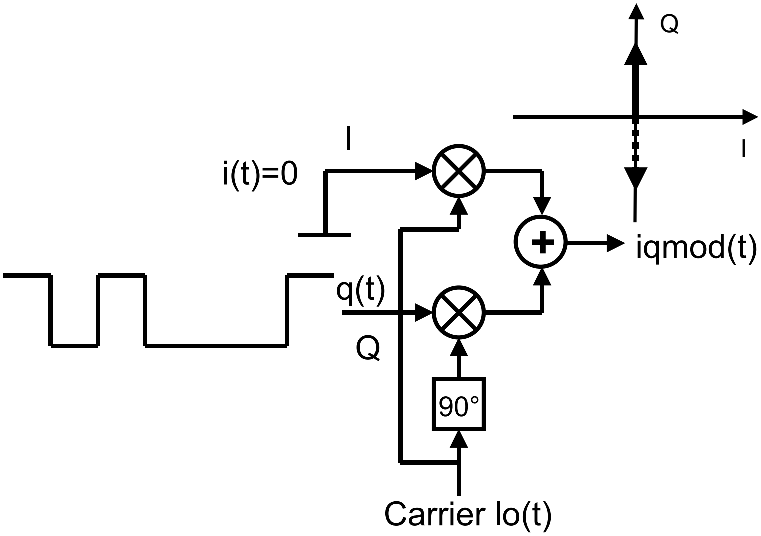


Fig. 13.10. IQ modulator, Q path active only

Next, we want to vary both i(t) and q(t) between +1 V and -1 V. In this case, the modulation products of the I path and the Q path are added up, so we can switch the carrier between 45°, 135°, 225° and 315°. This is referred to as quadrature phase shift keying or QPSK. Allowing any voltages for i(t) and q(t), any desired amplitude and phase can be generated for iqmod(t).

The data stream data(t) is converted to the two modulation signals i(t) for the I path and q(t) for the Q path by means of a mapper. This is shown in Fig. 13.13. for QPSK modulation. The mapping table is the rule according to which the data stream data(t) is converted to modulation signals i(t) and q(t). In the case of QPSK, two bits (corresponding to bit 0 and bit 1 in the mapping table) are combined to form a dibit. For dibit combination 10, for example, the mapper outputs the signals i(t)= -1 V and q(t)= -1 V according to the mapping table shown here.

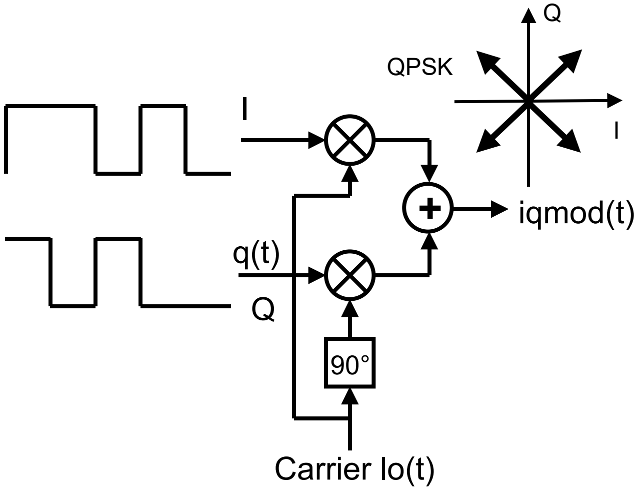


Fig. 13.11. IQ Modulator, I and Q Paths active and identical Amplitudes (QPSK)

The bit combination 11 yields i(t)=+1 V and q(t)= -1 V in this example. The allocation of bits to modulation signals, defining how the bit stream is to be read and converted by the mapper, is merely a matter of definition. It is important that the modulator and the demodulator, i.e. the mapper and the demapper, use the same mapping rules. Fig. 13.12. also shows that in this case the data rate is halved after the mapper. QPSK can transmit two bits per state. Two bits each are combined to form a dibit that determines the state of the mapper output signals i(t) and q(t). Therefore, in this case, i(t) and q(t) have half the data rate of data(t). i(t) and q(t) in turn modulate the carrier signal and, in the case of QPSK, switch it only in phase. There are four possible constellations for iqmod(t): 45°, 135°, 225° and 315°. The information is contained in the phase of the carrier. Now that we can switch the carrier phase at half the data rate relative to the input rate, the required channel bandwidth is reduced by a factor of 2. The time the carrier or vector dwells on a specific phase (dwell time = symbol duration) is referred to as symbol (Fig. 13.12. and 13.14.). The reciprocal of the symbol duration is the symbol rate. The required bandwidth corresponds to the symbol rate. Compared with simple bit transmission, the available bandwidth capacity is now boosted by a factor of 2.

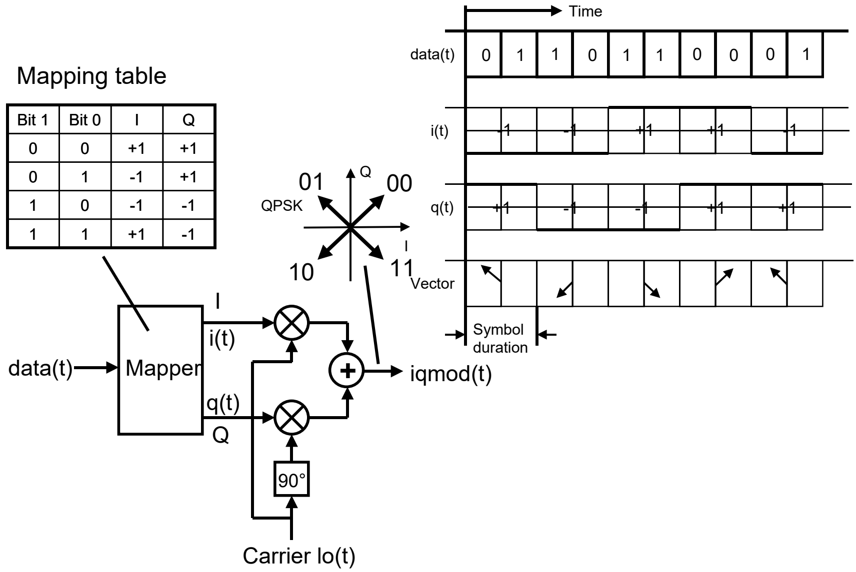


Fig. 13.12. Mapping with QPSK modulation

In practice, higher-order modulation methods are used besides QPSK. Fig. 13.11. shows 16QAM produced by varying the amplitude and phase. The information is in the amplitude, or magnitude, and in the phase. In the case of 16QAM (= 16 quadrature amplitude modulation), four bits are combined in the mapper; one carrier constellation can, therefore, carry four bits, and there are 16 possible carrier constellations. The data rate after the mapper, or the symbol rate, is a fourth of the input data rate. This means that the required channel bandwidth has been reduced by a factor of four.

In vector diagrams for IQ modulation, it is common practice to represent only the end point of the vector. A vector diagram in which all possible vector constellations are entered is referred to as a constellation diagram.

Fig 13.13. shows constellation diagrams of real QPSK, 16QAM and 64QAM signals, i.e. impaired by noise. The decision thresholds of the demapper are shown too.

The number of bits transmitted per symbol is the logarithm to the base of 2 of the constellation.

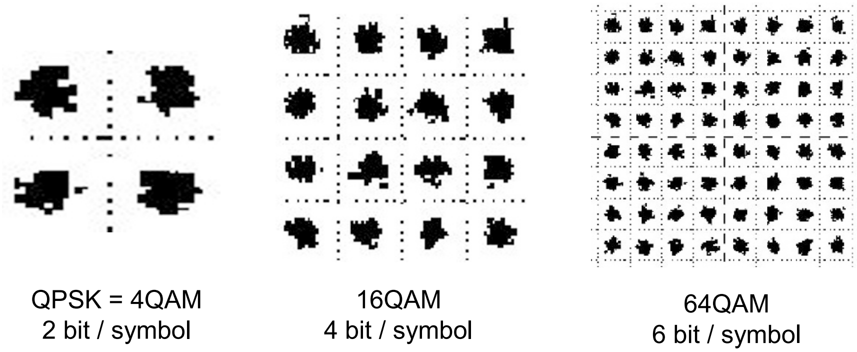


Fig. 13.13. Constellation diagrams of QPSK, 16QAM and 64QAM

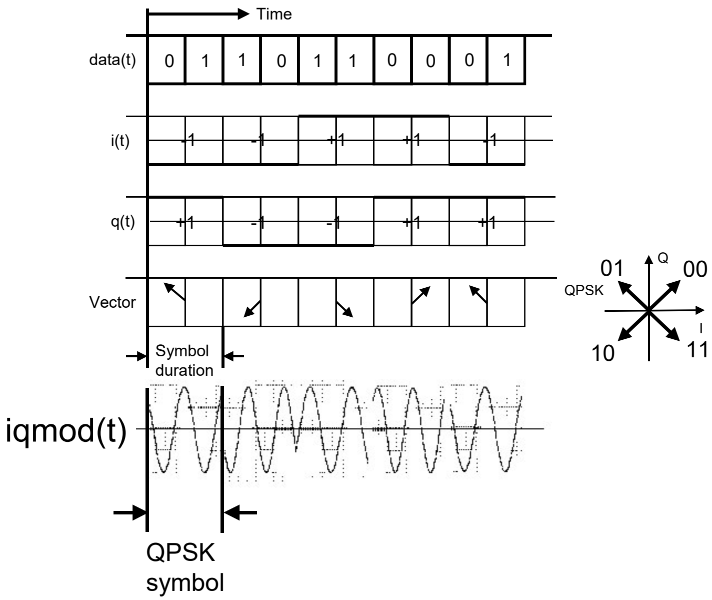


Fig. 13.14. QPSK

Fig. 13.14. shows the original data stream data(t), the resulting constellations of the carrier vector, and the switched, or keyed, carrier signal iqmod(t) in the time domain. Each switching status is referred to as a symbol. The duration of a switching status is called symbol duration. The reciprocal of the symbol duration is the symbol rate.

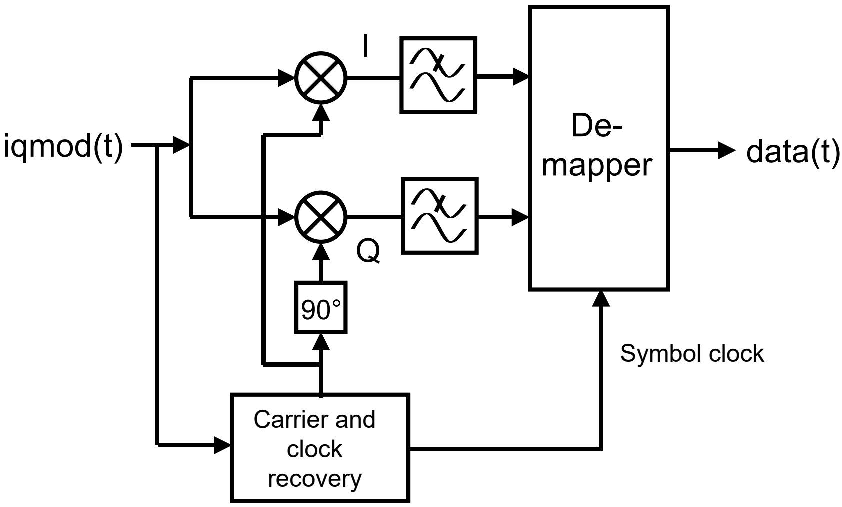


Fig. 13.15. IQ demodulator

13.5 The IQ Demodulator

In this section, IQ demodulation will be discussed briefly (s. Fig. 13.15.). The digitally modulated signal iqmod(t) is fed to the I mixer, which is driven with 0° carrier phase, and to the Q demodulator, which is driven with 90° carrier phase. At the same time, the carrier and the symbol clock are recovered in a signal processing block. To recover the carrier, the input signal iqmod(t) is squared twice. So, a spectral line at the fourfold carrier frequency can be isolated by means of a bandpass filter. A clock generator is locked to this frequency by means of a PLL. Moreover, the symbol clock has to be recovered, i.e. the point in the middle of the symbol has to be determined. Some modulation methods allow carrier recovery only with an uncertainty of multiples of 90°.

By IQ mixing, the baseband signals i(t) and q(t) are retrieved. The carrier harmonics superimposed on these signals have to be eliminated by means of a lowpass filter before the signals are applied to the demapper.

The demapper simply reverses the mapping procedure, i.e. it samples the baseband signals i(t) and q(t) at the middle of the symbol and so recovers the data stream data(t).

Fig. 13.16. illustrates the processes of IQ modulation and demodulation in the time domain and in the form of constellation diagrams for the QPSK method. The signal in the first line represents the input data stream data(t). The second and the third line show the signals i(t) and q(t) at the modulation end. The fourth and the fifth line are the voltage characteristics after the I and the Q mixer of the modulator, the sixth line the characteristic of iqmod(t). The phase steps between the symbols are clearly visible. The amplitude does not change (QPSK). In the last line, the corresponding constellation diagrams are shown. Lines 7 and 8 show the digitally recovered signals i(t) and q(t) at the demodulation end. It can be seen that, in addition to the baseband signals, the traces contain the carrier at double the frequency. The latter has to be eliminated both in the I and the Q path by means of a lowpass filter prior to demapping. In the case of analog mixing, harmonics would be superimposed in addition which would also be suppressed by the lowpass filters.

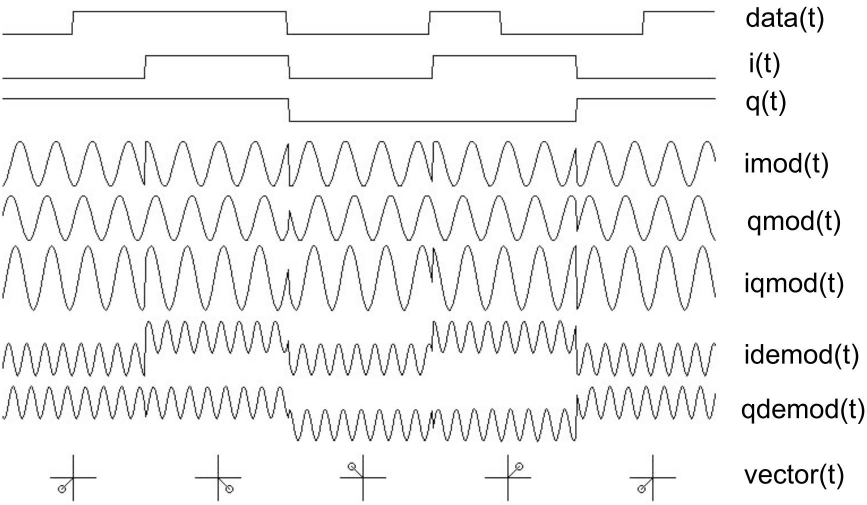


Fig. 13.16. IQ modulation and demodulation (mapping table different to examples before)

Very frequently, however, demodulation is performed using the fs/4 method, which requires a less complex IQ demodulator. The modulated signal iqmod(t) is passed through an anti-aliasing lowpass filter and then sampled by means of an A/D converter which operates at the fourfold IF of the modulated signal iqmod(t). Therefore, if the carrier of iqmod(t) is at f_{IF}, the sampling frequency is $4 \cdot f_{IF}$. This means that a complete carrier cycle is sampled four times (see Fig. 13.8.). Provided the A/D converter clock is fully synchronous with the carrier clock, the rotating carrier vector is sampled exactly at the instants shown in Fig. 13.17. The symbol clock is recovered in a carrier and clock recovery block as described above.

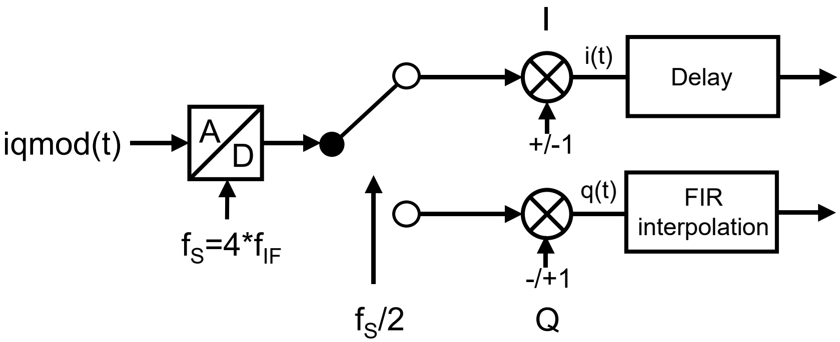


Fig. 13.17. IQ demodulation using f_S/4 method

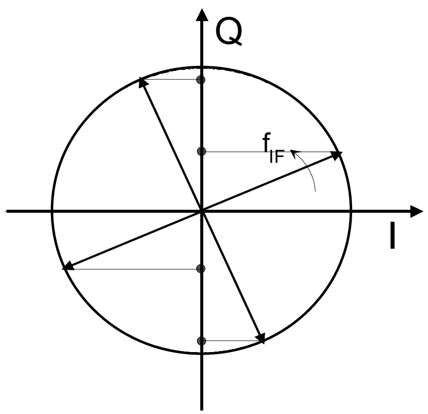


Fig. 13.18. f_S/4 demodulation

After the A/D converter, a switch splits the data stream into two streams of half the data rate. For example, the odd samples are taken to the I path and the even samples to the Q path. This means that only every second sample is taken to the I path or the Q path, respectively, thus halving the data rate in both paths. The multipliers in the two paths only reverse the sign, i.e. they multiply the samples alternately by +1 and -1.

Principle of the fs/4 method:

If the A/D converter operates exactly at the fourfold carrier frequency (IF) and the A/D converter clock and the carrier clock are fully synchronized, the samples correspond alternately to an I and a Q value. This can be seen from Fig. 13.18. Each second sample in the I and the Q path has a negative sign and so has to be multiplied by -1.

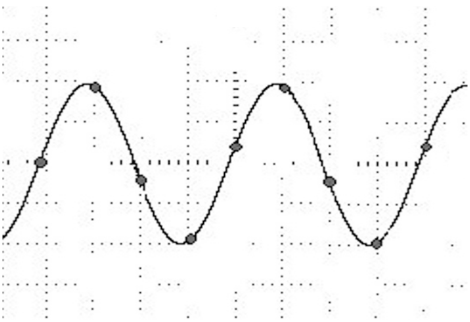


Fig. 13.19. IQ demodulation according to the $f_S/4$ method

The baseband signals i(t) and q(t) are thus recovered in a very simple way. Since the signals i(t) and q(t) have to settle after each symbol change (change of switching status), and settling is delayed by half a clock cycle by the switch after the A/D converter, the signals have to be pulled back into synchronism with the aid of digital filters.

To this effect a signal, for example q(t), is interpolated, so retrieving the sample between two values. This is done with the aid of an FIR filter (finite impulse response filter, digital filter). Each digital filter has a basic delay, however, which has to be compensated by introducing a corresponding delay in the other path, i.e. the I path in this case, by means of a delay line. After the FIR filter and the delay line, the sampled and clock-synchronous signals i(t) and q(t) are available and can be applied to the demapper.

As already mentioned, the less complex fs/4 method is frequently used in practice. In the case of OFDM-(Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex)-modulated signals, this circuit is provided directly ahead of the FFT signal processing block. The fs/4 demodulation method is supported by many modern digital circuits.

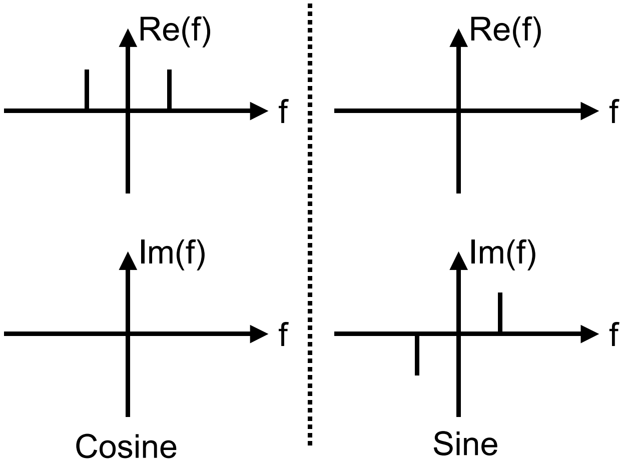


Fig. 13.20. Fourier Transform of a cosine and a sine

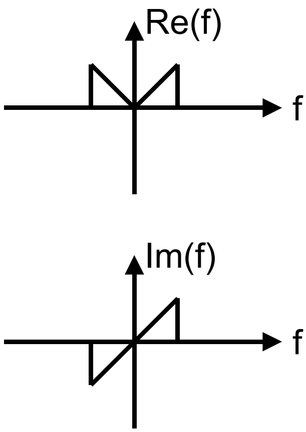


Fig. 13.21. Fourier Transform of a general real time domain signal

13.6 Use of the Hilbert transform in IQ modulation

In this section we will discuss the Hilbert Transform, which plays a major role in some digital modulation methods such as OFDM or 8VSB (c.f. ATSC, the U.S. version of digital terrestrial TV).

Let us start with sine and cosine signals. At the time t=0, the sine signal has the value 0, the cosine signal the value 1. The sine signal is shifted 90° relative to the cosine signal, i.e. it leads the cosine signal by 90°. We will see later that the sine signal is the Hilbert Transform of the cosine signal.

Based on the sine and cosine functions, we can arrive at some important definitions: the cosine function is an even function, i.e. it is symmetrical about t=0, so that cos(x) = cos(-x) applies.

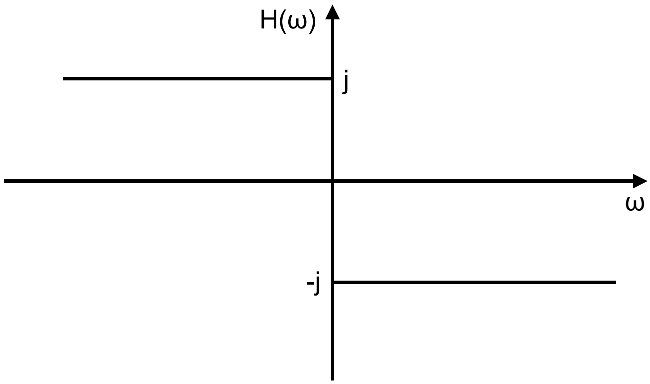


Fig. 13.22. Fourier Transform of the Hilbert Transform

The sine function, on the other hand, is an odd function, i.e. it is half-turn symmetrical about t=0, so that sin(x) = -sin(-x) applies. The spectrum of the cosine, i.e. its Fourier Transform, is purely real and symmetrical about f=0. The imaginary component is zero (s. Fig. 13.20.).

The spectrum of the sine, i.e. its Fourier transform, is purely imaginary and half-turn symmetrical (Fig. 13.20.). The real component is zero. The above facts are important for understanding the Hilbert Transform. For all real time-domain signals, the spectrum of all real components versus f (Re(f)) is symmetrical about f=0, and the spectrum of all imaginary components versus f (Im(f)) is half-turn symmetrical about f=0 (s. Fig. 13.21.).

Any real time-domain signal can be represented as a Fourier series – the superposition of the cosinusoidal and sinusoidal harmonics of the signal. The cosine functions are even and the sine functions odd. Therefore, the characteristics previously stated for a single cosine function or a single sine function also generally apply to a sum of cosine functions or a sum of sine functions. Let us now discuss the Hilbert Transform itself. Fig. 13.22. shows the transfer function of a Hilbert transformer. A Hilbert transformer is a signal processing block with special characteristics. Its main purpose is to phase shift a sine signal by 90°. This means that a cosine is converted to a sine and a sine to a minus cosine. The amplitude remains invariant under the Hilbert Transform. These characteristics apply to any type of sinusoidal signal, i.e. of any frequency, amplitude, or phase. Hence, they also apply to all the harmonics of any type of time-domain signal. This is due to the transfer function of the Hilbert transformer which is shown in Fig. 13.22. – essentially it only makes use of the symmetry characteristics of even and odd time-domain signals referred to above.

Examining the transfer function of the Hilbert transformer, we find:

- All negative frequencies are multiplied by j, all positive frequencies by -j. j is the positive, imaginary square root of -1
- The rule $j \cdot j = -1$ applies
- Real spectral components, therefore, become imaginary and imaginary components become real
- Multiplication by j or -j may invert the negative or positive part of the spectrum

Applying the Hilbert Transform to a cosine signal, the following is obtained: A cosine has a purely real spectrum symmetrical about zero. If the negative half of the spectrum is multiplied by j, a purely positive imaginary spectrum is obtained for all negative frequencies. If the positive half of the spectrum is multiplied by -j, a purely negative imaginary spectrum is obtained for all frequencies above zero. The spectrum of a sine is obtained.

This applies analogously to the Hilbert Transform of a sine signal:

By multiplying the positive imaginary negative sine spectrum by j, the latter becomes negative real ($j \cdot j = -1$). By multiplying the negative imaginary positive sine spectrum by -j, the latter becomes purely positive real ($-j \cdot -j = -(\sqrt{-1} \cdot \sqrt{-1}) = 1$). The spectrum of a minus cosine is obtained.

The cosine-to-sine and sine-to-minus-cosine mapping by the Hilbert Transform also applies to all the harmonics of any type of time-domain signal.

Summarizing, the Hilbert Transform shifts the phases of all harmonics of any type of time-domain signal by 90°, i.e. it acts as a 90° phase shifter for all harmonics.

13.7 Practical Applications of the Hilbert Transform

Often, a sideband or parts of a sideband have to be suppressed during modulation. With single-sideband modulation (SSB modulation), for example, the upper or lower sideband has to be suppressed, which can be done in a variety of ways. For example, simple lowpass filtering can be used or, as is common practice in analog TV, vestigial sideband filtering. Hard lowpass filtering has the disadvantage that significant group delay distortion is produced. The latter method in any case is technically complex. For a long time, however, an alternative to single-sideband modulation has been available, this alternative being known as the phase method. A single-sideband modulator using the phase method operates as follows: the IQ modulator is fed with a modulation signal which is applied unmodified to the I path and to the Q path with 90° phase shift. A phase shift of plus or minus 90° in the Q path results in suppression of the upper or the lower sideband, respectively.

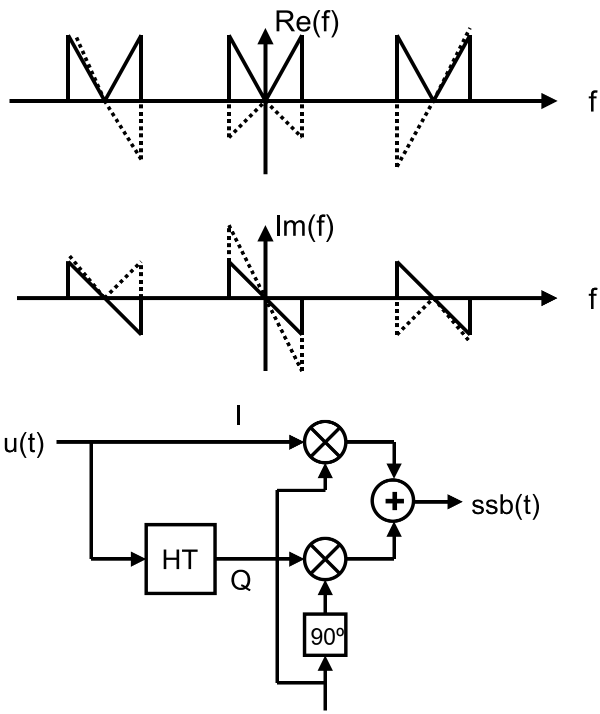


Fig. 13.23. Practical application of the Hilbert Transform to suppressing a sideband in SSB modulation

It is difficult to implement an ideal 90° phase shifter for all harmonics of a baseband signal as an analog circuit. Digital implementation is no problem – thanks to the Hilbert Transform. A Hilbert transformer is a 90° phase shifter for all components of a real time-domain signal.

Fig. 13.23. shows the suppression of a sideband by means of an IQ modulator and a Hilbert transformer. A real baseband signal is directly fed to the I path of an IQ modulator and to the Q path via a Hilbert transformer. The continuous lines at f=0 represent the spectrum of the baseband signal, the dashed lines at f=0 the spectrum of the Hilbert Transform of the baseband signal.

It can be seen clearly that, under the Hilbert Transform, the half-turn symmetrical imaginary component becomes a mirror symmetrical real component and the mirror symmetrical real component becomes a half-turn symmetrical imaginary component at the baseband.

If the unmodified baseband signal is then fed into the I path and the Hilbert Transform of the baseband signal into the imaginary path, spectra about the IQ modulator carrier like those shown in Fig. 13.22. are obtained. It can be seen that in this case the lower sideband is suppressed.

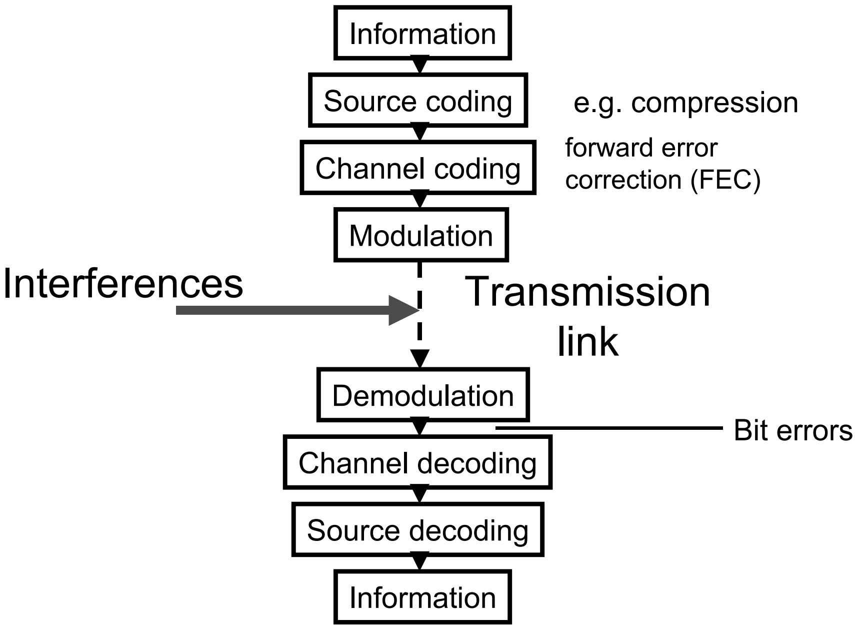


Fig. 13.24. Information transmission

13.8 Channel Coding/Forward Error Correction

In addition to the most suitable modulation method, the most appropriate error protection, i.e. channel coding, is selected from among the characteristics of the respective transmission channel. The current aim is to approach the Shannon-Limit as closely as possible. This section discusses commonly used error protection mechanisms and creates the foundations for the transmission methods in digital television.

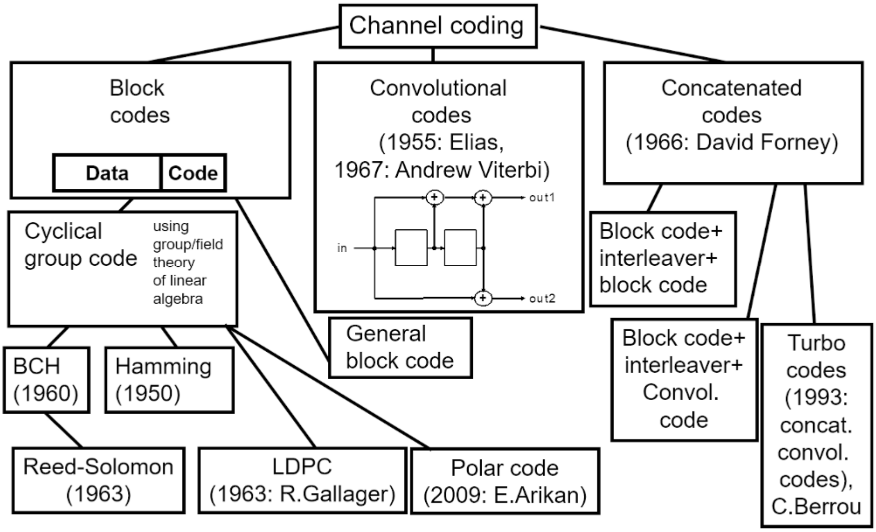


Fig. 13.25. Channel coding

Before information is transmitted, source encoding (Fig. 13.24.) is used for changing it into a form in which it can be transmitted in as little space as possible. This simply means that it is compressed as well as is possible and tolerable. After that, error protection (Fig. 13.24.) is added before the data are sent on their journey. This corresponds to channel coding. The error-protected data are then digitally modulated onto a sinusoidal carrier after which the information is sent on its way, subjected to interference such as noise, linear and nonlinear distortion, discrete and wide-band interferers, intermodulation, multipath propagation etc. Due to the varying degree of signal quality at the receiving end (Fig. 13.24.), this causes bit errors after its demodulation back to a data stream. Using the error protection added in the transmitter (FEC - Forward Error Correction), errors can then be corrected to a certain extent in the channel decoder. The bit error ratio is reduced back to a tolerable amount, or to zero. The information is then processed in such a way that it can be presented. I.e. the data are decompressed, if necessary, which corresponds to source decoding..

The “toolbox“ (Fig. 13.25.) which can be used for providing error protection is not as large as one might assume. The essential basics were largely created back in 1950 – 1970. Essentially, there are block codes and convolutional codes. Block codes (Fig. 13.27.) are based on principles of linear algebra and simply protect a block of data with an error protection block. From the data to be transmitted, a type of checksum is basically calculated which can be used to find out if errors have crept in during the transmission or not, and where the errors, if any, are located. Some block codes also allow a certain number of errors to be repaired. Convolutional codes (Fig. 13.28.) delay and randomize the data stream with itself and thus introduce a certain “intelligence“ into the data stream to be transmitted. The counterpart to the convolutional coder is the Viterbi-decoder developed by Andrew Viterbi in 1967.

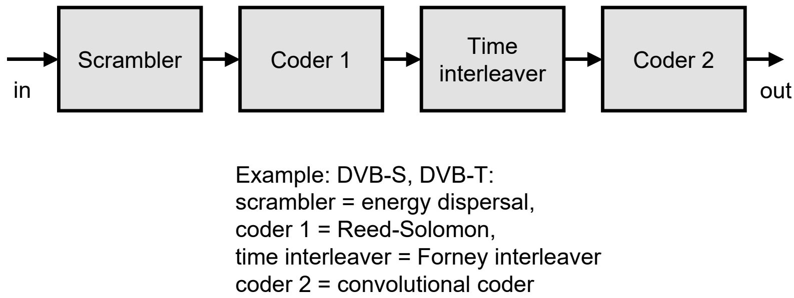


Fig. 13.26. Concatenated Forward Error Correction

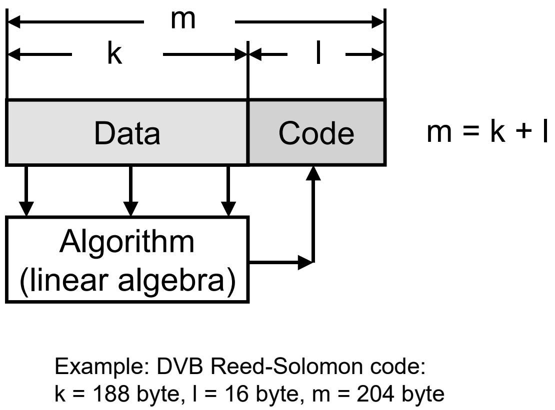


Fig. 13.27. Block code

Before the data are supplied to the error protection section (Fig. 13.26.), however, they are first scrambled in order to bring movement into the data stream, to break up any adjoining long strings of zeroes or ones into more or less random data streams. This is done by mixing and EXOR-operations on a pseudo random binary sequence (PRBS). At the receiving end, the data stream now encrypted must be recovered by synchronous descrambling. The scrambling is followed by the first FEC. The data stream is then distributed in time by means of time interleaving. This is necessary so that during the deinterleaving at the receiving end, burst errors can be broken up into individual errors. This can be followed by a second FEC.

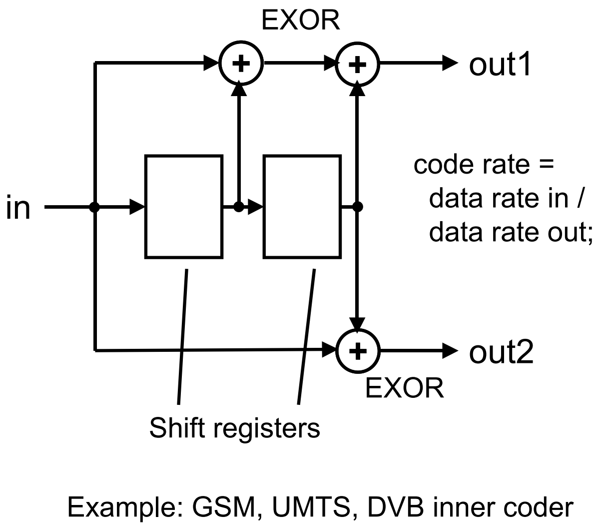


Fig. 13.28. Convolutional coding

There is also concatenated error protection (Fig. 13.25. and 13.26.) (David Forney, 1966). It is possible to concatenate both block codes with block codes and block codes with convolutional codes or also convolutional codes with convolutional codes. Concatenated convolutional codes are called turbo codes. They only made their appearance in the 90's.

It depends on the choice of modulation method and of the error protection how closely the Shannon-Limit is approached. Shannon determined the theoretical limit of the data rate in a distorted channel of a certain bandwidth. The precise formula for this is:

$$C = B \cdot \log_2(1 + \frac{S}{N});$$

If the signal/noise ratio is more than 10 dB, the following formula can also be used:

$$C[Bit/s] \approx \frac{1}{3} \cdot B[Hz] \cdot SNR[dB];$$

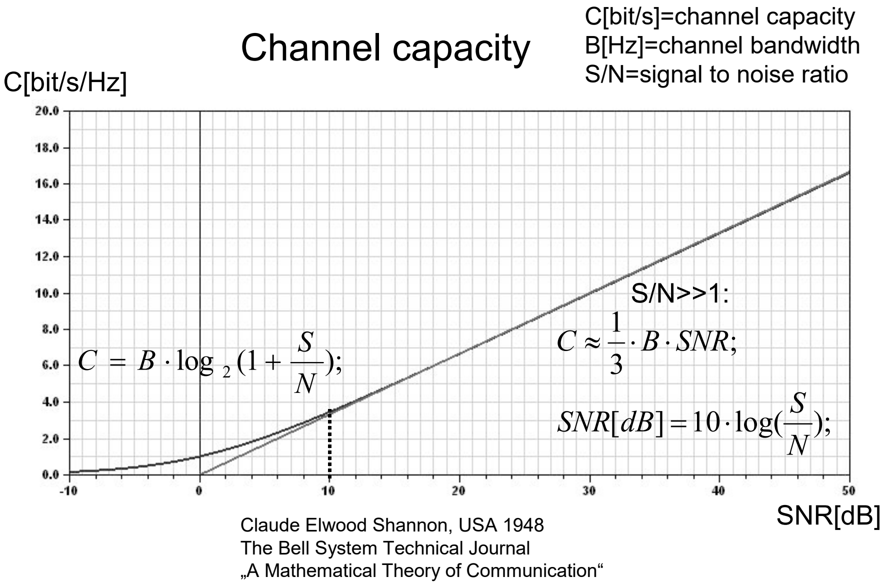
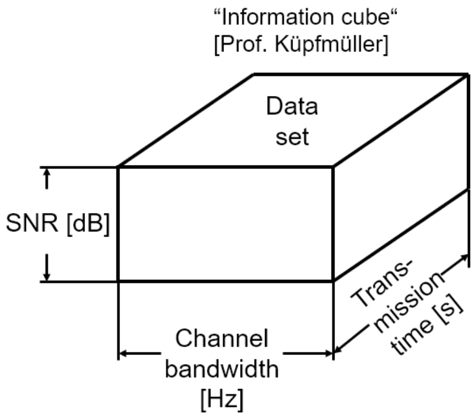


Fig. 13.29. Channel capacity

Depending on the properties of the transmission channel, a certain amount of data can be transmitted within a shorter or longer time period. The available channel bandwidth determines the maximum possible symbol rate. The signal/noise ratio present in the channel then determines the modulation method to be selected, in combination with the appropriate error protection. These relationships are illustrated by Prof. Küpfmüller's so-called information cube (Fig. 13.30.).

The FEC actually used in the transmission process will be discussed in the relevant chapter.



$$Data\_volume[bit] \approx \frac{1}{3} B[Hz] \cdot t[s] \cdot SNR[dB];$$

Fig. 13.30. Information cube

13.9 A Comparison to Analog Modulation Methods

In the age of digital transmission methods, it still pays to look at the traditional analog modulation methods which have been part of our lives for more than 100 years, from the beginning of carrier keying in Morse code, to AM radio and then FM radio which, due to its quality, is still giving digital audio broadcasting a run for its money. Adjacently to a frequency-modulated carrier, however, digitally modulated signals are now also being transmitted (e.g. IBOC, HD radio) which is why it makes sense to acquaint oneself again with the analog modulation methods. In this section, therefore, the special features of the traditional modulation methods of

- Amplitude modulation (AM)
- Frequency modulation (FM)
- Phase modulation (PM)

will be presented. The relevant experience is also quite applicable to the digital modulation methods. In addition, this chapter is intended to see to it that this traditional knowledge is not completely lost. In the second half of the 19th century, budding communication engineers were confronted with the question of how to convey messages by wire and wirelessly from one place to another. The first variant of message transmission by wire was telephony and the telegram. In telephony, the voice was converted by a carbon microphone into amplitude variations of an electrical voltage and transmitted as a pure baseband signal via two-wire lines. In the case of the telegram, a direct voltage was keyed on and off, making it possible, with the aid of the Morse alphabet, to transmit text messages from point A to point B. The Morse alphabet was thus already virtually a type of source encoding, working with redundancy reduction. Short codes were used for letters occurring frequently in the language and long codes were used for letters occurring less frequently. After the discovery of and research into electromagnetic waves, it was then a matter of applying them in the wireless transmission of messages. Baseband signals (voice, various texts) were then impressed on a sinusoidal carrier of a particular frequency and this carrier then transmitted the information from a transmitting antenna to one or more receiving antennas. The necessity of selecting a suitable transmitting frequency, i.e. carrier frequency, within the correct range of frequencies or wavelengths and modulating it with the information to be sent out arises firstly from the mere fact that electromagnetic waves will emanate from the transmitting antenna only when the wavelength $\lambda = c/f$ reaches the order of magnitude of the antenna dimensions. Depending on the frequency range selected, these messages could then be transmitted over a greater or lesser distance. But above all else, it was possible to select different carrier frequencies and thus to send out many different messages simultaneously, a principle which applies to the present day. In contrast to the past, however, the main problem today is that very many people wish to send out great amounts of information at the same time, with the resultant problem of a lack of frequencies and thus of having to control the availability of frequencies. At the beginning of communication technology it didn't matter whether an entire band was occupied or only a part of it, differently from today where the frequency resource is scarce and must be well managed. There are separate international organisations especially established for this purpose which deal with this problem.

13.9.1 Amplitude Modulation

In amplitude modulation, the information to be transmitted is impressed on the amplitude of a sinusoidal carrier (Fig. 13.31.). This type of modulation can be considered simply as multiplying a modulation signal by a carrier signal. If the carrier signal is multiplied by the value zero, the result is also zero. If the carrier signal is multiplied by a particular, information-dependent value, a particular carrier amplitude is obtained. The simplest variant of amplitude modulation is amplitude shift keying (ASK). In the original Morse-type transmission, a carrier was simply switched on and off. The original characters could be decoded again from the duration of the on- and off-periods. However, we will now consider the case of modulating a sinusoidal or cosinusoidal carrier with a a sinusoidal or cosinusoidal modulation signal. Using the cosine instead of the sine for representing the situation results in simpler addition theorems which can be used for explaining the physics. The modulation signal is described as:

$$u_{signal}(t) = U_{signal} \cdot \cos(2\pi f_{signal} t) = U_{signal} \cdot \cos(\omega_{signal} t);$$

The carrier signal is described as:

$$u_{carrier}(t) = U_{carrier} \cdot \cos(2\pi f_{carrier} t) = U_{carrier} \cdot \cos(\omega_{carrier} t);$$

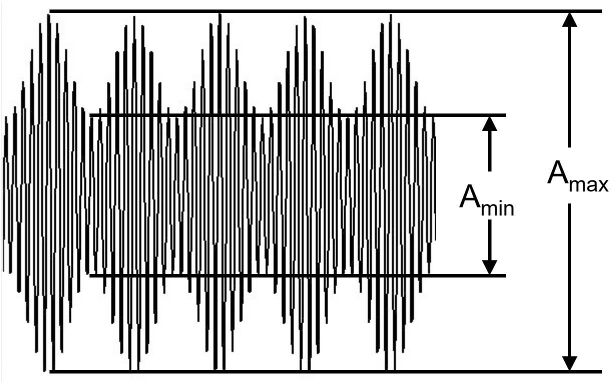


Fig. 13.31. Amplitude Modulation

If a direct voltage component of U_{DC} is added to the modulation signal $u_{signal}(t)$ and then multiplied by the carrier signal by means of a mixer (multiplier) multiplied, the following is obtained

$$u(t) = (u_{signal}(t) + U_{DC}) \cdot u_{carrier}(t) =$$
$$(U_{signal} \cdot \cos(\omega_{signal} t) + U_{DC}) \cdot U_{carrier} \cdot \cos(\omega_{carrier} t);$$

Applying the addition theorems of mathematics /geometry

$$\cos(\alpha)\cdot\cos(\beta) = \frac{1}{2}\cos(\alpha-\beta) + \frac{1}{2}\cos(\alpha+\beta);$$

the result is then:

$$u(t) = U_{DC}\cdot u_{carrier}(t) + u_{signal}(t)\cdot u_{carrier}(t);$$

or

$$u(t) = U_{DC}\cdot U_{carrier}\cos(\omega_{carrier}t)$$
$$+\frac{1}{2}U_{signal}U_{carrier}\cos((\omega_{carrier}-\omega_{signal})t)$$
$$+\frac{1}{2}U_{signal}U_{carrier}\cos((\omega_{carrier}+\omega_{signal})t);$$

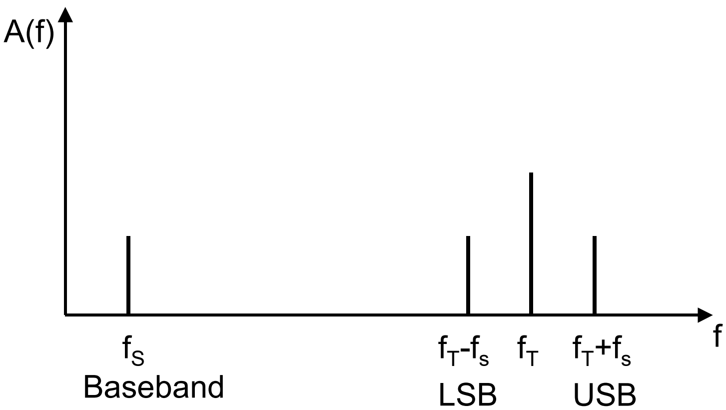


Fig. 13.32. Spectrum of the amplitude modulation (AM) with baseband signal, lower sideband (LSB) and upper sideband (USB)

Reinterpreting this, a carrier component is now produced at the center of the band, plus two sidebands - one lower than the carrier by the modulation frequency and one higher than the carrier by the modulation frequency. Setting the DC component to zero results in an amplitude modulation with suppressed carrier. Depending on the DC component added to the modulation component, a greater or lesser carrier component is produced.

It can be seen that two sidebands of the respective highest modulation frequency are created (Fig. 13.32.) and that, as a result, the minimum bandwidth required at the RF domain must be greater than/equal to twice the highest modulation frequency:

$$b_{RFAM} \geq 2 \cdot f_{signal};$$

The amount of amplitude modulation of a sinusoidal or cosinusoidal carrier is determined by the modulation factor m (Fig. 13.31.). If A_{max} corresponds to the maximum amplitude of the modulated carrier and A_{min} corresponds to the minimum amplitude of the modulated carrier signal, the modulation factor m is defined as:

$$m = \frac{A_{\max} - A_{\min}}{A_{\max} + A_{\min}};$$

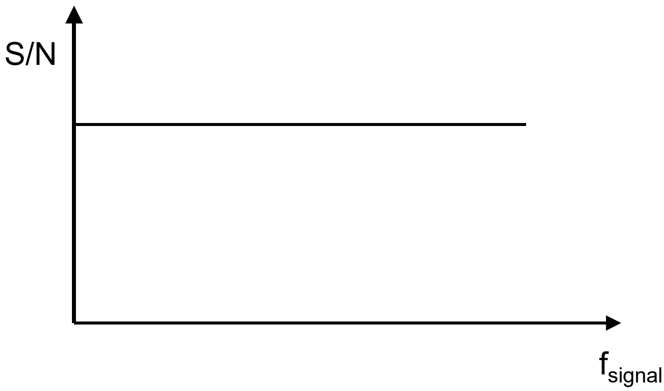


Fig. 13.33. LF signal/noise ratio in AM as a function of the baseband signal frequency

In amplitude modulation, the information to be transmitted is located in the amplitude of the modulated carrier. Nonlinearities in the transmission channel have a direct effect as amplitude distortions in the demodulated baseband signal. which means that AM systems have to be very linear. However, real transmission systems also exhibit interfering effects in the form of noise. In the case of AM, a baseband signal with superimposed additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN) is obtained after the demodulation. The noise power density is here constant and independent of the frequency of the modulation signal (Fig. 13.33.). The resultant baseband signal/noise ratio (Fig. 13.34.) directly corresponds linearly to the RF signal/noise ratio or may possibly be shifted slightly in parallel due to negative demodulation characteristics.

13.9.2 Variants of Amplitude Modulation

In amplitude modulation, various variants have become successful in practice which are:

- Traditional AM with unsuppressed carrier and both sidebands,
- AM with suppressed carrier and both sidebands,
- Single-sideband modulation with unsuppressed carrier,
- Single-sideband modulation with suppressed carrier,
- Vestigial-sideband modulation.

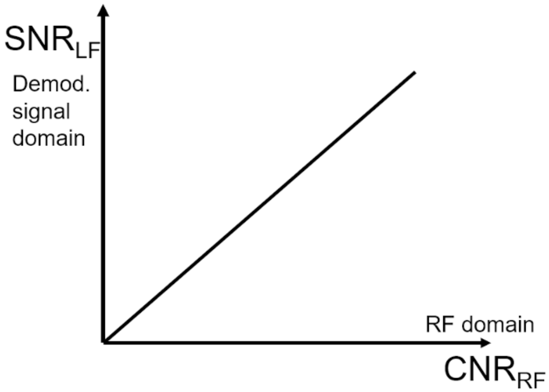


Fig. 13.34. LF signal/noise ratio of AM as a function of the RF carrier/noise ratio

In single-sideband modulation, either the upper or the lower sideband is completely suppressed whereas in vestigial-sideband modulation one sideband is only partially suppressed. The practical use is simply the saving in bandwidth since the information is present completely both in the upper sideband and in the lower sideband. The relevant sideband was formerly suppressed completely or partially by analog filtering and later by applying a Hilbert transformer or 90-degree phase shifter, and an IQ modulator. In vestigial sideband modulation (VSB), the analog filters could be made less severe at the transmitting and receiving end.

13.9.3 Frequency Modulation

In frequency modulation (Fig. 13.35.), the information to be transmitted is impressed on the frequency of the carrier, i.e. the frequency of the carrier changes to a certain extent in dependence on the information to be transmitted. The simplest variant of frequency modulation is frequency shift keying (FSK). The principle of frequency modulation can be traced back to Edwin Howard Armstrong (1933) who also invented the superheterodyne receiver. The aim had been to become more insensitive to atmospheric interference. Today, frequency modulation is of great significance mainly in the field of VHF sound broadcasting. Frequency modulation (FM) is quite tolerant of nonlinearities and much more insensitive to noise-like influences.

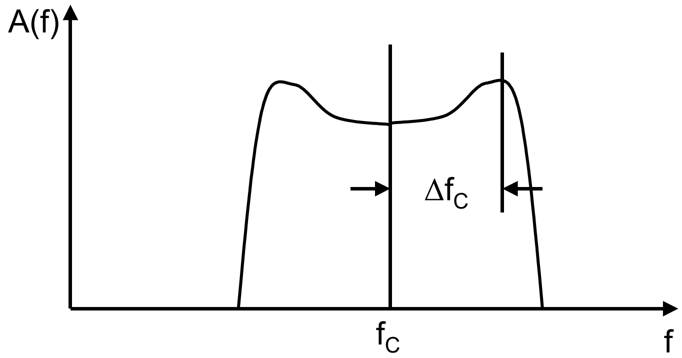


Fig. 13.35. Spectrum of frequency modulation

This is why FM transmitters are mostly operating in class C mode, i.e. the amplifiers themselves are highly nonlinear, but this also means that they are much more efficient. I.e., FM is mainly used where corresponding channel requirements are set (Low SNR, nonlinearities). In analog TV transmission via satellite, travelling tube amplifiers (TWAs), which are quite nonlinear, are used both in the earth terminal and in the satellite. Moreover, the SNR is about 10 dB due to the long distance of about 36000 km between satellite and Earth.
The frequency modulation can be expressed mathematically by:

$$u(t) = U_{carrier} \cdot \cos(2\pi f(t) \cdot t);$$

i.e. the frequency f(t) is a function of time and is influenced by the modulation factor. This involves two parameters, namely:

- Frequency deviation $\Delta f_{carrier}$
- Maximum modulation frequency $f_{signal\ max}$

In frequency modulation, the modulation index is

$$M = \frac{\Delta f_{carrier}}{f_{signal\max}};$$

From Carson's formula (J.R. Carson, 1922), the approximate minimum FM bandwidth required at the RF level can be specified as:

$$B_{10\%} = 2(\Delta f_{carrier} + f_{signal\max});$$

bzw.

$$B_{1\%} = 2(\Delta f_{carrier} + 2 \cdot f_{signal\max});$$

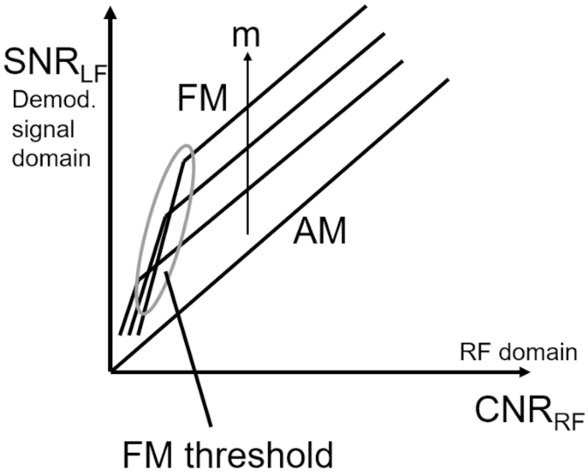


Fig. 13.36. LF SNR in frequency modulation as a function of the RF CNR [MAUESL1]

All signal components in the channel are here below 10% or 1%, respectively. The spectral lines produced can be determined by Bessel functions. Limiting the bandwidth causes nonlinear distortions in the demodulated signal. The spreading of the bandwidth in the channel results in a gain in the LF SNR with respect to the amplitude modulation above the so-called FM threshold (Fig. 13.36.). This gain can be expressed as:

$$FM_{gain\_SN\_LF} = 10 \cdot \log(3 \cdot M^3) dB;$$

This FM gain is only present above the FM threshold which is a SNR in the RF domain of about:

$$FM_{threshold} \approx 7...10 dB + 10 \cdot \log(2 \cdot (M+1)) dB;$$

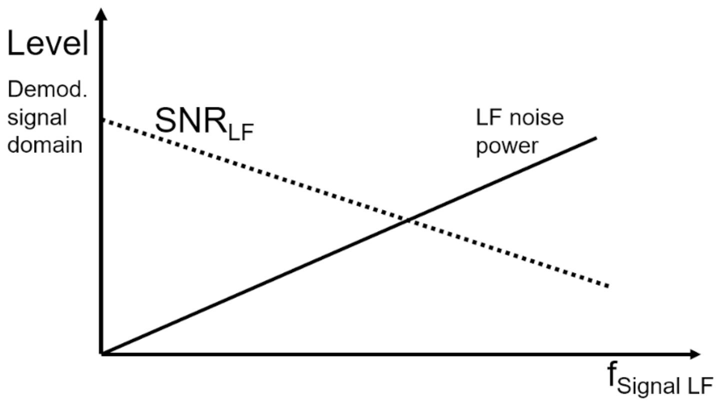


Fig. 13.37. LF signal-to-noise ratio of frequency modulation as a function of the baseband signal frequency, “delta noise”, “triangular noise”

The FM threshold itself is defined as disproportionally high drop-off compared with the FM gain at the 1-dB point. Below the FM threshold, spike-like noise signals occur due to phase discontinuities of the carrier. In the case of the wideband FM normally used in analog television by satellite, small white splashes are then produced in the picture. The LF noise occurring with frequency modulation is called "delta noise" or “triangular noise” (Fig. 13.37.), i.e. the noise power density is not constant but increases with increasing LF bandwidth. To counteract this, preemphasis is applied at the transmitting end, i.e. higher frequencies are emphasized more. At the receiving end, deemphasis is then applied, decreasing the amplitude of the higher frequencies again in accordance with the preemphasis characteristic so that a linear frequency response is obtained again.

13.9.4 Phase Modulation

Phase modulation is closely related to frequency modulation. In phase modulation, the information to be transmitted is impressed on the phase of the carrier:

$$u(t) = U_{carrier} \cdot \cos(2\pi ft + \varphi(t));$$

Both frequency modulation and phase modulation are known collectively as angle modulation. Like frequency modulation, phase modulation is insensitive to nonlinearities. Technically, phase modulation is used mainly in frequency modulation with preemphasis. To be able to distinguish between frequency modulation and phase modulation, the following relationships must be considered: In frequency modulation, the frequency deviation $\Delta f_{carrier}$ is proportional to the amplitude of the modulating signal U_{signal}:

$$\Delta f_{carrier\_FM} \sim U_{signal};$$

The frequency deviation is not dependent on the modulating signal, i.e. is not a function of the latter:

$$\Delta f_{carrier\_FM} \neq f(f_{signal});$$

The phase deviation $\Delta\varphi_{carrier}$ in frequency modulation corresponds to the modulation index and is inversely proportional to the frequency of the modulating signal f_{signal}:

$$\Delta\varphi_{carrier\_FM} \sim \frac{1}{f_{signal}};$$

In phase modulation, the phase deviation $\Delta\varphi_{carrier}$ is proportional to the amplitude of the modulating signal U_{signal}:

$$\Delta\varphi_{carrier\_PM} \sim U_{signal};$$

The frequency deviation in phase modulation is dependent on the maximum signal frequency and proportional to the signal frequency of the modulating signal:

$$\Delta f_{carrier\_PM} \sim f_{signal};$$

The phase deviation in phase modulation is not dependent on the maximum frequency of the modulating signal, i.e. is not a function of the latter:

$$\Delta \varphi_{carrier\_PM} \neq f(f_{signal});$$

I.e., frequency modulation can be distinguished physically from phase modulation only when the frequency of the modulating signal is changing; in frequency modulation, the frequency deviation does not change then whereas in phase modulation the frequency deviation of the carrier changes in dependence on the signal frequency of the modulating signal. FM and PM can also be distinguished in the LF signal to noise ratio: in FM, the LF noise floor increases (SNR decreases) with increasing signal frequency (delta noise) whereas in PM the LF SNR is not a function of the signal frequency.

13.10 Band Limiting of Modulated Carrier Signals

Modulated carrier signals must only occupy their designated channel; they must not interfere with adjacent or even more remote channels. This applies to any type of modulation, whether amplitude, phase or frequency modulation or whether analog or digital. To this end, measures are taken both on the baseband side and on the RF side. The baseband signal itself must already be band limited. On the RF side, too, precautions for protecting the adjacent channels are taken in most cases by using SAW filters at the intermediate frequency level. In addition, harmonic traps and channel-dependent mask filters are used directly in the RF path.

In the case of digital modulation, in particular, baseband filtering will still be discussed briefly at this point because this is a matter of concern in every digital TV or sound broadcasting transmission standard using single-carrier modulation. It can thus be dealt with here centrally in advance. If sinusoidal carriers are keyed by a square wave as is the case with digital modulation (amplitude and phase shift keying), this results in a multiplication of a square wave by a sinusoidal signal in the time domain and a convolution with the Fourier transform of the square wave signal with the Fourier transform of the sinusoidal signal in the frequency domain. If a single square-wave pulse from minus infinity to plus infinity were present, a continuous sin(x)/x-shaped spectrum with zeroes corresponding to the inverse of the square-wave pulse duration would be obtained (Fig. 13.38.).

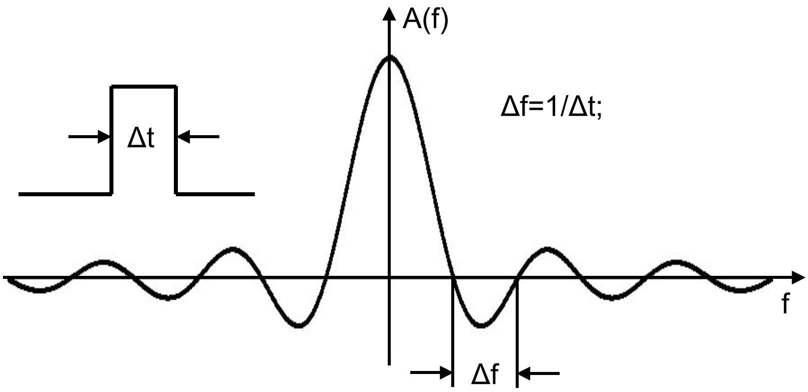


Fig. 13.38. Spectrum of a single rectangular pulse

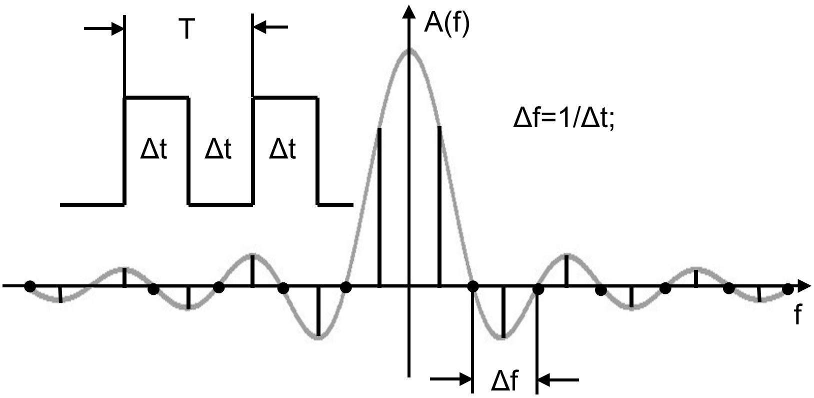


Fig. 13.39. Line spectrum of a symmetric sequence of rectangular pulses

A sequence of rectangular, or square-wave, pulses results in a line spectrum molded to the sin(x)/x function. The spectral lines occur with the spacing of the period T. If the period corresponds to exactly twice the width of the of the square-wave pulse, the line spectrum with the maximum frequency possible is obtained, providing spectral components spaced apart by 1/(2·Δt) (Fig. 13.39.). If the period has a longer duration, the spectral lines move towards lower frequencies. But there will always be a periodic line spectrum of multiples of the fundamental which corresponds to the inverse of the period of the sequence of square wave pulses. If the periods are fluctuating and the square wave pulse duration is constant, the sin(x)/x form is more or less "modulated out", resulting in practice in a sin(x)/x-shaped overall spectrum in the case of digital modulation with a data signal with good energy dispersal. However, only the fundamental is needed for demodulation, i.e. all harmonics can be suppressed. This is done maximally in rectangular form (Fig. 13.40.).

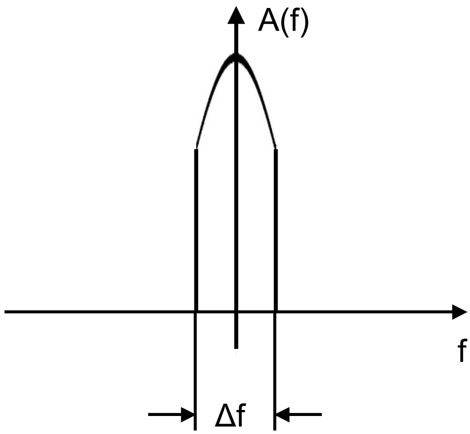


Fig. 13.40. Rectangular suppression of the harmonics (linear representation)

The control signals at the IQ modulator input i(t) and q(t) are initially square wave signals and meet the above-mentioned conditions. They must be band-limited before they are supplied to the IQ modulator. In the case of digital modulation at the baseband level, this band limiting is carried out by special "well-mannered" low-pass filters. These are constructed in most cases, and always digitally today, as root cosine square filters with a special roll-off characteristic. The roll-off factor r describes here where the filtering starts from in relation to the Nyquist bandwidth. The filter curve is symmetric and has its center at the so-called Nyquist point. The same matched filtering is performed again in the receiver, resulting in the total filter curve. The filter characteristic is designed to result in minimum overshoot in the demodulated signals i(t) and q(t). Fig.13.41. shows the resultant RF spectrum. The dashed curve corresponds to the spectrum after the modulator and the continuous curve corresponds to the spectrum after additional filtering (matched filter) in the demodulator. In the case of GSM, Gaussian filtering takes the place of the cosine filtering. In DVB-S, DVB-S2 and DVB-C, however, the cosine square or root cosine square filtering shown in Fig. 13.41, is used. On the baseband side, the spectrum to the left of the vertical axis can be imagined to consist of negative frequencies; the vertical axis corresponds to the band center of the channel on the RF side.

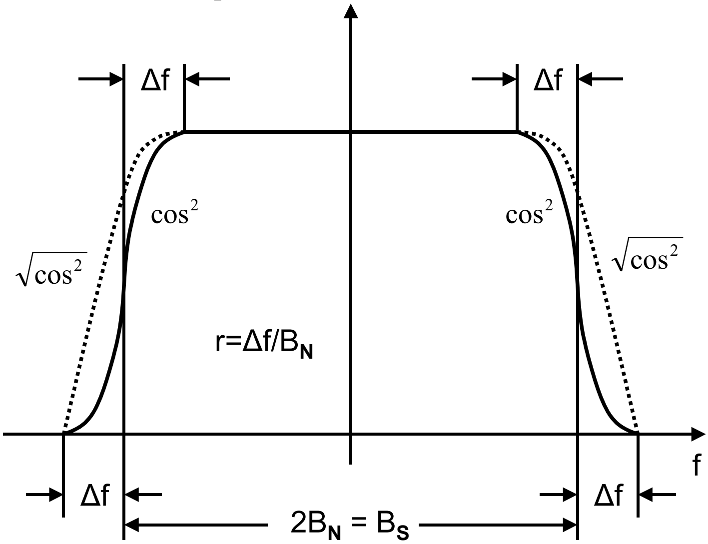


Fig. 13.41. Roll-off filtering of digitally modulated signals

13.11 Summary

In this chapter, many basic principles underlying the video and audio transmission standards have been repeated or recreated. A basic understanding of single carrier modulation (SC modulation) is also the prerequisite for an understanding of multicarrier modulation (MC modulation). Whilst single carrier modulation is the subject of many transmission standards, others employ multicarrier modulation, depending on the characteristics and requirements of the transmission channel. Block diagrams 13.42. and 13.43. are basic diagrams to be used for the understanding of all the broadcast transmission standards like DVB-S/S2, DVB-T/T2, DVB-S/S2, ATSC, ISDB-T, DAB/DAB+, etc. This standards will be described in the next chapters.

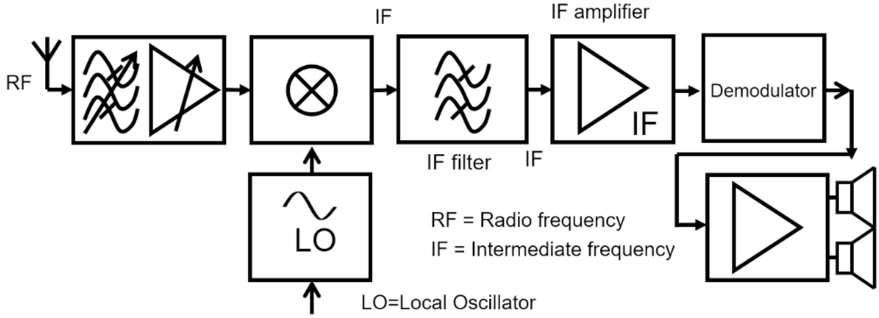


Fig. 13.42. Basic block diagram of a receiver including RF amplifier, RF preselection, RF/IF downconverter (mixer), IF selection (IF filter), IF amplifier, demodulator and baseband signal processing; this receiver block diagram is valid for all broadcast transmission standards DVB-S/S2, DVB-T/T2 and DVB-C/C2, etc.

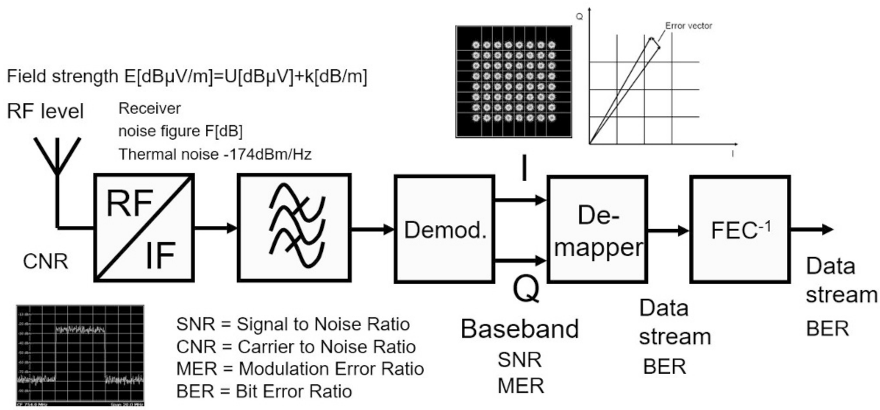


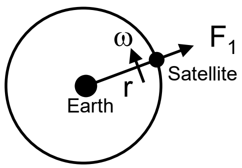
Fig. 43. Definition of parameters CNR = Carrier to Noise Ratio, SNR = Signal to Noise Ratio, BER = Bit Error Ratio and MER = Modulation Error Ratio; CNR is defined as Carrier to Noise Ratio at the receiver input connector; SNR is defined as Signal to Noise Ratio at the point of demodulation; BER is the Bit Error Ratio in the demodulated data stream; this block diagram is valid for all broadcast transmission standards DVB-S/S2, DVB-T/T2 and DVB-C/C2, etc.

Bibliography: [MAEUSL1], [BRIGHAM], [KAMMEYER], [LOCHMANN], [GIROD], [KUEPF], [REIMERS], [STEINBUCH]

14 Transmitting Digital Television Signals by Satellite - DVB-S/S2/S2x

Today, analog television signals are widely received by satellite since this type of installation has become extremely simple and inexpensive. In the meantime, analog satellite reception in Europe is completely replaced by DVB-S or DVB-S2 - Digital Video Broadcasting by satellite. In this chapter, the method of transmitting MPEG source encoded TV signals via satellite using DVB-S, DVB-S2 or DVB-S2x is described.

Centrifugal force:



$F_1 = m_{Sat} \cdot \omega^2 \cdot r$;

m_{Sat} = mass of satellite;

$\omega = 2 \cdot \pi / T$ = angular speed;

$\pi = 3.141592654$ = circular constant;

$T = 1$ day $= 24 \cdot 60 \cdot 60$ s $= 86400$ s ;

Fig. 14.1. Centrifugal force of a geostationary satellite

Every communication satellite is located geostationary (Figs. 14.1., 14.2. and 14.3.) above the equator in an orbit of about 36000 km above the Earth's surface. This means that these satellites are positioned in such a way that they move around the Earth at the same speed as that with which the Earth itself is rotating, i.e. once per day. There is precisely only one orbital position, at a constant distance of about 36,000 km from the Earth's surface, where this can be achieved, the only point at which the centrifugal force of the satellite and the gravitational attraction of the Earth cancel each other. However, the various satellites can be positioned at various de-

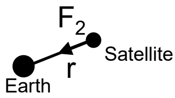
W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_14

grees of longitude, that is to say angular positions above the Earth's surface. For example, ASTRA is positioned at 19.2° East. It is due to this position of the satellite above the equator that all satellite receiving antennas point to the South in the Northern hemisphere, and to the North in the Southern hemisphere.

Centripetal force:

$F_2 = \gamma \cdot m_{Eearth} \cdot m_{Sat} / r^2$;

m_{Erde} = mass of Earth ;



γ = constant of graphitation = $6.67 \cdot 10^{-11}$ m³/kg s² ;

Fig. 14.2. Centripetal force acting on a geostationary satellite

Balance condition:
centrifugal force = centripetal force:

$F_1 = F_2$;

$m_{Sat} \cdot \omega^2 \cdot r = \gamma \cdot m_{Earth} \cdot m_{Sat} / r^2$;

$r = (\gamma \cdot m_{Earth} / \omega^2)^{1/3}$;

$r = 42220$ km ;

$d = r - r_{Erde} = 42220 \text{ km} - 6370 \text{ km} = 35850 \text{ km}$;

Fig. 14.3. Equilibrium condition

The orbital data of a geostationary satellite can be calculated on the basis of the following relationships: The satellite is moving at a speed of one day per orbit around the Earth. This results in the following centrifugal force: The satellite is attracted by the Earth with a particular gravitational force of attraction due to its orbital height: The two forces, centrifugal force and centripetal force, must be in equilibrium. From this, it is possible to determine the orbit of a geostationary satellite (Fig. 14.1. to 14.3.).

Compared with the orbit of a space shuttle, which is about 400 km above the earth's surface, geostationary satellites are far distant from the Earth, about one tenth of the way to the moon. Geostationary satellites launched, e.g. by the space shuttle or by similar carrier systems, must first be pushed up into this distant orbit by firing auxiliary rockets (apogee motors). From there, they will never pass back into the earth's atmosphere. On the contrary, shortly before their fuel reserves for path corrections are used up they must be pushed out into the so-called "satellite cemetery" orbit which is even farther away. Only satellites close to the earth in a non-stationary orbit can be "collected" again. As a comparison - the orbital time of near-earth satellites which, in principle, also include the International Space Station ISS or the space shuttle, is about 90 minutes per orbit at about 27000 km/h.

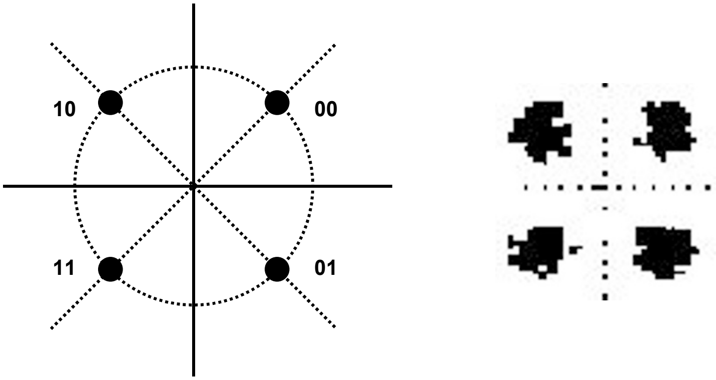


Fig. 14.4. Modulation parameters in DVB-S (QPSK, Gray coded)

But now let us return to DVB-S. The same satellite systems can be used for transmitting both analog TV signals and digital TV signals.

TV satellite transmission is done via the so-called Ku-band. Main satellite providers in Europe are SES Astra and Eutelsat. Satellite uplink is between about 14 and 18 GHz and the downlink between 11 and 13 GHz.

Hundreds of programs in Europe can be received both as analog signals and as digital signals via satellite and a lot of these are completely free to air.

In the following sections, the techniques for transmitting digital television via satellite will be described. This chapter also forms the basis for understanding digital terrestrial television (DVB-T). Both systems make use of the same error protection mechanisms but in DVB-T, a much more elaborate modulation method is used.

The DVB-S transmission method is defined in the ETSI Standard ETS 300421 "Digital Broadcasting Systems for Television, Sound and Data Services; Framing Structure, Channel Coding and Modulation for 11/12 GHz Satellite Services" and was adopted in 1994.

14.1 The DVB-S System Parameters

The modulation method selected for DVB-S was quadrature phase shift keying (QPSK). For some time, the use of 8PSK modulation instead of QPSK has also been considered in order to increase the data rate. In principle, satellite transmission requires a modulation method which is relatively resistent to noise and, at the same time, is capable of handling severe nonlinearities. Due to the long distance of 36000 km between the satellite and the receiving antenna, satellite transmission is subject to severe noise interference caused by the free-space attenuation of about 205 dB. The active element in a satellite transponder is a traveling wave tube amplifier (TWA) which exhibits severe nonlinearities in its modulation characteristic. These nonlinearities cannot be compensated for since this would be associated with a decrease in energy efficiency. During daylight, the solar cells provide power both to the electronics of the satellite and to the batteries. During the night, the energy for the electronics comes exclusively from the backup batteries. If there are large amounts of nonlinearity, therefore, there must not be any information content in the amplitude of a modulation signal.

Both in QPSK and in 8PSK, the information content is in the phase alone. In the satellite transmission of analog TV, too, frequency modulation was used instead of amplitude modulation for this reason.

A satellite channel of a direct broadcasting satellite usually has a width of 26 to 36 MHz (e.g. 33 MHz in ASTRA 1F, 36 MHz in EUTELSAT Hot Bird 2), the uplink is in the 14 ... 19 GHz band and the downlink is 11 ... 13 GHz. It is then necessary to select a symbol rate which produces a spectrum which is narrower than the transponder bandwidth. The symbol rate selected is, therefore, often 27.5 MS/s. As QPSK allows the transmission of 2 bits per symbol, a gross data rate of 55 Mbit/s is obtained.

gross_data_rate = 2 bits/symbol · 27.5 Megasymbols/s = 55 Mbit/s;

However, the MPEG-2 transport stream now to be sent to the satellite as QPSK-modulated signal must first be provided with error protection before being fed into the actual modulator. In DVB-S, two error protection mechanisms are used, namely a Reed-Solomon block code which is coupled with convolutional (trellis) coding. In the case of the Reed-Solomon error protection, already known from the audio CD, the data are assembled into packets of a certain length and these are provided with a special checksum of a particular length. This checksum allows not only errors to be detected but also a certain number of errors to be corrected. The number of errors which can be corrected is a direct function of the length of the checksum. In Reed-Solomon, the number of repairable errors always corresponds to exactly one half of the error protection bytes (checksum).

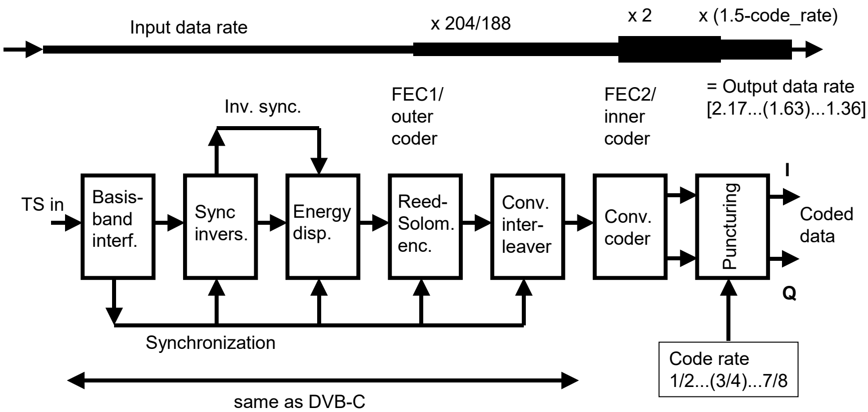


Fig. 14.5. Forward error correction (FEC) in DVB-S and DVB-T. DVB-S modulator Part 1

It is possible then to always consider exactly one transport stream packet as one data block and to protect this block with Reed Solomon error protection. An MPEG-2 transport stream packet has a length of 188 bytes. In DVB-S, it is expanded by 16 bytes Reed Solomon forward error correction to form a data packet of 204 bytes length. This is called RS (204,188) coding. At the receiving end, up to 8 errors can be corrected in this 204-byte-long packet. The position of this/these error/s is not specified. If there are more than 8 errors in a packet, this will still be reliably detected but it is no longer possible to correct these errors. The transport stream packet is then flagged as errored by means of the transport error indicator in the transport stream header. This packet must then be discarded by the MPEG decoder. The Reed Solomon forward error correction reduces the data rate:

$$\begin{aligned} net\_data\_rate_{\text{Reed-Solomon}} &= gross\_data\_rate \cdot 188/204 \\ &= 55 \text{ Mbit/s} \cdot 188/204 = \\ &= 50.69 \text{ Mbit/s;} \end{aligned}$$

However, simple error protection would not be sufficient for satellite transmission which is why further error protection in the form of convolutional coding is inserted after the Reed Solomon forward error correction. This further expands the data stream. This expansion is made controllable by means of a parameter, the code rate. The code rate describes the ratio between the input data rate and the output data rate of this second error correction block:

$$code\_rate = \frac{input\_data\_rate}{output\_data\_rate};$$

In DVB-S, the code rate can be selected within the range of 1/2, 3/4, 2/3,...7/8. If the code rate is 1/2, the data stream is expanded by a factor of 2. The error protection is now maximum and the net data rate has dropped to a minimum. A code rate of 7/8 provides only a minimum overhead but also only a minimum of error protection. The available net data rate is then at a maximum. A good compromise is usually a code rate of 3/4. The code rate can then be used to control the error protection and thus, as a reciprocal of this, also the net data rate.

The net data rate in DVB-S with a code rate of 3/4, after convolutional coding, is then:

$$\begin{aligned} net\_data\_rate_{\text{DVB-S 3/4}} &= code\_rate \cdot net\_data\_rate_{\text{Reed-Solomon}} \\ &= 3/4 \cdot 50.69 \text{ Mbit/s} \\ &= 38.01 \text{ Mbit/s;} \end{aligned}$$

14.2 The DVB-S Modulator

The following description deals with all component parts of a DVB-S modulator in detail. Since this part of the circuit is also found in a DVB-T modulator, it is recommended to read this section also in conjunction with the latter.

The first stage of a DVB-S modulator (Fig. 14.5.) is the baseband interface. This is where the signal is synchronized with the MPEG-2 transport stream. This MPEG-2 transport stream consists of packets with a constant length of 188 bytes, consisting of 4 bytes header and 184 bytes payload., the header beginning with a sync byte. This has a constant value of 0x47 and follows at constant intervals of 188 bytes. In the baseband interface, the signal is synchronized to this sync byte structure. Synchronization occurs within about 5 packets and all clock signals are derived from this.

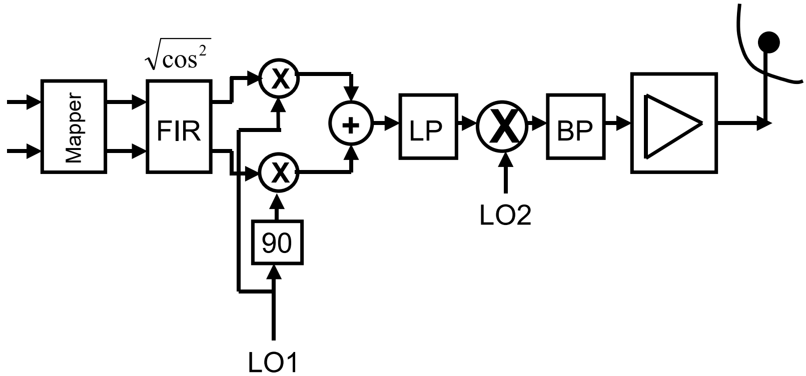


Fig. 14.6. DVB-S modulator, part 2

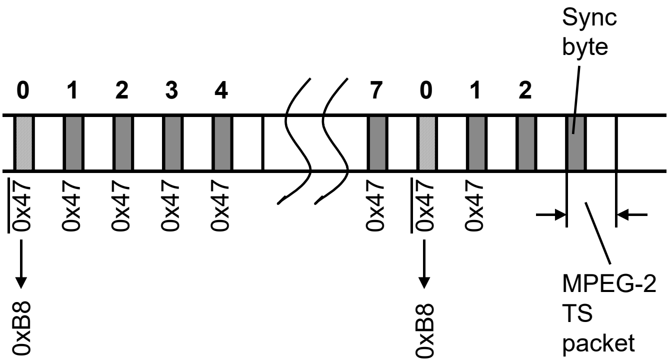


Fig. 14.7. Sync byte inversion

In the next block, the energy dispersal unit, every eighth sync byte is first inverted. I.e., 0x47 then becomes 0xB8 by bit inversion. The other 7 sync bytes between these remain unchanged. Using this sync byte inversion, additional timing stamps are then inserted into the data signal which are certain long-time stamps over 8 packets, compared with the transport stream structure. These time stamps are needed for resetting processes in the energy dispersal block at the transmitting and receiving end. This, in turn means that both the modulator or transmitter and the demodulator or receiver receives this sequence of eight packets of the sync byte inversion transparently in the transport stream and uses them to control certain processing steps. It may happen that relatively long sequences of zeroes or ones occur purely accidentally in a data signal. However, these are unwanted since they do not contain any clock information or cause discrete spectral lines over a particular period. To eliminate them, virtually every digital transmission method applies energy dispersal before the actual modulation.

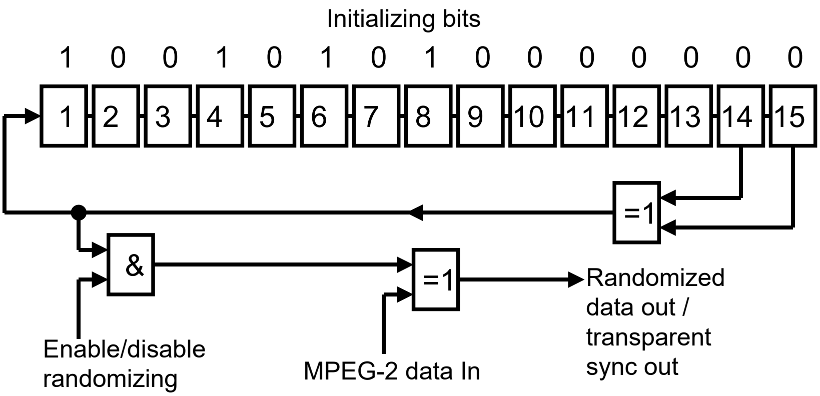


Fig. 14.8. Energy dispersal stage (randomizer)

To achieve energy dispersal, a pseudo random binary sequence (PRBS) (Fig. 14.8.) is first generated which, however, is restarted time and again in a defined way. In DVB-S, the starting and resetting takes place whenever a sync byte is inverted.

The data stream is then mixed with the pseudo random binary sequence (PRBS) by means of an Exclusive OR operation which breaks up long sequences of ones or zeroes. If this energy-dispersed data stream is mixed again with the same pseudo random binary sequence at the receiving end, the dispersal is cancelled again.

The receiving end, therefore, contains the identical circuit, consisting of a 15-stage shift register with feedback which is loaded in a defined way with a start word whenever an inverted sync byte occurs. This means that the two shift registers at the transmitting end and at the receiving end are operating completely synchronously and are synchronized by the sequence of 8 packets of the sync byte inversion block. This synchronization only becomes possible because the sync bytes and the inverted sync bytes are passed through completely transparently and are not mixed with the pseudo random binary sequence.

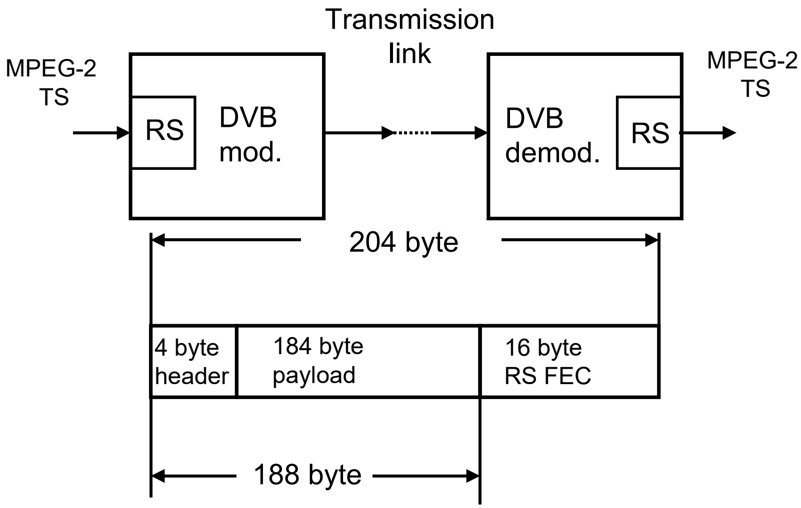


Fig. 14.9. Reed-Solomon coding

The next stage contains the outer coder (Fig. 14.5. and 14.9.), the Reed-Solomon forward error correction. At this point, 16 bytes of error protection are added to the data packets which are still 188 bytes long but are now energy-dispersed. The packets now have a length of 204 bytes which makes it possible to correct up to 8 errors at the receiving end. If there are more errors, the error protection fails and the packet is flagged as errored by the demodulator by the transport error indicator in the transport stream header being set to 'one'.

Frequently, however, burst errors occur during a transmission. If this results in more than 8 errors in a packet protected by Reed-Solomon coding, the block error protection will fail. The data are, therefore, interleaved, i.e. distributed over a certain period of time in a further operating step.

Any burst errors present are then broken up in the de-interleaving (Fig. 14.10.) at the receiving end and are distributed over a number of transport stream packets. It is then easier to correct these burst errors, which have now become single errors, and no additional data overhead is required.

In DVB-S, the interleaving is done in a so-called Forney interleaver (Fig. 14.11.) which is composed of two rotating switches and a number of shift registers. This ensures that the data are scrambled, and thus distributed, as “unsystematically” as possible. Maximum interleaving is over 11 transport stream packets. The sync bytes and inverted sync bytes always precisely follow a particular path. This means that the speed of rotation of the switches corresponds to an exact multiple of the packet length and interleaver and de-interleaver are synchronous with the MPEG-2 transport stream.

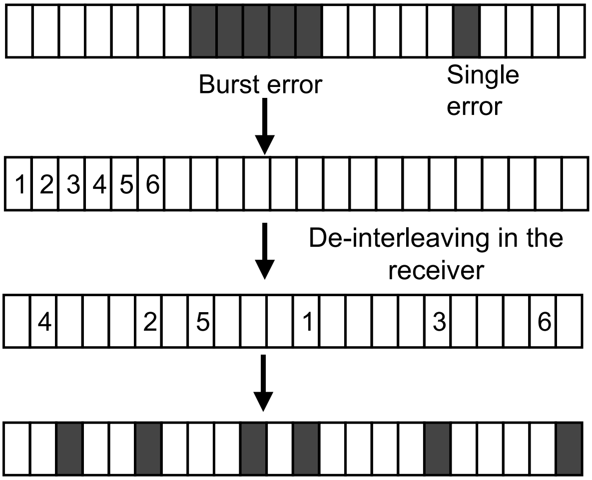


Fig. 14.10. De-interleaving

The next stage of the modulator is the convolutional coder (trellis coder). This stage represents the second, so-called inner error protection. The convolutional coder has a relatively simple structure but understanding it is not quite as simple.

The convolutional coder consists of a 6-stage shift register and two signal paths in which the input signal is mixed with the content of the shift register at certain tapping points. The input data stream is split into 3 data streams. The data first run into the shift register where they influence the upper and lower data stream of the convolutional coder by an Exclusive OR operation lasting 6 clock cycles. This disperses the information of one bit over 6 bits. At specific points both in the upper data branch and in the lower data branch there are EXOR gates which mix the data streams with the contents of the shift register. This provides two data streams at the output of the convolutional coder, each of which exhibits the same data rate as the input signal. In addition, the data stream was only provided with a particular memory extending over 6 clock cycles. The total output data rate is then twice as high as the input data rate which corresponds to a code rate = 1/2. An overhead of 100% has now been added to the data signal.

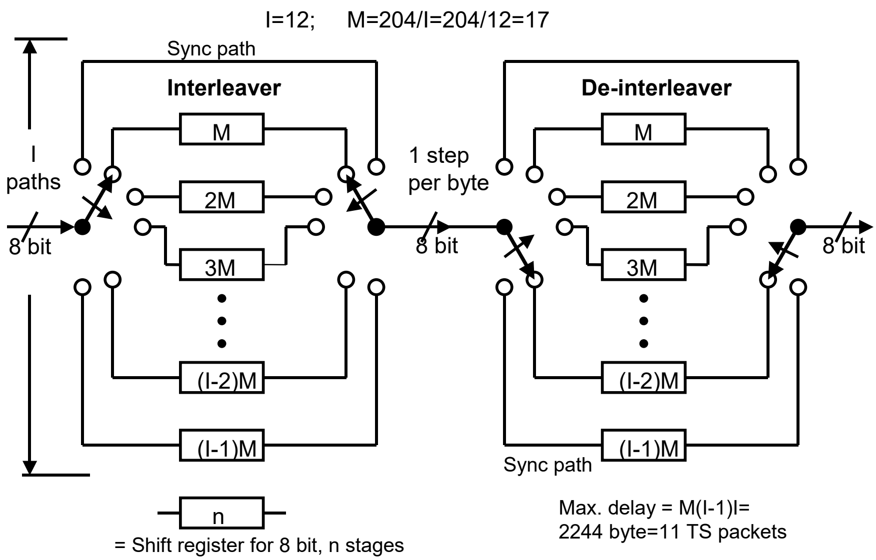


Fig. 14.11. Forney interleaver and de-interleaver

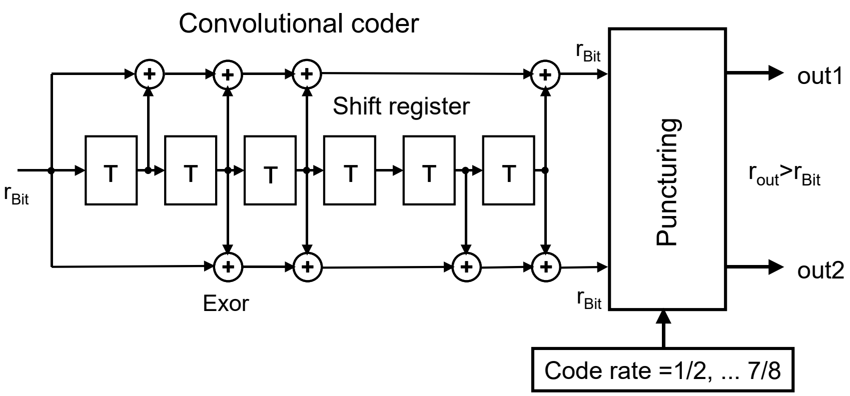


Fig. 14.12. Convolutional coder in DVB-S and DVB-T

14.3 Convolutional Coding

Each convolutional coder (Fig. 14.12.) consists of stages with more or less delay and with memory which, in practice, are implemented by using shift registers. In DVB-S, and also in DVB-T, it was decided to use a six-stage shift register with 5 taps each in the upper and lower signal path. The time-delayed bit streams taken from these taps are Exclusive-ORed with the un-delayed bit stream and thus result in two output data streams, subjected to a so-called convolution, each with the same data rate as the input data rate. A convolution occurs whenever a signal "manipulates" itself, delayed in time.

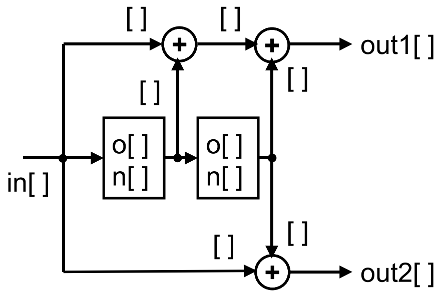


Fig. 14.13. Sample 2-stage convolutional coder

A digital filter (FIR) also performs a convolution. It would take too much time to analyse the convolutional coder used in DVB-S and DVB-T directly since, due to its six stages, it has a memory of $2^6 = 64$. Reducing it, therefore, to a sample encoder having only two stages we only need to look at $2^2 = 4$ states. The shift register can assume the internal states 00, 01, 10 and 11. To test the behaviour of the circuit arrangement it is then necessary to feed a zero and a one into the shift register for each of these 4 states and then to analyse the resulting state and also to calculate the output signals due to the Exclusive OR operations. If, e.g., a zero is fed into the shift register which has a current content of 00, the resultant new content will also be 00 since one zero is shifted out and at the same time a new zero is shifted in. In the upper signal path, the two EXOR operations produce an overall result of 0 at the output. The same applies to the lower signal path.

If a one is fed into the shift register with contents 00, the new state will be 10 and a one is obtained as output signal in the upper signal path as well as in the lower signal path. The other three states can be worked out in the same way by feeding in a one and a zero in each case. The results are shown in Fig. 14.14. The total result of the analysis can be illustrated more clearly in a state diagram (Fig. 14.15.) where the four internal states of the shift register are entered in circles.

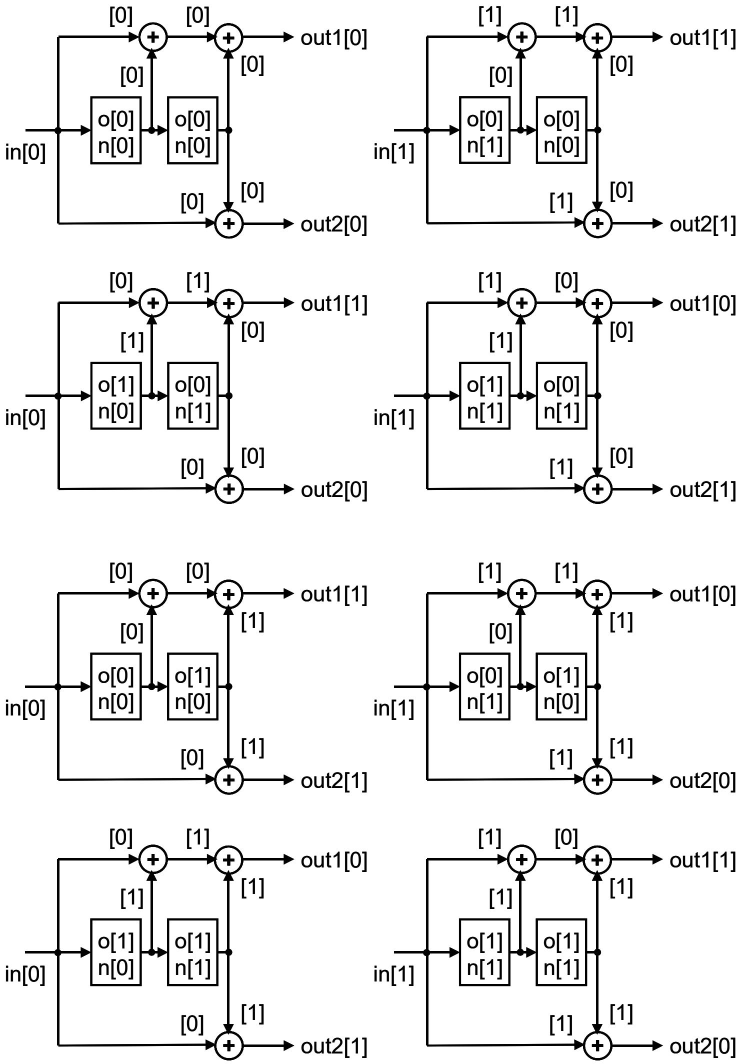


Fig. 14.14. States of the sample convolutional coder (o = old state, n = new state)

The least significant bit is entered on the right and the most significant bit on the left which means that the shift register arrangement has to be imagined upended. The arrows between these circles mark the possible state transitions. The numbers next to the circles describe the respective stimulus bit and the output bits of the arrangement, respectively. It can be seen clearly that not all transitions between the individual states are possible. Thus, it is impossible, for instance, to pass directly from 00 to 11 without first passing, e.g. through the 01 state.

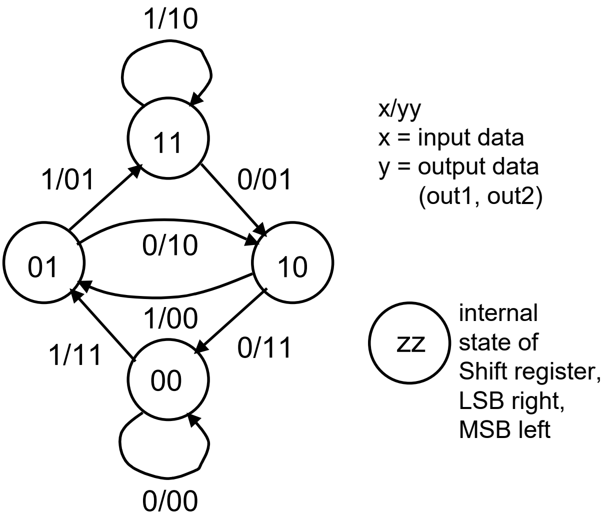


Fig. 14.15. State diagram of the sample convolutional coder

Plotting the permitted state transitions against time results in a so-called trellis diagram. Within the trellis diagram, it is only possible to move along certain paths or branches and not all paths through the trellis are possible. In many country regions, certain plants (fruit trees, wine) are planted to grow along trellises on a wall. They are thus forced to grow in an orderly way in accordance with a particular pattern by being fixed at certain points on the wall. However, it happens sometimes that such a trellis point breaks off due to bad weather, and the trellis is then in disarray. The existing pattern makes it possible, however, to find out where the branch must have been and it can thus be fixed again. The same happens with our data streams after the transmission where the convolutionally encoded data streams can be forced out of the trellis due to bit errors caused, e.g. by noise. But since the history of the data streams, i.e. their course through the trellis diagram is known, bit errors can be corrected on the basis of greatest probability by reconstructing the paths. This is precisely the principle of operation of the so-called Viterbi decoder, named after its inventor. The Viterbi decoder is virtually the counterpart of the convolutional decoder and there is, therefore, no convolutional decoder. The Viterbi decoder is also much more complex than the convolutional coder.

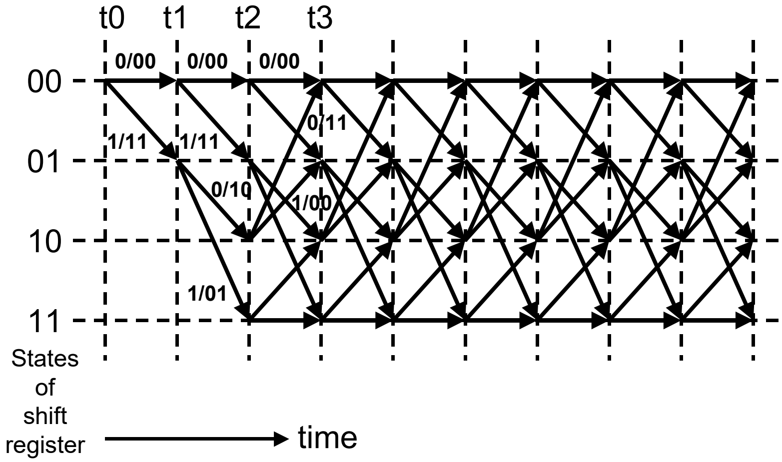


Fig. 14.16. Trellis diagram

After the convolutional coding, the data stream is now inflated by a factor of 2. For example, 10 Mbit/s have now become 20 Mbit/s but the two output data streams together now carry 100% overhead, i.e. error protection. On the other hand, this correspondingly lowers the net data rate available. This overhead, and thus also the error protection, can be controlled in the puncturing unit (Fig. 14.17.), e.g. the data rate can be lowered again by selectively omitting bits. The omitting, i.e. the puncturing, is done in accordance with an arrangement called the puncturing pattern, which is known to the transmitter and the receiver.

This makes it possible to vary the code rate between 1/2 and 7/8. 1/2 means no puncturing, i.e. maximum error protection, and 7/8 means minimum error protection and a maximum net data rate follows correspondingly. At the receiving end, punctured bits are filled up with ‘Don’t Care’ bits and are treated like errors in the Viterbi decoder and thus reconstructed. Up to here the processing stages of DVB-S and DVB-T are 100% alike. In the case of DVB-T, the two data streams are combined to form a common data stream by alternately accessing the upper and lower punctured data stream. In DVB-S, the upper data stream and the lower data stream in each case run directly into the mapper where the two data streams are converted into the corresponding constellation of the QPSK modulation.

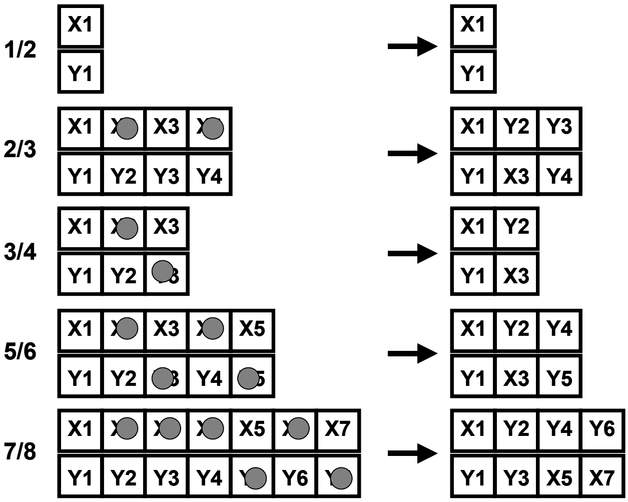


Fig. 14.17. Puncturing in DVB-S

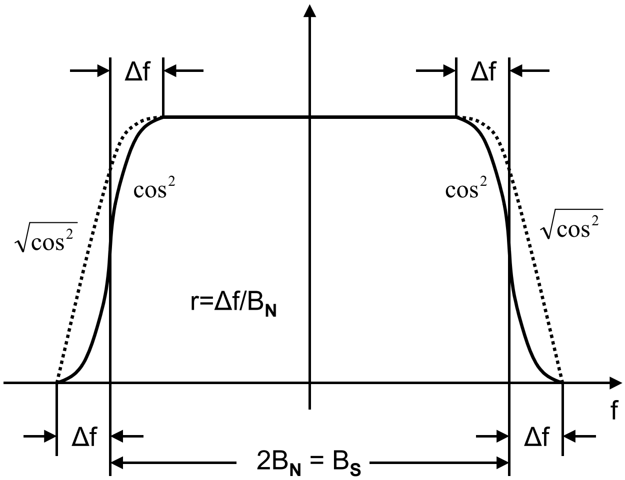


Fig. 14.18. Roll-off filtering

The mapping is followed by digital filtering so that the spectrum "rolls off" gently towards the adjacent channels. This limits the bandwidth of the signal and at the same time optimizes the eye pattern of the data signal. In

DVB-S, the roll-off filtering is carried out with a roll-off factor of r = 0.35. The signal rolls off with a root cosine squared shape within the frequency band. The cosine squared shape of the spectrum actually required is only produced by combining the transmitter output filter with the receiver filter because both filters exhibit root cosine squared roll-off filtering. The roll-off factor describes the slope of the roll-off filtering and is defined as $r = \Delta f/f_N$. After the roll-off filtering, the signal is QPSK modulated in the IQ modulator, upconverted to the actual satellite RF and then, after power amplification, fed to the satellite antenna. It is then uplinked to the satellite in the 14...17 GHz band.

14.4 Signal Processing in the Satellite

The geostationary direct broadcasting satellites located permanently above the equator in an orbit of about 36000 km above the Earth's surface receive the DVB-S signal coming from the uplink station and limit it first with a band-pass filter. Since the uplink distance of more than 36000 km results in a free-space loss of over 200 dB and, as a result, the useful signal is correspondingly attenuated, the uplink antenna and the receiving antenna on the satellite must exhibit corresponding gains. In the satellite, the DVB-S signal is converted to the downlink frequency in the 11...14 GHz band and then amplified by means of a TWA (Travelling Wave tube Amplifier). These amplifiers are highly nonlinear and, in practice, can also not be corrected due to the power budget in the satellite. During the day, the satellite is supplied with energy by solar cells and this energy is stored in batteries. During the night, the satellite is then supplied only from its batteries.

Before the signal is sent back to Earth, it is first filtered again in order to suppress out-of-band components. The transmitting antenna of the satellite has a certain pattern so that optimum coverage is obtained in the receiving area to be covered on the ground. This results in a so-called footprint within which the programs can be received. Because of the high free space loss of about 200 dB due to the downlink distance of more than 36000 km, the satellite transmitting antenna must exhibit a correspondingly high gain. The transmitting power is about 60 … 80 W. The signal processing unit for a satellite channel is called a transponder. Uplink and downlink are polarized, i.e. there are horizontally and vertically polarized channels. Polarization is used in order to be able to increase the number of channels.

14.5 The DVB-S Receiver

After the DVB-S signal coming from the satellite has again travelled along its path of 36000 km and, therefore, been attenuated correspondingly by 200 dB and its power has been reduced further by atmospheric conditions such as rain or snow, it arrives at the satellite receiving antenna and is focussed at the focal point of the dish. This is the precise point at which the low noise block (LNB) is mounted. The LNB contains a waveguide with a detector each for the horizontal and vertical polarization. Depending on which plane of polarization has been selected it is either the signal from the horizontal detector or that from the vertical detector which is switched through. The plane of polarization is selected by selection of the amplitude of the supply voltage to the LNB (14/18V). The received signal is then amplified in a low-noise gallium arsenide amplifier and is then down-converted to the first satellite IF in the 900...2100 MHz band.

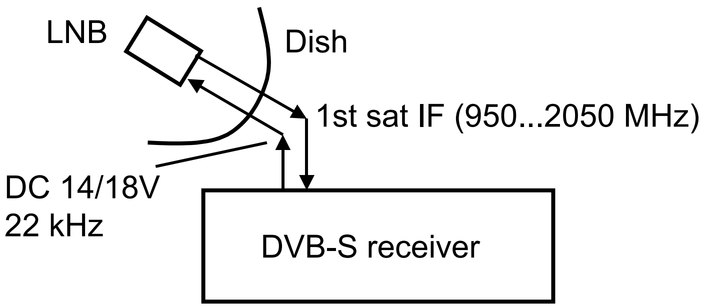


Fig. 14.19. Satellite receiver with LNB and receiver

Modern "universal" LNBs (suitable for receiving digital TV) contain two local oscillators which output a carrier at 9.6 GHz and at 10.6 GHz and the received signal is down-converted by being mixed either with the 9.75 GHz or with the 10.6 GHz depending on whether the received channel is in the upper or lower satellite frequency band. DVB-S channels are usually in the upper band and the 10.6 GHz oscillator is then used.

The phrase "suitable for receiving digital TV" only refers to the presence of a 10.6 GHz oscillator and is thus misleading. The LNB is switched between 9.75 and 10.6 GHz by means of a 22 kHz switching voltage which is superimposed on the LNB supply voltage or not. The LNB is supplied via the coaxial cable which distributes the satellite intermediate frequency in the 900...2100 MHz band now output. During installation work, care should be taken, therefore, to deactivate the satellite receiver since otherwise a possible short circuit could damage the voltage supply for the LNB.

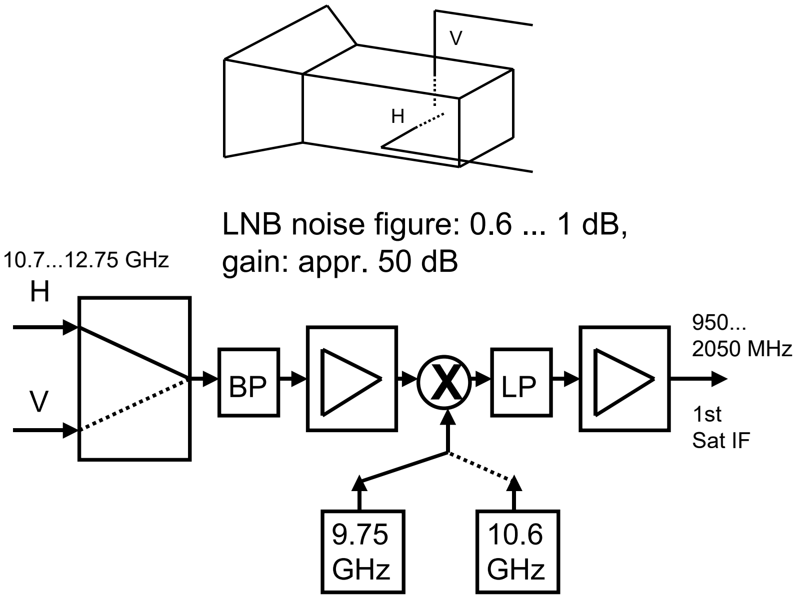


Fig. 14.20. Outdoor unit - LNB

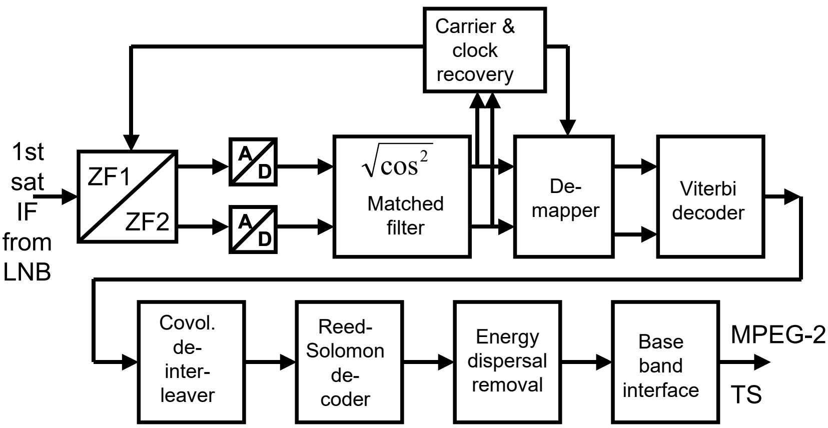


Fig. 14.21. DVB-S receiver (without MPEG-2 decoder)

In the DVB-S receiver (integrated in the TV flatscreen) the signal undergoes a second down-conversion to a second satellite IF. This down-conversion is performed with the aid of an IQ mixer which is fed by an oscillator controlled by the carrier recovery circuit. After the IQ conversion, analog I and Q signals are again available. The I and Q signals are then A/D converted and supplied to a matched filter in which the same root cosine squared filtering process as at the transmitting end takes place with a roll-off factor of 0.35. Together with the transmitter filter, this then results in the actual cosine squared roll-off filtering of the DVB-S signal. The filtering process must be matched with respect to the roll-off factor at the transmitting end and at the receiving end.

After the matched filter, the carrier and clock recovery circuit and the demapper tap off their input signals. The demapper again generates a data stream from which the first errors are removed in the Viterbi decoder. The Viterbi decoder is the counterpart of the convolutional coder. The Viterbi decoder must have knowledge of the code rate currently used. The decoder must be informed of this code rate (1/2...2/3...7/8) by operator intervention.

The Viterbi decoder is followed by the convolutional de-interleaving where any burst errors are broken up into individual errors. The bit errors still present then are corrected in the Reed Solomon decoder. The transport stream packets, which had an original length of 188 bytes, had been provided with 16 bytes error protection at the transmitting end. These can be used at the receiving end for correcting up to 8 errors in the packet which now has a length of 204 bytes. Burst errors, i.e. multiple errors in a packet, should have been broken up by the preceding deinterleaving process. However, if an error-protected TS packet with a length of 204 bytes contains more than 8 errors, the error protection will fail. The Transport Error Indicator in the transport stream header is then set to “1” to flag this packet as errored. The packet length is now 188 bytes again. TS packets flagged as errored must not be used by the MPEG decoder and error concealment must be applied.

After the Reed Solomon decoding, the energy dispersal is removed and the inversion of the sync bytes is cancelled. During this process, the energy dispersal unit is synchronized by this sequence of 8 packets of the sync byte inversion. At the output of the following baseband interface, the MPEG-2 transport stream is available again and is then supplied to an MPEG decoder.

Today, the entire DVB-S decoder after the A/D converters is located on one chip which, in turn, is usually integrated in the satellite tuner. I.e., the tuner, which is controlled via the I2C bus, has an F connector input for the signal from the LNB and a parallel transport stream output.

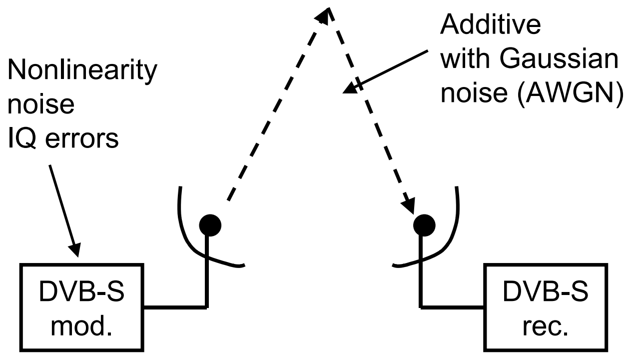


Fig. 14.22. Influences affecting the satellite transmission link

14.6 Influences Affecting the Satellite Transmission Link

This section deals with the influences to be expected on the satellite transmission link (Fig. 14.22.) and it will be seen that these influences are mainly restricted to noise. However, let us first begin with the modulator. This can be assumed to be ideal up to the IQ modulator. The IQ modulator can exhibit different gains in the I and Q branches, a phase error in the 90° phase shifter and a lack of carrier suppression. There can also be noise effects and phase jitter coming from this circuit section. These problems can be ignored, however, because of the rugged nature of the QPSK modulation and will normally never reach an order of magnitude which will noticeably affect the signal quality. In the satellite, the travelling wave tube generates severe non-linearities but these do not play a part, in practice. In the region of the uplink and the downlink, however, where the DVB-S signal is attenuated severely by more than 200 dB due to the distance of 36000 km each way travelled by the signal, strong noise effects are experienced. It is these noise effects, the additive white gaussian noise (AWGN) becoming superimposed on the signal, which form the only influence to be discussed.

In the part following, the satellite downlink will be analysed by way of an example with respect to the signal attenuation and the resultant noise effects.

The minimum carrier/noise ratios (CNR) necessary and the channel bit error rate needed are known and predetermined from forward error correction (FEC, Reed-Solomon and convolutional coding) (Fig. 14.23.).

To gain an idea about the CNR to be expected, the levels on the satellite downlink will now be considered.

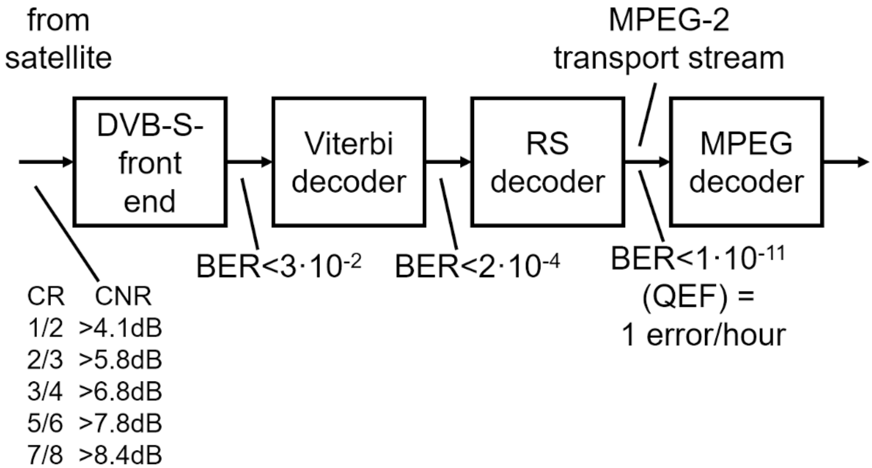


Fig. 14.23. Minimum carrier/noise ratios necessary at the receiving end and bit error ratios

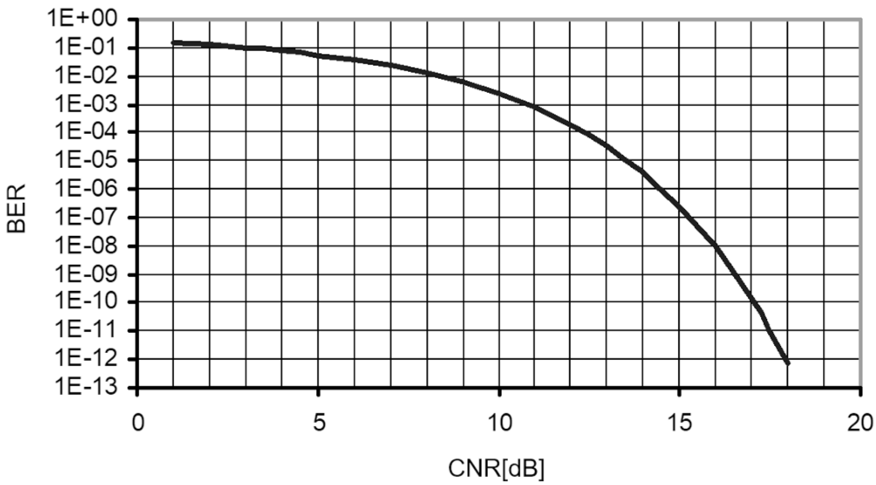


Fig. 14.24. Channel bit error ratio in DVB-S as a function of CNR

A geostationary satellite is "parked" in an orbit of 35800 km above the equator. This is the only orbit in which it can travel around the Earth synchronously. At 45° latitude, the distance from the Earth's surface is then

d = Earth's radius · sin(45°) + 35800 km = 6378 km · sin(45°)
+ 35800 km = 37938 km;

Transmitted power (e.g. Astra 1F):

Assumed transponder output power: 82 W =	19 dBW
Gain of the transmitting antenna	33 dB
Satellite EIRP (equivalent isotropic radiated power)	52 dBW

Free space attenuation:

Satellite-Earth distance = 37,938 km	91.6 dB
Transmitting frequency = 12.1 GHz	21.7 dB
Loss constant	92.4 dB
Free space attenuation	205.7 dB

Received power:

Satellite EIRP	52.0 dBW
Free space attenuation	205.7 dB
Clear sky attenuation	0.3 dB
Receiver directional error	0.5 dB
Polarisation error	0.2 dB
Received power at the antenna	-154.7 dBW
Antenna gain	37 dB
Received power	-117.7 dBW

Noise power at the receiver:

Boltzmann's constant	-228.6 dBW/K/Hz
Bandwidth = 33 MHz	74.4 dB
Temperature 20 °C = 273K+20K = 293K	24.7 dB
Noise figure of the LNB	1.0 dB
Noise power	-128.5 dBW

Carrier/noise ratio CNR:

Received power C	-117.7 dBW
Noise power N	-128.5 dBW
CNR	**10.8 dB**

Thus, a CNR of about 10 dB can be expected in the example. Actual C/N values can be expected between 9 … 12 dB.

The following equations form the basis for the CNR calculation:

Free space attenuation:

$L[dB] = 92.4 + 20 \cdot \log(f/GHz) + 20 \cdot \log(d/km)$;
f = transmission frequency in GHz;
d = Transmitter-receiver distance in km;

Antenna gain of a parabolic antenna:

$G[dB] = 20 + 20 \cdot \log(D/m) + 20 \cdot \log(f/GHz)$;
D = antenna diameter in m;
f = transmission frequency in GHz;

Noise power at the receiver input:
$N[dBW] = -228.6 + 10 \cdot \log(b/Hz) + 10 \cdot \log((T/{}^0C + 273)) + F$;
B = bandwidth in Hz;
T = temperature in ^{0}C;
F = noise figure of the receiver in dB.

Fig. 14.23. shows the minimum CNR ratios as a function of the code rate used. In addition, the pre-Viterbi, post-Viterbi (= pre-Reed-Solomon) and post-Reed-Solomon bit error rates are plotted. A frequently used code rate is 3/4. With a mimum CNR ratio of 6.8 dB, this results in a pre-Viterbi channel bit error rate of 3^{-2}. The post-Viterbi bit error rate is then 2^{-4} which correponds to the limit at which the subsequent Reed-Solomon decoder still delivers an output bit error rate of 1^{-11} or better. This approximately corresponds to one error per day and is defined as quasi error-free (QEF). At the same time, these conditions also almost correspond to the “fall-off-the-cliff” (or “brickwall effect”). Slightly more noise and the transmission breaks down abruptly.

In the calculated example of the CNR to be expected on the satellite transmission link, there is, therefore, still a margin of about 3 dB available with a code rate of 3/4. The precise relationship between the channel bit error rate, i.e. the pre-Viterbi bit error rate, and the CNR ratio is shown in Fig. 14.24.

14.7 DVB-S2

DVB-S was adopted in 1994, using QPSK as a modulation method and a concatenated error protection system of Reed-Solomon FEC and convolution coding. In 1997, the DVB DSNG standard [ETS301210] was laid down which was created for reporting purposes (DSNG = Digital Satellite News Gathering). Live signals are transmitted by satellite, e.g. from outside broadcast vans at big public events to the studios. DVB DSNG already uses 8PSK and 16QAM. In 2003, new methods were defined, both for direct broadcasting and for professional applications, as "DVB-S2" (s. Fig. 14.25.) in ETSI document [ETS302307] .

Both QPSK, 8PSK (uniform and non-uniform) and 16APSK (16 amplitude phase shift keying) were provided as modulation methods, the latter only being used in the professional field (DSNG). The error protection used is completely new, e.g. LDPC (low density parity check). The standard is quite open for broadcasting, interactive services and DSNG.

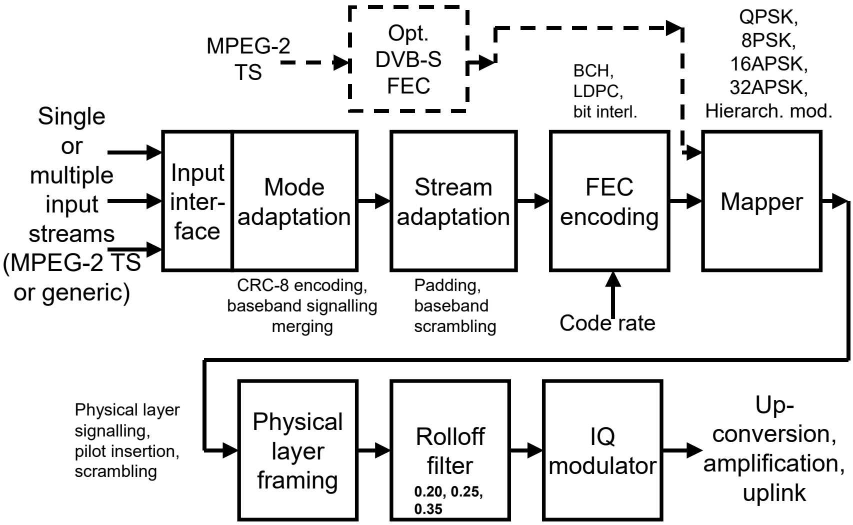


Fig. 14.25. Block diagram of a DVB-S2 modulator

Data streams not conforming to the MPEG-2 transport stream can also be transmitted and it is possible to transmit either one or a number of transport streams. This also applies to generic data streams which can also be divided into packets. Fig. 14.25. shows the block diagram of a DVB-S2 modulator. At the input interface, the data stream or streams appear in the form of an MPEG-2 transport stream or of generic data streams. Following the mode and stream adaptation blocks, the data are fed to the FEC encoding block.

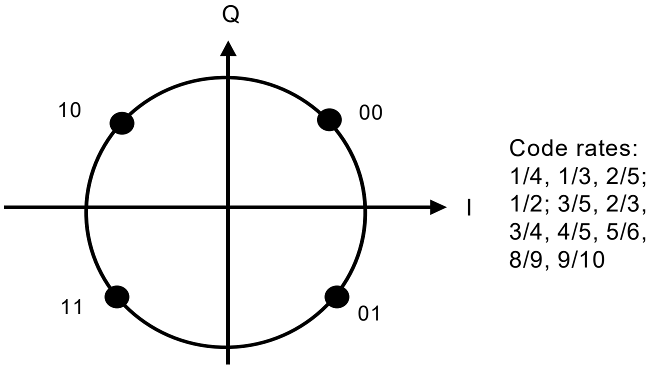


Fig. 14.26. Gray-coded QPSK, absolute mapping (like DVB-S)

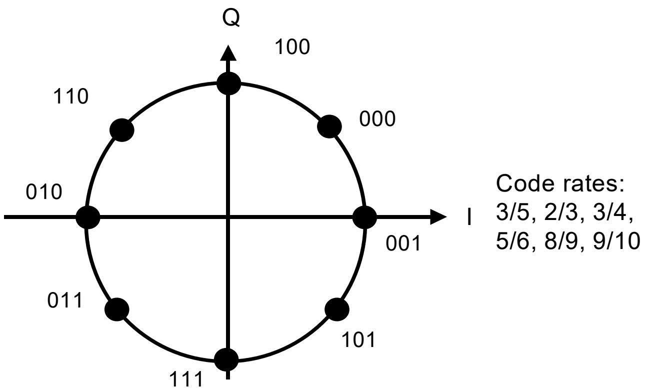


Fig. 14.27. Gray-coded 8PSK

In the downstream mapper, QPSK (Fig. 14.26.), 8PSK (Fig. 14.27.), 16APSK (Fig. 14.28.) or 32APSK (Fig. 14.29.) is then mapped. This is always absolute mapping, i.e. non-differential. Hierarchical modulation is a special case. It is virtually backward compatible with the DVB-S standard, making it possible to transmit a DVB-S stream and an additional DVB-S2 stream. In the hierarchical modulation mode (Fig. 14.30.), the constellation can be interpreted in two different ways.

The quadrant can be interpreted as a constellation point, gaining 2 bits for the high priority path conforming to DVB-S. It is also possible, however, to look for the two discrete points in the quadrant, decoding a further bit for the low priority path in the process. In this case, 3 bits per symbol are transmitted. There is also hierarchical modulation in DVB-T. After the mapping, the signal passes through the physical layer framing and roll-off filtering stages and is then converted into the modulation signal proper in the IQ modulator. The roll-off factor is 0.20, 0.25 or 0.35.

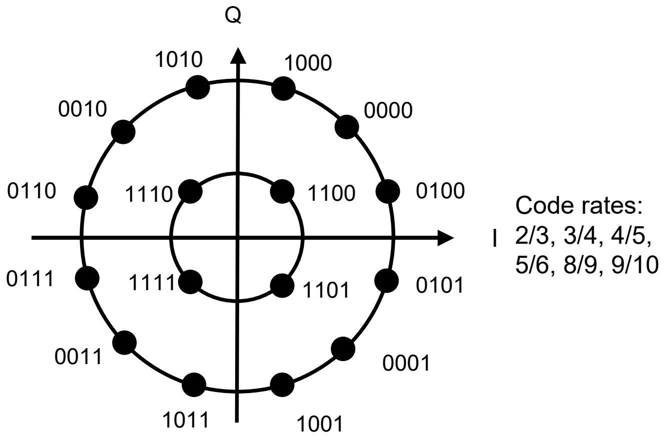


Fig. 14.28. 16APSK

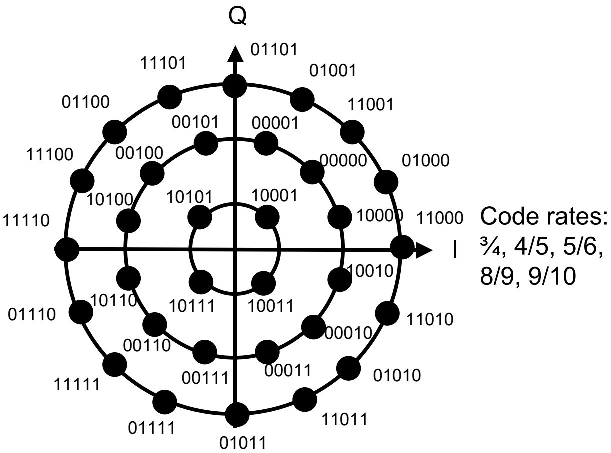


Fig. 14.29. 32 APSK

The error protection (Fig. 14.31.) consists of a BCH (Bose-Chaudhuri-Hocquenghem) coder and an LDPC (low density parity check) encoder followed by the bit interleaver. Possible code rates are 1/4 ... 9/10 and are shown in the figures for the respective constellation diagrams (QPSK ... 32APSK).

Compared with DVB-S, the minimum CNR ratio necessary in DVB-S2 is much more dependent on the modulation method and can also be varied by the code rate.

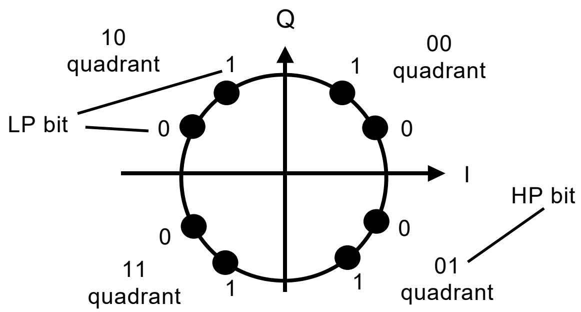


Fig. 14.30. Hierarchical QPSK modulation

Table 14.1 shows the minimum CNR ratios from the DVB-S2 Standard [ETS302307].

Table 14.1. Minimum CNR ratio necessary in DVB-S and DVB-S2

Mod.	CR =1/4	CR =1/3	CR =2/5	CR =1/2	CR =3/5	CR =2/3	CR =3/4	CR =4/5	CR =5/6	CR =8/9	CR =9/10
QPSK	-2.4 dB	-1.2 dB	0 dB	1 dB	2.2 dB	3.1 dB	4 dB	4.6 dB	5.2 dB	6.2 dB	6.5 dB
8PSK	-	-	-	-	5.5 dB	6.6 dB	7.9 dB	-	9.4 dB	10.6 dB	11 dB
16APSK	-	-	-	-	-	9 dB	10.2 dB	11 dB	11.6 dB	12.9 dB	13.1 dB
32APSK	-	-	-	-	-	-	12.6 dB	13.6 dB	14.3 dB	15.7 dB	16.1 dB

Unlike DVB-S, DVB-S2 has a frame structure. There is an FEC frame and a physical layer frame. An FEC frame firstly contains the data to be transmitted which are either data which have an MPEG-2 transport stream structure or data which are quite independent of this, so-called generic data.

In front of this data field there an 80 bit long baseband header. The data block with the baseband header is then padded to a length dependent on the selected code rate of the error protection and then provided with the BCH code plus the LDPC code. Depending on the mode, an FEC frame then has a length of 64800 or 16200 bits.

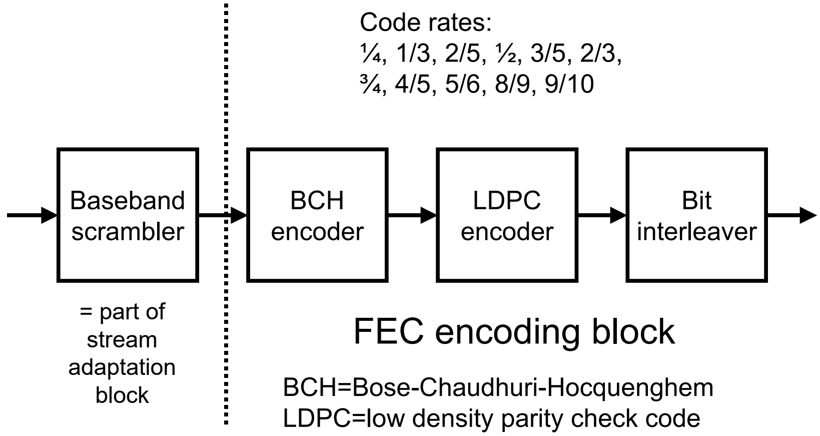


Fig. 14.31. DVB-S2 FEC block

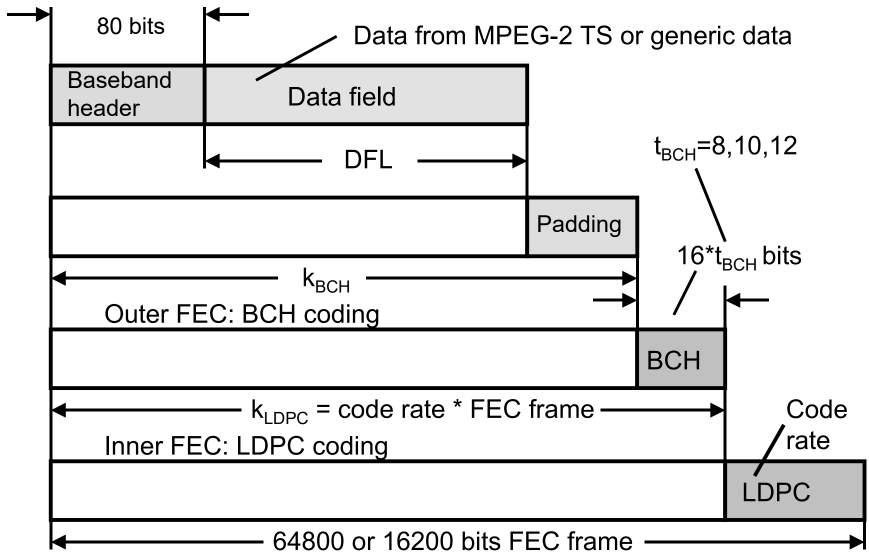


Fig. 14.32. FEC frame in DVB-S2

The FEC frame is then divided into a physical layer frame composed of n slots. The physical layer frame starts with the one-slot-long physical layer header in which the carrier is π/2-shift BPSK modulated. This is followed by slot 1 ... slot 16.

Slot 17 may be a pilot block if pilots are transmitted (optional). This is followed by another 16 time slots with data and then, after slot 32, possibly another pilot block etc.

Table 14.2. Coding parameters in DVB-S2

LDPC code rate	k_{BCH}	k_{LDPC}	t_{BCH}	FEC frame
¼	16008	16200	12	64800
1/3	21408	21600	12	64800
2/5	25728	25920	12	64800
½	32208	32400	12	64800
3/5	38688	38880	12	64800
2/3	43040	43200	10	64800
¾	48408	48600	12	64800
4/5	51648	51840	12	64800
5/6	53840	54000	10	64800
8/9	57472	57600	8	64800
9/10	58192	58320	8	64800
¼	3072	3240	12	16200
1/3	5232	5400	12	16200
2/5	6312	6480	12	16200
½	7032	7200	12	16200
3/5	9552	9720	12	16200
2/3	10632	10800	12	16200
¾	11712	11880	12	16200
4/5	12432	12600	12	16200
5/6	13152	13320	12	16200
8/9	14232	14400	12	16200
9/10	NA	NA	NA	16200

Table 14.3. Sample data rates in DVB-S and DVB-S2 with a symbol rate of 27.5 MS/s

Standard	Modulation	CR	Pilots	Net data rate [Mbit/s]
DVB-S	QPSK	¾	--	38.01
DVB-S2	QPSK	9/10	On	48.016345
DVB-S2	QPSK	9/10	Off	49.186827
DVB-S2	QPSK	8/9	On	47.421429
DVB-S2	QPSK	8/9	Off	48.577408
DVB-S2	8PSK	9/10	On	72.005046
DVB-S2	8PSK	9/10	Off	73.678193

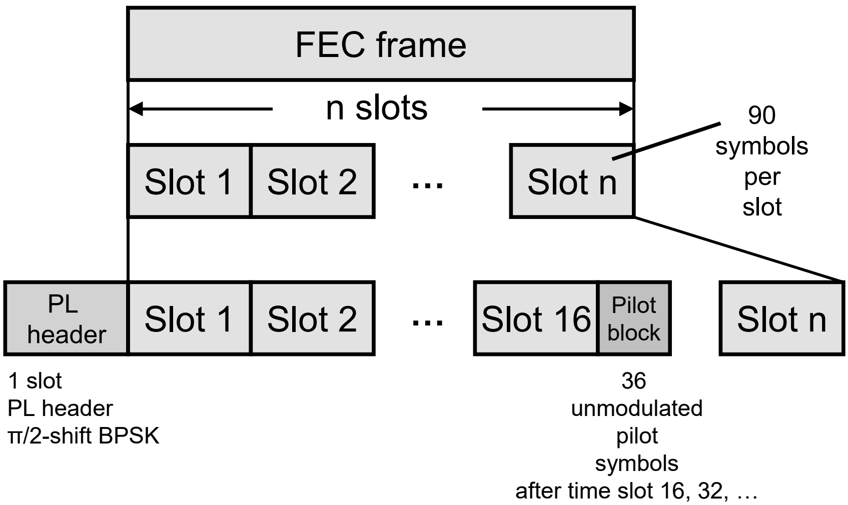


Fig. 14.33. Physical layer frame in DVB-S2

90 symbols PL header

$$\text{Net\_data\_rate} = \text{symbol\_rate} / (\text{FEC\_frame}/q + \overset{\text{90 symbols PL header}}{90} + \underbrace{\text{ceil}(\,(\text{FEC\_frame}/q/90/16 - 1)\,) \cdot 36)}_{\text{36 pilot symbols}}$$
$$(\text{FEC\_frame} \cdot \text{code\_rate} - (16 \cdot \underbrace{t_{BCH}}_{\text{no. of BCH polynomes}}) - \underbrace{80}_{\text{80 bit DF header}});$$

FEC_frame = 64800 or 16200 bit;
q=2,3,4,5 bit/symbol; (QPSK, 8PSK, 16APSK, 32APSK)
ceil(A) rounds A to the nearest integer greater than or equal to A
code_rate = ¼ …9/10;
t_{BCH} = 8,10 or 12;

Fig. 14.34. Formula for calculating the net data rate in DVB-S2

A slot has a length of 90 symbols. A pilot block has a length of 36 symbols. Table 14.1. shows the coding parameters of the FEC frame. The data rates in DVB-S2 can be calculated by using the formula shown in Fig.

14.33. In practice (symbol rate of 27.5 MS/s), they are about 49 Mbit/s. Examples of data rates are listed in Table 14.3.

The error protection used in DVB-S2 allows the efficiency to be increased enormously (by approx. 30%), approaching the Shannon limit much more closely. This also requires much greater computing capacity but this can be provided by today's technology. The error protection applied in DVB-S2 is now also used in the Chinese terrestrial digital TV standard DTMB, and in the new DVB standards DVB-T2 and DVB-C2. The other new DVB-SH standard for mobile TV, although largely derived from DVB-S2 (and DVB-T), uses turbo coding for its error protection.

DVB-S2 is mainly intended for HDTV - High Definition Television. Since 2005, some HD programs have been broadcast by this means in Europe, among them “Sky”, “Sat1” and “Pro7” in Germany. “Sat1” and “Pro7” have stopped transmitting HD for the time being, at least until 2010. Since analog satellite switch-off in 2012 most of the TV programs are available in HDTV.

14.8 DVB-S2X – Extensions in the DVB-S2 Standard

Since 2013 “Ultra High Definition Television“ or “4K“ has been a common topic of broadcast exhibitions. End user equipment labeled with this logo have been available since 2014. The new video compression standard HEVC has also been on the market since 2013. UHDTV videos compressed by the HEVC procedure have data rates of typically 20 to 30 Mbit/s, what led the experts of the DVB project to develop a new DVB satellite transmission standard. The result of this work, however, was not DVB-S3, only DVB-S2X; this extension to the DVB-S2 standard was published in 2014 as “Optional Higher Data Rate Extensions“. It was designated only as DVB-S2X because the introduced changes were not that significant. The FEC of the DVB-S2X is the same as that of DVB-S2, though further code rates have been specified for DVB-S2X. The new variant serves for both Direct to Home (DTH) reception, “Interactive Services” and DSNG, as well as for professional applications. Its modulation patterns allow high and low robustness, consequently also low and high data rates.
The main features of the DVB-S2X are as follows:

- New modulation patterns from QPSK, 8PSK, 16APSK, 32APSK to 64APSK, 128APSK and 256APSK

- The constellation points are arranged on one to nine circles, with radiuses depending on the modulation pattern and code rate (so-called NUC —Non-Uniform Constellations)
- Various modulation patterns (uniform and non-uniform)
- More code rate / modulation combinations to support more SNR scenarios
- Super-Frame as an option
- Smaller roll-off factors to increase the spectral efficiency (by 5% and 10%)
- Channel bonding
- Support of High Efficiency Mode (GSE)
- Support of very low SNR modes down to –10 dB
- VCM (Variable Coding and Modulation) also for Direct to Home (DTH)
- FEC as in DVB-S2 (BCH and LDPC)

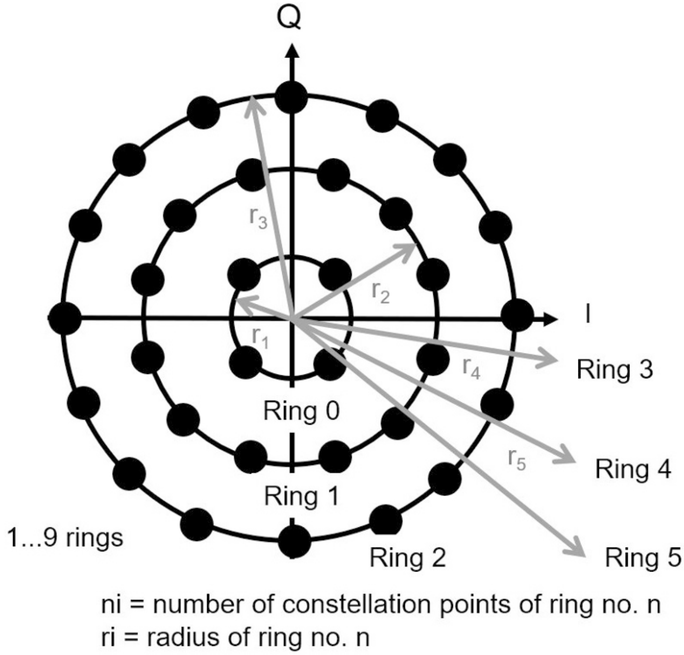


Fig. 14.35. Constellation diagrams at DVB-S2X

In DVB-S2X constellations have been defined which go beyond 32 points up to 256APSK; all these states are arranged on up to nine concentric circles with different radiuses (r_1 to r_9). The number of points on a specific circle and the radiuses (Fig. 14.35. and Fig. 14.37.) depend on the combination of the modulation pattern and code rate. In DVB-S there weren't frames, only symbols; only DVB-S2 combined symbols into slots and a frame structure over some slots was defined. In DVB-S2X, there is a further optional level, the so-called super-frame, which combines several frames. Roll-off factors of 5% and 10% result in a better spectral efficiency. Constellations and code rates are grouped into pairs allowing a finer SNR granularity for "Fall-off-the-Cliff" receive conditions. More to the point, there are even operating modes which support signal-noise ratios down to -10 dB.

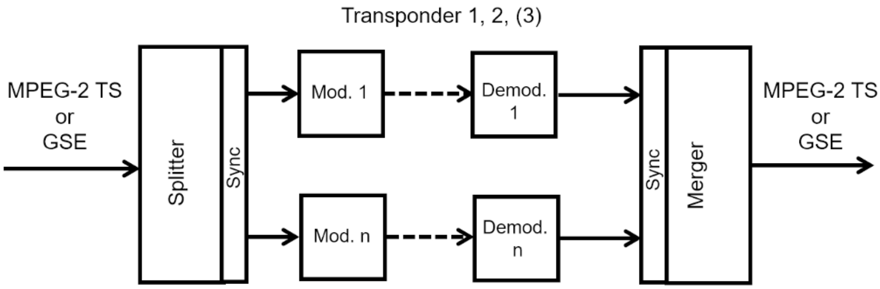


Fig. 14.36. Channel bonding in DVB-S2X (up to 3 transponders)

For direct to home reception (DTH) useful data rates can be increased up to 50 to 60 Mbit/s per transponder, thus satellite reception antennas having a higher gain and a diameter exceeding 1 m can be avoided. UHD-TV applications based on HEVC require data rates of 20 to 30 Mbit/s per service, meaning that only two UHD services can be transferred per transponder. To achieve a high statistical multiplex gain, more services have to be combined in one statistical multiplex. The bandwidth of a transponder cannot be extended due to the IMUX and OMUX filters of the satellites, therefore DVB-S2X allows to combine physically different transponders into a logical data channel - this is called "channel bonding". In DVB-S2X channel bonding is performed by splitting up a "big" data stream into multiple smaller synchronous data streams, which are transferred via different non-adjacent transponders (Fig. 14.36.). Up to three transponders can be channel-bonded. A DVB-S2X-compatible receiver has to be able to demodulate three transponders in parallel and combine them back to a "big" data stream using the sync signals in the partial streams inserted by the DVB-S2X-Modulator.

Table 14.4. Possible combinations of DVB-S2X modulation patterns and code rates in case of a "long FEC-Frame"

Modulation	Coderate	Application
QPSK	1/4, 1/3, 2/5 (wie S2) 1/2, 3/5, 2/3, 4/5, 5/6, 8/9, 8/10 (wie S2) 13/45 9/20, 11/20	Broadcast, Interactive, DSNG, Professional, VL-SNR
8PSK	3/5, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 8/9, 9/10 (as in S2) 23/36, 25/36, 13/18	Broadcast, Interactive, DSNG, Professional, VL-SNR
8APSK-L	5/9, 26/45	Broadcast, Interactive, DSNG, Professional, VL-SNR
16APSK	2/3, 3/4, 4/5, 5/6, 8/9, 9/10 (as in S2) 32/45, 11/15, 7/9	Broadcast, Interactive, DSNG, Professional, VL-SNR
16APSK-L	5/9, 8/15,1/2, 3/5, 2/3	Broadcast, Interactive, DSNG, Professional, VL-SNR
32APSK	3/4, 4/5, 5/6, 8/9, 9/10 (as in S2) 32/45, 11/15, 7/9	Broadcast, Interactive, DSNG, Professional, VL-SNR
32APSK-L	2/3	Broadcast, Interactive, DSNG, Professional, VL-SNR
64APSK	11/15, 7/9, 4/5, 5/6	Optional for Broadcast, mandatory for Interactive, DSNG, mandatory for Professional, optional for VL-SNR
64APSK-L	32/45	Optional for Broadcast, Interactive, DSNG, mandatory for Professional, optional for VL-SNR
128APSK	3/4, 7/9	Optional for Interactive, optional for DSNG, mandatory for Professional
256APSK	32/45, ¾	Optional for Interactive, optional for DSNG,

256APSK-L	29/45, 2/3, 31/45, 11/15	mandatory for Professional Optional for Interactive, optional for DSNG, mandatory for Professional

Table 14.5. Possible combinations of DVB-S2X modulation patterns and code rates in case of a "short FEC Frame"

Modulation	Coderate	Application
QPSK	1/4, 1/3, 2/5 (as in S2) 1/2, 3/5, 2/3, 3/4, 4/5, 5/6, 8/9 (as in S2) 11/45, 4/15, 14/45, 7/15, 8/15, 32/45	mandatory for Interactive, optional for DSNG, mandatory for Professional, mandatory for VL-SNR
8PSK	3/5, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 8/9 (as in S2) 7/15, 8/15, 26/45, 32/45	mandatory for Interactive, optional for DSNG, mandatory for Professional, mandatory for VL-SNR
16APSK	2/3, 3/4, 4/5, 5/6, 8/9 (as in S2) 7/15, 8/15, 26/45, 3/5, 32/45	mandatory for Interactive, optional for DSNG, mandatory for Professional, mandatory for VL-SNR
32APSK	3/4, 4/5, 5/6, 8/9 (wie S2) 2/3, 32/45	mandatory for Interactive, optional for DSNG, mandatory for Professional, mandatory for VL-SNR

Currently no TV end user equipment supports the DVB-S2X standard. UHD-TV transmissions are distributed via standard DVB-S2 transponders. The selected DVB-S2 parameters for UHD applications allow a data rate of about 55 Mbit/s (example: 8PSK constellation with a code rate of 2/3, pilots turned off and a roll-off factor of 0.20 result in a data rate of 54.5 Mbit/s, or, if the code rate is increased to ¾ with the same settings, then the data rate increases to 61.3 Mbit/s). Consequently, two UHD services can be transported via one such transponder.

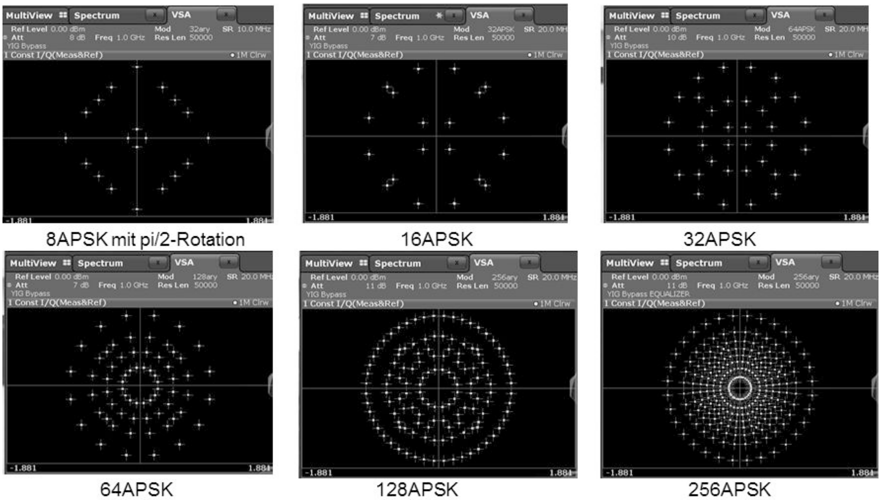


Fig. 14.37. DVB-S2X constellation diagrams (NUC=Non-Uniform Constellations) (examples, recorded by a VSA type Rohde & Schwarz FSW-K70)

Fig. 14.38. Ku band power amplifier/upconverter PKU900, Rohde&Schwarz

Bibliography: [ETS300421], [MÄUSL3], [MÄUSL4], [REIMERS], [GRUNWALD], [FISCHER3], [EN301210], [ETS302307], [GERTSEN], [DVB-A83-2]

15 DVB-S/S2 Measuring Technology

15.1 Introduction

The satellite transmission of digital TV signals has now been discussed in detail. The following sections will deal with DVB-S/S2 measuring technology. Satellite transmission is relatively rugged and, in principle, only subject to noise effects (approx. 205 dB free space attenuation), and possible irradiation due to microwave links. There is also noise interference at the first satellite IF due to cordless telephones (DECT).

The essential tests parameters on a DVB-S signal are:

- Signal level
- Bit error ratio
- CNR (carrier/noise ratio)
- E_b/N_0
- Modulation error ratio (MER)
- Shoulder attenuation

The following are required for measurements on DVB-S signals:

- A modern spectrum analyzer (e.g. Rohde&Schwarz FSV, FSW)
- A professional DVB-S receiver with BER measurement or an antenna test instrument (e.g. Kathrein MSK33, KWS Varos109) or an MPEG analyzer with corresponding RF interface (Rohde&Schwarz DVM)
- A DVB-S/S2 test transmitter for measurements on TV receivers and external satellite receivers (e.g. Rohde&Schwarz SFQ, SFU, SFL, SFE)

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_15

15.2 Measuring Bit Error Ratios

Due to the inner and outer error protection, there are three different bit error ratios in DVB-S:

- Pre-Viterbi bit error ratio
- Pre-Reed-Solomon bit error ratio
- Post-Reed-Solomon bit error ratio

The most interesting bit error ratio providing the most information about the transmission link is the pre- Viterbi bit error ratio. It can be measured by reapplying the data stream after the Viterbi decoder to a convolutional coder with the same configuration as that of the transmitter. If then the data stream before the Viterbi decoder is compared with that after the convolutional coder (Fig. 15.1.) (taking into consideration the delay of the coder), the two are identical if there are no errors. A comparator for the I branch and for the Q branch then determines the differences, and thus the bit errors.

The bit errors counted are then related to the number of bits transmitted in the corresponding period, resulting in the bit error ratio

BER = bit errors / transmitted bits;

The range of the pre-Viterbi bit error ratio is between $1\cdot10^{-4}$ to $1\cdot10^{-2}$. This means that every ten-thousandth to hundredth bit is errored.

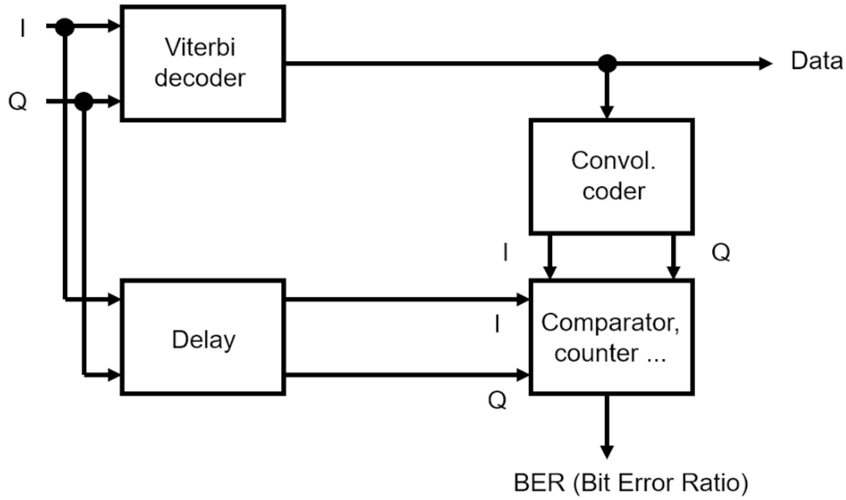


Fig. 15.1. Circuit for measuring the pre-Viterbi bit error ratio

The Viterbi decoder can only correct a proportion of the bit errors. There is thus a residual bit error ratio remaining before the Reed-Solomon decoder. Counting the correction processes of the Reed-Solomon decoder and relating them to the number of bits transmitted within the corresponding period of time provides the pre-Reed-Solomon bit error ratio. The limit pre-Reed-Solomon bit error ratio is about $2 \cdot 10^{-4}$. Up to there, the Reed - Solomon decoder can repair all errors. At the same time, however, the transmission is "on the brink". A little bit more interference, e.g. due to too much attenuation due to rain, and the transmission will break down and the picture will start to show "blocking".

But the Reed-Solomon decoder, too, cannot correct all bit errors, resulting in errored transport stream packets which are then flagged in the TS header (transport error indicator bit = 1). If the errored transport stream packets are counted, the post-Reed-Solomon decoder bit error ratio can be calculated.

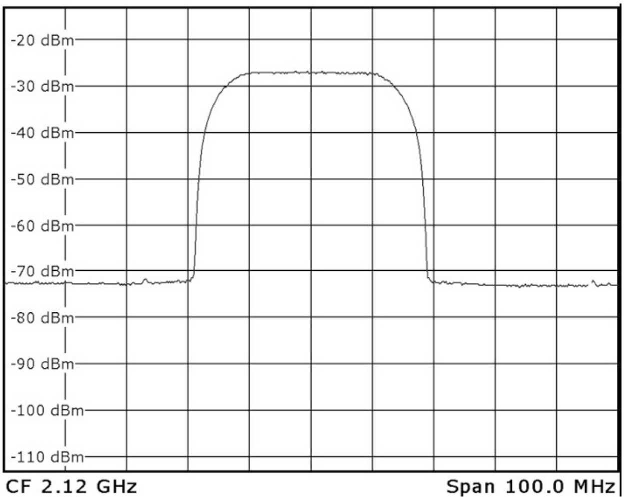


Fig. 15.2. Spectrum of a DVB-S signal (10 dB/Div, 10 MHz/Div, Span 100 MHz)

If very low bit error ratios (e.g. less than 10^{-6}) are measured, long measuring times in the range of minutes or hours must be selected to detect these with any degree of accuracy. Since there is a direct relation between bit error ratio and the carrier/noise ratio, this can be used for determining the latter (see diagram in Section 14.6 “Influences affecting the satellite transmission link”, Fig. 14.24.). Virtually every DVB-S chip or DVB-S receiver contains a circuit for determining the pre-Viterbi bit error ratio because this value can be used for aligning the satellite receiving antenna and for determining the quality of reception. The circuit itself is not very complex. In most cases, DVB-S receivers display two bar graphs in their setup menu, one for the signal strength and one for signal quality. The latter is derived from the bit error ratio.

Due to the altered error protection, the following bit error ratios are defined in DVB-S2:

- Bit error ratios before LDPC
- Bit error ratios before BCH
- Bit error ratios after BCH

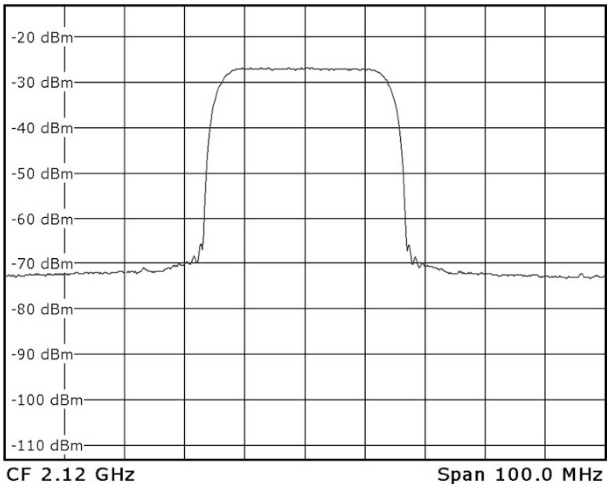


Fig. 15.3. Spectrum of a DVB-S2 signal with rolloff=0.25

15.3 Measurements on DVB-S Signals using a Spectrum Analyzer

A spectrum analyzer is quite suitable for measuring the power in the DVB-S channel, at least in the uplink. Of course, it would also be quite simple to use a thermal power meter but a spectrum analyzer can also be used for determining the carrier/noise ratio in the uplink. Firstly, however, the power of the DVB-S/S2 signal will be determined using the spectrum analyzer. A DVB-S/S2 signal has the appearance of noise and has a rather large crest factor. Because of its strong similarity with white Gaussian noise, its power is measured exactly as in the case of noise.

To determine the carrier power, the spectrum analyzer is set as follows: At the analyzer, a resolution bandwidth of 2 MHz and a video band width of 3 to 10 times the resolution bandwidth (10 MHz) are selected. To achieve some averaging, a slow operating time must be set (2000 ms). These parameters are required because of the RMS detector used in the spectrum analyzer. The following settings are used:

- Center frequency at the center of the DVB-S/S2 channel,
- Span at 100 MHz,
- Resolution bandwidth at 2 MHz,
- Video bandwidth at 10 MHz (because of RMS detector and log. representation),
- Detector RMS
- Slow operating time (2000 ms)
- Noise marker at channel center (results in C' in dBm/Hz)

This results in a spectrum as shown in Fig. 15.2. The RMS detector calculates the power density of the signal in a window with a bandwidth of 1 Hz, the test window being continuously pushed over the frequency window to be measured (sweep range). In principle, first the RMS (root mean square) value of the voltage is determined from all samples in the signal window of 1 Hz bandwidth:

$$U_{RMS} = \frac{1}{N}\sqrt{u_1^2 + u_2^2 + u_3^2 + \ldots};$$

From this, the power in this signal window is calculated with reference to an impedance of 50 Ω and converted into dBm. This is then the signal power density in a window of 1 Hz bandwidth. The slower the selected sweep time set, the more samples can be accommodated in this window and the smoother and better averaged will be the test result.

Because of the noise-like signal, we use the noise marker measuring power. The noise marker is set to band center for this purpose. The prerequisite is a flat channel but this can always be assumed to be the case in the uplink. If the channel is not flat, other suitable measuring functions must be used for measuring the channel power but these are dependent on the spectrum analyzer.

The analyzer provides us with the value C' as the noise power density at the position of the noise marker in dBm/Hz, and the filter bandwidth and the characteristics of the logarithmic amplifier of the analyzer are automatically taken into consideration. To relate the signal power density C' to the

Nyquist bandwidth B_N of the DVB-S/S2 signal, it is necessary to calculate the signal power C as follows:

$$C = C' + 10 \cdot \log B_N = C' + 10 \cdot \log(\textit{symbol rate/Hz})\ dB; \quad [dBm]$$

The Nyquist bandwidth of the signal corresponds to the symbol rate of the DVB-S signal.

Example:

Measured value of the noise marker:	-100 dBm/Hz
Correction value at 27.5 MS/s symbol rate:	+ 74.4 dB
Power in the DVB-S/S2 channel:	- 25.6 dBm

15.3.1 Approximate Determination of the Noise Power N

If it were possible to switch off the DVB-S signal without changing the noise ratios in the channel, the noise marker at the center of the band would now provide information on the noise ratios in the channel. However, this cannot be done in such a simple way. If not an exact measurement value, then at least a "good idea", is obtained if the noise marker is used on the shoulder of the DVB-S/S2 signal for measuring in close proximity of the signal. This is because it can be assumed that the noise fringe in the wanted band continues similarly to its appearance on the shoulder.

The value N' of the noise power density is output by the spectrum analyzer. The noise power N in the channel with the bandwidth B_K of the DVB-S transmission channel is then calculated from the noise power density N' as follows:

$$N = N' + 10 \cdot \log B_C = N' + 10 \cdot \log(\textit{channel bandwidth/Hz})dB; \ [dBm]$$

The channel bandwidth of the signal corresponds to the symbol rate of the DVB-S/S2 signal (DVB measurement guidelines).

Example:

Measured value of the noise marker:	-120 dBm/Hz
Correction value at 27.5 MS/s symbol rate:	+ 74.4 dB
Noise power in the DVB-S/S2 channel:	- 45.6 dBm

The resultant CNR is:

$CNR_{[dB]} = C_{[dBm]} - N_{[dBm]}$;

In the example: CNR[dB] = -25.6 [dBm] - (-45.6 dBm) = 20 dB;

In fact, to measure the CNR in the downlink, the noise is measured in the gaps between the individual channels. Other possibilities of measuring CNR would be to use a suitable constellation analyzer for DVB-S/S2 (e.g. the Rohde&Schwarz DVM with RF option) or via the detour of measuring the bit error rate. Naturally, such an analyzer can also be used to measure levels.

15.3.2 C/N, S/N and Eb/N_0

The carrier-to-noise ratio CNR is an important value in assessing the quality of the satellite transmission link. From the CNR, direct conclusion can be drawn with respect to the bit error rate to be expected. The CNR is the result of the power radiated by the satellite (< ~100W), the antenna gain at the transmitting and receiving end (size of the receiving antenna) and the loss in the space between. The alignment of the satellite receiving antenna and the noise figure of the LNB also play a role. DVB-S receivers output the CNR value as an aid for aligning the receiving antenna.

$CNR[dB] = 10 \cdot \log(P_{Carrier}/P_{Noise})$;

In addition to the carrier-to-noise ratio, there is also the signal-to-noise ratio:

$SNR[dB] = 10 \cdot \log(P_{Signal}/ P_{Noise})$;

The signal power is here the power of the signal after roll-off filtering. P_{noise} is the noise power within the Nyquist bandwidth (symbol rate).

The signal-to-noise ratio SNR is thus obtained from the carrier-to-noise ratio as:

$SNR[dB] = CNR[dB] + 10 \cdot \log (1-r/4)$;

where r is the roll-off factor (= 0.35 in DVB-S); i.e., in DVB-S:

$SNR[dB] = CNR[dB] -0.3977$ dB;

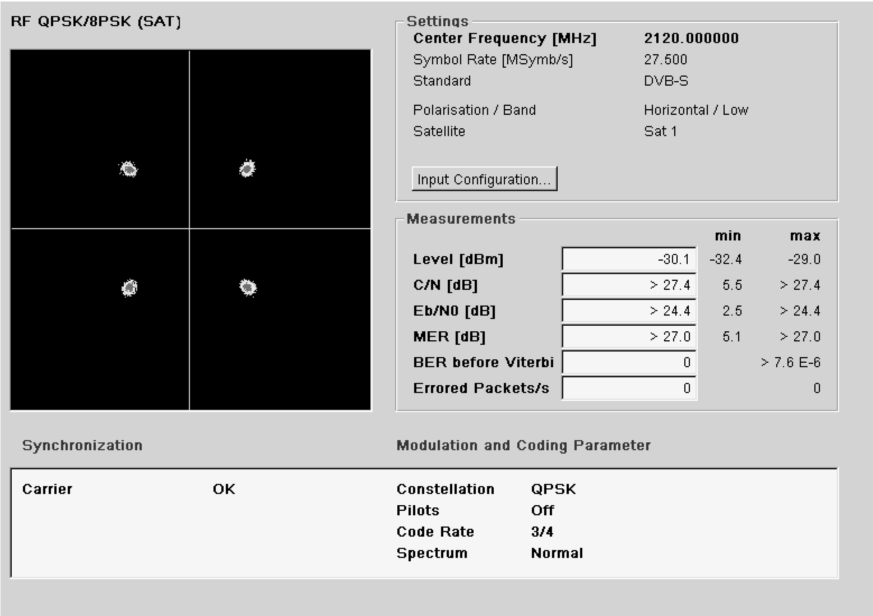


Fig. 15.4. Constellation diagram of an undisturbed DVB-S signal with MER and BER measurement [DVM]

15.3.3 Finding the E_B/N_0 Ratio in DVB-S(1)

In DVB-S, the term E_B/N_0 is often mentioned. This is the energy per bit with respect to the noise power density.

E_B = energy per bit;
N_0 = noise power density in dBm/Hz;

The E_B/N_0 can be calculated from the CNR ratio:

E_B/N_0 [dB] = CNR[dB] + 10log(188/204) - 10log(m) - 10log(code rate);

where
m = 2 for QPSK/DVB-S;
m = 4 for 16QAM;
6 for 64QAM and
8 for 256QAM, and

the code rate is 1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 7/8.

With a code rate of 3/4 as in the case of the usual QPSK modulation,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_B/N_0\,[\mathrm{dB}]_{3/4} &= \mathrm{CNR[dB]} + 10\log(188/204) - 10\log(2) - 10\log(3/4) \\
&= \mathrm{CNR[dB]} + 0.3547\ \mathrm{dB} - 3.0103\ \mathrm{dB} + 1.2494\ \mathrm{dB} \\
&= \mathrm{CNR[dB]} - 1.4062\ \mathrm{dB};
\end{aligned}
$$

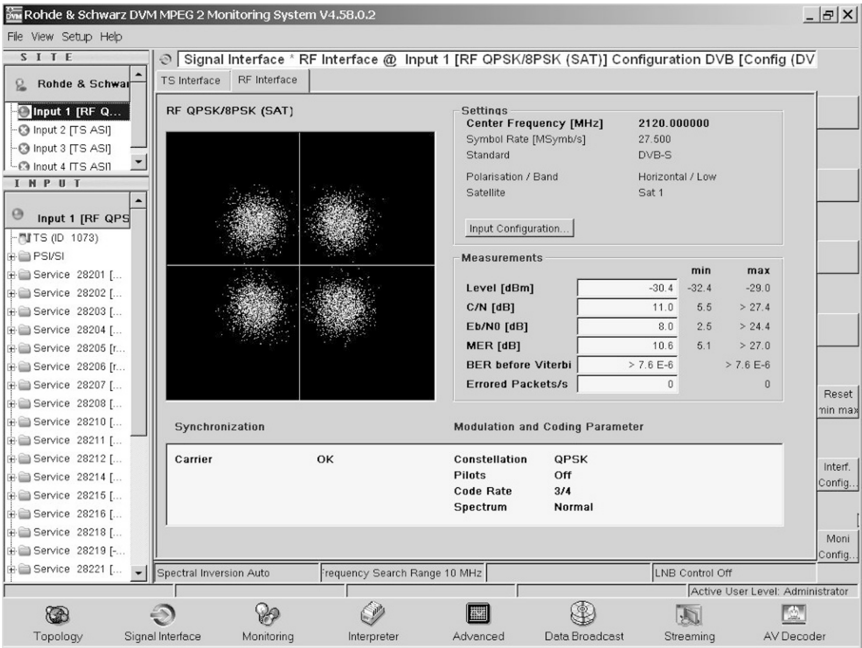


Fig. 15.5. Constellation diagram of an interfered DVB-S signal [DVM]

15.4 Modulation Error Ratio (MER)

The modulation error ratio (MER) is an aggregate parameter in which all the interfering signals affecting a digitally modulated signal are mapped. Each interfering event, or hit, can be described by an error vector which pushes the constellation point out of the ideal center of a decision field. The ratio of the measured RMS value of the signal amplitude to the quadratic mean of the error vectors is then the MER. This is defined in detail in the chapters on DVB-C and DVB-T measuring technology. In the case of

DVB-S/S2, the MER is almost identical to the SNR value since there are virtually only noise effects.

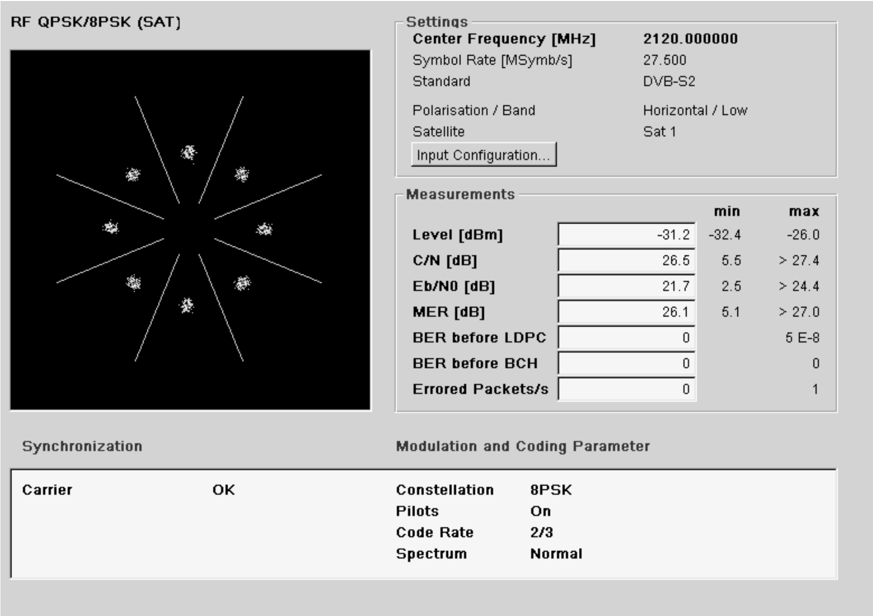


Fig. 15.6. Constellation diagram of an undisturbed DVB-S2 signal (8PSK) [DVM]

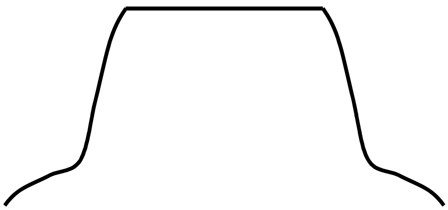


Fig. 15.7. DVB-S spectrum with “shoulders“

15.5 Measuring the Shoulder Attenuation

The DVB-S/2 signal within the wanted DVB-S/2 channel should be as flat as possible, i.e. it should not exhibit any ripple or tilt. Toward the edges of the channel, the DVB-S/2 spectrum drops off filtered with a smooth roll-off. There are, however, still signal components outside the actual wanted band and these are called the ‘shoulders’ of the DVB-S/S2 signal. The aim is to achieve the best possible shoulder attenuation of at least 40 dB. [ETS 300421] specifies a tolerance mask for the DVB-S/S2 signal spectrum but, in principle, the satellite operator can define a particular tolerance mask for the shoulder attenuation.

The signal spectrum is analyzed using a spectrum analyzer and simple marker functions.

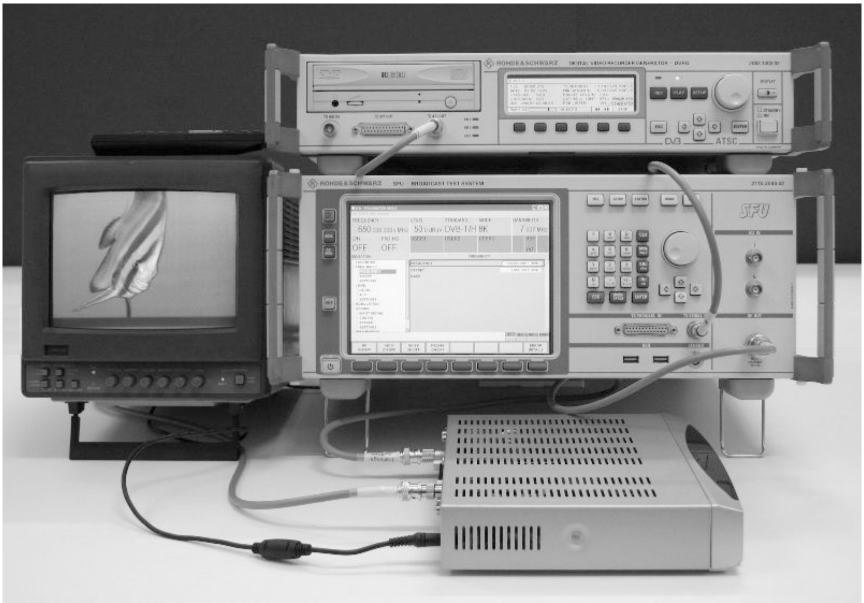


Fig. 15.8. Testing DVB receivers by an MPEG-2 generator (Rohde & Schwarz DVRG) and a test transmitter (Rohde & Schwarz SFU): the MPEG-2 generator (top) supplies the MPEG-2 transport stream with test contents and feeds the DVB test transmitter (center) which, in turn, generates a DVB-conform IQ-modulated RF signal for the DVB receiver (bottom). The output video signal of the DVB receiver is displayed on the TV monitor (left).

15.6 DVB-S/S2 Receiver Test

The testing of DVB-S/S2 receivers (TV receiver, external satellite receiver, Fig. 15.4.) is accorded great significance. DVB-S/S2 test transmitters are used for these purposes, which can simulate the satellite transmission link and the modulation process. Such a test transmitter (e.g. Rohde & Schwarz TV Test Transmitter SFQ, SFU, BTC) includes, in addition to the DVB-S/S2 modulator and upconverter, an additive noise source and possibly even a channel simulator. The test transmitter is fed with an MPEG-2 transport stream from an MPEG-2 generator. The test transmitter then supplies a DVB-S/S2 signal within the range of the first satellite IF (900 - 2100 MHz). This signal can be fed directly to the input of the DVB-S/S2 receiver. It is then possible to create various adverse signal conditions for the DVB-S/S2 receiver by changing numerous parameters in the test transmitter. It is also possible to measure the bit error ratio as a function of the CNR ratio. Such test transmitters are used both in the development and in the production and quality assurance of DVB-S/S2 receivers.

Fig. 15.9. Measurements on a satellite antenna system using an antenna test receiver (KWS VAROS 109). Left side: important measurement parameter (level, MER, BER) and constellation diagram. Right side: decoded video signal; the equipment also includes an LNB interface with optical IF output.

15.7 Measurements on a Satellite Antenna System

The signal quality of a satellite antenna system can be measured by a satellite antenna test receiver, allowing also to correctly adjust the receive dish to the satellite orbit. The antenna test receiver (see. Figs. 15.10. and 15.11, KWS Electronic, VAROS 109) [KWS] provides the already discussed measurement parameters like

- RF level in dBµV (60… 80 dBuV, ideally approx. 70 dBuV)
- MER in dB (7…13 dB, ideally >11 dB)
- BER before Viterbi or LDPC
- BER before Reed-Solomon or BCH.

Additionally, the spectrum of the satellite channels can be displayed which is very helpful for the correct adjustment of the satellite antenna. The services can be decoded as well. To this end, a CA module with a smart card from the service provider could be necessary. Fig. 15.11. shows some measurement screen examples from a satellite test receiver displaying the most important measurement parameters, the constellation diagram (DVB-S/QPSK, DVB-S2/8PSK) and the spectrum.

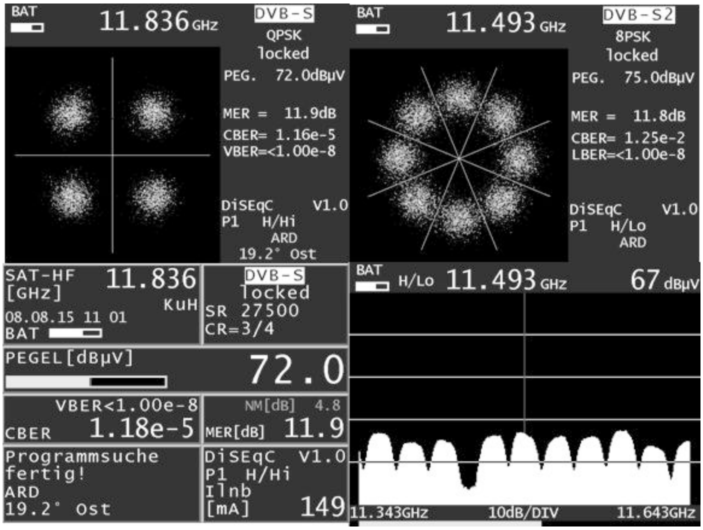


Fig. 15.10. Measurement display of the KWS manufactured satellite antenna test receiver type VAROS 109 (constellation diagram of DVB-S/QPSK, DVB-S2/8PSK, most important measurement parameters and spectrum) [KWS]

To align the receive satellite dish to the position of the desired satellite, a satellite antenna test receiver has to be used. In addition, the geographic location of the receive point, the orbit position of the satellite and the technical parameters of the most popular satellite transponders on the satellite concerned have to be known. These are as follows:

- Satellite transponder frequency (GHz)
- High/low band
- Polarization horizontal/vertical
- Symbol rate
- Forward Error Correction (FEC, Code Rate).

By using a table (from a satellite magazine or the Internet), the azimuth and elevation angle of the receive location can be determined from the geographic data (longitude, latitude). Based on this information, the antenna can be coarsely tuned to the satellite orbit position. Than the LNB of the receive dish has to be set via the satellite test receiver, using the well-known transponder data. Then the spectrum shown on the test receiver has to be optimized (visible increasing power of the satellite transponder spectrum above the noise floor). In the next step, it has to be checked if the correct satellite is tuned by decoding a transponder and reading out the SI data. After the coarse adjustment, the MER value has to be optimized (goal: exceed approx. 11 dB). The higher the MER, the higher the noise margin and the higher the reserve is in case of heavy weather conditions. It is important to know that different transponders will exhibit different quality (different MER values). The limit for an error-free reception is typically at a MER of 7 dB.

Sometimes it is necessary to calculate the satellite intermediate frequency (sat IF) from the transponder frequency; the LNB contains two oscillators, one running at 9.75 GHz (Low Band) and the other at 10.6 GHz (High Band). Tables 15.1. and 15.2. list the correct parameter settings for an LNB. Different LNB models exist as follows:

- Single LNB with 14/18V/22kHz control signals
- Quad LNBs with 14/18V/22kHz control signals, having four switchable outputs for four receivers
- Quattro LNBs, four fixed outputs (for multi switches)
- Quad LNBs with DiSEqC control, with four switchable outputs for four receivers (= Quattro Switch LNB)
- Single LNB for Unicable applications,
- LNB with optical IF for all four satellite domains

The satellite antenna test receiver has to be programmed according to the type of the LNB.

Table 15.1. Control signals for an LNB (LNB supply voltage and 22kHz switching signal)

Sat band	Polarization	LNB supply
Low band	Vertical	14V
High band	Horizontal	18V
High band	Vertical	14V/22 kHz
High band	Horizontal	18V/22 kHz

Table 15.2. Frequency range low band / high band

Ku band range	Transponder frequency range
Low band	10.7-11.7 GHz
High band	11.7-12.75 GHz

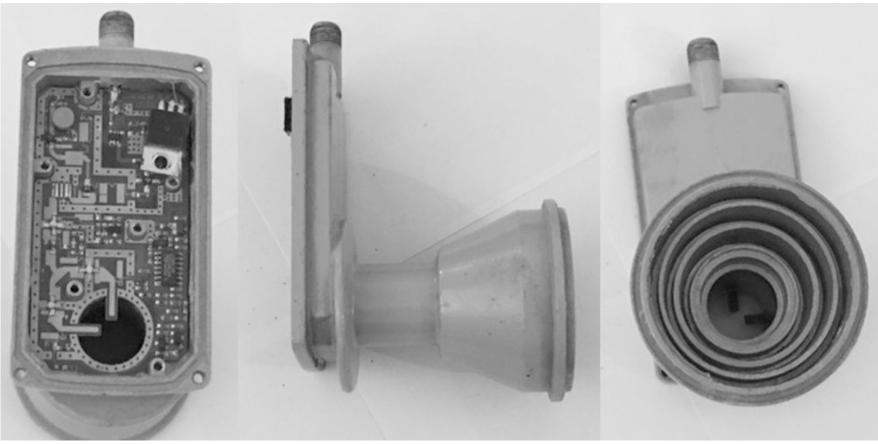


Fig. 15.11. Single LNB, disassembled; left: antennas for vertical and horizontal polarization; right: circular waveguide structure

Bibliography: [ETS300421], [ETR290], [REIMERS], [GRUNWALD], [FISCHER3], [SFQ], [SFU], [DVM], [DVMS], [BTC], [KWS], [KWS_VAROS109]

16 Broadband Cable Transmission According to DVB-C

Originally only used as community TV antenna networks, in the 1980ies cable TV or broadband cable networks (CATV) has been developed. Many countries are now using broadband cable networks (CATV) in metropolitan areas for broadcast service distribution. In some regions the CATV networks was used only up to 600 MHz for a long time but now they are occupied up to 860 MHz (Fig. 16.1.). There are now even plannings to use that networks also for frequencies above 1 GHz. Additionally to the terrestrial VHF and UHF TV channel definitions there are further “special channels” in CATV networks (“superband”, “hyperband”). Analog TV services can be received by any TV set without any further technical equipment but analog TV channels will disappear also very soon in CATV networks.

In CATV networks a monthly cable fee (20 to 30 EUR) need to be payed.

Because of the reconversion from digital to analog and because of multiple intermodulation mixing products analog TV services in CATV offers bad picture quality. CATV has been developed from ATV applications and that is the reason why the channel bandwidth in CATV networks is either 6, 7 or 8 MHz. Services in CATV networks in use are

- Return channel for telephone and internet (5…65 MHz)
- FM sound broadcast (87.5…108 MHz)
- ”Notched“ Air Traffic Control band 118…136 MHz
- ATV/DTV services (approx. 140 … 862 MHz)
- DOCSIS downstreams (from approx.. 600 MHz).

Since about 1995, many cable networks are carrying digital TV signals according to the DVB-C standard and many others in the higher frequency bands above about 300 MHz. This section is intended to explain the methods for transmitting digital TV signals via broadband cable in greater detail. The chosen transmission methods and parameters were selected with reference to the typical characteristics of a broadband cable. Cable exhibits a much better signal/noise ratio than in satellite transmission and there

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_16

are not many problems with reflections, either, all of which permits digital modulation methods of higher quality to be used, from 64QAM (coax) to 256QAM (optical fibre).

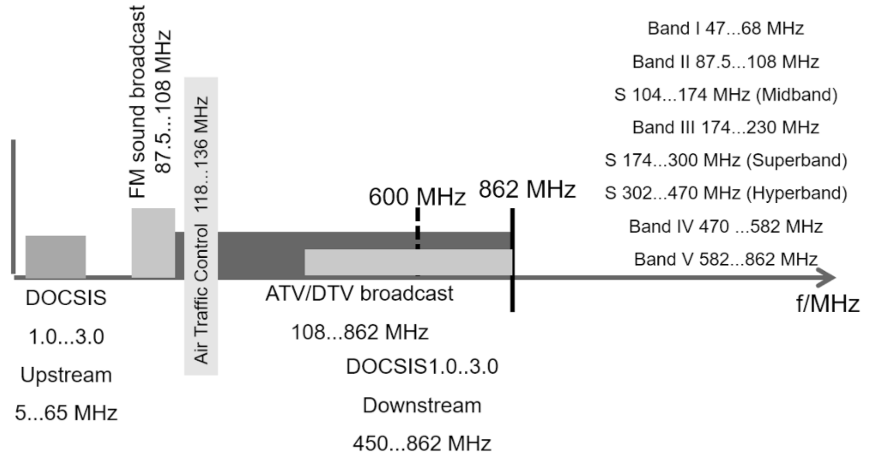


Fig. 16.1. CATV frequency occupation

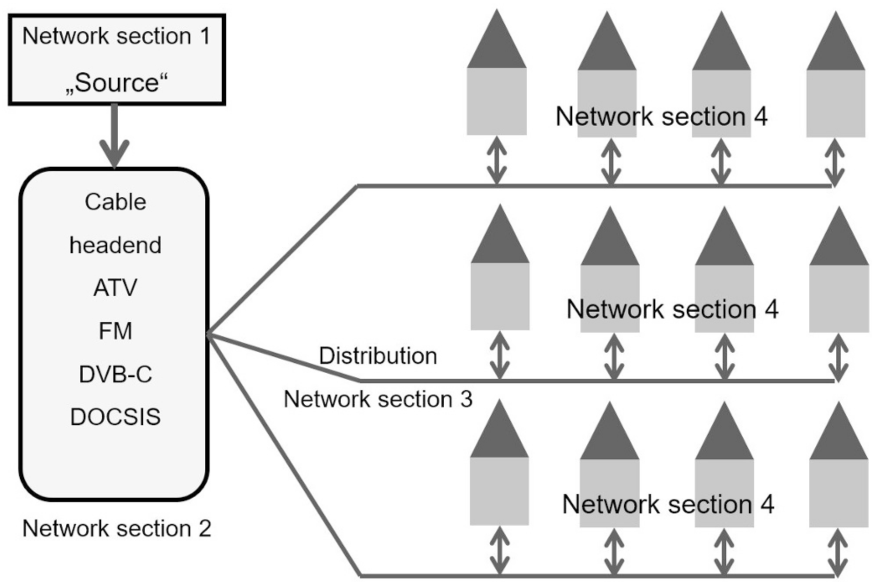


Fig. 16.2. Structure of a broadband cable network (CATV), network section 1 = source, network section 2 = headend, network section 3 = distribution (fibre, 75 Ohm coax), network section 4 = inhouse distribution network, network section 5 = wall outlet to end user equipment.

A broadband cable network consists of the cable head end (network section 2), of the cable distribution links consisting of coaxial cables and cable amplifiers (network section 3), of the 'last mile' from the distributor to the house connection of the subscriber and of the subscriber's in-house network itself (network section 4). The cable distribution links from the head end to the last distribution box can also be run as optical fibers. This broadband cable system then distributes radio programs and analog and digital TV programs. There are also return channel links in the frequency band below about 65 MHz.

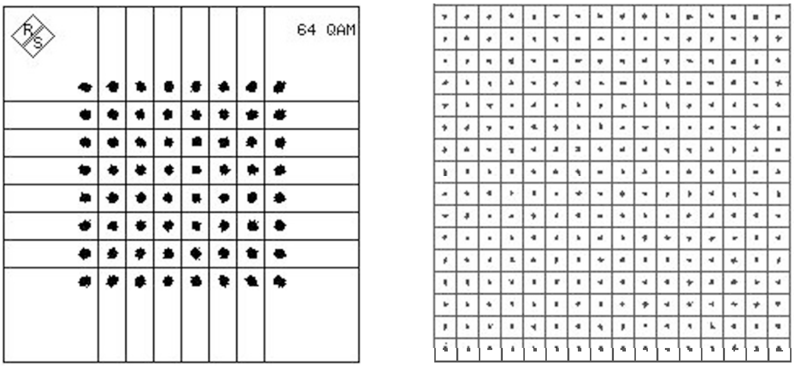


Fig. 16.3. 64QAM (left) and 256QAM (right)

16.1 The DVB-C Standard

Digital video broadcasting for cable applications had been specified in about 1994 in the standard [ETS 300429]. This service has been available in the cable networks since then, or shortly after. We will see that in the DVB-C modulator, the MPEG-2 transport stream passes through almost the same stages of conditioning as in the DVB-S satellite standard. It is only the last stage of convolutional coding which is missing here: it is simply not needed because the medium of propagation is so much more robust. This is followed by the 16, 32, 64, 128 or 256QAM quadrature amplitude modulation. In coax cable systems, 64QAM is used virtually ways whereas optical fibre networks frequently use 256QAM.

Considering then a conventional coax system with a channel spacing of 8 MHz. It normally uses a 64QAM-modulated carrier signal with a symbol rate of, for example, 6.9 MS/s. The symbol rate must be lower than the system bandwidth of 8 MHz in the present case. The modulated signal is rolled off smoothly towards the channel edges with a roll-off factor of r = 0.15. Given 6.9 MS/s and 64 QAM (6 bits/symbol), a gross data rate of

$$\text{Gross\_data\_rate}_{DVB\text{-}C} = 6 \text{ bits/Symbol} \cdot 6.9 \text{ MSymbols/s} = 41.4 \text{ Mbit/s};$$

is obtained. In DVB-C, only Reed-Solomon error protection is used which is the same as in DVB-S, i.e. RS(188,204). Thus, an MPEG-2 transport stream packet of 188 bytes length is provided with 16 bytes of error protection, resulting in a total packet length of 204 bytes during the transmission.

The resultant net data rate is:

$$\text{Net\_data\_rate}_{DVB\text{-}C} = \text{Gross\_data\_rate} \cdot 188/204 = 38.15 \text{ Mbit/s};$$

Thus, a 36-MHz-wide satellite channel with a symbol rate of 27.5 MS/s and a code rate of 3/4 has the same net data rate, i.e. the same transport capacity as this DVB-C channel with a width of only 8 MHz.

The following generally applies for DVB-C:

$$\text{Net\_data\_rate}_{DVB\text{-}C} = \text{ld}(m) \cdot \text{symbol\_rate} \cdot 188/204;$$

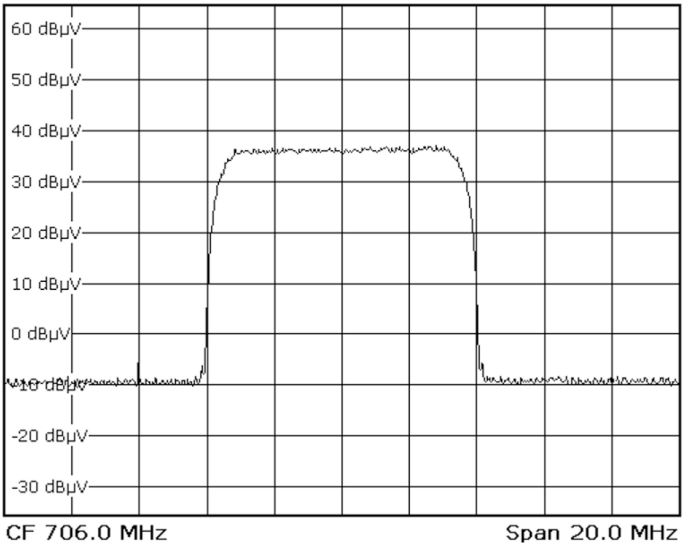


Fig. 16.4. DVB-C spectrum (8 MHz channel, symbol rate = 6.9 MS/s) measured using the R&S ETL [ETL]

As well, however, the DVB-C channel has a much better signal to noise ratio (SNR) with about >30 dB compared with about 10 dB in the case of DVB-S.

The constellations provided in the DVB-C standard are 16QAM, 32QAM, 64QAM, 128QAM and 256QAM. According to DVB-C, the spectrum is roll-off filtered with a roll-off factor of r = 0.15. The transmission method specified in DVB-C is also known as the international standard ITU-T J83A. There is also the parallel standard ITU-T J83B used in North America, which will be described later, and ITU-T J83C which is used in 6 MHz-wide channels in Japan. In principle, J83C has the same structure as DVB-C but it uses a different roll-off factor for 128QAM (r = 0.18) and for 256QAM (r = 0.13). Everything else is identical. ITU-T J83B, the method found in the US and in Canada, has a completely different FEC and is described in a separate Section.

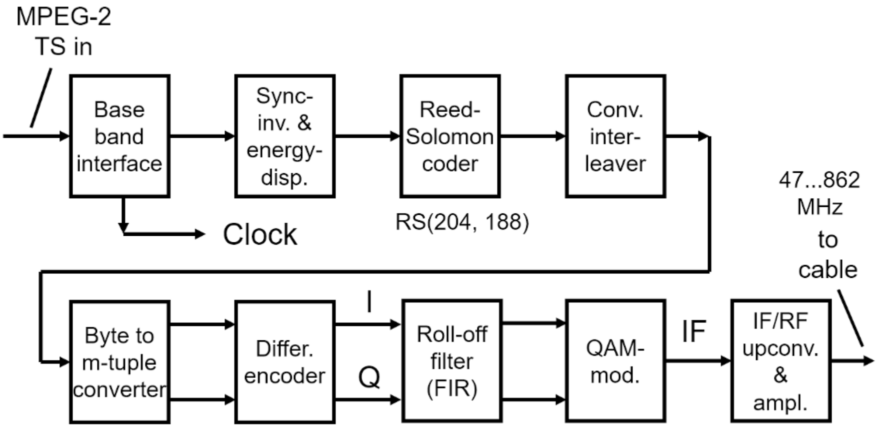


Fig. 16.5. DVB-C modulator

16.2 The DVB-C Modulator

The DVB-C modulator does not need to be described in so much detail since most of the stages are completely identical with the DVB-S modulator. The modulator locks to the MPEG-2 transport stream fed to it at the baseband interface and consisting of 188 byte-long transport stream packets. The TS packets consist of a 4 byte header, beginning with the sync byte (0x47), followed by 184 bytes of payload. Following this, every sync byte is inverted to 0xB8 to carry long-term time markers in the data stream to the receiver for energy dispersal and its cancellation. This is followed by the energy dispersal stage (or randomizer) proper, and then the Reed- Solomon coder which adds 16 bytes of error protection to each 188 byte-long TS packets. The packets, which are then 204 bytes long, are then supplied to the Forney interleaver to make the data stream more resistant to error bursts. The error bursts are broken up by the cancellation of the interleaving in the DVB-C demodulator which makes it easier for the Reed Solomon block decoder to correct errors.

The error-protected data stream is then fed into the mapper where the QAM quadrant must be differentially coded, in contrast to DVB-S and DVB-T. This is because the carrier can only be recovered in multiples of 90° in the 64QAM demodulator and the DVB-C receiver can lock to any multiples of 90° carrier phase. The mapper is followed by the quadrature amplitude modulation which is now done digitally. Usually, 64QAM is selected for coaxial links and 256QAM for fiber-optical links. The signal is roll-off filtered with a roll-off factor of r = 0.15. This gradual roll-off towards the band edges optimizes the eye opening of the modulated signal. After power amplification, the signal is then injected into the broadband cable system.

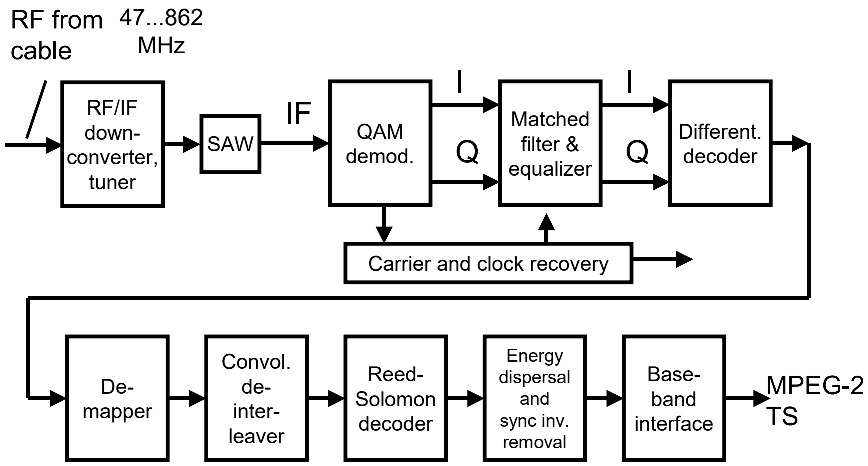


Fig. 16.6. DVB-C receiver

16.3 The DVB-C Receiver

The DVB-C receiver (- external or integrated -) receives the DVB-C channel in the 50 - 860 MHz band. The transmission has added effects due to the transmission link such as noise, reflections and amplitude and group delay distortion. These effects will be discussed later in a separate Section.

The first module of the DVB-C receiver is the cable tuner which is essentially identical with a tuner for analog television. The tuner converts the 8 MHz-wide DVB-C channel down to an IF with a band center at about 36 MHz. These 36 MHz also correspond to to the band center of an analog TV IF channel according to ITU standard BG/Europe. Adjacent channel components are suppressed by a downstream SAW filter which has a bandwidth of exactly 8 MHz. Where 7 or 6 MHz channels are possible, the filter must be replaced accordingly. This band-pass filtering to 8, 7 or 6 MHz is followed by further downconversion to a lower intermediate frequency in order to simplify the subsequent analog/digital conversion. Before the A/D conversion, however, all frequency components above half the sampling rate must be removed by means of a low-pass filter. The signal is then sampled at about 20 MHz with a resolution of 10 bits. The IF, which is now digitized, is supplied to an IQ demodulator and then to a root cosine squared matched filter operating digitally. In parallel with this, the carrier and the clock are recovered. The recovered carrier with an uncertainty of multiples of 90 degrees is fed into the carrier input of the IQ demodulator. This is followed by a channel equalizer, partly combined with the matched filter, a complex FIR filter in which it is attempted to correct the channel distortion due to amplitude response and group delay errors. This equalizer operates in accordance with the maximum likelihood principle, i.e. it is attempted to optimize the signal quality by “tweeking” digital “setscrews” which are the taps of the digital filter. The signal, thus optimized, passes into the demapper where the data stream is recovered. This data stream will still have bit errors and, therefore, error protection is added. Firstly, the interleaving is cancelled and error bursts are turned into single errors. The following Reed Solomon decoder can eliminate up to 8 errors per 204-byte-long RS packet. The result is again transport stream packets with a length of 188 bytes which, however, are still energy-dispersed. If there are more than 8 errors in a packet, they can no longer be repaired and the transport error indicator in the TS header is then set to ‘one’. After the RS decoder, the energy dispersal and the inversion of every 8th sync byte are cancelled and the MPEG-2 transport stream is again present at the physical baseband interface. In practice, all modules from the A/D converter to the transport stream output are implemented in one chip. The essential components in a DVB-C receiver are the tuner, some discrete components, the DVB-C demodulator chip and the MPEG-2 decoder chip, all of which are controlled by a microprocessor.

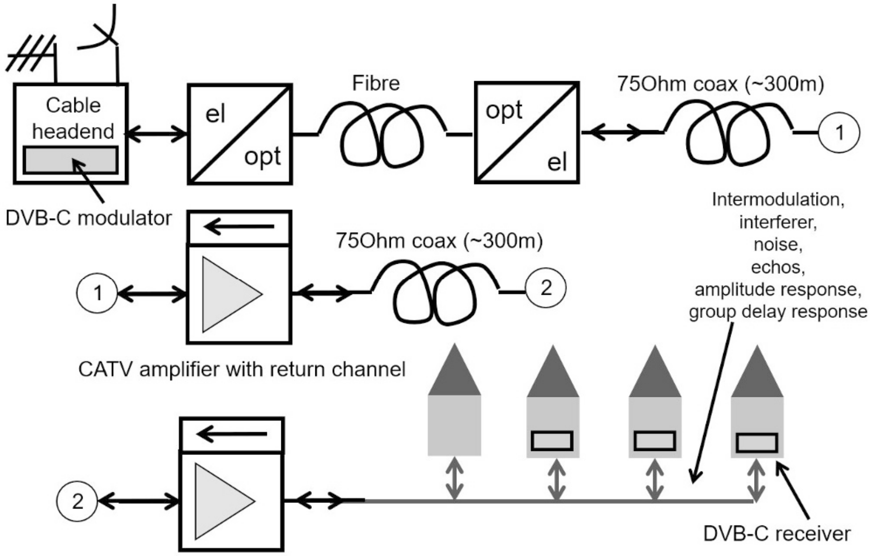


Fig. 16.7. DVB-C distribution network and interference effects

16.4 Interference Effects on the DVB-C Transmission Link

Since, in practice, DVB-C modulators only use digital IQ modulators, IQ errors such as amplitude imbalance, phase errors and carrier leakage can be neglected today. These effects are simply no longer present in contrast to first-generation transmission. The effects occurring during transmission are essentially noise, intermodulation and cross-modulation interference and echoes and amplitude and group delay effects. If a cable amplifier is saturated and, at the same time, is occupied with a large number of channels, frequency conversion products are produced which will appear in the useful signal range. Every amplifier, therefore, needs to be operated at the correct operating point. It is, therefore, of importance that the levels on the transmission link are correct. A too high level produces intermodulation in the amplifiers, a too low level reduces the signal/noise ratio, both of which result in noise. The levels in a house installation, for example, should be adjusted in such a way that a maximum signal/noise ratio is obtained for DVB-C. An amplifier which may be present is calibrated in such a way that the signal/noise ratio is at the point of inversion at the most distant antenna socket. DVB-C signals are also very sensitive to amplitude and group delay response.

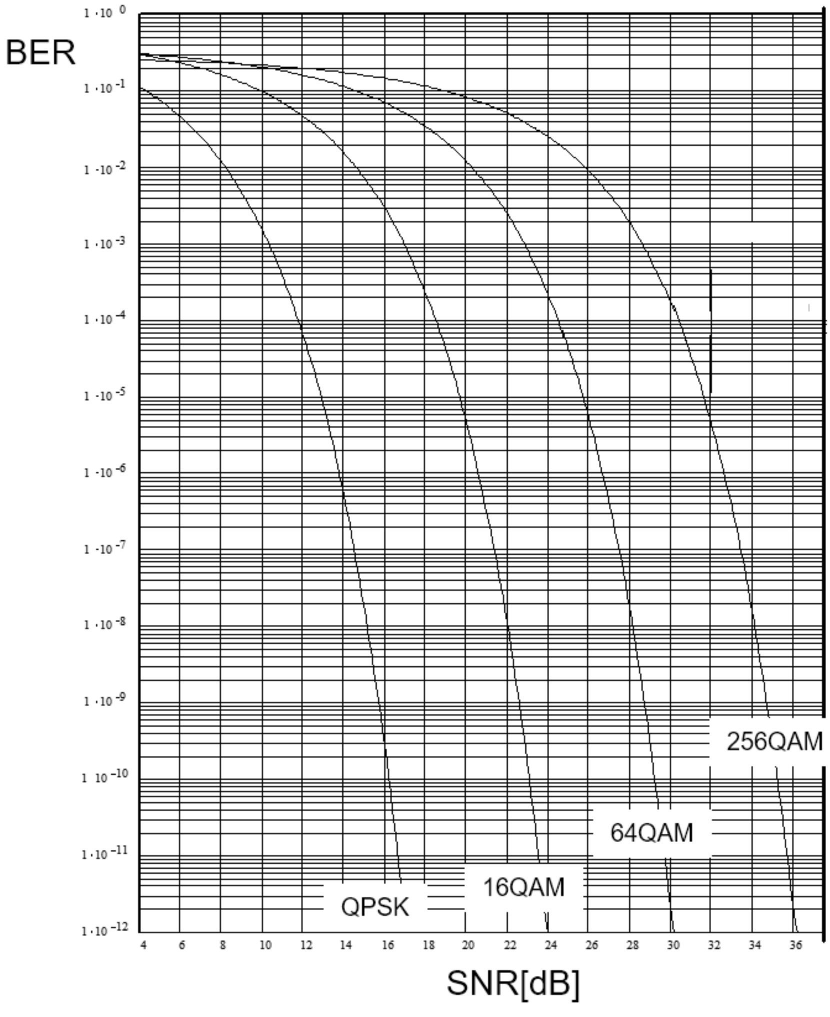


Fig. 16.8. Bit error ratio BER as a function of SNR in DVB-C [EFA]

A slightly defective connecting line between the TV cable socket and the DVB-C receiver is often sufficient to render correct reception impossible. Operation of a DVB-C transmission link which is still quasi error free (QEF) requires a signal to noise ratio SNR of more than 25 dB for 64

QAM and a SNR of 31 dB for 256QAM. The channel bit error ratio, i.e. the bit error ratio before Reed Solomon, is then $2 \cdot 10^{-4}$. The Reed Solomon decoder then corrects errors up to a residual bit error ratio after Reed Solomon of $1 \cdot 10^{-11}$. This corresponds to quasi error free operation (1 error per hour) but is also close to the "brick wall" (or "fall-off-the-cliff"). A little more noise and the transmission will break down abruptly. The SNR (signal to noise ratio) required for the QEF case depends on the degree of modulation. The higher the degree of quadrature amplitude modulation, the more sensitive the transmission system. Fig. 16.5. shows the variation of the bit error ratio with respect to the SNR for QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM and 256QAM.

In CATV networks are both 64QAM-modulated and 256QAM-modulated signals in use. 64QAM require a SNR of more than 25 dB and 256QAM require a SNR of more than 31 dB which then corresponds to operation close to the "brick wall" (or "fall-off-the- cliff").

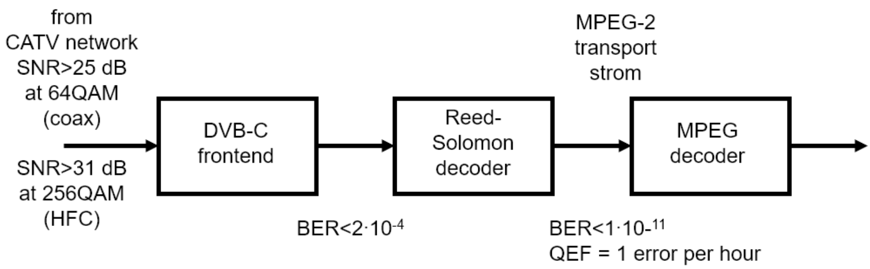


Fig. 16.9. DVB-C Bit error ratios (BER)

In 2009 the second generation cable transmission standard DVB-C2 was published. DVB-C2 will be discussed in chapter 38. DOCSIS is a standard for telephone and fast internet via broadband cable; DOCSIS 3.1 could be maybe the only future technology in broadband cable; this technology will also be described in an extra chapter.

Bibliography: [ETS300429], [ETR290], [EFA], [GRUNWALD], [ITU-T J83]

17 Broadband Cable Transmission According to ITU-T J83B (US)

In North America, a different standard is used for transmitting digital TV signals over broadband cable which is ITU-T J83B.

"J83B" is a part of a document which describes a total of 4 system proposals for broadband cable standards:

- System A corresponds fully to DVB-C (8 MHz bandwidth)
- System B is the currently used US cable standard (6 MHz bandwidth), = J83B
- System C is the Japanese cable standard (largely identical with DVB-C, different roll-off, 6 MHz bandwidth)
- System D is "ATSC for cable" (16VSB, 6 MHz bandwidth, not in use)

In principle, J83B is comparable to J83A, C (Europe, Japan) but there are great differences in detail, especially in the FEC. The channel bandwidth in J83B is 6 MHz as in J83C (Japan). The modulation methods used are only 64QAM and 256QAM with a roll-off factor of r = 0.18 (64QAM) and r = 0.12 (256QAM). The error protection (FEC) is much more elaborate than in J83A or C. This begins with the MPEG framing.

The sync byte in the MPEG-2 transport stream is replaced by a special checksum which is also calculated continuously in parallel at the receiving end as in ATM (asynchronous transfer mode) and is used as criterion for synchronization if they agree.

J83B makes it possible to transmit both an MPEG-2 transport stream and ATM. After replacing the sync byte with a CRC, this is followed by a Reed Solomon block encoder RS(128,122) which, in contrast to J83A, is not set up for the MPEG-2 block structure. In the RS encoder, 6 RS symbols are added to every 122 7-bit long symbols. This makes it possible to repair 3 symbols within 128 symbols at the receiving end, forming a frame of several RS(128,122) packets to which a 42-bit- or 40-bit-long sync trailer is added in which, among other things, the adjustable interleaver length is signalled. The RS encoder is followed by an interleaver which

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_17

conditions a data stream in order to prevent error bursts. A randomizer provides for an advantageous spectral distribution and breaks up long sequences of zeroes and ones in the data stream. The last stage in the FEC is a trellis encoder (convolutional coder) which inserts additional error protection and, naturally, overhead into the data stream. The data stream conditioned in this way is then 64QAM or 256QAM modulated and then transmitted in the coaxial or fiber-optical broadband cable.

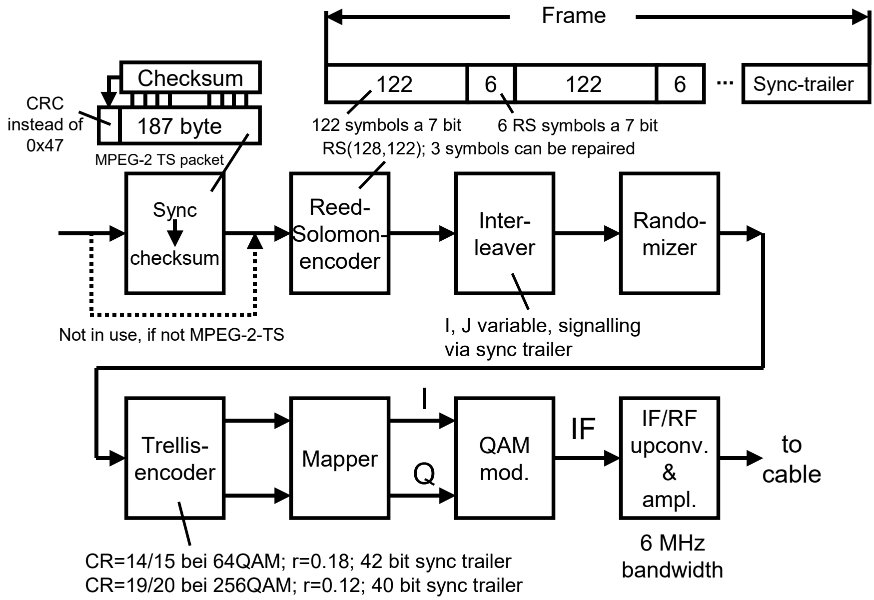


Fig. 17.1. Block diagram of an ITU-T J83B modulator

In addition to J83A, B and C, there is also the J83D Standard described in the same ITU document but this is not being used in practice. J83D corresponds to ATSC (discussed in Chapter 23), the only difference being that 16VSB modulation is proposed here instead of 8VSB.

17.1 J83B Transmission Parameters

The transmission parameters provided in J83B are:

- 64QAM, symbol rate = 5.05641 MS/s, r=0.18, net data rate = 26.970352 Mbit/s
- 256QAM, symbol rate = 5.360537 MS/s, r=0.12, net data rate = 38.810701 Mbit/s.

Fig. 17.2. shows the constellation diagrams used in J83B.

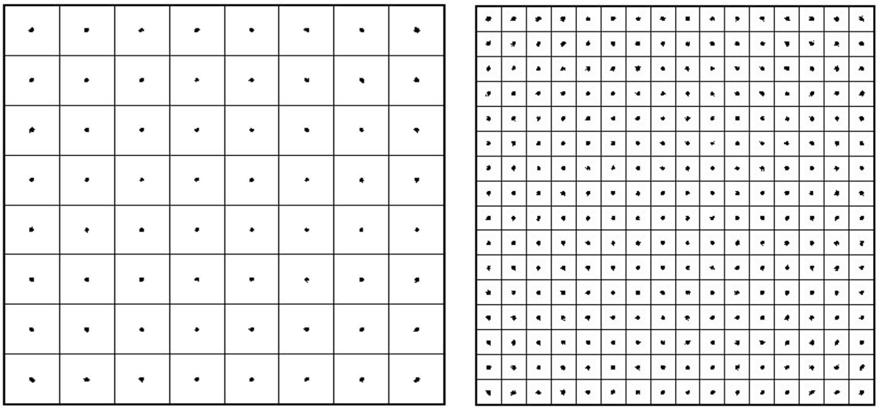


Fig. 17.2. Constellation diagrams in J83B (64QAM left and 256QAM right)

The gross data rates in J83B are calculated as follows:

Gross data rate = Symbolrate • bits/symbol;

64QAM: Gross data rate = 5.05641 MS/s · 6 bits/symbol
= 30.34 Mbit/s;

256QAM: Gross data rate = 5.360537 MS/s · 8 bits/symbol
= 42.88 Mbit/s;

Because the symbol rate is higher with 256QAM, a smaller roll-off-factor of r=0.12 is used there.

17.2 J83B Baseband Input Signals

In contrast to DVB-C, J83B is not tied to the MPEG-2 transport stream as input signal. J83B provides both MPEG-2 transport streams and, e.g., ATM data. There is no coupling between the J83B FEC layer and the input data signal. Should there be an MPEG-2 transport stream, however, the sync byte 0x47 is replaced by a checksum calculated over the entire transport stream packet (similar to the ATM case).

17.3 Forward Error Correction

The error protection in J83B consists of a Reed Solomon RS(128,122) error protection which is composed of 7-bits-long Reed Solomon symbols. It is possible to repair 3 symbols per RS block. An FEC frame starts with a sync trailer which has the following structure:

- 64QAM: 42-bit sync trailer, 0x752C0D6C (28 bits), 4-bit control-word, 10 reserved bits (set to zero)
- 256QAM: 40-bit sync trailer, 0x71E84DD4 (32 bits), 4-bit control word, 4 reserved bits (set to zero).

The FEC frame in J83B consists of

- 60 RS-blocks of 128 RS symbols with a width of 7 bits with 64QAM
- 88 RS-blocks of 128 RS symbols with a width of 7 bits with 256QAM.

The Reed Solomon encoder is followed by the time interleaver (Fig. 17.3.). This has the task of breaking up burst errors into individual errors in the deinterleaver in the receiver. Following that, the data stream is interleaved by mixing with a pseudo random sequence (Fig. 17.4.). The randomizer is reset during the sync trailer. The data stream is then fed to the trellis coder. Trellis coding is a special type of convolutional coding. The trellis coder has one input and N outputs, the number of outputs being matched to the subsequent mapping or to the modulation, respectively. If the selected modulation scheme allows the transmission of N bits per symbol, the trellis coder will have N outputs. Trellis coding can be traced back to Gottfried Ungerböck (IBM, 1982) and was used for the first time in telephone modems.

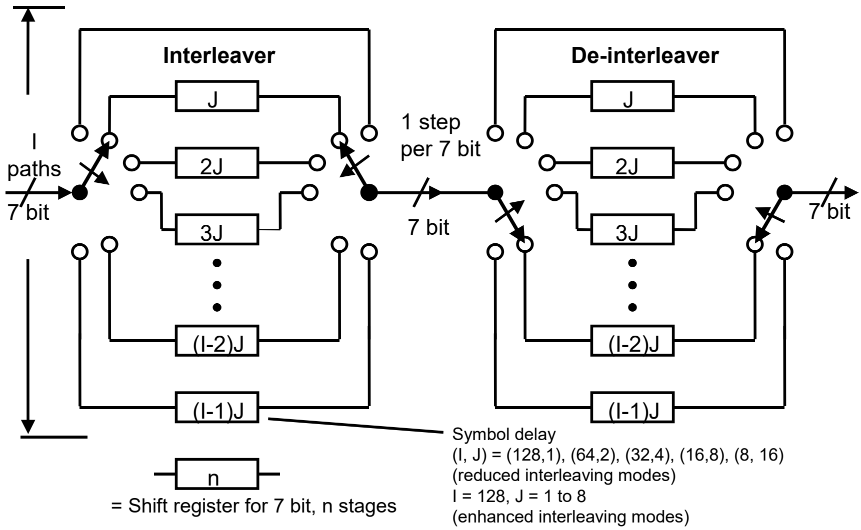


Fig. 17.3. Time interleaver

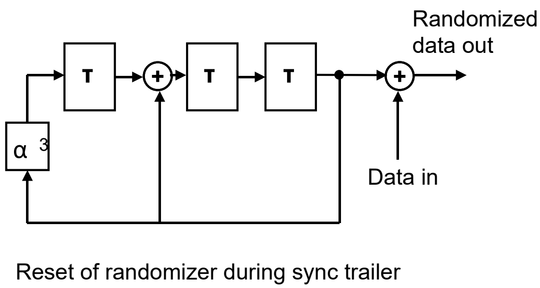


Fig.17.4. Randomizer

The subsequent modulation is a combination of coherent and differential modulation. Due to the N x 90^0 uncertainty in the QAM modulation, the quadrant is mapped differentially. The trellis coder in J83B consists of a parser which supplies 4 or 6 bits directly to the mapper, and a differential precoder followed by convolutional coders which process the two bits contained in the quadrants. A total of 6 or 8 bits, respectively, are then mapped. The input signal of the parser is formed by groups of 7 bits each (a total of 28 or 38 bits, resp.). The parser is responsible for forming the groups and also alters their sequential order in accordance with a defined arrangement.

17.4. Calculation of the Net Data Rate

In J83B, the net data rate is calculated with knowledge of the gross data rate, the error protection used and the J83B frame structure. There is no frame structure in DVB-S and DVB-C which is why the net data rate can be calculated there in a relatively simple way. It is even more complex in the case of standards like DVB-T and especially with the new DVB standards. The formula for calculating the net data rate with J83B is:

Net data rate = Gross data rate · f1 · f2 · f3;

where
f1 = 122/128 = 0.953125 = Reed Solomon factor;
f2 = frame_size_factor = f4/(f4+f5);
f3 = code_rate;
f4 = bits_per_frame_without_trailer;
f5 = bits_per_trailer;

With 64QAM, this results in:

f4 = 60 · 128 · 7 bits = 53760 bits;
f5 = 42 bits;
f2 = 53760/(53760 + 42) = 0.9992;
f3 = 14/15 = 0.93333;

Net data rate = 30.34 Mbit/s · 0.9992 · 0.93333 = 26.97 Mbit/s;

and with 256QAM:

f4 = 88 · 128 · 7 bits = 78848 bits;
f5 = 40 bits;
f2 = 78848/(78848 + 40) = 0.9995;
f3 = 19/20 = 0.95;

Net data rate = 42.88 Mbit/s · 0.953125 · 0.9995 = 38.81 Mbit/s;

17.5 Roll-off Filtering

In J83B, two different roll-off factors are possible depending on the type of modulation selected, which are:

- with 64QAM, r=0.18
- and with 256QAM, r=0.12.

Fig. 17.8. shows the spectra with 64QAM and 256QAM. The different roll-off factors can be clearly seen.

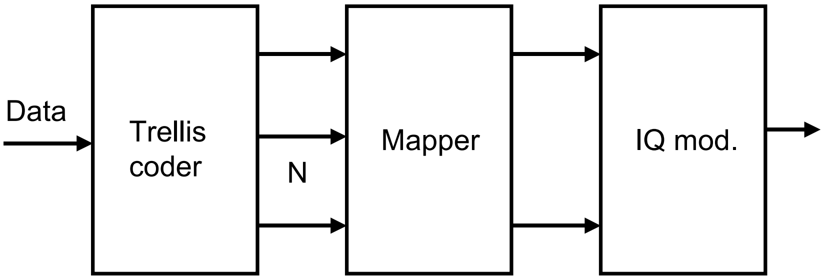


Fig. 17.5. Principle of trellis coded modulation (TCM)

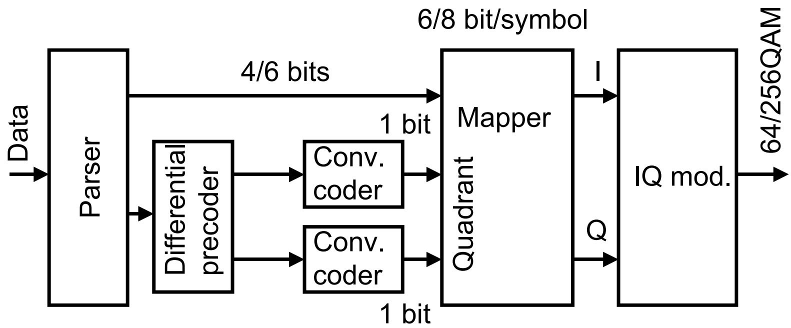


Fig. 17.6. Trellis-coded modulation in J83B

17.6 Fall-off-the-Cliff

Due to the fact that J83B uses two error protection mechanisms, there are, in principle, three possible bit error ratios in the receiver which are

- the bit error ratio before Viterbi,
- the bit error ratio before Reed-Solomon
- and the bit error ratio after Reed-Solomon.

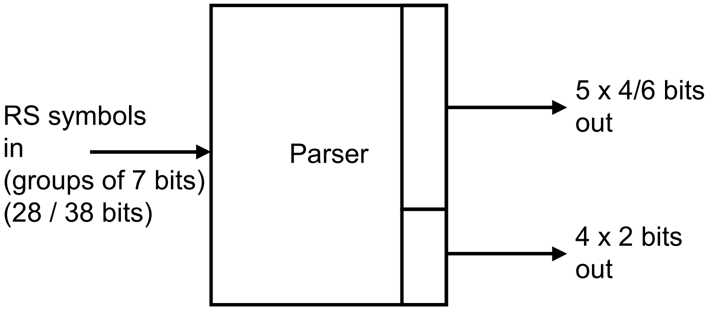


Fig. 17.7. Parser

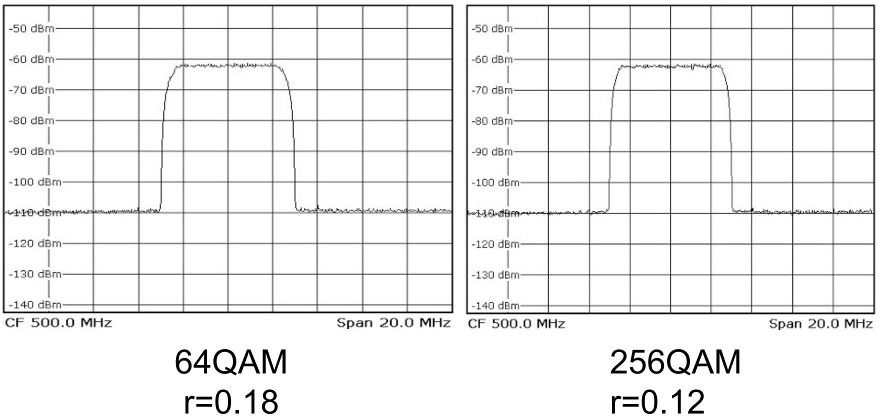


Fig. 17.8. Spectra of 64QAM and 256QAM

With trellis coding, the bit error ratio before Viterbi cannot be measured technically because of ambiguities in the receiver in the Viterbi decoding. With J83B, the transmission system is "at-the-cliff" (approx.)

- 64QAM with a CNR of 22 dB
- 256QAM with a CNR of 28 dB.

This corresponds to a bit error ratio before Reed-Solomon of

$1.4 \cdot 10^{-4}$ and are experimental values and this values are not from the J83B-standard (no information from the standard available).

Bibliography: [ITUJ83], [EFA], [SFQ], [SFU], [ETL], [BTC]

18 Measuring Digital TV Signals in the Broadband Cable

In contrast to the measuring techniques used on digital TV signals transmitted via satellite, a wider range of measuring techniques is provided for broadband cable testing and is also necessary. The influences acting on the broadband cable signal, which can be modulated with up to 256QAM, are more varied by far, and more critical than in the satellite domain. In this section, the test instruments and measuring methods for measurements on DVB-C and J83A, B, C signals will be discussed. A large amount of space is reserved for the so-called constellation analysis of I/Q modulated signals which is also encountered in DVB-T. The influences or parameters to be considered in cable transmission are:

- Signal level
- CNR (Carrier to Noise Ratio) and SNR (Signal to Noise Ratio)
- I/Q modulator errors
- Interferers
- Phase jitter
- Echoes in the cable
- Frequency response
- Bit error ratio
- Modulation error ratio and error vector magnitude

To be able to detect and evaluate these influences, the following test instruments are used:

- An modern spectrum analyzer
- A test receiver with constellation analysis
- A test transmitter with integrated noise generator and/or channel simulator for stress testing DVB-C and J83A, B, C receivers

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_18

18.1 DVB-C/J83A, B, C Test Receivers with Constellation Analysis

The most important test instrument for measuring digital TV signals in broadband cable networks is a DVB-C/J83A, B, C test receiver with an integrated constellation analyzer. Such a test receiver operates as follows:

The digital TV signal is received by a high-quality cable tuner which converts it to IF. The TV channel to be received is then band limited to 8, 7 or 6 MHz by an IF filter, thus suppressing adjacent channels. The TV channel is then usually down-converted to an even lower 2nd IF. The IF signal, which has been filtered with an anti-aliasing-type low-pass filter, is then sampled with an A/D converter and demodulated in the DVB-C/J83A, B, C demodulator. During this process, a signal processor accesses the demodulator at the I/Q level and detects the constellation points as hit frequencies in the I and Q direction in the decision fields of the QAM constellation diagram. This provides frequency distributions (‘clouds’) around the individual constellation points - there are 64QAM clouds in the case of 64QAM. The individual QAM parameters are then determined by mathematical analyses of the frequency distributions. In addition, the constellation diagram itself is displayed graphically and can then be assessed visually. The signal is then also demodulated to become the MPEG-2 transport stream which can be supplied to an MPEG-2 analyzer for further analyses.

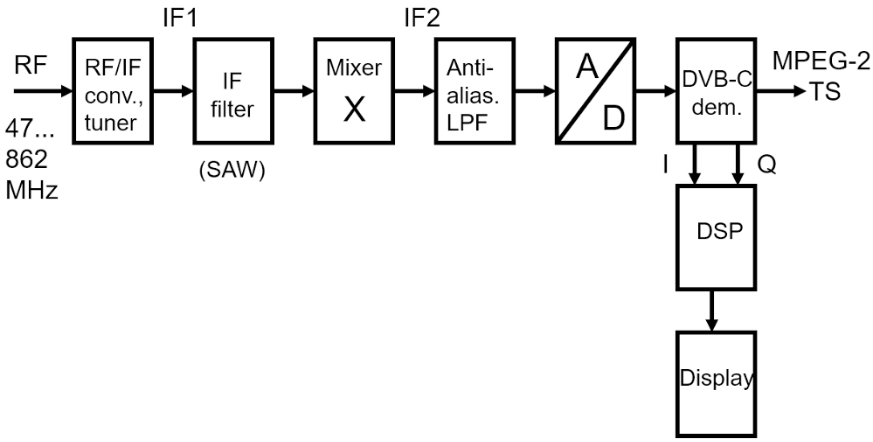


Fig. 18.1. Block diagram of a DVB-C/J83A, B, C test receiver with constellation analyzer

If the correct DVB-C or J83A, B, C signal is present at the test receiver and all settings at the receiver have been selected so that it can correctly lock to the QAM signal, a constellation diagram with constellation points of varying size (Fig. 18.2.) and the appearance of noise clouds is obtained. The size of the constellation points depends on the magnitude of the interference effects. The smaller the constellation points, the better the signal quality.

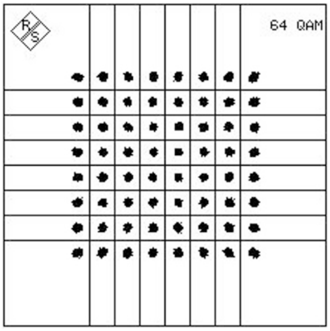


Fig. 18.2. Correctly locked 64QAM constellation diagram with noise

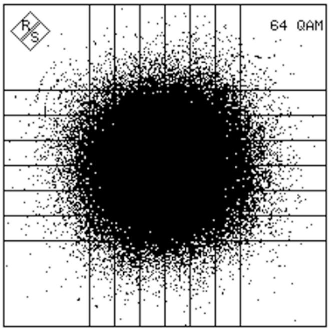


Fig. 18.3. No QAM signal in the selected channel, only noise

For the receiver to lock up in DVB-C and J83A, B, C, the following adjustment parameters of the test receiver must be selected correctly:

- Channel frequency: channel band center, approx. 47 to 862 MHz
- Standard: DVB-C/J83A, J83B or J83C

- Channel bandwidth: 6, 7, 8 MHz
- QAM level: 16QAM, 32QAM, 64QAM, 128QAM, 256QAM
- Symbol rate: approx. 2 to 7 MS/s
- IF filter: nowadays not selectable, always ON
- Input attenuation control: to AUTO if provided

If there is simply no signal in the selected RF channel, the constellation analyzer of the test receiver will display a completely noisy constellation diagram (Fig. 18.3.) which exhibits no regular features whatever. It appears like a giant constellation point in the center of the display, but without sharp contours.

If accidentally an analog channel has been selected instead of, e.g. a DVB-C channel, constellation diagrams like Lissajou figures are produced which change continuously depending on the current content of the analog TV channel. If, however, there is a QAM signal in the selected channel but some of the receiver parameters have been selected wrongly (RF not exactly right, maybe the wrong symbol rate, wrong QAM level etc), a giant constellation point with much sharper contours appears.

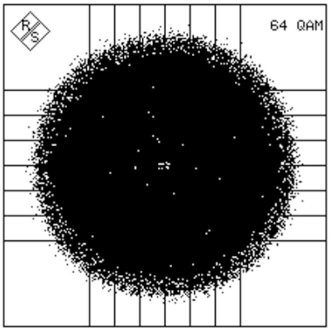


Fig. 18.4. Constellation diagram with the wrong carrier frequency and wrong symbol Rate selected (completely unsynchronized)

If all parameters have been selected correctly and only the carrier frequency is still divergent, the constellation diagram will rotate. It is then possible to see concentric circles.

An ideal, completely undistorted constellation diagram would show only a single constellation point per decision field in the exact center of the fields (Fig. 18.6.). However, such a constellation diagram can only be generated in a simulation.

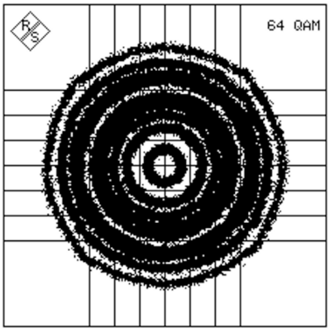


Fig. 18.5. QAM signal with the carrier out of sync

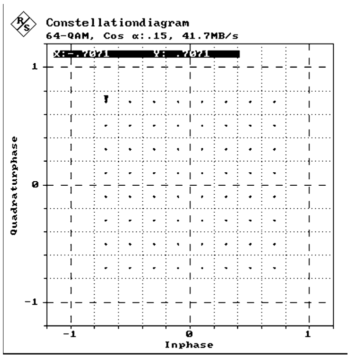


Fig. 18.6. Completely undistorted constellation diagram of an ideal undisturbed 64QAM signal

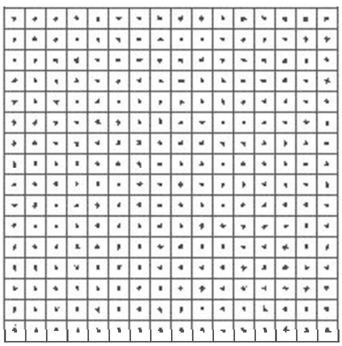


Fig. 18.7. 256QAM modulated DVB-C signal

Today, transmissions of up to 256 QAM are also encountered, mainly in HFC (hybrid fiber coax) networks. Such a constellation diagram is shown in Fig. 18.7.

18.2 Detecting Interference Effects Using Constellation Analysis

In this section, the most important interference effects on the broadband cable transmission link are discussed, and how they are analysed by using the constellation diagram. The following influences can be seen and distinguished directly by means of constellation analysis:

- Additive white Gaussian noise
- Phase jitter
- Interference
- Modulator I/Q errors (nowadays no longer existing problem)

Apart from assessing the constellation diagram purely visually, the following parameters can also be calculated directly from it:

- Signal level
- CNR and SNR ratio
- Phase jitter
- I/Q amplitude imbalance (no longer existing)
- I/Q phase error (no longer existing)
- Carrier suppression (no longer existing)
- Modulation error ratio (MER)
- Error vector magnitude (EVM)

18.2.1 Additive White Gaussian Noise (AWGN)

One interference effect which affects all types of transmission links in the same way is the so-called white Gaussian noise (AWGN). This effect can emanate more or less from virtually any point along the transmission link. In the constellation diagram, noise-like effects are recognized from the constellation points which are now of varying size (Fig. 18.8.). To measure the RMS value of the noise-like interferer, the hits in the individual areas are counted within the individual constellation fields, i.e., the frequency with which the center and the areas around it are hit at ever increasing distance is detected. If these hits or counts within a constellation field were to be displayed multi-dimensionally, a two-dimensional bell-shaped Gaussian curve would be obtained (Fig. 18.9.).

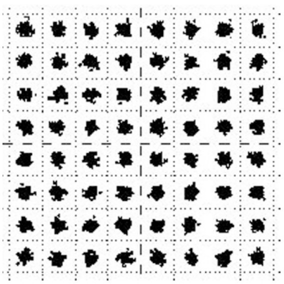


Fig. 18.8. Constellation diagram of a 64QAM signal with additive noise

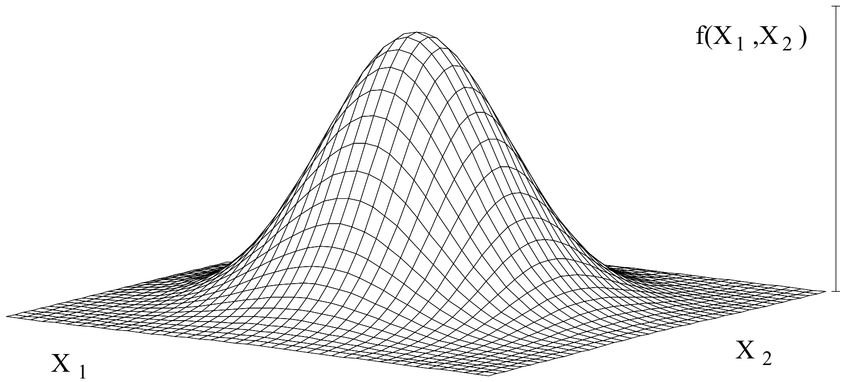


Fig. 18.9. Two-dimensional bell-shaped Gaussian curve [EFA]

This two-dimensional distribution will then be found similarly in every constellation field. To find the RMS value of the noise effect, the standard deviation is then simply calculated from these hit results. The standard deviation corresponds directly to the RMS value of the noise signal. Relating this RMS value N to the amplitude of the QAM signal S allows the logarithmic signal/noise ratio SNR in dB to be calculated by taking the logarithm.

A normal frequency distribution can be described by the Gaussian normal distribution function as:

$$y(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma \cdot \sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-0.5 \cdot (\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma})^2};$$

where σ = standard deviation, μ = mean value. The standard deviation can be calculated from the counter results as:

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x-\mu)^2 f(x) dx};$$

It can be seen clearly that, in principle, the formula for determining the standard deviation corresponds to the mathematical relationship for calculating the RMS value.

It must be noted, however, that it is not only noise but also impulse interferers or intermodulation and cross-modulation products which, due to non-linearities on the transmission link, can cause comparable noise-cloud-like distortions in the constellation diagram and thus can not be distinguished from actual noise.

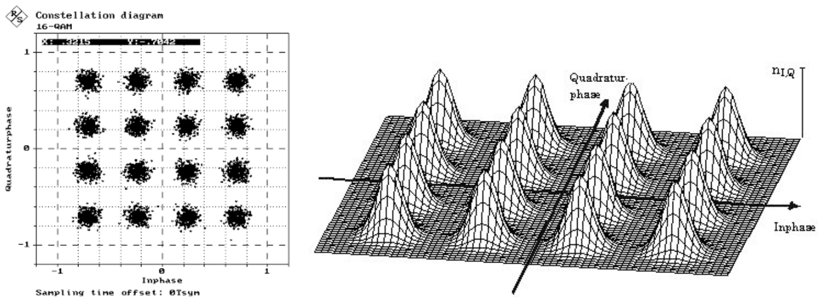


Fig. 18.10. Two-dimensional hit-rates in the 16QAM constellation diagram [HOFMEISTER]

In principle, there are two definitions for the signal-to-noise level: the signal-to-noise ratio SNR and the carrier-to-noise ratio CNR. Each can be converted to the other one. The CNR is always referred to the actual bandwidth of the channel which is 6, 7 or 8 MHz on broadband cable networks. SRN refers to the conditions after roll-off filtering and to the actual Nyquist bandwidth of the signal. The symbol rate of the signal should be used for signal bandwidth and for noise bandwidth. But basically it is recommended to use the symbol rate also as reference bandwidth for the noise bandwidth in measuring CNR, providing an unambiguous definition for the CNR ratio as proposed, e.g., in the DVB Measurement Guidelines [ETR290].

The signal power S is obtained from the carrier power C, as

S = C[dBm] + 10 log(1 - r/4);

where r is the roll-off factor.

The logarithmic signal-to-noise ratio SNR is, therefore:

SNR[dB] = CNR[dB] + 10 log(1-r/4);

Example:
Channel bandwidth: 8 MHz
Symbol rate: 6.9 MS/s
Roll-off factor: 0.15

SNR[dB] = CNR[dB] + 10 log(1-0.15/4)
= CNR[dB] - 0.1660 dB;

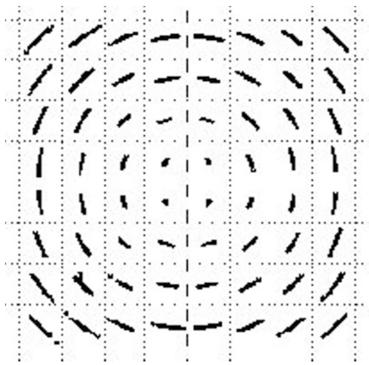


Fig. 18.11. State diagram of a 64QAM signal with phase jitter

18.2.2 Phase Jitter

Phase jitter or phase noise in the QAM signal is caused by converters in the transmission path or by the I/Q modulator itself. In the constellation diagram, phase jitter produces smear distortion of greater or lesser magnitude (Fig. 18.11.). The constellation diagram ‘totters’ in rotation around the center point.

To find the phase jitter, the smear distortions of the outermost constellation points are measured which is where the phase jitter has the greatest effect. Then the frequency distribution within the decision field is considered along the circular path whose center point is at the origin of the state diagram. Again, the standard deviation which is still affected by additional noise can be calculated here. This noise effect must then still be calculated out.

18.2.3 Sinusoidal Interferer

A sinusoidal interferer (Fig. 18.12.) produces circular distortions of the constellation points. These circles are the result of the interference vector rotating around the center of the constellation point. The diameter of the circles corresponds to the amplitude of the sinusoidal interferer.

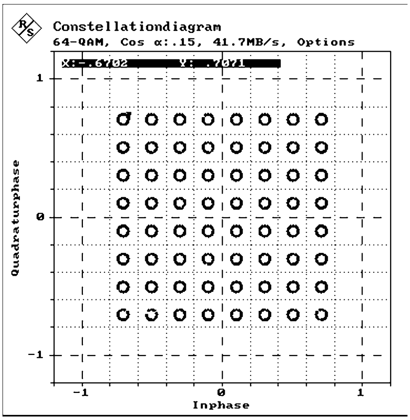


Fig. 18.12. Effect of a sinusoidal interferer

18.2.4 Effects of the I/Q Modulator

In the first generation of DVB-C modulators, analog I/Q modulators were used. Errors in the I/Q modulator (Fig. 18.13.) then resulted in I/Q errors in the QAM-modulated signal. If, e.g., the I branch has a different gain than the Q branch of the I/Q modulator, I/Q amplitude imbalance is produced. If the 90° phase shifter in the carrier feed to the Q modulator is not exactly 90 degrees, an I/Q phase error is produced. Lack of carrier suppression was an even more frequent problem. This is caused by carrier cross-talk or by some DC component in the I or Q modulation signal. Today, the I/Q modulators in broadband cable are exclusively digital and the problems of the I/Q modulator described are no longer relevant. They will only be mentioned briefly here for the sake of completeness.

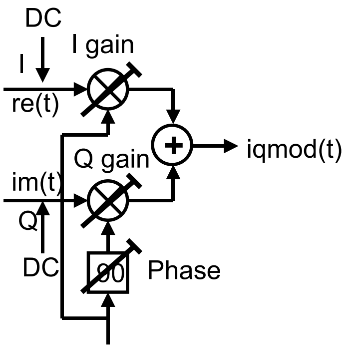


Fig. 18.13. IQ modulator with IQ errors

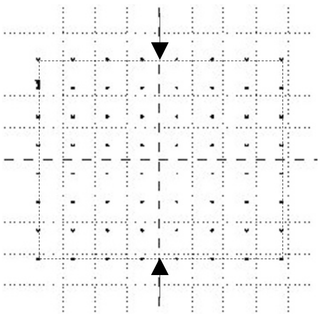


Fig. 18.14. Constellation diagram with IQ imbalance

18.2.4.1 I/Q Imbalance

In the case of an I/Q imbalance, the constellation diagram is squashed in the I or Q direction resulting in a rectangular diagram instead of a square one (Fig. 18.14.). The amplitude imbalance can be determined by measuring the lengths of the sides of the rectangle. It is defined as

$$AI = (v_2/v_1 - 1) \cdot 100\%;$$

where v_1 is the gain in the I direction or I side of the rectangle, and v_2 is the gain in the Q direction or Q side of the rectangle.

18.2.4.2 I/Q Phase Error

An I/Q phase error (PE) (Fig. 18.15.) leads to a diamond-shaped constellation diagram. The phase error in the 90° phase shifter of the I/Q modulator can be determined from the angles of the diamond in the constellation diagram. The acute angle then has a value of 90° - PE and the obtuse angle has a value of 90° + PE.

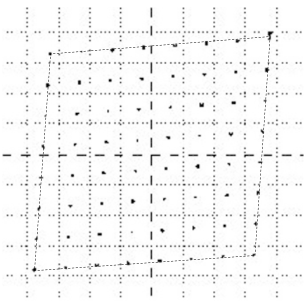


Fig. 18.15. Constellation diagram with an IQ phase error

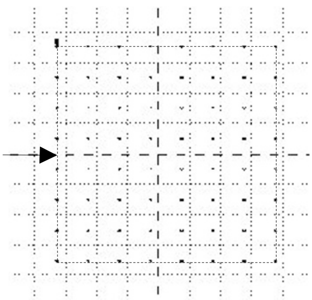


Fig. 18.16. Constellation diagram with insufficient carrier suppression

18.2.4.3 Carrier Suppression

In the case of insufficient carrier suppression (Fig. 18.16.), the constellation diagram is pushed away from the center in some direction. The degree of carrier suppression can be calculated from the magnitude of the displacement.

It is defined as:

$$CS = -10 \log(P_{RC}/P_{SIG}); \text{ [dB]}$$

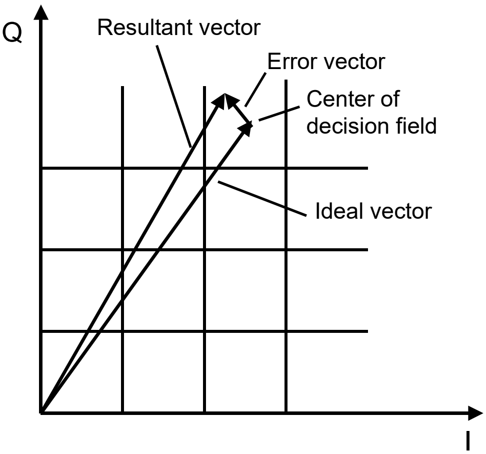


Fig. 18.17. Error vector for determining the modulation error ratio (MER)

18.2.5 Modulation Error Ratio (MER)

All the interference effects on a digital TV signal in broadband cable networks previously explained cause the constellation points to exhibit deviations from their nominal position in the center of the decision fields. If the deviations are too great, the decision thresholds will be exceded and bit errors are produced. However, the deviations from the decision field center can also be considered to be measurement parameters for the size of any interference quantity. Which is precisely the object of an artificial measurement parameter like the modulation error ratio (MER). The MER measurement assumes that the actual hits in the constellation fields have been pushed out of the center of the respective field by interference quantities (Fig. 18.17.). The interference quantities are given error vectors and the error vector points from the center of the constellation field to the point of the actual hit in the constellation field. Then the lengths of all these error vectors are measured against time in each constellation field and the quadratic mean is formed or the maximum peak value is acquired in a time window. The exact definition of MER can be found in DVB Measurement Guidelines [ETR290].

$$MER_{PEAK} = \frac{\max(|error\_vector|)}{U_{RMS}} \cdot 100\%;$$

$$MER_{RMS} = \frac{\sqrt{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}(|error\_vector|)^2}}{U_{RMS}} \cdot 100\%;$$

The reference U_{RMS} is here the RMS value of the QAM signal. Usually, however, a logarithmic scale is used:

$$MER_{dB} = 20\lg\left(\frac{MER[\%]}{100}\right); \qquad [dB]$$

The MER value is thus an aggregate quantity which includes all possible individual errors and thus completely describes the performance of the transmission link.

In principle:

MER [dB] ≤ SNR [dB];

Table 18.1. MER and EVM

QAM	MER>EVM [%]	EVM>MER [%]	MER>EVM [dB]	MER>EVM [dB]
4	EVM=MER	MER=EVM	|EVM|=MER	MER=|EVM|
16	EVM= MER/1.342	EVM= MER·1.342	|EVM|= MER +2.56dB	MER= |EVM| -2.56dB
32	EVM= MER/1.304	EVM= MER·1.304	|EVM|= MER +2.31dB	MER= |EVM| -2.31dB
64	EVM= MER/1.527	EVM= MER·1.527	|EVM|= MER +3.68dB	MER= |EVM| -3.68dB
128	EVM= MER/1.440	EVM= MER·1.440	|EVM|= MER +3.17dB	MER= |EVM| -3.17dB
256	EVM= MER/1.627	EVM= MER·1.627	|EVM|= MER +4.23dB	MER= |EVM| -4.23dB

18.2.6 Error Vector Magnitude (EVM)

The error vector magnitude (EVM) is closely related to the modulation error ratio (MER), the only difference being the different reference used. Whereas in the MER, the reference is the RMS value of the QAM signal, it is the peak value of the QAM signal which is used as reference for the EVM.

EVM and MER can be converted from one to the other with the aid of table 18.1.

18.3 Measuring the Bit Error Ratio (BER)

In DVB-C and in J83A, C, the transmission is protected by Reed Solomon forward error correction RS(204,188). Using 16 error protection bytes per transport stream packet, this protection allows 8 single errors per TS packet to be corrected at the receiving end. Counting the correction events performed by the Reed Solomon decoder at the receiving end and assuming that these are attributable to single errors, and relating them to the incoming bitstream in the comparable period (a transport stream packet has $188 \cdot 8$ useful bits and a total of $204 \cdot 8$ bits), provides the bit error rate, a value between $1 \cdot 10^{-4}$ and $1 \cdot 10^{-11}$.

However, not all the errors can be corrected by the Reed Solomon decoder. Errors in TS packets which are no longer correctable lead to errored packets which are then marked by the transport error indicator in the MPEG-2 transport stream header. Counting the non-correctable errors and relating them to the corresponding data volume allows the post-Reed Solomon bit error ratio to be calculated.

Thus, there are two bit error ratios in DVB-C and J83A, C:

- Bit error ratio before Reed Solomon - the channel bit error ratio
- Bit error ratio after Reed Solomon

The bit error ratio (BER) is defined as:

BER = bit errors / transmitted bits;

The bit error ratio has a fixed relationship to the signal/noise ratio if only noise is involved. This BER vs SNR waterfall diagram is shown in chapter 16 (Fig. 16.8.).

Equivalent Noise Degradation (END):

The equivalent noise degradation is a measure of the ‘insertion loss’ of the entire system from the modulator via the cable link up to the demodulator. It specifies the deviation of the real SNR ratio from the ideal for a BER of $1 \cdot 10^{-4}$ in dB. In practice, values of around 1 dB are achieved.

Noise Margin:

The noise margin is the margin between the CNR ratio leading to a BER of $2 \cdot 10^{-4}$, and the CNR value of the cable system. When the CNR value is measured in the cable, the channel bandwidth of the QAM signal is used as the noise bandwidth.

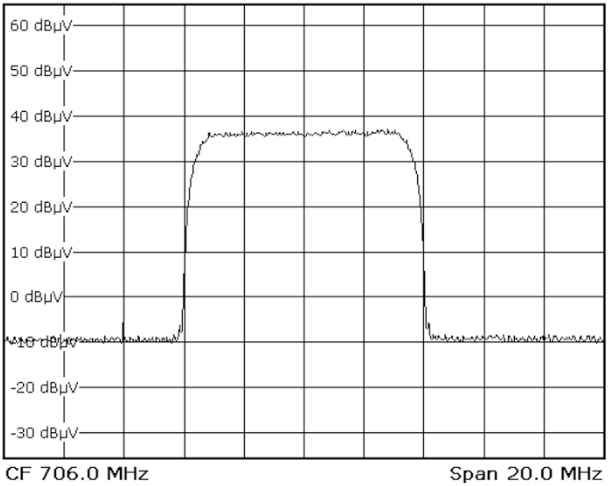


Fig. 18.18. Spectrum of a DVB-C signal

18.4 Using a Spectrum Analyzer for Measuring DVB-C Signals

A spectrum analyzer is a good instrument for measuring the power of the DVB-C channel, at least at the modulation end. A DVB-C signal looks like noise and has quite a high crest factor. Due to its similarity with white Gaussian noise, the power is measured the same way as in a noise power measurement.

To find the DVB-C/J83A,B,C carrier power, the spectrum analyzer is set up as follows:

At the analyzer, a resolution bandwidth of 30 kHz and a video bandwidth of 3 to 10 times the width of the resolution bandwidth (300 kHz) is selected. To achieve some averaging, a slow sweep time (2000 ms) must be set. These parameters are required because we are using the RMS detector of the spectrum analyzer. The following settings are then used:

- Center frequency: center of the cable channel
- Span: 10 MHz
- Resolution BW: 30 kHz
- Video BW: 300 kHz (due to RMS detector and log. display)
- Detector: RMS
- Sweep: slow (2000 ms)
- Noise marker: channel center (C’ in dBm/Hz)

To measure power, the noise marker is used because of the noise-like signal. The noise marker is set to band center for this. The prerequisite is a flat channel which, however, can always be assumed at the modulator. If the channel is not flat, other suitable but analyzer-dependent measuring functions must be used for measuring the channel power.

The analyzer provides the C’ value as noise power density at the position of the noise marker in dBm/Hz, automatically taking into consideration the filter bandwidth and the characteristics of the logarithmic amplifier of the analyzer. To relate the signal power density C’ to the Nyquist bandwidth B_N of the cable signal. the signal power C must be calculated as follows:

$$C = C' + 10\log B_N$$
$$= C' + 10\log(symbol\_rate / Hz)\ \text{dB}; \qquad [\text{dBm}]$$

The Nyquist bandwidth of the signal corresponds to the symbol rate of the cable signal.

Example:

Measurement value of the noise marker:	-100.0 dBm/Hz
Correction value at 6.9 MS/s symbol rate:	+ 68.4 dB
Power in the channel:	- 31.6 dBm

Finding the Noise Power N by Approximation:

If it were possible to switch off the DVB-C/J83A, B, C signal without changing the noise conditions in the channel, the noise marker in the center of the channel would provide information about the noise conditions in the channel. However, this can not be done so easily. A 'good idea' at least, if not an exact measurement value, about the noise power in the channel is obtained if the noise marker is used for measuring quite near to the signal on the 'shoulder' of the DVB-C/J83A, B, C signal. This is because it can be assumed that the noise fringe within the useful band continues in a similar way to how it appears on the shoulder.

The value N' of the noise power density is output by the spectrum analyzer. To calculate the noise power in the channel having the bandwidth B_K of the cable transmission channel from the noise power density N', the noise power N must be found as follows:

$$N = N' + 10\log(B_N)$$
$$= N' + 10\log(signal\_bandwidth / Hz)\ dB; \qquad [\text{dBm}]$$

The noise bandwidth is recommended by [ETR290] which is, the symbol rate.

Example:

Measurement value of the noise marker:	-140.0 dBm/Hz
Correction value at 8 MHz bandwidth:	+ 68.4 dB
Noise power in the cable channel:	- 71.6 dBm

The resultant CNR value is then:

$$CNR[\text{dB}] = C[\text{dBm}] - N[\text{dBm}];$$

i.e. $$CNR[\text{dB}] = -31.6\text{ dBm} - (-71.6\text{ dBm})$$
$$= 40\text{ dB};$$

18.5 Measuring the Shoulder Attenuation

Out-of-band components close to the wanted DVB-C/J83A,B,C band are recognized from the 'shoulders' of the QAM signal (s. Fig. 18.18. and 18.19.). These shoulders should be suppressed as well as possible so as to cause the least possible interference to the adjacent channels. This is defined as required minimum shoulder attenuation (e.g. 43 dB). The shoulder attenuation is measured by using simple marker functions of the spectrum analyzer.

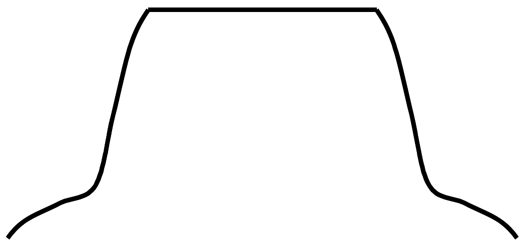


Fig. 18.19. Shoulders on the DVB-C signal

18.6 Measuring the Ripple or Tilt in the Channel

The ripple in the amplitude response of a digital TV channel should be as low as possible (less than 0.4 dB_{PP}). Moreover, the tilt of this channel should not be greater than this value, either. The ripple and tilt of the channel can be measured by using a spectrum analyzer. The correction data of the channel equalizer in the test receiver can also be used for this measurement. Some cable test receivers allow the channel frequency response to be calculated from this.

18.7 DVB-C/J83A/B/C Receiver Test

As in DVB-S and also in DVB-T, the testing of DVB-c receivers (TV receiver or external DVB-C receiver) is very important. The test transmitters can simulate a cable transmission link and the modulation process. Apart from the cable modulator and upconverter, such a test transmitter (e.g. Rohde&Schwarz TV Test Transmitter SFQ, SFU, BTC) also contains an add-on noise source and possibly even a channel simulator. The test transmitter is fed with an MPEG-2 transport stream from an MPEG-2 generator. The output signal of the test transmitter can be supplied directly to the input of the cable receiver. It is then possible to generate various stress conditions for the receiver by altering numerous parameters. It is also possible to measure the bit error rate as a function of the CNR ratio.

Fig. 18.20. Constellation analysis on a DVB-C signal from a test transmitter (Rohde&Schwarz SFQ, bottom left) using a test transmitter (Rohde&Schwarz EFA, top left): An MPEG-2 generator (Rohde&Schwarz DVRG, center left) supplies an MPEG-2 transport stream with test contents which is fed into the test transmitter. The DVB-C receiver EFA displays the DVB-C Signal back into the MPEG-2 transport stream which can then be decoded with an MPEG-2 test decoder (Rohde&Schwarz DVMD, center right). The picture also shows the video analyzer VSA (bottom right), the TV monitor (top center) and a "601" analyzer VCA (top right).

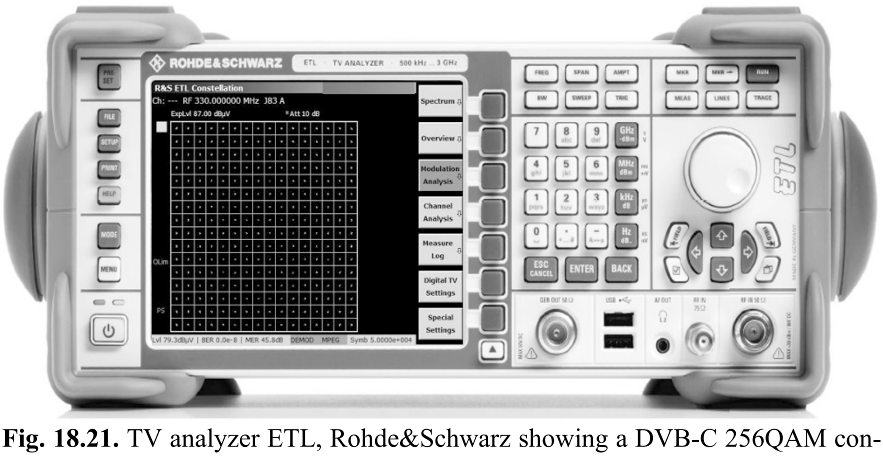


Fig. 18.21. TV analyzer ETL, Rohde&Schwarz showing a DVB-C 256QAM constellation diagram

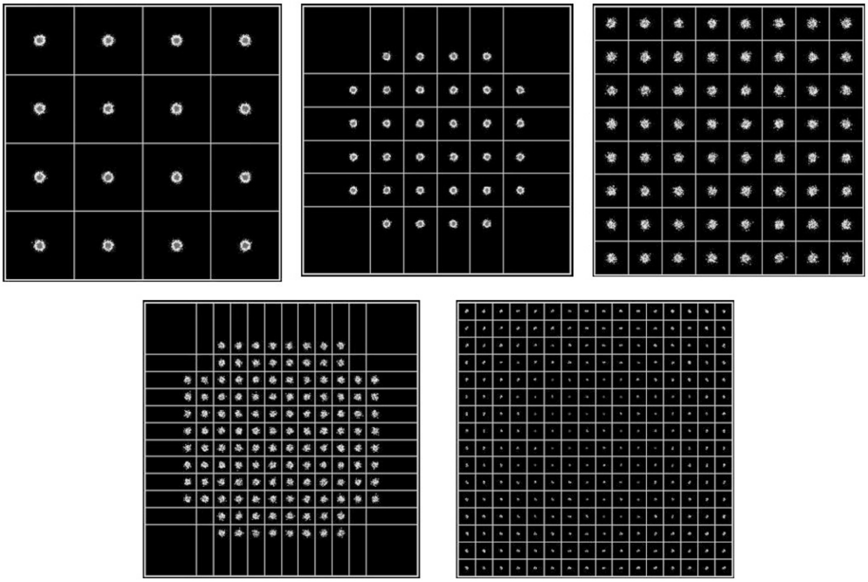


Fig. 18.22. Possible constellation diagrams in DVB-; 16QAM, 32QAM, 64QAM, 128 QAM, 256QAM; recorded with TV Analyzer ETL

Fig. 18.23. DOCSIS Analyzer DSA, Rohde&Schwarz, including a DVB-C Analyzer

Bibliography: [ETR290], [EFA], [SFQ], [HOFMEISTER], [ETS300429], [REIMERS], [GRUNWALD], [JAEGER], [FISCHER3], [SFU], [BTC], [ETL], [DSA]

19 Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex (COFDM)

Almost from the beginning of the electrical transmission of messages about 120 years ago, single-carrier methods have been used for transmitting information. The message to be transmitted is impressed on a sinusoidal carrier by applying analog amplitude, frequency or phase modulation techniques. Since the eighties, single-carrier transmission is more and more by digital methods in the form of frequency shift keying (FSK) and in many cases also by vector modulation (QPSK, QAM). The main applications for this are fax, modem, mobile radio, microwave links and satellite transmission and the transmission of data over broadband cables. However, the characteristics of many transmission paths are such that single-carrier methods prove to be sensitive to interference, complex or inadequate. Since the days of Marconi and Hertz, however, it is precisely these transmission links which are used most frequently. Today, every child knows of transistor radios, television receivers and mobiles or the simple walkie-talkies, all of which operate with a modulated carrier in a terrestrial environment. And every car driver knows the effect of reception of the radio program he is listening to suddenly ceasing when he stops at a red light - he is in a 'dead spot'. Due to multi-path reception, fading occurs which is frequency- and location-selective. In terrestrial radio transmission, narrowband or wideband sinusoidal or impulse-type interferers must also be expected which can adversely affect reception. Location, type and orientation and mobility, i.e. movement, all play a role. This applies both to radio and TV reception and to reception via mobile radios. Terrestrial conditions of reception are the most difficult types of reception of all. This similarly applies to the old two-wire line in the telecommunications field. There can be echoes, crosstalk from other pairs, impulse interferers and amplitude and group delay response. However, the demand for data links with higher bit rates from PC to Internet is increasing more and more. Data rates and transmission technologies via twisted pair telephone cable was changing a lot since the year 2000 up to now from 56 kbit/s single carrier modulation to multicarrier ADSL/VDSL standards with more than 100 Mbit/s. In the terrestrial radio link it is now the broadcasting services, which have always

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_19

had a wide bandwidth such as television with normally up to 8 MHz bandwidth, which are 'crying out' for reliable digital transmission methods. Using a multi-carrier method is one reliable approach to this. The information is transmitted digitally not via one carrier but via many - in some cases thousands of subcarriers with multiple error protection and data interleaving. These methods, which have been known since the seventies, are:

- Coded Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (COFDM)
- Discrete multitone (DMT)

They are used in

- Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB)
- DAB+
- Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB-T)
- Asymmetrical Digital Subscriber Line (ADSL)
- Very High Speed Digital Subscriber Line (VDSL)
- Transmission of data signals via power lines (Power Line)
- ISDB-T
- DTMB
- T-DMB
- WiMAX
- 4G/LTE
- 5G-NR
- DRM
- DVB-T2
- DVB-C2
- DOCSIS3.1
- ATSC3.0

In this Section, the background, characteristics and generation of multi-carrier modulation methods such as coded orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (COFDM) or discrete multitone (DMT) are described.

The concept of multi-carrier modulation goes back to investigations in the Bell Laboratories in the U.S. [CHANG] and to ideas in France in the seventies. In those days, however, chips which were fast enough to implement these ideas were nowhere in sight.

The first COFDM implementation happened in DAB – Digital Audio Broadcasting by beginning of the 1990s. Next standard following was

DVB-T in 1995. Now there are many data transmission standards which using very successfully that multicarrier modulation.

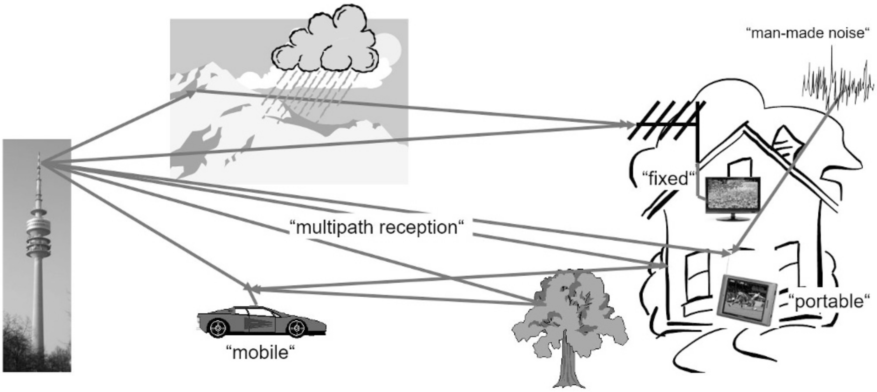


Fig. 19.1. The terrestrial radio channel

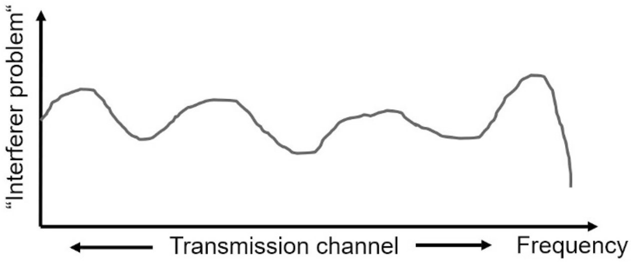


Fig. 19.2. Non-constant interferer problem versus frequency

19.1 Why Multi-Carrier?

Multi-carrier methods belong to the most complicated transmission methods of all. But why this complexity? The reason is simple: the transmission medium is an extremely difficult medium (Fig. 19.1. and Fig. 19.2.) to deal with.

The terrestrial transmission medium involves:

- Terrestrial transmission paths
- Difficult line-associated transmission conditions with non-constant interferer problems (Fig. 19.2.) (line-cross-talk, attenuation, etc.)

The terrestrial transmission paths, in particular, exhibit the following characteristic features:

- Multipath reception via various echo paths caused by reflections from buildings, mountains, trees, vehicles;
- Additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN);
- Narrow-band or wide-band interference sources caused by internal combustion engines, streetcars or other radio sources;
- Doppler effect, i.e. frequency shift in mobile reception.

Multipath reception leads to location- and frequency-selective fading phenomena (Fig. 19.3.), an effect known as “red-light effect” in car radios. The car stops at a red stop light and radio reception ceases. If one were to select another station or move the car slightly forward, reception would be restored. If information is transmitted by only one discrete carrier precisely at one particular frequency, echoes will cause cancellations of the received signal at particular locations at exactly this frequency. This effect is a function of the frequency, the intensity of the echo and the echo delay.

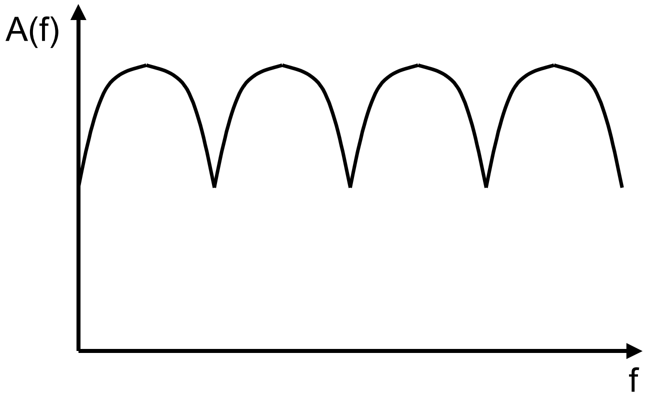


Fig. 19.3. Transfer function of a radio channel with multipath reception, frequency-selective Fading

If high data rates of digital signals are transmitted by vector modulated (I/Q modulated) carriers, they will exhibit a bandwidth which corresponds to the symbol rate.

The available bandwidth is usually specified. The symbol rate is obtained from the type of modulation and the data rate. However, single-carrier methods have a relatively high symbol rate, often within a range of more than 1 MS/s up to 30 MS/s. This leads to very short symbol periods of 1 μs and shorter (inverse of the symbol rate). However, echo delays can easily be within a range of up to 50 μs or more in terrestrial transmission channels. Such echoes would lead to inter-symbol interference between adjacent symbols or even far distant symbols and render transmission more or less impossible. An obvious trick would now be to make the symbol period as long as possible in order to minimize inter-symbol interference and, in addition, pauses could be inserted between the symbols, so-called guard intervals.

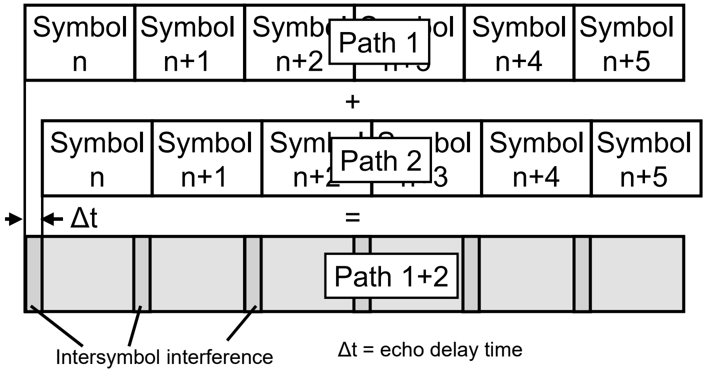


Fig. 19.4. Inter-symbol interference / intersymbol crosstalk with multipath reception

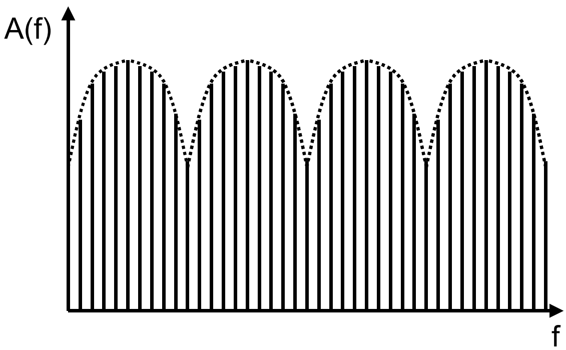


Fig. 19.5. COFDM: multicarrier in radio channel with fading

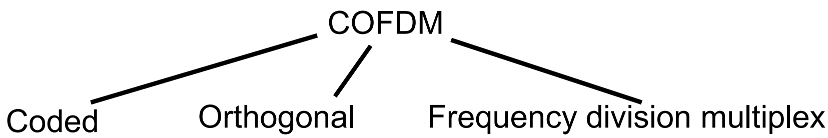
However, there is still the problem of the location- and frequency-selective fading phenomena. If then the information is not transmitted via a single carrier but is distributed over many, up to thousands of subcarriers and a corresponding overall error protection is built in, the available channel bandwidth remaining constant, individual carriers or carrier bands will be affected by the fading, but not all of them.

At the receiving end, sufficient error-free information could then be recovered from the relatively undisturbed carriers to be able to reconstruct an error-free output data stream by means of the error protection measures taken. If, however, many thousands of subcarriers are used instead of one carrier, the symbol rate is reduced by the factor of the number of subcarriers and the symbols are correspondingly lengthened several thousand times up to a millisecond. The fading problem is solved and, at the same time, the problem of inter-symbol interference is also solved due to the longer symbols and the appropriate pauses between them.

A multi-carrier method is born and is called Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex (COFDM). It is now only necessary to see that the many adjacent carriers do not interfere with one another, i.e. are orthogonal to one another.

19.2 What is COFDM?

Orthogonal frequency division multiplex is a multi-carrier method with up to thousands of subcarriers, none of which interfere with each other because they are orthogonal to one another. The information to be transmitted is distributed interleaved to the many subcarriers, first having added the appropriate error protection, resulting in coded orthogonal frequency division multiplex (COFDM). Each of these subcarriers is vector modulated, i.e. QPSK, 16QAM and often up to 64QAM modulated.



COFDM is a composite of orthogonal (at right angles to one another or, in other words, not interfering with one another) and frequency division multiplex (division of the information into many subcarriers in the frequency domain).

In a transmission channel, information can be transmitted continuously or in time slots. It is then possible to transport different messages in the various time slots, e.g. data streams from different sources. This timeslot method has long been applied, mainly in telephony for the transmission of different calls on one line, one satellite channel or also one mobile radio channel. The typical impulse-type interference caused by a mobile telephone conforming to the GSM standard with irradiation into stereo systems and TV sets has its origin in this timeslot method, also called time division multiple access (TDMA) in this case. However, it is also possible to subdivide a transmission channel of a certain bandwidth in the frequency domain, resulting in subchannels into each one of which a subcarrier can be placed. Each subcarrier is modulated independently of the others and carries its own information independently of the other subcarriers. Each of these subcarriers can be vector modulated, i.e. QPSK, 16QAM and often up to 64QAM/256QAM modulated.

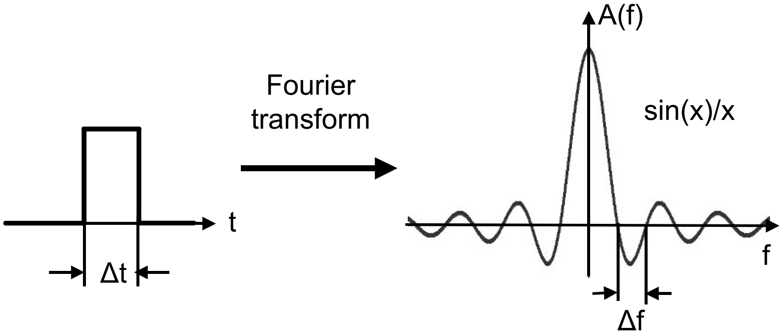


Fig. 19.6. Fourier Transform of a rectangular pulse

All subcarriers are spaced apart by a constant interval Δf. A communication channel can contain up to thousands of subcarriers, each of which could carry the information from a source which would have nothing at all to do with any of the others. However, it is also possible first to provide a common data stream with error protection and then to divide it into the many subcarriers. This is then frequency division multiplex (FDM). Thus, in FDM, a common data stream is split up and transmitted in one channel, not via a single carrier but via many, up to thousands of subcarriers, digitally vector modulated. Since these subcarriers are very close to one another, e.g. with a spacing of a few kHz, great care must be taken to see that these subcarriers do not interfere with one another. The carriers must be orthogonal to each other. The term orthogonal normally stands for ‘at 90 degrees to each other’ but in communications engineering quite generally means signals which do not interfere with one another due to certain characteristics. When will adjacent carriers of an FDM system then influence each other to a greater or lesser extent? Surprisingly, one has to start with a rectangular pulse and its Fourier transform (Fig. 19.6.). A single rectangular pulse of duration Δt provides a sin(x)/x-shaped spectrum in the frequency domain, with nulls spaced apart by a constant $\Delta f = 1/\Delta t$ in the spectrum. A single rectangular pulse exhibits a continuous spectrum, i.e. instead of discrete spectral lines there is a continuous sin(x)/x-shaped curve.

Varying the period Δt of the rectangular pulse varies the spacing Δf of the nulls in the spectrum. If Δt is allowed to tend towards zero, the nulls in the spectrum will tend towards infinity. This results in a Dirac pulse which has an infinitely flat spectrum which contains all frequencies. If Δt tends towards infinity, the nulls in the spectrum will tend towards zero. This results in a spectral line at zero frequency which is DC. All cases in between simply correspond to

$$\Delta f = 1/\Delta t;$$

A train of rectangular pulses of period T_P and pulse width Δt also corresponds to this sin(x)/x-shaped variation but there are now only discrete spectral lines spaced apart by $f_P = 1/T_P$ which, however, conform to this sin(x)/x-shaped variation.

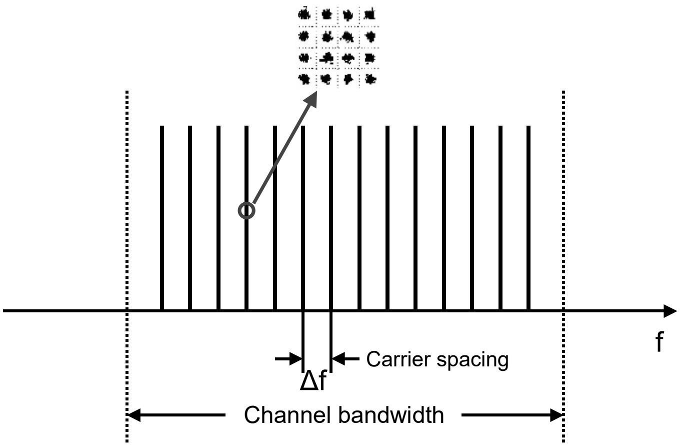


Fig. 19.7. Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex (COFDM)

What then is the relationship between the rectangular pulse and orthogonality? The carrier signals are sinusoidal. A sinewave signal of frequency

$f_S = 1/T_S$ results in a single spectral line at frequency f_S and $-f_S$ in the frequency domain. However, these sinusoidal carriers carry information by amplitude- and frequency-shift keying.

I.e., these sinusoidal carrier signals do not extend continuously from minus infinity to plus infinity but change their amplitude and phase after a particular time Δt. Thus one can imagine a modulated carrier signal to be composed of sinusoidal sections cut out rectangularly, so-called burst packets. Mathematically, a convolution occurs in the frequency domain, i.e. the spectra of the rectangular window pulse and of the sinewave become superimposed. In the frequency domain there is then a sin(x)/x-shaped spectrum at the f_s and $-f_s$ position instead of a discrete spectral line. The nulls of the sin(x)/x spectrum are described by the length of the rectangular window Δt. The space between the nulls is $\Delta f = 1/\Delta t$.

If then many adjacent carriers are transmitted simultaneously, the sin(x)/x-shaped tails produced by the bursty transmission will interfere with the adjacent carriers.

However, this interference is minimized if the carrier spacing is selected in such a way that a carrier peak always coincides with a null of the adjacent carriers. This is achieved by selecting the subcarrier spacing Δf to correspond to the inverse of the length of the rectangular window, i.e. the burst period or symbol period. Such a burst packet with many and often thousands of modulated subcarriers is called a COFDM symbol.

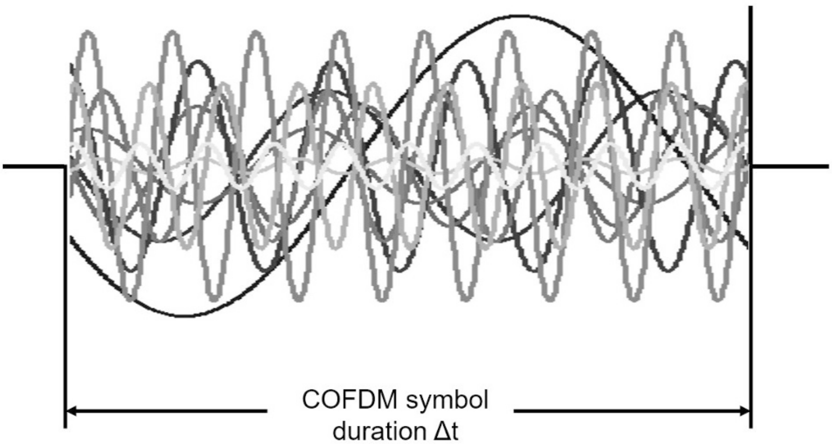


Fig. 19.8. COFDM symbol

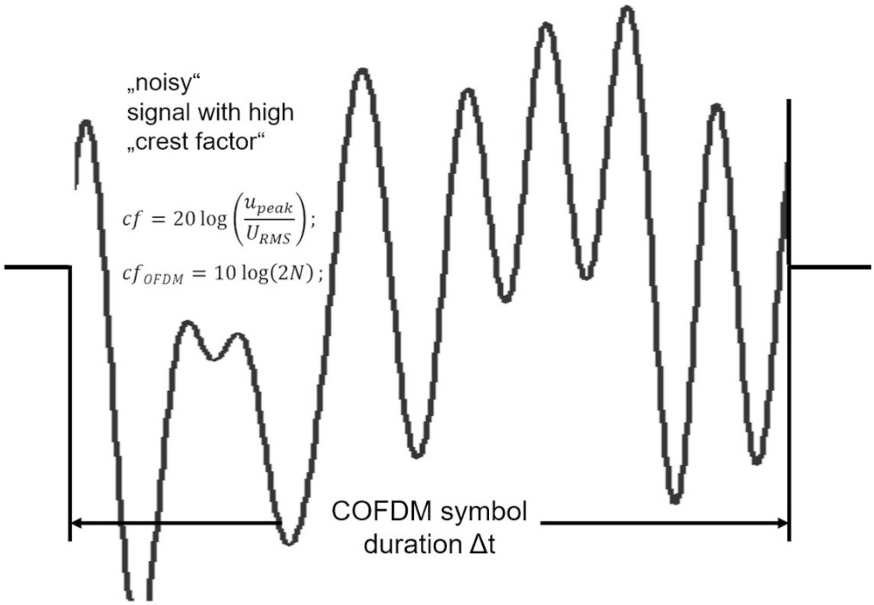


Fig. 19.9. OFDM symbol (all carriers overlayed in time)

The following holds true as COFDM orthogonality condition (Fig. 19.8. and 19.9.):

$$\Delta f = 1/\Delta t;$$

where Δf is the subcarrier spacing and Δt is the symbol period.

If, for example, the symbol period of a COFDM system is known, the subcarrier spacing can be inferred directly, and vice versa.

In DVB-T, the following conditions apply for the so-called 2K and 8K mode (Table 19.1.):

Table 19.1. COFDM modes in DVB-T

Mode	2k	8k
No. of subcarriers	2048	8192
Subcarrier spacing Δf	~ 4 kHz	~ 1 kHz
Symbol duration Δt	1/Δf = ~ 250 μs	~ 1 ms

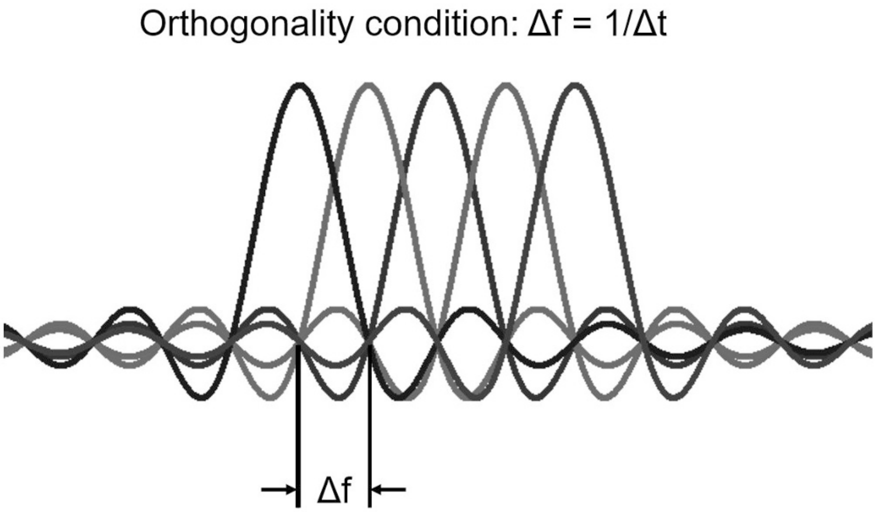


Fig. 19.10. Orthogonality condition in COFDM

19.3 Generating the COFDM Symbols

In COFDM, the information to be transmitted is first error protected, i.e. a considerable overhead is added before this data stream consisting of payload and error protection is impressed on the large number of subcarriers. Each one of these often thousands of subcarriers must then transmit a portion of this data stream. As in the single-carrier method, each subcarrier requires mapping by which the QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM is generated. Each subcarrier is modulated independently of the others. In principle, a COFDM modulator could be imagined to be composed of up to thousands of QAM modulators, each with a mapper. Each modulator receives its own, precisely derived carrier. All the modulation processes are synchronized with one another in such a manner that in each case a common symbol is produced which has the exact length of $\Delta t = 1/\Delta f$. However, this procedure is pure theory: in practice, its costs would be astronomical and it would be unstable but, nevertheless, it serves to illustrate the principle of COFDM.

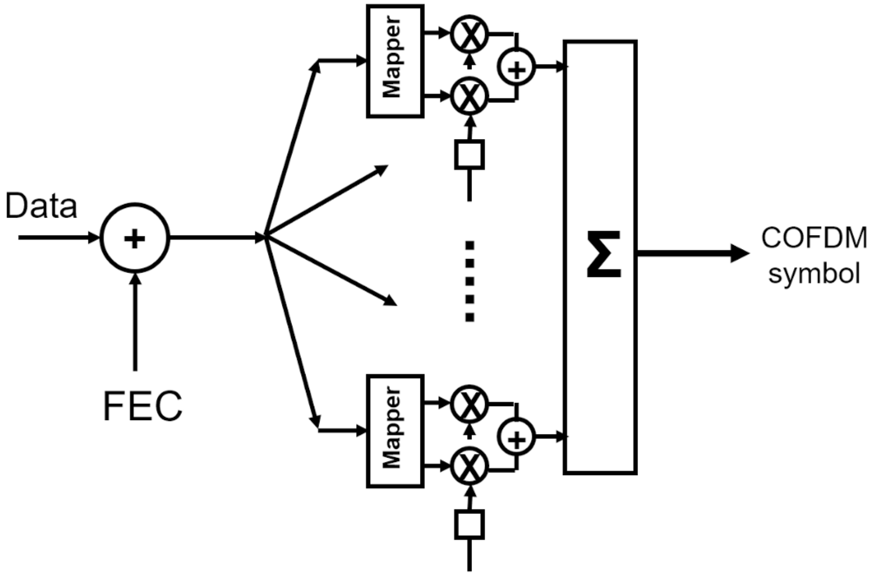


Fig. 19.11. Theoretical block diagram of a COFDM modulator

In reality, a COFDM symbol is generated by a multiple mapping process in which two tables are produced, followed by an Inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT). I.e., COFDM is simply the result of applying numerical mathematics in a high-speed computer (Fig. 19.12.).

The COFDM modulation process is as follows: The error-protected data stream, thus provided with an overhead, is split up and divided as randomly as possible into a large number of up to thousands of substreams, a process called multiplexing and interleaving. Each substream passes packet by packet into a mapper which generates the description of the respective subvector, divided into real and imaginary parts. Two tables are generated with up to many thousands of entries, resulting in a real-part table and an imaginary-part table. This results in the description of the time domain section in the frequency domain. Each subcarrier, which is now modulated, is described as x-axis section and y-axis section or, expressed mathematically, as cosinusoidal and sinusoidal component, or real and imaginary part. These two tables - real table and imaginary table - are now the input signals for the next signal processing block, the Inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT). After the IFFT, the symbol is now available in the time domain. The signal shape has a purely random, stochastic, appearance due to the many thousands of independently modulated subcarriers it contains. From experience, many people find it difficult to visualize how the many carrier are produced which is why the process of modulation with the aid of IFFT will now be described step by step.

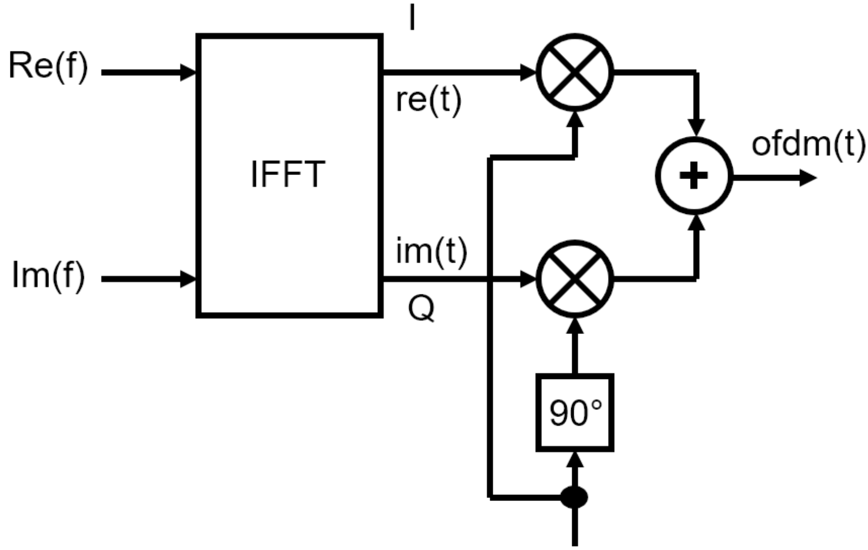


Fig. 19.12. Practical implementation of a COFDM modulator by IFFT

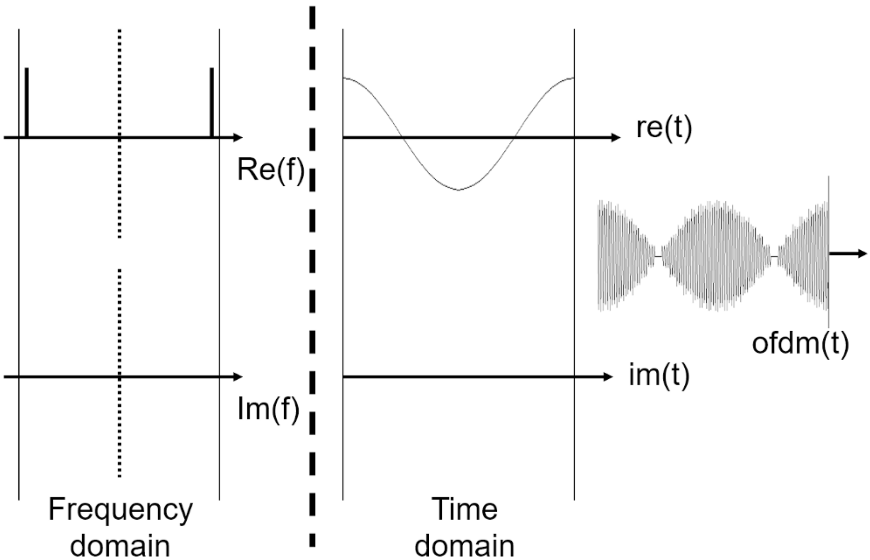


Fig. 19.13. IFFT of a symmetric spectrum

The COFDM modulator shown in Fig. 19.12., which consists of the IFFT block followed by a complex mixer (I/Q modulator), is fed one by one with various real-part and imaginary-part tables in the frequency domain after which the Inverse Fast Fourier Transform is performed and the result is considered at the outputs re(t) and im(t) after the IFFT, i.e. in the time domain, and after the complex mixer.

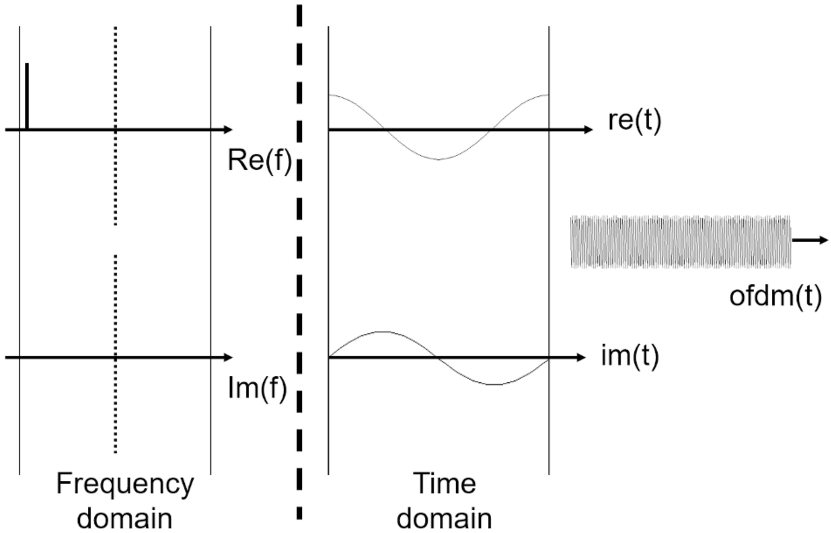


Fig. 19.14. IFFT of a asymmetric spectrum

This begins with a spectrum which is symmetric with respect to the band center of the COFDM channel (Fig. 19.12.). simply consisting of carrier No.1 and N. After the IFFT, an output signal is produced at output re(t) which is purely cosinusoidal. At output im(t), u(t) = 0V is present. A purely real time-domain signal is expected since the spectrum meets the conditions of symmetry required for this. After the I/Q modulator, an amplitude modulated signal with suppressed carrier is produced which is only generated by the real time-domain component (see Fig. 19.13.).

If, however, e.g. the spectral line in the upper range of the band, that is to say the carrier at N, is suppressed and only the component at carrier No.1 is left, a complex time-domain signal is obtained due to the asymmetric spectrum (Fig, 19.14. and 19.15.). At output re(t) after the IFFT, a cosinusoidal signal with half the amplitude as before is now present. In addition, the IFFT now supplies a sinusoidal output signal of the same frequency and the same amplitude at output im(t). This produces a complex signal in the time domain. If this, i.e. re(t) and im(t), is fed into the following I/Q modulator, the modulation disappears, resulting in a single sinusoidal oscillation converted into the carrier frequency band. A single-sideband modulated signal is produced and the arrangement now represents an SSB modulator. Changing the frequency of the stimulating quantity at the frequency level only changes the frequency of the cosinusoidal and sinusoidal output signals at re(t) and im(t). re(t) and im(t) have exactly the same amplitude and frequency and a phase difference of 90 degrees as before. The decisive factor in understanding this type of COFDM implementation is that, in principle, this mutual relationship applies to all subcarriers. For every subcarrier, im(t) is always at 90 degrees to re(t) and has the same amplitude.

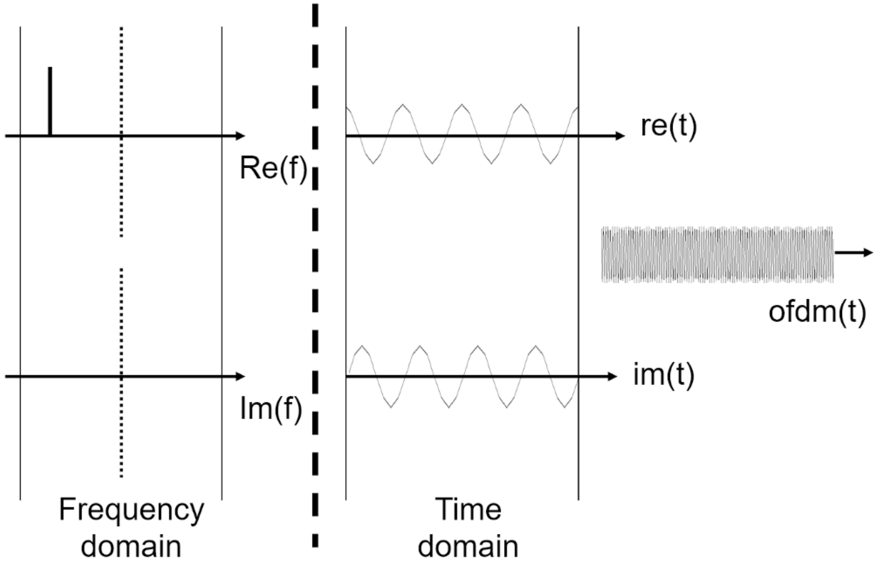


Fig. 19.15. IFFT with altered frequency

Including more and more carriers produces a signal with ever more random appearance for re(t) and im(t), the real and imaginary part-signals having a 90° phase relation to one another in the time domain.

im(t) is said to be the Hilbert Transform of re(t). This transform can be imagined to be a 90° phase shifter for all spectral components. If both time domain signals are fed into the I/Q modulator following, the actual COFDM symbol is produced. In each case, the corresponding upper or lower COFDM subband is suppressed by this type of modulation, providing a thousandfold phase-shift-type single-sideband modulator. Many references, some of which date back more than 40 years, contain notes regarding single-sideband modulators of this phase-shifting type. It is only due to the fact that each subcarrier at re(t) and im(t) has the same amplitude and they are at precisely 90 degrees to one another that the upper COFDM sideband does not produce crosstalk in the lower one, and vice versa, with respect to the center frequency.

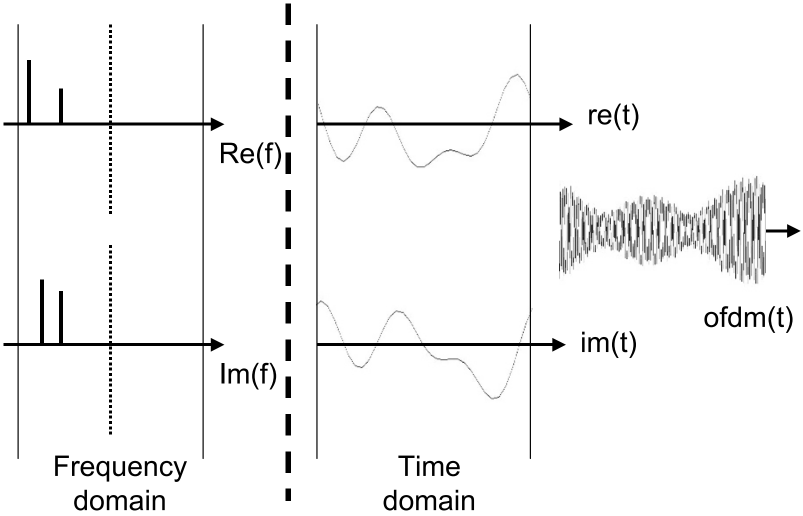


Fig. 19.16. COFDM with 3 carriers

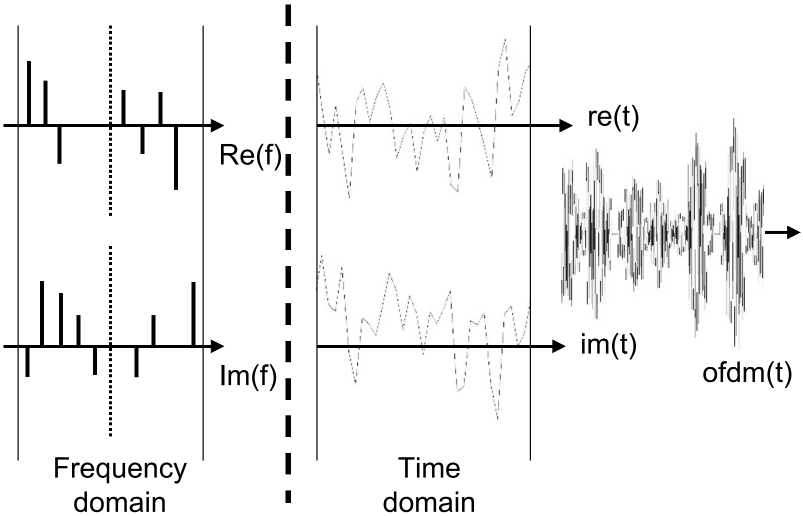


Fig. 19.17. COFDM with 12 carriers

Since nowadays analog, i.e. non-ideal, I/Q modulators are very often used because of the direct modulation method, the effects arising can only be explained in this way.

The more carriers (Fig. 19.16., Fig. 19.17.), the more random the appearance of the corresponding COFDM symbol. Even just 12 single carriers placed in relatively random order with respect to one another result in a COFDM symbol with stochastic appearance. The symbols are calculated and generated section by section in pipeline fashion. The same number of data bits are always combined and modulated onto a large number of up to thousands of COFDM subcarriers. Firstly, real- and imaginary-part tables are produced in the frequency domain and then, after the IFFT, tables for re(t) and im(t) which are stored in downstream memories. Period by period, a COFDM symbol of the exact constant length of $\Delta t = 1/\Delta f$ is then generated. Between these symbols, a guard interval of defined but often adjustable length is maintained (Fig. 19.18.).

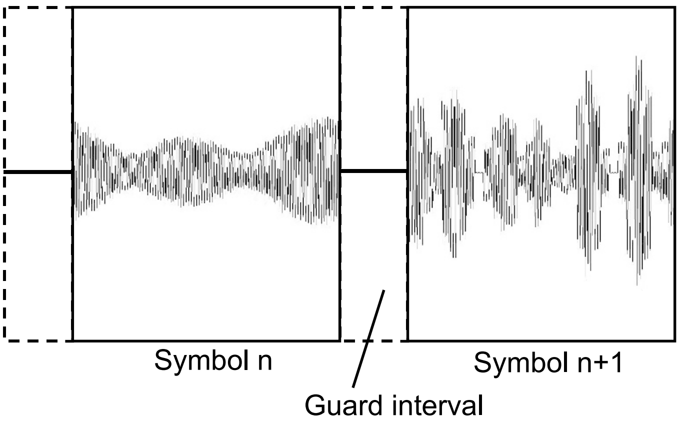


Fig. 19.18. COFDM symbols with guard interval

Inside this guard interval, transient events due to echoes can decay which prevents inter-symbol interference. The guard interval (Fig. 19.17.) must be longer than the longest echo delay time of the transmission system. At the end of the guard interval, all transient events should have decayed. If this is not the case, additional noise is produced due to the inter-symbol interference which, in turn, is a simple function of the intensity of the echo.

However, the guard intervals are not simply set to zero. Usually, the end of the next symbol is keyed precisely into this time interval (Fig. 19.19.) and the guard intervals can thus not be seen in any oscillogram. Purely from the point of view of signal processing, these guard intervals can be generated quite easily. The signals produced after the IFFT are first written into a memory in any case and are then read out alternately in accordance with the pipeline principle. The guard interval is then simply created by first reading out the end of the respective complex memory content in corresponding guard interval length (Fig. 19.20.).

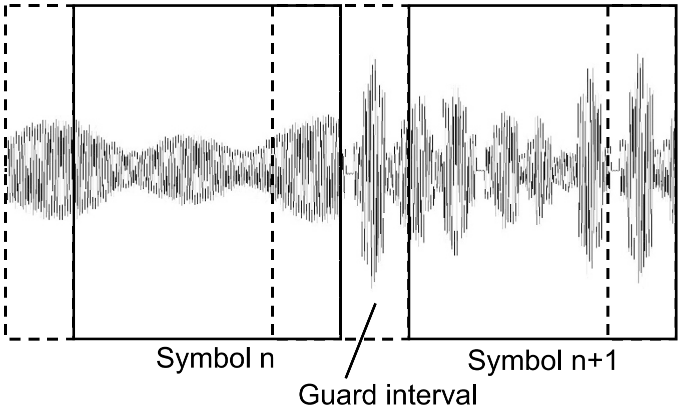


Fig. 19.19. Guard interval filled up with the end of the next symbol (CP = cyclic prefix)

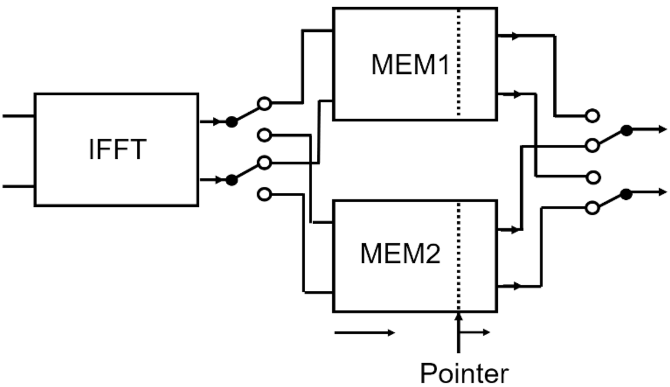


Fig. 19.20. Generating the guard interval

But why not simply leave the guard interval empty instead of filling it up with the end of the next symbol as is usually done? The reason is based on the way in which a COFDM receiver locks onto the COFDM symbols. If the guard interval (also often called CP = cyclic prefix) were not occupied with payload information, the receiver would have to hit the COFDM symbols exactly at the right spot which, however, is no longer possible in practice due to their rounding off due to multiple echoes during the transmission.

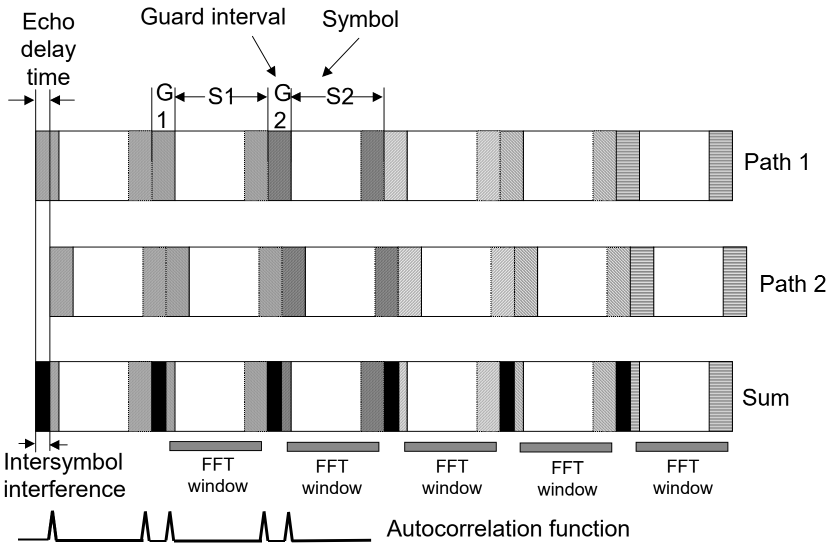


Fig. 19.21. Multipath reception in COFDM

The beginning and the end of the symbols could only be detected with difficulty in this case. If, however, e.g. the end of the next symbol is repeated in the preceding guard interval, the signal components existing several times in the signal can be easily found by means of the autocorrelation function in the receiver. This makes it possible to find the beginning and the end of the area within the symbols not affected by inter-symbol interference due to echoes. Fig. 19.21. shows this for the case of two receiving paths. Using the autocorrelation function, the receiver positions its FFT sampling window, which has the exact length of one symbol, within the symbols in such a way that it always lines up with the undisturbed area (Fig. 19.22. and 19.23.). Thus, the sampling window is not positioned precisely over the actual symbol but this only results in a phase error which produces a turning of all constellation diagrams and must be eliminated in subsequent processing steps. However, this phase error produces a rotation of all constellation diagrams.

It should not be thought, however, that the guard interval can be used for eliminating fading. This is not so. There is nothing that can be done against fading apart from adding error protection to the data stream by means of upstream FEC (forward error correction) and distributing the data stream as uniformly as possible over all COFDM subcarriers in the transmission channel.

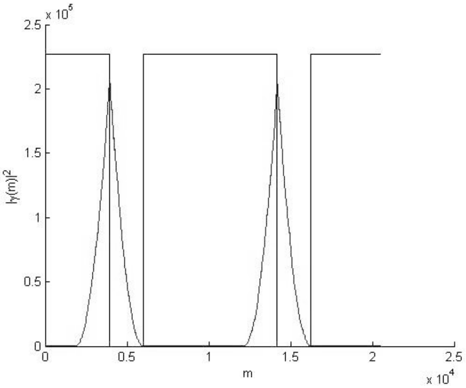


Fig. 19.22. Practical example: autocorrelation function and FFT window position, receiving only one signal path [VIERACKER]

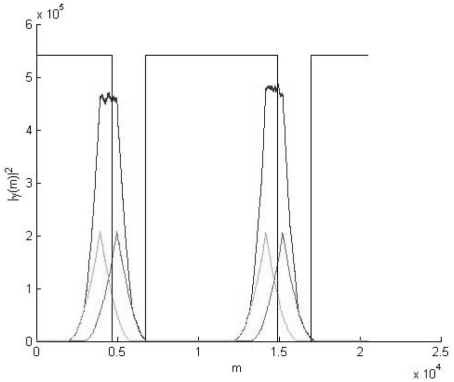


Fig. 19.23. Practical example: autocorrelation function and FFT window position, receiving two paths with 0dB attenuation (0dB echo); sum autocorrelation function and autocorrelation function for both signal paths [VIERACKER]

19.4 Supplementary Signals in the COFDM Spectrum

Up until now it has only been said that in orthogonal frequency division multiplex, the information plus error protection is distributed over the many subcarriers and these are then vector modulated and transmitted. This gives the impression that every carrier is carrying payload. However, this is not so, in fact. In all familiar COFDM transmission methods (DAB, DVB-T, ISDB-T, WLAN, ADSL), the following categories of COFDM carriers can be found to a greater or lesser extent, or not at all:

- Payload carriers
- Unused carriers set to zero
- Fixed pilots
- Scattered pilots which are not fixed
- Special data carriers for supplementary information

The term ‘supplementary signals’ has been deliberately kept general since, although they have the same function everywhere, they have different designations.

In this section, the function of these supplementary signals in the COFDM spectrum will be discussed in greater detail.

The payload carriers have already been described. They transmit the actual payload data plus error protection and are vector modulated in various ways. Among others, coherent QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM or 256QAM modulation is often used as modulation and the combined 2, 4, 6 or 8 bits per carrier are then mapped directly onto the respective carrier. In the case of the non-coherent differential coding which is also frequently used, the information is contained in the difference of the carrier constellation from one symbol to the next. The main methods are DQPSK or DBPSK. Differential coding has the advantage that it is ‘self-healing’, i.e. any phase errors which may be present are corrected automatically, saving channel correction facilities in the receiver which thus becomes simpler. However, this is at the cost of twice the bit error ratio in comparison with coherent coding.

Thus, the data carriers can be coded as follows:

- Coherent
- Differentially coded

The edge carriers, that is to say the top and bottom carriers, are not used in most cases and are set to zero and do not carry any information at all.

They are called zero-information carriers and there are two basic reasons for the existence of these unused zero-information carriers:

- Signal processing reasons to avoid aliasing
- Preventing adjacent channel crosstalk by facilitating the filtering of the shoulders of the COFDM spectrum ("guard band", Fig. 19.26.)

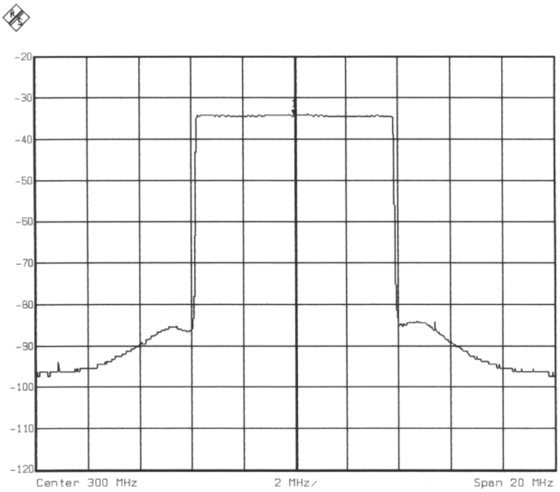


Fig. 19.24. Real DVB-T COFDM spectrum with shoulders

A COFDM spectrum (Fig. 19.24.) has so-called 'shoulders' which are simply the result of the sin(x)/x-shaped tails of each individual carrier. Due to mathematic reasons the sin(x)/x residual causing that shoulders are better suppressed in higher OFDM modes where more OFDM carriers are in use (Fig. 19.25.). That means higher OFDM modes automatically have better suppressed shoulders. That is the reason for the extended carrier mode in DVB-T2. These shoulders cause interference in the adjacent channels and it is, therefore, necessary to improve the so-called shoulder attenuation by applying suitable filtering measures. These filtering measures, in turn, are made easier by simply not using the edge carriers because the filters do not need to be so steep in this case.

Following an integral multiple of symbols, it is also often necessary to join up with the input data structure which is also often structured in blocks. A symbol can carry a certain number of bits due to the data carriers present in the symbol. The data structure of the input data stream can also supply a certain number of bits per block. The number of payload carriers in the symbol is then selected to be only such that the calculation comes out exactly after a certain number of complete data blocks and symbols. Because IFFT is used, however, it is necessary to select a power of two as the number of carriers which, after subtracting all data and pilot carriers, still leaves carriers, namely the zero-information carriers.

There are then also the following pilot carriers:

- Pilot carriers with a fixed position in the spectrum
- Pilot carriers with a variable position in the spectrum

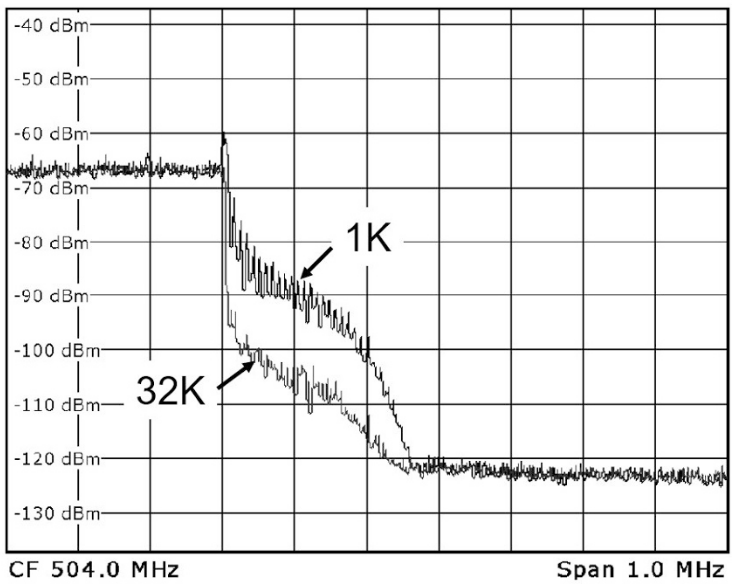


Fig. 19.25. Shoulders of a COFDM signal in 1K and 32K mode

Pilot carriers with a fixed position in the spectrum are used for automatic frequency control (AFC) in the receiver, i.e. to lock it to the transmitted frequency. These pilot carriers are usually cosinusoidal signals and are thus located on the real axis at fixed amplitude positions. There is usually a number of such fixed pilots in the spectrum. If the receive frequency is not tied to the transmit frequency, all constellation diagrams will rotate also within one symbol. At the receiving end, these fixed pilots within a symbol are simply missed out and the receive frequency is corrected in such a way that the phase difference from one fixed pilot to the next within a symbol becomes zero.

The pilots with variable position in the spectrum are used as measuring signal for channel estimation and channel correction at the receiving end in the case of coherent modulation. One could say they represent a sweep signal for the channel estimation in order to be able to measure the channel.

Special data carriers with supplementary information are very often used as a fast information channel from transmitter to receiver in order to inform the receiver of changes made in the type of modulation, e.g. switching from QPSK to 256QAM. In this way, frequently all current transmission parameters are transmitted from transmitter to receiver, e.g. in DVB-T. It is then only necessary to set the approximate receiving frequency at the receiver.

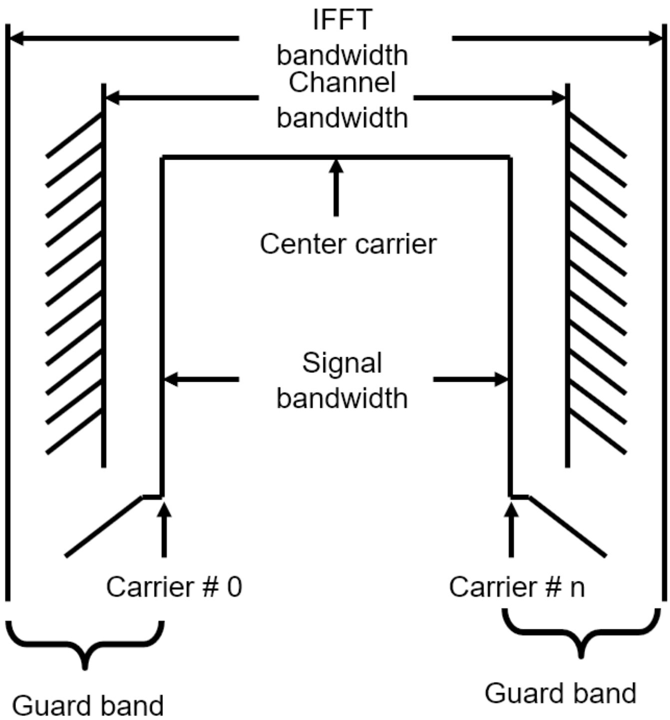


Fig. 19.26. COFDM spectrum showing IFFT bandwidth, channel bandwidth, signal bandwidth and guard bands

19.5 Hierarchical Modulation

Digital transmission methods often exhibit a hard 'fall-off-the-cliff' or 'brickwall' effect when the reception abruptly ceases because the signal/noise ratio limit has been exceeded. Naturally, this also applies to COFDM. In some COFDM transmission methods (DVB-T, ISDB-T), so-called 'hierarchical modulation' is used to counteract this effect. When hierarchical modulation is switched on, the information is transmitted by means of two different transmission methods within one COFDM spectrum. One of the transmission methods is more robust but cannot support such a high data rate. The other one is less robust but is capable of handling a higher data rate, making it possible to transmit e.g. the same video signal with poorer signal quality and with better signal quality in the same COFDM stream. At the receiving end, one or the other method can then be selected with an eye on the conditions of reception. Hierarchical modulation will not be discussed in greater detail at this point because there are several approaches and these depend on the relevant standard. Such different approaches are

- Embedded modulation (hierarchical modulation in DVB-T, layer division multiplex in ATSC3.0)
- Frequency distributed physical layers (ISDB-T layer)
- Time distributed physical layer (PLP concept in DVB-T2 and in ATSC3.0)

allowing different robustness for different data signals

19.6 Summary

Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex (COFDM, Fig. 19.27.) is a transmission method which, instead of one carrier, uses a large number of subcarriers in one transmission channel. It is especially designed for the characteristics of a terrestrial transmission channel containing multiple echoes and for channels having interferer problems which are a not constant and not predictable over the channel. The information to be transmitted is provided with error protection (coded orthogonal frequency division multiplex - COFDM) and distributed over all these subcarriers. The subcarriers are vector modulated and in each case transmit a part of the information. COFDM produces longer symbols than single-carrier transmission and, as a result, and with the aid of a guard interval, intersymbol interference due to echoes can be eliminated. Due to the error protection and the fact that the information is distributed over the many subcarriers it is possible to recover the original data stream free of errors in spite of any fading due to echoes. A final note: Many references mention both COFDM and OFDM. In practice, there is no difference between the two methods. OFDM is a part of COFDM. OFDM would never work without the error protection contained in COFDM.

OFDM is the ideal type of modulation to save frequencies by building single-frequency networks (SFN). OFDM is now also used in 4G/LTE and 5G-NR.

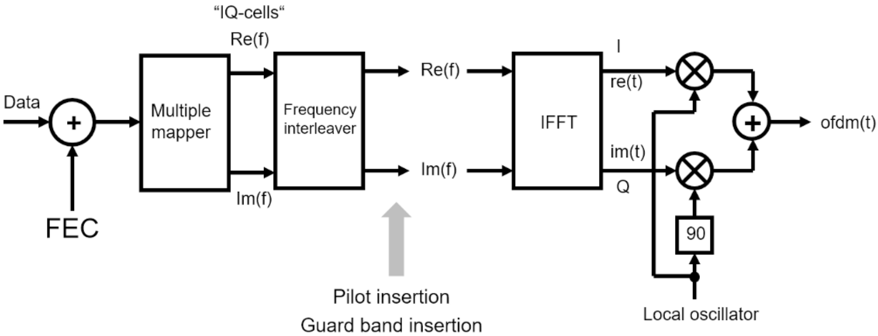


Fig. 19.27. Block diagram of an COFDM modulator

Bibliography: [REIMERS], [HOFMEISTER], [FISCHER2], [DAMBACHER], [CHANG], [VIERACKER]

20 Terrestrial Transmission of Digital Television Signals (DVB-T)

The particular characteristics of a terrestrial radio channel have already been explained in the previous chapter on COFDM (Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex). They are mainly determined by multipath reception which leads to location- and frequency-selective fading. In DVB-T, i.e. in the terrestrial transmission of digital TV signals according to the Digital Video Broadcasting standard, it was decided that the most appropriate modulation method to cope with this problem would be COFDM, the principles of which are explained in the previous chapter. Fig. 20.1. shows a block diagram of the DVB-T modulator, consisting at its heart of the COFDM modulator with the IFFT block followed by the I/Q modulator which can be a digital or an analog type. The position of the I/Q modulator in the circuit can vary depending on how the DVB-T modulator is implemented in practice. The COFDM modulation is preceded by the channel coding, i.e. the error correction, which is exactly the same in DVB-T as in DVB-S satellite transmission.

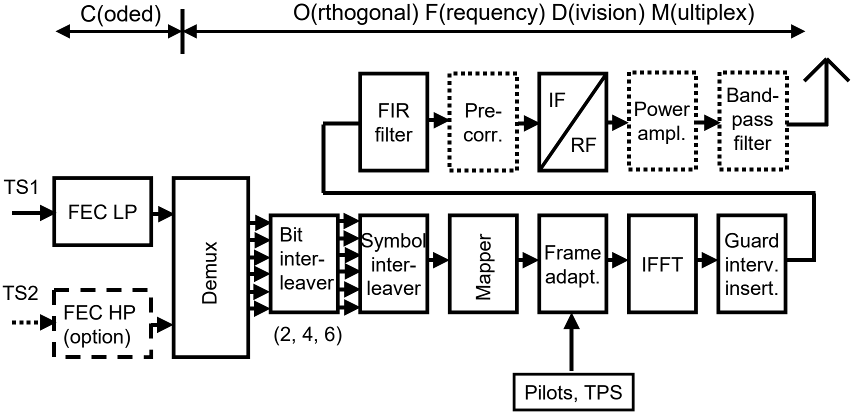


Fig. 20.1. Block diagram of the DVB-T modulator – part 1

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_20

As can also be seen from the block diagram, two MPEG-2 transport stream inputs are possible which then provides for the so-called hierarchical modulation. However, hierarchical modulation is provided as an option in DVB-T and has not as yet been put into practical use. Hierarchical modulation was originally provided for transmitting the same TV programs with different data rate, different error correction and different quality in one DVB-T channel. The HP (high priority) path transmits a data stream with a low data rate, i.e. a poorer picture quality due to higher compression, but allows better error protection or a more robust type of modulation (QPSK) to be used. The LP (low priority) path is used for transmitting the MPEG-2 transport stream with a higher data rate, a lower error protection and a type of modulation of higher order (16QAM, 64QAM). At the receiving end, HP or LP can be selected in dependence on the conditions of reception. Hierarchical modulation is intended to lessen the impact, as it were, of the "fall off the cliff". But it is also quite conceivable to transmit two totally independent transport streams. Both HP and LP branches contain the same channel coder as in DVB-S but, as already mentioned, this is an option in the DVB-T modulator, not the receiver where this involves very little additional expenditure.

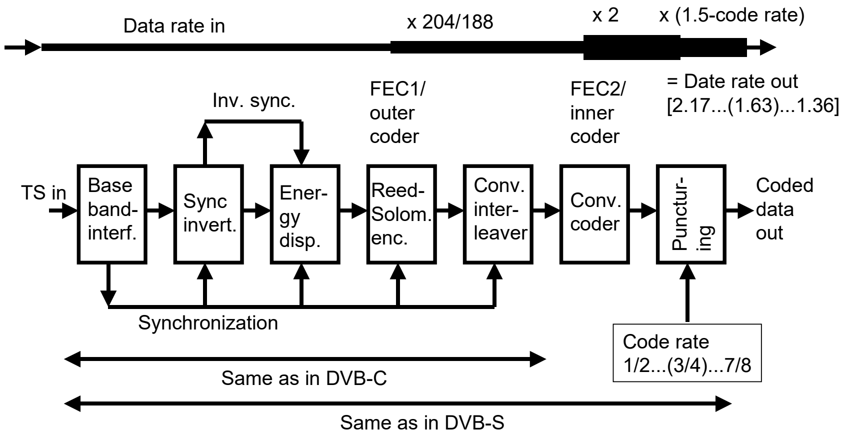


Fig. 20.2. Block diagram of the DVB-T modulator – part 2, FEC

Not every COFDM carrier in DVB-T is a payload carrier. There is also a large number of pilot carriers and special carriers. These special carriers are used for frequency synchronization, channel estimation and channel correction, and for implementing a fast information channel. They are inserted into their locations in the DVB-T spectrum before the IFFT.

Before discussing the DVB-T standard in greater detail, let us first ask: "Why DVB-T?"

There are fully operational scenarios for supplying digital television via satellite and cable, both of which paths are accessible to many households throughout the world. Why then the need for yet another, terrestrial path, e.g. via DVB-T which, in addition, is complex and expensive and may require a large amount of maintenance? The additional coverage with digital terrestrial television is necessary for reasons of

- Regional requirements (historical infrastructures, no satellite reception)
- Regional geographic situations
- Portable TV reception
- Mobile TV reception
- Local supplementary municipal services (regional/urban television)

Many countries in the world do not have satellite TV coverage, or only inadequately so, for the most varied reasons of a political, geographic or other nature. In many cases, substitute coverage by cable is not possible, either, because of e.g. permafrost and also often cannot be financed because of sparse population density. This leaves only the terrestrial coverage. Countries which are far away from the equator such as those in Scandinavia naturally have more problems with satellite reception since, e.g. the satellite receiving antennas are almost pointing at the ground. There are also many countries which have not previously had analog satellite reception as a standard such as Australia where satellite reception plays only a minor role. Population centers there are covered terrestrially and via cable or satellite. In many countries, it is not permitted to gather in an uncontrollable variety of TV programs from the sky for political reasons. Even regions in Central Europe with good satellite and cable coverage require additional terrestrial TV coverage, mainly for local TV programs which are not being broadcast via satellite. And portable and mobile reception is virtually only possible via the terrestrial path.

20.1 The DVB-T Standard

In 1995, the terrestrial standard for the transmission of digital TV programs was defined in ETS 300744 in connection with the DVB-T project. A DVB-T channel can have a bandwidth of 8, 7 or 6 MHz. There are two different operating modes: the 2K mode and the 8K mode where 2K stands for a 2046-points IFFT and 8K stands for an 8192-points IFFT. As is already known from the chapter on COFDM, the number of COFDM subcarriers must be a power of two. In DVB-T, it was decided to use symbols with a length of about 250 μs (2K mode) or 1 ms (8K mode). Depending on requirements, one or the other mode can be selected. The 2K mode has greater subcarrier spacing of about 4 kHz but the symbol period is much shorter. Compared with the 8K mode with a subcarrier spacing of about 1 kHz, it is much less susceptible to spreading in the frequency domain caused by doppler effects due to mobile reception and multiple echoes but much more susceptible to greater echo delays. In single-frequency networks, for example, the 8K mode will always be selected because of the greater transmitter spacing possible. In mobile reception, the 2K mode is better because of the greater subcarrier spacing. The DVB-T standard allows for flexible control of the transmission parameters.

Apart from the symbol length, which is a result of the use of 2K or 8K mode, the guard interval can also be adjusted within a range of 1/4 to 1/32 of the symbol length. It is possible to select the type of modulation (QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM)). The error protection (FEC) is designed to be the same as in the DVB-S satellite standard. The DVB-T transmission can be adapted to the respective requirements with regard to robustness or net data rates by adjusting the code rate (1/2 ... 7/8).

In addition, the DVB-T standard provides for hierarchical coding as an option. In hierarchical coding, the modulator has two transport stream inputs and two independently configurable but identical FECs. The idea is to apply a large amount of error correction to a transport stream with a low data rate and then to transmit it with a very robust type of modulation. This transport stream path is then called the high priority (HP) path. The second transport stream has a higher data rate and is transmitted with less error correction and, e.g. 64QAM modulation and the path is called the low priority (LP) path. It would then be possible, e.g. to subject the identical program packet to MPEG coding, once at the higher data rate and once at the lower data rate, and to combine the two packets in two multiplex packets transported in independent transport streams. Higher data rate automatically means better (picture) quality. The data stream with the lower data rate and correspondingly lower picture quality is fed to the high priority path and that with the higher data rate is supplied to the low priority path. At the receiving end, the high priority signal is demodulated more easily than the low priority one. Depending on the conditions of reception, the HP path or the LP path will be selected at the receiving end. If the reception is poor, there will at least still be reception due to the lower data rate and higher compression, even if the quality of the picture and sound is inferior.

In DVB-T, coherent COFDM modulation is used, i.e. the payload carriers are mapped absolutely and are not differentially coded. However, this requires channel estimation and correction for which numerous pilot signals are provided in the DVB-T spectrum and are used as test signal for the channel estimation.

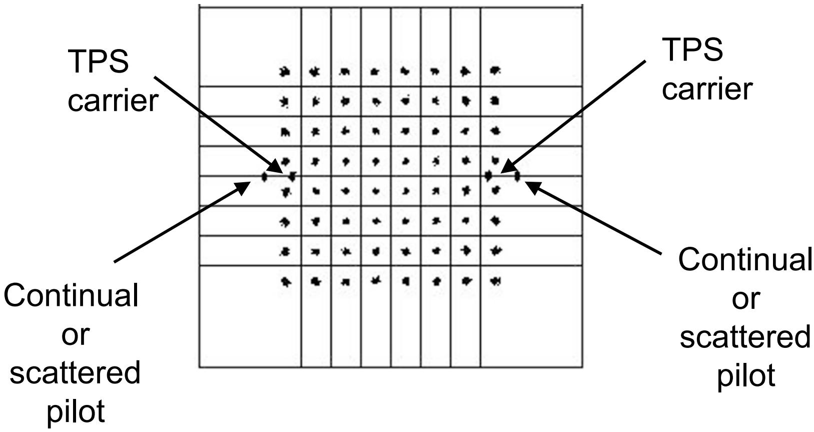


Fig. 20.3. DVB-T carriers: payload carriers, Continual and Scattered Pilots, TPS carriers

20.2 The DVB-T Carriers

In DVB-T, an IFFT with 2048 or 8192 points is used. In theory, 2048 or 8192 carriers would then be available for the data transmission. However, not all of these carriers are used as payload carriers. In the 8K mode, there are 6048 payload carriers and in the 2K mode there are 1512. The 8K mode thus has exactly four times as many payload carriers as the 2K mode but since the symbol rate is higher by a factor of exactly 4 in the 2K mode, both modes will always have the same data rate, given the same conditions of transmission. DVB-T contains the following types of carrier:

- Inactive carriers with fixed position (set to zero amplitude)
- Payload carriers with fixed position
- Continual pilots with fixed position
- Scattered pilots with changing position in the spectrum
- TPS carriers with fixed position

The meaning of the words 'payload carrier' is clear: these are simply the carriers used for the actual data transmission. The edge carriers at the upper and lower channel edge are set to zero, i.e. they are inactive and carry no modulation at all, i.e. their amplitudes are zero. The continual pilots are located on the real axis, i.e. the I (in-phase) axis, either at 0 degrees or at 180 degrees and have a defined amplitude. The continual pilots are boosted by 3 dB compared with the average signal power and are used in the receiver as phase reference and for automatic frequency control (AFC), i.e. for locking the receive frequency to the transmit frequency. The scattered pilots are scattered over the entire spectrum of the DVB-T channel from symbol to symbol and virtually constitute a sweep signal for the channel estimation. Within each symbol, there is a scattered pilot every 12th carrier. Each scattered pilot jumps forward by three carrier positions in the next symbol, i.e. in each case two intermediate payload carriers will never become a scattered pilot whereas those at every 3rd position in the spectrum are sometimes payload carriers and sometimes scattered pilots. The scattered pilots are also on the I axis at 0 degrees and 180 degrees and have the same amplitude as the continual pilots.

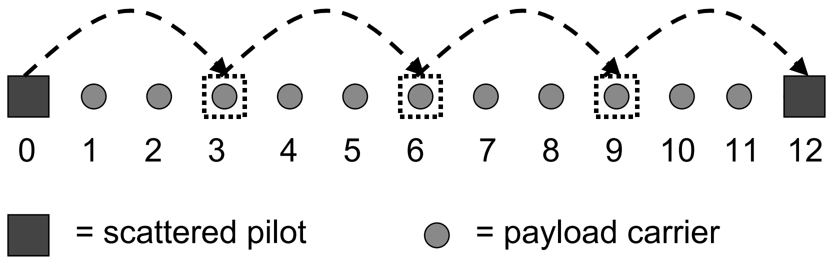


Fig. 20.4. Change of position of the Scattered Pilots

The TPS carriers are located at fixed frequency positions. For example, carrier No. 50 is a TPS carrier. TPS stands for Transmission Parameter Signalling. These carriers represent virtually a fast information channel via which the transmitter informs the receiver about the current transmission parameters. They are DBPSK (differential bi-phase shift keying) modulated and are located on the I axis either at 0 degrees or at 180 degrees. They are differentially coded, i.e. the information is contained in the difference between one and the next symbol. All the TPS carriers in one symbol carry the same information, i.e. they are all either at 0 degrees or all at 180 degrees on the I axis. At the receiving end, the correct TPS carrier position of

0 degrees or 180 degrees is then determined by majority voting for each symbol and is then used for the demodulation. DBPSK means that a zero is transmitted when the state of the TPS carriers changes from one symbol to the next, and a one if the TPS carrier phase does not change from one symbol to the next. The complete TPS information is broadcast over 68 symbols and comprises 67 bits. This segment over 68 symbols is called a frame and the scattered pilots within this frame also jump over the DVB-T channel from the start of the channel right to the end of the channel.

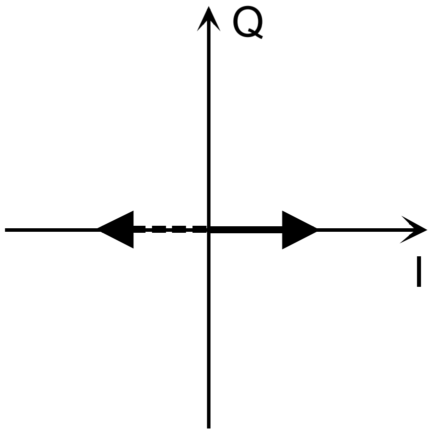


Fig. 20.5. DBPSK modulated TPS carriers

17 of the 68 TPS bits are used for initialization and synchronization, 13 bits are error protection, 22 bits are used at present and 13 bits are reserved for future applications. Table 20.1. explains how the TPS carriers are utilized.

Thus, the TPS carriers keep the receiver informed about:

- Mode (2K, 8K)
- Length of the guard interval (1/4, 1/8, 1/16, 1/32)
- Type of modulation (QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM)
- Code rate (1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 7/8)
- Use of hierarchical coding

However, the receiver should have already determined the mode (2K, 8K) and the length of the guard interval which are thus actually meaningless as TPS information.

Table 20.1. Bit allocation of the TPS carriers

Symbol number	Format	Purpose/content
s_0		Initialization
s_1- s_{16}	0011010111101110 or 1100101000010001	Synchronization word
s_{17} - s_{22}	010 111	Length indicator
s_{23}, s_{24}		Frame number
S_{25}, s_{26}		Constellation 00=QPSK/01=16QAM/10=64QAM
S_{27}, s_{28}, s_{29}		Hierarchy information 000=Non hierarchical, 001=α=1, 010=α=2, 011=α=4
S_{30}, s_{31}, s_{32}		Code rate, HP stream 000=1/2, 001=2/3, 010=3/4, 011=5/6, 100=7/8
s_{33}, s_{34}, s_{35}		Code rate, LP stream 000=1/2, 001=2/3, 010=3/4, 011=5/6, 100=7/8
s_{36}, s_{37}		Guard interval 00=1/32, 01=1/16, 10=1/8, 11=1/4
s_{38}, s_{39}		Transmission mode 00=2K, 01=8K
s_{40} - s_{53}	all set to "0"	Reserved for future use
s_{54} - s_{67}	BCH code	Error protection

In Fig. 20.3., the position of the pilots and TPS carriers can be seen clearly in a 64QAM constellation diagram. The two outer points on the I axis correspond to the positions of the continual pilots and the scattered pilots. The two inner points on the I axis are the TPS carriers.

The position of the continual pilots and of the TPS carriers in the spectrum can be seen from the tables 20.2. and 20.3. In these tables, the carrier numbers are listed at which the continual pilots and the TPS carriers can be found. Counting begins at carrier number zero which is the first non-zero carrier at the beginning of the channel.

The various types of carriers used in DVB-T are briefly summarized as follows. Of the 2048 carriers in the 2K mode, only 1705 carriers are used and all others are set to zero. Within these 1705 carriers there are 1512 payload carriers which can be QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM modulated, 142 scattered pilots, 45 continual pilots and 17 TPS carriers.

Table 20.2. Carrier positions of the Continual Pilots

2K mode	8K mode
0 48 54 87 141 156 192 201 255 279 282 333 432 450 483 525 531 618 636 714 759 765 780 804 873 888 918 939 942 969 984 1050 1101 1107 1110 1137 1140 1146 1206 1269 1323 1377 1491 1683 1704	0 48 54 87 141 156 192 201 255 279 282 333 432 450 483 525 531 618 636 714 759 765 780 804 873 888 918 939 942 969 984 1050 1101 1107 1110 1137 1140 1146 1206 1269 1323 1377 1491 1683 1704 1752 1758 1791 1845 1860 1896 1905 1959 1983 1986 2037 2136 2154 2187 2229 2235 2322 2340 2418 2463 2469 2484 2508 2577 2592 2622 2643 2646 2673 2688 2754 2805 2811 2814 2841 2844 2850 2910 2973 3027 3081 3195 3387 3408 3456 3462 3495 3549 3564 3600 3609 3663 3687 3690 3741 3840 3858 3891 3933 3939 4026 4044 4122 4167 4173 4188 4212 4281 4296 4326 4347 4350 4377 4392 4458 4509 4515 4518 4545 4548 4554 4614 4677 4731 4785 4899 5091 5112 5160 5166 5199 5253 5268 5304 5313 5367 5391 5394 5445 5544 5562 5595 5637 5643 5730 5748 5826 5871 5877 5892 5916 5985 6000 6030 6051 6054 6081 6096 6162 6213 6219 6222 6249 6252 6258 6318 6381 6435 6489 6603 6795 6816

Table 20.3. Carrier positions of the TPS Carriers

2K mode	8K mode
34 50 209 346 413 569 595 688 790 901 1073 1219 1262 1286 1469 1594 1687	34 50 209 346 413 569 595 688 790 901 1073 1219 1262 1286 1469 1594 1687 1738 1754 1913 2050 2117 2273 2299 2392 2494 2605 2777 2923 2966 2990 3173 3298 3391 3442 3458 3617 3754 3821 3977 4003 4096 4198 4309 4481 4627 4670 4694 4877 5002 5095 5146 5162 5321 5458 5525 5681 5707 5800 5902 6013 6185 6331 6374 6398 6581 6706 6799

Some of the scattered pilots occasionally coincide with positions of continual pilots which is why the number 131 should be used for calculating the actual payload carriers in the case of the scattered pilots in 2K mode. The conditions in the 8K mode are comparable. Here, too, not all the 8192 carriers are being used but only 6817 of which, in turn, only 6048 are actual payload carriers. The rest are scattered pilots (568), continual pilots (177) and TPS carriers (68). As before, the number 524 must be used for the scattered pilots in calculating the payload carriers since sometimes a scattered pilot will coincide with a continual pilot. Every 12th carrier in a symbol is a scattered pilot. It is thus easy to calculate the number of scattered pilots by dividing the number of carriers actually used by 12 (1705/12 = 142, 6817/12 = 568).

Table 20.4. Number of different carriers in DVB-T

2K mode	8K mode	
2048	8192	Carrier
1705	6817	used carrier
142/131	568/524	Scattered pilots
45	177	Continual pilots
17	68	TPS carrier
1512	6048	payload carrier

The payload carriers are either QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM modulated and transmit the error-protected MPEG-2 transport stream. Fig. 20.6. shows the constellation diagrams for QPSK, 16QAM and 64QAM with the positions of the special carriers in the case of non-hierarchical modulation.

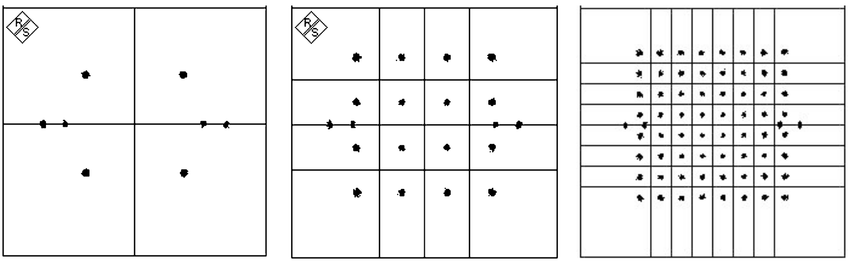


Fig. 20.6. DVB-T constellation diagrams for QPSK, 16QAM and 64QAM

20.3 Hierarchical Modulation

To ensure that reliable reception is still guaranteed even in poor conditions, hierarchical modulation is provided as an option in DVB-T. Without it, e.g. a signal/noise ratio which is too bad will lead to a hard “fall-off-the cliff”, otherwise known as the ‘brick wall effect’. In the case of the frequently used DVB-T transmission with 64QAM modulation and a code rate of 3/4 or 2/3, the limit of stable reception is at a signal/noise ratio of just under 20 dB. In this section, the details of hierarchical modulation/coding will be explained more fully. If hierarchical modulation is used, the DVB-T modulator has two transport stream inputs and two FEC blocks. One transport stream with a low data rate is fed into the so-called high priority path (HP) and provided with a large amount of error protection, e.g. by selecting the code rate 1/2. A second transport stream with a higher data rate is supplied in parallel to the low priority path (LP) and is provided with less error protection, e.g. with the code rate 3/4.

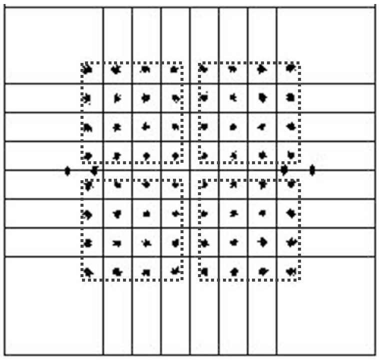


Fig. 20.7. Embedded QPSK in 64QAM with hierarchical modulation

In principle, both HP and LP transport streams can contain the same programs but at different data rates, i.e. with different amounts of compression. However, the two can also carry completely different payloads. On the high priority path, QPSK is used which is a particularly robust type of modulation. On the low priority path, a higher level of modulation is needed due to the higher data rate. In DVB-T, the individual payload carriers are not modulated with different types of modulation. Instead, each payload carrier transmits portions both of LP and of HP. The high priority path is transmitted as so-called embedded QPSK in 16QAM or 64QAM.

Fig. 20.7. shows the case of QPSK embedded in 64QAM. The LP information is carried by the discrete constellation point and the HP is described by the quadrant. A cloud of 8 times 8 points in a quadrant as a whole thus corresponds virtually to the total constellation point of the QPSK in this quadrant.

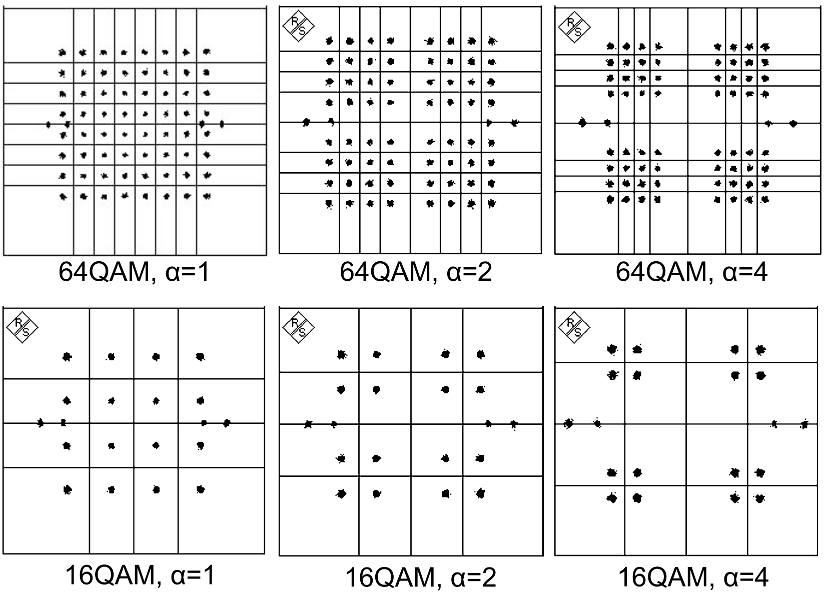


Fig. 20.8. Possible Constellations with hierarchical modulation

A 64QAM modulation enables 6 bits per symbol to be transmitted. However, since the quadrant information, as QPSK, diverts 2 bits per symbol for the HP stream, only 4 bits per symbol remain for the transmission of the LP stream. The gross data rates for LP and HP thus have a fixed ratio of 4:2 to one another. In addition, the net data rates are dependent on the code rate used. QPSK embedded in 16QAM is also possible. The ratio between the gross data rates of LP and HP is then 2:2. To make the QPSK of the high priority path more robust, i.e. less susceptible to interference, the constellation diagram can be spread at the I axis and the Q axis. A factor α of 2 or 4 increases the distance between the individual quadrants of the 16QAM or 64QAM diagrams. The higher α is, the more insensitive the high priority path becomes and the more sensitive the low priority path becomes since the discrete constellation points move closer together. Fig. 20.8. shows the 6 possible constellations with hierarchical modulation, i.e.

64QAM with α = 1, 2, 4 and 16QAM with α = 1, 2, 4. The information about the presence or absence of hierarchical modulation and the α factor and the code rates for LP and HP are transmitted in the TPS carriers. This information is evaluated in the receiver which automatically adjusts its demapper accordingly. The decision to demodulate HP or LP in the receiver can be made automatically in dependence on the current conditions of reception (channel bit error rate) or left to the user to select manually. Hierarchical modulation is provided as an option in modern DVB-T chipsets and set-top boxes since, in practice, no additional hardware is required. In many DVB-T receivers, however, no software is provided for this option since it is currently not used in any country. At the beginning of 2002, hierarchical modulation was tested in field tests in Australia but it is currently not used there, either.

20.4 DVB-T System Parameters of the 8/7/6 MHz Channel

In the following paragraphs, the system parameters of DVB-T will be derived and explained in detail. These parameters are:

- IFFT sampling frequencies
- DVB-T signal bandwidths
- Spectrum occupied by the 8/7 and 6 MHz DVB-T channel
- Data rates
- Signal levels of the individual carriers

The basic system parameter in DVB-T is the IFFT sampling frequency of the 8-MHz channel which is defined as:

$$f_{\text{sample IFFT 8MHz}} = 64/7 \text{ MHz} = 9.142857143 \text{ MHz}.$$

From this basic parameter, all other system parameters can be derived, i.e. those of the 8/7 and 6 MHz channel. The IFFT sampling frequency is the sampling rate of the COFDM symbol or, respectively, the bandwidth within which all 2K (= 2048) and 8K (= 8192) subcarriers can be accommodated. However, many of these 2048 or 8192 subcarriers are set to zero and the bandwidth of the DVB-T signal must be narrower than that of the actual 8, 7 or 6 MHz wide channel. As will be seen, the signal bandwidth of the 8 MHz channel is only about 7.6 MHz and there is thus a space of approx. 200 kHz between the top and the bottom of this channel and its adjacent channels.

These 7.6 MHz contain the 6817 or 1705 carriers actually used. In the case of the 7 or 6 MHz channel, the IFFT sampling frequency of these channels can be calculated from the IFFT sampling frequency of the 6 MHz channel by simply multiplying it by 7/8 or 6/8, respectively.

$f_{sample\ IFFT\ 7MHz} = 64/7\ \text{MHz} \cdot 7/8 = 8\ \text{MHz};$

$f_{sample\ IFFT\ 6MHz} = 64/7\ \text{MHz} \cdot 6/8 = 48/7\ \text{MHz} = 6.857142857\ \text{MHz};$

All 2048 or 8192 IFFT carriers in the 8/7 and 6 MHz channel can be found within these IFFT bandwidths. From these bandwidths or sampling frequencies, the respective subcarrier spacing can be easily derived by dividing the bandwidth $f_{sample\ IFFT}$ by the number of IFFT subcarriers:

$\Delta f = f_{sample\ IFFT} / N_{total\_carriers};$
$\Delta f_{2k} = f_{sample\ IFFT} /2048;$
$\Delta f_{8k} = f_{sample\ IFFT} /8192;$

Therefore, the COFDM subcarrier spacing in an 8, 7 or 6 MHz-wide DVB-T channel in 2K and 8K mode is:

Table 20.5. Subcarrier spacing in 2K and 8K mode

Channel bandwidth	Δf of 2K mode	Δf of 8K mode
8 MHz	4.464285714 kHz	1.116071429 kHz
7 MHz	3.90625 kHz	0.9765625 kHz
6 MHz	3.348214275 kHz	0.8370535714 kHz

From the subcarrier spacing, the symbol length Δt_{symbol} can be determined directly. Due to the orthogonality condition, it is:

$\Delta t_{symbol} = 1/\Delta f;$

Therefore, the symbol lengths in the various modes and channel bandwidths in DVB-T are:

Table 20.6. Symbol durations in 2K and 8K mode

Channel bandwidth	Δt_{symbol} of 2K mode	Δt_{symbol} of 8K mode
8 MHz	224 us	896 ms
7 MHz	256 us	1.024 ms
6 MHz	298.7 us	1.1947 ms

The DVB-T signal bandwidths are obtained from the subcarrier spacing Δf of the respective channel (8, 7, 6 MHz) and the number of carriers actually used in 2K and 8K mode (1705 and 6817).

$$f_{signal\ DVB\text{-}T} = N_{used\_carriers} \cdot \Delta f;$$

Table20.7. Signal Bandwidths in DVB-T

Channel bandwidth	$f_{signal\ DVB\text{-}T}$ of 2K mode	$f_{signal\ DVB\text{-}T}$ of 8K mode
8 MHz	7.612 MHz	7.608 MHz
7 MHz	6.661 MHz	6.657 MHz
6 MHz	5.709 MHz	5.706 MHz

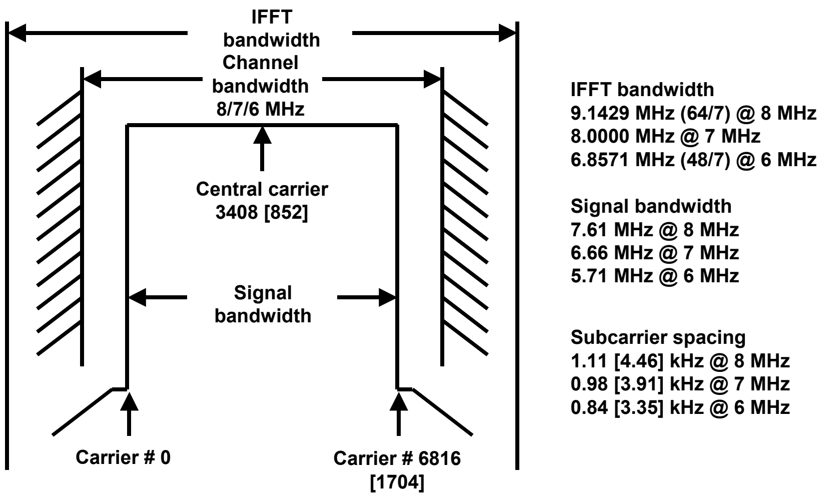


Fig. 20.9. Spectrum of a DVB-T signal in 8K and [2K] mode for the 8/7/6 MHz channel

In principle, there are two ways of counting the COFDM subcarriers of the DVB-T channel. The carriers can either be counted through from 0 to 2047 or from 0 to 8192 in accordance with the number of IFFT carriers or counting can begin with carrier number zero at the first carrier actually used in the respective mode. The latter counting method is the more usual one, counting from 0 to 1704 in 2K mode and from 0 to 6816 in 8K mode. In Fig. 20.9. then the position of the spectrum of the DVB-T channel is shown and the most important DVB-T system parameters are summarized again.. Fig. 20.9. also shows the center carrier numbers which are of particular importance in testing. This carrier number of 3408 in the 8K mode and 852 in the 2K mode corresponds to the exact center of the DVB-T channel. Some effects which can be caused by the DVB-T modulator can only be observed at this point. The values provided in square brackets in the Figure apply to the 2K mode (e.g.: 3408 [852]) and the others apply to the 8K mode.

The gross data rate of the DVB-T signal is derived from, among other things, the symbol rate of the DVB-T COFDM signal. The symbol rate is a function of the length of the symbol and of the length of the guard interval. as follows:

$$symbol\_rate_{COFDM} = \frac{1}{symbol\_duration + guard\_duration};$$

The gross data rate is then the result of the symbol rate, the number of actual payload carriers and the type of modulation (QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM). In 2K mode, there are 1512 payload carriers and in 8K mode there are 6048. In QPSK, 2 bits per symbol are transmitted, in 16QAM it is 4 bits per symbol and in 64QAM it is 6 bits per symbol. Since the symbols are longer by a factor of 4 in the 8K mode but, on the other hand, there are four times as many payload carriers in the channel, this factor cancels out again which means that the data rates are independent of the mode (2K or 8K). The gross data rate of the DVB-T channel is thus:

$$\text{gross\_data\_rate} = \text{symbol\_rate}_{\text{COFDM}} \cdot \text{no\_of\_payload\_carriers} \cdot \text{bits\_per\_symbol};$$

The total length of the COFDM symbols is composed of the symbol length and the length of the guard intervals:

Table 20.8. Total symbol durations in DVB-T

	total_symbol_duration = symbol_duration + guard_duration [us]							
Chan. bandw. [MHz]	2K 1/4	2K 1/8	2K 1/16	2K 1/32	8K 1/4	8K 1/8	8K 1/16	8K 1/32
8	280	252	238	231	1120	1008	952	924
7	320	288	272	264	1280	1152	1088	1056
6	373.3	336	317.3	308	1493.3	1344	1269.3	1232

total_symbol_duration = symbol_duration + guard_duration;

The symbol rate of the DVB-T channel is calculated as:

symbol_rate = 1 / total_ symbol_duration;

The DVB-T symbol rates are listed in Table 20.9. as a function of mode and channel bandwidth.

Table 20.9. Symbol rates in DVB-T

	Symbol rate [kS/s]							
Channel band-width	2K guard 1/4	2K guard 1/8	2K guard 1/16	2K guard 1/32	8K guard 1/4	8K guard 1/8	8K guard 1/16	8K guard 1/32
8 MHz	3.5714	3.9683	4.2017	4.3290	0.8929	0.9921	1.04504	1.0823
7 MHz	3.1250	3.4722	3.6760	3.7888	0.7813	0.8681	0.9191	0.9470
6 MHz	2.6786	2.9762	3.1513	3.2468	0.6696	0.7440	0.7878	0.8117

The gross data rate is then determined from:

gross_data_rate = symbol_rate · no_of_payload_carriers
· bits_per_symbol;

The gross DVB-T data rates are listed in Table 20.10. as a function of channel bandwidth and the guard interval length.

Table 20.10. Gross data rates in DVB-T

	Gross data rate [MBit/s]							
Channel band-width, modula-tion	2K guard 1/4	2K guard 1/8	2K guard 1/16	2K guard 1/32	8K guard 1/4	8K guard 1/8	8K guard 1/16	8K guard 1/32
8 MHz QPSK	10.800	12.000	12.706	13.091	10.800	12.000	12.706	13.091
8 MHz 16QAM	21.6	24.0	25.412	26.182	21.6	24.0	25.412	26.182
8 MHz 64QAM	32.4	36.0	38.118	39.273	32.4	36.0	38.118	39.273
7 MHz QPSK	9.45	10.5	11.118	11.455	9.45	10.5	11.118	11.455
7 MHz 16QAM	18.9	21.0	22.236	22.91	18.9	21.0	22.236	22.91
7 MHz 64QAM	28.35	31.5	33.354	34.365	28.35	31.5	33.354	34.365
6 MHz QPSK	8.1	9.0	9.530	9.818	8.1	9.0	9.530	9.818
6 MHz 16QAM	16.2	18.0	19.06	19.636	16.2	18.0	19.06	19.636
6 MHz 64QAM	24.3	27.0	28.59	29.454	24.3	27.0	28.59	29.454

The net data rate additionally depends on the code rate of the convolutional coding used and on the Reed Solomon error protection RS(188, 204) as follows:

net_data_rate = gross_data_rate · 188/204 · code_rate;

Since the factor of 4 cancels out, the overall formula for determining the net data rate of DVB-T signals is independent of the mode (2K or 8K) and is:

net_data_rate = 188/204 · code_rate · $\log_2$(m) · 1/(1 + guard) · channel · const1;

where
m = 4 (QPSK), 16 (16-QAM), 64 (64-QAM);
$\log_2$(m) = 2 (QPSK), 4 (16-QAM), 6 (64-QAM);
code rate = 1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 7/8;
guard = 1/4, 1/8, 1/16, 1/32;
channel = 1 (8MHz), 7/8 (7MHz), 6/8 (6 MHz);
const1 = $6.75 \cdot 10^6$ bits/s;

Table 20.11. Net data rates with non-hierarchical modulation in the 8 MHz DVB-T channel

Modulation	Code rate	Guard 1/4	Guard 1/8	Guard 1/16	Guard 1/32
		Mbit/s	Mbit/s	Mbit/s	Mbit/s
QPSK	1/2	4.976471	5.529412	5.854671	6.032086
	2/3	6.635294	7.372549	7.806228	8.042781
	3/4	7.464706	8.294118	8.782007	9.048128
	5/6	8.294118	9.215686	9.757785	10.05348
	7/8	8.708824	9.676471	10.24567	10.55617
16QAM	1/2	9.952941	11.05882	11.70934	12.06417
	2/3	13.27059	14.74510	15.61246	16.08556
	3/4	14.92941	16.58824	17.56401	18.09626
	5/6	16.58824	18.43137	19.51557	20.10695
	7/8	17.41765	19.35294	20.49135	21.11230
64QAM	1/2	14.92941	16.58824	17.56401	18.0926
	2/3	19.90588	22.11765	23.41869	24.12834
	3/4	22.39412	24.88235	26.34602	27.14439
	5/6	24.88235	27.64706	29.27336	30.16043
	7/8	26.12647	29.02941	30.73702	31.66845

From this, the net data rates of the 8, 7 and 6 MHz channel in the various operating modes can be determined:

The net data rates in DVB-T vary between about 4 and 31 Mbit/s in dependence on the transmission parameters and channel bandwidths used. In the 7 MHz and 6 MHz channels, the available net data rates are lower by a factor of 7/8 or 6/8, respectively. in comparison with the 8 MHz channel.

Table 20.12. Net data rates with non-hierachical modulation in the 7 MHz DVB-T Channel

Modulation	Code rate	Guard 1/4	Guard 1/8	Guard 1/16	Guard 1/32
		Mbit/s	Mbit/s	Mbit/s	Mbit/s
QPSK	½	4.354412	4.838235	5.122837	5.278075
	2/3	5.805882	6.450980	6.830450	7.037433
	¾	6.531618	7.257353	7.684256	7.917112
	5/6	7.257353	8.063725	8.538062	8.796791
	7/8	7.620221	8.466912	8.964965	9.236631
16QAM	½	8.708824	9.676471	10.245675	10.556150
	2/3	11.611475	12.901961	13.660900	14.074866
	¾	13.063235	14.514706	15.368512	15.834225
	5/6	14.514706	16.127451	17.076125	17.593583
	7/8	15.240441	16.933824	17.929931	18.473262
64QAM	½	13.063235	14.514706	15.368512	15.834225
	2/3	17.417647	19.352941	20.491350	21.112300
	¾	19.594853	21.772059	23.052768	23.751337
	5/6	21.772059	24.191177	25.614187	26.390374
	7/8	22.860662	25.400735	26.894896	27.709893

In hierarchical modulation, the gross data rates in 64QAM modulation are distributed at a ratio of 2:4 between HP and LP and in16QAM the ratio between HP and LP gross data rates is exactly 2:2. In addition, the net data rates in the high priority and low priority paths depend on the code rates used there.

The formulas for determining the net data rates of HP and LP are:

$$\text{net\_data\_rate}_{HP} = 188/204 \cdot \text{code\_rate}_{HP} \cdot \text{bits\_per\_symbol}_{HP} \cdot 1/(1 + \text{guard\_duration}) \cdot \text{channel} \cdot \text{const1};$$

$$\text{net\_data\_rate}_{LP} = 188/204 \cdot \text{code\_rate}_{LP} \cdot \text{bits\_per\_symbol}_{LP} \cdot 1/(1 + \text{guard\_duration}) \cdot \text{channel} \cdot \text{const1};$$

where
$bits\_per\_symbol_{HP}$ = 2:
$bits\_per\_symbol_{LP}$ = 2 (16QAM) or 4 (64QAM);
$code\_rate_{HP/LP}$ = 1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 7/8;
guard_duration = 1/4, 1/8, 1/16, 1/32;
channel = 1 (8MHz), 7/8 (7MHz), 6/8 (6 MHz);
const1 = $6.75 \cdot 10^6$ bits/s;

Table 20.13. Net data rates with non-hierarchical modulation in the 6 MHz DVB-T Channel

Modulation	Code rate	Guard 1/4	Guard 1/8	Guard 1/16	Guard 1/32
		Mbit/s	Mbit/s	Mbit/s	Mbit/s
QPSK	1/2	3.732353	4.147059	4.391003	4.524064
	2/3	4.976471	5.529412	5.854671	6.032086
	3/4	5.598529	6.220588	6.586505	6.786096
	5/6	6.220588	6.911765	7.318339	7.540107
	7/8	6.531618	7.257353	7.684256	7.917112
16QAM	1/2	7.464706	8.294118	8.782007	9.048128
	2/3	9.952941	11.058824	11.709343	12.064171
	3/4	11.197059	12.441177	13.173010	13.572193
	5/6	12.441176	13.823529	14.636678	15.080214
	7/8	13.063235	14.514706	15.368512	15.834225
64QAM	1/2	11.197059	12.441177	13.173010	13.572193
	2/3	14.929412	16.588235	17.564014	18.096257
	3/4	16.795588	18.661765	19.759516	20.358289
	5/6	18.661765	20.735294	21.955017	22.620321
	7/8	19.594853	21.772059	23.052768	23.751337

This brings us to the last details of the DVB-T standard related to actual field experience: the constellation and the levels of the individual carriers. Depending on the type of constellation (QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM, hierarchical with α = 1, 2 or 4), a mean signal value of the payload carriers is obtained which can be calculated simply by means of the quadratic mean (RMS value) of all possible vector lengths in their correct distribution. This mean is then defined as 100% or simply as One. In the case of the 2K or 8K mode, there are 1512 or 6048 payload carriers, the mean power of which is 100% or One. The TPS carrier levels are set in the same way exactly in relation to the individual payload carriers. The continual and scattered pilots are differently arranged. Due to the need for easy detectability, these pilots are boosted by 2.5 dB with respect to the mean signal level of the payload carriers. I.e., the voltage level of the continual and scattered pilots is higher by 4/3 compared with the mean level of the payload carriers and the power level is higher by 16/9.

$20 \log(4/3) = 2.5$ dB; voltage ratio of continual and scattered pilots with respect to the payload carrier signal average;

and

$10 \log(16/9) = 2.5$ dB; power ratio of continual and scattered pilots with respect to the payload carrier signal average;

In summary, it can be said that the position of the TPS carriers in the constellation diagram always corresponds to the 0 dB point of the mean value of the payload carriers and that the position of the continual pilots and of the scattered pilots always corresponds to the 2.5 dB point, regardless of the DVB-T constellation involved at the time.

Test instruments are often calibrated for carrier-to-noise ratio (CNR) and not for signal-to-noise ratio (SNR). The signal-to-noise ratio, however, is relevant to the calculation of the bit error ratio (BER) caused by pure noise interference in the channel. The CNR must then be converted into SNR. When converting CNR to SNR, the energy in the pilots must be taken into consideration. The energy in the pure payload carrier without pilots can be determined as follows, both for the 2K mode and for the 8K mode:

$$\text{payload\_to\_signal} = (\text{payload} / (\text{payload} + (\text{scattered} + \text{continual}) \cdot (4/3)^2 + \text{TPS} \cdot 1));$$

$$\text{payload\_to\_signal}_{2k} = 10 \log(1512/(1512 + (131 + 45) \cdot 16/9 + 17 \cdot 1)) = -0.857 \text{ dB};$$

$$\text{payload\_to\_signal}_{8k} = 10 \log(6048/(6048 + (524 + 177) \cdot 16/9 + 68 \cdot 1)) = -0.854 \text{ dB};$$

The level of the DVB-T payload carriers alone is thus about 0.86 dB below the total carrier level.

Mapping of the constellation diagrams for QPSK, 16QAM and 64QAM is another DVB-T system parameter. The mapping tables describe the bit allocation to the respective constellation diagrams. The mapping tables below are layed out with the LSB (bit 0) on the left and the respective MSB on the right. Therefore, the order from left to right is bit 0, bit 1 for QPSK, bit 0, bit 1, bit 2, bit 3 for 16QAM and bit 0, bit 1, bit 2, bit 3, bit 4, bit 5 for 64QAM.

QPSK

10 ●	00 ●
11 ●	01 ●

16QAM

1000 ●	1010 ●	0010 ●	0000 ●
1001 ●	1011 ●	0011 ●	0001 ●
1101 ●	1111 ●	0111 ●	0101 ●
1100 ●	1110 ●	0110 ●	0100 ●

64QAM

100000 ●	100010 ●	101010 ●	101000 ●	001000 ●	001010 ●	000010 ●	000000 ●
100001 ●	100011 ●	101011 ●	101001 ●	001001 ●	001011 ●	000011 ●	000001 ●
100101 ●	100111 ●	101111 ●	101101 ●	001101 ●	001111 ●	000111 ●	000101 ●
100100 ●	100110 ●	101110 ●	101100 ●	001100 ●	001110 ●	000110 ●	000100 ●
110100 ●	110110 ●	111110 ●	111100 ●	011100 ●	011110 ●	010110 ●	010100 ●
110101 ●	110111 ●	111111 ●	111101 ●	011101 ●	011111 ●	010111 ●	010101 ●
110001 ●	110011 ●	111011 ●	111001 ●	011001 ●	011011 ●	010011 ●	010001 ●
110000 ●	110010 ●	111010 ●	111000 ●	011000 ●	011010 ●	010010 ●	010000 ●

Fig. 20.10. DVB-T mapping tables

20.5 The DVB-T Modulator and Transmitter

Having dealt with the DVB-T standard and all its system parameters in detail, the DVB-T modulator and transmitter can now be discussed. A DVB-T modulator can have one or two transport stream inputs followed by forward error correction (FEC) and this only depends on whether this modulator supports hierarchical modulation or not. If hierarchical modulation is used, both FEC stages are completely independent of one another but are completely identical as far as their configuration is concerned. One transport stream path with FEC is called the high priority path (HP) and the other one is the low priority path (LP). Since the two FEC stages are completely identical with the FEC of the DVB-S satellite standard, discussed in the relevant chapter (Chapter 14), they do not need to be discussed in detail here.

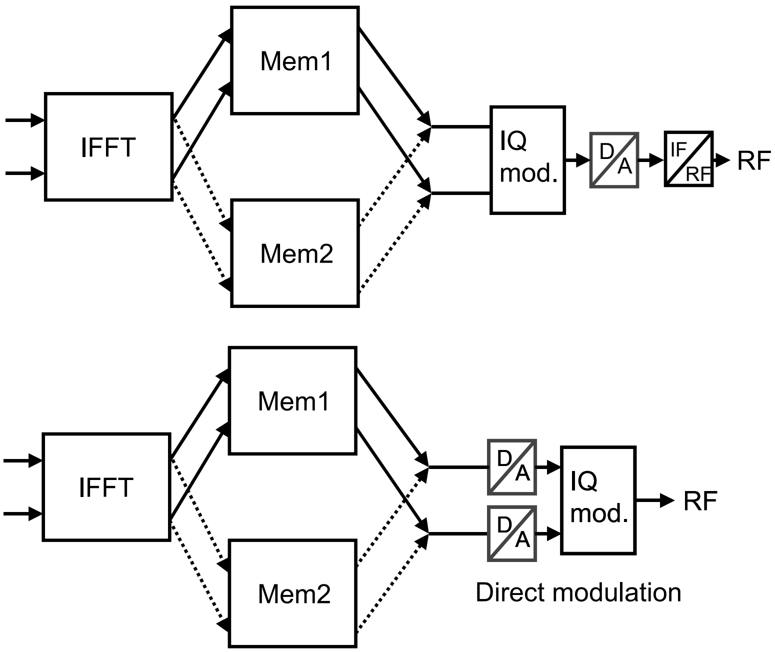


Fig. 20.11. Possible implementations of a DVB-T modulator

The modulator locks to the transport stream, present at the transport stream input, in the baseband interface. It uses for this the sync byte which has a constant value of 0x47 at intervals of 188 bytes. To carry also long-term time stamps in the transport stream, every eighth sync byte is then inverted and becomes 0xB8. This is followed by the energy dispersal stage which is synchronized by these inverted sync bytes both at the transmitting end and at the receiving end. Following this, initial error control is performed in the Reed Solomon encoder. The TS packets are now expanded by 16 bytes error protection. After this block coding, the data stream is interleaved in order to be able to break up error bursts during the de-interleaving at the receiver end. In the convolutional encoder, additional error protection is added which can be reduced again in the puncturing stage.

Up to this point, both HP and LP paths are absolutely identical but may have different code rates. The error-controlled data of the HP and LP paths, or the data of the one TS path in the case of non-hierarchical modulation, then pass into the de-multiplexer where they are then divided into 2, 4 or 6 outgoing data streams depending on the type of modulation (2 paths for QPSK, 4 for 16QAM and 6 for 64QAM). The divided data streams then pass into a bit interleaver where 126-bit-long blocks are formed which are then interleaved on each path. In the symbol interleaver following, the blocks are then again mixed block by block and the error-controlled data stream is distributed uniformly over the entire channel. Adequate error control and good distribution over the DVB-T channel are the prerequisites for COFDM to function correctly. Together, this is then COFDM - Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex. After that, all the payload carriers are then mapped depending on whether hierarchical or non-hierarchical modulation is used, and on the factor α being = 1, 2 or 4. This results in two tables, namely that for the real part Re(f) and that for the imaginary part Im(f). However, they also contain gaps into which the pilots and the TPS carriers are then inserted by the frame adaptation block. The complete tables, comprising 2048 and 8192 values, respectively, are then fed into the heart of the DVB-T modulator, the IFFT block.

After that, the COFDM signal is available separated into real and imaginary part in the time domain. The 2048 and 8192 values, respectively, for real and imaginary part in the time domain are then temporarily stored in buffers organized along the lines of the pipeline principle. I.e., they are alternately written into one buffer whilst the other one is being read out. During read-out, the end of the buffer is read out first as a result of which the guard interval is formed. To obtain a better understanding of this section, special reference is made to the chapter on COFDM. The signal is then usually digitally filtered at the temporal I/Q level (FIR filter) to provide for better attenuation of the shoulders.

The signal is now pre-equalized in a power transmitter in order to compensate for nonlinearities in the output stage. At the same time it is clipped in order to limit the DVB-T signal with respect to its crest factor since otherwise the output stages could be destroyed because of the very high crest factor of the COFDM signal due to its very high and very low amplitudes.

The position of the I/Q modulator depends on how the DVB-T modulator or transmitter is implemented in practice. The signal is either digital/analog converted separately for I and Q at the I/Q level and then supplied to an analog I/Q modulator which allows direct mixing to RF in accordance with the principle of direct modulation, a principle commonly used at present. The other approach is to remain at the digital level up to and including the I/Q modulator and then to perform the D/A conversion.

This, however, requires a further converter stage from a lower intermediate frequency to the final RF which is more complex and costs more and, therefore, is usually avoided today. On the other hand, this advantage is gained at the expense of the possibly unpleasant characteristics of an analog I/Q modulator, the presence of which can virtually always be detected in the output signal. Given the correct implementation, however, it is possible to manage direct modulation from baseband to RF (Fig. 20.11.).

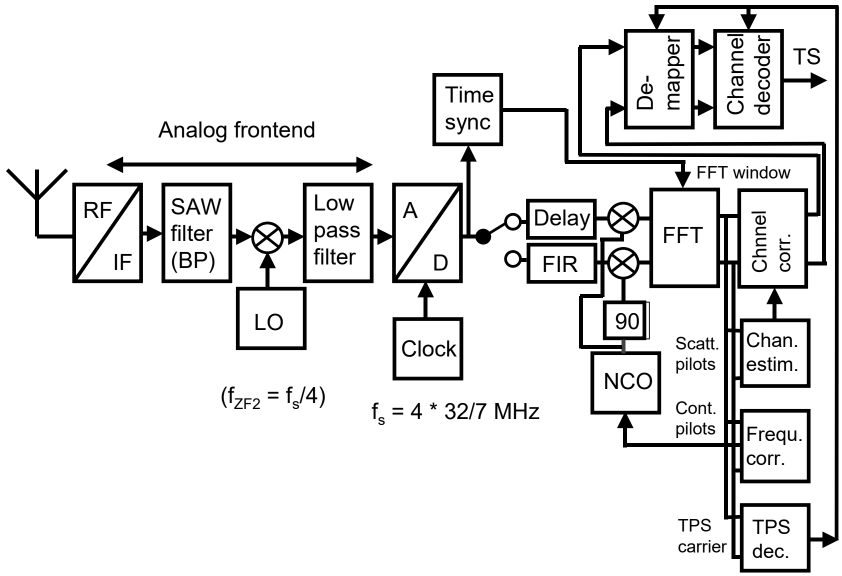


Fig. 20.12. Block diagram of a DVB-T receiver (part 1)

20.6 The DVB-T Receiver

One may think that the DVB-T modulator is a rather complex device but the receiving end is even more complicated. Due to the high packing density of modern ICs, however, most of the modules of the DVB-T receiver (Fig. 20.12.) can be accommodated in a single chip today.

The first module of the DVB-T receiver is the tuner. It is used for converting the RF of the DVB-T channel down to IF. In its construction, a DVB-T tuner only differs in being required to have a much better phase noise characteristic. The tuner is followed by the DVB-T channel at 36 MHz band center. This also corresponds to the band center of an analog

TV channel with a bandwidth of 8 MHz. However, In analog television, everything is referred to the vision carrier frequency which is 38.9 MHz at intermediate frequency. In digital television, i.e. in DVB-S, DVB-C and also in DVB-T, it is the channel center frequency which is considered to be the channel frequency. At intermediate frequency, the signal is bandpass filtered to a bandwidth of 8, 7 or 6 MHz, using surface acoustic wave (SAW) filters. In this frequency range, the filters can be implemented easily with the characteristics required for DVB-T. Following this bandpass filtering, the adjacent channels are suppressed to an acceptable degree. An SAW filter has minimum phase shift, i.e. there is no group delay distortion, only amplitude and group delay ripple.

In the next step, the DVB-T signal is converted down to a lower, second IF at approx. 5 MHz. This is frequently an IF of 32/7 MHz = 4.571429 MHz. After this mixing stage, all signal components above half the sampling frequency are then suppressed with the aid of a low-pass filter in order to avoid aliasing effects. This is followed by analog/digital conversion. The A/D converter is usually clocked at exactly four times the second IF, i.e. at $4 \cdot 32/7 = 18.285714$ MHz. This is necessary in order to be able to use the so-called fs/4 method for I/Q demodulation in the DVB-T modulator (see chapter on I/Q modulation). Following the A/D converter, the data stream, which is now available with a data rate of about 20 Megawords/s, is supplied to the time synchronization stage, among others. In this stage, autocorrelation is used to derive synchronization information. Using autocorrelation, signal components are detected which exist in the signal several times and in the same way. Since in the guard interval, the end of the next symbol is repeated before each present symbol, the autocorrelation function will supply an identification signal in the area of the guard intervals and in the area of the symbols. The autocorrelation function is then used to position the FFT sampling window into the area of guard interval plus symbol free of inter-symbol interference and this positioning control signal is fed into the FFT processor in the DVB-T receiver.

In parallel with the time synchronization, the data stream coming from the A/D converter is split into two data streams by a changeover switch. E.g., the odd-numbered samples pass into the upper branch and the even-numbered ones pass into the lower branch, producing two data streams with half the data rate in each case. However, these streams are offset from one another by half a sampling clock cycle. To eliminate this offset, the intermediate values are interpolated by means of an FIR filter, e.g. in the lower branch. This filter, in turn, causes a basic delay of, e.g. 30 clock periods or more which must be replicated in the upper branch by using simple shift registers. The two data streams are then fed to a complex mixer which is supplied with carriers by a numerically controlled oscillator

(NCO). This mixer and the NCO are then used for correcting the frequency of the DVB-T signal but because the oscillators lack accuracy, the receiver must also be locked to the transmitted frequency by means of automatic frequency control (AFC). This is done by the AFC evaluating the continual pilots after the Fast Fourier Transform (FFT). If the receiver frequency differs from the transmitted frequency, all the constellation diagrams will rotate more or less quickly clockwise or anticlockwise. The direction of rotation simply depends on whether the deviation is positive or negative and the speed depends on the magnitude of the error. It is then only necessary to measure the position of the continual pilots in the constellation diagram. The only factor of interest with respect to the frequency correction is the phase difference of the continual pilots from symbol to symbol, the aim being to reduce this phase difference to zero. The phase difference is a direct controlled variable for the AFC, i.e. the NCO frequency is changed until the phase difference becomes zero. The rotation of the constellation diagrams is then stopped and the receiver is locked to the transmitted frequency.

The FFT signal processing block, the sampling window of which is controlled by the time synchronization, transforms the COFDM symbols back into the frequency domain, providing again 2048 or 8192 real and imaginary parts. However, these do not as yet correspond directly to the carrier constellations. Since the FFT sampling window is not placed precisely over the actual symbol, there exists a phase shift in all COFDM subcarriers, i.e. all constellation diagrams are twisted. This means that the continual and scattered pilots are no longer located on the real axis, either, but somewhere on a circle, the radius of which corresponds to the amplitude of these pilots. Furthermore, channel distortions must be expected due to echoes or amplitude response or group delay. This, in turn, means that the constellation diagrams can also be distorted in their amplitude and can be additionally twisted to a greater or lesser extent. However, the DVB-T signal carries a large quantity of pilot signals which can be used as measuring signal for channel estimation and channel correction in the receiver. Over the period of twelve symbols, scattered pilots will have come to rest at every third carrier position, i.e. information about the distortion in the channel is available at every third carrier position. Measuring the amplitudes and phase distortion of the continual and scattered pilots enables the correction function for the channel to be calculated, rotating the constellation diagrams back to their nominal position. In addition, the amplitude distortion is removed and the constellation diagrams are compressed or expanded in such a way that the pilots come to rest at the correct position at their nominal position on the real axis.

Knowing about the operation of channel estimation and correction is of importance to understanding test problems in DVB-T. From the channel estimation data, it is possible to deduce both a large amount of test information in the DVB-T test receiver (channel transfer function, impulse response etc) and problems in the DVB-T modulator (I/Q modulator, center carrier).

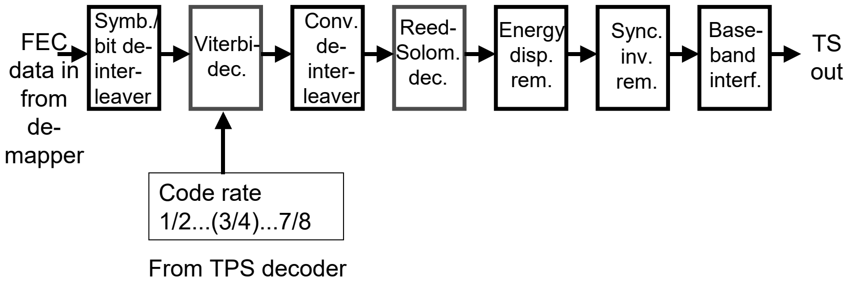


Fig. 20.13. Block diagram of the DVB-T receiver (part 2), channel decoding

In parallel with the channel correction, the TPS carriers are decoded in the uncorrected channel. The transmission parameter signalling carriers do not require channel correction since they are differentially encoded, the modulation of the TPS carriers being DBPSK (differential bi-phase shift keying). Each symbol contains a large number of TPS carriers and each carrier carries the same information. The respective bit to be decoded is determined by differential decoding with respect to the previous symbol and by majority voting within a symbol. In addition, the TPS information is error-protected. Therefore, the TPS information can be evaluated correctly for the DVB-T transmission before the threshold to the “fall off the cliff” is reached. The TPS information is needed by the de-mapper following the channel correction, and also by the channel decoder. The TPS carriers make it possible to derive the currently selected type of modulation (QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM) and the information about the presence of hierarchical modulation. The de-mapper is then correspondingly set to the correct type of modulation, i.e. the correct de-mapping table is loaded. If hierarchical modulation is provided, a decision about which path (high priority (HP) or low priority (LP)) is to be decoded must be made in dependence on the channel bit error ratio, either manually or automatically. Following the demapper, the data stream is available again and is provided for channel decoding.

Apart from the symbol and bit de-interleaver, the channel decoder (Fig. 20.13.) is configured exactly the same as that for the DVB-S satellite TV standard. The de-mapped data pass from the de-mapper into the symbol and bit de-interleaver where they are resorted and fed into the Viterbi decoder. At the locations where bits have been punctured, dummy bits are inserted again. These are dealt with similarly to errored bits by the Viterbi decoder which then attempts to correct the first errors in accordance with methods known from the trellis decoder.

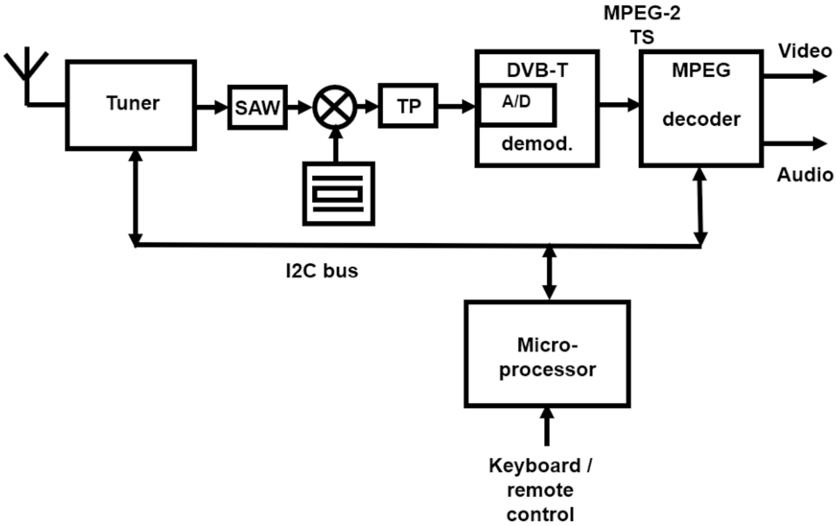


Fig. 20.14. Block diagram of a DVB-T receiver

The Viterbi decoder is followed by the convolutional deinterleaver which breaks up error bursts by undoing the interleaving. This makes it easier for the Reed Solomon decoder to correct bit errors. The Reed Solomon decoder corrects up to 8 bit errors per packet with the aid of the 16 error control bytes. If there are more than 8 errors per packet, the 'transport error indicator' is set to one and then this transport stream packet cannot be processed further in the MPEG decoder and error masking must be carried out. As well, the energy dispersal must then be undone. This stage is synchronized by the inverted sync bytes and this sync byte inversion must also be undone, after which the MPEG-2 transport stream is available again.

A practical DVB-T receiver (Fig. 20.14.) has only a few discrete components such as the tuner, SAW filter, the mixing oscillator for the 2nd IF and the low-pass filter. These are followed by a DVB-T demodulator chip which contains all modules of the DVB demodulator after the A/D converter. The transport stream coming out of the DVB-T demodulator is fed into the downstream MPEG decoder where it is decoded back into video and audio. All these modules are controlled by a microprocessor via an I^2C bus. Every TV flatscreen includes a DVB-T receiver.

20.7 Interference on the DVB-T Transmission Link and its Effects

Terrestrial transmission paths are subject to numerous influences (Fig. 20.15.). Apart from additive white Gaussian noise, these are mainly the many echoes, i.e. the multi-path reception which makes this type of transmission so very problematic. Terrestrial reception is easy or difficult depending on the echo situation.

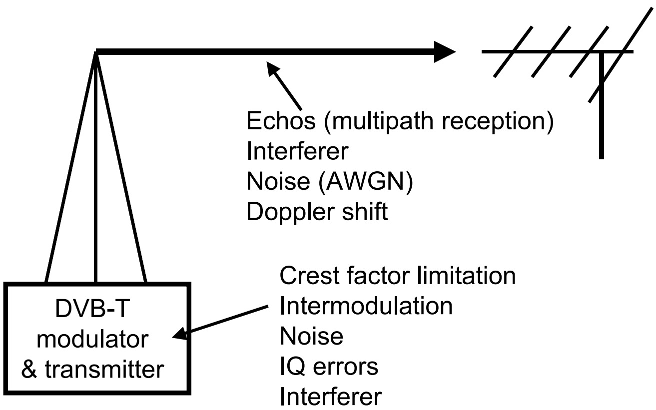


Fig. 20.15. Interferences on the DVB-T transmission link

The quality of the transmission link is also determined by the DVB-T modulator and transmitter. The high crest factor of COFDM transmissions results in special requirements even at the transmitting end. In theory, the crest factor, i.e. the ratio between the maximum peak amplitude and the RMS value of DVB-T signals is of the order of magnitude of 35 to 41 dB but it would not be possible to operate any practical power amplifier with these crest factors. Sooner or later, they would lead to its destruction. In practice, therefore, the crest factor is limited to about 12 to 13 dB before the DVB-T signal is fed into the power amplifier. However, this leads to a poor shoulder attenuation in the DVB-T signal and, in addition, in-band noise of the same order of magnitude as the shoulder attenuation is produced due to intermodulation and cross-modulation. The shoulder attenuation is then about 38…40 dB. To bring this shoulder attenuation back to a reasonable order of magnitude, passive band-pass filters tuned to the DVB-T channel are connected downstream (Fig. 20.16.). This again provides a shoulder attenuation of better than 50 dB (critical mask). But there is nothing that can be done against the in-band carrier/noise ratio of about 38…40 dB now present. These interference products are the result of the clipping required for reducing the crest factor and will now determine the performance of the DVB-T transmitter. I.e., every DVB-T transmitter will exhibit a CNR of the order of about 38…40 dB.

Today, direct modulation is used in virtually every DVB-T modulator, i.e. the signal is converted directly from the digital baseband into RF as a result of which analog I/Q modulators are used. In consequence, this circuit section, too, which is now no longer operating with theoretical perfection, has adverse effects on the signal quality, resulting in I/Q errors such as amplitude imbalance, I/Q phase errors and lack of carrier suppression. It is the art of the makers of modulators to keep these influences to a minimum. However, the presence of an analog I/Q modulator in the DVB-T transmitter is always detectable by measuring instruments as will be seen later in the chapter on test engineering. As well, the finite quality of the signal processing in the DVB-T modulator also results in the creation of noise-like interferers. Further noise occurs on the transmission link in dependence on the conditions of reception. Similarly, multiple echoes and sinusoidal or impulse-like interferers can be expected and echoes, in turn, can lead to frequency- and location-selective fading.

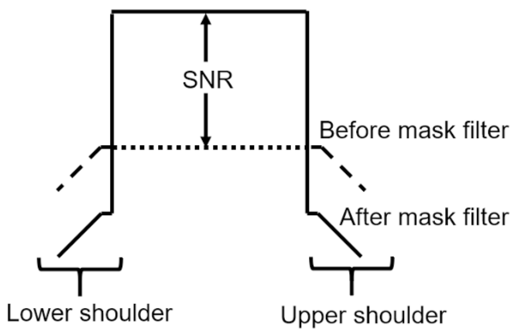


Fig. 20.16. Shoulder attenuation after clipping and after bandpass filtering

The crest factor in COFDM signals is the relation between the maximum peak voltage and the RMS voltage and it is calculated as follows.

The crest factor is usually defined as:

$$c_{fu} = 20 \log(U_{peak}/U_{RMS});$$

Power meters and spectrum analyzers are sometimes also calibrated to the following definition:

$$c_{fp} = 10 \log(PEP)/P_{AVG};$$

where PEP is the peak envelope power $(U_{peak}/\sqrt{2})^2/ z_o$;
and $P_{AVG} = U_{RMS}{}^2/ z_o$;

The two crest factor definitions thus differ by 3 dB:

$$c_{fu} = c_{fp} + 3\ \text{dB};$$

The crest factor of COFDM signals is calculated as follows:

The maximum peak voltage is obtained by adding together the peak amplitudes of all single carriers:

$$U_{peak} = N \cdot U_{peak0};$$

where U_{peak0} is the peak amplitude of a single COFDM carrier
and N is the number of COFDM carriers used.

The RMS value of a COFDM signal is calculated from the quadratic mean as:

$$U_{RMS} = \sqrt{N \cdot U_{RMS0}{}^2};$$

where U_{RMS} is the RMS voltage of a single COFDM carrier

$$U_{RMS0} = \frac{U_{peak0}{}^2}{\sqrt{2}};$$

The RMS value of the COFDM signal is then:

$$U_{RMS} = \sqrt{N \cdot \frac{U_{peak0}{}^2}{2}};$$

Inserting into the equation the maximum peak value occurring when all individual carriers are superimposed and the RMS value of the total signal provides:

$$cf_{COFDM} = 20\log(\frac{U_{peak}}{U_{RMS}}) = 20\log(\frac{N \cdot U_{peak0}}{\sqrt{N \cdot \frac{U_{peak0}^{\ 2}}{2}}});$$

This, in turn, can be transformed and simplified to become:

$$cf_{COFDM} = 20\log(\frac{N}{\sqrt{\frac{N}{2}}} = 20\log\sqrt{2N} = 10\log(2N);$$

The theoretical crest factors in DVB-T are then

$cf_{DVB\text{-}T2K} = 35$ dB;

in 2K mode with 1705 carriers used, and

$cf_{DVB\text{-}T8K} = 41$ dB;

in 8K mode with 6817 carriers used.

It must be noted that these are theoretical values which, due to the limited resolution of the signal processing and the clipping, cannot occur in practice. Practical values are of the order of magnitude of 13 dB (DVB-T power transmitter) to about 15 dB (with modulators without clipping).

In the following paragraphs, the DVB-T transmission path itself will be considered in greater detail. In the ideal case, exactly one signal path arrives at the receiving antenna. The signal is then only attenuated to a greater or lesser extent and is merely subjected to additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN). This channel with a direct view of the transmitter is called a Gaussian channel and provides the best conditions of reception for the receiver (Fig. 20.17.).

If multiple echoes are added to this direct signal path, the conditions of reception become much more difficult. This channel with a direct line of sight and a defined number of multiple echoes, which can be simulated as a mathematical channel model, is called a Ricean channel (Fig. 20.18.).

If then the direct line of sight to the transmitter, i.e. the direct signal path, is also blocked, the channel is called a Rayleigh channel (Fig. 20.19.). This represents the worst conditions of stationary reception.

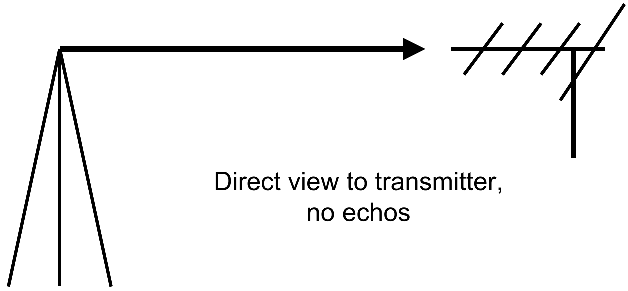


Fig. 20.17. Gaussian channel

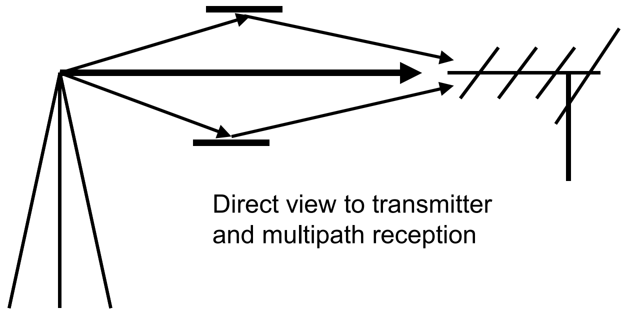


Fig. 20.18. Ricean channel

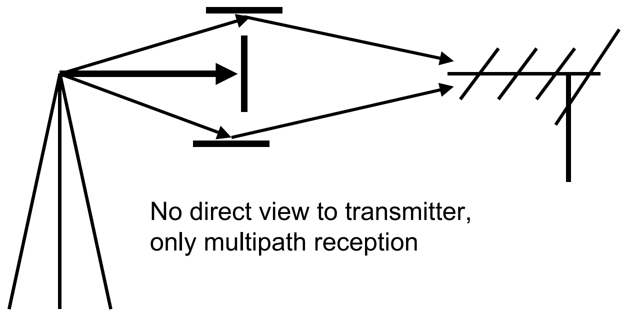


Fig. 20.19. Rayleigh channel

If, for instance, the receiver is moving at a certain speed away from the transmitter or towards the transmitter (Fig. 20.20.), a negative or positive frequency shift Δf will occur due the Doppler effect. This frequency shift by itself does not present any problems to the DVB-T receiver which will compensate for it by means of its AFC. It can be calculated from the speed of movement, the transmitting frequency and the velocity of light.

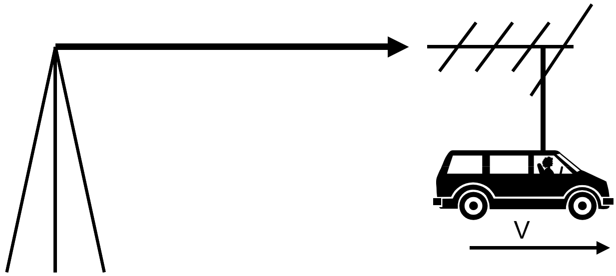


Fig. 20.20. Doppler effect

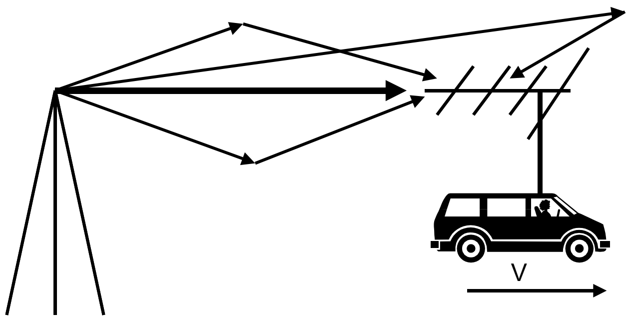


Fig. 20.21. Doppler effect in combination with multipath reception

The following applies:

$$\Delta f = v \cdot (f/c) \cdot \cos(\varphi);$$

where
v is the speed,
f the transmitting frequency,
c the velocity of light (299792458 m/s) and
φ the angle of incidence of the echo in relation to the direction of movement.

Example: At a transmitting frequency of 500 MHz and a speed of 200 km/h, the Doppler shift is 94 Hz.

If, however, multiple echoes are added (Fig. 20.21.), the COFDM spectrum becomes smeared. This smearing is due to the fact that the mobile receiver is both moving towards signal paths and moving away from other sources. I.e. there are now spectral COFDM combs which are shifting upward and downward. Due to its subcarrier spacing, which is narrower by a factor of 4, the 8K mode is much more sensitive to such smearing in the frequency domain than the 2K mode. The 2K mode is thus the better choice for mobile reception, although DVB-T was originally not intended for mobile reception.

Considering then the behavior of the DVB-T receiver in the presence of noise. More or less noise in the DVB-T channel leads to more or fewer bit errors during the reception. The Viterbi decoder can correct more or fewer of these bit errors depending on the code rate selected in the convolutional encoder. In principle, the same rules apply to DVB-T as do for a single carrier method (DVB-C or DVB-S), i.e. the same “waterfall” curves of bit error ratio vs. signal/noise ratio apply. The only caution is advised with respect to the signal/noise ratio which is also often called carrier/noise ratio. The two differ slightly in DVB-T, the reason being the power in the pilot carriers and auxiliary carriers (continual and scattered pilots and TPS carriers). To determine the bit error rate in DVB-T, only the power in the actual payload carriers can be used as the signal power. In DVB-T, the difference between the overall carrier power and the power in the pure payload carriers is 0.857 dB in the 2K mode and 0.854 dB in the 8K mode but the noise bandwidth of the pure payload carriers is reduced with respect to the overall signal.

The reduced noise bandwidth of the payload carriers is:

$$10 \log(1512/1705) = -0.522 \text{ dB; in 2K mode}$$

and

$$10 \log(6048/6917) = -0.520 \text{ dB; in 8K mode.}$$

Thus, the difference between CNR and SNR in DVB-T is:

$$CNR - SNR = -0.522 \text{ dB} - (-0.857 \text{ dB}) = 0.34 \text{ dB; in 2K mode, and}$$

$$CNR - SNR = -0.52 \text{ dB} - (-0.854 \text{ dB}) = 0.33 \text{ dB; in 8K mode.}$$

From the SNR in Fig. 20.22., the bit error ratio before Viterbi, i.e. the channel bit error ratio, can be determined. Fig. 20.22. only applies to non-hierarchical modulation since the constellation pattern can be expanded with hierarchical modulation.

The theoretical minimum carrier-to-noise ratios for quasi error-free operation depend on the code rate both in DVB-T and in DVB-S. In addition, the type of modulation (QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM) and the type of channel (Gaussian, Ricean, Rayleigh) have an influence. The theoretical minimum CNRs are listed below for the case of non-hierarchical coding.

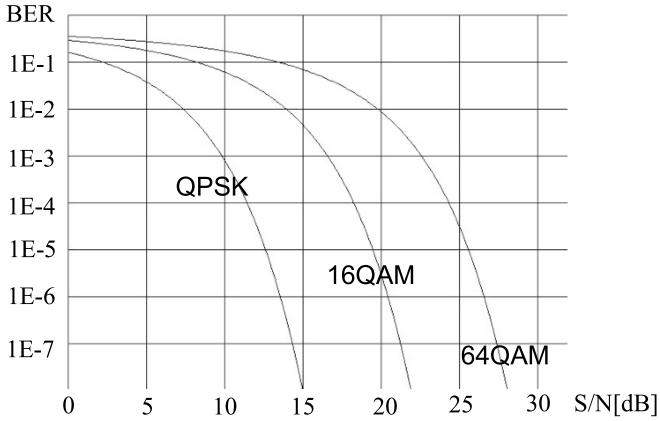


Fig. 20.22. Bit error ratio in DVB-T as a function of SNR in QPSK, 16QAM and 64QAM with non-hierarchical modulation

Table 20.14. Minimum CNR required with non-hierachical modulation

Modulation	Code rate	Gaussian channel	Rice channel	Rayleigh channel
		[dB]	[dB]	[dB]
QPSK	1/2	3.1	3.6	5.4
	2/3	4.9	5.7	8.4
	3/4	5.9	6.8	10.7
	5/6	6.9	8.0	13.1
	7/8	7.7	8.7	16.3
16QAM	1/2	8.8	9.6	11.2
	2/3	11.1	11.6	14.2
	3/4	12.5	13.0	16.7
	5/6	13.5	14.4	19.3
	7/8	13.9	15.0	22.8
64QAM	1/2	14.4	14.7	16.0
	2/3	16.5	17.1	19.3
	3/4	18.0	18.6	21.7
	5/6	19.3	20.0	25.3
	7/8	20.1	21.0	27.9

Thus, the demands for a minimum CNR fluctuate within a wide range from about 3 dB for QPSK with a code rate of 1/2 in a Gaussian channel up to about 28 dB for 64QAM with a code rate of 7/8 in a Rayleigh channel. Practical values are about 18 to 20 dB (64QAM, code rate 2/3 or 3/4) for stationary reception and about 11 to 17 dB (16QAM, code rate 2/3 or 3/4) for mobile reception.

Table 20.15. Theoretical minimum CNR with hierarchical modulation (QPSK, 64QAM, $\alpha = 2$); low priority path (LP)

Modulation	Code rate	Gaussian channel	Rice channel	Rayleigh channel
		[dB]	[dB]	[dB]
QPSK	1/2	6.5	7.1	8.7
	2/3	9.0	9.9	11.7
	3/4	10.8	11.5	14.5
64-QAM	1/2	16.3	16.7	18.2
	2/3	18.9	19.5	21.7
	3/4	21.0	21.6	24.5
	5/6	21.9	22.7	27.3
	7/8	22.9	23.8	29.6

20.8 DVB-T Single-Frequency Networks (SFN)

COFDM is well suited to single-frequency operation. As the name indicates, in single frequency operation, all transmitter operate at the same frequency which makes for great economy with regard to frequency resources. All transmitters radiate the identical signal and have to operate in complete synchronism with each other. Signals from adjacent signals are seen by a transmitter as if they were simply echoes. Frequency synchronization is the easiest condition because frequency accuracy and stability had to meet high demands even in analog television. In DVB-T, the transmitter RF is locked to the best reference available: the signal from the GPS (Global Positioning System) which is available throughout the world and is now also used for synchronizing the transmitting frequencies of a DVB-T single-frequency network. The GPS satellites radiate a 1 pps (pulse per second) signal to which a 10 MHz oscillator in professional GPS receivers is locked which, in turn, acts as reference signal for the DVB-T transmitters.

However, there is also a strict requirement with respect to the maximum distance between transmitters (Fig. 20.23. and Tables 20.16, 20.17. and 20.18.). This distance is related to the length of the guard interval and the velocity of light, i.e. the associated signal delay. Intersymbol interference can only be avoided if in the case of multipath reception, the delay on any path is no longer than the length of the guard interval. The question about what would happen if the signal received from a more distant transmitter violates the guard interval is easily answered: it results in intersymbol interference which becomes noticeable as noise in the receiver.

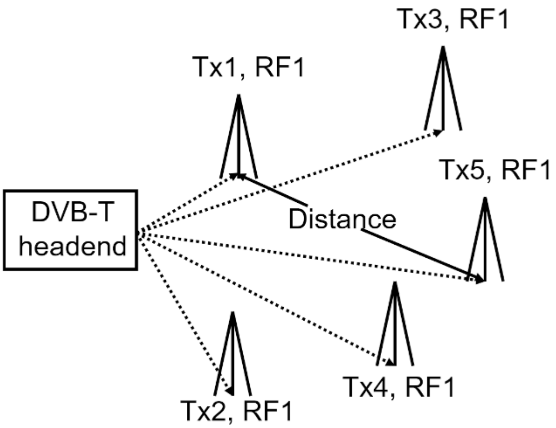


Fig. 20.23. DVB-T single-frequency network (SFN)

Table 20.16. Guard interval lengths for 8K, 2K modes and transmitter distances (8 MHz channel)

Mode	Symbol duration µs	Guard interval ratio	Guard interval µs	Transmitter distance km
2K	224	1/4	56	16.8
2K	224	1/8	28	8.4
2K	224	1/16	14	4.2
2K	224	1/32	7	2.1
8K	896	1/4	224	67.1
8K	896	1/8	112	33.6
8K	896	1/16	56	16.8
8K	896	1/32	28	8.4

Signals from transmitters at greater distances must simply be attenuated sufficiently. The threshold for quasi error free operation is formed by the same conditions as for pure noise. It is, therefore, of particular importance that the levels in a single-frequency network are calibrated correctly. It is not the maximum transmitting power at every transmitting site which is required but the correct one. Planning of the network requires topographical information.

In many cases, however, network planning is relatively simple since mostly only small regional single-frequency networks with only very few transmitters are set up.

Table 20.17. Guard interval lengths for 8K, 2K modes and transmitter distances (7 MHz channel)

Mode	Symbol duration µs	Guard interval ratio	Guard interval µs	Transmitter distance km
2K	256	1/4	64	19.2
2K	256	1/8	32	9.6
2K	256	1/16	16	4.8
2K	256	1/32	8	2.4
8K	1024	1/4	256	76.7
8K	1024	1/8	128	38.4
8K	1024	1/16	64	19.2
8K	1024	1/32	32	9.6

Table 20.18. Guard interval lengths for 8K, 2K modes and transmitter distances (6 MHz channel)

Mode	Symbol duration µs	Guard interval	Guard interval µs	Transmitter distance km
2K	299	1/4	75	22.4
2K	299	1/8	37	11.2
2K	299	1/16	19	5.6
2K	299	1/32	9	2.8
8K	1195	1/4	299	89.5
8K	1195	1/8	149	44.8
8K	1195	1/16	75	22.4
8K	1195	1/32	37	11.2

The velocity of light is c = 299792458 m/s which results in a signal delay per kilometer transmitter distance of t_{1km} = 1000 m/c = 3.336 µs. Since in the 8K mode, the guard interval is longer in absolute terms, it is mainly this mode which is provided for single frequency operation.

Long guard intervals are provided for single frequency networks. Medium-length guard intervals are used in regional networks. The short guard intervals, finally, are provided for local networks or used outside of single frequency networks.

In a single-frequency network, all the individual transmitters must be synchronized with one another. The program contribution is injected from the DVB-T broadcast headend in which the MPEG-2 multiplexer is located, e.g. via satellite, optical fiber or microwave link. It is clear that the MPEG-2 transport streams are subject to different feed line delays due to different path lengths. However, it is necessary that in each DVB-T modulator in an SFN network the same transport stream packets are processed into COFDM symbols. Every modulator must perform every operating step completely synchronously with all the other modulators in the network. The same packets, the same bits and the same bytes must all be processed at the same time. Every DVB-T transmitter site must broadcast absolutely identical COFDM symbols at exactly the same time.

The DVB-T modulation is structured in frames, one frame being composed of 68 DVB-T COFDM symbols. Within a frame, the complete TPS information is transmitted and the scattered pilots are scattered over the entire DVB-T channel. Four such frames, in turn, make up one superframe.

Frame structure of DVB-T:

- 68 COFDM symbols = 1 frame
- 4 frames = 1 superframe

One superframe in DVB-T accommodates an integer number of MPEG-2 transport stream packets, as follows:

Table 20.19. Number of transport stream packets per superframe

Code-rate	QPSK 2K	QPSK 8K	16QAM 2K	16QAM 8K	64QAM 2K	64QAM 8K
1/2	252	1008	504	2016	756	3024
2/3	336	1344	672	2688	1008	4032
3/4	378	1512	756	3024	1134	4536
5/6	420	1680	840	3360	1260	5040
7/8	441	1764	882	3528	1323	5292

In consequence, a superframe in a single-frequency network must be composed of absolutely identical transport stream packets and each modulator in the SFN must generate and broadcast the superframe at the same time.

These modulators must, therefore, be synchronized with one another and, in addition, the differences in the feed line delays must be equalized statically and dynamically. To achieve this, packets with time stamps are inserted into the MPEG-2 transport stream in the DVB-T broadcast headend/multiplex center. These packets are special transport stream packets which are configured similarly to an MPEG-2 table (PSI/SI). For this purpose, the transport stream is divided into sections, the lengths of which are selected to be approximately a half second because they must correspond to a certain integral number of transport stream packets fitting into a certain integral number of superframes. These sections are called megaframes.

A megaframe is composed of an integral number of superframes, as follows:

- 1 megaframe = 2 superframes in 8K mode
- 1 megaframe = 8 superframes in 2K mode

The 1 pps signals of the GPS satellites are also used for synchronizing the timing of the DVB-T modulators. In the case of a single frequency network, there is a professional GPS receiver outputting both a 10 MHz reference signal and this 1 pps time signal at every transmitter site and at the playout center (Fig. 20.24.) where the multiplexed stream is assembled.

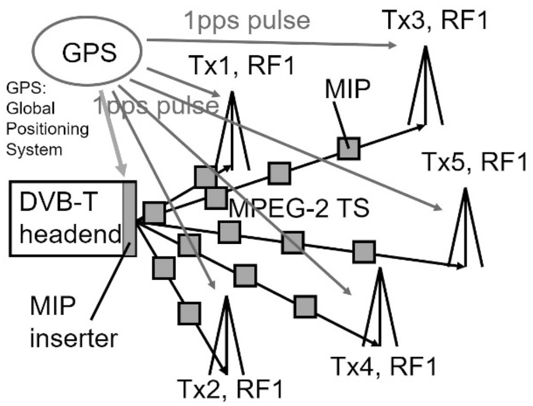


Fig. 20.24. DVB-T distribution network with MIP insertion

At the multiplexer site there is a so-called MIP inserter which inserts this special transport stream packet into one megaframe in each case, which is why this packet is called the megaframe initializing packet (MIP). The MIP has a special PID of 0x15 so that it can be identified and it contains time reference and control information for the DVB-T modulators. Among other things, it contains the time counting back to the time the last 1 pps pulse was received at the MIP inserter. This time stamp with a resolution of 100 ns steps is used for automatically measuring the feed distance. This time information is evaluated by the SFN adapter which automatically corrects the delay from the playout center to the transmitter site by means of a buffer store. It also requires information about the maximum delay in the network. Given this information, which can either be input manually at every transmitter site or is carried in the MIP packet, each SFN adapter adjusts itself to this time. The MIP packet also contains a pointer to the start of the next megaframe in numbers of TS packets. Using this pointer information, each modulator is then able to start a megaframe at the same time.

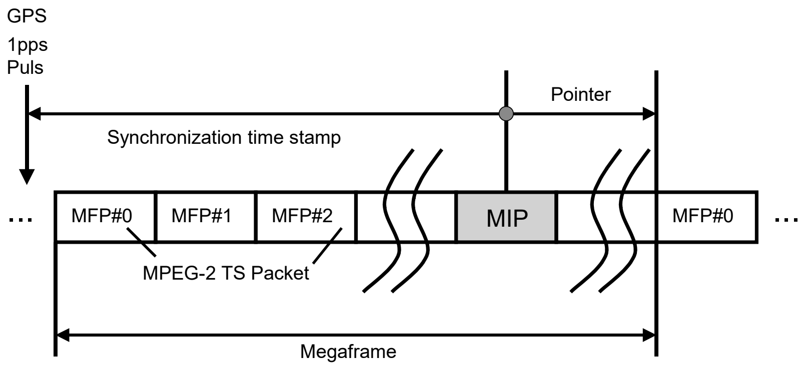


Fig. 20.25. Megaframe structure at transport stream level

The length of a megaframe depends on the length of the guard interval and on the bandwidth of the channel. The narrower the channel (8, 7 or 6 MHz), the longer the COFDM symbols since the subcarrier spacing becomes less. Every DVB-T modulator can now be synchronized by means of the information contained in the MIP packet. The MIP packet can always be transmitted at a fixed position in the megaframe but this position is also allowed to vary. Table 20.20. contains a list of the exact lengths of one megaframe.

Table 20.20. Duration of a megaframe

Guard interval	8 MHz channel	7 MHz channel	6 MHz channel
1/32	0.502656 s	0.574464 s	0.670208 s
1/16	0.517888 s	0.598172 s	0.690517 s
1/8	0.548352 s	0.626688 s	0.731136 s
1/4	0.609280 s	0.696320 s	0.812373 s

An MIP can also be used for transmitting additional information such as the DVB-T transmission parameters which makes it possible to control and configure the entire DVB-T SFN from one center. For example, it can be used for changing the type of modulation, the code rate, the guard interval length etc. However, although this is possible, it may not be supported by every DVB-T modulator.

If the transmission of the MIP packets stops for some reason or if the information in the MIP packets is corrupted, the single frequency network will lose synchronization. If a DVB-T transmitter detects that it has dropped lock or that it has not received a GPS signal for some time and the 1 pps reference and the 10 MHz reference have, therefore, drifted, it has to go off air or it will only be a source of noise in the single frequency network. Reliable reception is then only possible with directional reception close to the transmitter. For this reason, the MIPs in the transport stream arriving at the transmitter are often monitored using an MPEG-2 analyzer (see Fig. 20.26.).

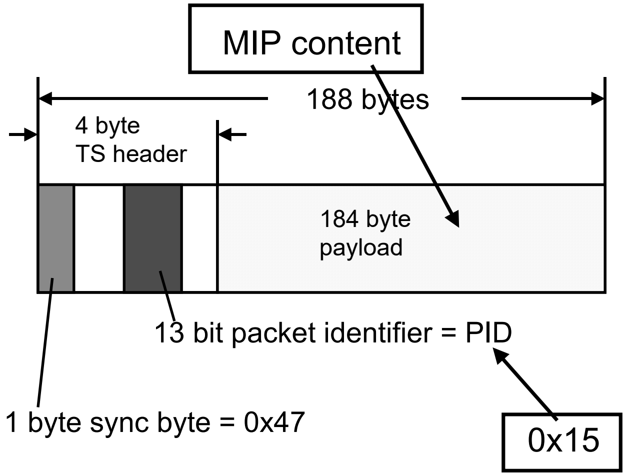


Fig. 20.26. Megaframe initializing packet

Fig. 20.27. (MIP = Megaframe Initializing Packet) clearly shows that the multiplexed MPEG-2 stream is now carrying a further table-like packet, namely the MIP packet, containing the synchronization time stamp, the pointer and the maximum delay. It also contains the transmission parameters. It can also be seen that every transmitter in the link-up can be ad-

dressed. Like a table, the content of the MIP packet is protected by a CRC checksum.

In addition, each transmitter can also be “pushed”, i.e. it is possible to change the time when the COFDM symbol is broadcast. This will not push the single frequency network out of synchronization but only vary the delay of the signals of the transmitters with respect to each other and can thus be used for optimizing the SFN network. These time offsets are found in the ‘TX time offset’ functions in Fig. 20.27. Shifting the broadcasting time makes it appear to the receiver as if the geographic position of the respective transmitter has changed. This may be of interest if two transmitter in an SFN are very far apart and are approaching the limit of the guard interval (e.g. former DVB-T network Southern Bavaria with the Olympic tower in Munich and the Mount Wendelstein transmitter at a distance d of 63 km) or if the guard interval has been chosen to be very short for reasons of data rates (e.g. Sydney, Australia, with g=1/16).

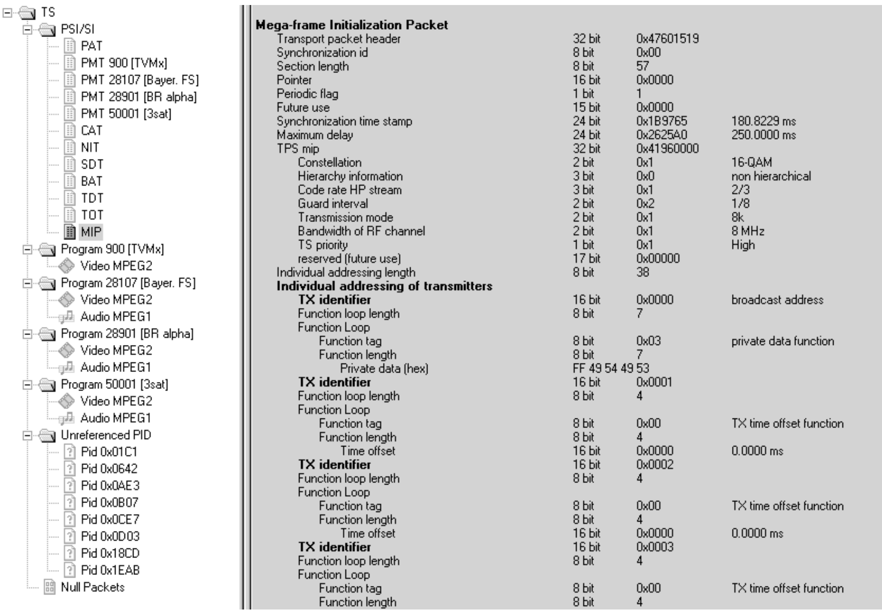


Fig. 20.27. MIP packet analysis [DVMD]

20.9 Minimum Receiver Input Level Required with DVB-T

To obtain error-free reception of a DVB-T signal, the minimum receive level required must be present at the DVB-T receiver input. Below a certain signal level, reception breaks off and at the threshold blocking and freezing effects will occur, above which reproduction is faultless. This section discusses the principles for determining this minimum level.

The minimum level in DVB-T is dependent on:

- Type of modulation (QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM)
- Error protection used (code rate 1/2, 2/3, 3/4,... 7/8)
- Channel model (Gaussian, Ricean, Rayleigh)
- Bandwidth (8, 7, 6 MHz)
- Ambient temperature
- Actual receiver characteristics (noise figure of the tuner etc)
- Multipath reception conditions

In principle, a minimum signal/noise ratio SNR is required which is mathematically a function of some of the factors listed above. The theoretical SNR limits are listed in Table 20.14. in Section 20.7. As an example, the 2 following cases will be considered:

Case 1: Ricean channel with 16QAM and code rate = 2/3, and
Case 2: Ricean channel with 64QAM and code rate = 2/3.

Case 1 corresponds to conditions adapted for a DVB-T network designed for portable indoor use (e.g. Germany) and Case 2 corresponds to conditions adapted for a DVB-T network with parameters designed for roof antenna reception (e.g. Sweden, Australia). Table 20.14. shows that

Case 1 requires a SNR of 11.6 dB, and
Case 2 requires a SNR of 17.1 dB.

The noise level N present at the receiver input is obtained from the following physical relation:

$$N[dBW] = -228.6 + 10 \log(B/Hz) + 10 \log((T/^{0}C + 273)) + F;$$

where
B = bandwidth in Hz;

T = temperature in ^{0}C;
F = noise figure of the receiver in dB;

The constant -228.6 dBW/K/Hz is the so-called Boltzmann's constant. Assuming that:

ambient temperature T = 20^{0}C;
noise figure of the tuner = 7 dB;
receiver bandwidth B = 8 MHz;

then

N[dBW] = -228.6 + 10 log(8000000/Hz) + 10 log((20/^{0}C+273)) + 7;

0 dBm @ 50 ohms = 107 dBμV;
0 dBm @ 75 ohms = 108.8 dBμV;

N = -98.1 dBm = -98.1 dBm + 108.8 dB = 10.7 dBμV; (at 75 ohms)

Thus, the noise level present at the receiver input under these conditions is 10.7 dBμV.

For Case 1 (16QAM), the minimum receiver input level required is, therefore:

S = SNR [dB] + N [dBμV] = (11.6 + 10.7)[dBμV] = 22.3 dBμV;

For Case 2 (64QAM), the minimum receiver input level required is:

S = SNR [dB] + N [dBμV] = (17.1 + 10.7)[dBμV] = 27.8 dBμV;

In practice it is found that these values can be met quite confortably with only one signal path but as soon as several signal paths are present at the receiver input (multipath reception), the required level is often higher by up to 10 to 15 dB and varies greatly with different types of receiver.

The received level actually present is the result of:

- Received signal strength present at the receiving location
- Antenna gain
- Polarization losses
- Losses in the feed line from the antenna to the receiver

The following applies to the conversion of the antenna output level from the field strength present at the receiving site:

$E[dB\mu V/m] = U[dB\mu V] + k[dB];$

$k[dB] = (-29.8 + 20 \log(f[MHz]) - g[dB];$

where:

E = electrical field strength,
U = antenna output level,
k = k factor of the antenna,
f = received frequency,
g = antenna gain (relative to isotropic radiator)
$g_{Dipol} = 2.1$ dB.

The level present at the receiver input as a result is then:

$S[dB\mu V] = U[dB\mu V] - loss[dB];$

Where 'loss' designates the implementation losses (antenna feeder etc.)

Considering now Case 1 (16QAM) and Case 2 (64QAM) at 3 frequencies:

a) f = 200 MHz,
b) f = 500 MHz,
c) f = 800 MHz.

The antenna gain is assumed to be g = 2.1 dB (0 dB relative to dipol) in each case (non-directional rod antenna).

k factors of the antenna:

a) k = (-29.8 + 48-2.1) dB = 14.1 dB;
b) k = (-29.8 + 54-2.1) dB = 22.1 dB;
c) k = (-29.8 + 58.1-2.1) dB = 26.2 dB;

Field strengths for Case 1 (16QAM; minimum required level
U = S - loss = 22.3 dBµV - 0dB = 22.3 µV:

a) E = (22.3 + 14.1) dBµV/m = 36.4 dBµV/m;
b) E = (22.3 + 22.1) dBµV /m = 44.4 dBµV/m;

c) E = (22.3 + 26.2) dBµV/m = 48.5 dBµV/m;

If a directional antenna with gain is used, e.g. a roof ("fixed") antenna ($g_{rel\_to\_dipol}$=6…10dB), the following conditions are obtained.

a) with f = 200 MHz (assuming g = 6+2.1 dB), E = 30.4 dBµV/m;
b) with f = 500 MHz (assuming g = 10+2.1 dB), E = 34.4 dBµV/m;
c) with f = 800 MHz (assuming g = 10+2.1 dB), E = 38.5 dBµV/m;

Field strengths for Case 2 (64QAM; minimum required level
U = S - loss = 27.8 dBµV - 0dB = 27.8 µV):

a) E = (27.8 + 14.1) dBµV/m = 41.9 dBµV/m;
b) E = (27.8 + 22.1) dBµV /m = 49.9 dBµV/m;
c) E = (27.8 + 26.2) dBµV/m = 54.0 dBµV/m;

If a directional antenna with gain is used, e.g. a roof ("fixed") antenna ($g_{rel\_to\_dipol}$=6…10dB), the following conditions are obtained.

a) with f = 200 MHz (assuming g = 6+2.1 dB), E = 35.9 dBµV/m;
b) with f = 500 MHz (assuming g = 10+2.1 dB), E = 39.9 dBµV/m;
c) with f = 800 MHz (assuming g = 10+2.1 dB), E = 44.0 dBµV/m;

Under free space conditions, the field strength at the receiving site can be calculated as:

$$E[dB\mu V/m] = 106.9 + 10 \log(ERP[kW]) - 20lg(d[km]);$$

where:
E = electrical field strength
ERP = equivalent radiated power, i.e. the transmitter power
plus antenna gain; (in this equation: antenna gain relative to dipol)
d = transmitter - receiver distance;

Under real conditions, however, much lower field strengths must be assumed because this formula does not take into consideration shading, multipath reception etc. The reduction depends on the topological conditions (hills, mountains, buildings etc) and can be up to about 20 - 30 dB, but also much more with complete shading.

Example (without reduction; a reduction of at least 20 dB is recommended):

ERP = 50 kW;

d = 1 km; E = (106.9 + 10 log(50) – 20 log(1)) dBμV/m
= 123.9 dBμV/m;

d = 10 km; E = (106.9 + 10 log(50) – 20 log(1)) dBμV/m
= 103.9 dBμV/m;
d = 30 km; E = 94.4 dBμV/m;

d = 50 km; E = 89.9 dBμV/m;

d = 100 km; E = 83.9 dBμV/m;

Since the plane of polarization was frequently changed from horizontal to vertical at the transmitter site as part of the DVB-T conversion. There may also be polarization losses of about 10…20 dB at the receiving antenna if this has not also been changed from horizontal to vertical.

If the DVB-T signal is received with an indoor antenna inside the house attenuation due to the building must also be considered which amounts to another 10 to 20 dB.

In Germany, the following field strength values were assumed with 16QAM, CR=2/3 as limit values for the field strength outside the building during the simulation of the conditions of reception (including some reserve and attenuation from outdoor to indoor):

- Reception with a roof antenna: approx. 55 dBμV/m
- Reception with an outdoor antenna: approx. 65 dBμV/m
- Reception with an indoor antenna: approx. 75…85 dBμV/m

Typically the same SNR conditions are in use in DVB-T2. That means that this field strength estimations can also be used in DVB-T2.

Bibliography: [ETS300744], [REIMERS], [HOFMEISTER], [EFA], [SFQ], [BTC], [ETL] [TR101190], [ETR290].

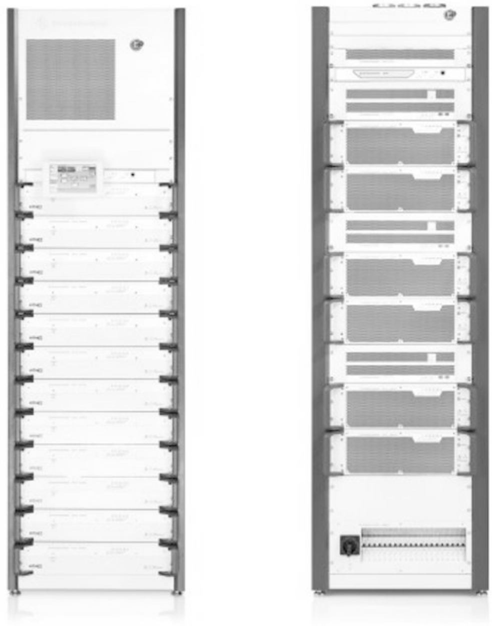


Fig. 20.28. Modern high-power (THU9, left, liquid-cooled) and medium-power (TMU9, right, air-cooled) DVB-T transmitters (Rohde&Schwarz)

Fig. 20.29. DVB-T mask filter, non-critical mask (liquid-cooled, manufacturer's photo Spinner)

21 Measuring DVB-T Signals

The DVB-T standard and its fascinating COFDM modulation method have now been discussed thoroughly. The present chapter deals with methods for testing DVB-T signals in accordance with the DVB Measurement Guidelines ETR 290 and also beyond these. The requirement for measurements is much greater in DVB-T than in the other two transmission path systems DVB-C and DVB-S due to the highly complex terrestrial transmission path, the much more complicated DVB-T modulator and the analog IQ modulator used there in most cases. DVB-T measuring techniques must cover the following interference effects:

- Noise (AWGN)
- Phase jitter
- Interferers
- Multipath reception
- Doppler effect
- Effects in the single-frequency network
- Interference with the adjacent channels (shoulder attenuation)
- I/Q errors of the modulator:
    - I/Q amplitude imbalance
    - I/Q phase errors
    - lack of carrier suppression

The test instruments used in DVB-T measuring techniques are essentially comparable to those used in broadband cable measuring techniques. The following are required for measuring DVB-T signals:

- A modern spectrum analyzer
- a DVB-T test receiver with constellation analyzer
- a DVB-T test transmitter for measurements on DVB-T receivers

The DVB-T test receiver is by far the most important measuring means in DVB-T. Due to the pilot signals integrated in DVB-T, it allows the most extensive analyses to be performed on the signal without using other aids,

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_21

the most important one of these being the analysis of the DVB-T constellation pattern. Although extensive knowledge in the field of DVB-C constellation analysis has been gathered since the 90s, simply copying it across into the DVB-T world is not sufficient. This chapter deals mainly with the special features of DVB-T constellation analysis, points out problems and provides assistance in interpreting the results of the measurements.

In comparison with DVB-C constellation analysis, DVB-T constellation analysis is not simply a constellation analysis on many thousands of subcarriers and many things do not lend themselves to being simply copied across.

Fig. 21.1. shows the constellation diagram of a 64QAM modulation in DVB-T. The positions of the scattered pilots and of the continual pilots (on the left and on the right outside the 64QAM constellation diagram on the I axis) and of the TPS carriers (constellation points inside the constellation diagram, also on the I axis) can be easily seen. The scattered pilots are used for channel estimation and correction and thus represent a checkpoint in the constellation diagram which is always corrected to the same position. The transmission parameter signalling carriers (TPS) serve as a fast information channel from the transmitter to the receiver. Apart from noise, there are no further influences acting on the constellation diagram shown (Fig. 21.1.).

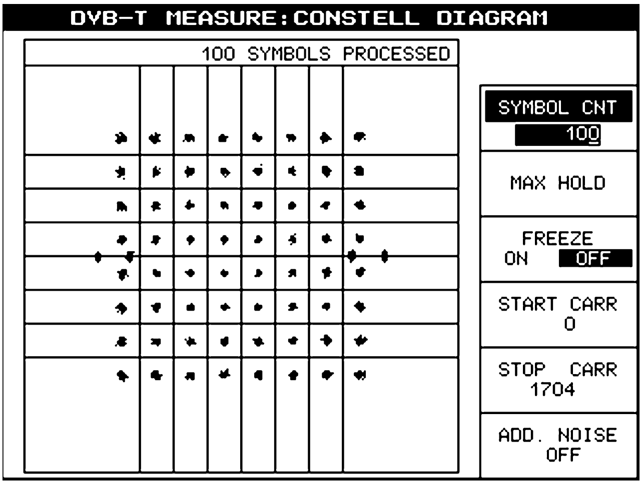


Fig. 21.1. Constellation diagram in 64QAM DVB-T

A DVB-T test receiver (Fig. 21.2.) can be used for detecting all influences acting on the transmission link. A DVB-T test receiver basically differs from a set-top box in the analog signal processing being of a much higher standard and the I/Q data and the channel estimation data being accessed by a signal processor (DSP). The DSP then calculates the constellation diagram and the measurement values. In addition, the DVB-T signal can be demodulated down to the MPEG-2 transport stream level.

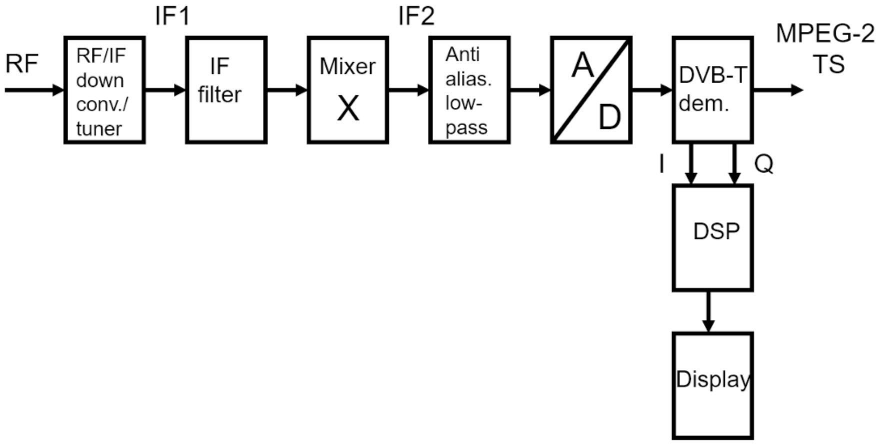


Fig. 21.2. Block diagram of a DVB-T test receiver

21.1 Measuring the Bit Error Ratio

In DVB-T, as in DVB-S, there are 3 bit error ratios due to the inner and outer error protection:

- Bit error ratio before Viterbi
- Bit error ratio before Reed Solomon
- Bit error ratio after Reed Solomon

The error ratio of greatest interest and providing the most information is the pre-Viterbi bit error ratio. It can be determined by applying the post-Viterbi data stream to another convolutional encoder of the same configuration as that at the transmitter end. If the data stream before Viterbi is compared with that after the convolutional encoder - taking into consideration the delay of the convolutional encoder - the two are identical provided there are no errors. The differences, and thus the bit errors, are then determined by a comparator for the I and Q branch.

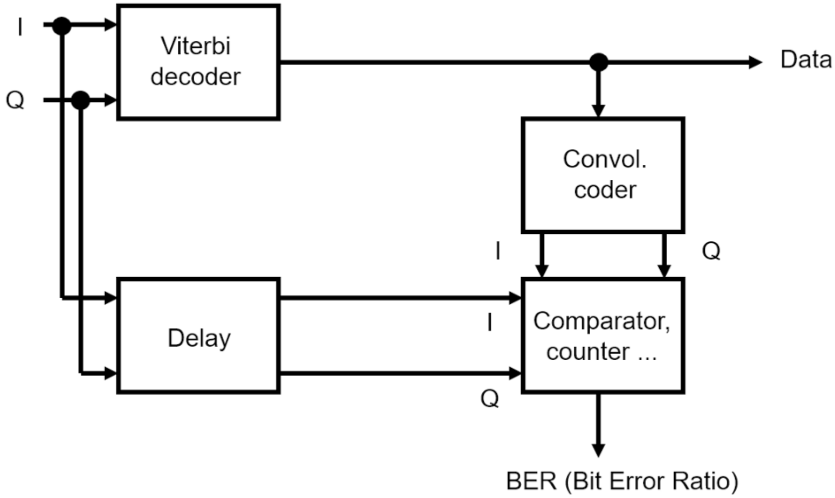


Fig. 21.3. Circuit for determining the pre-Viterbi bit error ratio

The bit errors counted are then related to the number of bits transmitted within the corresponding period, providing the bit error ratio (BER)

BER = bit errors/transmitted bits;

The pre-Viterbi bit error ratio range is between 10^{-9} (transmitter output) and 10^{-2} (receiver input with poor receiving conditions).

The Viterbi decoder can only correct some of the bit errors, leaving a residual bit error ratio before Reed Solomon. Counting the corrections of the Reed Solomon decoder and relating them to the number of bits transmitted within the corresponding period provides the pre-Reed Solomon bit error ratio.

However, the Reed Solomon decoder is not able to correct all bit errors, either, and this then results in errored transport stream packets. These are flagged in the TS header (transport error indicator bit = 1). Counting the errored transport stream packets enables the post-Reed Solomon bit error ratio to be calculated.

A DVB-T test receiver will detect all 3 bit error ratios and indicate them in one of the main measurement menus. It must be noted that with the relatively low bit error ratios usually available after the Viterbi and Reed-

Solomon decoders, measuring times of corresponding length in the range of minutes up to hours must be selected.

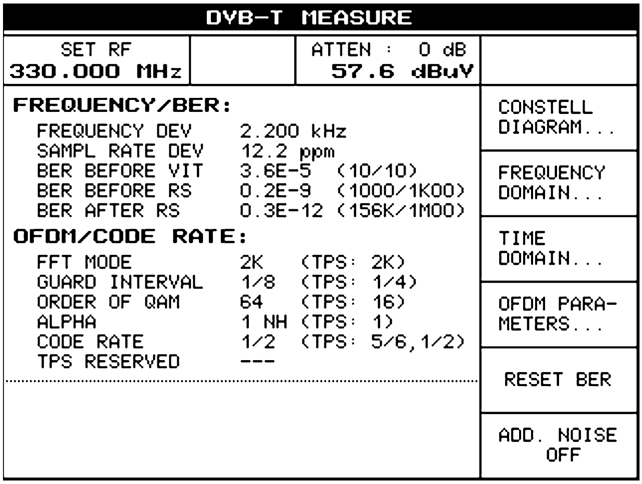


Fig. 21.4. Bit error ratio measurement [EFA]

The measurement menu example [EFA] shows that all the important information about the DVB-T transmission is combined here. Apart from the RF selected, it also shows the received level, the frequency deviation, all 3 bit error ratios and the decoded TPS parameters.

21.2 Measuring DVB-T Signals Using a Spectrum Analyzer

A spectrum analyzer is very useful for measuring the power of the DVB-T channel, at least at the DVB-T transmitter output. Naturally, one could simply use a thermal power meter for this purpose but, in principle, it is also possible to use a spectrum analyzer which will provide a good estimate of the carrier/noise ratio. Firstly, however, the power of the DVB-T signal will now be determined. A COFDM signal looks like noise and has a crest factor which is rather high. Due to its similarity with white Gaussian noise, its power is measured in a comparable way.

To determine the carrier power, the spectrum analyzer is set as follows: On the analyzer, a resolution bandwidth of 30 kHz and a video bandwidth of 3 to 10 times the resolution bandwidth, i.e. 300 kHz, is selected. To achieve a certain amount of averaging, a slow sweep time of 2000 ms is set. These parameters are needed because we are using the RMS detector of the spectrum analyzer. The following settings are then used:

- Center frequency: center of the DVB-T channel
- Span: 20 MHz
- Resolution bandwidth: 30 kHz
- Video bandwidth: 300 kHz (due to RMS detector and logarithmic scale)
- Detector: RMS
- Sweep: slow (2000 ms)
- Noise marker: channel center (resultant C’ value in dBm/Hz)

$$C[dBm]-10\lg\left(\frac{DVB-T-signal\_bandwidth}{resolution\_bandwidth}\right)[dB];$$

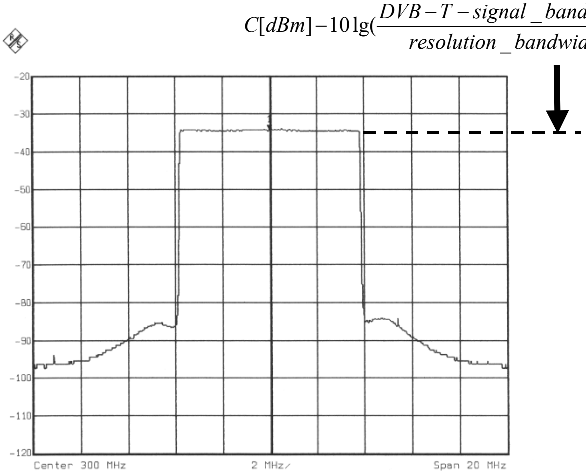


Fig. 21.5. Spectrum of a DVB-T signal

The level indicated in the useful band of the DVB-T spectrum (Fig. 21.5.) depends on the choice of resolution bandwidth (RBW) of the spectrum analyzer (e.g. 1, 4, 10, 20, 30 kHz) with respect to the bandwidth of the DVB-T signal (7.61 MHz, 6.66 MHz, 5.71 MHz). In the literature (DVB-T standard, systems specifications), 4 kHz is often quoted as reference bandwidth but is not always supported by spectrum analyzers. At 4 kHz reference bandwidth, the level shown in the useful band is 38.8 dB (7.61 MHz) or 32.2 dB, respectively, below the level of the DVB-T signal.

Table 21.1. Level of the useful band shown by the spectrum analyzer vs. signal level

Resolution bandwidth [kHz]	Attenuation [dB] in useful band vs. DVB-T signal level in the 7 MHz channel	Attenuation [dB] in useful band vs. DVB-T signal level in the 8 MHz channel
1	38.8	38.2
4	32.8	32.2
5	31.8	31.2
10	28.8	28.2
20	25.8	25.8
30	24.0	24.0
50	21.8	21.8
100	18.8	18.8
500	11.8	11.8

To measure the power, the noise marker is used because of the noise-like signal. The noise marker is set to band center for this but the prerequisite is a flat channel which can always be assumed to exist at the transmitter. If the channel is not flat, other suitable measuring functions must be used for measuring channel power but these depend on the spectrum analyzer.

The analyzer provides the C' value as noise power density at the position of the noise marker in dBm/Hz, automatically taking into consideration the filter bandwidth and the characteristics of the logarithmatic amplifier of the analyzer. To bring the signal power density C' into relation with the Nyquist bandwidth B_N of the DVB-T signal it is necessary to calculate the signal power C as follows:

$$C = C' + 10\log(\text{signal bandwidth/Hz})\ [\text{dBm}]$$

The signal bandwidth of the DVB-T signal is

- 7.61 MHz in the 8 MHz channel
- 6.66 MHz in the 7 MHz channel
- 5.71 MHz in the 6 MHz channel

Example (8 MHz channel):

Measurement value of the noise marker:	-100 dBm/Hz
Correction value at 7.6 MHz bandwidth:	+ 68.8 dB
Power in the DVB-T channel:	- 31.2 dBm

Approximate Determination of the Noise Power N:

If it were possible to switch off the DVB-T signal without changing the noise ratios in the channel, the noise marker in the center of the band would provide information about the noise ratios in the channel. However, this cannot be done so easily. Using the noise marker for measuring very closely to the signal on the shoulder of the DVB-T signal will provide at least a “good idea” about the noise power in the channel, if not a precise measurement value. This is because it can be assumed that in the useful band, the noise fringe continues similarly to that found on the shoulder.

The spectrum analyzer outputs the value N’ of the noise power density. The noise power N in the channel with the bandwidth B_C of the DVB-T transmission channel is calculated from the noise power density N’ as follows:

$$N = N' + 10\log(B_C/\mathrm{Hz});\ [\mathrm{dBm}]$$

The channel bandwidth to be used is the actual bandwidth of the DVB-T channel, e.g. 8 MHz.

Example:

Measurement value of the noise marker:	-140 dBm/Hz
Correction value at 8 MHz bandwidth:	+ 69.0 dB
Noise power in the DVB-T channel:	- 71.0 dBm

From this, the C/N value is obtained as:

$$CNR_{[dB]} = C_{[dBm]} - N_{[dBm]}$$

In the example: $CNR_{[dB]}$ = -31.2 dBm - (-71.2 dBm) = 40 dB.

In estimating CNR in this way by means of the shoulders of the DVB-T signal it is important that this measurement is made directly at the output interfaces after the power amplifier and before any passive bandpass filters. Otherwise, only the shoulders lowered by the bandpass filter will be seen. The author has repeatedly verified the validity of this measuring method in comparisons with measurement results from a DVB-T test receiver.

21.3 Constellation Analysis of DVB-T Signals

The great difference between the constellation analysis of DVB-T signals and DVB-C is that in DVB-T, many thousands of COFDM subcarriers are analyzed. The carrier range must be selectable. Often, displaying all the constellation diagrams (carriers No. 0 to 6817 or 0 to 1705, resp.) as constellation diagrams written on top of each other is of interest. The carrier ranges can be selected in 2 ways:

- Start/stop carrier no.
- Center/span carrier no

Apart from the pure payload carriers, the pilot carriers and the TPS carriers can also be considered but no mathematical constellation analysis will be performed on these carriers. In the following paragraphs, the individual influences and measurement parameters will be discussed.

The following measurement values can be detected by using constellation analysis:

- Signal/noise ratio SNR
- Phase jitter
- I/Q amplitude imbalance
- I/Q phase error
- Modulation error ratio MER

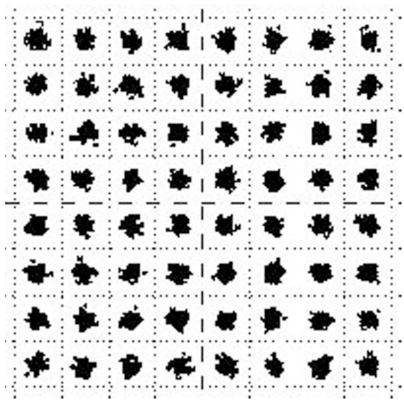


Fig. 21.6. Influence of noise

21.3.1 Additive White Gaussian Noise (AWGN)

White noise (AWGN, Additive White Gaussian Noise) leads to cloud-shaped constellation points. The larger the constellation point, the greater the noise effect. The signal/noise parameter SNR can be determined by analyzing the distribution function (normal Gaussian distribution) in the decision field. The RMS value of the noise component corresponds to the standard deviation. Noise effects affect every DVB-T subcarrier and can also be found on every subcarrier. The effects and measuring methods are completely identical with the DVB-C methods.

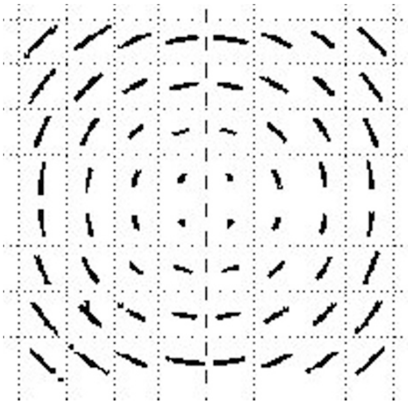


Fig. 21.7. Effect of phase jitter

21.3.2 Phase Jitter

Phase jitter leads to a striated distortion in the constellation diagram. It is caused by the oscillators in the modulator and also affects every carrier and can also be found on every carrier.

Here, too, the measuring methods and effects are completely identical. with those in DVB-C.

21.3.3 Interference Sources

Interference sources affect individual carriers or carrier ranges. They can be noise-like and the constellation points become noise clouds, but they can also be sinusoidal when the constellation points appear as circles.

21.3.4 Echoes, Multipath Reception

Echoes, i.e. multipath reception, lead to frequency-selective fading. There is interference in individual carrier ranges but the information lost as a result can be restored again due to the interleaving across the frequency and the large amount of error protection (Reed Solomon and convolutional coding) provided in DVB-T. Of course, COFDM (Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex) was developed precisely for this purpose, namely to cope with the effects of multipath reception in terrestrial transmission.

21.3.5 Doppler Effect

In mobile reception, a frequency shift occurs over the entire DVB-T spectrum due to the Doppler effect. By itself, the Doppler effect does not present a problem in DVB-T transmission because a shift of a few hundred Hertz at motor vehicle speeds can be handled easily. It is when Doppler effect and multipath reception are combined that the spectrum becomes smeared. Echoes moving towards the receiver will shift the spectrum into a different direction from those moving away from the receiver and, as a result, the signal/noise ratio in the channel deteriorates.

21.3.6 I/Q Errors of the Modulator

The focus of this discussion will now shift to the I/Q errors of the DVB-T modulator, the effects of which differ from those in DVB-C.

The COFDM symbol is produced by means of the mapper, the real parts and imaginary parts of all subcarriers being set in the frequency domain before the IFFT (Inverse Fast Fourier Transform). Each carrier is independently QAM modulated (QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM) in accordance with the information to be transmitted. The spectrum has no symmetries or centro-symmetries and thus is not conjugate with respect to the IFFT band center.

According to system theory, therefore, a complex time-domain signal must be produced after the IFFT. Considering then the real time-domain signal re(t) and the imaginary time-domain signal im(t) carrier by carrier, it is found that for each carrier, re(t) has exactly the same amplitude as im(t) and that im(t) is always shifted by exactly 90 degrees in phase with respect to re(t). All re(t) superimposed in time are fed into the I branch of the complex I/Q mixer and all im(t) superimposed in time are fed into the Q branch. The I mixer is fed with 90 degrees carrier phase and the Q mixer is fed with 90 degrees carrier phase and the two modulation products added together result in the COFDM signal cofdm(t).

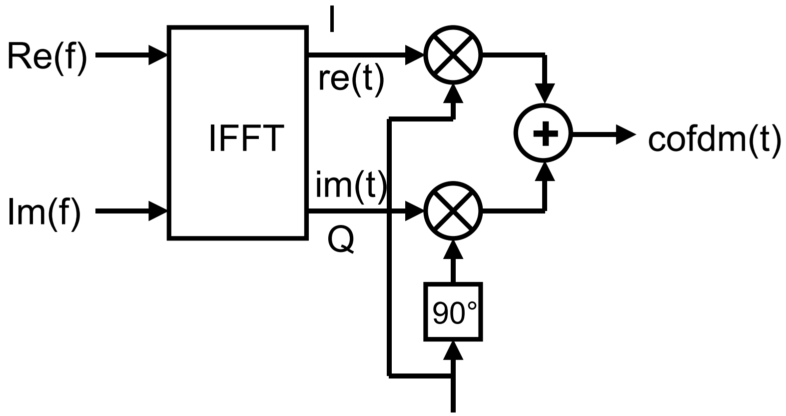


Fig. 21.8. COFDM modulator

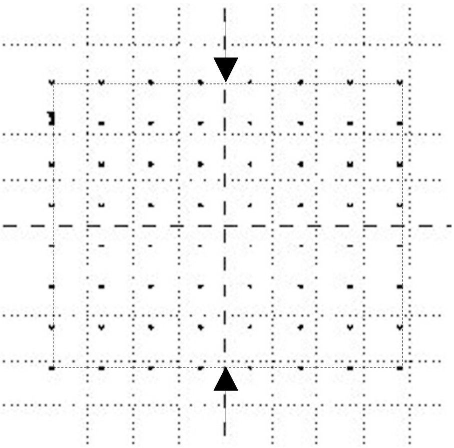


Fig. 21.9. I/Q imbalance

The signal branches re(t) and im(t) must exhibit exactly the right ratios of levels with respect to one another. The 90^0 phase shifter must also be set correctly. And there must not be any DC component superimposed on the re(t) and im(t) signals. Otherwise, so-called I/Q errors will occur. The resultant phenomena appearing in the DVB-T signal will be shown in Fig. 21.9.

Fig. 21.9. shows the constellation diagram with an I/Q amplitude imbalance in the I/Q mixer of the modulator. The pattern is rectangularly distorted, i.e. compressed in one direction (horizontal or vertical). This effect can be observed easily in DVB-C but can only be verified on the center carrier (band center) in DVB-T where all the other carriers display noise-like interference.

An I/Q phase error leads to a rhomboid-like distortion of the constellation diagram (Fig. 21.10.). This effect can be observed without problems in the DVB-C cable standard but can only be verified on the center carrier (band center) in DVB-T where all the other carriers also display noise-like interference due to this effect.

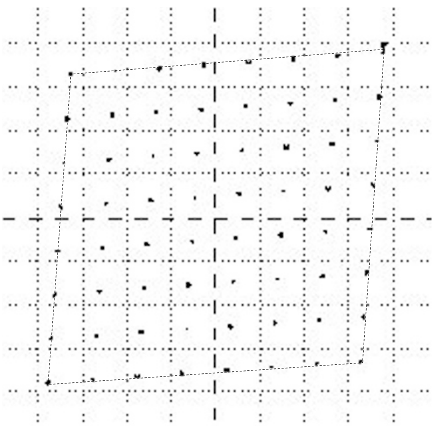


Fig. 21.10. I/Q phase error

A residual carrier present at the I/Q mixer (Fig. 21.11.) shifts the constellation diagram out of the center in some direction. The pattern itself remains undistorted. This effect can only be observed on the center carrier and only affects this carrier.

Today, virtually most of the DVB-T modulators operate in accordance with the direct modulation method. An analog I/Q modulator used in this mode usually exhibits problems in the suppression of the carrier, among others. Although the manufacturers have managed to overcome problems of I/Q amplitude imbalance and I/Q phase errors in most cases, there is a remaining problem of carrier suppression to be found more or less with every DVB-T modulator of this type and has been observed to a greater or lesser extent at many DVB-T transmitter sites around the globe by the author. The residual-carrier problem can only be verified at the center carrier (3408 or 852, resp.) in the center of the band and only causes interference there or in the areas around the center carrier. A lack of carrier suppression can be detected right away as a dip in the display of the modulation error ratio over the range of DVB-T subcarriers in the center of the band and an expert in DVB-T measuring techniques can immediately tell that there is a DVB-T modulator operating in direct modulation mode.

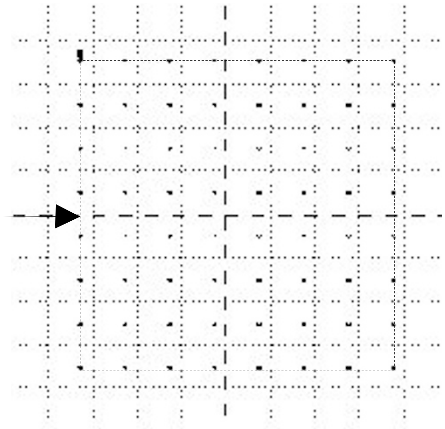


Fig. 21.11. Effect of residual carrier

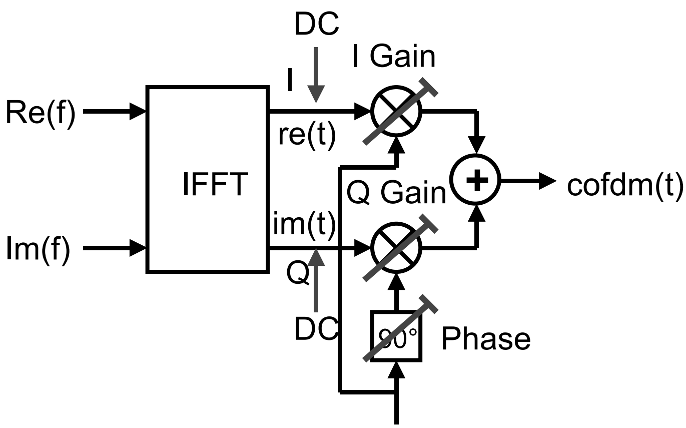


Fig. 21.12. COFDM modulator with I/Q errors

21.3.7 Cause and Effect of I/Q Errors in DVB-T

What then is the cause of I/Q errors, why can these effects be observed only at the center carrier and why do all other carriers exhibit noise-like interference in the presence of any I/Q amplitude imbalance and I/Q phase error?

Fig. 21.12. shows the places in the I/Q modulator at which these errors are produced. A DC component in re(t) or im(t) after the IFFT will lead to a residual carrier in the I or Q branch or in both branches. Apart from a corresponding amplitude, the residual carrier will, therefore, also exhibit a phase angle.

Different gains in the I and Q branches will result in an I/Q amplitude imbalance. If the phase angle at the I/Q mixer differs from 90 degrees, an I/Q error (quadrature error) is produced.

The disturbances in DVB-T caused by the I/Q errors can be explained quite clearly without much mathematics by using vector diagrams. Let us begin with the vector diagram of a normal amplitude modulation. An AM can be represented as a rotating carrier vector and by superimposed vectors of the two sidebands, one sideband vector rotating counterclockwise and one sideband vector rotating clockwise. The resultant vector is always located in the plane of the carrier vector, i.e. the carrier vector is varied (modulated) in amplitude.

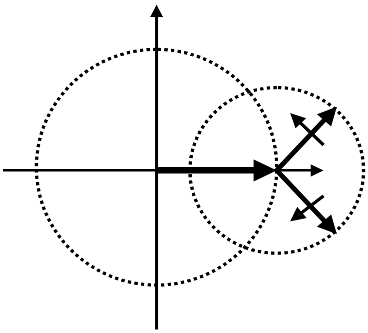


Fig. 21.13. Vector diagram of an amplitude modulation

Suppressing the carrier vector results in amplitude modulation with carrier suppression.

Correspondingly, the behaviour of an I/Q modulator can also be represented by superimposing 2 vector diagrams (Fig. 21.15.). Both mixers operate with suppressed carrier.

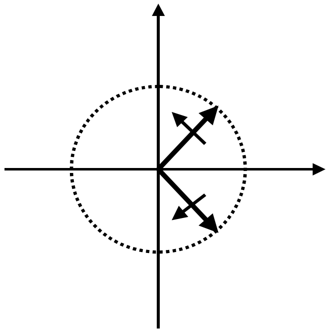


Fig. 21.14. Vector diagram of an amplitude modulation with suppressed carrier

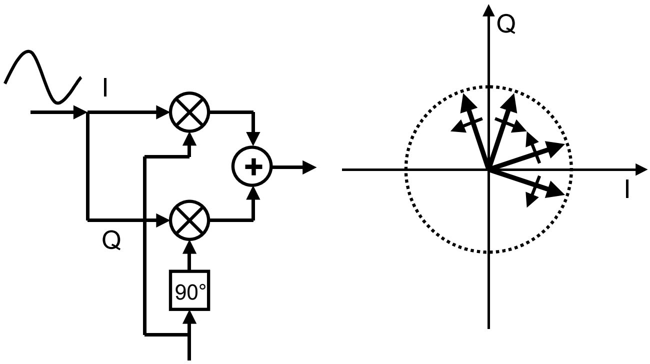


Fig. 21.15. I/Q modulation

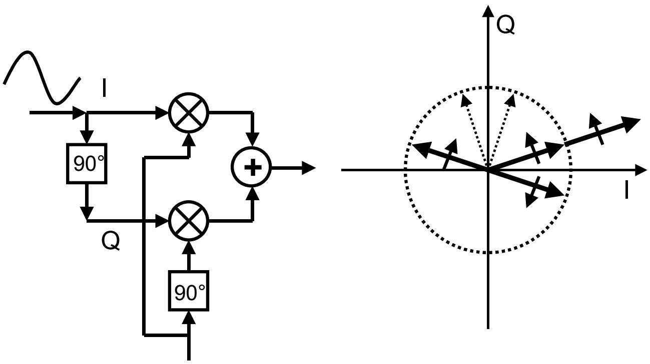


Fig. 21.16. Single sideband modulation

If the same signal is fed into the I branch and into the Q branch, but with a phase difference of 90 degrees from one another, a vector diagram as shown in Fig. 21.16. (‘single sideband modulation’) is obtained. It can be seen clearly that two sideband vectors are added and two sideband vectors cancel (are subtracted). One sideband is thus suppressed, resulting in single sideband amplitude modulation. A COFDM modulator can thus be interpreted as being a single sideband modulator for many thousands of subcarriers. In an ideal COFDM modulator, there is no crosstalk from the upper COFDM band to the lower one and vice versa.

Since the IFFT is a purely mathematical process, it can be assumed to be ideal. The I/Q mixer, however, can be implemented as a digital (ideal) mixer or as an analog mixer and there are and will be in future analog I/Q mixers in DVB-T modulators (direct modulation).

If then an I/Q amplitude imbalance exists, this means that the upper or lower sideband no longer cancel completely, leaving an interference component. The same applies to an I/Q phase error. It is clear, therefore, that all the subcarriers are subject to noise-like interference, with the exception of the center carrier. It is also clear why a residual carrier will push the constellation pattern away from the center at the center carrier and only interferes with the latter.

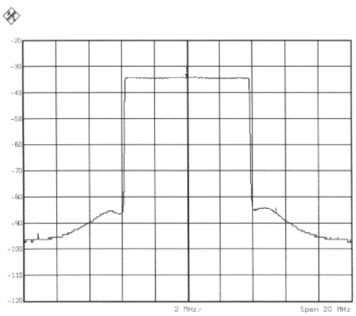


Fig. 21.17. Spectrum of a DVB-T signal

This can also be shown impressively in the spectrum of the DVB-T signal if the DVB-T modulator has the test function of switching off e.g. the lower carrier band in the spectrum. This can be done, for example, with a DVB test transmitter. In the center of the band (center carrier), an existing residual carrier can be seen clearly. If the I/Q modulator is then adjusted to produce an amplitude imbalance, crosstalk from the upper to the lower sideband is clearly apparent. The same applies to an I/Q phase error.

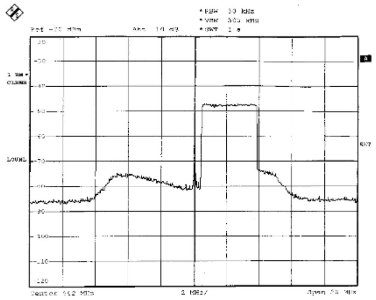


Fig. 21.18. Lower band switched off

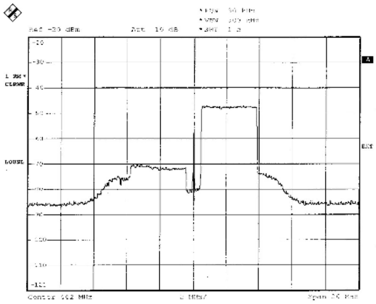


Fig. 21.19. 10% amplitude imbalance

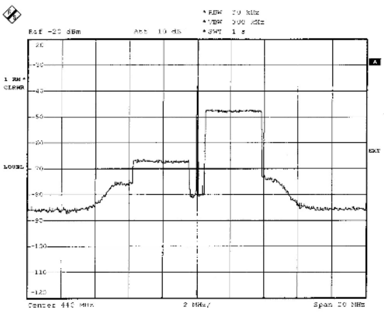
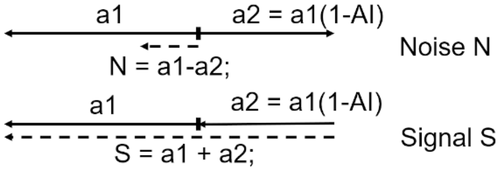


Fig. 21.20. 10° phase error

The process of noise-like crosstalk can be described easily by means of simple trigonometric operations which can be derived from the vector diagram.

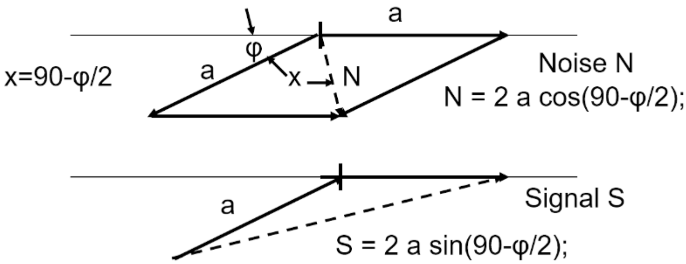


$$S/N = (a1+a2)/(a1-a2) = (a1+a1(1-AI)/(a1-a1(1-AI) = (2-AI)/AI;$$

$$SNR[dB] = 20lg((2-AI[\%]/100)/(AI[\%]/100));$$

Fig. 21.21. Determining the SNR with amplitude imbalance

In the case of amplitude imbalance, the opposing vectors no longer cancel completely (Fig. 21.21.), resulting in a noise vector causing crosstalk from the upper DVB-T band to the lower band and vice versa. The actual useful signal amplitude decreases by the same amount by which the crosstalk increases.



$$S/N = (2a)/(2a)\ (\sin(90-\varphi/2)/\cos(90-\varphi/2)) = \tan(90-\varphi/2);$$

$$SNR[dB] = 20lg(\tan(90-\varphi/2));$$

Fig. 21.22. Determining the SNR in the presence of an I/Q phase error

A phase error will result in a noise vector the length of which can be determined from the vector parallelogram. The useful signal amplitude also decreases by the same amount. Fig. 21.22. shows the conditions for the signal/noise ratio SNR in the presence of amplitude imbalance and of a phase error, respectively, which have now been derived as formulae. In the practical implementation of a DVB-T modulator, the aim is an amplitude imbalance of less than 0.5% and a phase error of less than 0.5 degrees.^

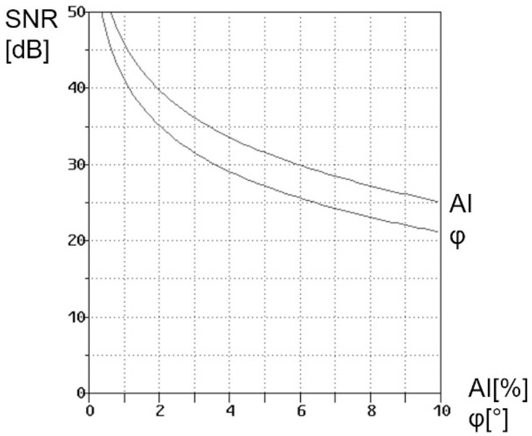


Fig. 21.23. DVB-T signal/noise ratios with amplitude imbalance (AI) and phase error (PE) of the IQ modulator

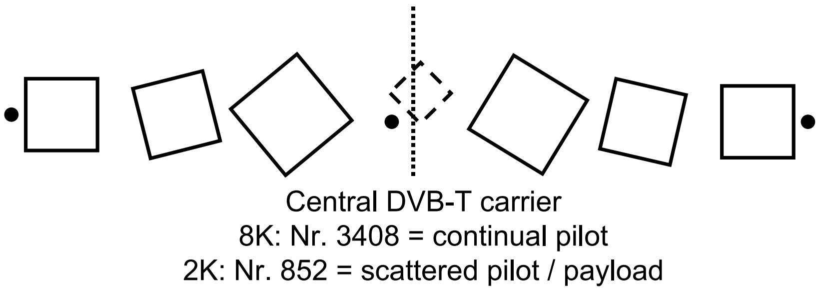


Fig. 21.24. Distortions in the vicinity of the center carrier due to the channel correction in the DVB-T receiver

Thus, I/Q errors of the DVB-T modulator can only be identified by observing the center carrier but may interfere with the entire DVB-T signal. In addition, it will be found that in each case at least the two upper and lower carriers adjacent to the center carrier are also distorted. This is caused by the channel correction in the DVB-T receiver where channel estimation and correction is performed on the basis of the evaluation of the scattered pilots. But these are only available in intervals of 3 carriers and between them it is necessary to interpolate.

In 2K mode, the center carrier is No. 852 which is a payload carrier or sometimes a scattered pilot. Verifying I/Q errors will not present any problems, therefore. The situation is different in 8K mode where the center carrier is No. 3408 and is always a continual pilot. I/Q errors can only be extrapolated in this case by observing the adjacent upper and lower carriers.

Each of the effects described has its own measurement parameters. In the DVB-C cable standard, these parameters have been combined to form an additional aggregate parameter called the modulation error ratio.

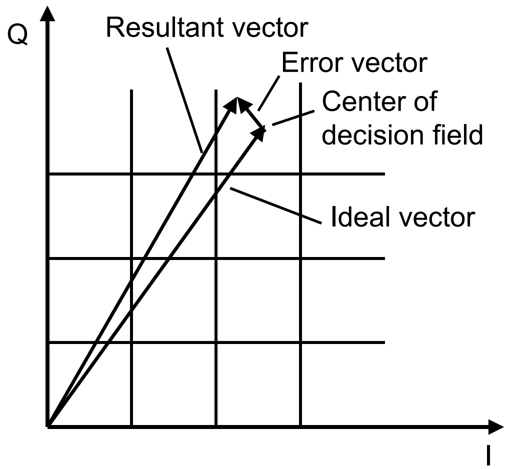


Fig. 21.25. Error vector for determining the modulation error ratio (MER)

The modulation error ratio (MER) is a measure of the sum of all interference effects occurring on the transmission link. Like the signal/noise ratio, it is usually specified in dB. If only one noise effect is present, MER and SNR are equal.

The result of all the interference effects on a digital TV signal in broadband cable networks, explained above, is that the constellation points exhibit deviations with respect to their nominal position in the center of the decision errors. If the deviations are too great, the decision boundaries are crossed and bit errors occur. However, the deviations from the center of the decision field can also be considered to be measurement parameters for the magnitude of an arbitrary interferer. Which is precisely the aim of an artificial measurement parameter like the MER. When measuring the MER, it is assumed that the actual hits in the constellation fields have been pushed away from the center of the respective error by interferers. The interferers are allocated error vectors, the error vector pointing from the center of the constellation field to the point of the actual hit in the constellation field. Then the lengths of all these error vectors are measured with respect to time and the quadratic mean is formed or the maximum peak value is measured in a time window. The definition of MER can be found in the DVB Measurement Guidelines [ETR290].

The MER is calculated from the error vector length, using the following relation:

$$MER_{PEAK} = \frac{\max(|error\_vector|)}{U_{RMS}} \cdot 100\%;$$

$$MER_{RMS} = \frac{\sqrt{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}(|error\_vector|)^2}}{U_{RMS}} \cdot 100\%;$$

The reference U_{RMS} is here the RMS value of the QAM signal.

Usually, however, the logarithmic scale is used:

$$MER_{dB} = 20 \cdot \lg\left(\frac{MER[\%]}{100}\right); \quad [dB]$$

The MER value is, therefore, an aggregate quantity which includes all the possible individual errors. The MER value thus completely describes the performance of this transmission link.

In principle,

MER [dB] ≤ SNR [dB];

The representation of MER as a function of the subcarrier number MER(f) is of particular significance in DVB-T because it allows the overall situation in the channel to be observed. It is easy to see areas with disturbed carriers. Often only an averaged single MER measurement value is mentioned in connection with DVB-T measurements but this value does not provide much practical information. A graphical representation of the MER versus frequency is always of importance.

In summary, it can be said that noise and phase jitter affect all carriers to the same extent, interferers affect carriers or ranges of carriers like noise or sinusoidally. Echoes also affect only carrier ranges.

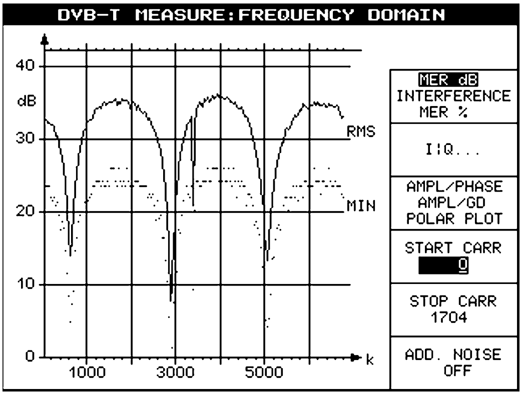


Fig. 21.26. Modulation error ratio (MER) vs. COFDM subcarriers MER(f) [EFA]

Table 21.2. DVB-T interference effects

Interference effect	Effect	Verification
Noise	all carriers	all carriers
Phase jitter	all carriers	all carriers
Interferer	single carriers	carriers affected
Echoes	carrier ranges	carriers affected, impulse response
Doppler	all carriers	frequency deviation, smearing
IQ amplitude imbalance	all carriers	center carrier
IQ phase error	all carriers	center carrier
Residual carrier carrier leakage	center carrier and adjacent carriers	center carrier

I/Q errors of the modulator partially affect the carriers as noise-like disturbance and as such can only be identified by observing the center carrier.

All the influences on the DVB-T transmission link described can be observed easily by constellation analysis in a DVB-T test receiver. In addition, a DVB-T test receiver also allows measurement of the received level, measurement of the bit error rate, calculation of the amplitude and group delay response and of the impulse response from the channel estimation data. The impulse response is of great importance in detecting multipath reception in the field, particularly in single-frequency networks (SFNs). Apart from the I/Q analysis discussed, therefore, a DVB-T test receiver also enables for a large number of significant measurements to be made on the DVB-T transmission link.

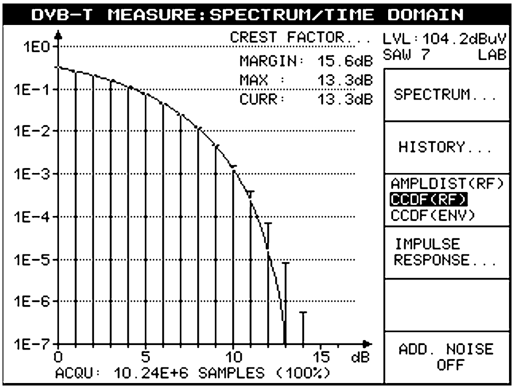


Fig. 21.27. Crest factor measurement [EFA]

21.4 Measuring the Crest Factor

DVB-T signals have a large crest factor which can be up to 40 dB in theory. In practice, however, the crest factor is limited to about 13 dB in power transmitters. The crest factor can be measured by using a DVB-T test receiver. For this purpose, the test receiver picks up the data stream immediately after the A/D converter and calculates from it both the RMS value and the maximum peak signal value occurring in a time window. According to the definition, the crest factor is then

$$c_f = 20 \log(U_{max\ peak}/U_{RMS});$$

21.5 Measuring the Amplitude, Phase and Group Delay Response

Although DVB-T is quite tolerant with respect to linear distortion such as amplitude, phase and group delay distortion, it is, on the other hand, no great problem to measure these parameters. A DVB-T test receiver is easily able to analyse the pilot carrriers (scattered pilots and continual pilots) contained in the signal and to calculate from these the linear distortions. The linear distortion is thus determined from the channel estimation data.

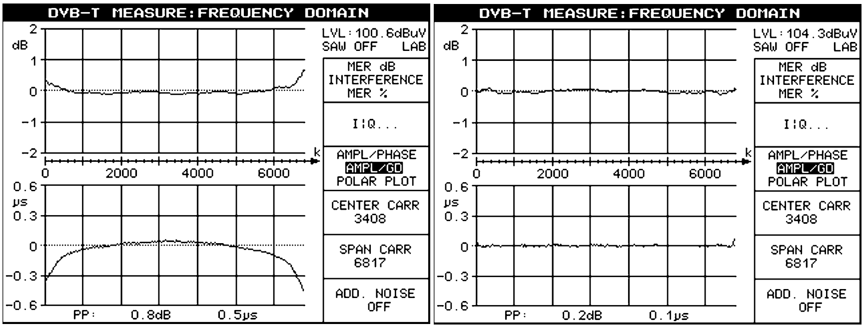


Fig. 21.28. Amplitude and group delay response measurement using the scattered pilots

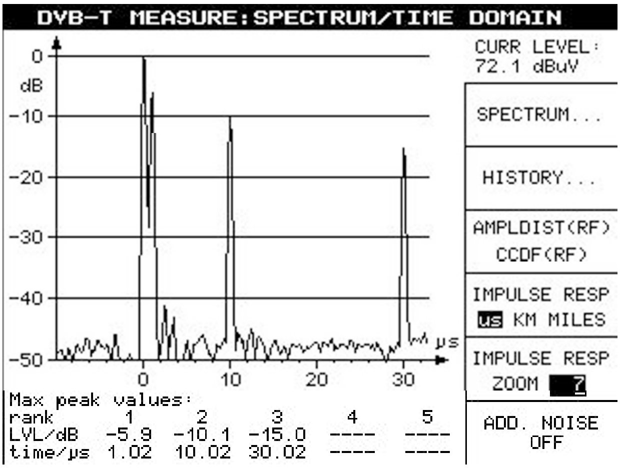


Fig. 21.29. Impulse response measurement via an IFFT of the channel impulse response CIR

21.6 Measuring the Impulse Response

Transforming the channel estimation data, which are available in the frequency domain and from which the representation of the amplitude and phase response was derived, into the time domain by means of an inverse fast Fourier transform provides the impulse response. The maximum length of the calculable impulse response depends on the samples provided by the channel estimation. Every third subcarrier supplies a contribution to the channel estimation at some time, i.e. the distance between two interpolation points of the channel estimation is $3 \cdot \Delta f$, where Δf corresponds to the subcarrier spacing of the COFDM. The calculable impulse response length is thus $1/3\ \Delta f$, i.e. one third of the COFDM symbol period. In the ideal case, the impulse response only consists of one main impulse at $t = 0$, i.e. there is only one signal path. From the impulse response, multiple echoes can be easily classified in accordance with delay and path attenuation.

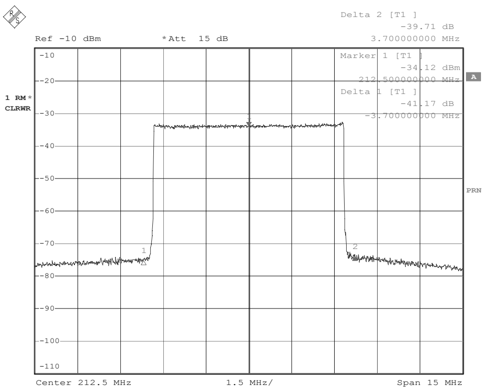


Fig. 21.30. Spectrum of a DVB-T signal at the transmitter output before the mask filter

21.7 Measuring the Shoulder Attenuation

The system does not utilize the full channel bandwidth, i.e. some of the 2K or 8K subcarriers are set to zero so that no interference to adjacent channels will be caused. Due to nonlinearities, however, there are still outband components and the effect on the spectrum and its shape has given rise to the term ‘shoulder attenuation’.

In the Standard, the permissible shoulder attenuation is defined as a tolerance mask. Fig. 21.30. the spectrum of a DVB-T signal at the power amplifier output, i.e. before the mask filter. To determine the shoulder attenuation, different methods are defined and especially a relatively elaborate method in the Measurement Guidelines [ETR290]. In practice, the DVB-T spectrum is in most cases simply measured by using three markers, setting one marker to band center and the others to +/- (DVB-T channel bandwidth/2 + 0.2 MHz). With an 8 MHz channel, this results in test points at +/- 4.2 MHz relative to band center and +/- 3.7 MHz for the 7 MHz channel. Fig. 21.31, shows the spectrum of a DVB-T signal after the mask filter (critical mask). The DVB-T standard [ETS 300 744] defines various tolerance masks for various adjacent channel allocations.

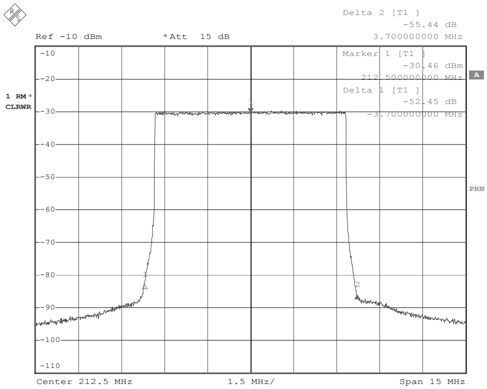


Fig. 21.31. Spectrum of a DVB-T signal measured after the mask filter (critical mask)

In practice, the following shoulder attenuations are achieved:

- Power amplifier, undistorted: approx. 28 dB
- Power amplifier, equalized: approx. 38 dB
- After the output BPF: approx. 52 dB (critical mask)

Usually the tolerance masks listed in Table 21.3. (noncritical mask) and 21.4. (critical mask) are used for evaluating a DVB-T signal (7 and 8 MHz bandwidth). In the corresponding documents (DVB-T Standard [ETS300744], System Specifications), the ratio with respect to channel power at 4 kHz reference bandwidth is usually specified. If the spectrum analyzer does not support this resolution bandwidth, it is possible to select a different one (e.g. 10, 20 or 30 kHz) and the values can be converted.

10log(4/7610) = -32.8 dB and 10log(4/6770) = -32.2 dB correspond to the attenuation with respect to the total signal power of the DVB-T signal with 4 kHz reference bandwidth in the useful DVB-T band. If another resolution bandwidth of the analyzer is used, corresponding values must be inserted into the formula. The tables also show the relative attenuation compared with the useful channel independently of the reference bandwidth.

The important factor in choosing the resolution bandwidth of the spectrum analyzer is that it be not too small and not too large. Usually, 10, 20 or 30 kHz is selected.

Table 21.3. DVB-T tolerance mask (uncritical) in the 7 and 8 MHz channel

f_{rel}[MHz] at 7MHz channel bandwidth	f_{rel}[MHz] at 8MHz channel bandwidth	Attenuation [dB] vs. channel power at 4 kHz reference bandwidth	Attenuation [dB] at 7 MHz channel bandwidth	Attenuation [dB] at 8 MHz channel bandwidth
+/-3.4	+/-3.9	-32.2 (7 MHz) -32.8 (8 MHz)	0	0
+/-3.7	+/-4.2	-73	-40.8	-40.2
+/-5.25	+/-6.0	-85	-52.8	-52.2
+/-10.5	+/-12.0	-110	-77.8	-77.2
+/-13.85		-126	-93.8	

Table 21.4. DVB-T tolerance mask (critical) in the 7 and 8 MHz channel

f_{rel}[MHz] at 7MHz channel bandwidth	f_{rel}[MHz] at 8MHz channel bandwidth	Attenuation [dB] vs. channel power at 4 kHz reference bandwidth	Attenuation [dB] at 7 MHz channel bandwidth	Attenuation [dB] at 8 MHz channel bandwidth
+/-3.4	+/-3.9	-32.2 (7 MHz) -32.8 (8 MHz)	0	0
+/-3.7	+/-4.2	-83	-50.8	-50.2
+/-5.25	+/-6.0	-95	-62.8	-62.2
+/-10.5	+/-12.0	-120	-87.8	-87.2
+/-13.85		-126	-93.8	

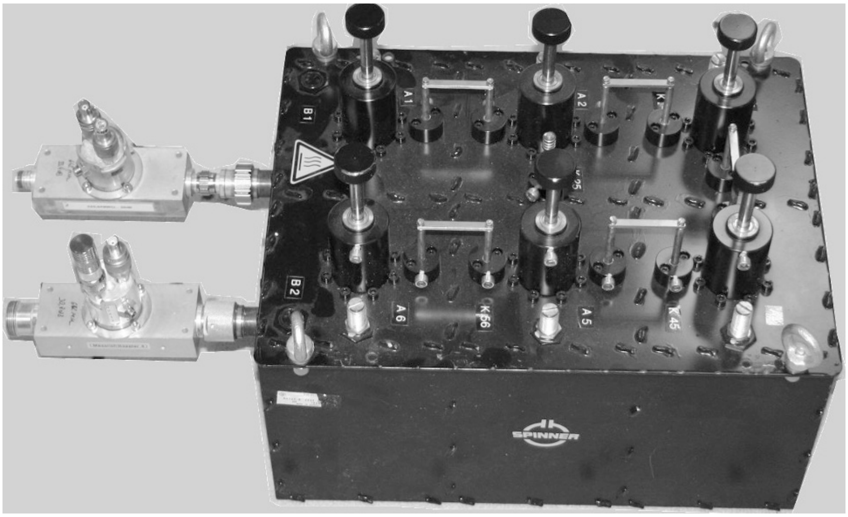


Fig. 21.32. DVB-T mask filter (non-critical Mask, low power, manufactured by Spinner) with directional test coupler at input and output

Fig. 21.33. DVB-T transmission link with MPEG-2 test generator DVRG (center left), DVB-T test transmitter SFQ (bottom left), DVB-T test receiver EFA (top left), MPEG-2 test decoder DVMD (center right) and TV monitor, video analyzer VSA and "601" analyzer VCA (Rohde&Schwarz).

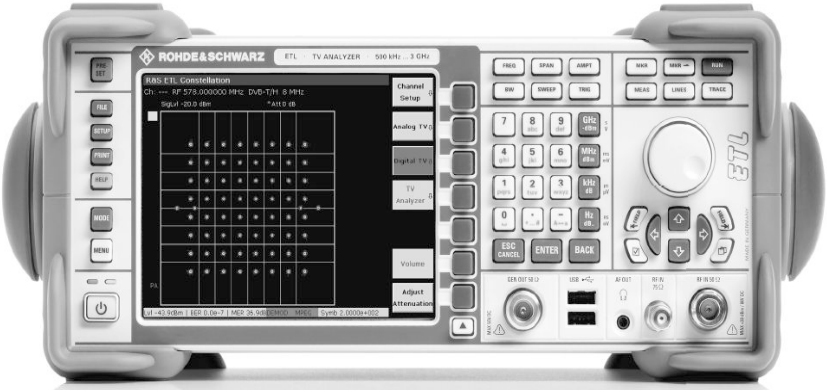


Fig. 21.34. TV Analyzer ETL showing a DVB-T 64QAM constellation diagram display [ETL]

Bibliography: [ETS300744], [ETR290], [HOFMEISTER], [EFA], [SFQ], [SFU], [FISCHER2], [ETL], [BTC]

22 DVB-H/DVB-SH - Digital Video Broadcasting for Handhelds

22.1 Introduction

This chapter describes the situation around the year 2005. The introduction of 2G GSM (2nd generation Global System for Mobile Communication) has triggered quite a boom for this wireless type of communication. If the possession of car telephones or similar mobile-type telephones was the prerogative of mostly special circles of people at the beginning of the nineties, at least every second person had his own personal mobile telephone by the end of the nineties and in most cases it was used only either for telephoning or for sending and receiving short messages - SMS - until then. By then, however, people also wanted to be able to send and receive data via a mobile telephone, e.g. from a PC. To be able to check one's e-mail database was initially a pleasant way of keeping oneself up-to-date, especially in the professional field; today, this is standard usage. In the GSM standard, developed mainly for mobile telephony, however, the data rates are about 9600 bit/s. This is quite adequate for simple text e-mails without attachments but becomes rather troublesome when long files are attached to the original message. It can also be used for surfing the Internet but is a cumbersome and expensive way of doing this. With the introduction of 2.5G mobile telephony, the GPRS (General Packet Radio System), the data rate was increased to 171.2 kbit/s by forming packets, i.e. combining time slots of the GSM system. It was only with the 3rd generation, the UMTS (Universal Mobile Telecommunication System), that the data rate could be increased to 144 - 384 kbit/s and 2 Mbit/s, respectively which, however, greatly depends on the respective conditions of reception and coverage. Using higher-level modulation (8PSK), the EDGE (Enhanced Data Rates for GSM Evolution) standard, too, allows higher data rates of up to 345.6 kbit/s (ECSD) and 473.6 kbit/s (EGPRS), repectively. LTE allows much higher data rates of some 10 Mbit/s and even higher and the new 5G standard will increase the available up- and downstream data rates as well.

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_22

Due to their nature, all mobile radio standards are designed for bi-directional communication between the terminal and the base station. The modulation methods such as, e.g. GMSK (Gaussian Minimum Shift Keying) in GSM or WCDMA (Wideband Code Division Multiple Access) in UMTS have been designed for these "rough" receiving conditions in mobile reception.

Since about middle of the 2000's, mobile telephones are no longer mere telephones but can be used as cameras or as games consoles or organizers, evolving more and more to become multimedia terminals. Equipment manufacturers and network operators are continuously searching for more new applications.

In parallel with the evolution of mobile radio, the transition of analog television to digital television took place. If at the end of the eighties, it still appeared to be impossible to be able to send moving pictures digitally via existing transmission paths such as satellite, cable TV or the old-fashioned, terrestrial way, this is an accepted fact today. It is made possible by modern compression methods such as MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group) and modern modulation methods and matching error protection (FEC). A key event in this area can be considered to be the first use of the so-called DCT (Discrete Cosine Transform) in the JPEG (Joint Photographic Experts Group) standard. JPEG is a method for compressing still pictures used in digital cameras. At the beginning of the nineties, experience gained with the DCT was also applied to the compression of moving pictures in the MPEG standard. First, the MPEG-1 standard developed for CD data rates and applications was produced. With MPEG-2 it became possible to compress SDTV (Standard Definition TV) moving pictures from originally 270 Mbit/s to less than 5 Mbit/s), the data rate of the associated lip-synchronized audio channel being in most cases 200 - 400 kbit/s. Even HDTV (High Definition TV) signals could now be reduced to tolerable data rates of about 15 Mbit/s. Knowledge of the anatomy of the human eye made it possible to perform a so-called irrelevance reduction in combination with redundancy reduction. Signal components, information, not perceived by the eye and ear are removed from the signal before transmission. The compression methods have been refined further in MPEG-4 (H.264, MPEG-4 Part 10 AVC) and today even lower data rates are possible, with better picture and sound quality. During the development of DVB, three different transmission methods were developed: DVB-S (Satellite), DVB-C (Cable) and DVB-T (Terrestrial). In DVB-T, digital television is broadcast terrestrially in 6, 7 or 8 MHz-wide radio channels in a gapped frequency band of about 47 MHz to 862 MHz at net data rates of either approx. 15 Mbit/s or 22 Mbit/s. In some countries such as the UK, Sweden or Australia, DVB-T is designed for pure roof aerial reception and the possible data rate is correspondingly high at about 22 Mbit/s. Countries like Germany have selected the "Portable Indoor" option providing the possibility of receiving more than 20 programmes "free to air" via a (passive or active) indoor antenna. Due to the higher degree of error protection (FEC) required and the more rugged modulation method (16QAM instead of 64QAM), only lower data rates such as, e.g. about 15 Mbit/s are possible.

If DVB-T is operated as a network which can be received by portable receivers, the data rates are about 15 Mbit/s and correspondingly only about 4 programmes or services can be accomodated in a DVB-T channel. This is still four times as many as could previously be received in a comparable analog TV channel. The data rates available per programme are, therefore, about 2.5 to 3.5 Mbit/s, present as variable data rates in a so-called statistical multiplex in most cases.

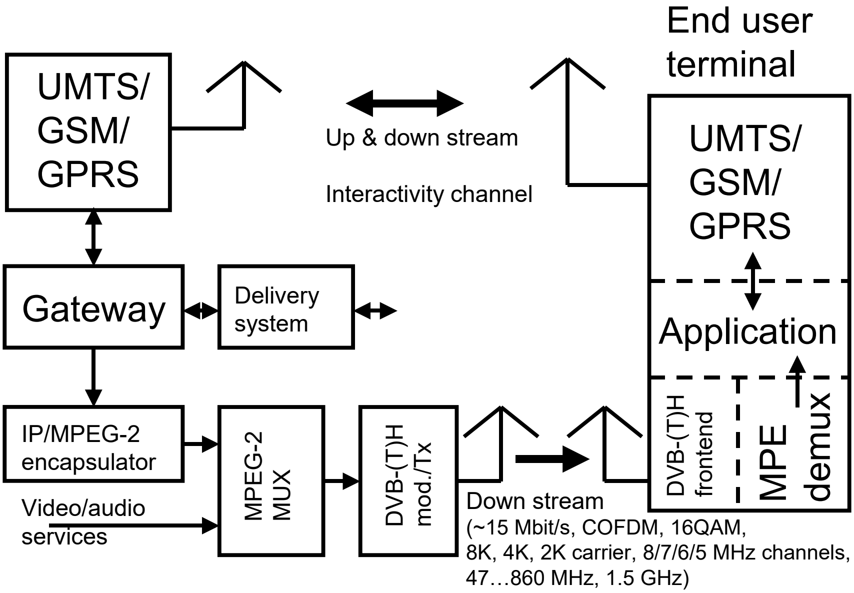


Fig. 22.1. Convergence between mobile radio and DVB (approx. 2005)

22.2 Convergence between Mobile Radio and Broadcasting

Mobile radio networks are networks in which bi-directional (point-to-point) connections are possible at relatively low data rates. Modulation methods, error protection and hand-over procedures are correspondingly adapted to the mobile environment. Billing etc. are also found to be system related in the standard. The type of services to be selected, be it a telephone call, an SMS or a data link, is determined by the end user and he is billed accordingly.

Broadcasting networks are unidirectional networks in which contents are distributed point-to-multipoint jointly to a large number of parties at relatively high data rates. On-demand contents are relatively rare, a predetermined content being distributed to many parties from one transmitter site or nowadays also by single-frequency networks ever a number of transmitters. This content is usually a radio or television program. The data rates are much higher than in mobile radio networks. Modulation methods and error protection are often designed only for portable or roof antenna reception. Mobile reception is provided for only as part of DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) in the Standard. DVB-T has been developed only for stationary or portable reception.

As part of DVB-H (Digital Video Broadcasting for Hand-held mobile terminals), attempts are now being made to merge the mobile radio world with that of broadcasting (Fig. 22.1.) and to combine the advantages of both network systems, combining the bi-directionality of mobile radio networks at relatively low data rates with the uni-directionality of broadcast networks at relatively high data rates. If the same services, such as certain video/audio services on demand are demanded by many subscribers, the data service is mapped from the mobile radio network onto the point-to-multipoint broadcast rail, depending on the demand and on the amount of information involved.

The type of information diverted from the mobile radio network to the broadcasting network depends only on the current requirements. It is currently still undecided what services will be offered to the mobile telephones in future over the DVB-H service. They can be purely IP-based services or also video/audio over IP. In every case, however, DVB-H will be a UDP/IP-based service in connection with MPEG/DVB-T/-H. Conceivable applications are current sports programs, news and other services which could be of interest to the public using mobile telephones. It is certain that, given the right conditions of reception, a DVB-H-enabled mobile will also be able to receive pure, non-chargeable DVB-T transmissions.

22.3 Essential Parameters of DVB-H

The essential parameters of DVB-H correspond to those of the DVB-T Standard. The physical layer of DVB-T has been expanded only slightly. In addition to the 8K and 2K mode, already present in DVB-T, the 4K mode was introduced as a good compromise between the two, allowing single-frequency networks of reasonable size to be formed whilst at the same time being more suitable for mobile use. The 8K mode is not very suitable for mobile use because of its small subcarrier spacing and the 2K mode allows for only short distances of about 20 km between transmitters. The 8K mode requires more memory space for data interleaving and de-interleaving than do the 4K and 2K modes. Space becoming available in 4K and 2K mode can now be used for deeper interleaving in DVB-H, i.e. the interleaver can be selected between 'native' and 'in-depth' in 4K and 2K mode. For signalling additional parameters, TPS (Transmission Parameter Signalling) bits, reserved or already used otherwise, are used in DVB-H.

The parameters additionally introduced in DVB-H are listed as an appendix in the DVB-T Standard [ETS300744]. All other changes or extensions relate to the MPEG-2 transport stream. These, in turn, can be found in the DVB Data Broadcast Standard [ETS301192]. The MPEG-2 transport stream, as DVB baseband signal, is the input signal for a DVB-H modulator. In DVB-H, Multiprotocol Encapsulation (MPE), already defined in the context of DVB Data Broadcasting before DVB-H, is used as a time-slicing method so that energy can be saved in the mobile part. Both length and spacing of time slots must be signalled. The IP packets packaged in MPE time slots can be optionally provided with additional FEC (forward error correction) in DVB-H. This is a Reed Solomon error protection at IP packet level. Everything else corresponds directly to DVB-T or MPEG-2, respectively. DVB-H is a method for time slot IP packet transmission over an MPEG-2 transport stream. The physical layer used is DVB-T with some extensions. Its aim is the convergence between a mobile radio network and a DVB-H broadcast network. Data services are transmitted to the mobile either via the mobile radio network or via the DVB-H network, depending on traffic volume.

22.4 DSM-CC Sections

In the MPEG-2 Standard ISO/IEC 13818 Part 6, mechanisms for transmitting data, data services and directory structures were created early on. There are the so-called DSM-CC sections, where DSM-CC stands for Digital Storage Media Command and Control. In principle, DSM-CC Sections have a comparable structure to the PSI/SI Tables. They begin with a Table ID which is always within a range from 0x3A to 0x3E. DSM-CC Sections have a length of up to 4 kbytes and are also divided into transport stream packets and broadcast multiplexed into the transport stream. Using object carousels (cyclically repeated broadcasting of data), entire directory trees with different file-scan be transmitted to the DVB receiver via DSM-CC sections. This is done, e.g. in MHP (Multimedia Home Platform), where HTML and Java files are transmitted which can then be executed in the MHP-enabled DVB receiver.

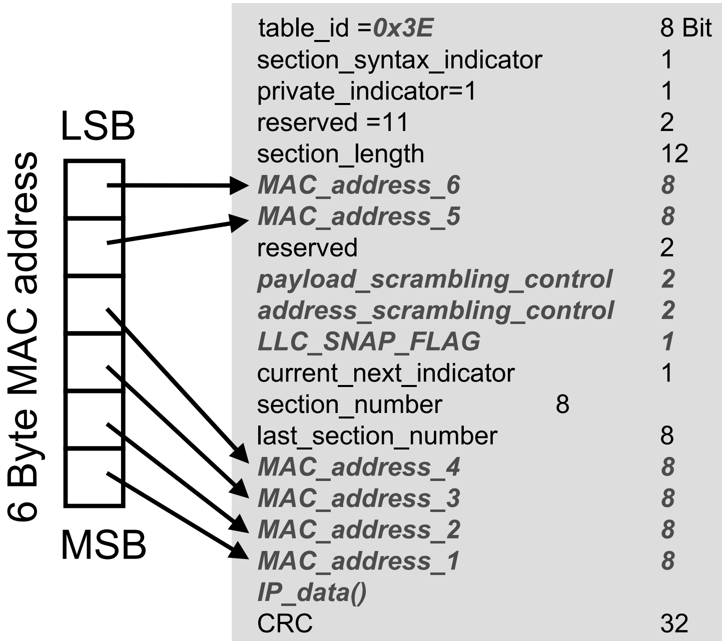


Fig. 22.2. DSM-CC section for IP transmission (Table_ID=0x3E)

DSM-CC sections with Table ID=0x3E (Fig. 22.2.) can be used for transmitting Internet (IP) packets in the MPEG-2 transport stream. In an IP packet, a TCP (Transport Control Protocol) packet or a UDP (User Datagram Protocol) packet is transmitted. TCP packets carry out a controlled transmission between transmitter and receiver via a handshake procedure. In contrast, UDP packets are sent out without any return message. Since in most cases, there is no return channel in broadcast operation (hence the term 'broadcasting'), TCP packets do not make any sense. For this reason, only UDP protocols are used in DVB during the IP transmission in the so-called Multiprotocol Encapsulation (MPE). Although there is a return channel in DVB-H via the mobile radio network, an IP packet cannot be newly requested since the messages must go simultaneously to many addresses in DVB-H.

22.5 Multiprotocol Encapsulation

In DVB Multiprotocol Encapsulation, contents such as, e.g. HTML files or even MPEG-4 video and audio streams are transported in UDP (User Datagram Protocol) packets. Windows Media 9 applications can also be transmitted by this means and can also be reproduced in devices equipped accordingly. The UDP packets contain the port address of the destination (DST Port) (Fig. 22.3.), a 16-bit-wide numerical value via which the destination application is addressed. For example, the World Wide Web (WWW) always communicates via port No. 0x80. Ports are blocked and controlled by a firewall.

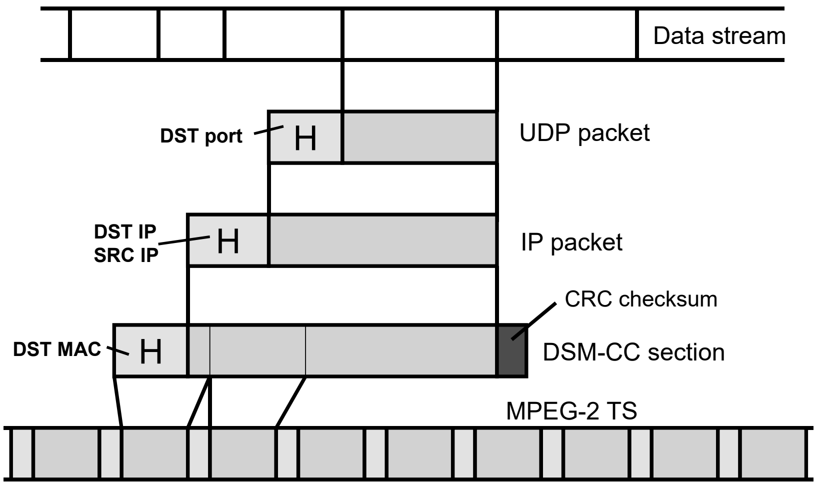


Fig. 22.3. Multiprotocol Encapsulation (MPE)

The UDP packets, in turn, are then embedded into the payload part of IP packets. The header of the IP packets then contains the source and destination (SRC and DST) IP address via which an IP packet is looped through the network from transmitter to receiver in controlled fashion.

If the IP packets are transmitted via a normal computer network, they are mostly transported in Ethernet packets. The header of the Ethernet packets again contains the hardware addresses of the network components communicating with one another, the so-called MAC (Media Access Command) addresses.

When IP packets are transmitted via DVB networks, the Ethernet layer is replaced by the MPEG-2 transport stream and the physical DVB layer (DVB-C, -S, -T). The IP packets are first packaged in DSM-CC sections which are divided into many transport stream packets, in turn. This is called Multiprotocol Encapsulation: UDP divided into IP, IP into DSM-CC, DSM-CC into TS packets. The header of the DSM-CC sections contains the destination (DST) MAC address. It has a length of 6 bytes as in the Ethernet layer. There is no source MAC address.

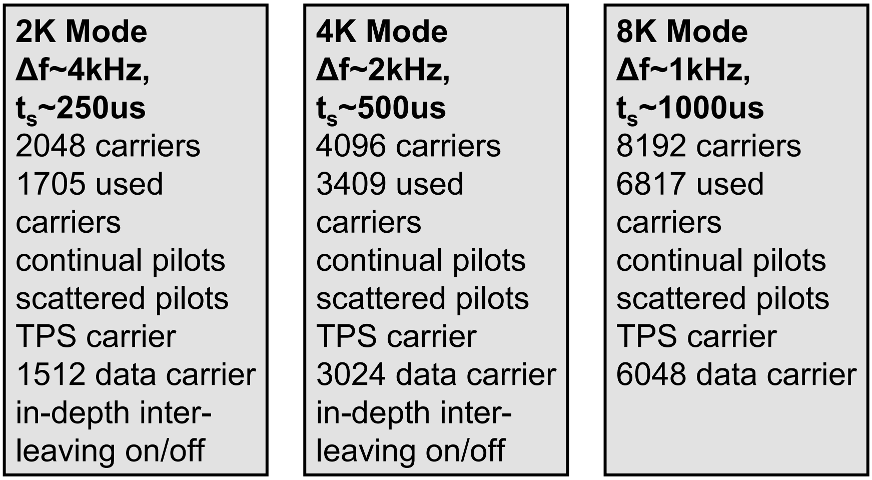
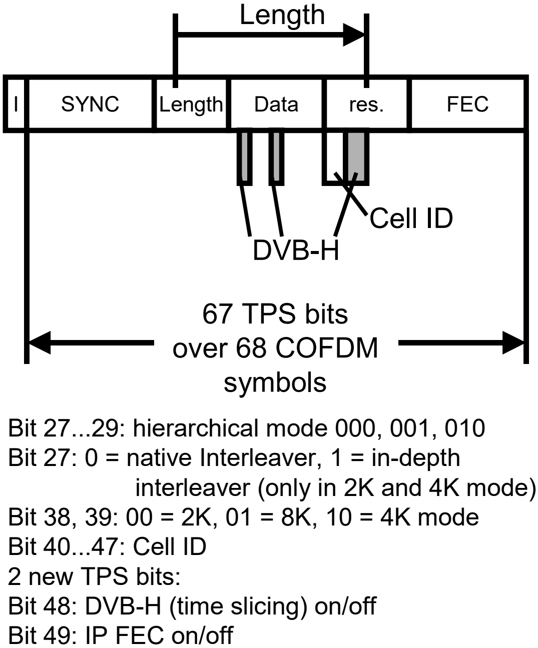


Fig. 22.4. Overview of the 2K, 4K and 8K modes in DVB-H

22.6 DVB-H Standard

DVB-H stands for "Digital Video Broadcasting for Handheld mobile terminals" and is an attempt at convergence between mobile radio networks and broadcasting networks. The downstream from the mobile radio network (GSM/GPRS, UMTS) is remapped onto the broadcasting network in dependence on the traffic volume. If, e.g., only a single subscriber requests a service via UMTS, for example, this downstream continues to pass via UMTS. If a large number of subscribers request the same service at approximately the same time, it makes sense to offer this service, e.g. a video, point to multipoint via the broadcast network. The services intended to be implemented via DVB-H are all IP based.

DVB-H is intended to provide the framework for a modified DVB-T network to broadcast IP services in time slots in an MPEG-2 transport stream. The physical modulation parameters are very similar or almost



identical to those of a DVB-T network. The MPEG-2 transport stream requires greater modifications.

Fig. 22.5. TPS bits in a DVB-T frame (Transmission Parameter Signalling)

A system overview of DVB-H is provided in ETSI document [TM2939]. The relevant details are described in the DVB Data Broadcasting Standard [ETS301192] and in the DVB-T Standard [ETS300744].

The physical layer DVB-T has been modified or influenced least. In addition to the 8K mode especially well suited to single-frequency (SFN) networks and the 2K mode which more suitable for mobile reception, the 4K mode was introduced additionally as optional compromise. Using the 4K mode, twice the transmitter spacing can be achieved compared with the 2K mode and the mobile capability is distinctly improved compare with the 8K mode. Memory capacities becoming available in the interleaver and de-interleaver should provide for in-depth interleaving which, in turn, would make DVB-H more resistant to burst errors, i.e. multibit errors and the data stream is distributed better over time.

Some additional parameters must also be signalled via TPS carriers in DVB-H.

These are:

- Time slicing on/off in the MPEG-2 transport stream (=DVB-H)
- IP FEC on/off
- In-depth interleaving on/off
- 4K mode

For this purpose, 2 additional bits from the reserved TPS (Transmission Parameter Signalling) bits, bits 42 and 43, and bits already used are used. The details can be found in Fig. 22.5.

Using the 4K mode and in-depth interleaving in the 4K and 2K mode allows a better RF performance to be achieved in the mobile channel. At the same time, the achievable transmitter spacing in 4K mode (approx. 35 km) is greater by a factor of 2 compared with the 2K mode (approx. 17 km) in an SFN network.

Apart from the 8, 7 or 6 MHz channel known from DVB-T, a bandwidth of 5 MHz (L band) can now be selected in DVB-H.

The other modifications are found in the structure of the MPEG-2 transport stream.

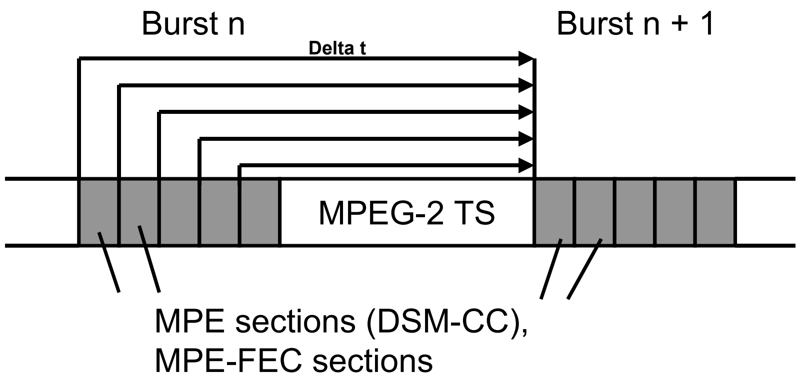


Fig. 22.6. Time slicing in DVB-H

In DVB-H, IP transmission is achieved via the MPEG-2 transport stream by means of the Multiprotocol Encapsulation (MPE) already described. Compared with conventional MPE, however, there are some special features in DVB-H: the IP packets can be protected with an additional Reed Solomon FEC (Fig. 22.7.). The Reed Sololomon FEC of an IP datagram is transmitted in its own MPE FEC sections. These sections have the value 0x78 as Table_ID. The header of these FEC sections has the same structure as that of the MPE sections. Due to the separate transmission of the FEC, a receiver is capable to retrieve the IP packet even without FEC evaluation if there are no errors. Furthermore, the IP information to be transmitted is combined into time slots in the MPEG-2 transport stream. In the time slots, the time Δt until the beginning of the next time slot is signalled in the DSM-CC header. After receiving a time slot, the mobile telephone can then "go to sleep" again until shortly before the next time slot in order to save battery power. On average, the data rates in the time slots will be up to about 400 kbit/s, depending on application. This is IP information requested simultaneously by many users. To signal the time Δt until the next time slot, 4 of the total of 6 bytes provided for the destination MAC address in the DSM-CC header are used. The end of a time slot is signalled via the frame boundary and table boundary bit in the MPE and FEC sections (Fig. 22.8.). The mobile receiver is notified about where an IP service can be found by means of a new SI table, the IP MAC Notification Table (INT) in the MPEG-2 transport stream. The time slot parameters are also transmitted there (Fig. 22.8.).

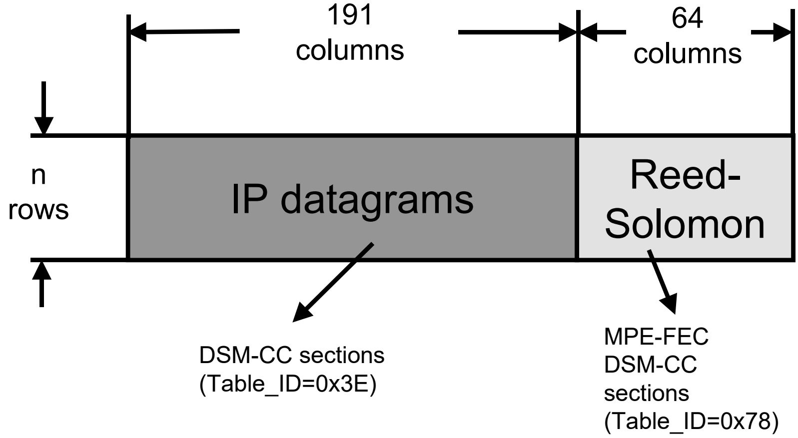


Fig. 22.7. MPE and FEC sections in DVB-H

Instead of the least significant 4 MAC address bytes, the MPE section in DVB-H contains the time slot parameters, the time Δt until the beginning of a new time slot in 10-ms steps, and the two "table_boundary" and "frame_boundary" bits. "table_boundary" marks the last section within a time slice and "frame_boundary" marks the real end of a time slice, especially when MPE FEC sections are used.

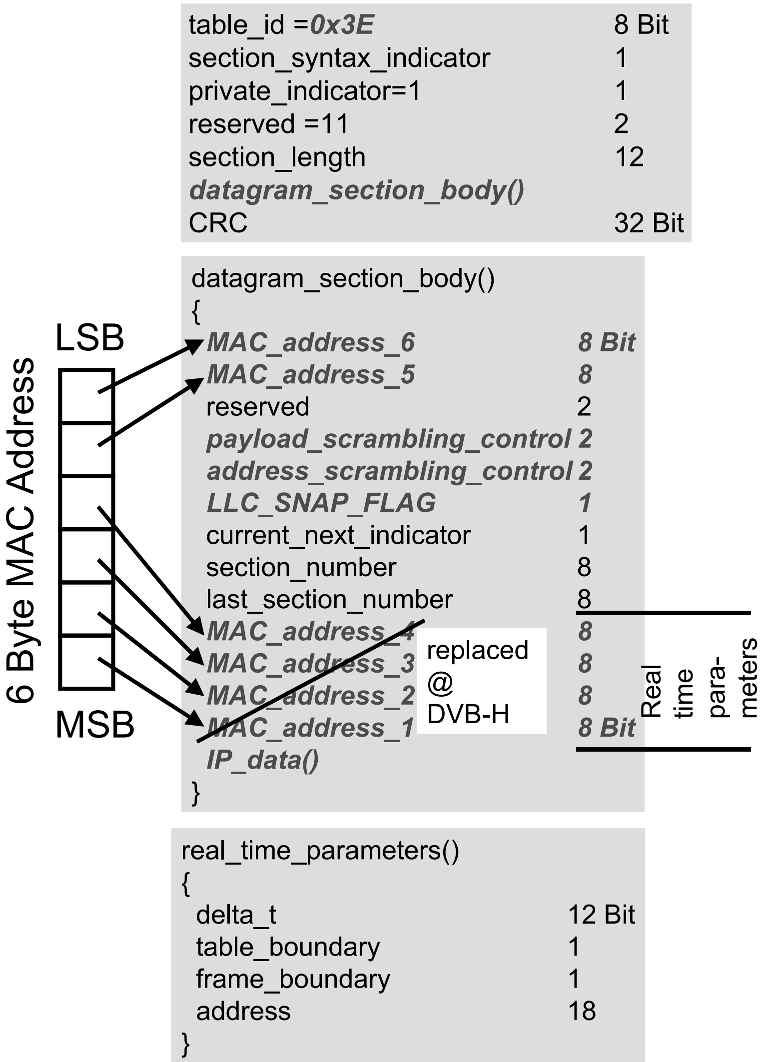


Fig. 22.8. Structure of an MPE section with time slot parameters according to DVB-H

table_id = 0x78 = MPE-FEC

table_id =***0x78***	8 Bit
section_syntax_indicator	1
private_indicator=1	1
reserved =11	2
section_length	12
MPE_FEC_section_body()	
CRC	32 Bit

```
MPE_FEC_section_body()
{
  padding_columns             8 Bit
  reserved_for_future_use     8
  reserved                    2
  reserved_for_future_use     5
  current_next_indicator      1
  section_number              8
  last_section_number         8
  real_time parameters()      42 Bit
  RS_data()
}
```

Fig. 22.9. Structure of a DVB-H MPE FEC section with time slot parameters

22.7 Summary

DVB-H represents a convergence between GSM/UMTS and DVB. The GSM/UMTS mobile radio network is used as the interactive channel via which high-rate services such as, e.g. video streaming (H.264/MPEG-4 Part 10 AVC Advanced Video Coding or Windows Media 9) are requested which are then transmitted either via the mobile radio network (UMTS) or are remapped onto the DVB-H network. In DVB-H, a DVB-T network is virtually used physically, with some modifications of the DVB-T Standard. As part of DVB-H, additional operating modes were introduced:

- The 4K mode as a good compromise between the 2K and 8K mode with 3409 carriers now used
- In-depth interleaving is possible in the 4K and 2K modes
- 2 new TPS bits for additional signalling and additional signalling via TPS bits already used

- Time slicing to save power
- IP packets with FEC protection
- Introduction of a 5 MHz channel (L band)

In the MPEG/2 transport stream, Multiprotocol Encapsulation is applied in a time slicing method. The IP packets to be transmitted can be protected by an additional Reed Solomon FEC code. The end user terminal is notified via a new DVB-SI table about where it can find the IP service.

At the end of 2003, a first prototype of a DVB-H-enabled terminal was presented which has a DVB-H receiver integrated in a modified battery pack.

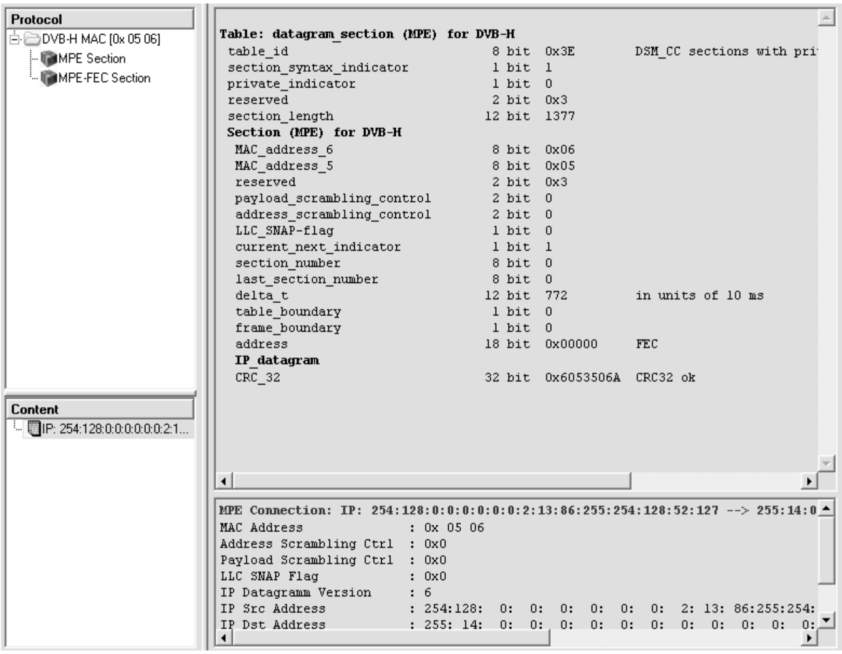


Fig. 22.10. Representation of a DVB-H Section on an MPEG-2 Analyzer [DVM]

22.8 DVB-SH

DVB-SH stands for Mobile TV via satellite and terrestrial paths and is ultimately a virtual combination of DVB-H and DVB-S2 with altered technical parameters. Terrestrial broadcasting is intended for population centers and satellite coverage in the S band (21270 to 2200 GHz) is for rural areas. This MSS (mobile satellite services) band is next to the UMTS band. Terrestrial broadcasting uses the COFDM multicarrier technology, known from DVB-T/H, in the UHF band and the satellite link uses a single-carrier modulation method in the near GHz range where mobile GPS is also working very well. Satellite reception is more difficult in the population centers because of the buildings but terrestrial coverage from the TV towers is cost-effective; the opposite holds true in rural areas. The DVB-SH proposal originated with Alcatel is now an ETSI standard [EN302583] which was published in August 2007. In the technical parameters, changes were made in the error protection; the time interleaver was extended to about 300 ms and the convolutional coding was replaced by turbo coding.

On the direct and indirect path from the satellite or via repeaters or TV towers (Fig. 22.11.), the technical parameters of DVB-SH are:

- Derived from DVB-T/H
- COFDM mode
- QPSK
- 16QAM
- FEC = 3GPP2 turbo encoder (modified and extended)
- 1k, 2k, 4k, 8k mode
- Hierarchical modulation via 16QAM, α=1, 2, 4
- Bandwidths of 8, 7, 6, 5, 1.7 MHz.

On the direct path from the satellite to the terminal alone, the technical parameters can also be (Fig. 22.11.):

- Derived from DVB-S2
- Single carrier TDM mode
- QPSK
- 8PSK
- 16APSK
- FEC = 3GPP2 turbo encoder (modified and extended)
- Bandwidths of 8, 7, 6, 5, 1.7 MHz.

As in DVB-H, the baseband signal used is the MPEG-2 transport stream with time slicing but generic streams are not excluded (are considered as an option). In DVB-SH, two operating modes are provided:

- Type 1: SH-A-SFN: The same frequency is used both for satellite and terrestrial paths.
- Type 2: SH-B or SH-A-MFN: Different frequencies are used for satellite and terrestrial paths.

With regard to the time interleaver depth, two receiver types have been defined in DVB-SH:

- Class 1 receiver: 4 Mbit interleaver memory only
- Class 2 receiver: 512 Mbit interleaver memory.

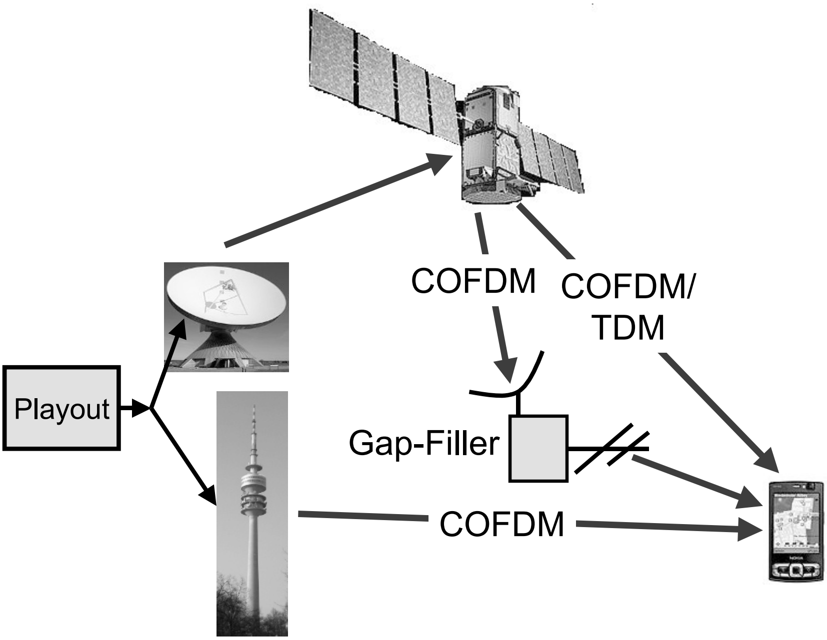


Fig. 22.11. DVB-SH transmission scenario

Both DVB-H and DVB-SH was not a market success. Maybe it was too early for that standards? The smart phone was still not developed when DVB-H and DVB-SH were tried to be introduced into the market.

Bibliography: [ETS300744], [TM2939], [ETSA301192], [ISO/IEC13818-6], [R&S_APPL_1MA91], [EN302583]

23 Digital Terrestrial TV to North American ATSC Standard

Although terrestrial radio transmission poses a variety of problems due to multipath reception and is best handled using multicarrier methods (Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex - COFDM), North America opted in favour of a single carrier method under the Advanced Television Systems Committee (ATSC). In the years 1993 to 1995, the Advanced Television Systems Committee – with the participation of AT&T, Zenith, General Instruments, MIT, Philips, Thomson and Sarnoff – developed a method for the terrestrial, and also cable, transmission of digital TV signals. The cable transmission method proposed by ATSC was not put into practice, and the J.83/B Standard was introduced instead. As in all other digital TV transmission methods, the baseband signal is in the form of an MPEG-2 transport stream. The video signal is MPEG-2 coded (MPEG: Moving Picture Experts Group); the audio signal is Dolby digital AC-3 coded. In contrast to DVB, high definition television (HDTV) was favoured in ATSC. The input signal to an ATSC modulator, therefore, is a transport stream with MPEG-2 coded video and Dolby AC-3 coded audio information (AC-3: digital audio compression). Video signals are either SDTV (Standard Definition Television) or HDTV signals. The modulation mode used is eight-level trellis-coded vestigial sideband (8VSB). This is a single-carrier method based on IQ modulation using only the I axis. Eight equidistant constellation points are distributed along the I axis. The 8VSB baseband signal has eight discrete amplitude modulation levels. First, however, an 8ASK signal is generated (ASK: amplitude shift keying).

The ASK signal is a staircase signal (Fig. 23.2.). The bit information to be transmitted is contained in the step height. One step width corresponds to one symbol or symbol duration; three bits can be transmitted per symbol. The reciprocal of the step width is the symbol rate. The ASK staircase signal is amplitude-modulated on a sinusoidal carrier. As a result, a double-sideband spectrum is obtained.

To reduce bandwidth, one sideband is partially suppressed in 8VSB modulation, same as with analog TV. In other words, the amplitude-modulated signal is subjected to vestigial sideband filtering, hence the des-

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_23

ignation 8VSB. The upper sideband and a vestigial lower sideband remain. Vestigial sideband filtering at the transmitter end calls for Nyquist filtering at the receiver end. The 8VSB signal is subjected to soft Nyquist filtering at the original band center at the receiver end.

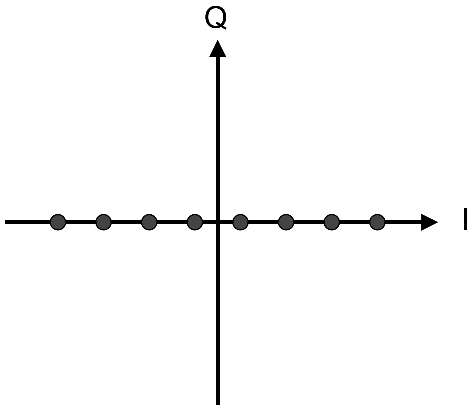


Fig. 23.1. Constellation diagram of an 8ASK signal

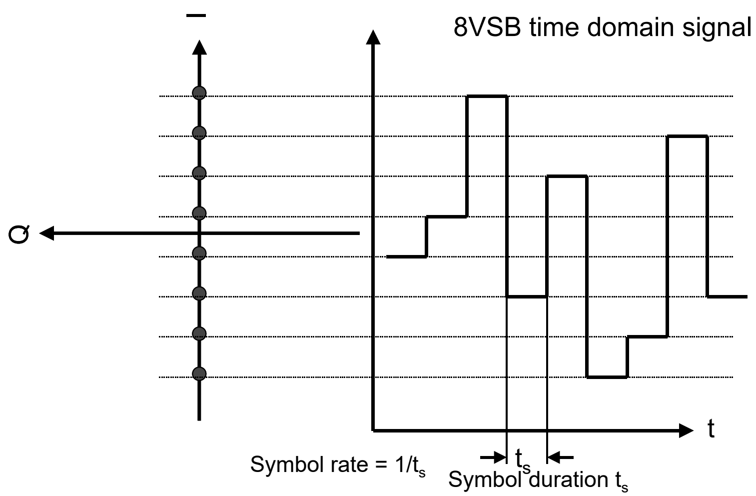


Fig. 23.2. 8VSB/8ASK baseband signal

The area below the Nyquist slope left of the previous band center (Fig. 23.5.) corresponds exactly to the area above the Nyquist edge right of the previous band center, and so compensates for the missing part to complete the upper sideband. As a result, a flat amplitude frequency response is obtained. If the Nyquist slope is not properly adjusted, amplitude frequency response at low frequencies will be the consequence.

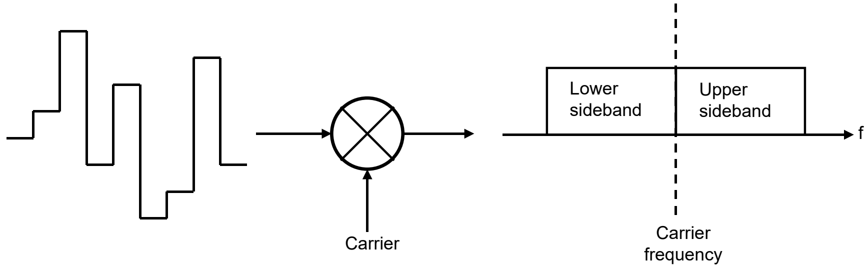


Fig. 23.3. 8ASK modulation at RF domain

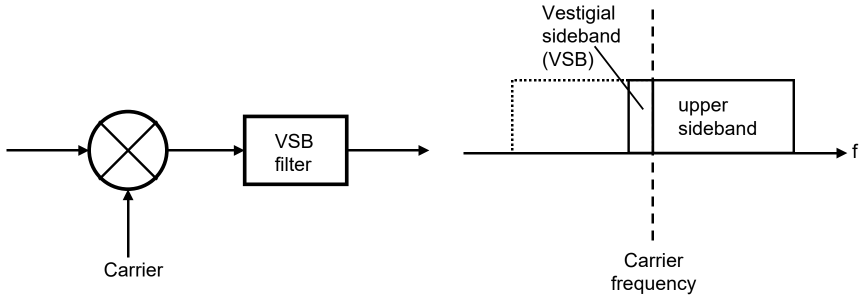


Fig. 23.4. Vestigial sideband filtering

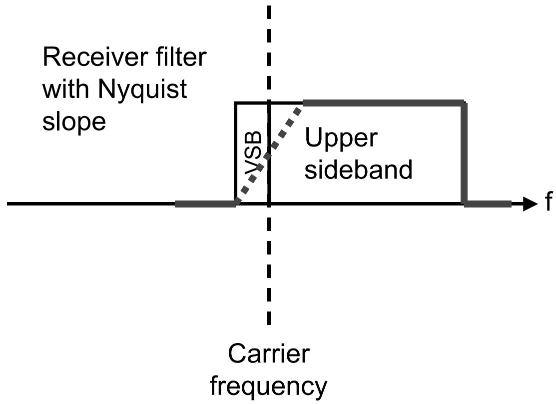


Fig. 23.5. IF filtering with Nyquist slope

With a double-sided spectrum, the vectors representing the upper and the lower sideband (each starting from the tip of the carrier vector) rotate in opposite directions, thus varying the length of the carrier vector, i.e. modulating the carrier. The carrier vector itself remains on the I axis. Even if the carrier is suppressed, the sum vector yielded by the upper and the lower sideband still remains on the I axis (Fig. 23.6.).

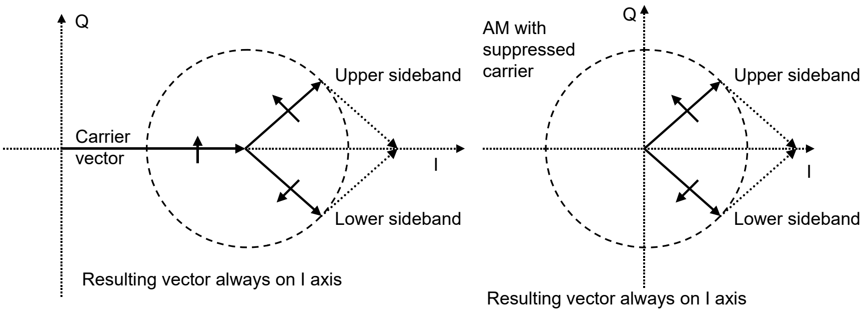


Fig. 23.6. Vector diagram showing amplitude modulation with and without carrier

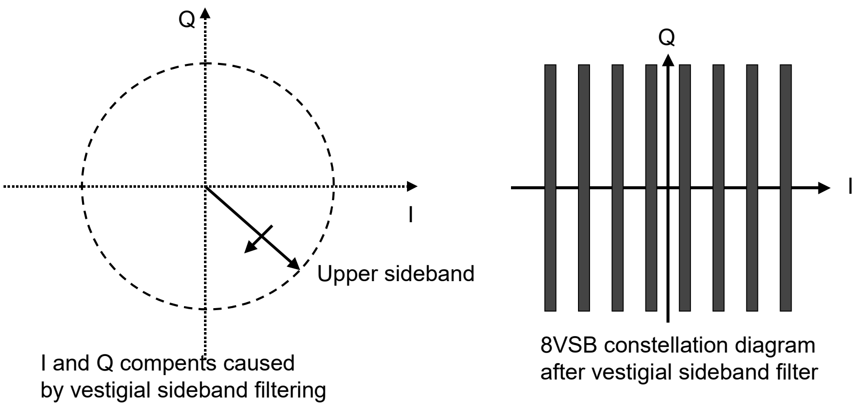


Fig. 23.7. Vector diagram and constellation diagram of an 8VSB signal

However, if one sideband is suppressed in part or completely, the resulting vector will swing about the I axis. Vestigial sideband filtering produces a Q component. Such a Q component is also contained in analog vestigial sideband filtered TV signals (Fig. 23.7.). Analog TV test receivers usually have a Q output in addition to the video output (I output). The Q output is used for measuring incidental carrier phase modulation (ICPM). Due to vestigial sideband filtering, the constellation diagram of an 8VSB signal also includes a Q component, and modulation is no longer shown by points, but by vertical lines. The 8VSB constellation diagram output by an ATSC test receiver, therefore, exhibits vertical lines (Fig. 23.7., 23.8.).

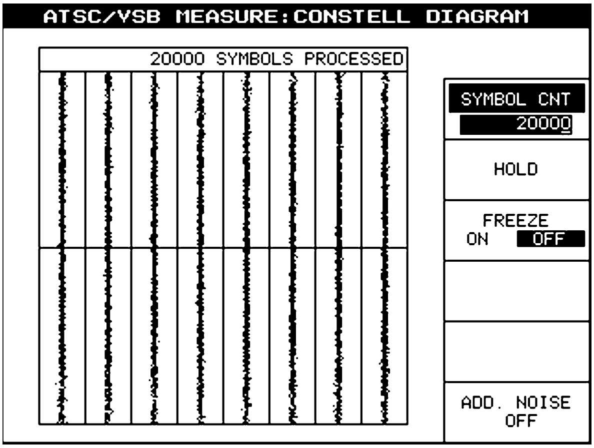


Fig. 23.8. Constellation diagram produced by an ATSC test receiver [EFA]

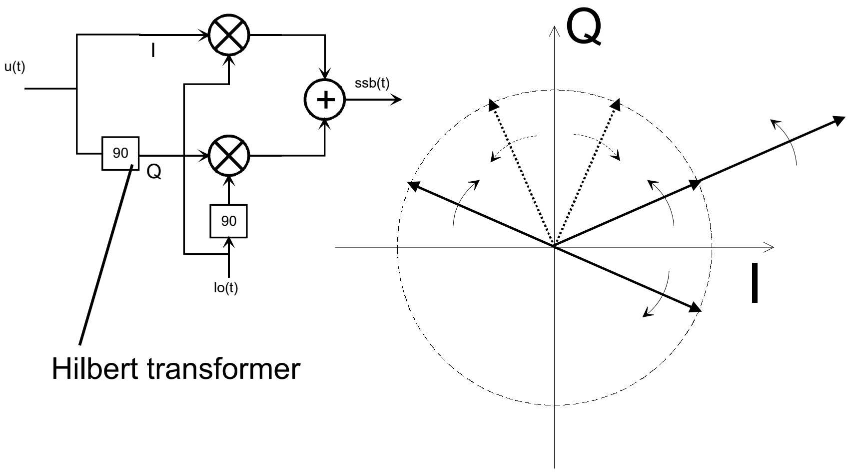


Fig. 23.9. Vestigial sideband or single sideband modulation by means of a Hilbert transformer

8VSB is no longer effected by means of a simple analog vestigial sideband filter as it used to be in analog TV. Today a Hilbert transformer and an IQ modulator are used (Fig. 23.9.). The 8VSB baseband signal is split into two paths. One path is directly applied to the I mixer, the other one is taken via a Hilbert transformer to the Q mixer. A Hilbert transformer is a 90° phase shifter for all frequencies of the band to be filtered. Together with the IQ modulator, it acts as a single sideband modulator; part of the frequencies of the lower sideband are suppressed. Vestigial sideband filtering of modern analog TV transmitters today follows the same principle. A vital prerequisite for the quality of vestigial sideband filtering is the correct setting and operation of the IQ modulator. This means identical gain in the I and Q paths; moreover, the carrier supplied to the Q path must have a phase of exactly 90°. Otherwise the unwanted part of the lower sideband will not be fully suppressed, so that a residual carrier is obtained at the band center.

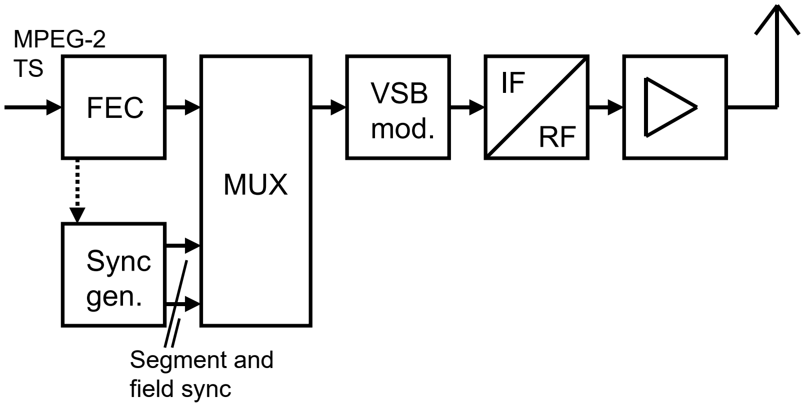


Fig. 23.10. 8VSB modulator and transmitter

23.1 The 8VSB Modulator

After discussing the principle of ATSC modulation, let us take a closer look at the 8VSB modulator (Fig. 23.10.). The ATSC-conformant MPEG-2 transport stream, including PSIP tables, MPEG-2 video elementary streams and Dolby digital AC-3 audio elementary streams, is fed to the forward error correction (FEC) block of the 8VSB modulator at a data rate of exactly 19.3926585 Mbit/s. In the baseband interface, the input transport stream synchronizes to the MPEG-2 188-byte packet structure by means of a sync byte.

The 188 bytes include the transport stream packet header with the sync byte, which has a constant value of 0x47. The transport stream packet clock and the byte clock, which are derived in the baseband interface, are used in the FEC block and also taken to the sync generator for the 8VSB modulator. From the transport stream packet clock and the byte clock, the sync generator generates the data segment sync and the data field sync.

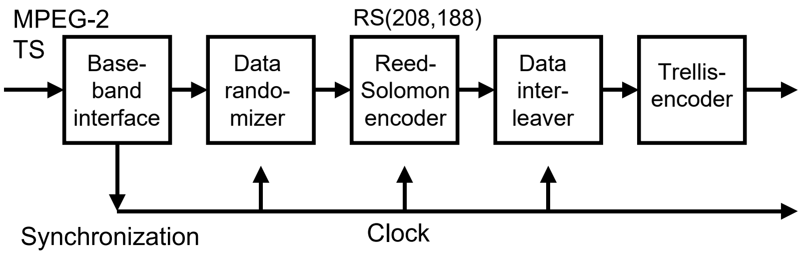


Fig. 23.11. ATSC 8VSB FEC

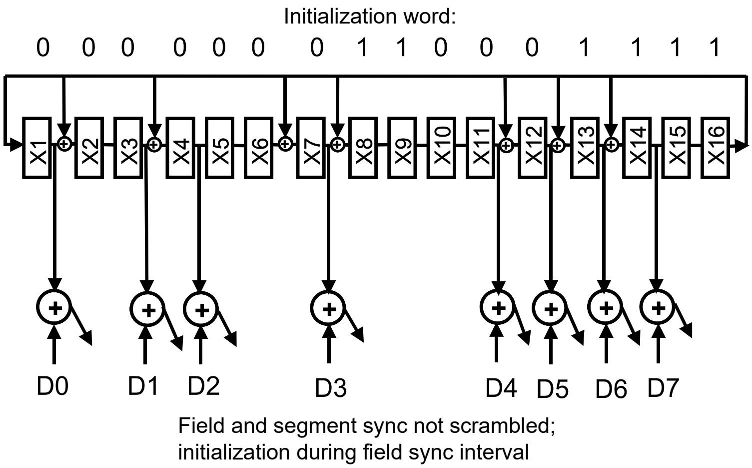


Fig. 23.12. Shift register for randomization

In the FEC block (Fig. 23.11.), the data is fed to a randomizer (Fig. 23.12.) to break up any long sequences of 1s or 0s that may be contained in the transport stream. The data randomizer XORs the incoming data bytes with a pseudo random binary sequence (PRBS). The PRBS generator consists of a 16-bit feedback shift register; it is reset to a defined initialization word at a defined time during the field sync interval. The sync information (e.g. data field sync, data segment sync), which will be discussed in greater detail below, is not randomized and is used, among other things, for receiver-to-modulator coupling. At the receiver end, there is a complementary PRBS generator and randomizer, i.e. of exactly the same design and running exactly in synchronism with the generator/randomizer at the transmitter end.

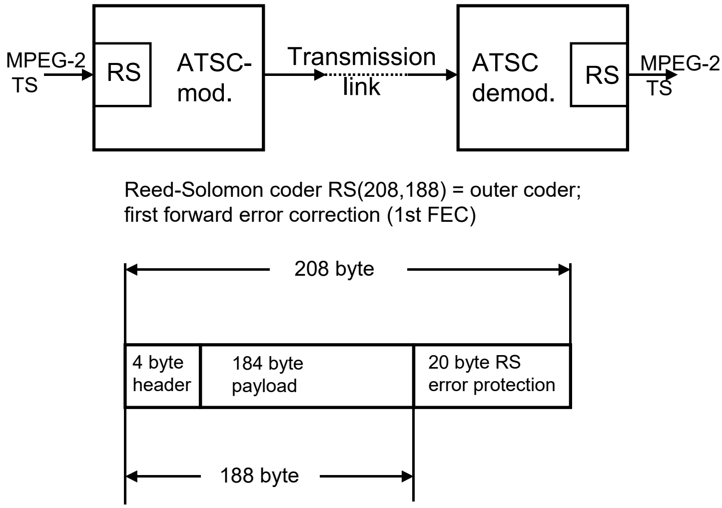


Fig. 23.13. Reed-Solomon FEC

The randomizer at the receiver end reverses the procedure that takes place at the transmitter end, i.e. it restores the original data stream. Randomizing is necessary since long sequences of 1s or 0s may occur. During such sequences, there is no change in the 8VSB symbols and therefore no clock information. This would cause synchronization problems in the receiver and, during the transmission of long sequences of 1s or 0s, produce discrete spectral lines in the transmission channel. This effect is cancelled by randomizing, which causes energy dispersal, i.e. it creates an evenly distributed power density spectrum. The randomizer is followed by the Reed-Solomon block encoder. An ATSC RS encoder (Fig. 23.12.) adds 20 error protection bytes to the 188-byte transport stream (TS) packet (compared with 16 bytes in DVB), yielding a total packet size of 208 bytes. The 20 error protection bytes allow up to 10 errored bytes per TS packet (including FEC part) to be corrected at the receiver end. If more than 10 errored bytes are contained in a TS packet, Reed-Solomon error correction fails, and the transport stream packet concerned is marked as errored.

To mark a TS packet as errored, the transport error indicator bit (Fig. 23.14.) in the TS packet header is set to 1. The packet in question will then be discarded by the MPEG-2 decoder following the 8VSB demodulator in the receiver, and the error will be concealed.

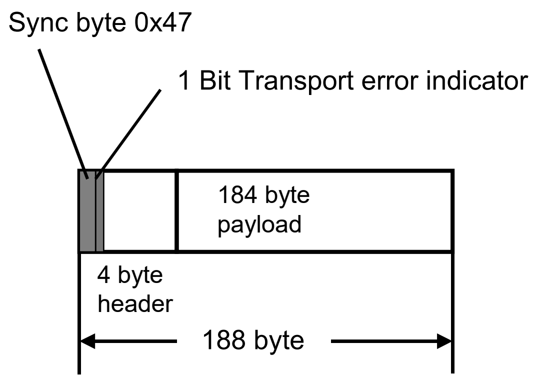


Fig. 23.14. Transport error indicator in TS header

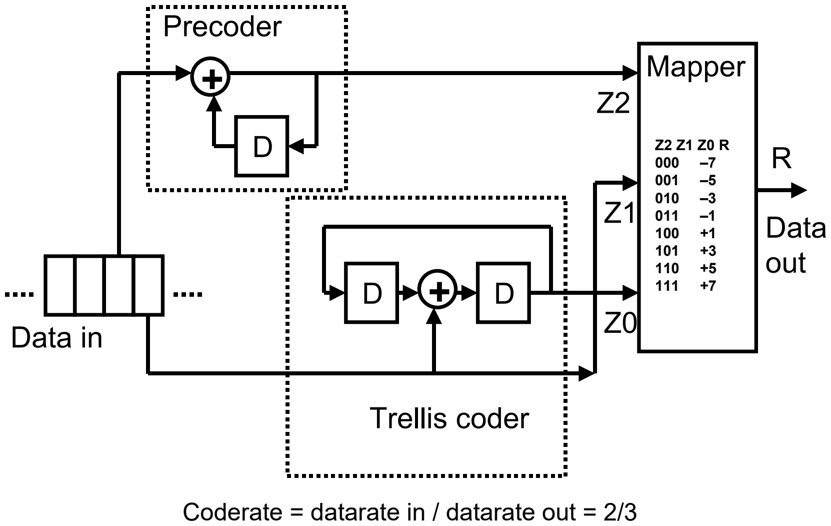


Fig. 23.15. Trellis encoder

The Reed-Solomon encoder RS(188,208) is followed by a data interleaver, which changes the time sequence of the data, i.e. it scrambles the data. At the receiver end, the de-interleaver restores the original time sequence of the data. With interleaving, even long burst errors can be corrected as they are distributed over several frames and can thus be handled more easily by the Reed-Solomon decoder. Interleaving is followed by a second error correction in the form of a trellis encoder. The trellis encoder can be compared to the convolutional encoder used in DVB-S and DVB-T.

The ATSC system employs a trellis encoder (Fig. 23.15.) with two signal paths. From the incoming bit stream, one bit is taken to a precoder with a code rate of 1, and the second bit to a trellis encoder with a code rate of 1/2. This yields an overall code rate of 2/3. The three data streams generated by the precoder and the trellis encoder are fed to a symbol mapper, which outputs the 8-level VSB baseband signal. The counterpart of the trellis encoder at the receiver end is the Viterbi decoder.

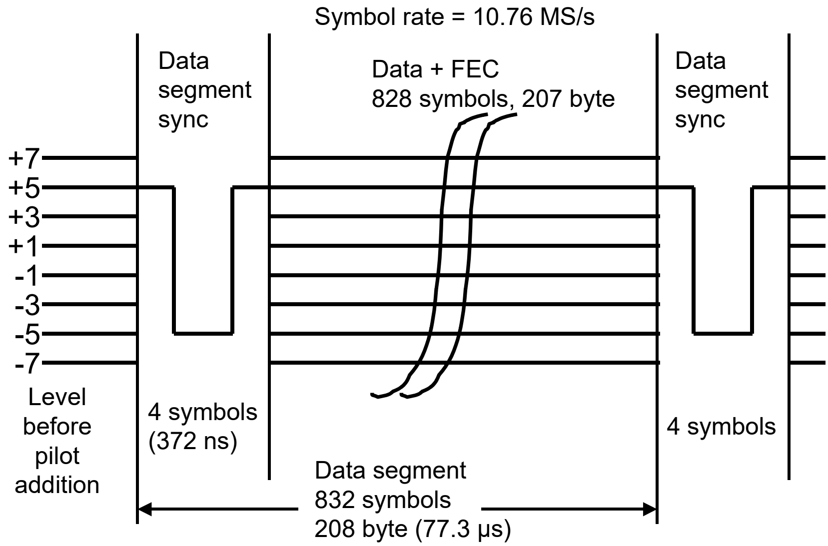


Fig. 23.16. 8VSB data segment

The Viterbi decoder corrects bit errors by retracing the path through the trellis diagram that has with the highest probability been followed through the encoder (see also the chapter on DVB-S). Parallel to the FEC block, a sync generator is provided in the 8VSB modulator. This generator produces, at defined intervals, special sync patterns that are transmitted instead of data in the 8VSB signal as sync information for the receiver. The FEC encoded data and the segment sync and field sync produced by the sync generator are combined in the multiplexer. The 8VSB signal is divided into data segments. Each data segment starts with a data segment sync.

The data segment sync consists of 4 symbols which are assigned defined 8VSB signal levels: The first symbol is at signal level +5, the two middle symbols at signal level –5, and the last symbol at +5. The data segment sync can be compared to the analog TV sync pulse. It marks the beginning of a data segment consisting of 828 symbols and carrying a total of 207 data bytes. A complete data segment – including the sync – comprises 832 symbols and has a length of 77.3µs (s. It is followed by the next data segment, which likewise starts with the 4-symbol data segment sync. A total of 313 data segments each combine to form a field. In 8VSB transmission, a distinction is made between field 1 and field 2. With either field comprising 313 data segments, field 1 and field 2 contain a total of 626 data segments. Each field starts with a field sync. This is a special data segment that likewise starts with a 4 symbol data segment sync but contains special data. Each field of 313 data segments is 24.2 ms long, yielding an overall length of 48.4 ms for field 1 and field 2.

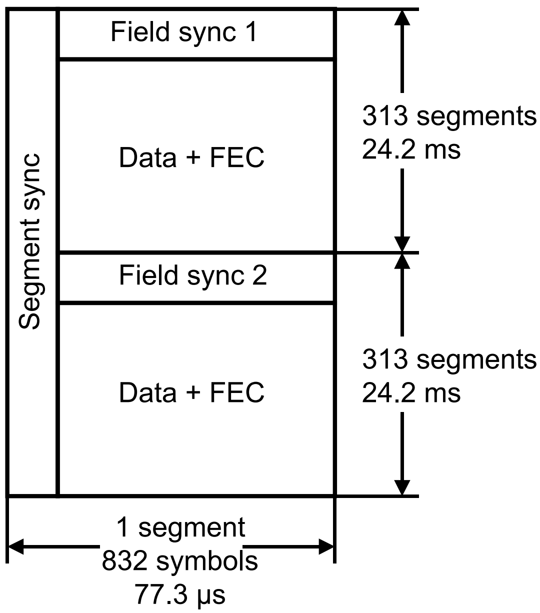


Fig. 23.17. 8VSB data frame with two fields

The field sync, like a data segment, starts with a data segment sync. Instead of normal data, however, this data segment sync contains a number of pseudo random sequences, the VSB mode information, and some special, reserved symbols. The VSB mode bits carry the 8VSB/16VSB mode information. 16VSB was intended for cable transmission, but has not been implemented in practice.

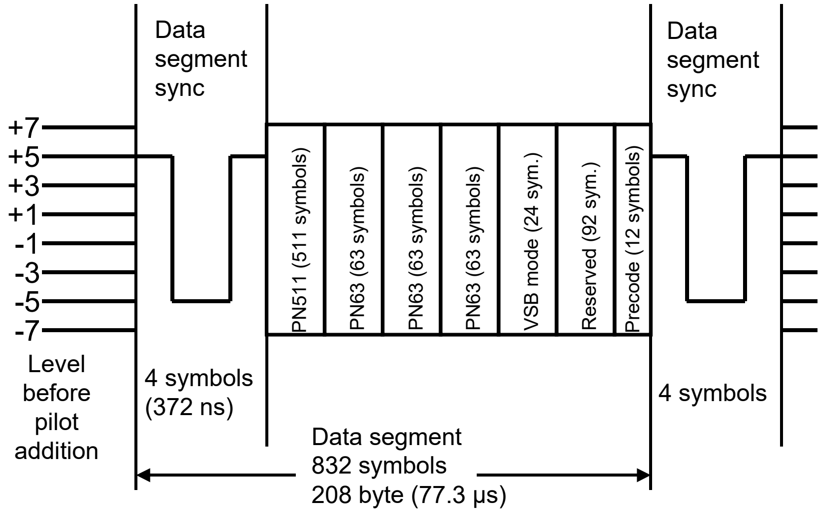


Fig. 23.18. 8VSB field sync

Terrestrial transmission employs the 8VSB mode. The pseudo random sequences contained in the field sync are used as training sequences by the channel equalizer in the receiver. Moreover, it is the pseudo random sequences by which the receiver detects the field sync and is thus able to synchronize to the frame structure. During the field sync, the randomizer block is reset in the modulator and in the receiver. The resulting 8VSB baseband signal, consisting of field syncs and data segments, is taken to the 8VSB modulator. Prior to amplitude modulation, a relative DC component of +1.25 is added to the 8 level signal. Prior to this addition, the 8VSB signal has discrete amplitude stages of -7, -5, -3, -1, +1, +3, +5 and +7. Adding the DC component shifts all 8VSB levels by a relative value of +1.25.

Amplitude modulation of a baseband signal, no longer free of DC but with a mixer signal actually free of carrier, however, produces a signal with a carrier component. This carrier component is referred to as an

8VSB pilot signal, and is found exactly at the center of the 8VSB modulation product before it is subjected to vestigial sideband filtering. As a double-sided spectrum, the modulation product would occupy bandwidth at least as wide as the symbol rate. The symbol rate is 10.76 MS/s, so the minimum required bandwidth is 10.76 MHz. The channel bandwidth in the North American ATSC TV system is, however, only 6 MHz. As in analog TV, therefore, the 8VSB signal is vestigial sideband filtered after amplitude modulation, i.e. the major part of the lower sideband is suppressed. This could be done by means of a conventional analog vestigial sideband filter; this method is today no longer employed however, not even by modern analog TV transmitters. Instead, the 8VSB baseband signal with its pilot DC component is split into two signals: One is taken directly to an I mixer and the other first to a Hilbert transformer and then to a Q mixer (Fig. 23.20.).

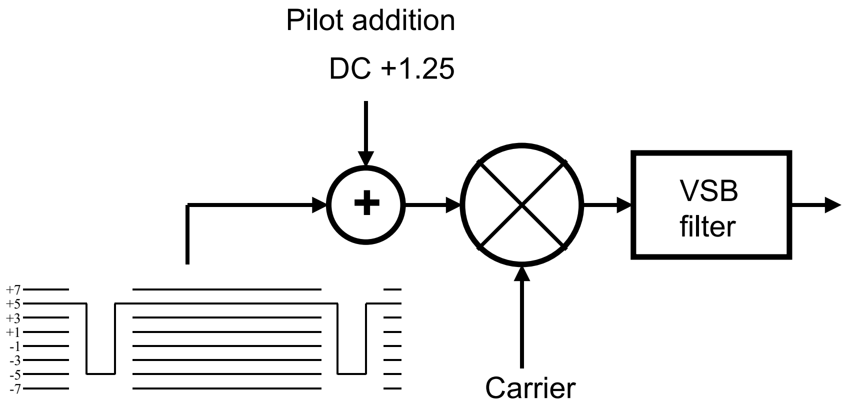


Fig. 23.19. 8VSB modulation with pilot

A Hilbert transformer is a 90° phase shifter for all frequencies of a band. The Hilbert transformer in conjunction with the IQ modulator causes partial suppression of the lower sideband, which is obtained due to the configuration of the amplitudes and phases involved. The resulting 8VSB spectrum only contains the upper sideband and a vestigial lower sideband. Moreover, a spectral line is found at the previous band center, i.e. the band center before vestigial sideband filtering. This spectral line results from the added DC component and is referred to as pilot carrier. The 8VSB spectrum is Nyquist filtered with a roll-off factor of r = 0.115. After VSB modulation, the signal is converted to RF. This conversion is today usually effected by direct modulation simultaneously with VSB modulation. An analog IQ modulator is therefore normally used in VSB modulation which directly converts the baseband signal to RF. As an analog component, the IQ modulator no longer operates as perfectly as does a digital device. It must therefore be ensured that the gain in the I and Q paths is identical, and that the phase of the carrier supplied to the Q path is exactly 90 °. Otherwise the unwanted part of the lower sideband will be inadequately suppressed. After RF conversion, the signal passes through the pre-equalization and power amplifier stages and is then taken to the antenna. A passive bandpass filter in the antenna feeder line suppresses out-of-band components.

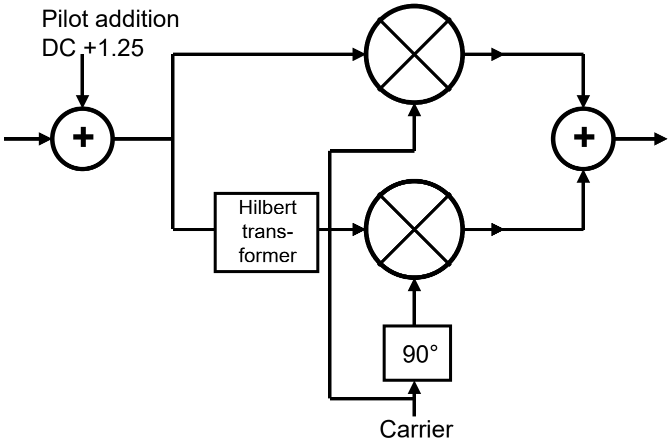


Fig. 23.20. Typical 8VSB modulator with Hilbert transformer

23.2 8VSB Gross Data Rate and Net Data Rate

The symbol rate employed in 8VSB is calculated as follows:

symbol_rate = 4.5/286 · 684 MS/s = 10.76223776 MS/s;

This yields the following gross data rate:

gross_data_rate = 3 bit/symbol · 10.76 MS/s = 32.2867 Mbit/s;

The net data rate is then:

$$\text{net\_data\_rate} = 188/208 \cdot 2/3 \cdot 312/313 \cdot \text{gross\_data\_rate}$$
$$= 19.39265846 \text{ Mbit/s;}$$

The above equations are based on the following parameter values:

- 8VSB = 3 bit/symbol
- Reed-Solomon = 188/208
- Code rate = 2/3 (trellis)
- Field sync = 312/313

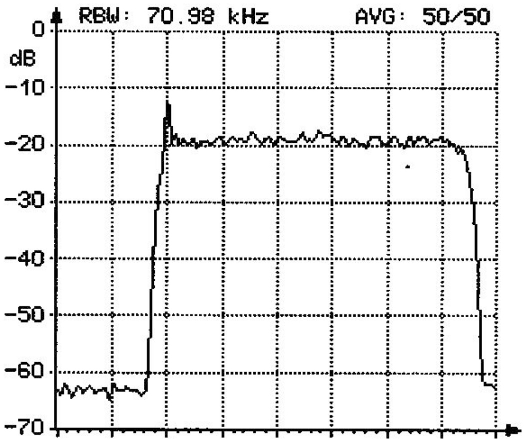


Fig. 23.21. 8VSB spectrum (roll-off filtered with r=0.115)

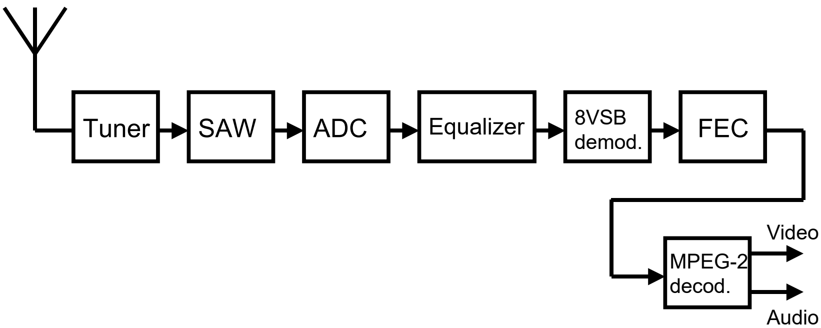


Fig. 23.22. ATSC receiver

23.3 The ATSC Receiver

In the ATSC receiver, a tuner converts the signal from RF to IF. Then the adjacent channels are suppressed by a SAW filter with a Nyquist slope. The band-limited ATSC signal is converted to a second, lower IF for simplified A/D conversion after the anti-aliasing lowpass filter. A/D conversion is followed by a digital channel equalizer that corrects transmission errors. The channel equalizer block also includes a matched filter which performs roll-off filtering with a roll-off factor of r = 0.115. The 8VSB signal is then demodulated, and errored bytes are corrected in the FEC block. This again yields the original transport stream, which is applied to the MPEG-2 decoder to restore the original video and audio signals.

23.4 Causes of Interference on the ATSC Transmission Path

ATSC transmission paths are subject to the same types of interference as DVB-T transmission paths. Terrestrial transmission channels are characterized by interference as follows:

- Noise
- Interferers
- Multipath reception (echoes)
- Amplitude response, group delay
- Doppler effect in mobile reception (not considered in ATSC/8VSB)

Of the above types of interference, noise is the only one that can be well predicted and relatively easily handled in ATSC transmission. All other effects, especially multipath reception, are difficult to manage. This is due to the principle of single carrier transmission employed by ATSC. While the equalizer in 8VSB/ATSC is capable of correcting echo, 8VSB is more susceptible to interference compared with COFDM. Mobile reception is virtually impossible.

The "brickwall effect" occurs at an SNR of about 14.9 dB in ATSC. This corresponds to about 2.5 segment errors per second or to a segment error rate of $1.93 \cdot 10^{-4}$, respectively. The pre-Reed Solomon bit error rate is then $2 \cdot 10^{-3}$ and the post-Reed Solomon bit error rate is $2 \cdot 10^{-6}$.

Assuming that the noise power at the tuner input is about 10 dBμV (see chapter on DVB-T), the minimum required receiver input voltage is about 25 dBμV in ATSC.

23.5 ATSC-M/H Mobile DTV

Two proposals by the companies Samsung/Rohde&Schwarz ("A-VSB" - Advanced VSB) and Harris/LG ("ATSC-MHP") resulted in the creation of a so-called Candidate Standard ATSC M/H as an extension to the ATSC standard for mobile TV in 2008. The ATSC M/H standard is called [A/153] and consists of a number of documents. Part 2 describes the transmission part (Transmission System Characteristics). The intention is to make ATSC more portable and receivable by mobile by employing new technologies. The extensions are backward compatible and, therefore, do not interfere with existing ATSC receivers. The services inserted for the use of mobiles are virtually invisible to normal ATSC receivers. In the MPEG-2 data stream supplied to the ATSC M/H modulator, the mobile services run on a PID which is not signalled via the PSI tables, a so-called unreferenced PID. However, this PID is known to an ATSC M/H modulator which inserts the contents into the ATSC frame in a special way. The "normal" ATSC services and the mobile services then share the constant total data rate of 19.39 Mbit/s. The MPEG-2 transport stream is correspondingly edited by an ATSC M/H multiplexer which inserts the mobile DTV contents into the data stream. The mobile DTV services are MPEG-4 AVC and MPEG-4 AAC coded video and audio at total data rates of approx. 0.5 Mbit/s net per service at display resolutions corresponding to mobile telephones (416 pixels x 40 lines (16:9)). For reasons of compatibility, the contents are embedded in UDP and IP protocols similar to DVB-H. In addition, the ATSC M/H compatible modulator is supplied with signalling and control signals. The possibility of forming SFNs (single-frequency networks) does not form a part of the proposed ATSC but is also provided for in parallel. There is a relevant standard [A/110B] which is currently not used for reasons of expenditure and licensing, and also proprietary solutions for SFN synchronization (e.g. Rohde&Schwarz).

23.5.1 Compatibility with the Existing Frame Structure

The key in ATSC M/H is the backward compatibility with normal ATSC. Normal ATSC receivers must not sense any disturbance from the additional mobile contents. To achieve this, the format must be completely matched to the existing ATSC segment, field and frame structure. An ATSC segment contains a time interleaved and doubly error protected (Reed Solomon and trellis) MPEG-2 transport stream packet. The original MPEG-2 sync bytes which have not been displaced in time have been replaced by the segment sync (4 symbols). The 187 bytes - without sync byte - of an MPEG-2 transport stream packet now become 2484 bytes of an ATSC segment by means of RS(188, 208) and 2/3 trellis coding. Due to the time interleaving, however, the error protected data can no longer be found transparently in a segment but are distributed over 52 segments or transport stream packets, respectively.

ATSC has allocated 313 segments to one field and 2 fields to one frame. If it is intended to incorporate new mobile contents compatibly into ATSC, this frame structure must be adhered to. The following considerations are of importance for the adaptation of ATSC M/H:

- 52 transport stream packets or 52 adjacent segments contain interleaved coherent data
- 3 x 52 transport stream packets result in a number of 156 packets or 156 segments, respectively
- 2 x 156 = 312 segments result in one ATSC field
- Together with the field sync, the ATSC field has a total length of 313 segments

If single-frequency networks are to be formed, the basic prerequisite is that all modulators operate completely synchronously with respect to frequency, time and data. I.e. it is necessary to have synchronization of the frame structure, starting with the ATSC M/H multiplexer, the multiplexer informing the ATSC modulator of the ARSC frame start and the emission time of the ATSC symbols.

In ATSC M/H - "Mobile DTV" - the content for the mobile service,

- MPEG-4 AVC - H.264 coded (video), image resolution 426 pixels x 240 lines (16:9)
- and MPEG-4 AAC coded (audio)
- embedded in an IP environment
- provided with additional Reed Solomon and convolutional code
- with additional TPC (transmission parameter channel) information (about the physical layer, error protection)
- extended with additional FIC (fast information channel) information (number of services)

- rendered transparently operable with additional SSC (service signalling channel)
- better received with additional training sequences for the mobile receiver
- optionally equipped with ESG (Electronic Service Guide) via OMA BCAST (Open Mobile Alliance Broadcast)

thus prepared, is keyed into the MPEG-2 transport stream supplied to the ATSC modulator, in such a way that the interleaving taking place there and the error protection are virtually "outwitted", i.e. are precalculated. The additional contents are running on a special PID (0x1FF9 or user-defined) known to the ATSC M/H multiplexer and modulator. This also includes any type of signalling. The data for ATSC M/H are pre-interleaved (52 transport stream packets) in advance in such a manner that the correct order is restored by the interleaving in the modulator (52 segments). The main tasks such as additional error protection, inserting of additional training sequences etc. have already been accomplished in the ATSC M/H multiplexer.

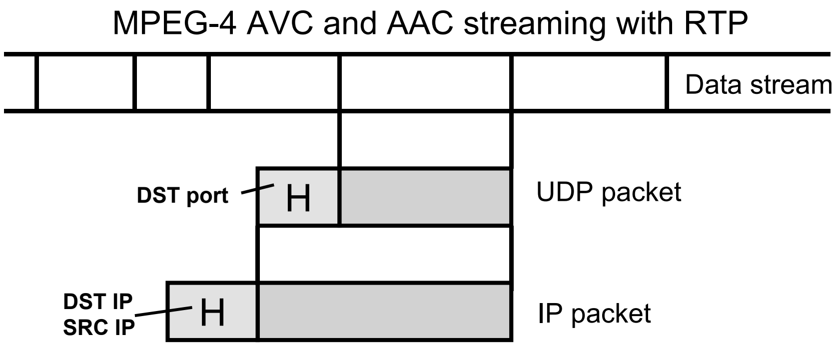


Fig. 23.23. MPEG-4 AVC and AAC streaming via IP

23.5.2 MPEG-4 Video and Audio Streaming

In ATSC M/H, as in other mobile TV standards, the content transmitted for the mobile applications is embedded via IP protocols. MPEG-4 AVC and MPEG-4 AAC streaming material is initially inserted into the MPEG-2 transport stream in UDP (User Datagram Protocol) packets by way of DSM-CC sections. This variant of data transmission provides for the compatibility with other transmission variants (s.a. the DVB-H chapter).

MPEG-4 AVC (= H.264) is currently the most modern and most effective type of video compression. The same applies to MPEG-4 AAC+ for the audio coding.

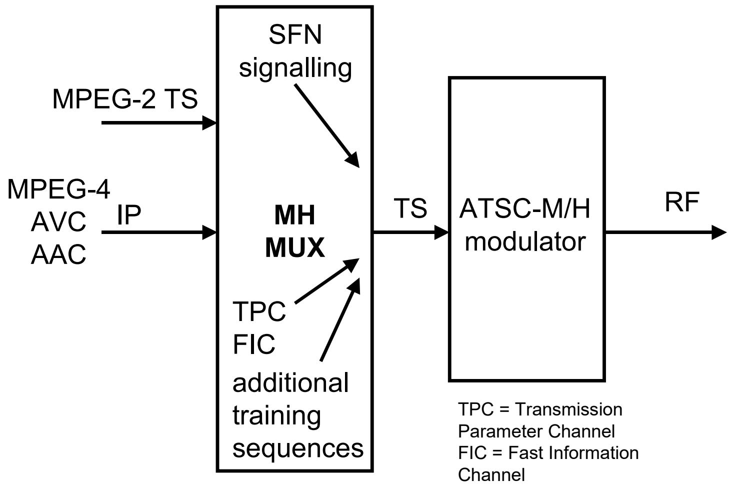


Fig. 23.24. ATSC-M/H multiplexer and ATSC-M/H modulator

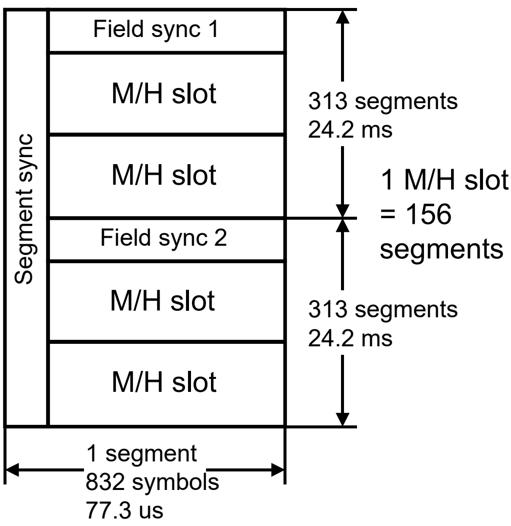


Fig. 23.25. Forming ATSC-M/H slots

23.5.3 ATSC M/H Multiplexer

The ATSC M/H multiplexer is actually the key element for the ATSC M/H signal processing. It conditions the supplementary ATSC M/H data in a "digestible" way for the ATSC M/H modulator. It provides for the IP encapsulation and for the error protection and for the pre-interleaving and inserting of the additional training sequences for the M/H receivers.

Considered in a simplified way, the ATSC M/H slots begin precisely at a field boundary. In reality, however, they have an offset of 37 transport stream packets or segments before the field sync. This is not shown in the Figure and initially might only cause confusion.

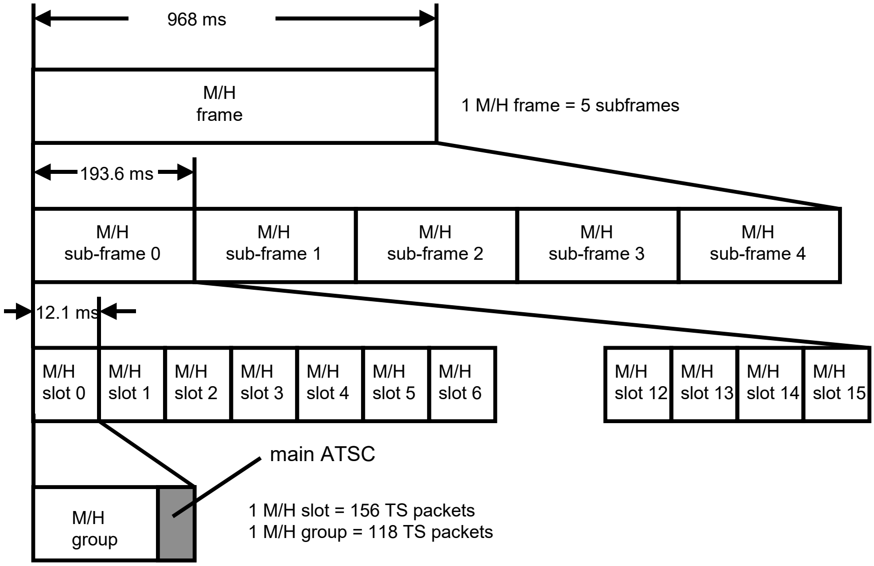


Fig. 23.26. ATSC-M/H framing

23.5.3.1 Compatible ATSC M/H Framing

An ATSC M/H field is here divided into two M/H slots. Each M/H slot has a length of 156 segments (to recall: 3 x 52 interleaved TS packets = 156 packets). The actual ATSC M/H component is located in the first 118 segments whilst the rest of the 156 segments is always used for the ATSC main stream. One to eight M/H slots make up a parade. A parade can carry one or two ATSC M/H ensembles. A parade is thus nothing else but a series of M/H slots transmitting the same M/H contents. The data rate share of a parade in the total of 19.38 Mbit/s of the net ATSC channel is 0.9 to

7.3 Mbit/s. However, the actual useful data rate of a parade is lower due to the additional error protection.

In ATSC M/H, an M/H subframe consisting of 16 adjacent M/H slots is first formed. 5 M/H subframes make up one M/H frame. It depends on the number of slots (1 to 8) allocated to a parade which M/H slots are really occupied with M/H content and this is defined in detail in the standard. If an M/H slot is occupied with M/H content, only the first 118 segments or transport stream packets are used for this purpose, the rest is reserved for the main ATSC. The intention is that the MPEG buffers for main ATSC in the receiver should not be empty.

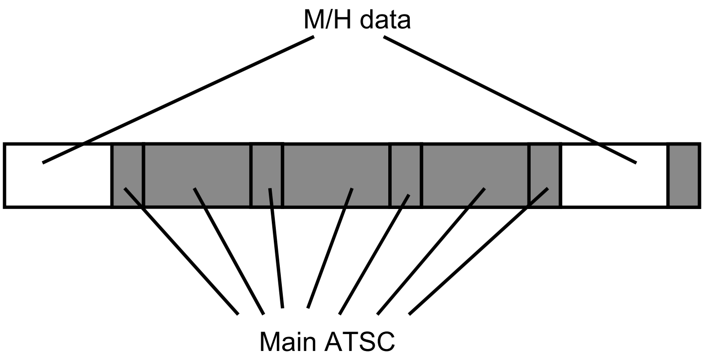


Fig. 23.27. M/H data and main ATSC data

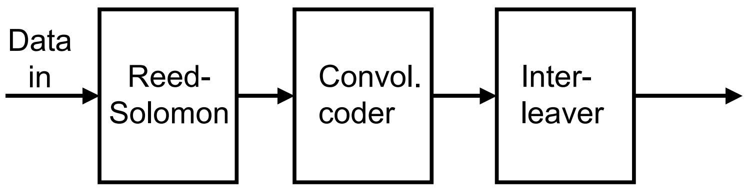


Fig. 23.28. Additional Error Protection

23.5.3.2 Additional Error Protection

The ATSC M/H content is additionally error-protected, the error protection already being added in the ATSC M/H multiplexer. The additional error protection consists of a Reed Solomon error protection and of convolutional coding. The additional convolutional coding together with the trellis coding with the ATSC modulator then results in a turbo code. After the convolutional coding, the ATSC M/H content is additionally interleaved.

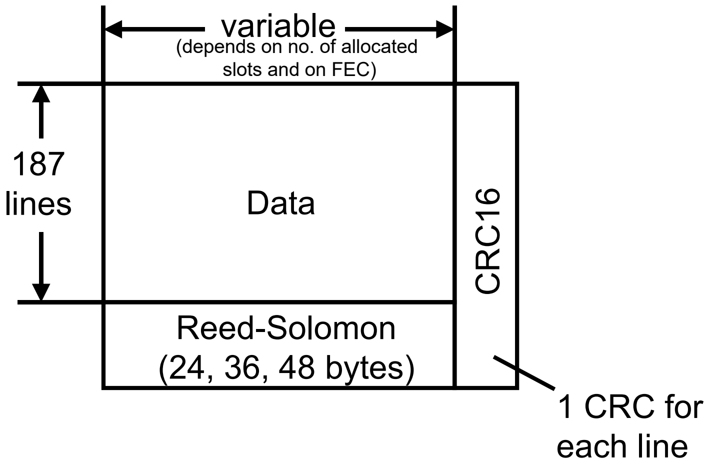


Fig. 23.29. Additional Reed-Solomon FEC

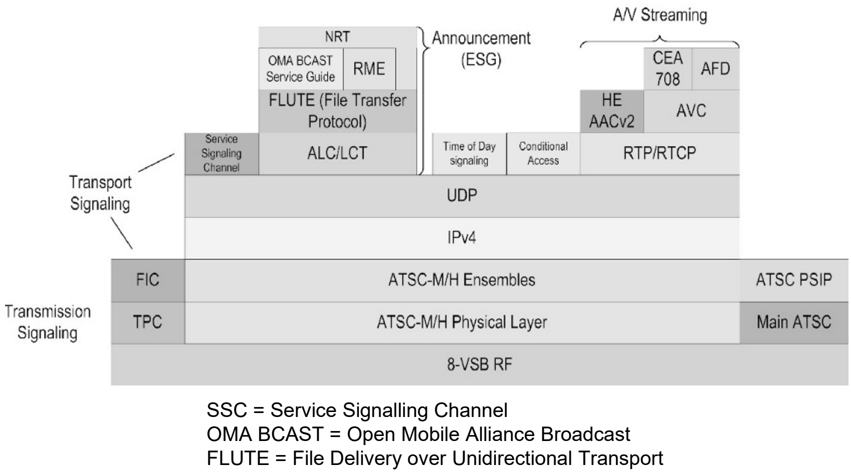


Fig. 23.30. ATSC-M/H layer (source: Rohde&Schwarz)

23.5.3.3 Additional Training Sequences

The ATSC multiplexer also inserts 6 additional training sequences for the equalizer in the receiver. This enables the receiver to adapt itself better to unfavourable portable and mobile receiving conditions. It also enables a receiver to handle single-frequency network conditions more easily.

23.5.3.4 Supplementary Data

Apart from the MPEG-4 streaming data, additional information of importance for the receiver is also transmitted in different layers in ATSC M/H, which is

- TPC - Transmission Parameter Channel
- FIC - Fast Information Channel
- SSC - Service Signalling Channel
- OMA BCAST - Open Mobile Alliance Broadcast

The Transmission Parameter Channel and the Fast Information Channel are included relatively closely at the lowest physical layer; both of them being entered permanently in certain bytes in the M/H slots. The Transmission Parameter Channel signals the mapping of the M/H slots and the additional error protection. Via the Fast Information Channel, the number of services and their IDs are transmitted. The actual service names are found in the Service Signalling Channel which is transmitted at the IP level. In addition, EPG data can be emitted in the OMA BCAST.

23.5.4 ATSC M/H Modulator

The ATSC M/H modulator receives the preconditioned data on a special PID including the "normal" ATSC data on the usual PIDs signalled via PSI and inserts the M/H Mobile DTV data into M/H slots. An M/H slot has a length of half an ATSC field. An M/H time slot consists of a certain number of adjacent ATSC segments. The ATSC modulator is controlled by signalling from the ATSC M/H multiplexer. The ATSC framing can now no longer be freely selected in the ATSC modulator but is linked to the ATSC M/H data. In addition, the ATSC modulator must now perform a trellis reset at certain times. But for a "normal" ATSC receiver, the result after the modulation only looks as if a part of the transmitted data were contained in unknown, i.e. unreferenced PIDs. However, ATSC M/H receivers are well able to utilize these data, too.

23.5.5 Forming Single-Frequency Networks

Due to the scarcity of frequencies, single-frequency networks provide a very economic way of reusing the same frequency over a relatively large area. This possibility is used very intensively mainly in COFDM-based transmission standards. ATSC is now attempting to use the same approach, applying same rule that all transmitters in a single frequency ATSC network must be

- Synchronous in frequency
- Synchronous in time
- Synchronous in their data
- Meeting emission times (network planning, static delay)

There are no guard intervals in single-carrier modulation. It is necessary that appropriate equalizers in the receiver assist in recovering as much as is possible from the conditions of reception. The essential factor in ATSC with respect to single frequency networks is the frame synchronization of all modulators involved and the emission time of the symbols. The modulators are synchronized via the multiplexer.

23.5.6 Summary

ATSC M/H "Mobile DTV" is an extension in the existing ATSC standard to make ATSC more portable and useful in mobile applications. Numerous backward compatible extension, simply ignored by a "normal" ATSC receiver, have been inserted into the ATSC signal. To be able to broadcast ATSC M/H, an ATSC M/H multiplexer is required in addition to an ATSC M/H-compatible modulator. New ATSC receivers can compensate for delay differences of approximately up to 40 µs within certain limits in the case of multipath reception and thus also provide for single-frequency networks in this order of magnitude; however this is mainly dependent on the level differences of the receiving paths and on the number of paths, and mainly on the receiver.

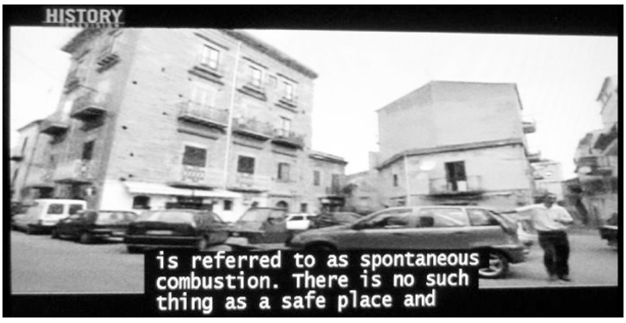


Fig. 23.31. Closed Captioning insert on a TV screen

23.6 Closed Captioning

It is, or was, normal practice in NTSC to transmit closed captioning (CC) data in the vertical blanking interval in line 21 of the first and second field of a TV frame. In principle, CC is used for sending subtitles, possibly in various languages, in two bytes per field each to the TV receiver; i.e. texts which are related to the current program. The relevant data rate can be calculated as:

- 2 bytes per field at 60 fields per second are
- 120 bytes per second per 8 bits = 820 bits/sec.

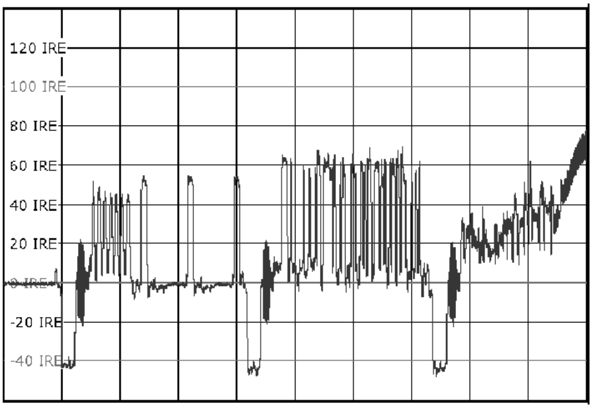


Fig. 23.32. Closed Captioning data in line 21 of an analog TV signal

Fig. 23.31. shows an example of the insertion of closed captioning on a TV screen. The insert can be switched on or off by the viewer via the CC key on their remote control. Fig. 23.32. shows line 21 with closed captioning data.

The relevant standard is EIA 608 A. Broadcasting of closed captioning data is regulated by law in the US. The compatible transmission of such data has also been standardized in ATSC in the EIA 708 B standard. The CC data are not sent out in private PES streams as in DVB but via the optional user data after the picture header in the video PES steam. The data are thus automatically synchronous with the video stream. The data rate is ten times that of analog television. The data rate of the CC data in ATSC is thus:

- 9600 bits
- or 20 bytes per picture user data field at 60 frames per second

Fig. 23.3. shows the position of the picture user data in the video PES stream. A CC decoder, which can be a component of an MPEG decoder chip, fetches these data from the data field after the picture header and inserts the corresponding text information into the decoded image.

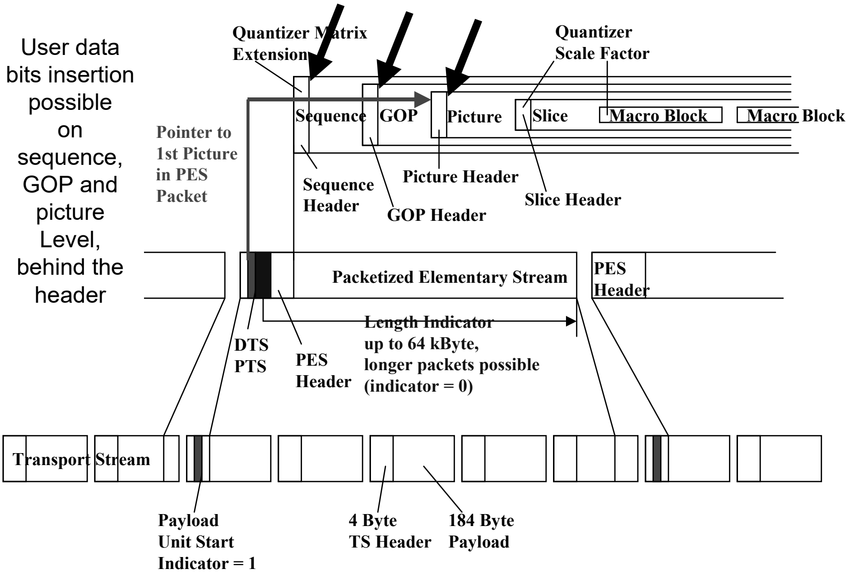


Fig. 23.33. Position of the picture user data in the video PES stream

23.7 Current Status of ATSC

In US analog TV switch off was on June 12, 2009. Since that time there is only ATSC on air. ATSC 1.0 and 2.0 is currently in use in US, Canada, Mexico and South Korea. In South Korea there is now also ATSC3.0 carring UHDTV content.
Current ATSC versions are

- ATSC 1.0 (“classic” ATSC with MPEG-2 video and AC-3 audio)
- ATSC 2.0 (physical layer is ATSC 1.0, but using further extensions in the transport stream)

- ATSC 3.0 (new standard using OFDM, see chapter 47)

ATSC 1.0 and ATSC 2.0 are using the same physical layer which is 8VSB modulation. ATSC 2.0 is backward compatible and it additionally allows interactive and hybrid services via the internet. MPEG-4/AVC is also in use. ATSC 3.0 is a completely new standard based on OFDM and principle like DVB-T2. This standard will be described in an extra chapter in this book (see chapter 47).

Fig. 23.34. ATSC-M/H multiplexer Rohde&Schwarz AEM100

Bibliography: [A53], [EFA], [SFQ], [SFU], [A153], [A110B], [7EB01_APP], [EIA608A], [EIA708B], [BTC], [ETL]

24 ATSC/8VSB Measurements

In the following section, the measurements required at the air interface to the North American terrestrial digital TV transmission system will be discussed in detail. The ATSC – Advanced Television Systems Committee – standard employs a modulation method with a single carrier, that is 8VSB, which stands for 8-level vestigial sideband modulation. The 8VSB constellation diagram does not exhibit points but lines. Due to the Q component resulting from vestigial sideband filtering, eight lines are formed from the originally eight points. As a basic rule in 8VSB, it can be said that the narrower the eight lines, the better the signal quality. While 8VSB modulation appears relatively simple compared to the COFDM multicarrier method, it exhibits correspondingly higher susceptibility to the various types of interference from the terrestrial environment.

The following causes of interference will, therefore, be discussed below:

- Additive white Gaussian noise
- Echoes
- Amplitude and group-delay distortion
- Phase jitter
- IQ errors of modulator
- Insufficient shoulder attenuation
- Interferers

All of the above types of interference manifest themselves as bit errors in the demodulated 8VSB signal. Bit errors can be corrected to a certain extent by means of forward error correction (FEC). Vital in this context are measurement of the bit error ratio and a detailed analysis of the causes of bit errors.

24.1 Bit Error Ratio (BER) Measurement

In ATSC/8VSB, three different bit error ratios are known. These result from two error protection methods being combined, i.e. Reed-Solomon

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_24

block coding, and convolutional coding. The bit error ratios (BER) are as follows:

- Bit error ratio before Viterbi
- Bit error ratio before Reed-Solomon
- Bit error ratio after Reed-Solomon

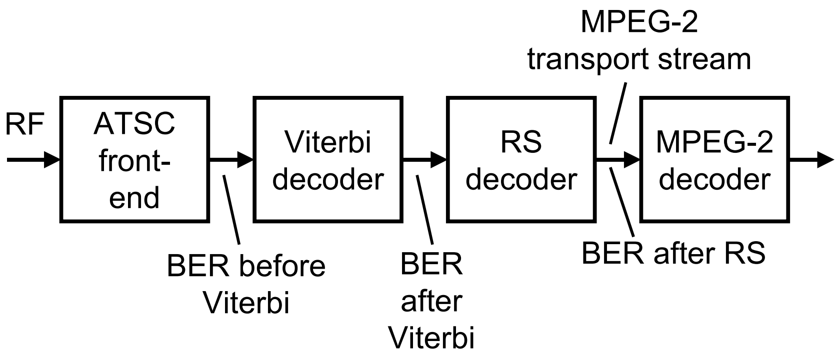


Fig. 24.1. Bit error ratios in ATSC

The most significant BER is the BER before Viterbi as it represents the channel bit error ratio. But there is a problem: with trellis coding, the bit error ratio before Viterbi cannot be measured technically because of ambiguities in the receiver in the Viterbi decoding.

The BER after Viterbi, i.e. before Reed-Solomon, is derived directly from the Reed-Solomon decoder. The BER after Reed-Solomon, then, indicates non-correctable bit errors, i.e. more than 10 bit errors occurring in a 208-byte RS block coded transport stream packet. The BER after Reed Solomon is likewise derived from the Reed-Solomon decoder. Non-correctable bit errors are marked by transport error indicator bits (set to 1) in the MPEG-2 transport stream. Bit error ratio measurement is performed by means of an ATSC/8VSB test receiver.

24.2 8VSB Measurements Using a Spectrum Analyzer

By means of a spectrum analyzer, both in-band and – most importantly – out-of-band measurements can be performed on the 8VSB signal. The parameters to be measured with a modern spectrum analyzer are as follows:

- Shoulder attenuation
- Amplitude frequency response
- Pilot carrier amplitude
- Harmonics

Make the following settings on a modern spectrum analyzer:

- Center frequency at center of band
- Span 20 MHz
- RMS detector
- Resolution bandwidth 20 kHz
- Video bandwidth 200 kHz
- Slow sweep time (>1 s) to allow averaging by RMS detector
- No averaging function activated

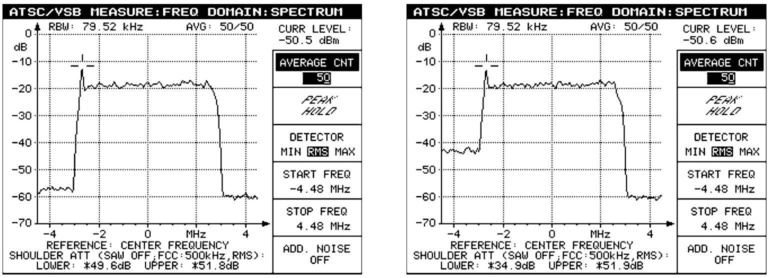


Fig. 24.2. 8VSB signal spectrum with appropriate (left) and poor (right) vestigial sideband suppression

Then the shoulder attenuation and, most importantly, the suppression of the unwanted part of the lower sideband can be measured, as well as the pilot amplitude and the amplitude distortion in the passband.

24.3 Constellation Analysis on 8VSB Signals

In contrast to a quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM) diagram, which shows points, the constellation diagram of an 8VSB signal exhibits lines. An ATSC test receiver usually comprises a constellation analyzer, which displays the 8VSB diagram by 8 parallel vertical lines that should in the ideal case be extremely narrow.

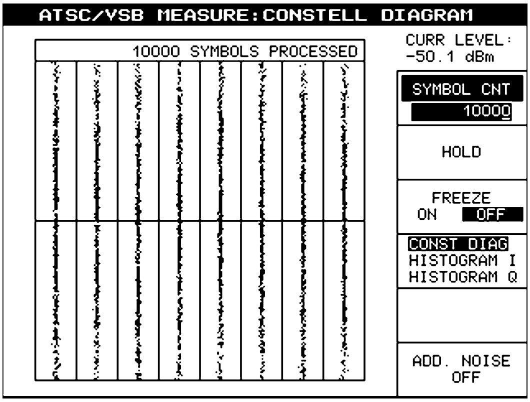


Fig. 24.3. Undistorted constellation diagram of an ATSC/8VSB signal

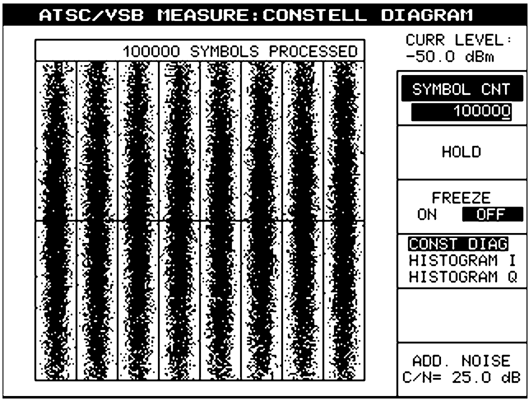


Fig. 24.4. 8VSB constellation diagram revealing noise impairment

The constellation diagram in Fig. 24.3. with very narrow lines reveals only a slight impairment by noise, such as caused already in the ATSC modulator or transmitter. As a basic rule, it can be said that the narrower the lines, the less significant the signal distortion. In the event of pure noise distortion, the lines are uniformly widened over their entire length. The wider the lines, the greater the impairment due to noise. In the constellation analysis, the RMS value of the noise is determined. Based on a statistical function, i.e. the Gaussian distribution (normal distribution), the standard deviation of the I/Q points obtained in the decision fields of the constellation diagram is determined. From the RMS noise value, the test receiver calculates the signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) in dB referenced to the signal power, which is likewise calculated by the test receiver.

In the event of phase jitter, the lines in the decision fields of the constellation diagram are trumpet-shaped, i.e. they become increasingly wider as the distance from the horizontal center line increases (Fig. 24.5.).

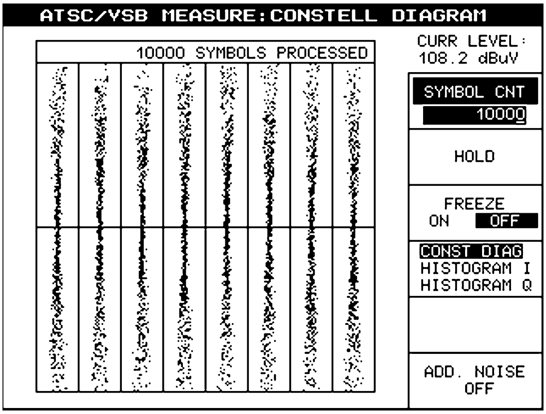


Fig. 24.5. 8VSB constellation diagram revealing phase jitter

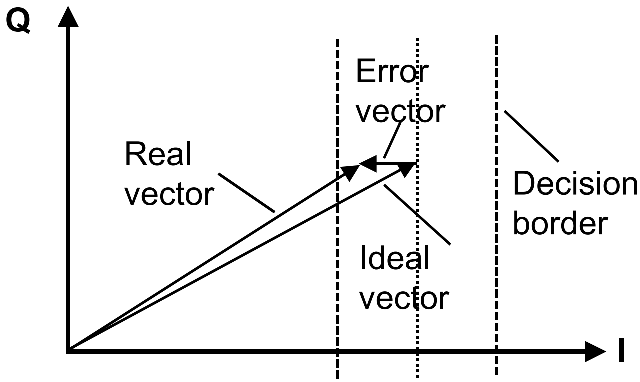


Fig. 24.6. Determining the MER of an 8VSB signal

The Modulation Error Ratio (MER) parameter summarizes all errors that can be measured within a constellation diagram. For each type of error (interference), an error vector is continually calculated. The sum of the squares (RMS value) of all error vectors is calculated. The ratio of the error-vector RMS value and the signal amplitude yields the MER, which is usually specified in dB. In the event of pure noise impairment, the MER is equal to the SNR.

The following applies:

MER[dB] <= SNR[dB];

$MER_{RMS}[dB] = -10 \log(1/n \cdot (|error\_vector|^2/P_{signal\_without\_pilot});$

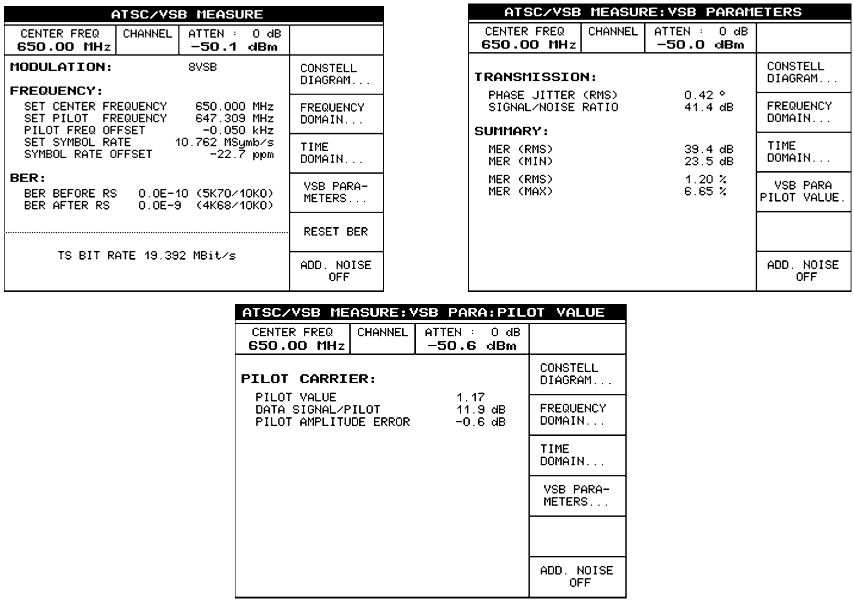


Fig. 24.7. Numerical results output by an 8VSB test receiver

Many test parameters are also output as numerical results by the 8VSB test receiver. These include the signal amplitude, bit error rate, pilot amplitude, symbol rate, phase jitter, SNR, and MER.

24.4 Measuring Amplitude Response and Group Delay Response

Although the ATSC/8VSB signal carries no pilot signals that would provide information on channel quality, the amplitude, group-delay and phase response can be roughly determined – with the aid of the test receiver equalizer – from the PRBS sequences contained in the 8VSB signal. The signal characteristics output by the 8VSB test receiver can be used to align an ATSC modulator or transmitter, for example. The equalizer data also provides information on echoes in the transmission channel and allows calculation of the impulse response.

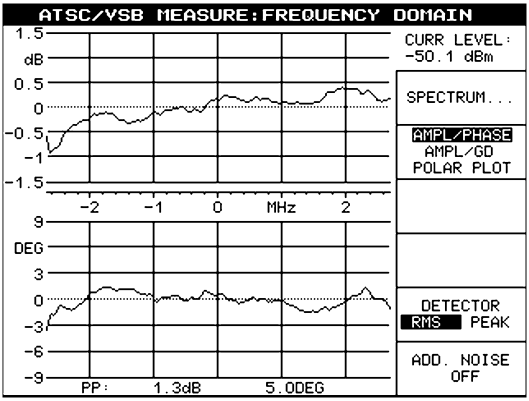
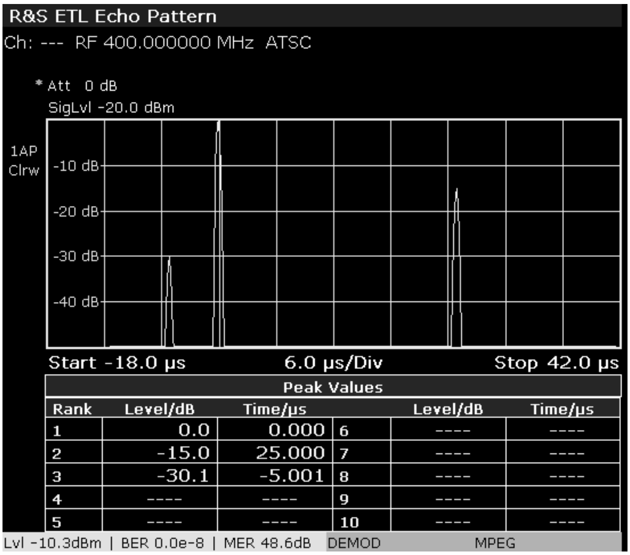


Fig. 24.8. Amplitude and phase response measurement using an 8VSB test receiver [EFA]



Rank	Level/dB	Time/µs		Level/dB	Time/µs
1	0.0	0.000	6	----	----
2	-15.0	25.000	7	----	----
3	-30.1	-5.001	8	----	----
4	----	----	9	----	----
5	----	----	10	----	----

Fig. 24.9. Ghost pattern/impulse response

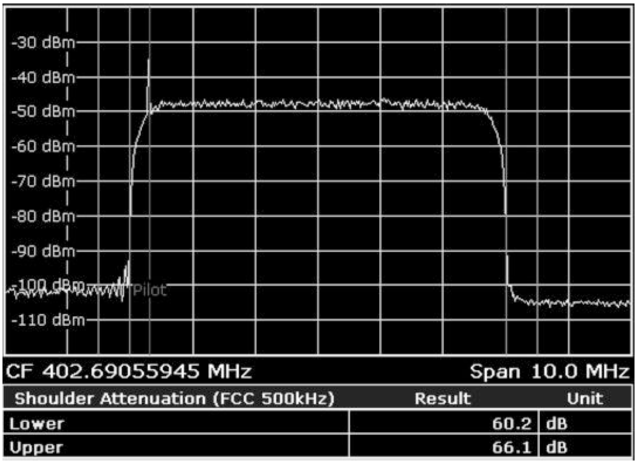


Fig. 24.10. ATSC spectrum [ETL] including shoulder attenuation measurement, pilot clearly visible

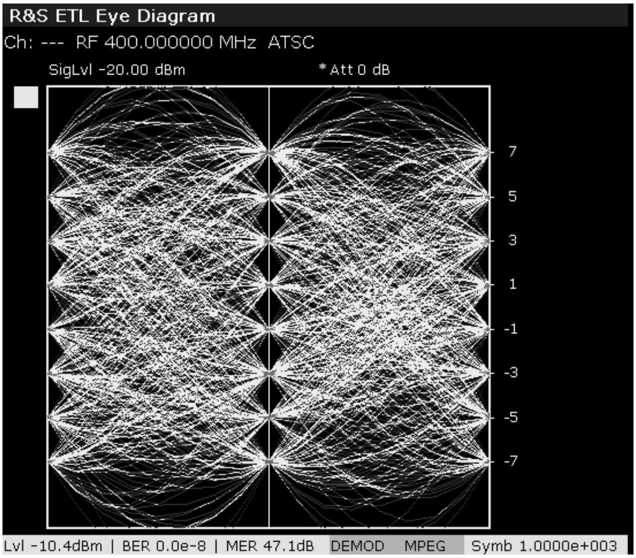


Fig. 24.11. ATSC 8VSB eye diagram [ETL]

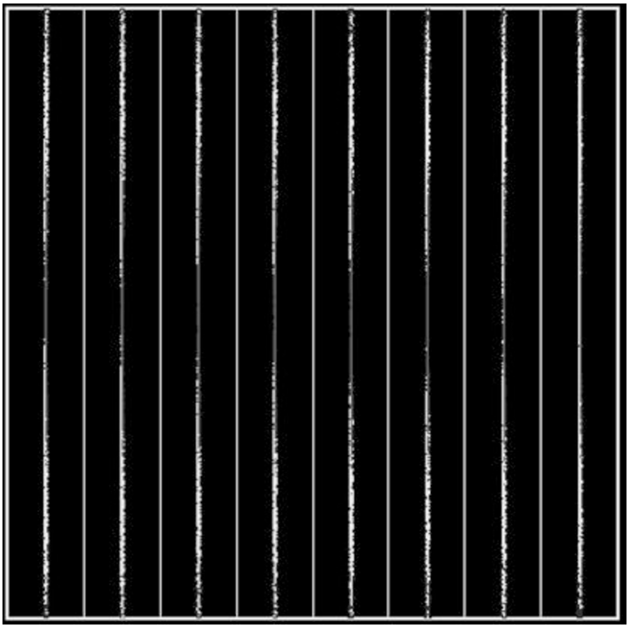


Fig. 24.12. Constellation diagram of an ATSC 8VSB signal [ETL]

24.5. Further Measurements

Some ATSC analyzer also display the eye diagram of a 8VSB signal [Fig. 24.11.]. To create an eye diagram the demodulated signal before the demapper at the sampling point and the transitions between the sampling points of the 8VSB signal are shown. The eye height allows to estimate the signal quality; the shape of the transitions helps to find distortions.

Modern ATSC analyzers [ETL] show the constellation diagram in different colors. The colors show how often some parts in the constellation diagram will be occupied by the IQ signal (cumulative distribution).

Bibliography: [A53], [EFA], [SFQ], [SFU], [ETL], [BTC]

25 Digital Terrestrial Television according to ISDB-T

25.1 Introduction

The Japanese standard for digital terrestrial television is called ISDB-T, i.e. Integrated Services Digital Broadcasting – Terrestrial, which was adopted in 1999, quite a long time after DVB-T and ATSC. This delay made it possible to take into account also the experience gained with the older standards. ISDB-T decided to use a COFDM multicarrier system as in DVB-T. ISDB-T is even more complex than DVB-T; it is also more robust because of the greater interleaving with time. The first pilot station was installed on the Tokyo Tower and overall, ISDB-T started with eleven pilot stations throughout Japan.

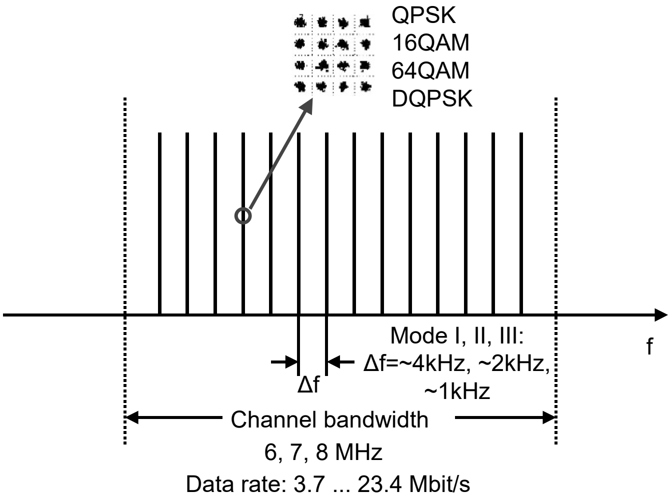


Fig. 25.1. COFDM in ISDB-T

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_25

25.2 ISDB-T Concept

In ISDB-T, COFDM (coded orthogonal frequency division multiplex) is used in 2K, 4K and 8K mode (Fig. 25.1.). The 6 MHz-wide channel can be subdivided into 13 subbands (Fig. 25.2.) in which different modulation parameters can be selected and contents transmitted. Time interleaving can be optionally switched on in various stages. With an actual channel bandwidth of 6 MHz, the useful band only has a width of 5.57 MHz, i.e. there is a guard band of about 200 kHz each for the upper and lower adjacent channels. One subband of the ISDB-T channel has a width of 430 kHz.

It is possible to select different types of modulation in ISDB-T:

- QPSK with channel correction
- 16QAM with channel correction
- 64QAM with channel correction
- DQPSK without channel correction (not required with DQPSK).

There are 3 possible modes (6 MHz channel as example):

- Mode I, with
  108 carriers per subband
  3.968 kHz subcarrier spacing
  1404 carriers within the channel
  2048-points IFFT
- Mode II, with
  216 carriers per subband
  1.9841 kHz subcarrier spacing
  2808 carriers within the channel
  4196-points IFFT
- Mode III, with
  432 carriers per subband
  0.99206 kHz subcarrier spacing
  5616 carriers within the channel
  8192-points IFFT

As already mentioned, the full 6 MHz channel is subdivided into 13 subbands of precisely 3000/7 kHz = 428.7 kHz (Fig. 25.2.) each.

Not all of the 2048, 4192 or 8192 COFDM carriers in mode I, II or III are actually used as payload carriers. In ISDB-T, there are

- Zero carriers, i.e. those which are not used

- Data carriers, i.e. real payload
- Scattered pilots (but not with DQPSK)
- Continual pilots
- TMCC (Transmission and Multiplexing Configuration Control) carriers
- AC (Auxiliary Channels)

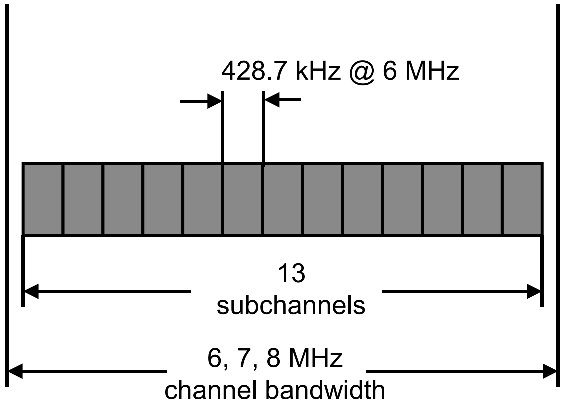


Fig. 25.2. Subchannels in ISDB-T

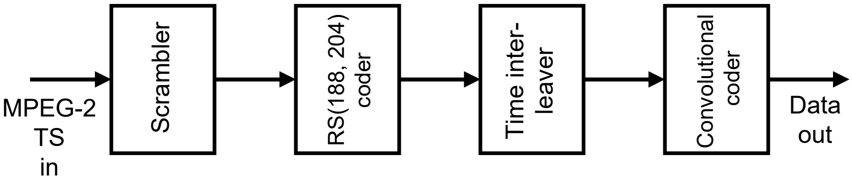


Fig. 25.3. ISDB-T FEC

The net data rates are between 280.85 kbit/s per segment or 3.7 Mbit/s per channel and 1787.28 kbit/s per segment or 23.2 Mbit/s per channel.

Due to the subband or segment concept, it is possible to build both narrow-band receivers which receive only one or a number of subbands and broadband receivers which receive the entire 6-MHz-wide channel.

In principle, the ISDB-T modulator configuration is similar to that of a DVB-T modulator. It has outer error protection, implemented as Reed Solomon RS(204,188) coder, an energy dispersal unit, an interleaver, an inner coder implemented as convolutional coder, a configurable time interleaver which can be switched on or off, a frequency interleaver, the COFDM frame adapter, the IFFT etc.. The basic configuration of the error protection corresponds directly to that of DVB-T. The selectable code rates are like those of DVB-T:

- 1/2
- 2/3
- 3/4
- 5/6
- 7/8

but the time interleaving is much deeper and can also be configured in stages:

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 4

The following guard interval lengths can be set:

- 1/4
- 1/8
- 1/16
- 1/32

25.4 Forming Layers

The individual segments in ISDB-T can be combined to form a total of 3 layers in which different transmission parameters (type of modulation and error protection) can be selected. In the 3 hierarchical layers, different contents can then be error-protected to different degrees and transmitted with modulation of different robustness. The number of segments to be combined in one layer is selectable but the same transmission parameters are used in each segment of a layer. In the case of 3 layers, in principle, 3 associated, mutually independent data streams must then be supplied. However, by using a “trick”, this can be done by supplying one common transport stream (see also Chapter 25.3).

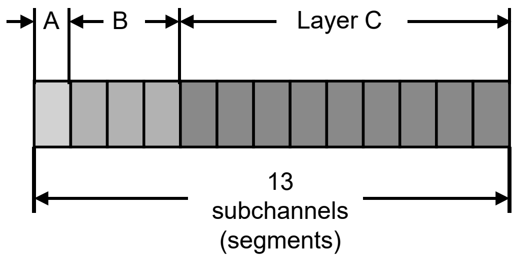


Fig. 25.4. Forming layers

25.5 Baseband Encoding

In the baseband encoding/source encoding area, of course, ISDB-T is just as open as any other standard, too. MPEG-2 video and audio are just as possible here as are the new, more optimal MPEG-4 video and audio codecs. Currently, MPEG-2 video is used for baseband coding (SDTV and HDTV), and MPEG-2 AAC for audio in Japan.

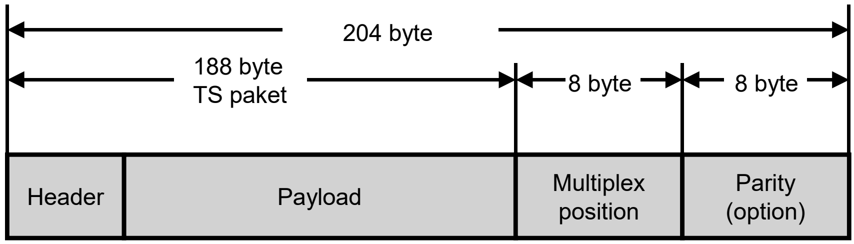


Fig. 25.5. Layer signalling in the 16 overhead bytes in the transport stream packet in the transport stream supplied

25.6 Changes in the Transport Stream Structure

In addition to activating the 3 layers via the transport stream structure, there are also extensions and new tables which, although they largely correspond to those of DVB-SI, differ in their detail or are completely different in some cases. These tables are called ARIB tables (Association of Radio Industries and Business) in ISDB-T. Control information for assigning data to the individual layers of ISDB=T is found in the transport stream in a 16-bit extension in the transport steam packets which are usually 188 bytes long (Fig. 25.5.). The “multiplex position” informs the ISDB-T modulator about the layer for which the transport stream currently contains information. This extension bears no relationship to the error protection in DVB or ISDB-T. However, it has already been common practice to provide the 188-byte-long packets with 16 bytes of dummy information at the baseband level in DVB. The possibility of using this dummy information for layer signalling has been taken up in ISDB-T.

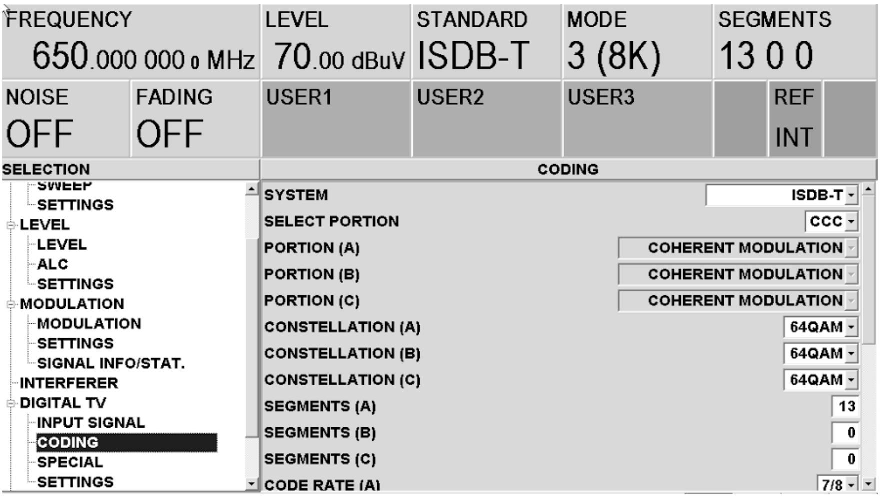


Fig. 25.6. Possible adjustments on the ISDB-T encoder of the Rohde&Schwarz test transmitter SFU to illustrate the diversity of ISDB-T; It is possible to select different transmission parameters in layers A, B and C, called “portion” here.

The order of segments is counted not from left to right, i.e. from channel start to channel end, but starts in the center with segment S0. Segment S1 is then on the left of S0 and S2 is on the right of S0. S0 is the segment used in the 1-segment mode. ISDB-Tsb (Integrated Services Digital Broadcast Terrestrial – sound broadcast) is a narrowband version where only 1 … 3 segments are used. And this is the order before the frequency interleaver. After the frequency interleaver the carriers from the different segments are distributed over the complete channel to avoid frequency selective problems. Only in case of the narrow band ISDB-T versions the subbands are placed in the center.

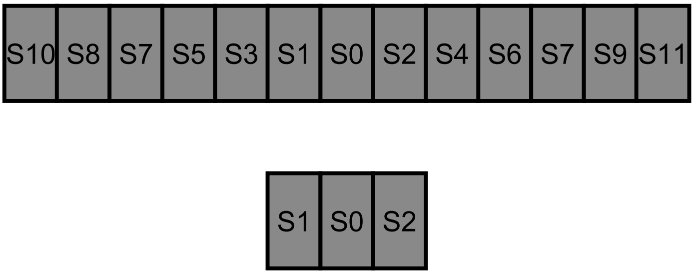


Fig. 25.7. Order of segments in ISDB-T (top) and ISDB-Tsb (bottom)

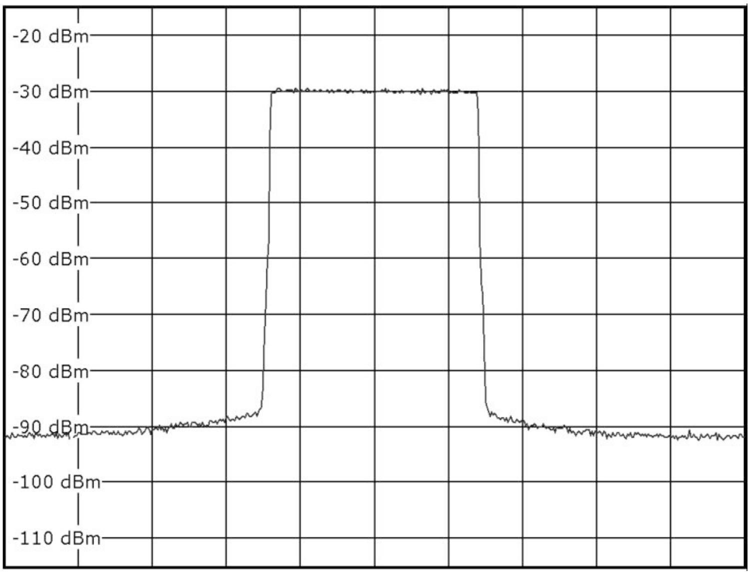


Fig. 25.8. ISDB-T spectrum

25.7 Block Diagram

Fig. 25.9. and Fig. 25.10. show the block diagram of an ISDB-T modulator. The incoming transport stream packets first of all will be protected by a Reed-Solomon forward error correction code (188 byte transport stream packet length plus 16 byte Reed-Solomon code results in a 204 byte long

packet). After that the scrambler does an energy dispersal to break up adjacent zero and ones sequences to generate a pseudo-random data stream. The next step is bit interleaving and convolutional coding. The code rate and the modulations pattern can be selected for each of the three layers so that each layer has its own pair of code rate and modulation pattern. The next steps are multiplexing of the three layer streams, time interleaving, frequency interleaving and OFDM frame adaptation with pilot insertion. The last part is the IFFT block with guard interval insertion and IQ modulation. Inside the exciter of a transmitter there is also the predistortion for the power amplifiers which is done on the IQ domain before the IQ modulator. The IQ modulator typically also does the RF upconversion.

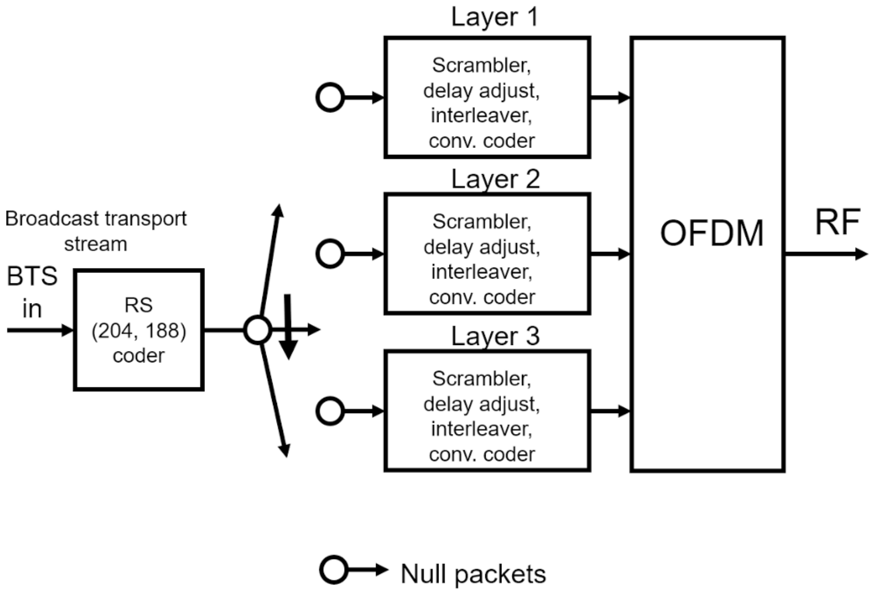


Fig. 25.9. Block diagram of an ISDB-T modulator (part 1)

25.8 Channel Tables

In ISDB-T, the TV channels have been shifted upward by 1/7 MHz. As an example, Channel 7 is originally located at 177 MHz. The new center frequency is here now 177 + 1/7 MHz = 177.143 MHz.

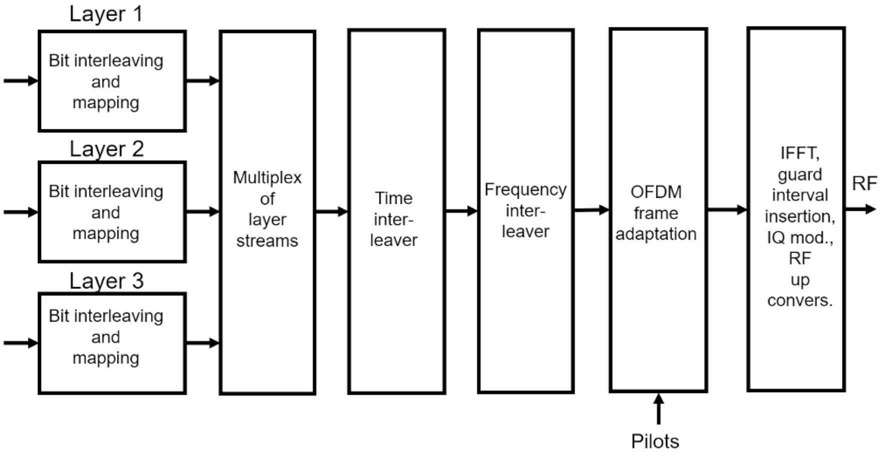


Fig. 25.10. Block diagram of an ISDB-T modulator (part 2)

25.9 Performance of ISDB-T

Table 25.1 shows the minimum signal/noise ratios as a function of the transmission parameters, specified in the ISDB-T standard. They correspond to a bit error rate of $2 \cdot 10^{-4}$ before Reed-Solomon and to a quasi-error-free data stream after Reed-Solomon.

Table 25.1. Transmission parameters of ISDB-T and theoretical minimum signal/noise ratio according to the standard

Modulation	CR=1/2 SNRmin [dB]	CR=2/3 SNRmin [dB]	CR=3/4 SNRmin [dB]	CR=5/6 SNRmin [dB]	CR=7/8 SNRmin [dB]
DQPSK	6.2	7.7	8.7	9.6	10.4
QPSK	4.9	6.6	7.5	8.5	9.1
16QAM	11.5	13.5	14.6	15.6	16.2
64QAM	16.5	18.7	20.1	21.3	22.0

Table 25.2 shows the data rates reproduced in the ISDB-T standard as a function of the transmission parameters.

Table 25.2. Data rates of ISDB-T as a function of the ISDB-T transmission parameters according to the standard (at 6 MHz bandwidth)

Modulation	Code rate	g=1/4 Data rate [Mbit/s]	g=1/8 Data rate [Mbit/s]	g=1/16 Data rate [Mbit/s]	g=1/32 Data rate [Mbit/s]
DQPSK QPSK	½	3.651	4.056	4.295	4.425
DQPSK QPSK	2/3	4.868	5.409	5.727	5.900
DQPSK QPSK	¾	5.476	6.085	6.443	6.638
DQPSK QPSK	5/6	6.085	6.761	7.159	7.376
DQPSK QPSK	7/8	6.389	7.099	7.517	7.744
16QAM	½	7.302	8.133	8.590	8.851
16QAM	2/3	9.736	10.818	11.454	11.801
16QAM	¾	10.953	12.170	12.886	13.276
16QAM	5/6	12.170	13.522	14.318	14.752
16QAM	7/8	12.779	14.198	15.034	15.489
64QAM	½	10.953	12.170	12.886	13.276
64QAM	2/3	14.604	16.227	17.181	17.702
64QAM	¾	16.430	18.255	19.329	19.915
64QAM	5/6	18.255	20.284	21.477	22.128
64QAM	7/8	19.168	21.298	22.551	23.234

Table 25.3. Data rates of ISDB-T per segment in dependence of the ISDB-T transmission parameters according to the standard (at 6 MHz bandwidth)

Modulation	Code rate	g=1/4 Data rate [kbit/s]	g=1/8 Data rate [kbit/s]	g=1/16 Data rate [kbit/s]	g=1/32 Data rate [kbit/s]
DQPSK QPSK	½	280.25	312.06	330.42	340.43
DQPSK QPSK	2/3	374.47	416.08	440.56	453.91
DQPSK QPSK	¾	421.28	468.09	495.63	510.65
DQPSK QPSK	5/6	468.09	520.10	550.70	567.39
DQPSK QPSK	7/8	491.50	546.11	578.23	595.76
16QAM	½	561.71	624.13	660.84	680.87
16QAM	2/3	748.95	832.17	881.12	907.82
16QAM	¾	842.57	936.19	991.26	1021.30

16QAM	5/6	936.19	1040.21	1101.40	1134.78
16QAM	7/8	983.00	1092.22	1156.47	1191.52
64QAM	½	842.57	936.19	991.26	1021.30
64QAM	2/3	1123.43	1248.26	1321.68	1361.74
64QAM	¾	1263.86	1404.29	1486.90	1531.95
64QAM	5/6	1404.29	1560.32	1652.11	1702.17
64QAM	7/8	1474.50	1638.34	1734.71	1787.28

25.10 Other ISDB Standards

Apart from ISDB-T, there are some other ARIB standards which are:

- ISDB-S (satellite)
- ISDB-Tsb (terrestrial sound broadcast)
- ISDB-C (cable)
- ISDB-Tmm (terrestrial mobile multi-media).

ISDB-S is more effective than DVB-S by a factor of 1.5 and also uses, among other things, 8PSK in single-carrier modulation.

ISDB-C corresponds to a 6 MHz variant of DVB-C and is ITU-T J83C, to put it precisely. Apart from its bandwidth and the roll-off factor, ITU-T J83C is virtually identical with DVB-C and reference is made here to the corresponding chapter.

ISDB-Tsb and ISDB-Tmm are the narrowband versions of ISDB-T, occupying only 1 to 3 segments. There, too, the more effective MPEG-4 baseband coding is provided.

25.11 ISDB-T measurements

ISDB-T measurements are very similar to DVB-T measurements. But there are different constellation diagrams possible in the different layers or portions. Fig. 25.11. shows the different constellation diagrams in the different layers. In case of differential modulation the MER is about 3 dB lower in comparison to coherent modulation (Fig 25.12. center subchannels).

ISDB-T measurements is

- Constellation analysis (Fig. 25.11.)
- MER measurement (Fig. 25.12. and Fig. 25.13.)

- BER measurement (in all 3 layers)
- IQ impairment measurement
- Impulse response measurement (especially in SFN's)
- MPEG transport stream analysis

For more details please see chapter 21 – DVB-T measurements.

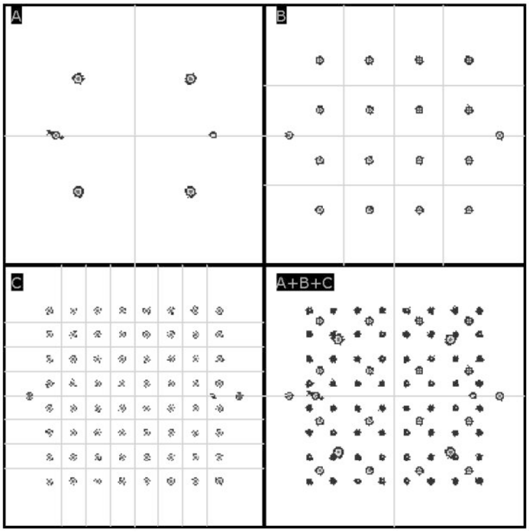


Fig. 25.11. ISDB-T constellation diagrams in the 3 different layers [ETL]

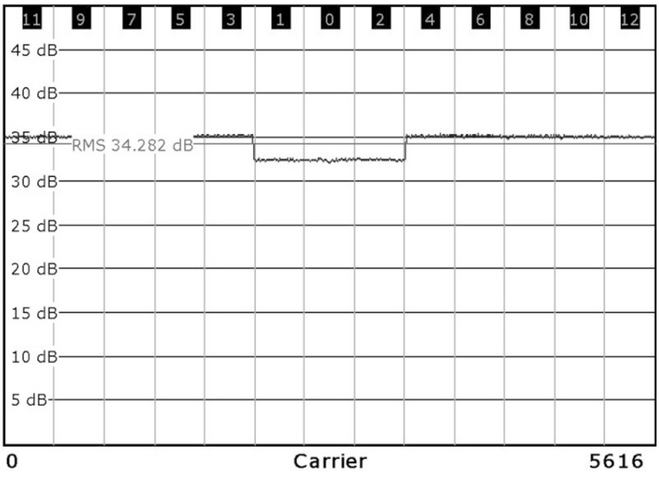


Fig. 25.12. MER(f) measurement in ISDB-T

Pass	Limit <	Results			Unit
		Layer A	Layer B	Layer C	
MER (rms)	24.0	32.3	35.0	35.0	dB
MER (Peak)	10.0	21.5	23.2	23.2	dB
MER (total,rms)	24.0	34.6			dB
MER (total,peak)	10.0	18.1			dB
MER (TMCC,rms)	24.0	36.0			dB
MER (AC,rms)	24.0	35.7			dB
	Limit <	Results <		Limit	Unit
Carrier Suppression	10.0	-----			dB
Carrier Phase		-----			deg
Amplitude Imbalance	-2.00	-----		2.00	%
Quadrature Error	-2.00	-----		2.00	deg

Fig. 25.13. ISDB-T measurement list [ETL]

25.12 Summary

In addition to the 6 MHz channel normally used in Japan, ISDB-T is also defined for 7 and 8 MHz channels. However, it is doubtful that it will be widely used in 7 MHz and 8 MHz countries because DVB-T/T2 has found wide-spread acceptance, in the meantime.

ISDB-T is certainly the more flexible standard and, because of the possibility of long time interleaving, also the more robust standard in some applications.

By its very nature, ISDB-T has SFN capability, of course, and single frequency networks are also being formed.

Brazil is the first country outside Japan which has decided to adopt ISDB-T. In Brazil, MPEG-4 AVC is used as baseband coding, plus MPEG-4 LC AAC or MPEG-4 HE AAC. The Brazilian terrestrial digital TV standard is called SBTVD, i.e. Sistema Brasileiro de Televisao Digital. Further countries using ISDB-T are Argentina, Chile, Costa Rica and the Philippines.

Bibliography: [ISDB-T], [SFU], [ETL], [BTC]

26 Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB/DAB+

Although DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) was introduced back in the early days of the nineties, well before DVB, it is still relatively unknown to the public in many countries and it is only in a few countries that some measure of success of DAB and DAB+ in the market can be registered. This chapter deals with the principles of the digital sound radio standard DAB/DAB+. DAB+ is an extension to the DAB standard; more efficient MPEG-4 audio encoding and an additional FEC is in use in DAB+. The physical layer DAB+ is still "traditional" DAB.

At first, however, let us consider the history of sound radio. The age of the transmission of audio signals for broadcasting purposes began in the year 1923 with medium-wave broadcasting (AM). In 1948, the first FM transmitter in Europa was taken into operation, developed and manufactured by Rohde&Schwarz. The first FM home receivers were also developed and produced by Rohde&Schwarz. 1983 was the year when everyone took the step from analog audio to digital audio with the introduction of the compact disk, the audio CD. In 1991, digital audio signals intended for the public at large were broadcast for the first time via satellite in Europe, DSR (Digital Satellite Radio). This method, operating without compression, did not last long, however, and was little known in public. 1993 then, ADR (Astra Digital Radio) started operation which is broadcast on subcarriers of the ASTRA satellite system on which analog TV programs are also transmitted. The MUSICAM method, used up to the present for audio compression in MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 layer II and is also used in DAB or, to put it more precisely, was developed for DAB as part of the DAB project, was laid down in 1989. Digital Audio Broadcasting, DAB, was developed at the beginning of the nineties and used the then revolutionary new techniques of MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 audio and the COFDM (Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex) modulation method. In the mid-nineties then the DVB-S, DVB-C and DVB-T standards for digital television were finalized and thus the age of digital television had also begun. Since 2001, there is a further digital sound radio standard DRM (Digital Radio Mondiale), intended for digital short- and medium wave use, which is also based on COFDM but uses MPEG-4 AAC audio coding.

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_26

The first DAB pilot test was carried out in 1991 in Munich. Before the restart with DAB+ after 2011, Germany had a DAB coverage of about 80%, mainly in Band III. There were also some DAB transmitters in L-Band for local programs. In 2019 quite a reasonable number of DAB+ receivers are available in the market and many “FM stations” are on air in DAB+ simulcast (2 to 5 multiplexes with up to more than 40 services). The difference between DAB+ and DAB is only in the data signal not in the RF signal structure. DAB+ is two to three times more efficient than “traditional” DAB. But DAB receivers are not DAB+ compatible.

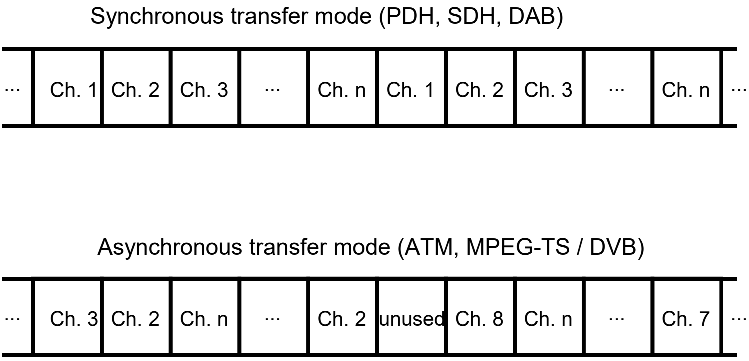


Fig. 26.1. Synchronous and asynchronous transfer mode

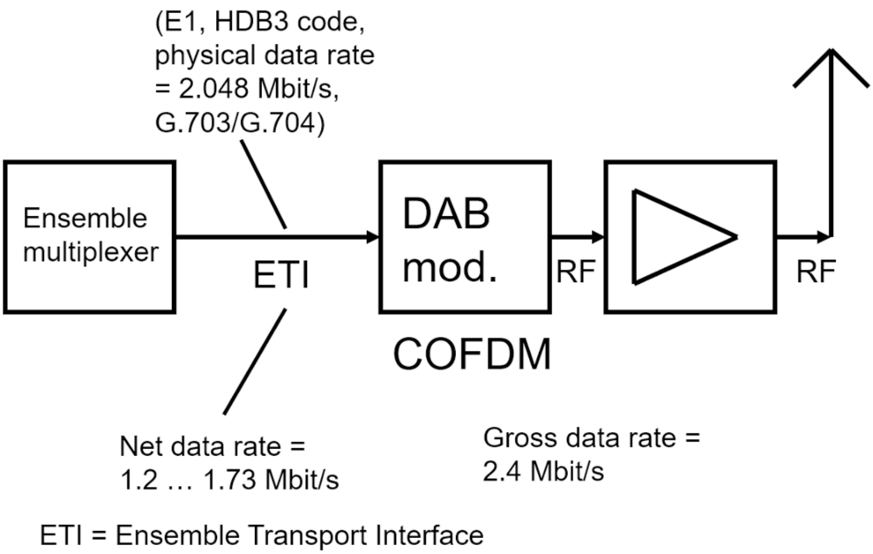


Fig. 26.2. DAB transmission link

26.1 Comparing DAB and DVB

In a comparison of DAB and DVB, the basic characteristics of both methods will first be compared, pointing out properties and differences. In principle, it is possible to transmit data synchronously or asynchronously (Fig. 16.1.). In synchronous transmission, the data rate is constant for each data channel and the time slots of the individual data channels are fixed. In asynchronous transmission, the data rate of the individual data channels can be constant or it can vary. The time slots have no fixed allocation. They are allocated as required and their order in the individual channels can thus be completely random. Examples of synchronous data transmission are PDH (Plesiochronous Digital Hierarchy), SDH (Synchronous Digital Hierarchy) and DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting). Examples of asynchronous data transmission are ATM (Asynchronous Transfer Mode) and the MPEG-2 transport stream/Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB).

DAB is a completely synchronous system, a completely synchronous data stream being produced right back in the playout center, i.e. at the point where the DAB multiplex signal is generated. The data rates of the individual contents are constant and are always a multiple of 8 kbit/s. The time slots in which the contents from the individual sources are transmitted are permanently allocated and vary only when there is a complete change in the multiplex, i.e. in the composition of the data stream. The data signal coming from the multiplexer which is supplied to the DAB modulator and transmitter is called ETI (Ensemble Transport Interface) (Fig. 26.2.). The multiplexed data stream, or multiplex, itself is called ensemble. The ETI signal uses E1 transmission paths (HDB3 code, see Fig. 26.46.) known from telecommunication which have a physical data rate of 2.048 Mbit/s. E1 would correspond to 30 ISDN channels and 2 signalling channels of 64 kbit/s each, also called G.703 and G.704 interface. Physically, these are PDH interfaces but DAB uses a different protocol. Although the physical data rate is 2048 kbit/s, the actual net data rate of the DAB signal transported across it is between (0.8) 1.2 ... 1.73 Mbit/s. The ETI signal is transmitted either without error protection, or with a Reed Solomon error protection code which, however, is removed again at the input of the DAB modulator. The error protection of the DAB system itself is added only in the DAB modulator although this is often wrongly shown to be different in various references. The modulation method used in DAB is COFDM (Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex) and the subcarriers are $\pi/4$-shift DQPSK modulated. After the error protection has been added the gross data rate of the DAB signal is 2.4 Mbit/s. A special feature of DAB consists in that the different contents can be error protected to a different degree (unequal FEC).

MPEG-2, and thus DVB, is a completely asynchronous system.

The MPEG-2 transport stream is a baseband signal forming the input signal to a DVB modulator. The MPEG-2 transport stream is generated in the DVB headend by encoding and multiplexing the individual programs (services) and is then supplied to the modulator via various transmission paths (Fig. 26.3.). In the DVB modulator, it must be decided how, i.e. by which transmission path, the MPEG-2 transport stream is to be emitted: terrestrial (DVB-TT2), by cable (DVB-C) or by satellite (DVB-S/S2). Naturally, the transmission rates and modulation methods differ for the individual transmission methods. In DVB-T, COFDM is used in conjunction with QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM. In DVB-C, it is either 64QAM or 256QAM depending on the type of cable link (coaxial cable or optical fibre). In DVB-S/S2, the modulation method of choice has been QPSK/8PSK because of the poor signal/noise ratio in the channel.

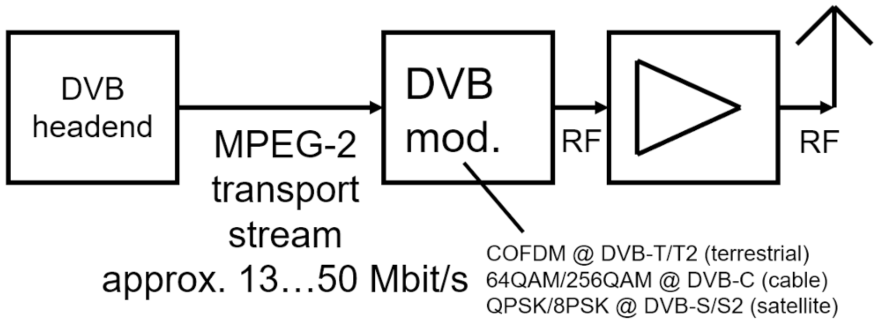


Fig. 26.3. DVB transmission link

In DVB, all contents transmitted carry the same degree of error protection (equal FEC).

As a rule, the data rate in DVB-S is about 38 Mbit/s. It only depends on the symbol rate selected and on the code rate, i.e. the error protection. Using QPSK 2 bits/symbol can be transmitted. The symbol rate is mostly 27.5 Msymbols/s. If 3/4 is selected as code rate, the resultant data rate is 38.01 Mbit/s.

If, e.g., 64QAM (coax networks) is selected in DVB-C, and a symbol rate of 6.9 Msymbols/s, the resultant net data rate is 38.15 Mbit/s.

In DVB-T, the possible data rate is between 4 and about 32 Mbit/s depending on operating mode (type of modulation - QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, error protection, guard interval, bandwidth). The usual data rate is, however, approx. 15 Mbit/s in applications allowing portable reception and approx. 22 Mbit/s in stationary applications with a roof antenna. A DVB-T broadcast network is designed either for portable reception or for roof antenna reception, i.e. if a roof antenna is used in a DVB-T network designed for portable reception, this will not produce an increase in data rate.

The MPEG-2 transport stream is the data signal supplied to the DVB modulators. It consists of packets with a constant length of 188 bytes. The MPEG-2 transport stream represents asynchronous transmission, i.e. the individual contents to be transmitted are keyed into the payload area of the transport stream packets purely randomly as required. The contents contained in the transport stream can have completely different data rates which do not need to be absolutely constant, either. The only rule relating to data rates is that the aggregate data rate provided by the channel must not be exceeded. And, naturally, the data rate of the MPEG-2 transport stream must correspond absolutely to the input data rate of the DVB modulators resulting from the modulation parameters.

Table 26.1. DAB and DVB comparison

	Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB	Digital Video Broadcasting - DVB
Transfer mode	synchronous	asynchronous
Forward error correction (FEC)	unequal	equal
Modulation	COFDM mit π/4-shift DQPSK	single carrier QPSK, 64QAM, 256QAM or COFDM with QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM
Transmission link	terrestrial	satellite, cable, terrestrial

In summary: DAB is a completely synchronous transmission system and DVB is a completely asynchronous one. Remembering this will make it easier to gain a better understanding of the characteristics of both systems

The error protection in DAB is unequal, meaning it can be selected to be different for different contents, whereas it is equal for all contents to be transmitted in DVB and, because of the asynchronous mode, could not even be selected to be different since it is not known what content is being transmitted when.

The DAB modulator demultiplexes the current content in the ETI signal and takes it into consideration. The DVB modulator is not interested in the current content transmitted. In DAB, the modulation method is COFDM with π/4-shift DQPSK. DVB uses single-carrier transmission or COFDM depending on transmission path. DAB is intended for terrestrial applications whereas DVB provides terrestrial, cable and satellite transmission standards. Satellite transmission is provided for in DAB but currently not used.

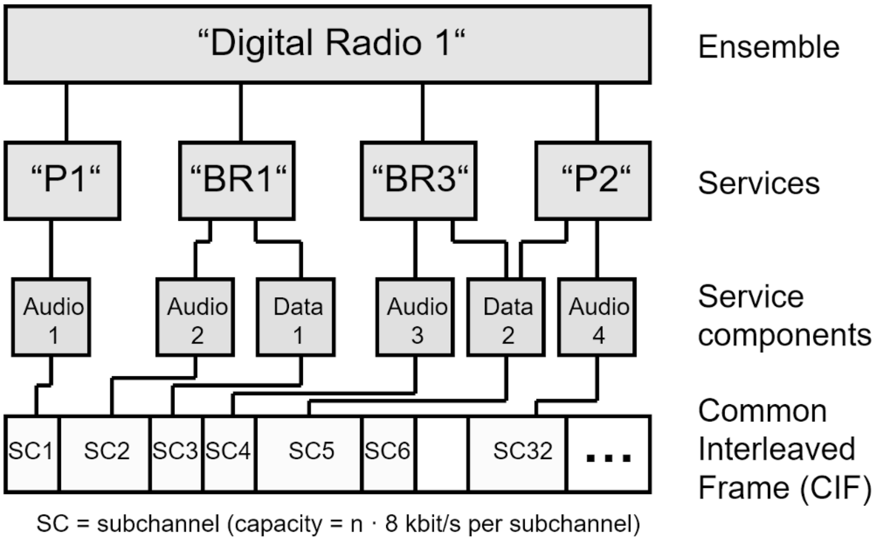


Fig. 26.4. DAB ensemble

26.2 An Overview of DAB

The following sections will provide a brief overview of DAB - Digital Audio Broadcasting. The DAB Standard is the ETSI Standard ETS300401. In the Standard, the data structure, the FEC and the COFDM modulation of the DAB Standard is described. In addition, the ETI (Ensemble Transport Interface) supply signal is described in ETS300799, and in ETS300797 the supply signals for the ensemble multiplexer STI (Service Transport Interface) are described. A further important document is TR101496 which contains guidelines and rules for the implementation and operation of DAB. Furthermore, ETS301234 describes how multimedia objects (data broadcasting) can be transmitted in DAB.

Fig. 26.4. shows an example of the composition of a multiplexed DAB data stream. The term "Ensemble" covers several programs which are

combined to form one data stream. In the present case, the ensemble given the exemplary name "Digital Radio 1" is composed of 4 programs, the so-called services, here having the designations "P1", "BR1", "BR3" and "P2". These services, in turn, can be composed of a number of service components. A service component can be, e.g. an audio stream or a data stream. In the example, the service "P1" contains an audio stream, "Audio1". This audio stream is physically transmitted in subchannel SC1. "BR" is composed of an audio stream "Audio2" and a data stream "Data1" which are broadcast in subchannels SC2 and SC3. Each subchannel has a capacity of n · 8 kbit/s. The transmission in the subchannels is completely synchronous, i.e. the order of the subchannels is always the same and the data rates in the subchannels are always constant. All subchannels together - up to a possible maximum of 64 - result in the so-called Common Interleaved Frame. Service components can be associated with a number of services, e.g. as in the example "Data2".

During their transmission in the DAB system, the different subchannels can be provided with different degrees of error protection (unequal FEC).

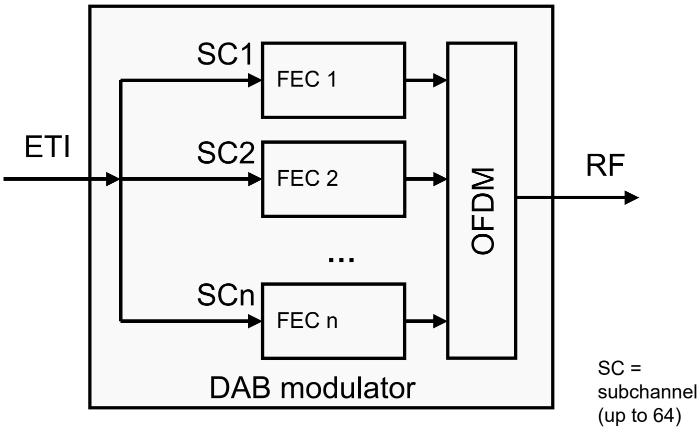


Fig. 26.5. DAB modulator

The data stream generated in the DAB multiplexer is called ETI (Ensemble Transport Interface). It contains all programs and contents to be broadcast later via the DAB transmitter. The ETI signal can be supplied to the modulator from the DAB ensemble multiplex center, e.g. via optical fiber links via existing telecommunication networks or by satellite. A suitable link for this purpose is an E1 link having a data rate of 2.048 Mbit/s.

In the DAB modulator, the COFDM is carried out (Fig. 26.5.). The data stream is first provided with error protection and then COFDM-modulated. After the modulator, the RF signal power is amplified and then radiated via the antenna.

In DAB, all subchannels are error-protected individually and to different degrees. Up to 64 subchannels are possible. The FEC is provided in the DAB modulator. In many block diagrams, FEC is often described in conjunction with the DAB multiplexer which, although it is not wrong in principle, does not correspond to reality. The DAB multiplexer forms the ETI data signal in which the subchannels are transmitted synchronously and unprotected.

The ETI, however, carries the information about how much protection is to be provided for the individual channels. The ETI data stream is then split up in the DAB modulator and each subchannel is then error-protected to a different degree in accordance with the signalling in the ETI. The subchannels provided with FEC are then supplied to the COFDM modulator.

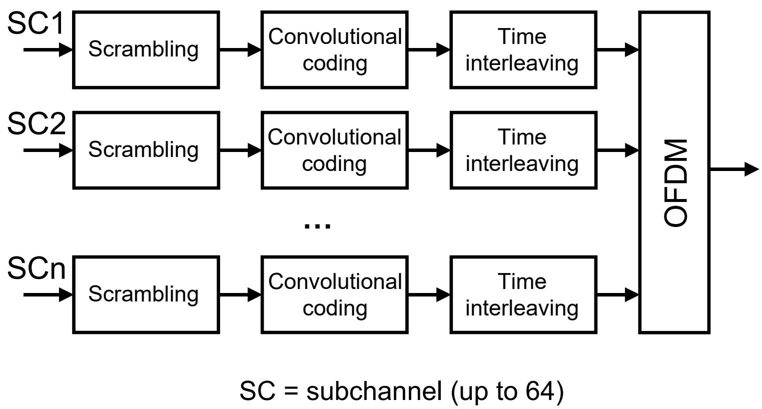


Fig. 26.6. Forward error correction (FEC) in DAB

The error protection in DAB (Fig. 16.6.) is composed of scrambling followed by convolutional coding. In addition, the DAB signal is then subjected to long time interleaving, i.e. the data are interleaved over time so that they are more resistant to block errors during the transmission. Each subchannel can be error-protected to a different degree (unequal forward error correction). The data from all subchannels are then supplied to the COFDM modulator which first carries out frequency interleaving and then modulates them onto a large number of COFDM subcarriers.

There are 4 different selectable modes in DAB. These modes are provided for different applications and frequency bands. Mode I is used in the VHF band and Mode II to IV are used in the L band, depending on frequency and application. The number of carriers is between 192 and 1536 and the bandwidth of the DAB signal is always 1.536 MHz. The difference between the modes is simply the symbol length and the number of subcarriers used.

Mode I has the longest symbol and the most subcarriers and thus the smallest subcarrier spacing. This is followed by Mode IV, Mode II and finally Mode III with the shortest symbol period and the least carriers and thus the largest subcarrier spacing. In principle, however, it holds true that the longer the COFDM symbol, the better the echo tolerance and the smaller the subcarrier spacing, the poorer the suitability for mobile applications.

The modes actually used in practice are Mode I for the VHF band and Mode II for the L band

Table 26.2. DAB modes

Mode	Frequency range	Subcarrier spacing [kHz]	No. of COFDM carriers	Used for	Symbol duration [μs]	Guard interval duration [μs]	Frame length
I	Band III VHF	1	1536	single-frequency network (SFN)	1000	246	96 ms 76 symbols
II	L band (<1.5 GHz)	4	384	multi-frequency network (MFN)	250	62	24 ms 76 symbols
III	L band (<3 GHz)	8	192	satellite	125	31	24 ms 152 symbols
IV	L band (<1.5 GHz)	2	768	small single-frequency network (SFN)	500	123	48 ms 76 symbols

The audio signals in DAB are coded to MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 (Layer II), i.e. compressed from about 1.5 Mbit/s to 64 ... 384 kbit/s. During this process, the audio signal is divided into 24 or 48 ms long sections which are then individually compressed, using a type of perceptual coding in which audio signal components inaudible to the human ear are omitted. These methods are based on the MUSICAM (Masking pattern adapted Universal Subband Integrated Coding And Multiplexing) principle described in ISO/IEC Standards 11172-3 (MPEG-1) and 13818-3 (MPEG-2) and actually developed for DAB as part of the DAB project. In MPEG-1 and -2 it is possible to transmit audio in mono, stereo, dual sound and joint stereo modes. The frame length is 24 ms in MPEG-1 and 48 ms in MPEG-2. These frame lengths are also found in the DAB Standard and also affect the length of the COFDM frames. The same applies as before: DAB is a completely synchronous transmission system where all processes are synchronized with one another.

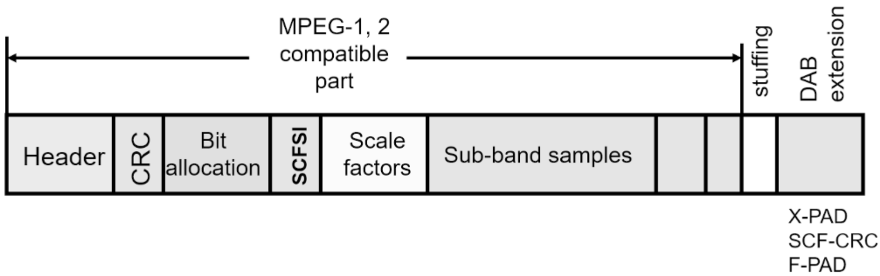


Fig. 26.7. DAB audio frame

Fig. 26.7. shows the structure of a DAB audio frame. An MPEG-1-compatible frame has a length of 24 ms. The frame begins with a header containing 32 bits of system information. The header is protected by a 16 bit long CRC checksum. This is followed by the block with the bit allocation in the individual sub-bands, followed by the scale factors and sub-band samples. In addition, ancillary data can be optionally transmitted. The sampling rate of the audio signal is 48 kHz in MPEG-1 and thus does not correspond to the 44.1 kHz of the audio CD. The data rates are between 32 and 192 kbit/s for a single channel or between 64 and 384 kbit/s for stereo, joint stereo or dual sound. The data rates are multiples of 8 kbit/s. In MPEG-2, the MPEG-1 frame is supplemented by an MPEG-2 extension. In MPEG-2 Layer II, the frame length is 48 ms and the sampling rate of the audio signal is 24 kHz.

This audio frame structure of the MPEG-1 and -2 Standards is repeated in DAB. The MPEG-1- and MPEG-2-compatible part is supplemented by a DAB extension in which program-associated data (PAD) are transmitted. Between these, stuffing bytes (padding) are used, if necessary. In the PAD, a distinction is made between the extended PAD "X-PAD" and the fixed PAD "F-PAD". Among other things, the PAD include an identifier for music/voice, program-related text and additional error protection.

“Traditional” DAB audio data rates normally used in practice were:

- Germany (before DAB+):
  mostly 192 kbit/s, PL3
  60 kbit/s or 192 kbit/s in some cases, PL4 (one additional per gram)
- UK:
  256 kbit/s, classical music
  128 kbit/s, popular music,
  64 kbit/s, voice

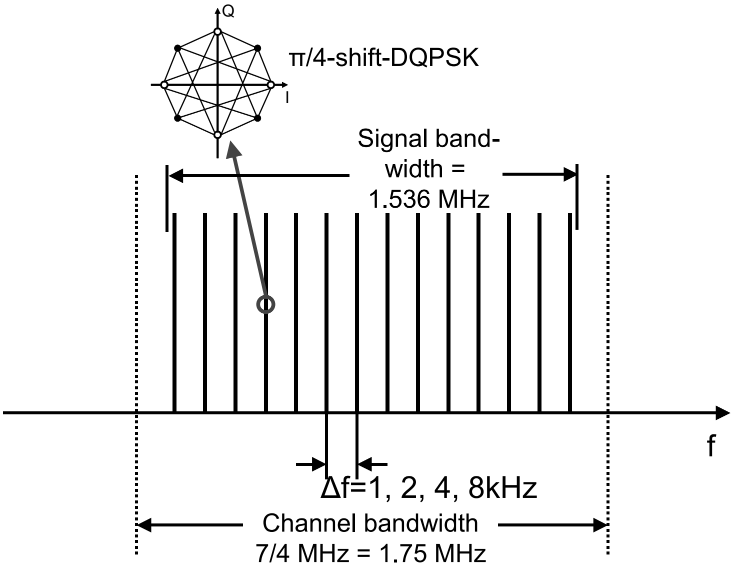


Fig. 26.8. DAB COFDM channel

26.3 The Physical Layer of DAB

In the section following, the implementation of COFDM in Digital Audio Broadcasting DAB will be discussed in detail. The main item of concern are the DAB details at the modulation end. COFDM is a multicarrier transmission method in which, in the case of DAB, between 192 and 1536 carriers are combined to form one symbol. Due to DQPSK, each carrier can carry 2 bits in DAB. A symbol is the superposition of all these individual carriers. A guard interval with a length of about 1/4 of the symbol length is added to the symbol which has a length of between 125 µs and 1 ms. In the guard interval, the end of the following symbol is repeated where echoes due to multipath reception can "wear themselves down". This prevents intersymbol interference as long as a maximum echo interval is not exceeded.

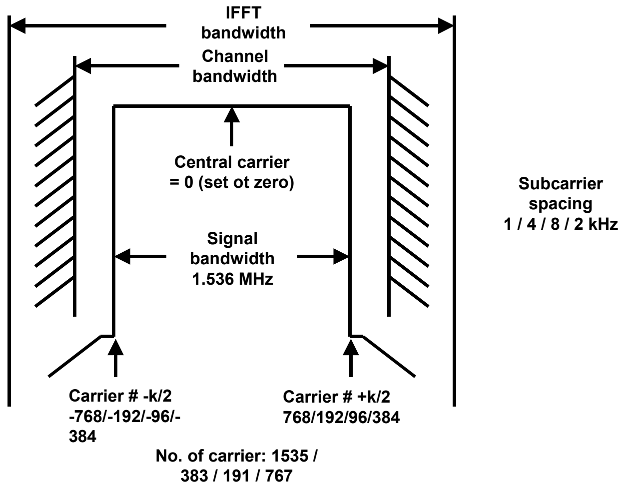


Fig. 26.9. DAB spectrum

Instead of one carrier, COFDM involves hundreds to thousands of sub-carriers in one channel (Fig. 26.8.). The carriers are equidistant from one another. All carriers in DAB are π/4-shift DQPSK (Differential Quadrature Phase Shift Keying) modulated. The bandwidth of a DAB signal is 1.536 MHz, the channel bandwidth available, e.g. in VHF Band 12 (223 ... 230 MHz) is 1.75 MHz which corresponds to exactly 1/4 of a 7 MHz channel.

Firstly, however, let us turn to the principle of differential QPSK: The vector can take up four positions, which are 45, 135, 225 and 315 degrees. However, the vector is not mapped in absolute values but differentially. I.e., the information is contained in the difference between one symbol and the next. The advantage of this type of modulation lies in the fact that no channel correction is necessary. It is also irrelevant how the receiver is locked in phase, the decoding will always operate correctly. There is also a disadvantage, however: the arrangement requires a signal to noise ratio which is better by about 3 dB than in the case of absolute mapping (coherent modulation) since in the case of an errored symbol, the difference with respect to the preceding symbol and the following symbol is false and will lead to bit errors. Any interference event will then cause 2 bit errors.

In reality, however, DAB does not use DQPSK but π/4-shift DQPSK, which will be discussed in detail later. Many references wrongly mention only DQPSK in DAB. If the DAB standard is analyzed in detail, however, and especially the COFDM frame structure, this special type of DQPSK is encountered automatically via the phase reference symbol (TFPR).

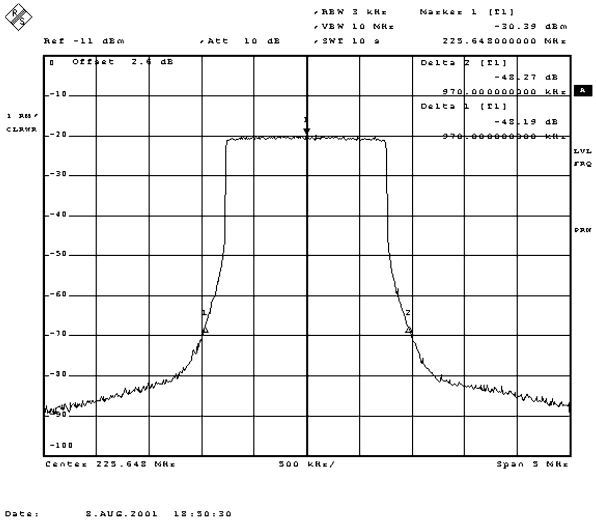


Fig. 26.10. Real DAB spectrum after the mask filter

COFDM signals are generated with the aid of an Inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT) (s. COFDM chapter) which requires a number of carriers corresponding to a power of two. In the case of DAB, either a 2048-point IFFT, a 512-point IFFT, a 256-point IFFT or a 1024-point IFFT is performed. The cumulative IFFT bandwidth of all these carriers is greater than the channel bandwidth but the edge carriers are not used and are set to zero (guard band), making the actual bandwidth of DAB 1.536 MHz. The channel bandwidth is 1.75 MHz. The subcarrier spacing is 1, 4, 8 or 2 kHz depending on DAB mode (Mode I, II, II or IV) (see Fig. 26.8. and 26.9.).

Fig. 26.10. shows a real DAB spectrum as it would be measured with a spectrum analyzer at the transmitter output after the mask filter. The width of the spectrum is 1.536 MHz. There are also signal components which extend into the adjacent channels, the relevant terms being shoulders and shoulder attenuation. The shoulders are lowered by using mask filters.

In DAB, a COFDM frame (Fig. 26.11.) consists of 77 COFDM symbols. The length of a COFDM symbol depends on the DAB mode and is between 125 μs and 1 ms, to which the guard interval is added which is about 1/4 of the symbol length. The total length of a symbol is thus between about 156 µs and 1.246 ms. Symbol No. 0 is the so-called null symbol. During this time, the RF carrier is completely gated off. The null symbol starts the DAB frame and is followed by the time frequency phase reference (TFPR) used for frequency and phase synchronisation in the receiver. It does not contain any data.

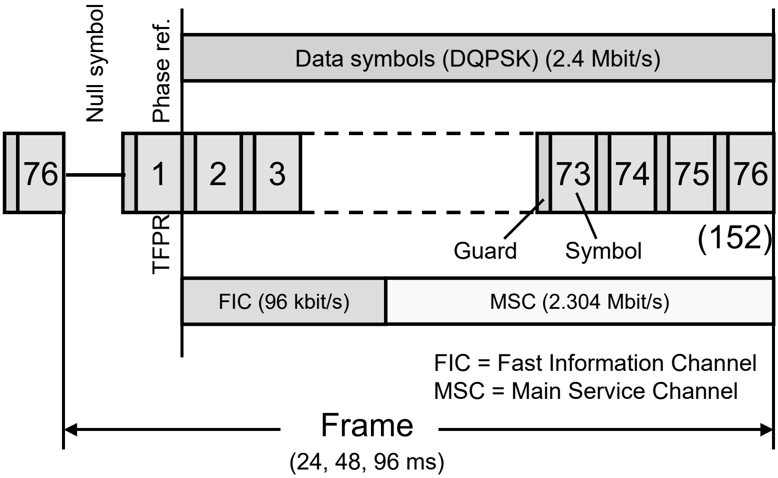


Fig. 26.11. DAB frame

All COFDM carriers are set to defined amplitude and phase values in the phase reference symbol. The actual data transmission starts with the second symbol. In contrast to DVB, the data stream in DAB is completely synchronous with the COFDM frame. In the first symbols of the DAB frame, the Fast Information Channel (FIC) is transmitted, the length of which is dependent on the DAB mode. The data rate of the FIC is 96 kbit/s. In the FIC, important information for the DAB receiver is transmitted. Following the FIC, the transmission of the Main Service Channel (MSC) starts in which the actual payload data are found. The data rate of the MSC is a constant 2.304 Mbit/s and is mode-independent. Both FIC and MSC additionally contain FEC gated in by the DAB COFDM modulator. The FEC in DAB is very flexible and can be configured differently for the various subchannels, resulting in net data rates of (0.8) 1.2 to 1.73 Mbit/s for the actual payload (audio and data). The type of modulation used in DAB is differential QPSK. The aggregate gross data rate of FIC and MSC is 2.4 Mbit/s. The length of a DAB frame is between 24 and 96 ms (mode-dependently).

In the further description, the details of the COFDM implementation in DAB will be discussed in greater detail. In DAB, a COFDM frame starts with a null symbol. All carriers are simply set to zero in this symbol. However, Fig. 26.12. only shows a single carrier over a number of symbols. The first symbol shown at the left-hand edge of the picture is the null symbol where the vector has the amplitude zero. This is followed by the phase reference symbol to which the phase of the first data symbol (symbol no. 2) i referred. The difference between the phase reference symbol and symbol no. 2 and, continuing from there, the difference between two adjacent symbols provides the coded bits. I.e., the information is contained in the phase change.

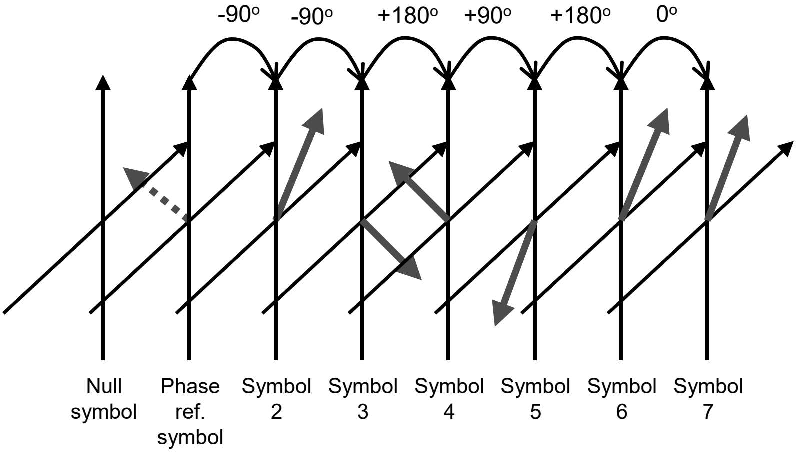


Fig. 26.12. DQPSK sequence with null symbol and phase reference symbol

The principle shown in Fig. 26.12. does still not correspond to the precise reality in DAB which, however, we are approaching step by step.

Fig. 26.12. shows the mapping and the state transitions in the case of simple QPSK or simple DQPSK. It can be seen clearly that phase shifts of +/-90 degrees and +/-180 degrees are possible. In the case of +/-180 degree phase shifts, however, the voltage curve passes through zero which leads to the envelope curve being pinched in. In single carrier methods it is usual, therefore, to carry out so-called π/4-shift DQPSK instead of DQPSK, thus avoiding this problem. In this type of modulation, the carrier phase is shifted by 45 degrees from phase to phase, i.e. by π/4. The receiver is informed about this and cancels out this process. An example of π/4-shift DQPSK is the TETRA mobile radio standard. In DAB, too, this modula-

tion method was adopted, but in this case in conjunction with the COFDM multicarrier method.

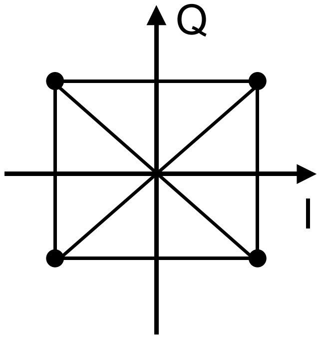


Fig. 26.13. Mapping of an "normal" QPSK or a "normal" DQPSK, with state transitions which also pass trough the zero point

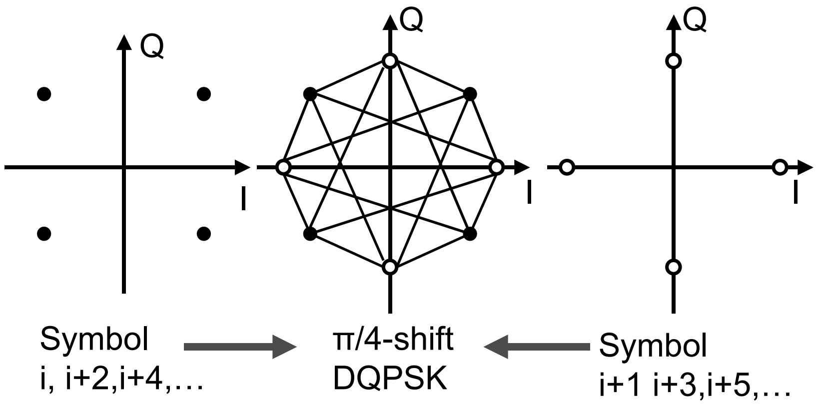


Fig. 26.14. Transition from DQPSK to π/4-shift DQPSK

Considering now the transition from DQPSK to π/4-shift DQPSK (Fig. 26.14.). On the left, the constellation pattern of simple QPSK is shown. On the right, QPSK rotated by 45 degrees, i.e. by π/4, is shown. π/4-shift DQPSK is composed of both. The carrier phase is shifted on by 45 degrees from symbol to symbol. If only 2 bits per vector transition are to be represented, the 180-degree phase shifts can be avoided. It can be shown that phase shifts of +/-45 degrees (+/-π/4) and +/-135 degrees (+/-3/4π) are sufficient for transmitting 2 bits per symbol difference by differential mapping. The constellation pattern of π/4-shift DQPSK (Fig. 26.14., center) shows the state transitions used. It can be seen that there is no 180-degree shift.

In DAB, π/4-shift DQPSK is used in conjunction with COFDM. The COFDM frame starts with the null symbol in DAB. During this time, all carriers are set to zero, i.e. u(t) = 0 for the period of a COFDM symbol. This is followed by the phase reference symbol, or more precisely by the time frequency phase reference (TFPR) symbol where all carriers are mapped onto n·90 degrees corresponding to the so-called CAZAC (Constant Amplitude Zero Autocorrelation) sequence. This means that the carriers are mapped onto the I or Q axis differently for each carrier according to a particular pattern, i.e. assume the phase space of 0, 90, 180, 270 degrees. The phase reference symbol is the reference for the π/4-shift DQPSK of the first data symbol, i.e. symbol no. 2. The carriers in symbol No. 2 thus accupy the phase space of n·45 degrees. Symbol no. 3 gets its phase reference from symbol no. 2 and occupies the phase space of n·90 degrees etc. The same applies to all other carriers.

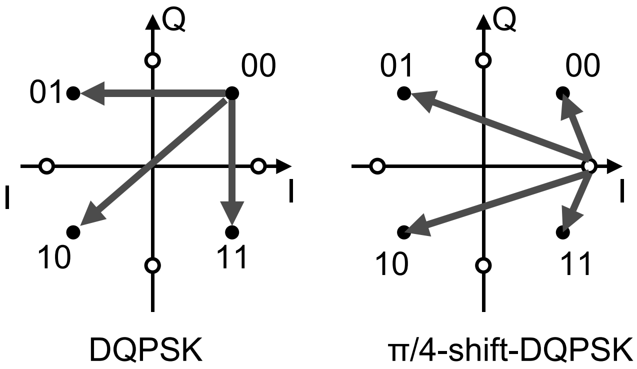


Fig. 26.15. Constellation pattern of DQPSK compared with π/4-shift DQPSK

Fig. 26.15. shows the comparison of a DQPSK with a π/4-shift DQPSK. The selected mapping rule has been selected arbitrarily here and could easily be selected differently.

If it is intended to transmit the bit combination 00 by using the DQPSK in the example, the phase angle will not change. Bit combination 01 is signalled by a +45 degrees phase shift, bit combination 11 corresponds to a –45 degrees phase shift. A 10, in turn, corresponds to 180 degrees phase shift.

In the right-hand drawing of Fig. 26.15., the state transitions of a π/4-shift DQPSK are shown with phase shifts of +/-45 degrees and +/-135 degrees. The carrier never dwells on a constant phase, neither are there any 180-degree phase shifts.

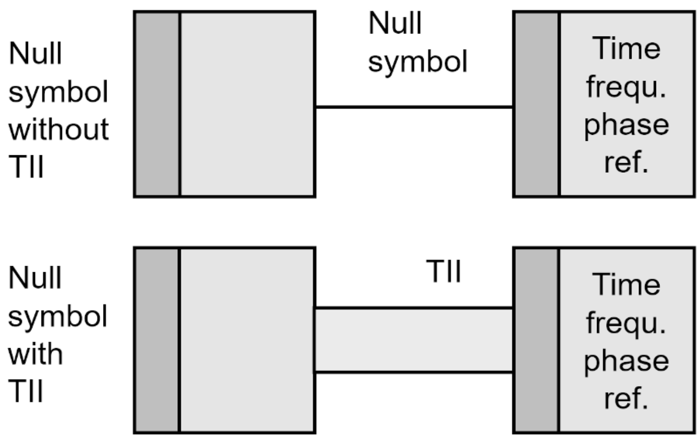


Fig. 26.16. Null symbol with and without TII

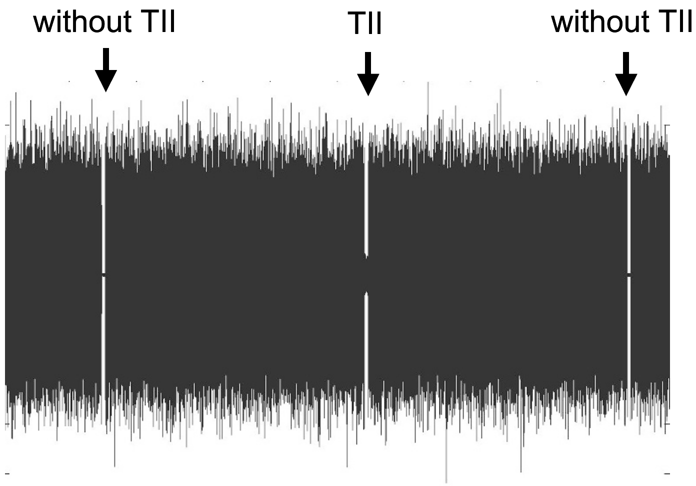


Fig. 26.17. Oscillogram of a DAB frame with null symbols (only each second null symbol includes TII = Transmitter Indentification Information)

The null symbol is the very first symbol of a DAB frame, called symbol no. 0 in numerical order. During this time, the amplitude of the COFDM signal is zero. The length of a null symbol corresponds approximately to the length of a normal symbol plus guard interval. In reality, however, it is slightly longer because it is used for adjusting the DAB frame length to exactly 14, 48 or 96 ms to match the frame length of the MPEG-1 or –2 audio layer II. The null symbol marks the beginning of a DAB COFDM frame. It is the first symbol of this frame and can be easily recognized since all carriers are zeroed during this time (Fig. 26.16., Fig. 26.17., Fig. 26.19. and Fig. 26.20.). It is thus used for roughly synchronizing the receiver timing. During the null symbol, a transmitter ID, a so-called TII (transmitter identification information) (Fig. 26.16. and Fig. 26.17.), can also be transmitted. In the case of a TII, certain carrier pairs in the null symbol are set and can be used for signalling the transmitter ID (Fig. 26.18.).

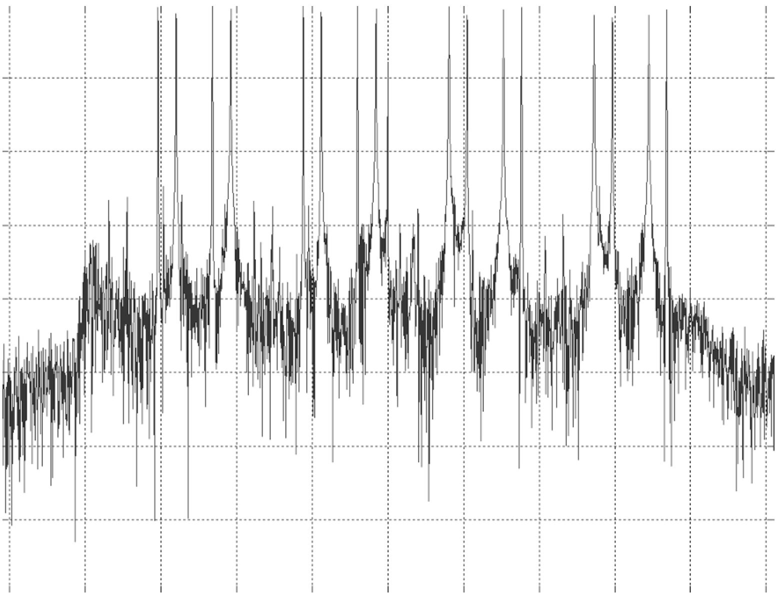


Fig. 26.18. FFT of a null symbol with TII; carrier pairs are set for signalling the TII Main ID and TII Sub-ID

The frame lengths, the symbol lengths and thus also the zero symbol lengths depend on the DAB mode and are listed in Table 26.2.

The phase reference symbol or TFPR (Time Frequency Phase Reference) symbol is the symbol following directly after the null symbol. Within this symbol, all carriers are set to certain fixed phase positions according to the CAZAC (Constant Amplitude Zero Autocorrelation) sequence. This symbol is used for receiver AFC (automatic frequency control), on the one hand, and, on the other hand as starting phase reference for the π/4-shift DQPSK.

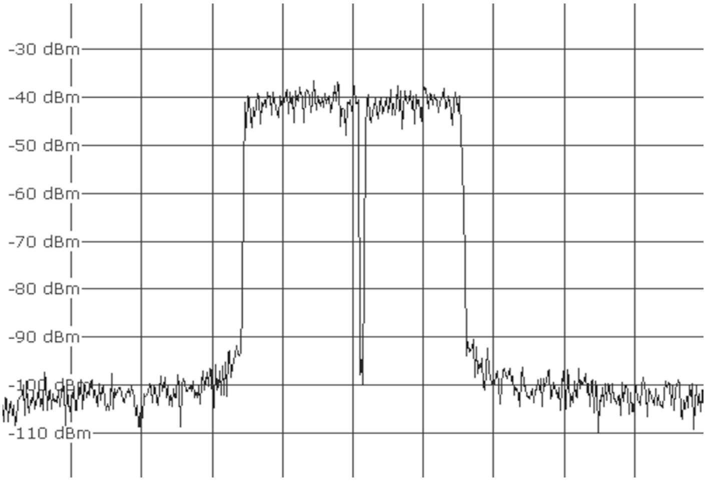


Fig. 26.19. Spectrum of DAB signal with the null symbol running through

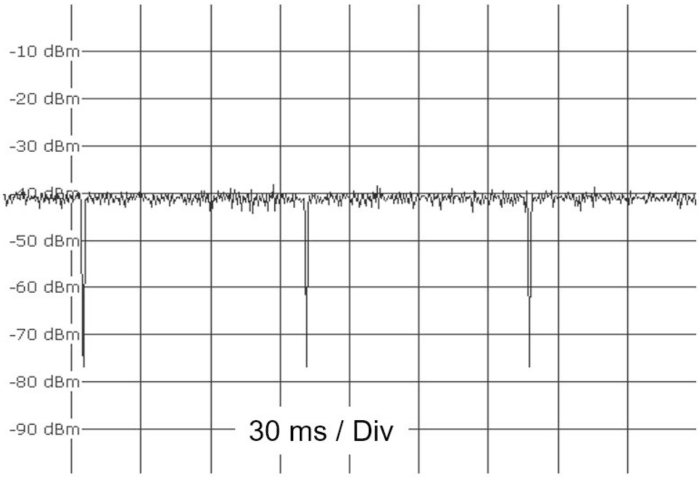


Fig. 26.20. Spectrum of a DAB signal with zero span; the DAB frame with the null symbol can easily be seen (Mode I)

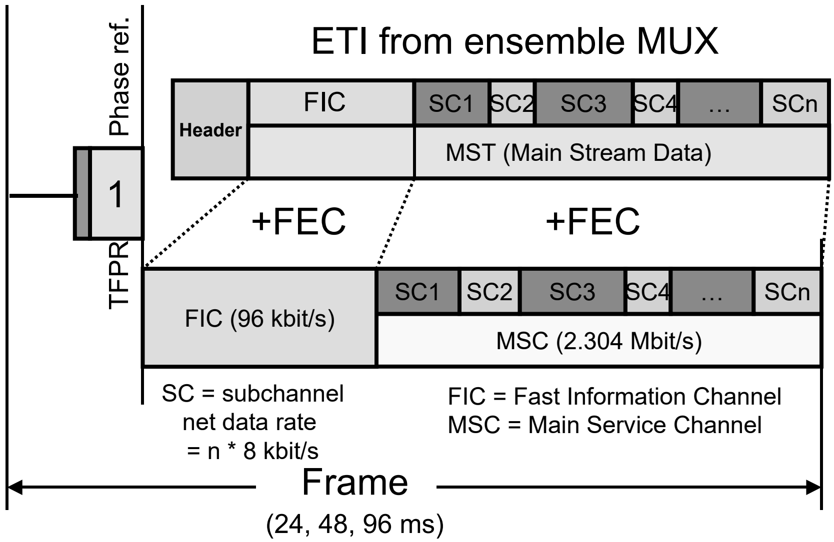


Fig. 26.21. DAB frame

The receiver can also use this symbol for calculating the impulse response of the channel in order to carry out accurate time synchronisation, among other things for positioning the FFT sampling window in the receiver. The impulse response allows the individual echo paths to be identified. During the TFPR symbol, the carriers are set to 0, 90, 180 or 270 degrees, differently for each carrier. The relevant rule is defined in tables in the standard (CAZAC Sequence).

Returning now to the DAB data signal, the gross data rate of a DAB channel is 2.4 Mbit/s. Subtracting the FIC (Fast Information Channel) which is used for receiver configuration, and the error protection (convolutional coding), a net data rate of (0.8) 1.2 … 1.73 Mbit/s is obtained. In contrast to DVB, DAB operates completely synchronously. Whereas in DVB-T, no COFDM frame structure can be recognized in the data signal, the MPEG-2 transport stream, the DAB data signal also consists of frames. A DAB COFDM frame (Fig. 26.21.) begins with a null symbol.

During this time, the RF signal is zeroed. This is followed by the reference symbol. There is no data transmission during the time of the null symbol and the reference symbol. Data transmission starts with COFDM symbol no. 2 with the transmission of the FIC (Fast Information Channel), followed by the MSC, the Main Service Channel. The FIC and MSC already contain error protection (FEC) inserted by the modulator. The error protection used in the FIC is equal and that used in the MSC is unequal. Equal error protection means that all data are provided with equal error protection, unequal error protection means that more important data are protected better than unimportant ones. The data rate of the FIC is 96 kbit/s, that of the MSC is 2.304 Mbit/s. Together, a gross data rate of 2.4 Mbit/s is obtained. A DAB frame is 77 COFDM symbols long in mode I, II, IV and 153 COFDM symbols long in mode III. The frame consists of 1536·2·76 bits = 233472 bits in DAB mode I, of 384·2·76 bits = 58638 bits in mode II, 152·2·151 bits = 57984 bits in mode III and 768·76 bits = 116736 bits in mode IV.

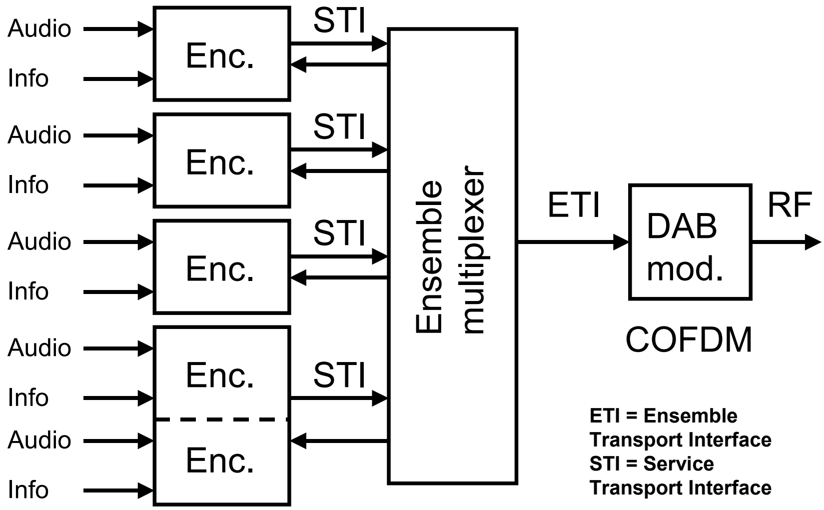


Fig. 26.22. DAB feed via ETI

The DAB data are fed from the ensemble multiplexer to the DAB modulator and transmitter via a data signal called ETI (Ensemble Transport Interface) (Fig. 27.22.). The data rate of the ETI signal is lower than that of the DAB frame since it does not yet contain error protection. Error protection is only added in the modulator (convolutional coding and interleaving). However, the ETI signal already contains the frame structure of DAB (Fig. 26.21.). An ETI frame starts with a header. This is followed by the data of the Fast Information Channel (FIC). After that comes the mainstream (MST). The mainstream is sub divided into subchannels. Up to 64 subchannels are possible. The information about the structure of the mainstream and the error protection to be added in the modulator is found in the Fast Information Channel (FIC). The FIC is intended for automatic configuration of the receiver.

The modulator obtains its information for the composition and configuration of the multiplexed data stream from the ETI header however.

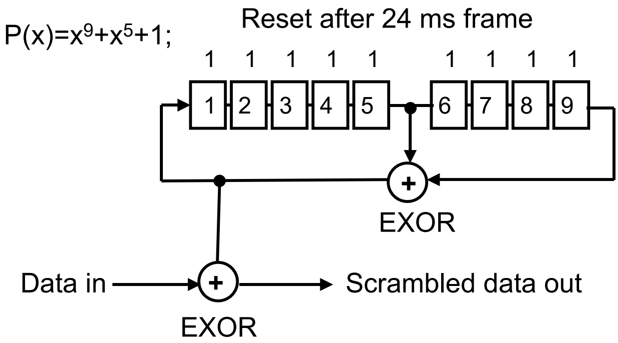


Fig. 26.23. Data scrambling

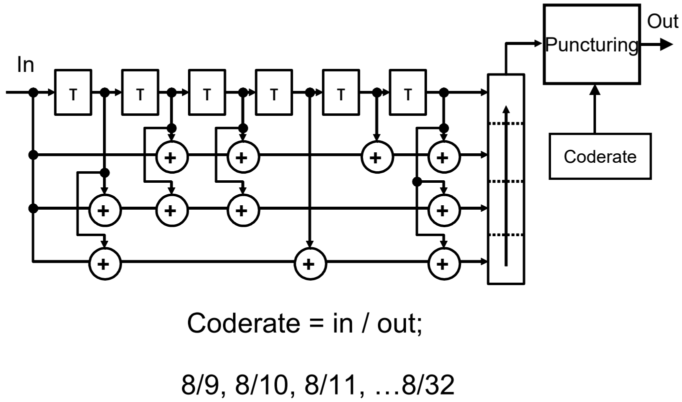


Fig. 26.24. DAB convolutional coding with puncturing

26.4 DAB – Forward Error Correction

In this section, error protection, the Forward Error Correction (FEC) used in DAB will be discussed in greater detail.

In DAB, all subchannels are error protected individually and to different degrees (Fig. 26.5. and 26.6.). Up to 64 subchannels are possible. Error protection (FEC) is carried out in the DAB modulator.

Before the data stream is provided with error protection, it is scrambled (Fig. 26.23.). This is done by mixing with a pseudo random binary sequence (PRBS). The PRBS is generated with the aid of a shift register with feedback. The data stream is then mixed with this PRBS by using an exclusive-OR gate. This breaks up long sequences of ones and zeroes which maybe present in the data stream. This is called energy dispersal. In single-carrier methods, energy dispersal is required for preventing the carrier vector from staying at constant positions. This would lead to discrete spectral lines. But error protection, too, only operates correctly if there is movement in the data signal. This is the reason why this scrambling is carried out at the beginning of the FEC also in the COFDM method. Every 24 ms, the shift register arrangement is loaded with all ones and thus reset.

Such an arrangement is also found in the receiver and must be synchronised with the transmitter. Mixing again with the same PRBS in the receiver restores the original data stream.

This is followed by the convolutional coding. The convolutional coder used in DAB (followed by puncturing) is shown in Fig. 26.24. The data signal passes through a 6-stage shift register. In parallel to this, it is exclusive-OR-ed with the information stored in the shift registers at different delay times in three branches. The shift register content delayed by six clock cycles and the three data signals manipulated by EXOR operations are serially combined to form a new data stream now having four times the data rate of the input data rate.

This is called ¼ code rate. The code rate is the ratio of input data rate to output data rate.

After the convolutional coding, the data stream had been expanded by a factor of four. However, the output data stream now carries 300% overhead, i.e. error protection. This lowers the available net data rate. This overhead, and thus the error protection, can be controlled in the puncturing unit. The data rate can be lowered again by selectively omitting bits. Omitting, i.e. puncturing, is done in accordance with a scheme known to the transmitter and the receiver: a puncturing scheme. The code rate describes the puncturing and thus provides a measure for the error protection. The code rate is simply calculated from the ratio of input data rate to output data rate. In DAB, it can be varied between 8/9, 8/10, 8/11…8/32. 8/32 provides the best error protection at the lowest net data rate, 8/9 provides the lowest error protection at the highest net data rate. Various data contents are protected to a different degree in DAB. Frequently, however, burst errors occur during a transmission. If the burst errors last longer, the error protection will fail. For this reason, the data are interleaved in a further operating step, i.e. distributed over a certain period of time. Long interleaving over 384 ms makes the system very robust and suitable for mobile use. During the de-interleaving at the receiving end, any burst errors which maybe present are then broken up and distributed more widely in the data stream. It is now easier to repair these burst errors, which have become single errors, and this without any additional data overhead. In DAB there are two types of error protection being used, namely equal error protection and unequal error protection.

Equal error protection means that all components are provided with the same FEC overhead. This applies to the Fast Information Channel (FIC) and to the case of pure data transmission.

Audio contents, i.e. the components of an MPEG-1 or -2 audio frame carry unequal protection. Some components in the audio frame are more important because bit errors would cause greater disruption there and these parts are protected more therefore. These different components in the audio frame are provided with different code rates.

In many transmission methods, constant equal error protection is used. An example of this is DVB. In DAB, only parts of the information to be transmitted are provided with equal error protection. This includes the following data: the FIC is protected equally with a mean code rate of 1/3. The data of the packet mode can be provided with a code rate of 2/8, 3/8, 4/8 or 6/8.

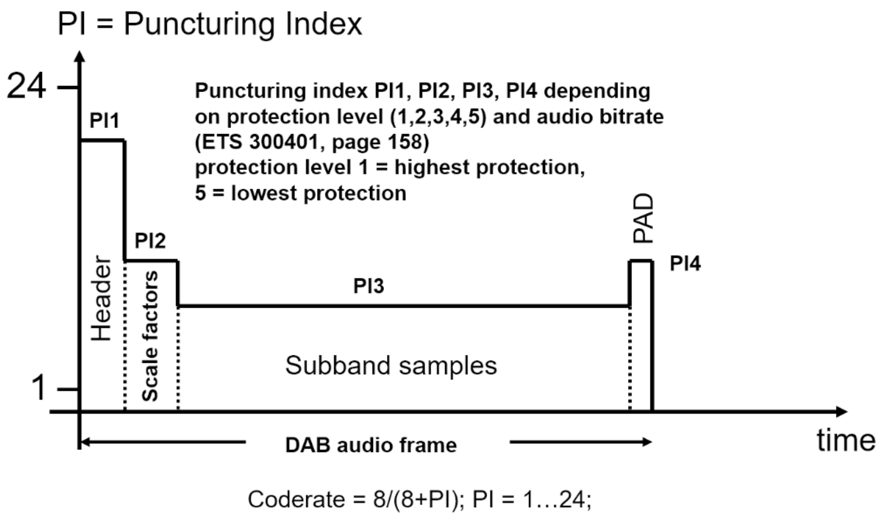


Fig. 26.25. Unequal forward error correction of a DAB audio frame

The MPEG audio packets are protected with unequal error protection which is also controllable in DAB. Some components of the MPEG audio packet are more sensitive to bit errors than other ones.

The components in the DAB audio frame which are provided with different error protection are:

- Header
- Scale factors
- Subband samples
- Program-associated data (PAD)

The header must be protected particularly well. If errors occur in the header, this will lead to serious synchronization problems. The scale factors must also be well protected since bit errors in this area would make for very unpleasant listening. The subband samples are less sensitive and their error protection is correspondingly lower.

Fig. 26.25. shows an example of the unequal error protection within a DAB audio frame. The puncturing index describes the quality of the error protection. From the puncturing index, the code rate in the relevant section can be easily calculated using the following formula:

code_rate = 8/(8+PI);

where PI = 1 … 24, the puncturing index.

The puncturing index, in turn, is obtained from the protection level, which is in the range 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5, and the audio bit rate. Table 26.3. lists the mean code rates as a function of protection level and the audio bit rates. PL1 offers the highest error protection and PL5 offers the lowest error protection.

Table 26.3. DAB protection levels and mean code rates

Audio bitrate [kbit/s]	Mean code rate protection level 1	Mean code rate protection level 2	Mean code rate protection level 3	Mean code rate protection level 4	Mean code rate protection level 5
32	0.34	0.41	0.50	0.57	0.75
48	0.35	0.43	0.51	0.62	0.75
56	X	0.40	0.50	0.60	0.72
64	0.34	0.41	0.50	0.57	0.75
80	0.36	0.43	0.52	0.58	0.75
96	0.35	0.43	0.51	0.62	0.75

112	X	0.40	0.50	0.60	0.72
128	0.34	0.41	0.50	0.57	0.75
160	0.36	0.43	0.52	0.58	0.75
192	0.35	0.43	0.51	0.62	0.75
224	0.36	0.40	0.50	0.60	0.72
256	0.34	0.41	0.50	0.57	0.75
320	X	0.43	X	0.58	0.75
384	0.35	X	0.51	X	0.75

Table 26.4. shows the minimum signal/noise ratio SNR needed and the number of programs which can be accommodated in a multiplexed DAB data stream on the basis of a data rate of 192 kbit/s per program, in dependence on the protection level. If, e.g. PL3 is used, 6 programs of 196 kbit/s each can be accommodated in a multiplexed DAB data stream and the minimum signal/noise ratio then needed is 11 dB. The gross data rate of the DAB signal (including error protection) is 2.4 Mbit/s and the net data rate is between (0.8) 1.2 and 1.7 Mbit/s depending on the error protection selected.

Table 26.4. DAB channel capacity and minimum SNR

Protection level (FEC)	No. of programs at 196 kbit/s	SNR [dB]
PL1 (highest)	4	7.4
PL2	5	9.0
PL3	6	11.0
PL4	7	12.7
PL5 (lowest)	8	16.5

Table 26.5. DAB parameters and quality

Program type	Format	Quality	Sampling rate [kHz]	Protection level	Bitrate [kbit/s]
music/voice	mono	broadcast	48	PL2 oder 3	112...160
music/voice	2-channel stereo	broadcast	48	PL2 oder 3	128...224
music/voice	multichannel	broadcast	48	PL2 oder 3	384...640
voice	mono	acceptable	24 oder 48	PL3	64...112
news	mono	intelligible	24 oder 48	PL4	32 or 64
data	--	--		PL4	32 or 64

The unequal error protection in DAB has the effect that the DAB receivability does not abruptly break off when the signal drops below a certain minimum SNR ratio. At first, audible disturbances arise and receivability ceases only about 2 dB later. Table 26.5. shows frequently selected protection levels and audio rates in DAB [HOEG_LAUTERBACH].

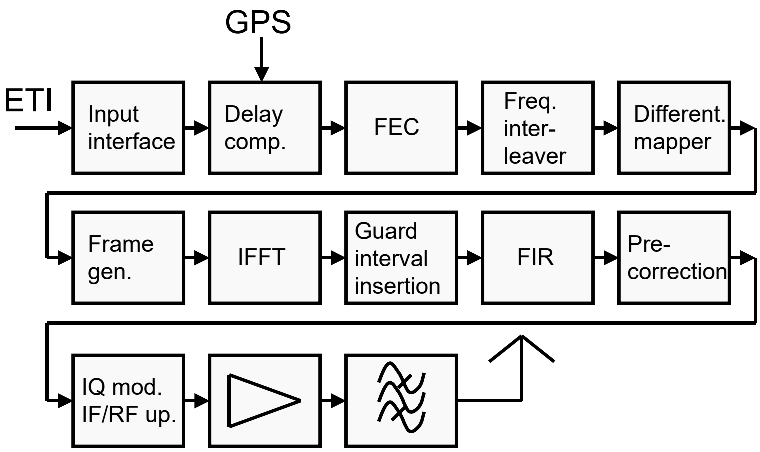


Fig. 26.26. Block diagram of a DAB modulator and transmitter

26.5 DAB Modulator and Transmitter

Let us now consider the overall block diagram of a DAB modulator (Fig. 26.26.) and transmitter. The ETI (Ensemble Transport Interface) is present at the input interface where the modulator synchronizes itself to the ETI signal. In the case of a single-frequency network, delay compensation is carried out in the modulator controlled via the TIST (Time Stamp) in the ETI signal. This is followed by the error protection (FEC) which is different for each signal content.

The error-protected data stream is then frequency interleaved, i.e. distributed. Each COFDM carrier is assigned a part of the data stream which is always 2 bits per carrier in DAB. In the differential mapper the real-and imaginary-part table is then formed, i.e. the current vector position is determined for each carrier. Following this the DAB frame with null symbol, TFPR symbol and data symbols is formed and the completed real-and imaginary-part tables are then supplied to the IFFT, the Inverse Fast Fourier Transform. After that, we are back in the time domain where the guard interval is added to the symbol by repeating the end of the symbol following. After FIR filtering, pre-correction is carried out in the power transmitter for compensating for the non-linearities of amount and phase of the amplifier characteristic. The IQ modulator following is then usually the IF/RF up converter at the same time. Today, direct modulation is normally used, i.e. direct conversion from baseband up into RF. This is followed by power amplification in transistor output stages. The remaining non-linearities and the necessary clipping of voltage peaks to about 13 dB result in the so-called shoulders of the DAB signal. These are out-off-band components which would interfere with the adjacent channels.

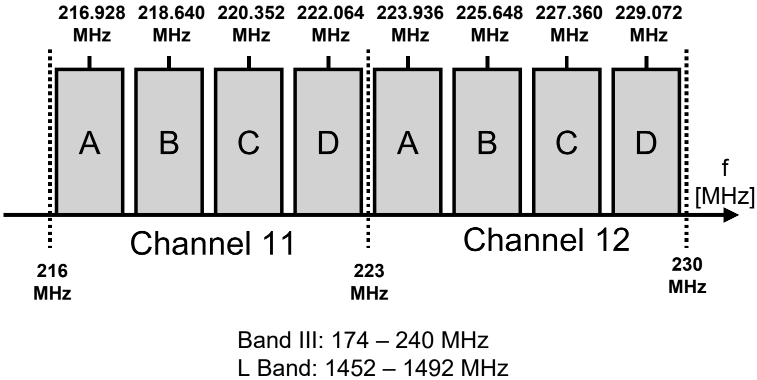


Fig. 26.27. DAB channel allocation with channel 11 and 12 as example

Table 26.6. DAB channel table band III VHF

Channel	Center frequency [MHz]
5A	174.928
5B	176.640
5C	178.352
5D	180.064
6A	181.936
6B	183.648
6C	185.360
6D	187.072
7A	188.928
7B	190.640
7C	192.352
7D	194.064
8A	195.936
8B	197.648
8C	199.360
8D	201.072
9A	202.928
9B	204.640
9C	206.352
9D	208.064
10A	209.936

10N	210.096
10B	211.648
10C	213.360
10D	215.072
11A	216.928
11N	217.088
11B	218.640
11C	220.352
11D	222.064
12A	223.936
12N	224.096
12B	225.648
12C	227.360
12D	229.072
13A	230.784
13B	232.496
13C	234.208
13D	235.776
13E	237.488
13F	239.200

Table 26.7. DAB channel table L band

Channel	Center frequency [MHz]
LA	1452.960
LB	1454.672
LC	1456.384
LD	1458.096
LF	1461.520
LG	1463.232
LH	1464.944
LI	1466.656
LJ	1468.368
LK	1470.080
LL	1471.792
LM	1473.504
LN	1475.216
LO	1476.928
LP	1478.640
LQ	1480.352
LR	1482.064
LS	1483.776
LT	1485.488
LU	1487.200
LV	1488.912
LW	1490.624

Table 26.8. DAB channel table L band, Canada

Channel	Center frequency [MHz]
1	1452.816
2	1454.560
3	1456.304
4	1458.048
5	1459.792
6	1461.536

7	1463.280
8	1465.024
9	1466.768
10	1468.512
11	1470.256
12	1472.000
13	1473.744
14	1475.488
15	1477.232
16	1478.976
17	1480.720
18	1482.464
19	1484.464
20	1485.952
21	1487.696
22	1489.440
23	1491.184

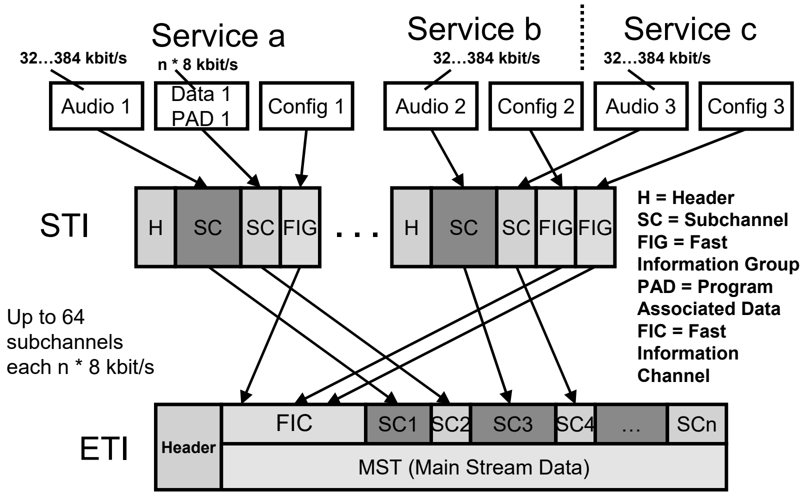


Fig. 26.28. Composition of the ETI data stream

For this reason there is another passive bandpass filter (mask filter). Without pre-correction a DAB signal would have a shoulder attenuation of about 30 dB. If the pre-correction has been properly set the shoulder attenuation will be about 40 dB. This would still interfere with the adjacent channels and would not be authorised by the Authorities. Following the mask filter the shoulders are then lowered by another 10 dB.

Fig. 26.27. shows frequently used DAB blocks. A VHF channel (7 MHz bandwidth) is divided into 4 DAB blocks. The blocks are then called e.g. block 12A, 12B, 12C or 12D.

Tables 26.6., 26.7. and 26.8. list the channel tables used in DAB. Each DAB channel has a width of 7/4 MHz = 1.75 MHz. However, the COFDM signal bandwidth is only 1.536 MHz and there is thus a guard band for the adjacent channels.

26.6 DAB Data Structure

In the section following the essential features of the data structure of DAB will be explained. In DAB, a number of MPEG-1 or –2 Audio Layer II coded audio signals (MUSICAM) combined to form an ensemble (Fig. 26.28.) are transmitted in a 1.75 MHz-wide DAB channel. The maximum net data rate of the DAB channel is about 1.7 Mbit/s and the gross data rate is 2.4 Mbit/s. The data rate of an audio channel is between 32 and 384 kbit/s.

The details described in the following section can be found in the [ETS300401] (DAB), [ETS300799] (ETI) and [ETS300797] (STI) standards.

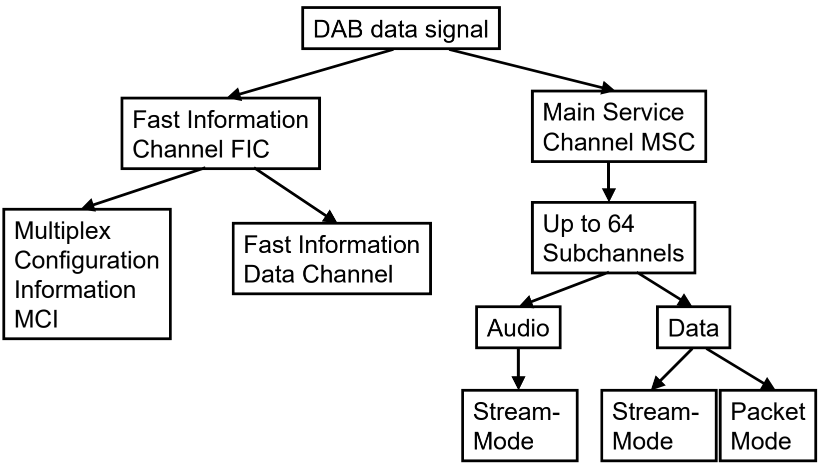


Fig. 26.29. DAB data structure

A DAB data signal (ETI) is composed of the Fast Information Channel (FIC) and the Main Service channel (MSC) (Fig. 26.29.). In the Fast Information Channel, the modulator and the receiver are informed about the composition of the multiplexed data stream by means of the Multiplex

Configuration Information (MCI). The Main Service Channel contains up to 64 subchannels with a data rate of $n \cdot 8$ kbit/s each (Fig. 26.30.). In the subchannels audio signals and data are transmitted. The modulator and receiver obtain the information about the composition of the Main Service Channel from the Multiplex Configuration Information (MCI).

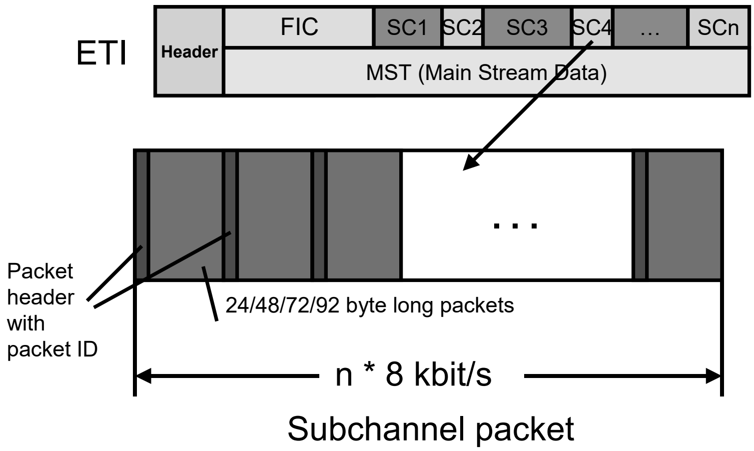


Fig. 26.30. DAB data structure in packet mode

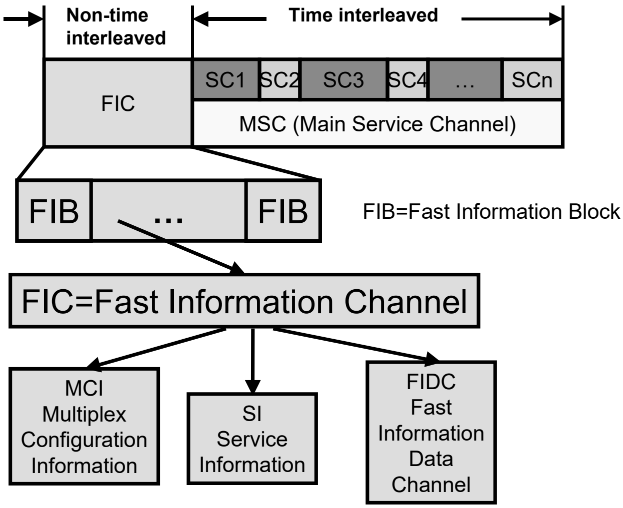


Fig. 26.31. Structure of the DAB Fast Information Channel (FIC)

The transmission in the subchannels can be carried out in Stream Mode and in Packet Mode. In Stream Mode, data are transmitted continuously. In Packet Mode, the subchannel is additionally sub divided into sub-packets with a constant length. Audio is always transmitted in Stream Mode. The data structure is here pre-determined by the audio coding (24/48 ms pattern). Data can be transmitted in Packet Mode (e.g. MOT - Multimedia Object Transfer) or in Stream Mode (e.g. T-DMB). In Packet Mode, the most varied data streams can be transmitted within a subchannel.

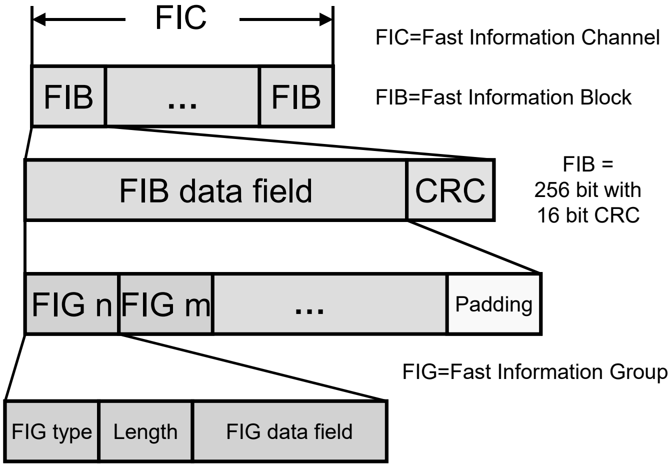


Fig. 26.32. Structure of the DAB FIC

In Stream Mode, a subchannel is used completely for a continuous data stream. This is the case e.g. during audio transmission. Data can also be transmitted in stream mode. This is the case e.g. in the T-DMB method (South Korea). In Packet Mode, a subchannel is additionally sub divided into packets of a constant length of 24, 48, 72 or 92 bytes. A packet begins with a 5-byte-long packet header which contains the packet ID, among other things. The packet ID can be used for identifying the contents. A packet ends with a CRC checksum. This provides for flexible use of the subchannel. It is possible to embed different data services and to provide variable data rates.

In the following section, the structure and content of the Fast Information Channel (FIC) (Fig. 26.31. and 26.32.) and of the Main Service Channel (MSC) will be considered in greater detail. The information transmitted in the fast information channel and main service channel come from the Main Stream Data (MST) from the Ensemble Transport Interface

(ETI). FIC and MSC are provided with error protection (FEC) in the modulator, the FIC being given the strongest protection. The error protection in the MSC is configurable. The strength of the error protection in the MSC is signalled to the receiver in the FIC.

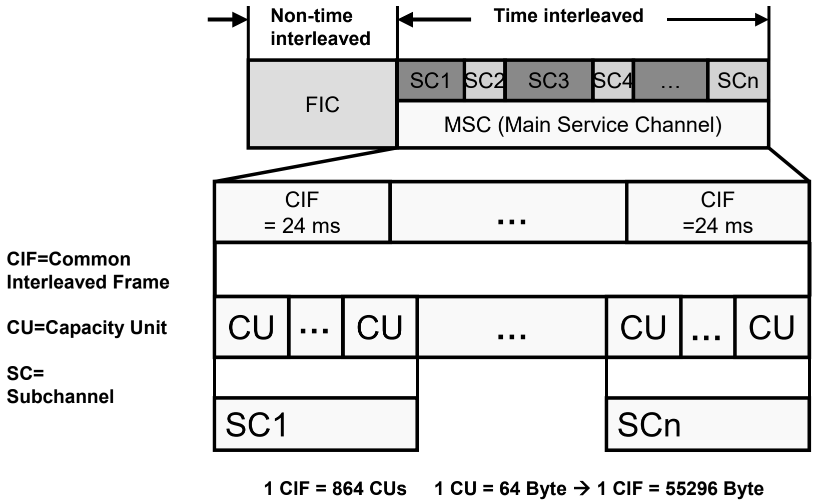


Fig. 26.33. DAB main service channel

In the MSC, the individual subchannels are transmitted, a total of 64 subchannels being possible. Each subchannel can be error-protected to a different degree which is also signalled in the FIC. The subchannels are combined or more precisely allocated to services.

The Fast Information Channel is not time interleaved but transmitted error protected in so-called Fast Information Blocks (FIB).

In the FIC the Multiplex Configuration Information (MCI) is transmitted which is information about the composition of the multiplex data stream, as well as the Service Information (SI) and the Fast Information Data Channel (FIDC).

The SI transmits information about the programs transmitted, the services. In the FIDC, fast supplementary multi-program data are transmitted.

The Fast Information Channel (FIC) is composed of Fast Information Blocks with a length of 256 bits. An FIB consists of an FIB data field and a 16-bit-wide CRC checksum. In the data area of the FIB the messages are transmitted in so-called Fast Information Groups (FIG). Each FIG is identified by its FIG type. An FIG is composed of the FIG type, of the length and the FIG data field in which the actual messages are transmitted.

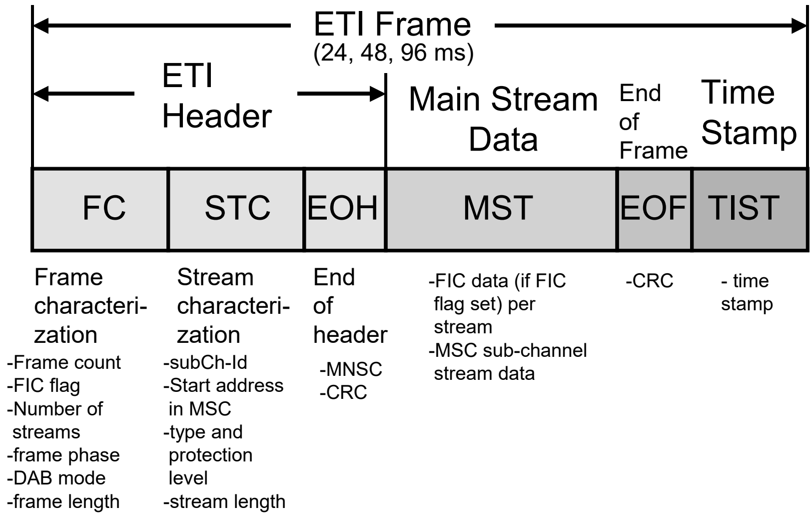


Fig. 26.34. DAB ETI frame structure

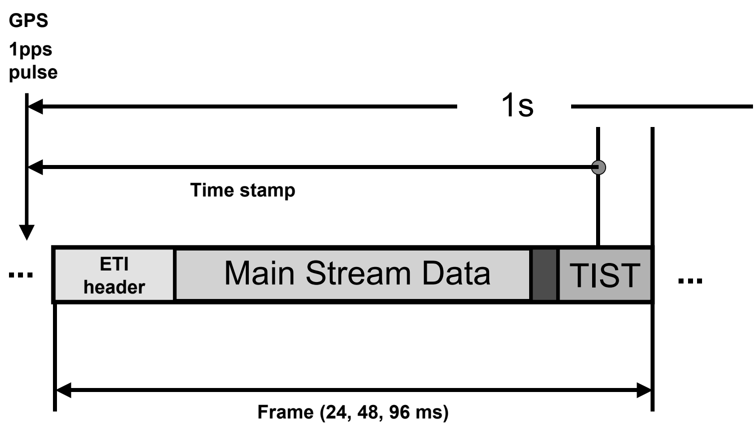


Fig. 26.35. Synchronization of DAB modulators via the TIST in the ETI frame

In the main service channel (Fig. 26.33.), the individual subchannels are broadcast. A total of 64 subchannels are possible. Each subchannel has a data rate of n·8 kbit/s. The subchannels are associated with services (programs). The MSC is composed of so-called Common Interleaved Frames (Fig. 26.33.) which have a length of 24 ms and consist of Capacity Units (CU) with a length of 64 bytes. Overall, 864 CUs result in one CIF which then has a length of 55296 bytes. A number of CUs make up one sub-channel in which the audio frames or data are transmitted.

An ETI frame (Fig. 26.34.) is composed of the header, the Main Stream Data (MST), and End of Frame (EOF) and the Time Stamp (TIST). An ETI frame has a length of 24, 48 or 96 ms.

26.7 DAB Single-Frequency Networks

In the further text, DAB single-frequency networks (SFN) and their synchronisation will be discussed.

COFDM is optimally suited to single-frequency operation. In single-frequency operation, all transmitters are operating at the same frequency which is why single-frequency operation is very economical with regard to frequencies. All transmitters are broadcasting an absolutely identical signal and must operate completely synchronously for this reason. Signals from adjacent transmitters look to a DAB receiver as if they were simply echoes.

The condition which can be met most simply is the frequency synchronisation because frequency accuracy and stability already had to meet high requirements in analog terrestrial radio. In DAB, the RF of the transmitter is tied to the best possible reference. Since the signal of the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellites is available throughout the world, it is used as reference for synchronizing the transmitting frequency of a DAB single-frequency network.

The GPS satellites radiate a 1pps signal to which a 10 MHz oscillator is tied in professional GPS receivers which is used as reference signal for the DAB transmitters.

However, there is also a strict requirement with regard to the maximum transmitter spacing. The maximum possible transmitter spacing is a result of the length of the guard interval and the velocity of light and the associated propagation time. Inter-symbol interference can only be avoided if in multi-path reception no path has a longer propagation time than the guard interval length. The question about what would happen if a signal of a more remote transmitter violating the guard interval is received can be easily answered. Inter-symbol interference is produced which becomes noticeable as disturbing noise in the receiver. Signals from more remote transmitters must simply be attenuated sufficiently well. The threshold for virtually error-free operation is set by the same conditions as in the case of pure noise. It is of particular importance therefore that a single-frequency network has the correct levels. It is not the maximum transmitting power which is required at every site but the correct one. Network planning requires topographical information.

With the velocity of light of C=299792458 m/s, a signal delay of 3.336 µs per kilometer transmitter distance is obtained.

The maximum distances between adjacent transmitters possible with DAB in a single-frequency network are shown in Table 26.9.

Table 26.9. SFN parameters in DAB

	Mode I	Mode IV	Mode II	Mode III
Symbol duration	1 ms	500 µs	250 µs	125 µs
Guard interval	246 ms	123 µs	62 µs	31 µs
Symbol+guard	1246 µs	623 µs	312 µs	15 6µs
Max. transmitter distance	73.7 km	36.8 km	18.4 km	9.2 km

In a single-frequency network, all individual transmitters must operate synchronised with one another. The contributions are supplied by the DAB ensemble multiplexer in which the DAB multiplexer is located, e.g. via satellite, optical fibre or microwave link. It is obvious that due to different path lengths the ETI signals fed in will carry different delays.

However, in each DAB modulator in a single-frequency network the same data packets must be processed to form COFDM symbols. Each modulator must perform all operating steps in complete synchronism with all other modulators in the network. The same packets, the same bits and the same bytes must be processed at the same time. At each DAB transmitter site, absolutely identical COFDM symbols must be radiated at the same time.

The DAB modulation is organized in frames.

To carry out delay compensation in the DAB SFN, Time Stamps (TIST) (Fig. 26.34.) derived from the GPS signal are added to the ETI signal in the multiplexer.

At the end of an ETI frame the TIST is transmitted which is derived by the DAB ensemble multiplexer by GPS reception and is keyed into the ETI signal. It specifies the time back to the reception of the last GPS 1pps signal (Fig. 26.35.). The time information in the TIST is then compared in the modulator with the GPS signal also received at the transmitter site and used for performing a controlled DAB RF frame start.

26.8 DAB Data Broadcasting

In the following section, the possibility of data broadcasting in DAB will be briefly discussed. In DAB data broadcasting (Fig. 26.36.), a distinction is made between the MOT (Multimedia Object Transfer) standard as defined in the [ETS301234] Standard, and the IP transmission via DAB. In both cases, a DAB subchannel is operated in packet mode, i.e. the data packets to be transmitted are divided into short constant-length packets. Each of these packets has a packet ID in the header section by means of which the transmitted content can be identified.

In the Multimedia Object Transfer (MOT) according to [ETS301234], a distinction is made between file transmission, a slide show and the "Broadcast Web Page" operation. In file transmission, only files are fed out cyclically. A slide show can be configured with respect to its display speed. It is possible to transmit JPEG or GIF files.

In the "Broadcast Web Page", a directory of HTML pages is cyclically transmitted and a starting page can be defined. The resolution corresponds to ¼ VGA.

Fig. 26.37. shows the MOT data structure. The files to be transmitted, the slide show or the HTML data are transmitted in the payload segment of an MOT packet. The MOT packet plus header is inserted into the payload segment of an MSC data group, the MOT header coming first followed by a CRC checksum. The entire MOT packet is divided into short constant-length packets of the packet mode. These packets are then transmitted in subchannels.

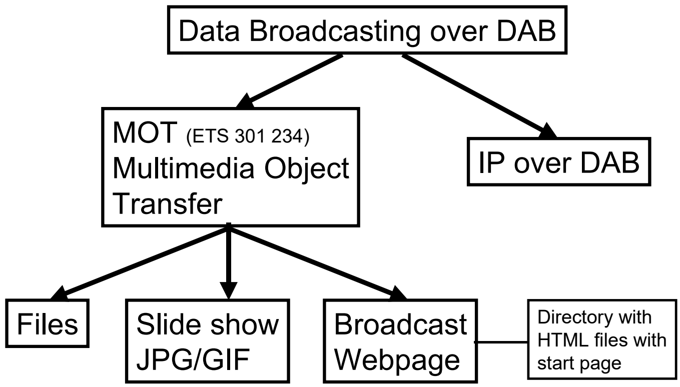


Fig. 26.36. Data broadcasting over DAB

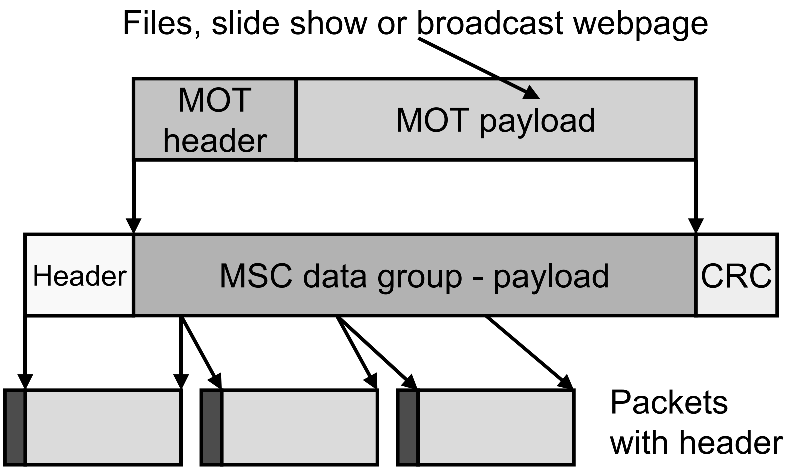


Fig. 26.37. MOT data structure

The category DAB Data Broadcasting should also include T-DMB (Terrestrial Digital Multimedia Broadcasting). In this South Korean method, DAB is operated in the data stream mode.

26.9 DAB+

In 2007 a new extension to the DAB standard, named "DAB+", was published (Fig. 26.38.). DAB+ uses HE MPEG-4 AAC instead of the MPEG-1 or -2 Layer II Audio. As a consequence of this, the unequal error protection originally provided in DAB is no longer possible, since the unequal error protection scheme relies directly on the MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 Layer II frame structure. However, it is now possible to accommodate three times as many services, i.e. programs, per DAB multiplex. This allows to transfer 12 to 18 audio services instead of only about 6 services in the original DAB. Similar to the T-DMB transmission, there are no changes in the physical layer of DAB. DAB+ operates in DAB "Data Streaming" mode, using EEP (Equal Error Protection). Tables 26.10 and 26.11 list the physical parameters of the Equal Error Protection modes. In DAB+ typically EEP 3-A is applied. In EEP 1-A, 2-A, 3-A and 4-A the subchannel data rate is a multiple of 8 kbit/s, while in 1-B, 2-B, 3-B and 4-B the subchannel data rate is a multiple of 32 kbit/s. As already described earlier, DAB is organized into up to 64 subchannels. A so-called Common Interleaved

Frame (CIF) has a total capacity of 864 Capacity Units (CUs), which is equivalent to 55296 bits. 1 CU has a length of 64 Bits. The time duration of a CIF is 24 ms. This results in a gross data rate of 55296 bits / 24 ms = 2.304 Mbit/s for the DAB Main Service Channel.
This total data rate can be shared by about 6 "traditional" DAB services or 12 to 18 DAB+ services, including also the DAB FEC.

Table 26.10. Physical parameters for EEP 1-A, 2-A, 3-A, 4-A

PL	1-A	2-A	3-A	4-A
Coderate	1/4	3/8	1/2	3/4
Subchannel size [CU]	12 · n	8 · n	6 · n	4 · n
Capacity [kbit/s]	n · 8	n · 8	n · 8	n · 8
Evaluated SNR_{min} [dB]	3.5	3.9	5.3	-
Evaluated RF_{min} [dBμV]	5.2	5.6	7	-

n=integer value ≥ 1;
CU = Capacity Unit

Table 26.11. Physical parameters for EEP 1-B, 2-B, 3-B, 4-B

PL	1-B	2-B	3-B	4-B
Coderate	4/9	4/7	4/6	4/5
Subchannel size [CU]	27 · n	21 · n	18 · n	15 · n
Capacity [kbit/s]	n · 32	n · 32	n · 32	n · 32
Evaluated SNR_{min} [dB]	-	5.9	-	-
Evaluated RF_{min} [dBμV]	-	7.6	-	-

n=integer value ≥ 1;
CU = Capacity Unit

SNR_{min} and RF_{min} were evaluated under lab conditions using recorded ETI multiplex signals from Bavarian DAB+ networks; the test object was a "good DAB+ receiver". Practical DAB+ receivers sometimes need up to

10 to 20 dB higher RF levels (25 to 30 dBµV), due to their typically worse RF frontends (higher noise figure).

Comparison to DAB: UEP-3 ("original DAB")
Evaluated values under lab conditions (from the first appearance of impairments to the "fall-off-the-cliff" point) using a "good DAB receiver":

- SNR_{min} = 6.8 … 5.9 dB
- RF_{min} = 8.5 … 7.6 dBµV

In DAB+ the MPEG-4 audio frame is additionally protected by a fix Reed-Solomon block code and a Virtual Interleaver. This Reed-Solomon coding and virtual interleaving is performed outside the DAB modulator and transmitter, inside the DAB+ broadcast headend (audio encoder and ensemble multiplexer).

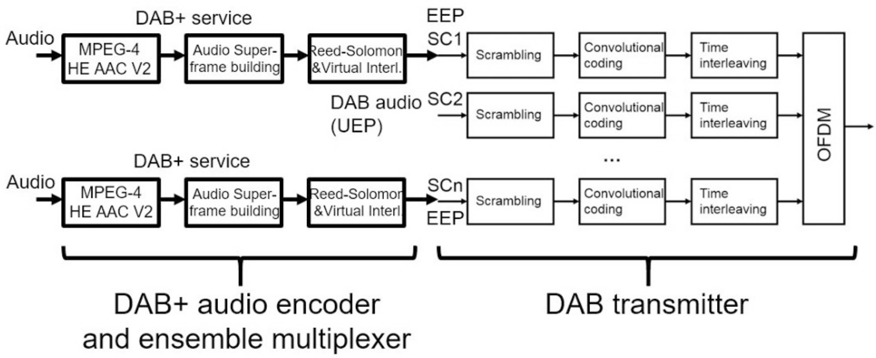


Fig. 26.38. DAB+ services in a DAB environment

26.10 DAB/DAB+ Multiplex Signal Formats

Distribution signal formats in DAB/DAB+ for feeding different DAB transmitters from a DAB/DAB+ broadcast headend (audio encoders and ensemble multiplexer) are either

- ETI (Ensemble Transport Interface) or
- EDI (Encapsulation of DAB Interfaces).

ETI is an E1-interface using HDB3 code (75 Ohms, BNC), while EDI is the IP-version. But EDI does not simply convey the ETI signal through an

IP network: the ETI content is separated into different messages and then transported via IP networks using RTP/UDP/IP protocol. Certain EDI multicast-IP-streams are sometimes transported together using multiprotocol encapsulation in MPEG-2 transport streams, transferred via DVB-S2 satellite networks feeding different DAB transmitter stations.

26.11 DAB Measuring Technology

The DAB measuring technology can be copied directly from the world of DVB-T. It is necessary both to test DAB receivers and to measure DAB transmitters. For these purposes, test transmitters are now available which deliver a DAB signal [SFU][BTC] and test receivers which are capable of analyzing DAB signals [ETL].

26.11.1 Testing DAB Receivers

In the DAB receiver test, the reality of DAB reception must be simulated for the DAB receiver. This requires multi-path reception, noise, minimum receiver input level, interferers etc. as necessary test scenarios. Similar to DVB-T, the source of these inputs is provided by a corresponding test transmitter with fading simulator [SFU][BTC]. This can also be used for T-DMB and DAB+ since the physical layer is the same.

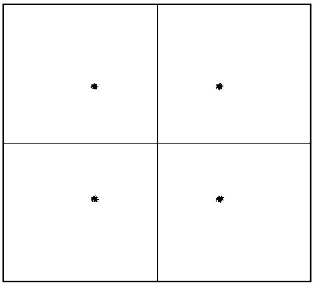


Fig. 26.39. Relatively undisturbed differentially demodulated DAB constellation diagram [ETL]

26.11.2 Measuring the DAB Signal

In DAB, as in DVB-T, the following measurements can be performed on the DAB signal:

- Detecting the bit error ratios
- Measurements on the DAB spectrum
- Constellation analysis

Due to the unequal error protection, it is more difficult to measure the bit error ratios. Measuring the bit errors is relatively simple only at the Fast Information Channel (FIC) since a constant error protection with a code rate of 1/3 is present there.

In the DAB constellation analysis [ETL], the constellation diagram is first differentially demodulated and produces 4 points again. The smaller the appearance of these points in the constellation diagram, the more undisturbed was their transmission (Fig. 26.39.).

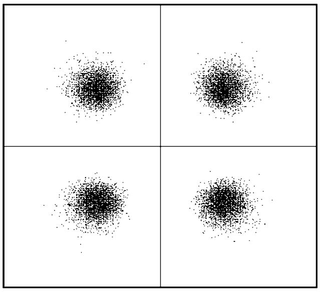


Fig. 26.40. DAB constellation diagram with noise

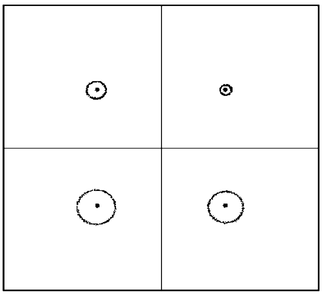


Fig. 26.41. DAB constellation diagram with superimposed sinusoidal interferer

If noise effects are affecting a DAB signal, a DAB constellation diagram will appear as shown in Fig. 26.40. Similar to DVB-T, phase jitter will result in striation-like distortions of the constellation diagram. Sinusoidal interferers will generate circular constellation points (Fig. 26.41.). A wrongly calibrated IQ modulator will produce carrier cross-talk from the lower DAB sub-band into the upper one and conversely and will lead to a poorer SNR just as in DVB-T. In DAB, a modulation error ratio (MER) can also be defined (see also the chapter on DVB-T Measuring Technology). In DAB, too, a MER can also be defined and measured as a function of the subcarriers (Figs. 26.42. and 26.43.).

Because of differential demodulation the resulting MER in DAB is influenced by two consecutive symbols; this results in a 3 dB lower MER value in comparison to coherent modulated signals. This is one of the disadvantages of the DAB system.

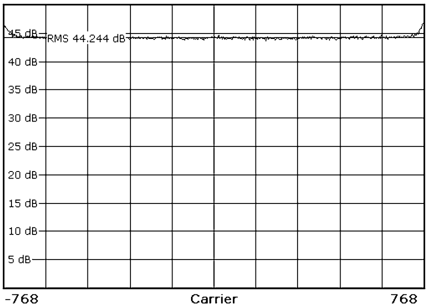


Fig. 26.42. MER(f) in undisturbed DAB (Mode I)

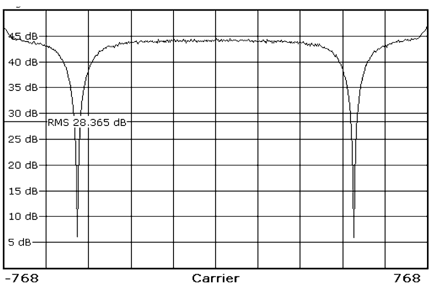


Fig. 26.43. MER(f) in DAB with fading

A further measurement necessary in DAB is measuring the channel impulse response (Fig. 26.44.). The channel impulse response, which can be calculated by analyzing the TFPR symbol, can be used for verifying if a

DAB single-frequency network is running synchronously and that there are no guard interval violations.

The evaluation of the data contents in the DAB signal is also of interest. The analysis of an ETI (Fig. 26.46.) or EDI signal at the output of the ensemble multiplexer or at the transmitter input, respectively, corresponds to the MPEG-2 analysis in DVB. There are analysis tools available also for this purpose [DAB-XPlorer]©, Fig. 26.45, Fig. 26. 47, Fig. 26.48.

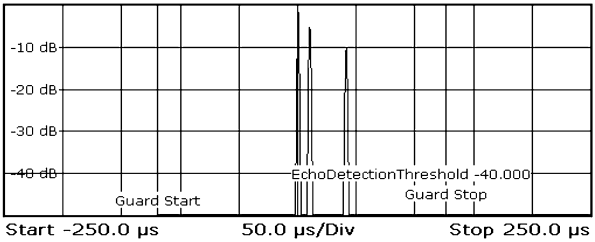


Fig. 26.44. DAB channel impulse response (3 paths) [ETL]

Fig. 26.45. DAB-XPlorer for ETI/EDI analysis

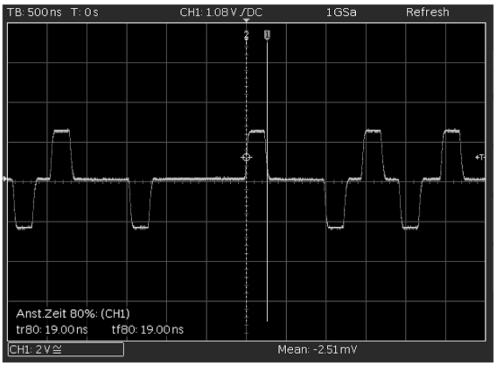


Fig. 26.46. ETI data signal (HDB3 code) analyzed with an oscilloscope

Fig. 26.47. ETI/EDI analysis using DAB-XPlorer; DAB Ensemble structure

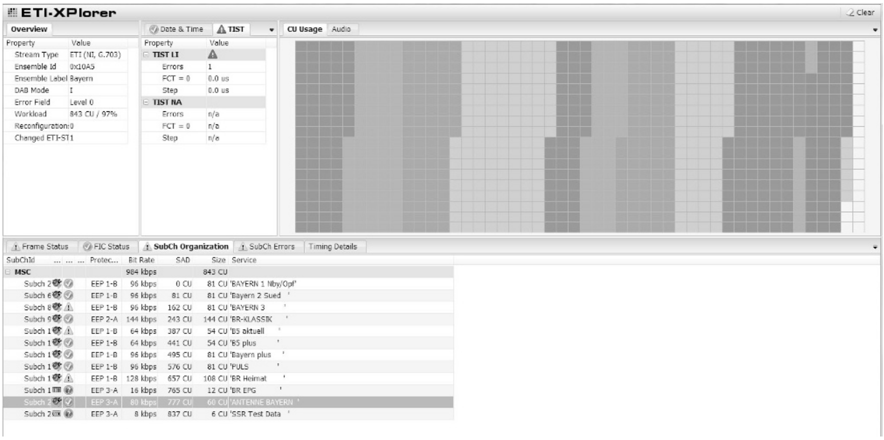


Fig. 26.48. ETI analysis using DAB-XPlorer; usage of Capacity Units

Bibliography: [FISCHER7], [HOEG_LAUTERBACH], [ETS300401], [ETS300799], [ETS300797], [TR101496], [ETS301234], [ETL], [SFU], [BTC], [DAB-XPlorer]

27 DVB Data Services: MHP and SSU

Apart from DVB-H, there are also other DVB data services. These are the Multimedia Home Platform, or MHP in short, and the System Software Update (SSU) for DVB receivers. In parallel with these, there is also MHEG (the Multimedia and Hypermedia Information Coding Experts Group) running over DVB-T in the UK. All these data services have in common that they are broadcast via so-called object carousels in DSM-CC sections. Applications are transmitted to the receiver via MHP and MHEG and can be stored and run by a receiver especially equipped for this purpose. In the case of MHP, these are HTML files and Java applications transmitted to the terminal in complete directory structures. MHEG allows HTML and XML files to be transmitted and started.

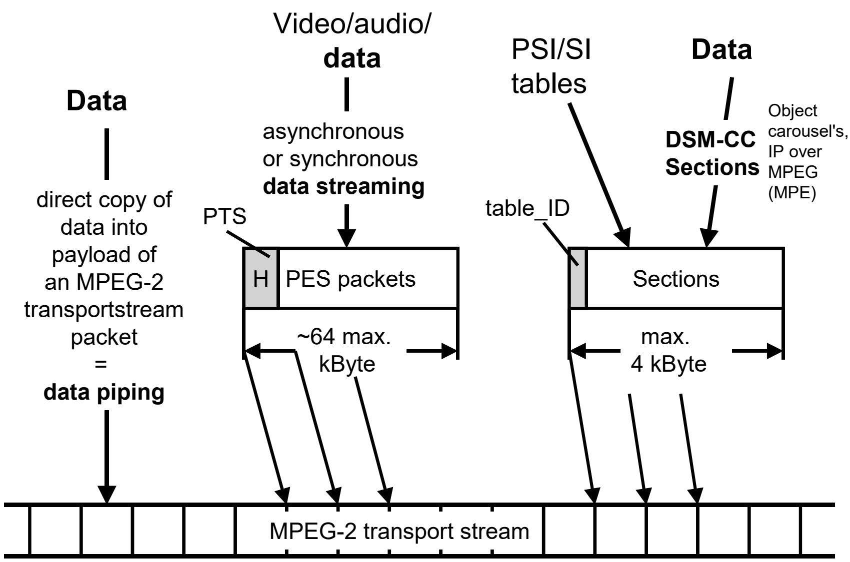


Fig. 27.1. Data transmission via an MPEG-2 transport stream: data piping, data streaming and DSM-CC sections

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_27

27.1 Data Broadcasting in DVB

In MPEG-2/DVB, data transmission can take place as (Fig. 27.1.):

- Data piping
- Asynchronous or synchronous data streaming
- via object carousels in DSM-CC sections
- as datagram transmission in DSM-CC sections
- as IP transmission in DSM-CC sections

In data piping, the data to be transmitted are copied directly into the payload part of MPEG-2 transport stream packets asynchronously to all other contents and without any other defined intermediate protocol. In data streaming, in contrast, the familiar PES (packetized elementary stream) packet structures are used which allow the contents to be synchronized with one another through the presentation time stamps (PTS). Another mechanism for asynchronous data transmission, defined in MPEG-2, are DSM-CC (Digital Storage Media Command and Control) sections (Fig. 27.2.).

```
table_id (=0x3A …0x3E)                    8 Bit
section_syntax_indicator                  1
private_indicator=1                       1
reserved =11                              2
section_length                            12
{
 table_id_extension                       16
 reserved                                 2
 version_number                           5
 current_next_indicator                   1
 section_number                           8
 last_section_number                      8
 switch(table_id)
 {
   case 0x3A: LLCSNAP(); break;
   case 0x3B: userNetworkMessage(); break;
   case 0x3C: downloadDataMessage(); break;
   case 0x3D: DSMCC_descriptor_list(); break;
   case 0x3E: for (i=0; i<dsmcc_section_length-9;i++)
                        private_data_byte;                    8 Bit
  }
}
CRC                                                           32 Bit
```

Fig. 27.2. Structure of a DSM-CC section

27.2 Object Carousels

DSM-CC sections have already been discussed in detail in the DVB-H section. DSM-CC sections are table-like structures and are considered to be private sections according to MPEG-2 Systems. The basic structure of a DSM-CC (Fig. 27.2.) section corresponds to the structure of a so-called long section with a checksum at the end. A DSM-CC section has a length of up to 4 kbytes and begins with a table_ID in the range of 0x3A ... 0x3E. This is followed by the section header with version administration, already discussed in detail in other chapters. Data services such as object carousels or general datagrams or IP packets as in DVB-H (MPE, multiprotocol encapsulation) are then transmitted in the actual trunk of the section. The table_ID shows the type of data services involved.

Table_ID's:

- 0x3A and 0x3C provide for the broadcasting of object/data carousels
- 0x3D provides for the signalling of stream events
- 0x3E provides for the transmission of datagrams or IP packets

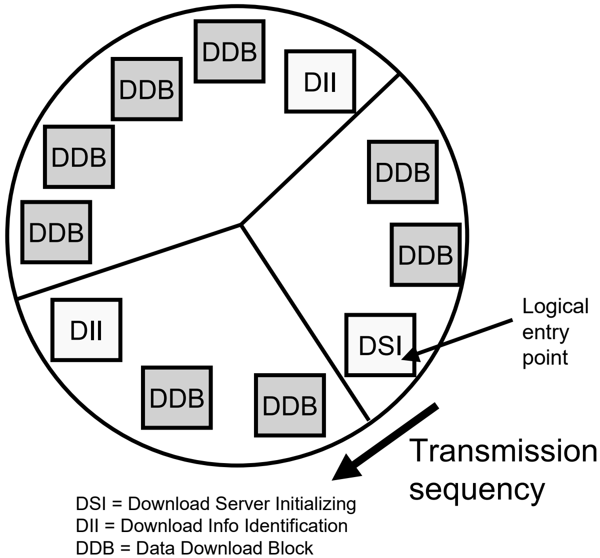


Fig. 27.3. Principle of an object carousel

Object carousels (Fig. 27.3.) allow complete file and directory structures to be transmitted from a server to the terminal via the MPEG-2 transport stream. A restriction imposed by the data carousels is that they only allow a relatively flat directory structure and flat logical structure. Object and data carousels are described both in the standard [ISO/IEC 13818-6] (a part of MPEG-2) and in the DVB data broadcasting document [EN301192].

Firstly, data/object carousels have a logical structure which owes nothing to the content actually to be transmitted (directory tree plus files). The entry point into the carousel is via the DSI (Download Server Initializing) message, or via a DII (Download Information Identification) message in the case of the data carousel. It is retransmitted cyclically with a table_ID=0x3B in a DSM-CC section. Cyclically because this is broadcasting and it must be possible to reach a large number of terminals time and again and the terminals are unable to request messages from the server. The DSI packet then uses IDs to refer to one or more DII messages (Fig. 27.4.) which are also retransmitted cyclically in DSM-CC sections with a table_ID = 0x3B. The DII messages, in turn, refer to modules in which the actual data are then repeatedly broadcast cyclically via many data download blocks (DBB) with a table_ID=0x3C in DSM-CC sections.

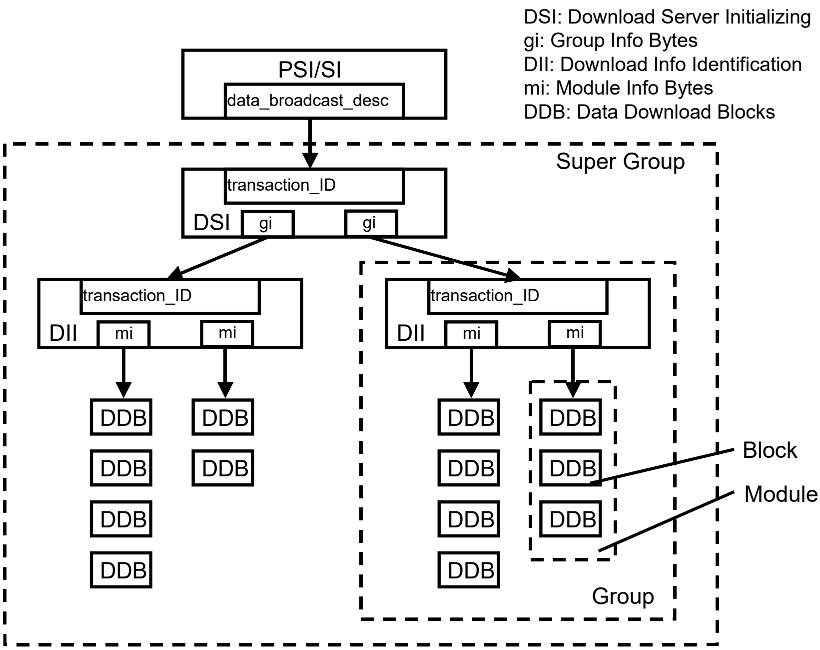


Fig. 27.4. Logical structure of an object carousel

The transmission of a directory tree can take up to several minutes depending on the volume of data and the available data rate.

The presence of an object/data carousel must be announced via PSI/SI tables. Such a data service is allocated to a program service and entered in the respective program map table (PMT) where the PIDs of the object/data carousels are to be found. In the case of a data carousel, entry takes place directly by DII.

Additional items such as a more detailed description of the contents in the carousels are broadcast in separate, new SI tables like the AIT (Application Information Table) and the UNT (Update Notification Table). The AIT belongs to the Multimedia Home Platform and the UNT belongs to the System Software Update and both - AIT and UNT - must also be announced via PSI/SI. The AIT is entered in the PMT of the associated program and the UNT is entered in the NIT.

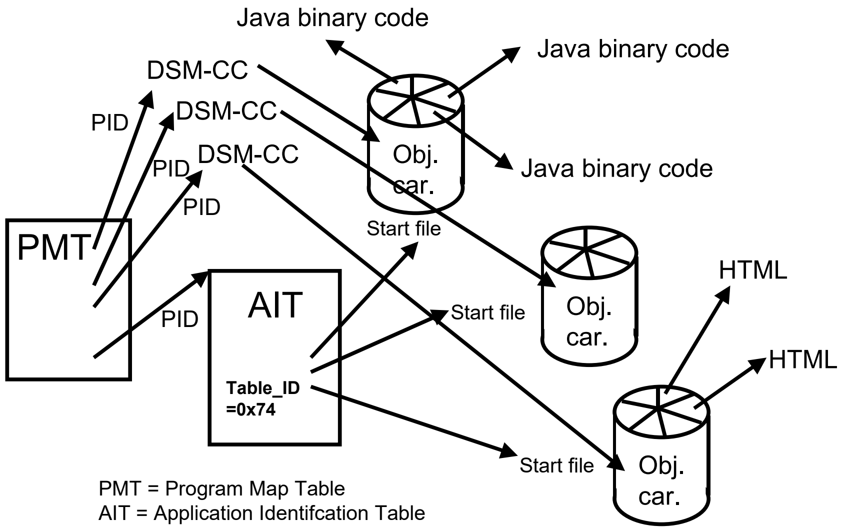


Fig. 27.5. MHP structure

27.3 The Multimedia Home Platform MHP

The Multimedia Home Platform has been provided in DVB as supplementary service for MHP-enabled receivers. The standard, with about 1000 pages, is [ETS101812] and has been released in the year 2000. There are two versions which are MHP 1.1. and MHP 1.2. MHP is used for transmitting HTML (Hypertext Multimedia Language) files familiar from the Internet, and Java applications. Starting the HTML and Java applications requires special software (or middleware) in the receiver. MHP-capable receivers are more expensive and not available in great numbers on the market. MHP applications were broadcast in many countries – but not very successfully.

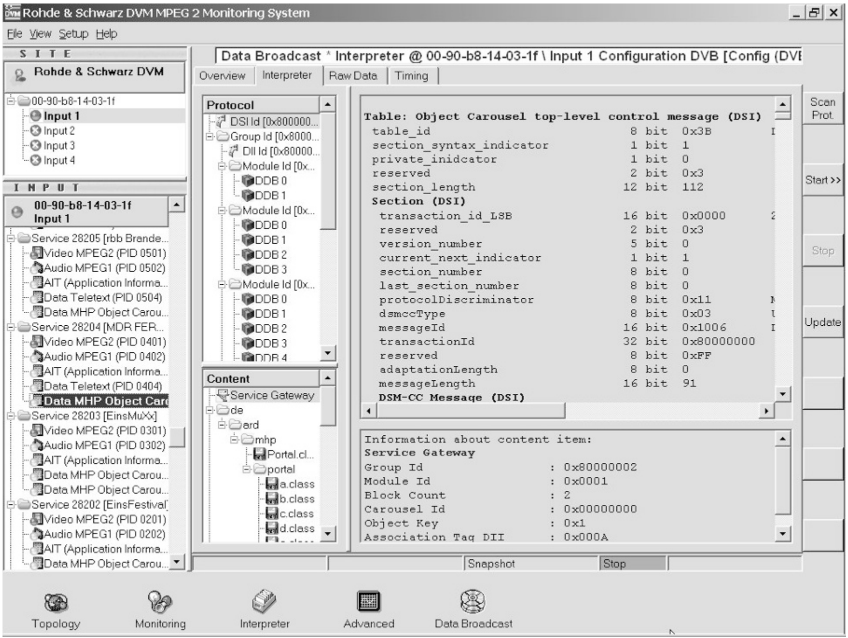


Fig. 27.6. MHP file structure of an object carousel as analyzed on an MPEG analyzer [DVM]

The contents broadcast by MHP are:

- Games
- Electronic programme guides
- News
- Interactive program-associated services
- "Modern" teletext

The entry point into the MHP directory structure (Fig. 27.5., 27.6., 27.7.), the starting file and the name and type of the MHP application are signalled via the AIT (Application Information Table, Fig. 27.5.). The AIT is entered in a PMT as PID with the value of 0x74 as table_ID.

MHP is more or less replaced by HbbTV.

27.4 System Software Update SSU

Since the software of DVB receivers is also subject to continuous updates, it makes sense to provide these to the customer in a relatively simple manner. This can be done "by air" in the case of DVB-S and DVB-T and, of course, via cable in the case of DVB-C. If the software is transmitted in object carousels embedded in the MPEG-2 transport stream according to DVB it is called SSU (System Software Update) and is defined in the [TS102006] standard. However, proprietary software updates are also used.

In SSU, the available software updates are announced via another table, the Update Notification Table (UNT). The PID of the UNT is entered in the NIT and the table_ID of the UNT is 0x4B.

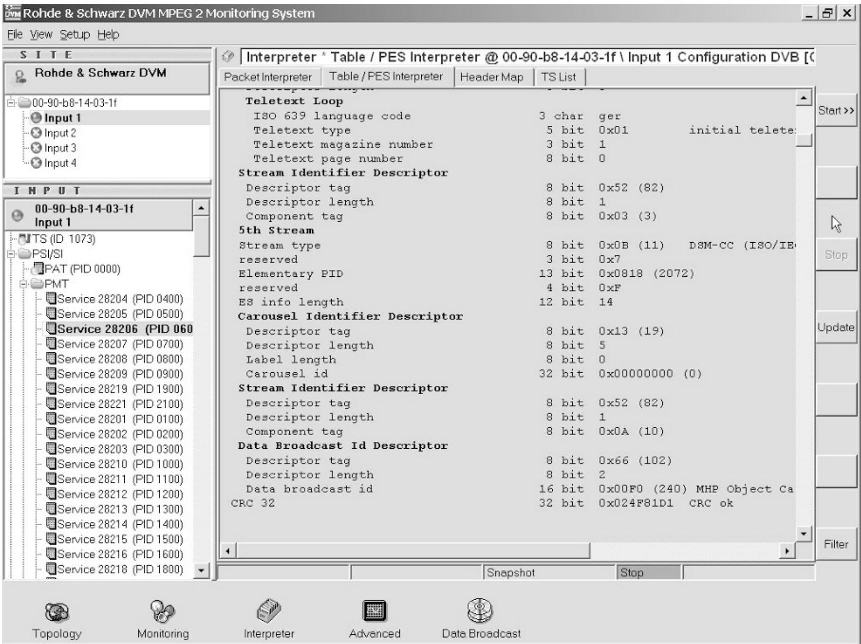


Fig. 27.7. Entry of an MHP object carousel in a Program Map Table (PMT) as analyzed on an MPEG analyzer [DVM]

Bibliography: [ISO/IEC13818/6], [EN301192], [ETS101812], [TS102006]

28 T-DMB

The idea for T-DMB - Terrestrial Digital Multimedia Broadcasting - comes from Germany, it was developed in South Korea, and its physical parameters are identical to the European DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) standard. T-DMB is intended for the mobile reception of broadcasting services similar to DVB-H. T-DMB corresponds wholly to DAB which itself supports the data stream mode also used in T-DMB (Fig. 28.1.). However, the "unequal forward error correction" possible in DAB is no longer possible in this case because the entire subchannel used for the T-DMB channel must be equally error protected.

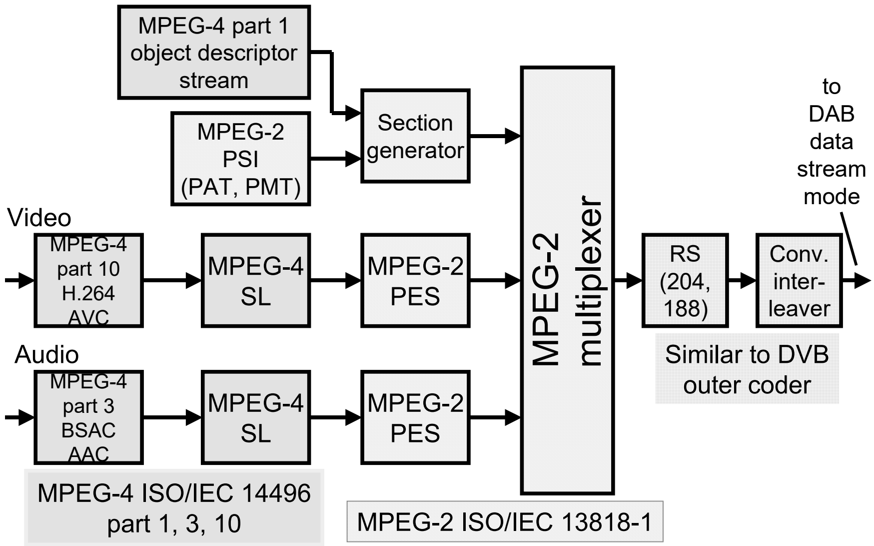


Fig. 28.1. T-DMB modulator block diagram

In T-DMB, the video and audio contents are MPEG-4-AVC- and AAC-coded. The video coding uses the new H.264 method. Video and audio are then packaged in PES packets and are then assembled to form an MPEG-2 transport stream (Fig. 28.1.) which also contains the familiar PSI/SI tables.

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_28

The transport stream is then error protected similarly to DVB-C, i.e. with Reed Solomon RS(204, 188) error protection plus Forney interleaving, after which the data stream is docked onto DAB in data stream mode (Fig. 28.2.).

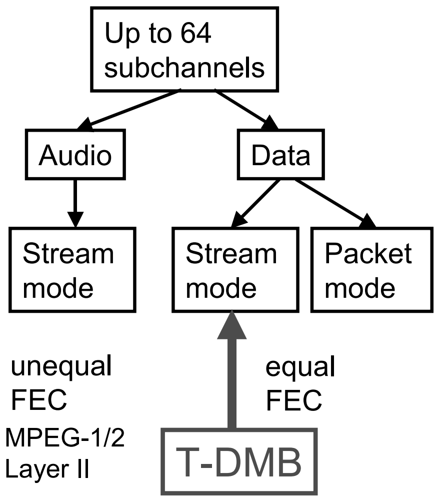


Fig. 28.2. DAB data structure

T-DMB is in use in South Korea. In Germany there was a trial on air during the soccer world championship in 2006. Similar to DVB-H – T-DMB was very soon switched off again. The business models of all that "mobile TV" or "handheld broadcast" standards like DVB-H, T-DMB and MediaFLO have not really been successful.

Bibliography: [ETS300401], [T-DMB]

29 IPTV – Television over the Internet

Thanks to new technologies, the traditional transmission paths for television of terrestrial, broadband cable and satellite transmission have been joined by an additional propagation path, the two-wire line, conventionally known as telephone cable. VDSL (Very-high-bit-rate Digital Subscriber Line, [ITU-T G.993]) now provides for data rates on these lines which also allow television, IPTV – Internet Protocol Television, i.e. television over the Internet. IPTV is now provided, e.g. by the German T-COM/Deutsche Telekom or the Telekom Austria under the new slogan "Triple Play". "Triple Play" is telephone, Internet and television out of one socket. The term has also been applied for some time to broadband cable where all 3 media are also available from one socket.

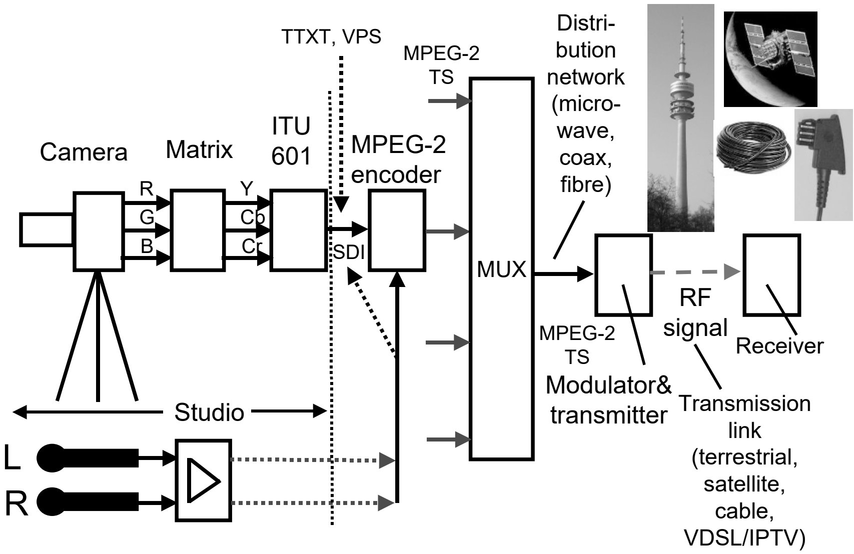


Fig. 29.1. Distribution paths for digital television

The contents are here MPEG-4-coded to compress the input material optimally to the lowest possible data rates, using MPEG-4 AVC (or possibly

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_29

VC-1 (Windows Media 9)) and AAC. However, MPEG-2-coded video streams and MPEG-1-coded audio streams are also still transmitted via IP. Currently, four possibilities exist for transmitting DTV over IP. The first one of these is proprietary where MPEG-4 Video or possibly. Windows Media 9 (VC-1) is simply embedded, together with MPEG-4 Audio (AAC), in UDP-packets (i.e. without handshake). The UDP-packets, in turn, are then placed in IP-packets and are then transmitted via Ethernet, WLAN, WiMAX or xDSL.

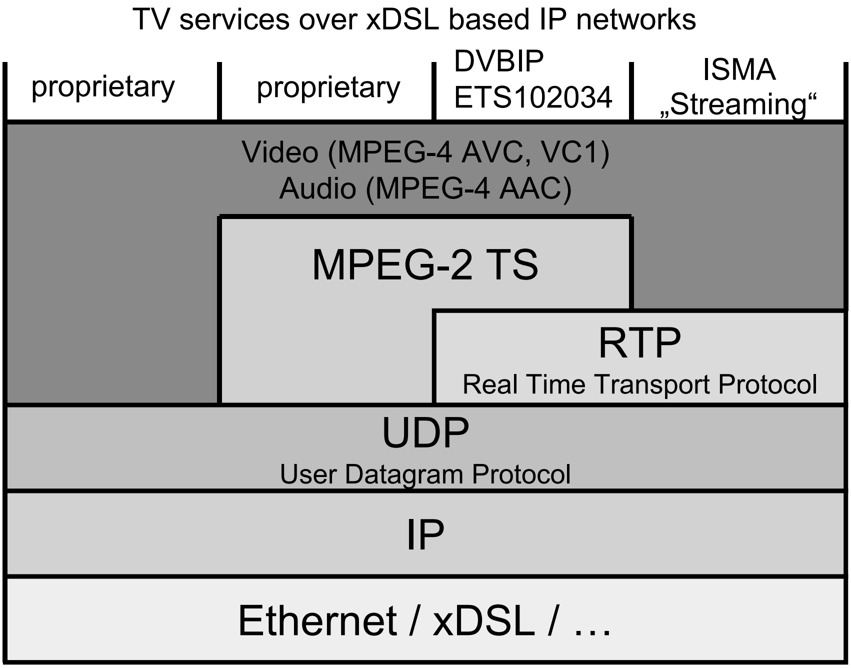


Fig. 29.2. IPTV-Protocols

A further approach, also not standardized at the moment, is to insert video and audio-streams into an MPEG-2-transport stream as specified in the MPEG-2 and MPEG-4-standards, and then to transport this transport stream in UDP- and IP-packets, e.g. also via xDSL. In the method specified as part of DVB-IP in the ETS 102034 standard, the RTP (Real Time Transport Protocol) is additionally inserted between the transport stream and the UDP layer. In ISMA (Internet Streaming Media Alliance) streaming the transport stream layer is missing but the RTP is used here, also. All methods have in common that in each case only one program is transmitted on-demand. In the MPEG-2-transport stream, PAT and PMT-tables are inserted for signalling purposes.

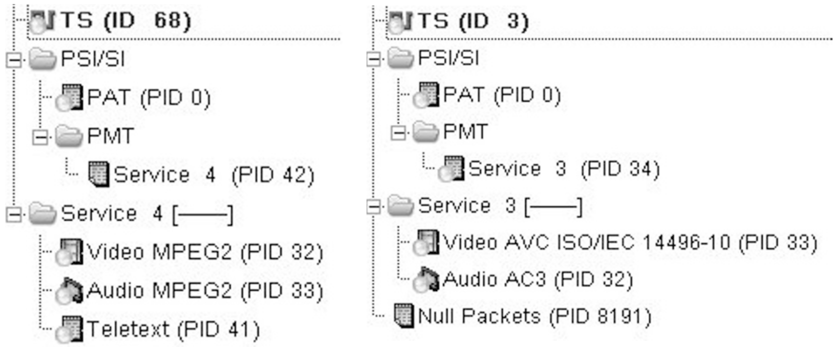


Fig. 29.3. Examples of DVB-IP-compliant transport streams, recorded in the network of Telekom Austria; on the left – MPEG-2 contents, on the right – MPEG-4 AVC and Dolby Digital

29.1 DVB-IP

In DVB-IP [ETS 102034], the MPEG-2 transport stream with either MPEG-4- or MPEG-2-coded video signals and MPEG-4-, MPEG-2- or MPEG-1-coded audio signals (Fig. 29.3.) is embedded via RTP (Real Time Protocol) in UDP packets and then transmitted in an IP network via DXL with instantaneous data rates of 8 or 16 Mbit/s. The main purpose of the RTP is to assist in the restoration of the original order of the packets in an IP network. The RTP also contains mechanisms for managing the timing (s.a. PCR jitter). The DVB IP has provisions for sending the MPEG-2 transport stream either with all PSI/SI tables or only sending the PSI tables along. On registration, the delivery system sends to the DVB-IP receiver a list of available services with the associated socket. A socket consists of an IP address consisting of 4 bytes, and the associated UDP port. This address has the following syntax:

a.b.c.d:port

where a,, b, c and d have a value of between 0 ... 255 and port comprises a range of from 0 ... 65535. "Normal" IP TV runs on multicast addresses within a range of

224.0.0.0 ... 239.255.255.255.

It is only in the case of video on demand that unicast addresses make sense which, with exceptions, can comprise almost the entire address range of from

0.0.0.0 ... 255.255.255.255

According to the Internet Protocol, exceptions are:
127.0.0.1 (= local host),
x.x.x.0 (= current network),
x.x.x.255 (= broadcast),
244.0.0.0 ... 239.255.255.255 (= multicast).

On registering, an IP address, by means of which it can then receive both multicast and unicast services, is assigned to the IPTV receiver. When the service or program is selected by the user, the receiver then signals the corresponding socket to the nearest network node (DSLAM) and is then fed the MPEG-2 transport stream via precisely this address plus UDP port via UDP protocol.

29.2 IP Interface Replaces TS-ASI

It has been noted that the TS-ASI interface is being replaced more and more by a Gigabit Ethernet interface, especially in the head end and in the playout center. This is being mentioned because it fits into the present chapter. If head-end components are connected to one another via gigabit IP, the transport stream, which is otherwise distributed via TS-ASI, must be embedded fully compatibly, i.e. completely, in IP and be provided with all associated PSI/SI tables. In the IP network, the required transport stream is also addressed via a socket, i.e. via the 4-byte-long IP address and the UDP port. IP based transport streams carrying only one program are quite often called SPTS = Single-Program Transport Streams; for transport streams containing a full MPEG multiplex the term MPTS = Multi-Program Transport Stream is in use. ADSL and VDSL networks are typically distributing SPTS.

29.3 OTT – Over the TOP TV

IPTV is not "streaming"! Many broadcasters or broadcast content providers also offer their content via internet services. This is called video and audio "streaming" or OTT ("Over the TOP TV"), or content for the "second screen". In OTT the same streaming content is available for different end user devices, which can be

- Devices with Windows© operating system (PCs, laptops, Tablet PCs)
- Devices with Apple iOS© operating system (Apple© iPhone, iPad, etc.)
- Devices with Android© operation system (Smart Phones, Tablet PCs, etc.).

A certain streaming content is typically available also at different data rates and qualities (HD, SD, etc.), supporting different Internet connectivities. Proprietary solutions are expected to be gradually replaced by MPEG-DASH.

Bibliography: [ITU-T G.993], [ETS102034]

30 DRM – Digital Radio Mondiale

In 2000, a further digital broadcasting standard called DRM - Digital Radio Mondiale [ETS 101980] was created. DRM is intended for the frequency band from 30 kHz ... 30 MHz, in which the AM service was normally transmitted. The broadcasting frequency bands were basically divided in accordance with their propagation characteristics, as follows:

- LW (Long Wave) ~30 kHz ... 300 kHz
- MW (Medium Wave) ~300 kHz ... 3 MHz
- SW (Short Wave) ~3 MHz ... 30 MHz
- VHF: ~30 MHz ... 300 MHz
- UHF: ~300 MHz ... 3 GHz

VHF is split into three bands:

- VHF I: 47 ... 85 MHz
- VHF II: 87.5 ... 108 MHz
- VHF III: 174 … 230 MHz

UHF has two frequency bands, which are:

- UHF IV: 470 ... 606 MHz
- UHF V: 606 ... 826 MHz

In the frequency band below 30 MHz, very long-range reception is sometimes possible which, however, is greatly dependent on diurnal (day/night) variations and on solar activity. The channel bandwidths specified here are 9 kHz (ITU-Region 1 (Europe, Africa) and Region 3 (Asia/Pacific)) and 10 kHz (ITU-Region 2 (North and South America)).

DRM is the attempt to replace more and more unused frequency bands in which amplitude modulation has hitherto been used, with modern digital transmission methods. The modulation method applied is COFDM, using MPEG-4 AAC for compressing the audio signals. The net data rates are usually approx. 10 to 20 kbit/s.

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_30

The channel bandwidths specified for DRM are derived from the bandwidths normally used in the frequency bands provided. The DRM bandwidths are between 4.5 kHz und 20 kHz (Fig. 30.2.) and are defined via the parameter of "spectrum occupancy“. Table 30.1 shows the possible bandwidths. As in other standards, too, which define COFDM as the modulation method, modes are defined here. The DRM modes are designated as Robustness Mode A, B, C and D. The mode determines the carrier spacing and the symbol duration. The physical parameters of the DRM-modes can be seen in Table 30.2. The number of carriers in an COFDM-symbol depends on the mode and on the DRM bandwidth. The number of carriers which can be accommodated in a symbol is listed in Table 30.3.

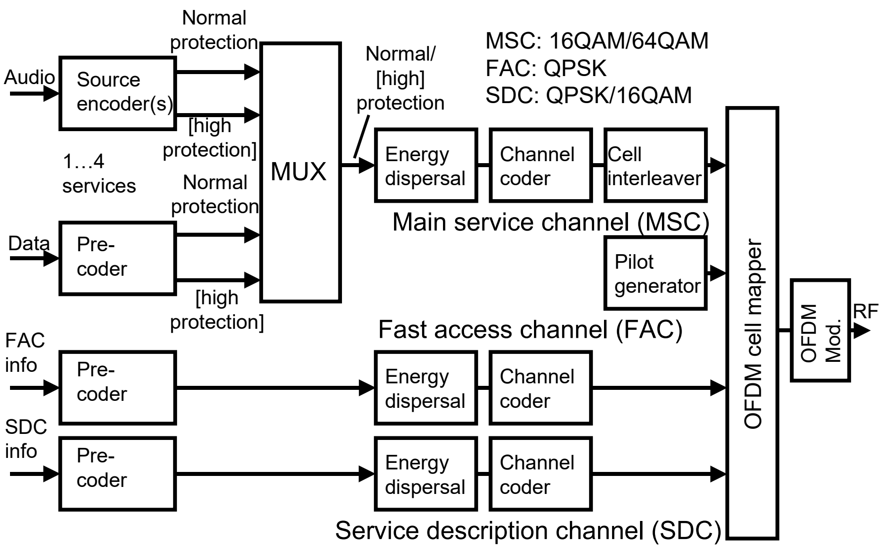


Fig. 30.1. Block diagram of a DRM modulator

Table 30.1. DRM bandwidths

Spectrum occupancy	0	1	2	3	4	5
Channel bandwidth [kHz]	4.5	5	9	10	18	20

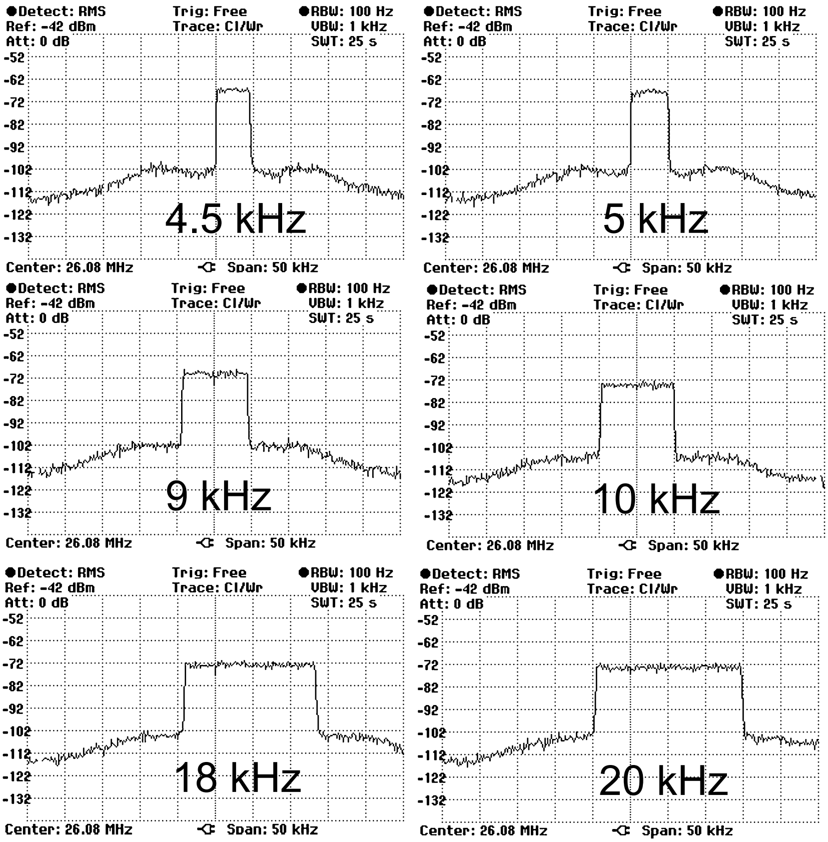


Fig. 30.2. DRM spectra at 4.5, 5, 9, 10, 18 and 20 kHz bandwidth with the same channel frequency in each case; it must be noted that the channel frequency does not always correspond to the band center of the DRM spectrum; compare also Table 30.3. (K_{min}/K_{max}).

Table 30.2. DRM modes and their physical parameters

DRM robustness mode	Symbol duration [ms]	Carrier spacing [Hz]	t_{guard} [ms]	t_{guard}/t_{symbol}	No. of symbols per frame
A	24	41 2/3	2.66	1/9	15
B	21.33	46 7/8	5.33	1/4	15
C	14.66	68 2/11	5.33	4/11	20
D	9.33	107 1/7	7.33	11/14	24

Table 30.3. Number of DRM carrier per COFDM symbol (K_{min} = lowest carrier no., K_{max} = highest carrier no., K_{unused} = unused carrier numbers, SO = spectrum occupancy)

Robust-ness mode	Carrier	SO 0 4.5 kHz	SO 1 5 kHz	SO 2 9 kHz	SO 3 10 kHz	SO 4 18 kHz	SO 5 20 kHz
A	K_{min}	2	2	-102	-114	-98	-110
A	K_{max}	102	114	102	114	314	350
A	K_{unused}	-1,0,1	-1,0,1	-1,0,1	-1,0,1	-1,0,1	-1,0,1
B	K_{min}	1	1	-91	-103	-87	-99
B	K_{max}	91	103	91	103	279	311
B	K_{unsed}	0	0	0	0	0	0
C	K_{min}	-	-	-	-69	-	-67
C	K_{max}	-	-	-	69	-	213
C	K_{unused}	-	-	-	0	-	0
D	K_{min}	-	-	-	-44	-	-43
D	K_{max}	-	-	-	44	-	135
D	K_{unused}	-	-	-	0	-	0

Fig. 30.1. shows the block diagram of a DRM modulator. Up to 4 services (audio or data) can be combined to form one DRM multiplex and to be transmitted in the so-called MSC (Main Service Channel). A DRM signal contains the following subchannels:

- MSC = Main Service Channel (16QAM/64QAM modulation)
- FAC = Fast Information Channel (QPSK)
- SDC = Service Description Channel (QPSK/16QAM)

The FAC is used for signalling the following information to the receiver:

- Robustness mode
- Spectrum occupancy
- Interleaving depth
- MSC mode (16QAM/64QAM)
- SDC mode (QPSK/16QAM)
- Number of services

The SDC is used for transmitting information such as

- Protection level of the MSC
- Stream description

- Service label
- Conditional access information
- Audio coding information
- Time and date

30.1 Audio source encoding

DRM transmits MPEG-4-coded audio signals which can be compressed with the following algorithms:

- MPEG-4 AAC (= Advanced Audio Coding),
- MPEG-4 CELP speech coding (= Code Excited Linear Prediction),
- MPEG-4 HVXC speech coding (= Harmonic Vector Excitation Coding)

30.2 Forward Error Correction

The forward error correction in DRM is composed of the following:

- Energy dispersal block
- Convolutional coder
- Puncturing block

In DRM, it is possible to chose between

- Equal FEC and
- Unequal FEC

Parts of the audio frame can be error-protected to different degrees by this means. The degree of error protection is determined via the protection level and can be chosen as

- PL = 0 (maximum error protection)
- PL = 1
- PL = 2
- PL = 3 (lowest error protection)

The PL then results in a particular code rate.

30.3 Modulation Method

The Fast Access Channel (FAC) is permanently QPSK-modulated (Fig. 30.3.) since it is virtually the first "entry point“ for the DRM receiver and must, therefore, be modulated firmly and very robustly.

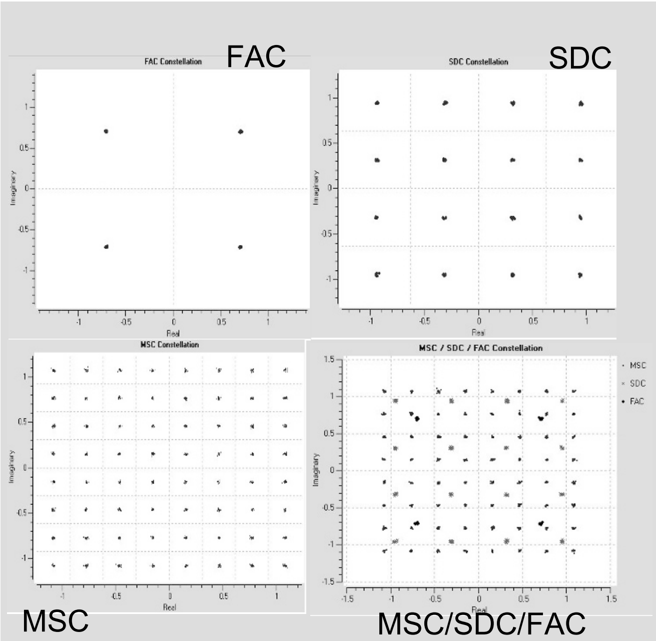


Fig. 30.3. Modulation methods in DRM

In the case of the Service Description Channel (SDC) it is possible to chose between QPSK and 16QAM as modulation method which is again signalled to the receiver via the FAC. The types of modulation possible in the MSC are either 16QAM or 64QAM (Fig. 30.3.) which is also signalled to the receiver via the FAC. Apart from the modulated data carriers which transmit the information of the MSC, FAC and SDC, there are also pilots which are not responsible for any information transport. They have special tasks and are mapped onto fixed constellation schemes known to the modulator and receiver. These pilots are used for:

- Frame, frequency and time synchronization
- Channel estimation and correction
- Robustness-mode-signalling

In DRM it is possible to chose, apart from "simple modulation“ (SM), also "hierarchical modulation“ (HM), similar to DVB-T. Different levels of error protection can then be used on the two paths of the hierarchical modulation.

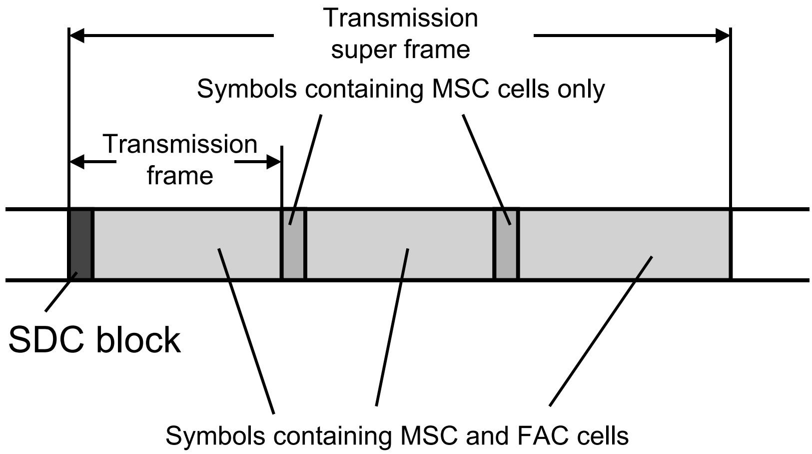


Fig. 30.4. Frame structure in DRM

30.4 Frame structure

Like other transmission standards such as DVB-T or DAB, DRM, too, has a frame structure (Fig. 30.4.) for arranging the COFDM symbols which is organized as follows:

- A certain number of COFDM symbols N_s results in an COFDM-transmission frame
- 3 transmission frames produce one transmission superframe

An COFDM frame, in turn, is composed of:

- Pilot cells
- Control cells (FAC, SDC)
- Data cells (MSC)

In this context, cells are understood to be carriers allocated to various uses. Control cells are used for transmitting the FAC and the SDC. Data cells are used for transporting the MSC.

The pilot cells are simply the pilots already mentioned. Table 30.4. shows how many CODFM symbols make up a transmission frame.

Table 30.4. Number of symbols N_s per frame

Robustness mode	Number of symbols N_s per transmission frame
A	15
B	15
C	20
D	24

At the beginning of a transmission super frame, the so-called SDC-block is transmitted in symbol no. 0 and 1 in Mode A and B and in symbol no. 0, 1 and 2 in Mode C and D. After that, only MSC and FAC cells are transported until the beginning of the next super frame (Fig. 30.4.).

Pilot carriers or pilot cells are distributed over the entire range of COFDM carriers. Depending on the mode, they are spaced apart by 20, 6, 4 or 3 carriers from one another and skip forward by 4, 2 or 1 carrier from symbol to symbol.

Table 30.5. Pilot Carriers

Mode	Pilot carrier spacing in the symbol	Carrier skip distance from symbol to symbol
A	20	4
B	6	2
C	4	2
D	3	1

30.5 Interference on the transmission link

DRM is operated in a frequency band in which atmospheric disturbances and diurnal fluctuations of the transmission characteristics (ground and sky wave) are particularly pronounced. In the frequency band below 30 MHz there is mainly also the presence of man-made noise to be considered.

According to the standard, DRM has a bit error ratio of $1 \cdot 10^6$ in the MSC after the channel decoder with a signal/noise ratio (SNR) of 14.9 dB with 64QAM and a code rate of 0.6. In practice, the "fall-off-the-cliff“

phenomenon (also known as "brickwall effect") was actually observed with an approximate S/N of 16 dB at a CR=0.5. With 16QAM modulation, this effect occurred with an SNR of about 5 dB (receiver: mixer DRT1 by Sat Schneider and DREAM Software).

Table 30.6. "Fall-off-the-Cliff" (Receiver: Mixer DRT1 by Sat Schneider, Germany and DREAM Software from the Technical University of Darmstadt, Germany

Transmission parameters	S/N at "fall-off-the-cliff"
MSC=64QAM, CR=0.5	16 dB
MSC=16QAM, CR=0.5	5 dB

30.6 DRM data rates

The DRM data rates depend on the DRM bandwidth (spectrum occupancy), on the mode, on the selected type of modulations and on the forward error correction. They are between about 5 and 72 kbit/s.

Table 30.7. MSC net data rates at a code rate of CR=0.6 (equal FEC, simple modulation) with 64QAM

Robustness mode	SO 0 4.5 kHz [kbit/s]	SO 1 5 kHz [kbit/s]	SO 2 9 kHz [kbit/s]	SO 3 10 kHz [kbit/s]	SO 4 18 kHz [kbit/s]	SO 5 20 kHz [kbit/s]
A	11.3	12.8	23.6	26.6	49.1	55.0
B	8.7	10.0	18.4	21.0	38.2	43.0
C	-	-	-	16.6	-	34.8
D	-	-	-	11.0	-	23.4

Table 30.8. MSC net data rates at a code rate of CR=0.62 (equal FEC, simple modulation) with 16QAM

Robustness mode	SO 0 4.5 kHz [kbit/s]	SO 1 5 kHz [kbit/s]	SO 2 9 kHz [kbit/s]	SO 3 10 kHz [kbit/s]	SO 4 18 kHz [kbit/s]	SO 5 20 kHz [kbit/s]
A	7.8	8.9	16.4	18.5	34.1	38.2
B	6.0	6.9	12.8	14.6	26.5	29.8
C	-	-	-	11.5	-	24.1
D	-	-	-	7.6	-	16.3

The lowest possible data rate (CR=0.5, 16QAM, Mode B, 4.5 kHz) 4.8 kbit/s. The highest possible data rate (CR=0.78, 64QAM, Mode A, 20 kHz) is 72 kbit/s.

30.7 DRM transmitting stations and DRM receivers

Numerous transmitting stations throughout the world have already been converted from AM to DRM. Relevant information is available from the Internet. Apart from software-based DRM receivers, compact receivers are also available now. Software-based solutions are in most cases based on a DRM signal down-converted at 12 kHz which is fed into the line-in socket of a PC. A suitable example which can be mentioned is the DREAM software from the Technical University of Darmstadt (see also Fig. 30.5.).

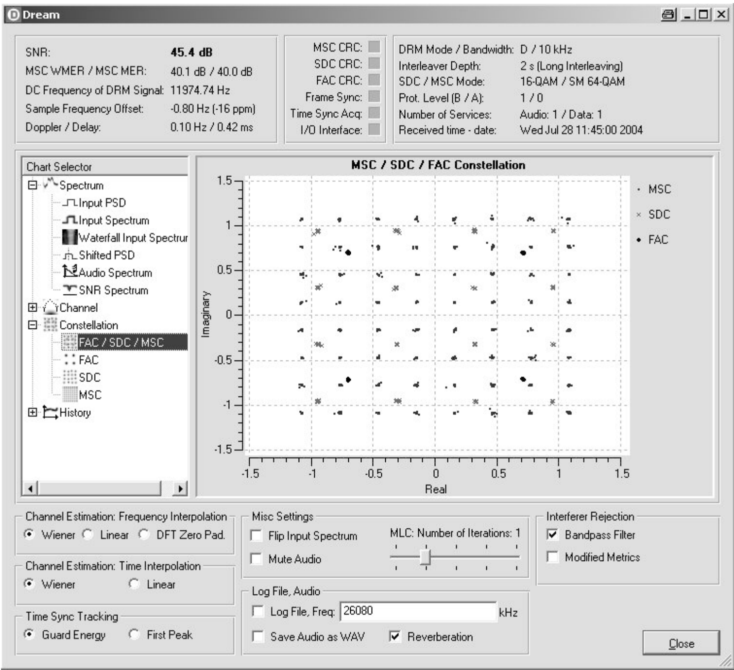


Fig. 30.5. Constellation diagram of a DRM signal (MSC, FAC and SDC superimposed), recorded using the DREAM software

In the meantime (year 2019) many former DRM stations are again switched off completely. Broadcast via long wave, medium wave and short wave seems to be switched off in Europe and also in other regions completely in the next years and it doesn't matter if in traditional AM or in DRM. There are too less listeners and the energy costs are very high which are in the kW or MW range in that frequency ranges. Replacement for this remote or far distance audio services is audio streaming over the Internet.

30.8 DRM+

That DRM system which was described in this chapter until now is also called DRM30 (up to 30 MHz, DRM mode A, B, C, D). DRM+, an extension of DRM, was developed and is intended for frequencies above 30 MHz. DRM+ could be a possible alternative to DAB. Like DRM, DRM+ would work with the latest AAC+ codec and could be used both in VHF band II, where VHF FM technology is currently employed, and in VHF band I which, as now, is empty. DRM+ describes a further DRM mode which is mode E. DRM mode E (DRM+) is using the following technical parameters:

- 444 Hz OFDM carrier spacing
- 96 kHz signal bandwidth
- 312 carrier per channel
- 2.25 ms symbol duration
- 0.25 ms guard interval

In DRM mode E the modulation in the MSC is only 16QAM or QPSK. Data rates in DRM+ in 16QAM are between 99.4 and 186.3 kbit/s and in QPSK between 37.2 and 74.2 kbit/s.

Bibliography: [ETS101980], [DREAM], [SFU], [BTC]

31 Single-Frequency Networks in DVB-T in Practice

Single-frequency networks (SFN) are "special" broadcasting networks. They must

- be frequency-synchronous,
- time-synchronous,
- data-synchronous and
- meet the guard interval requirements.

To ensure that these preconditions are met in practice, they must also be measured and monitored during both commissioning and later in operation. Numerous hands-on measurements and insights in this field, initially far away from Europe, in Australia, and later mostly in the network of the Bayerischer Rundfunk, have led to writing this section. These insights are also applicable to single frequency networks of other standards, such as DVB-T2, ISDB-T, or DTMB. The first step is to plan the SFN appropriately based on the topographic and geographic structure. The transmitter spacing must not violate the guard interval condition, i.e. the distance between the transmitters must not exceed a certain maximum range. If this condition is not met, it can be cured by "shifting" the transmitters relative to each other by the delayed or premature transmission of the COFDM signal ("static delay"). This guarantees proper reception in areas where otherwise the difference between the signal paths would exceed the guard interval. This kind of shifting of the transmitters, however, may cause problems in other areas. Of course, the antenna pattern also plays a role. An SFN can be modeled by "narrowing", i.e. decreasing the transmitted power in a direction. Most of the phenomena discussed in this chapter using the example of DVB-T also apply to other standards that use OFDM modulation, such as DAB or ISDB-T, and DVB-T2 as well. When referring to receivers in this section, the term initially meant external devices in most cases; these were also called "set-top-boxes" because they were often placed on top of the TV. Today, the DVB-T receivers are integrated into

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_31

the flat screen sets — and nothing can be put on top of them as anything would fall off.

31.1 SFN Measurement Parameters

Let us first see which measurement parameters have to be recorded in a DVB-T single-frequency network. Of course, the relationships valid for the SFN coverage measurements can also be applied to the special case of an SFN, namely an MFN (Multi Frequency Network). There, each transmitter operates alone on its own frequency. In contrast to the SFN, the receiver expects a single signal path from the transmitter, and eventually "the right" echo paths. Propagation time differences in an MFN are about 1 to 10 μs instead of up to 200 μs in SFNs. The parameters to be measured in the field are:

- Level or field strength
- Modulation error ratio
- Bit error ratios
- Channel impulse response
- Constellation diagram (visual assessment).

Naturally, the most important test parameter is firstly the signal level or field strength present on site. The signal level is measured as the output signal of a known test antenna. Its k factor or antenna gain can then be used for calculating the field strength. The formula for this is:

$$E[dB\mu V/m] = U[dB\mu V] + k[dB/m];$$

$$k[dB] = (-29.8 + 20 \cdot \log(f[MHz]) - g[dB]);$$

where
E = electrical field strength
U = antenna output level
k = antenna k factor
f = radio frequency
g = antenna gain (relative to isotropic antenna, a half-wave dipol has a g=2.1 dB)

The required minimum receiver input level depends on the selected modulation parameters and on the quality of the receiver. As shown in Chapter

20, a noise level of about 10 dBμV can be expected at the receiver input, which leads to a minimum level of about 22 dBμV with 16QAM, code rate 2/3 and of about 28 dBμV with 64 QAM, code rate 2/3. This corresponds quite well to reality in an AWGN (Additive White Gaussian Noise) channel. It won't hurt to add a margin of about 3 dB to this, however. There are implementation losses (antenna, cable) and there are differences in the quality of receivers. However, these minimum receiver input levels only apply to the case of one-way reception, i.e. the pure AWGN channel. In practice, multi-path reception often requires an input level which is higher by 5 to 10 dB. This is due to the actual characteristics of the DVB-T demodulator chips built into the DVB-T receivers. It can be demonstrated, however, that there are distinct differences here and that the latest generations of DVB-T receivers and chips come much closer to expectation. Calculating then firstly the minimum field strengths with an antenna gain of 0 dB, using the theoretical minimum levels without deductions, and then also adding QPSK, with code rate 2/3 (-6 dB compared with 16QAM = 16 dBμV):

Table 31.1. Theoretically required minimum receiver input level (CR=2/3) in an AWGN channel with DVB-T with 0 dB antenna gain and no implementation losses, receiver noise figure = 7 dB, ambient temperature = 20 °C.

	200 MHz	500 MHz	600 MHz	700 MHz	800 MHz
k factor at 0dB gain	16.4 dB	24.2 dB	25.8 dB	27.1 dB	28.3 dB
Min. level with QPSK	16 dBμV	16 dBμV	16 dBμV	16 dBμV	16 dBμV
Min. received field strength with QPSK	32.4 dBμV/m	40.2 dBμV/m	41.8 dB μV/m	43.1 dBμV/m	44.3 dBμV/m
Min. level with 16QAM	22 dBμV	22 dBμV	22 dBμV	22 dBμV	22 dBμV
Min. received field strength with 16QAM	38.4 dBμV/m	46.2 dBμV/m	47.8 dBμV/m	49.1 dBμV/m	50.3 dBμV/m
Min. level with 64QAM	28 dBμV	28 dBμV	28 dBμV	28 dBμV	28 dBμV
Min. received field strength with 64QAM	44.4 dBμV/m	52.2 dBμV/m	53.8 dBuV/m	55.1 dBμV/m	56.3 dBμV/m

In reality, the implementation losses must be added to this and these, in turn, depend on the chosen receiving situation. There are ultimately four receiving situations which are:

- Reception by fixed outdoor antenna
- Reception by portable outdoor antenna
- Reception by portable indoor antenna
- Mobile reception

With reception by fixed outdoor antenna, the antenna gain of about 6 to 12 dB is added to this and ensures that correspondingly less field strength is required. Field strength is here defined at a corresponding height above ground, in most cases 10 m, and the measurements are therefore also taken under these conditions (mast, 10 m, directional antenna). However, it is advisable also to take into consideration the line losses etc. to the receiver (e.g. 6 dB) and to include these in the calculations. With reception by portable outdoor antenna there is no antenna gain. The reception situation to be considered is then 0 dB antenna gain and e.g. 2 m above ground. With indoor reception, attenuation losses of the walls and windows of up to about 20 dB must be added. Concrete buildings with metallized windows produce especially high attenuation. Polarization losses of 5 to 15 dB are another factor to be considered. Reception with a vertical rod antenna in a horizontally polarized DVB-T network, e.g., leads to a loss of about 15 dB. Portable indoor reception covers a very wide range with respect to minimum field strength. The antenna gain may also exhibit negative values. The most difficult case is mobile reception, DVB-T being a system which was originally not designed for this purpose. The time interleaver value is very short. Although the mobile field strength values measured do no differ from the stationary ones, the Doppler effect plays a very large role and the changing receiving situations play havoc with the receiver. The signal-to noise ratio (SNR) and the modulation error ratio (MER) differ greatly under mobile and stationary conditions and also depend on location. The MER is the aggregate parameter in which all interference effects on the DVB-T reception can be mapped. As explained in Chapter 21, it is the logarithmic ratio of the RMS value of the signal to the RMS value of the error vector in the constellation diagram. If only a noise effect is present, the MER corresponds to the SNR. If the SNR or the MER are measured in mobile operation, the Doppler effect additionally affects a deterioration of the MERs or SNRs in dependence on the speed of travel due to the different types of local reception-related effects and signal paths. This will also be illustrated later in this chapter by providing practical examples from the exemplary DVB-T networks. The MER is thus measured under stationary conditions in accordance with the required nominal conditions of reception, e.g. with a directional antenna at 5 or 10 m height, or with a non-directional antenna. The minimum MER required for reception also depends on the modulation parameters.

Table 31.2. Minimum required MER at code rate = 2/3.

	QPSK	16QAM	64QAM
MER	6 dB	12 dB	18 dB

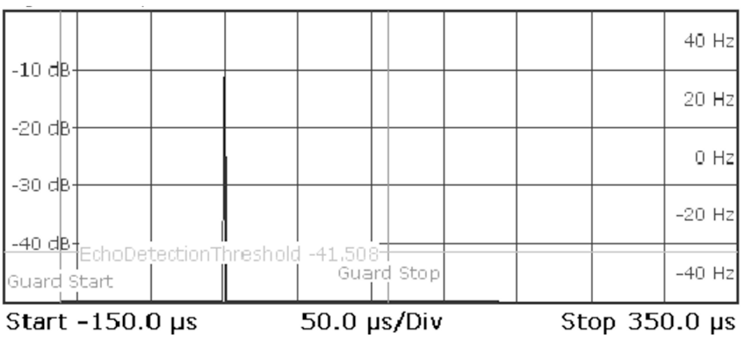


Fig. 31.1. Channel impulse response with one signal path; measured with the TV test receiver ETL

It is important to know that, as a simple fact of physics, the MER measured under mobile conditions can never correspond even approximately to that measured under stationary conditions. The MER is always, and also in every standard, a function of the speed of travel and of the multi-path reception conditions. The same also applies to the bit error ratios (BER). These are also not only dependent on the received level but can be derived directly from the MER. The minimum required BER before Reed Solomon or after Viterbi with quasi error free DVB-T reception is $2 \cdot 10^{-4}$. There are three bit error ratios in DVB-T:

- BER before Viterbi, or the channel bit error rate ratio
- BER after Viterbi or before Reed Solomon
- BER after Reed Solomon

It makes sense to measure all three BERs during the field test. The engineer obtains appropriate information especially from the BER after Viterbi, i.e. before Reed Solomon. Naturally, the measurement of the

BERs in mobile operation will also result in quite different values in comparison with stationary measurements. The test results also depend on where in the SFN one is moving, the reason again being simply the effect of Doppler on the multipath reception in the various regions of reception. The channel impulse response (Fig. 31.1. and Fig. 31.2.) provides reliable information about the multi-path receiving conditions in the various regions in the SFN. It also tells one whether an SFN is running synchronously or not. In addition, the channel impulse response can be used for estimating whether the receiving situation could represent critical states with respect to synchronization to symbol and guard interval. Critical states are:

- Violation of the guard interval
- The pre-echo
- The 0-dB echo
- The quasi mobile receiving situation
- Radiation of different TPS bits

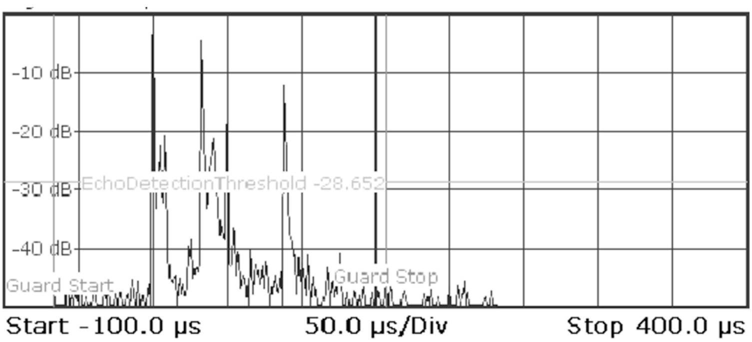


Fig. 31.2. Channel impulse response with multi-path reception with post-echoes, measured here in an SFN with 3 transmitters

31.1.1 Guard Interval Violation

The guard interval violation, among the critical receiving states, is the simplest to explain and is considered to constitute an absolute infringement of the SFN conditions. It simply involves the reception of signal paths which are outside the guard interval and still have sufficient energy. Such a problem can arise when transmitters are spaced too far apart and delays have been selected wrongly or unfortunately at the transmitter sites, or simply with propagation overshoots. The energy of such a signal path becomes critical if it passes from the attenuation with respect to the main path into the order of magnitude of minimum SNR or minimum MER (fall-off-the- cliff), depending on the selected transmission parameters.

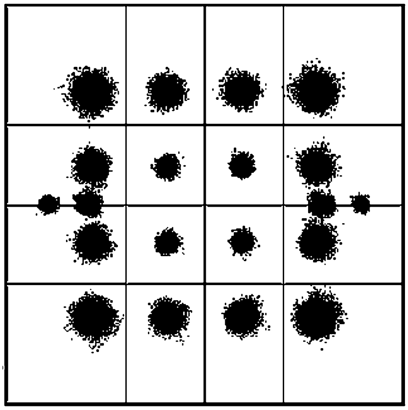


Fig. 31.3. Typical constellation diagram for a guard interval violation (outer points are larger than the inner ones)

This problem can be solved by a suitable choice of the delay times, i.e. the transmission times, of the COFDM symbols to the transmitter sites, by adapting the antenna patterns and the ERPs of the transmitters. In the case of a guard interval violation, a typical constellation diagram has larger constellation points outside than inside (Fig. 31.3.).

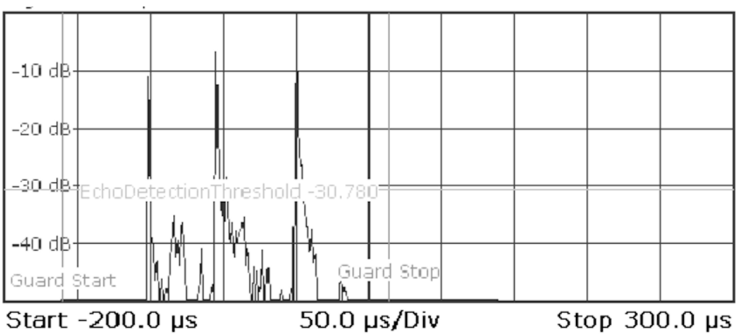


Fig. 31.4. Channel impulse response with pre-echoes

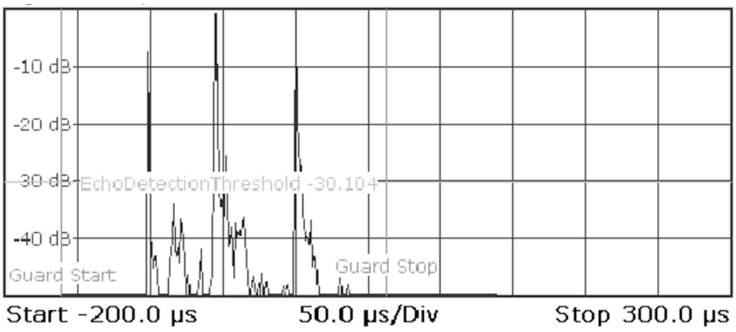


Fig. 31.5. Channel impulse response with pre-echo and 0-dB echo

31.1.2 Pre-echoes

Pre-echoes are signal paths in a single-frequency network which appear with a lower level and earlier than the main path (Fig. 31.4.). In theory, it should be possible for all receivers to handle this situation without any problem. In practice, however, it is found that many, mainly older DVB-T receivers cannot manage this. This also depends on the delay time between the 0-dB path, i.e. the main path, and the reduced pre-echo. The problem of the pre-echo can be explained simply by the fact that the receiver simply places the FFT sampling window symmetrically over the main path and thus pushes the pre-echo beyond the guard interval.

31.1.3 The 0-dB Echo

It is called a 0-dB echo if 2 or more signal paths having the same level but different delays appear at the receiver (Fig. 31.5.). This can also lead to receiver synchronization problems, mainly in the case of longer delay differences from half the guard interval onward. In theory, a receiver should be able to cope also with this receiving situation without any problem. This problem, too, is explained by the receiver placing the FFT window so badly that one signal path is located outside the guard interval.

31.1.4 Quasi Mobile Receiving Situation

It is called a quasi mobile receiving situation if the channel continuously changes due to continuously changing conditions of reflection. The behavior of a receiver in this situation depends on the characteristics of the channel correction of the receiver and, naturally, on the receiving situation. Quasi mobile receiving situations are encountered when e.g. there is no direct line of sight to the transmitters and the reception "lives" mainly from reflections, but these reflections are influenced by cars, trains, trams etc.

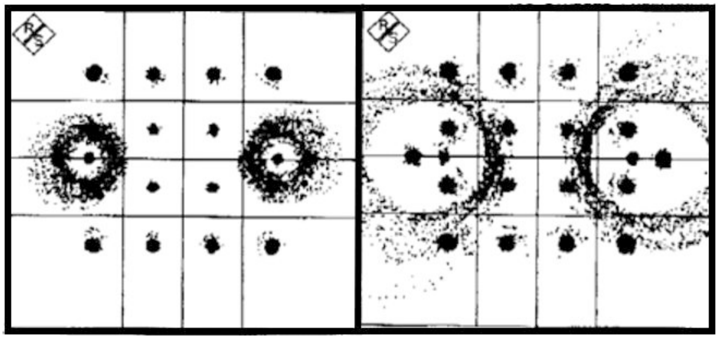


Fig. 31.6. Constellation diagrams in an SFN with differently transmitted TPS bits

31.1.5 Transmission of Non-Identical TPS Bits

In DVB-T, a total of 67 bits are transmitted as so-called TPS (transmission parameter signalling) bits via 68 symbols. These bits represent a fast information channel from transmitter to receiver for conveying the transmission parameters. These transmission parameters are, among other things, modulation method, error protection etc. Apart from the TPS bits already defined originally in the DVB-T standard, there are the reserved bits, more and more of which are used, e.g., for cell ID and DVB-H.

A length indicator transmitted before the actual TPS payload bits tells how many of the reserved TPS bits are actually currently being used. It is important that all transmitters in an SFN transmit all TPS bits identically and completely synchronously. It has happened a number of times that transmitters in an SFN were configured differently and had transmitted length indicator and reserved bits differently. Depending on their location, the receivers which had then actually evaluated the TPS bits were unable to cope with the receiving situation and could not lock up. The TPS carriers work with DBPSK modulation, i.e. with differential BPSK modulation. The information is transferred in the difference from one symbol to the next. However, this means that from the point in time at which a TPS bit is transmitted differently than at other transmitter sites, the carrier vectors are pointing in the opposite direction and the DBPSK modulation no longer works, causing the circular distortions in the constellation diagram at the TPS points (see Fig. 31.6.) It is strongly recommended always to have one or more test vehicles in the field for all changes being carried out in an SFN and to determine the situation also at the TPS carriers (e.g. carrier No. 50).

31.1.6 Frequency Accuracy of the Transmitters

It is important that all transmitters in an SFN transmit at the same frequency, as accurately as possible. The accuracy to be aimed for is $1 \cdot 10^{-9}$ or better. The frequency accuracy can be easily verified with a suitable test receiver by measuring the impulse response. This provides a frequency accuracy of somewhat better than 0.5 Hz, a condition which normally can be easily met.

31.2 Practical Examples

The DVB-T single-frequency networks (SFNs) used as the example are DVB-T networks (but now running in DVB-T2) in the South of Germany, in Germany's largest federal state which has a geography of high (Alps) and low mountain ranges and includes the gentle foothills. This topography was of the greatest significance in the planning of the networks.

The Southern Bavaria DVB-T network consists of the two transmitters Olympic Tower Munich and Mt. Wendelstein. The Olympic Tower is a typical telecommunications tower to the North-West of Munich with a height of 292 m at about 450 m above sea level. It was originally used as microwave tower for telephoning and was built in 1968. Microwave has been largely replaced by optical fiber today and is no longer of the same significance as before. Thus there are hardly any more microwave dishes in operation on the Olympic Tower. At the upper end of the Olympic Tower there are the transmitting antennas for FM radio, DAB and now also for DVB-T.

The Mt. Wendelstein transmitter is located at about 1750 m above sea level on the mountain of the same name which has a total height of 1850 m. Although it is not the highest mountain in Bavaria, or Germany, for that matter, it has certainly one of the most beautiful panoramic views in Bavaria. The TV transmitter there is the oldest one in Bavaria, and possibly also the one with the most beautiful location. Anyone who has been able to experience a sunrise or sunset there - which is something not many people are able to do because of the lack of an hotel at the top - will be able to confirm this.

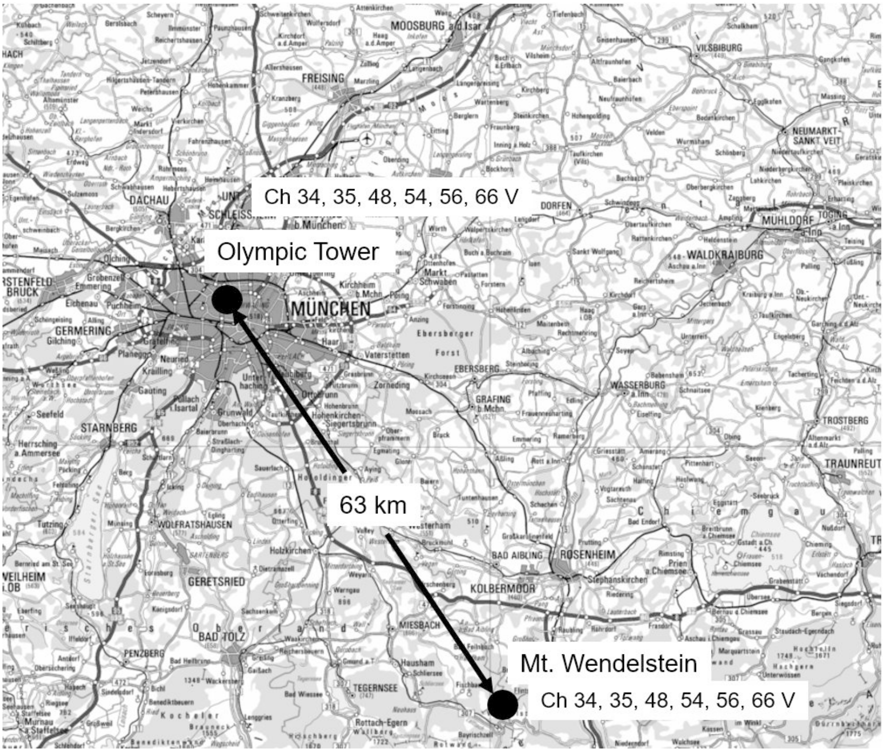


Fig. 31.7. DVB-T single-frequency network Southern Bavaria (DTK500; © Landesamt für Vermessung und Geoinformation Bayern, Nr. 4385/07)

The Wendelstein transmitter belongs to the Bayerischer Rundfunk. The two Munich Olympic Tower and Wendelstein transmitters form the SFN Southern Bavaria which was taken into operation in the night of the 30th May 2005. At the same time, this was the end of analog terrestrial television in Southern Bavaria. The Munich Olympic Tower and the Wendelstein transmitters broadcast 6 DVB-T channels completely synchronously on the same frequencies as DVB-T single frequency network. The data rates are about 13 Mbit/s each and each carries about 4 TV programs per data stream. Altogether, the viewer is thus provided with about 22 programs over terrestrial digital antenna TV. These TV programs, which are both public service programs and private programs, form a viable alternative to the satellite and cable media. The transmitting frequencies are now only located in the UHF band.

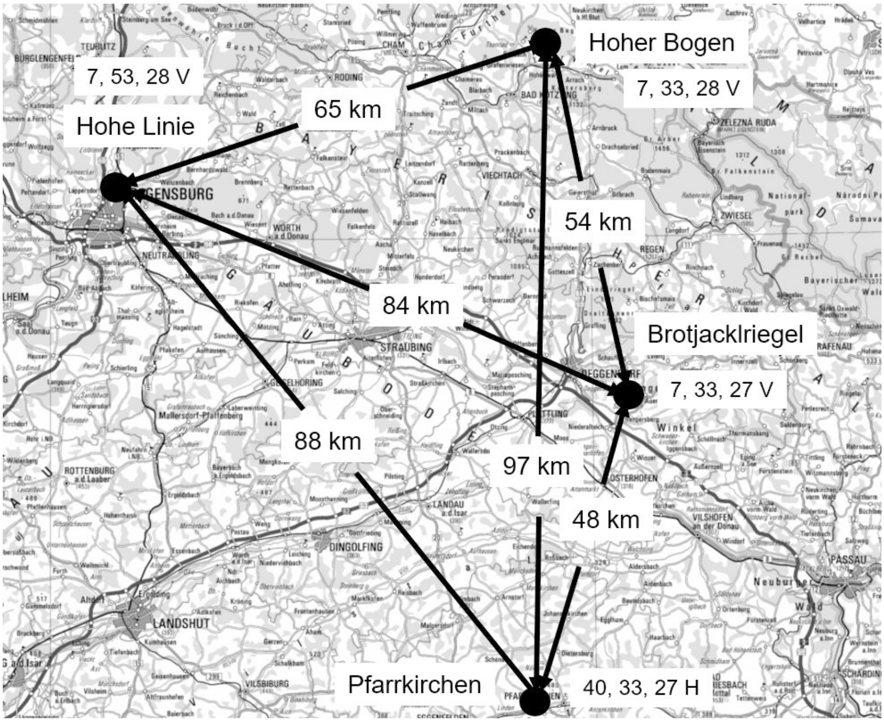


Fig. 31.8. DVB-T single-frequency network Eastern Bavaria (DTK500; © Landesamt für Vermessung und Geoinformation Bayern, Nr. 4385/07)

The DVB-T single-frequency network Eastern Bavaria consists of the 4 TV transmitting stations Pfarrkirchen (T-Systems/Deutsche Telekom, now Media Broadcast GmbH), Brotjacklriegel (BR), Hoher Bogen (BR) and Hohe Linie (BR). Two of these transmitters (Brotjacklriegel and Hoher Bogen) are located in the low mountain ranges of the Bavarian Forrest at approx. 1000 m above sea level. The 4 transmitting stations broadcast 3 DVB-T transport streams, some of them at the same frequencies. Only public service programs are distributed. The data rate per data stream is also approx. 13 Mbit/s. Alltogether, 12 programs are distributed. Fig. 31.7. shows the sites of the transmitters in the DVB-T single-frequency network Southern Bavaria and Fig. 31.8. shows the sites of the transmitters in the DVB-T network Eastern Bavaria. With 63 km, the distances between transmitters in the DVB-T single-frequency network Southern Bavaria, consisting of the Olympic tower and Mt. Wendelstein, are right on the limit of what is still allowed. In the DVB-T single-frequency network Eastern Bavaria, the permissible distances between transmitters have been greatly exceeded in some cases and, without inbuilt delay times, would lead to guard interval violations at some locations. Both networks are now switched from DVB-T to DVB-T2. That means they are now DVB-T2 single-frequency networks and the technical situations are now a little bit different.

31.2.1 Pre-echoes

The pre-echoes described occur mainly in regions in which the closer path in terms of distance is attenuated more compared with the 0-dB path due to geographical obstacles (hills, mountains). In the region of the SFN Southern Bavaria described this occurs, e.g, to the North of the Munich airport in the vicinity of the course of the river Isar, where the Olympia Tower is shaded by hills and more distant Wendelstein transmitter thus dominates.

31.2.2 The 0-dB Echoes

0-dB echoes occur whenever two or more paths appear with the same power level at the receiver due to the propagation conditions. In the SFN Southern Bavaria, such a situation occurs mainly in the region of the "Erdinger Moos" around Munich airport. It is very flat there and the Wendelstein and Olympia Tower transmitters are received partly with the same level, but with an extreme delay difference of about 140 µs.

31.2.3 Quasi Mobile Channel

A quasi mobile channel exists in regions where there is no direct line of sight to the transmitters. This is the case where the transmitters are shielded by obstacles and the reception survives with reflections partly from "variable" obstacles such as cars, trains or trams.

31.2.4 TPS Bits

When SFNs are commissioned or re-organized, it may happen that not all transmitters (of one or of different transmitter manufacturers) are identically configured and that the transmitters thus transmit different TPS information. This occurred several times during the commissioning or conversion of the SFN.

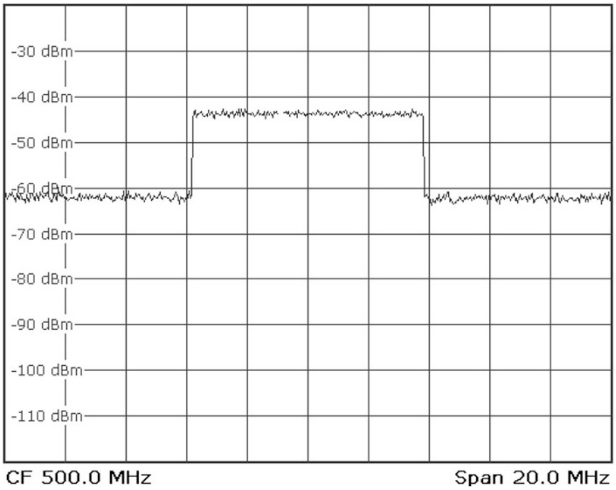


Fig. 31.9. Spectrum of a DVB-T signal in the AWGN channel

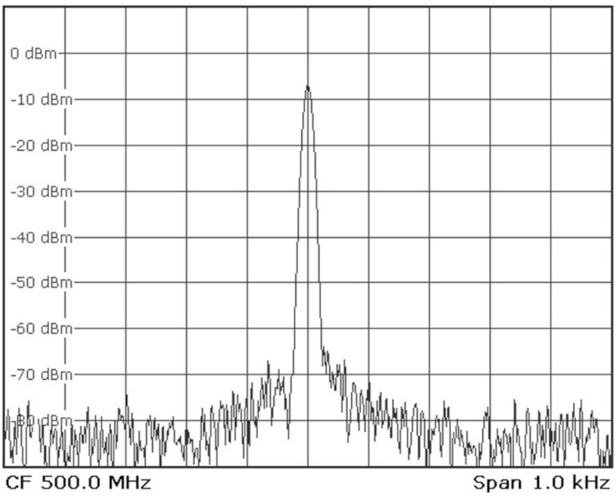


Fig. 31.10. Single COFDM carrier in an AWGN Channel

31.2.5 Mobile DVB-T Reception

A question often asked is "Up to what speed does DVB-T work?", a question which is not easily answered. In principle, it must be said at this point that DVB-T was never intended for mobile reception and, therefore, does not have any characteristics especially provided for this purpose succh as, e.g., a long time interleaver. Mobile reception depends mainly on the multi-path receiving situation. If only one signal path is received, mobile reception does not present a problem. The Doppler effect then only shifts the DVB-T spectrum in the direction of higher or lower frequencies, depending on whether one is moving towards the transmitter or away from it. At the usual travelling speeds, the frequency shift is of the order of 50 to 100 Hz. This frequency shift does not present a problem for DVB-T receivers receiving one signal path. In the case of multi-path reception and Doppler shift, the problem is one of spectrum smearing with all possible intermediate stages which will be presented in examples in the following paragraphs.

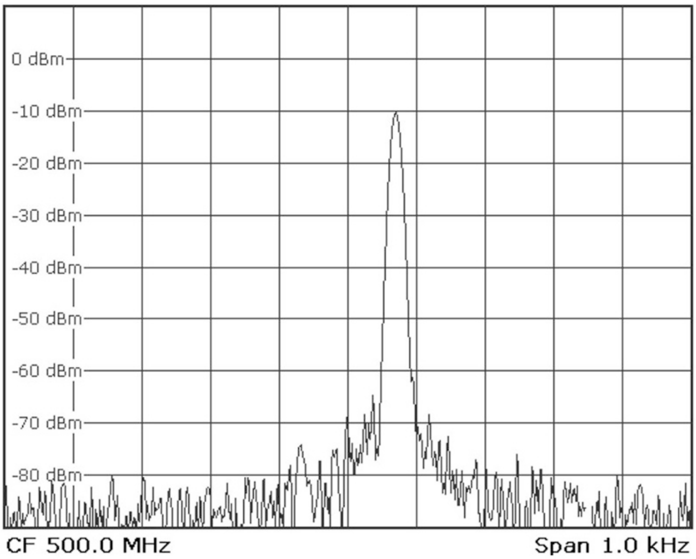


Fig. 31.11. Single frequency-shifted DVB-T carrier in a mobile channel

31.2.5.1 AWGN channel

In the AWGN channel, the carriers are only affected by noise, as shown in Fig. 31.12. The noise pedestal at about 20 dB below the payload signal can be seen clearly at the shoulder.
The single COFDM carriers are at exactly the right frequency positions in the AWGN channel (Fig. 31.10.). Each carrier is only affected by a greater or lesser "noise fringe".

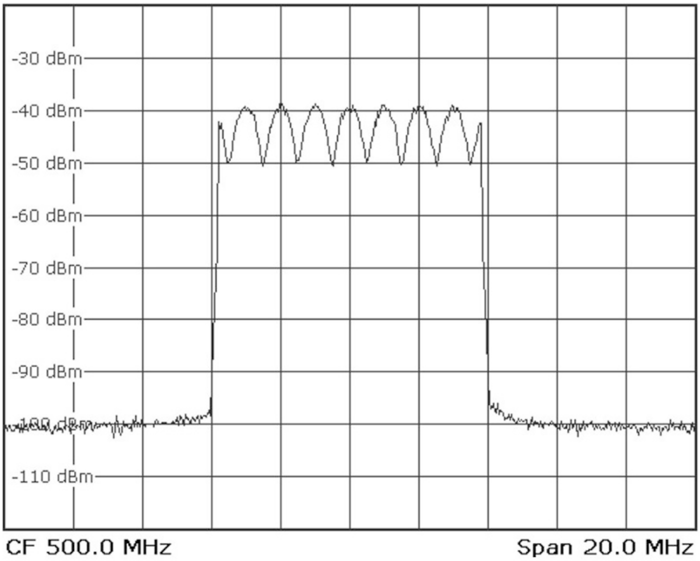


Fig. 31.12. Stationary multi-path reception of two signal paths (0dB/0µs, -5dB/1µs)

31.2.5.2 Doppler Shift

During movement in the mobile channel, the complete DVB-T signal is frequency shifted (Doppler effect). All single COFDM carriers are shifted towards higher or lower frequencies depending on whether one is moving towards the transmitter or away from it. Fig. 31.11. shows a single carrier, shifted by 70 Hz, of a DVB-T signal at a speed of 150 km/h moving towards the transmitter.

31.2.5.3 Stationary Multi-path Reception

In stationary multi-path reception the only problem is fading. Depending on the difference in echo delay and echo attenuation, more or less deep dips occur in the signal spectrum as shown in Fig. 31.12. The spacing of the dips corresponds to the inverse of the echo delay difference.

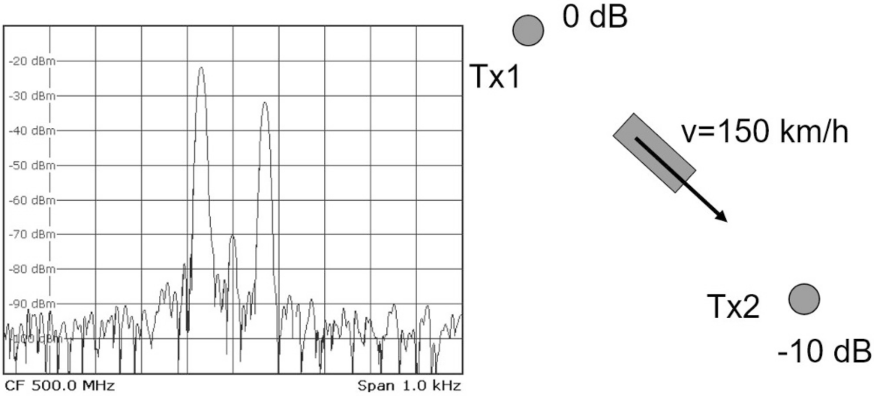


Fig. 31.13. Mobile multi-path reception of two signal paths (0dB and -10dB at 150 km/h)

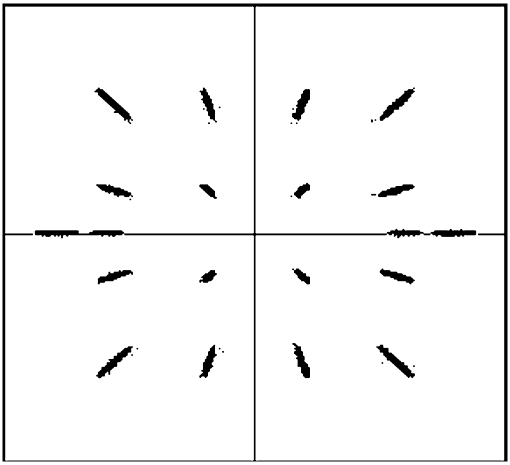


Fig. 31.14. DVB-T constellation diagram with unwanted amplitude modulation caused by mobile multi-path reception (500 MHz, 3 paths, -20dB/-150km/h, 0dB/0km/h, 150km/h/-20dB)

31.2.5.4 Mobile Multi-path Reception

In mobile multi-path reception, the DVB-T subcarriers are shifted simultaneously upwards and downwards in frequency (Fig. 31.13.) or may not be shifted at all. Depending on the receiving conditions, this frequency smearing results in unwanted amplitude modulation of the DVB-T signal.

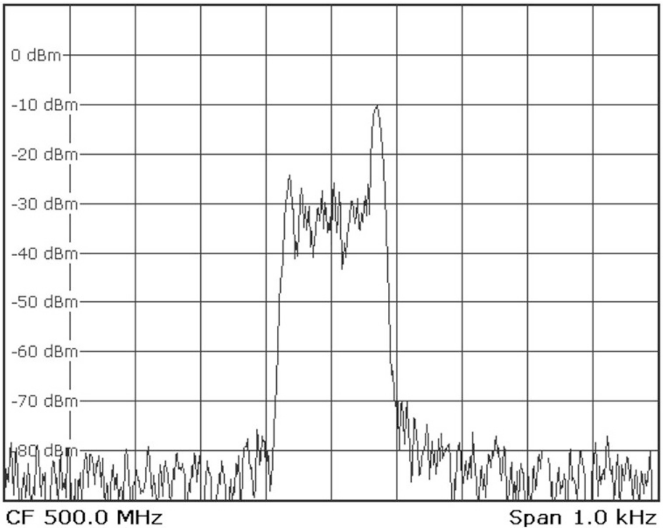


Fig. 31.15. Mobile Rice channel, v=150 km/h, power ratio = 10 dB

31.2.5.5 Mobile Rice Channel

The model of the Rice channel simulates the case of multiple multi-path reception and dominant main path. Fig. 31.15. shows the spectrum of a single DVB-T carrier in the mobile Rice channel. The dominant main channel can be clearly seen at -10 dB.

31.2.5.6 Rayleigh Channel

In the Rayleigh channel there is no longer a main path. It corresponds to the Rice channel with a power ratio = 0 dB. Fig. 31.16. shows an example of a single DVB-T carrier in the mobile Rayleigh channel at a speed of 150 km/h.

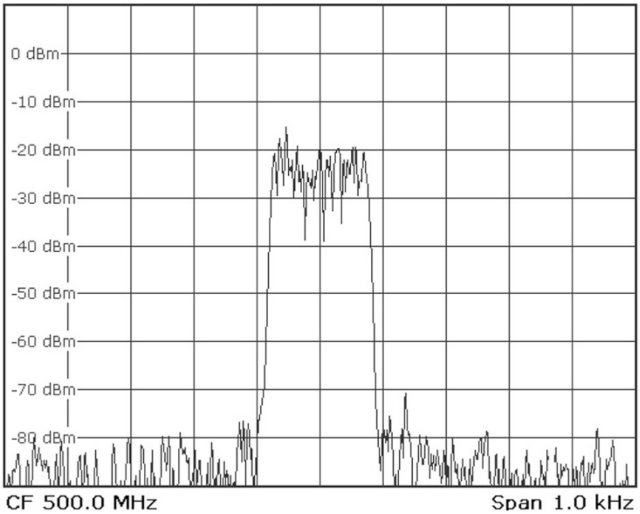


Fig. 31.16. Mobile Rayleigh channel, v=150 km/h, power ratio = 10 dB

Comparable "mobile situations" can be created in a DVB-T receiver even by dried-out electrolytic capacitors in an antenna amplifier. Superimposed AC hum produced by these can create an unwanted amplitude modulation at 50 or 100 Hz. Fig.31.17. shows a corresponding constellation diagram.

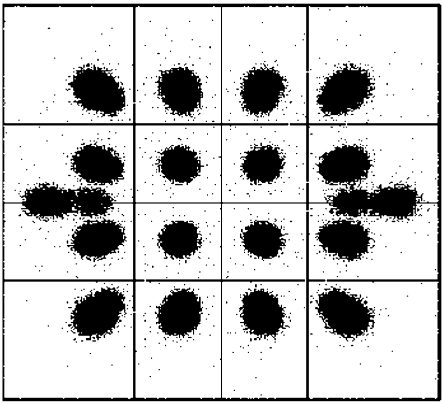


Fig. 31.17. Unwanted amplitude modulation caused by a broken electrolytic capacitor in an antenna amplifier

31.3 Response of DVB-T Receivers

The response of DVB-T receivers in one or the other receiving situation is greatly dependent on the characteristics of the respective receiver, i.e. mainly on the characteristics of the installed tuner, the DVB-T chip, the MPEG decoder and the firmware of the receiver. In the next section, testing of the receiver will be discussed. The characteristics of the tuner can be differentiated as follows:

- Noise figure
- Phase noise
- RF and IF selectivity characteristics
- Linearity/intermodulation

The characteristics of the tuner essentially determine the minimum received level required and the adjacent-channel compatibility, especially with a high adjacent-channel level.

The DVB-T chip is mainly responsible for how well a receiver can handle different receiving situations such as

- Pre-echo
- 0-dB echo
- Multi-path reception in general
- Mobile reception and quasi mobile reception
- Adjacent-channel occupancy
- TPS bits set differently
- Hierarchical modulation

The MPEG decoder and the firmware determine how the receiver responds to different transport stream contents. This relates to:

- The channel search (speed and characteristics under critical conditions
- The PSI/SI tables (e.g. response to dynamic PMT)
- Response to network overlap (identical service in different TS)
- Decoding of the elementary stream
- Signalling of the source characteristics (4:3/16:9, mono/stereo)
- Error concealment
- Switching rate
- Stability

- Receiver configuration such as teletext, VPS, MHP

31.4 Receiver Test

The characteristics of TV receivers must be tested comprehensively especially in terrestrial broadcasting in order to find out how well they are capable of handling the problem situations described in the previous sections. Receivers are tested in

- the development of receivers,
- production handover (EMI, EMC,...),
- receiver production for final testing,
- comparing receivers in test houses and at network operators.

Experience has shown that DVB-T receivers especially have not been adequately "stress tested". The maximum amount of tests should be performed at least during the receiver development, the production handover and the receiver comparison. These maximum tests are:

- Detecting the minimum receiver input level at some frequencies
- Detecting the minimum SNR at some frequencies
- The response at high adjacent-channel levels (close or more distant)
- The response with co-channel reception of analog TV
- The response of the receiver during channel search
- The response of the receiver with network overlap
- Measuring the booting speed
- Measuring the switching speed
- Testing the teletext function
- Testing the VPS function
- Testing the response of dynamic PSI/SI tables
- Testing the firmware configuration and quality
- EMC tests
- Mechanical construction

The minimum tests in production must be suitably selected for the respective product by the manufacturer.

33.4.1 Minimum Receiver Input Level in the AWGN Channel

The minimum receiver input level should first be determined in the AWGN channel with different transmission parameters (64QAM, 16QAM, QPSK, different code rates) at least 3 frequencies (one VHF and two UHF frequencies). The receiver is supplied with one signal path in this case. Starting with a level of abut 50 dBµV, this level is reduced until the visual and aural assessment of decoded video and audio shows that the receiver is no longer operating correctly. It is important that, when the precise point when the "fall-off-the-cliff" occurs is determined, one always waits for a sufficiently long time (at least 1 minute) to see whether the receiver is really still operating in a stable mode.

31.4.2 Minimum SNR

Apart from determining the minimum receiver input level, it is of interest to determine the minimum signal/noise ratio in the AWGN channel. The results should then be compared with the minimum receiver input level measurement and discussed. These tests should also be performed at at least 3 frequencies (the same ones as in paragraph 3.4.4.1, of course), selecting, e.g., a "sensible" DVB-T receiver input level of 50 to 60 dBµV so that the receiver is neither supplied too poorly nor caused to go into attenuating mode. More and more noise is then added progressively until the "fall off the cliff" condition is reached again. This, too, is then determined carefully as in 31.4.4.1.

31.4.3 Adjacent-Channel Occupancy

In the adjacent-channel test, the response of a DVB-T receiver with a high adjacent-channel level is determined placing an adjacent DVB-T channel below or above a payload channel. The level of the adjacent channel or channels is then increased more and more until no further reliable reception is possible. This test, too, is performed with different transmission parameters. The aim should be to be able to handle an adjacent-channel level which is at least 20 dB above the useful level. Such conditions could easily arise especially with a mixed DVB-T/DVB-H/DAB scenario. This test should also be performed at 3 frequencies, at the least.

31.4.4 Co-channel Reception

Checking the co-channel reception of DVB-T with DVB-T is essentially already done since a non-synchronous DVB-T interference signal virtually looks like noise. Testing with analog TV in the co-channel, however, is definitely a noteworthy measurement but depends greatly on the ATV image content chosen.

31.4.5 Multi-path Reception

In the multi-path reception test, the receiver is presented with a situation which can occur in real life in an MFN or SFN, using a test transmitter with a channel simulator (fading simulator).

31.4.6 Channel Search

Testing the channel search function of a receiver mainly tests the search rate and also the search action under different conditions (incl. adjacent-channel occupancy). The test should also involve checking of the performance of a receiver with wrong NIT entries. This also includes its performance in the case of network overlaps, i.e. when receiving the same services from different transport streams. This occurs in regions where the receiver is seeing two or more networks, i.e. at the edges of SFNs.

31.4.7 Booting Speed and Action

In the world of computers, "booting" is known to be the initialization of a computer. Since a DVB-T receiver is also nothing else than a computer, it takes a certain time until it is ready for operation and a user will be interested to know how long this will take and how it takes place.

31.4.8 Program Change

Users find it particularly bothersome if a program change takes a long time and is "untidy". This test checks the receiver reaction to "zapping".

31.4.9 Teletext

DVB provides for the "tunneling" of teletext via private PES packets and this is done mainly by the program providers operating under public law. In this arrangement, teletext is gated back into the vertical blanking interval of the video signal by the receiver at the analog output interface (SCART or cinch connector). A TV receiver connected there can then decode this teletext. It is also possible for the DVB-T receiver itself to decode the teletext and to output it as a frame signal, storing a number of pages in its buffer. The teletext modes supported by a receiver, either gated into the vertical blanking interval or self-decoded, are a criterion for testing and comparing receivers.

31.4.10 VPS Functions

In data line 16 in the vertical blanking interval of the analog TV signal, the VPS information for controlling video recorders has hitherto been transmitted, among other items. This signal, too, can be "tunneled" in DVB in private PES packets in the MPEG-2 data stream and used directly in the receiver (hard disk receiver) and/or gated back into line 16 at the CCVS interface. A video recorder connected there can then respond to this signal and control the recording. These functions, too, must be covered in a receiver comparison test.

31.4.11 Dynamic PSI/SI Tables

Dynamic PSI/SI tables means the change of these tables with time. EIT and TOT/TDT are clearly always dynamic but there are also so-called "window programs" which are transmitted only at particular times of the day and are signalled by changing PMTs, so-called dynamic PMTs. A change in the PMT is not recognized by all receivers which is why the response to changes in PAT, PMTs and the SDT should be tested.

31.4.12 Firmware Configuration

The way in which a DVB receiver can be operated and how especially the electronic program guide is handled depends greatly on the firmware installed in the receiver. This is another matter to which attention should be paid in a receiver comparison test.

31.4.13 Miscellaneous

Naturally, the receiver test also includes adherence to the EMC regulations but this will not be discussed in greater detail at this point. As well, an assessment of the mechanical construction of the receiver case is of importance in a comparison of receivers in test establishments but this again will not be discussed any further here.

31.5 Network Planning

Naturally, a network expansion is preceded by network planning which today is done with the support of software tools. This involves simulation and determination of the network data such as antenna patterns, transmitter powers, error protection. guard interval, delays etc and calculation of the coverage of the regions on the basis of geographical, topographical and morphological data and with knowledge of the possible transmitter sites. Firstly, the frequencies and powers, direction of radiation etc are assigned by the regulatory authorities. In border regions this requires international coordination. Examples of planning tools in the German-speaking area are:

- Tools by the Deutsche Telekom
- Tools by the Institut für Rundfunktechnik (IRT)
- Tools by the company LStelcom

The software CHIRplus_BC© by the company LStelcom (Lichtenau near Baden-Baden, Germany), in particular, is encountered throughout the world. By now, the author also has gained the experience that with the appropriate use of planning tools, the problem areas described above for receivers (0-dB echo, pre-echoes) can be unambiguously identified, e.g. by clicking on corresponding buttons in the planning software.

31.6 Filling the Gaps in the Coverage

Even in the days of analog television, gaps in the coverage were normally filled by so-called gap fillers, called translators. In analog television, alternative channels with guard band without adjacent-channels being occupied were selected which supply a signal received from a master transmitter for covering a limited region. In this set-up, TV signals of a master transmitter, received by rebroadcasting reception, were translated into another TV channel and then retransmitted via a transmitter, thus covering a region which was otherwise shaded. In digital terrestrial television it is firstly assumed that many areas are automatically covered by the characteristics of digital television. Nevertheless, depending on the required coverage which, in turn, is dependent on the country concerned, additional gap fillers cannot be avoided. This is because, in analog television, reflections have not only led to reception not being possible at all, but in moderate cases have simply caused unsightly "ghost images". There are no longer any "ghost images" in digital television and, because of COFDM, neither do echoes present problems to the same extent as in analog television. In theory, a COFDM system should be able to handle such a situation quite easily, of course. But if the received field strength is too low because of shading, such regions must still be covered by gap fillers even with digital terrestrial television. In digital television, these gap fillers can be operated both at the same frequency and at other frequencies. In analog television, these transmitters had to be operated at other frequencies. There are:

- Transmitters transmitting at the same frequency (gap fillers, SFN)
- Frequency-converting transmitters (transposers, MFN)
- Frequency-converting transmitters with remodulation (retransmitters, MFN)

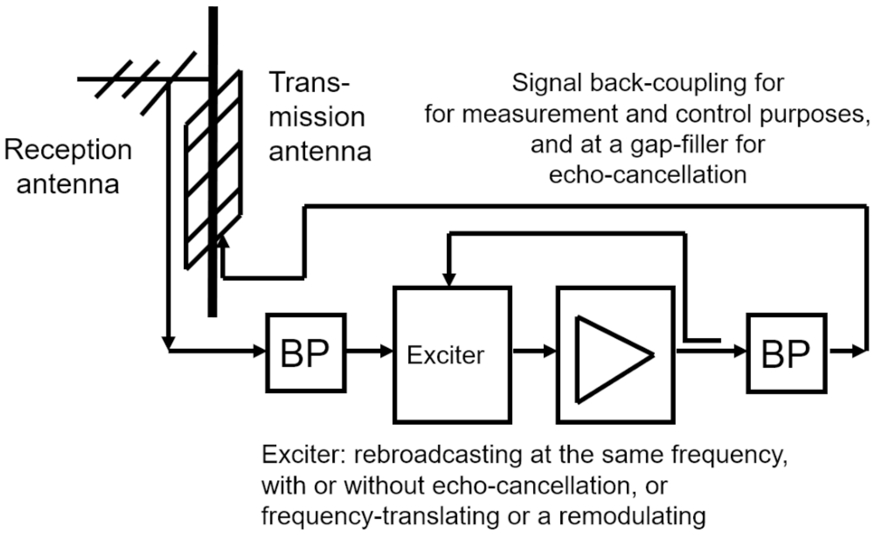


Fig. 31.18. Principle of a gap-filler or translator

To fill gaps in the coverage of SFNs, only gap fillers are used. In these transmitters transmitting at the same frequency, remodulation is impossible since going back to data stream level (demodulating) and remodulating would involve too much delay. This is why in this case the approach of downconverting to a low intermediate frequency and upconverting again to RF and amplifying was adopted. It is important here that receiving and transmitting antenna must be sufficiently well decoupled. Up to a certain extent, an equalizer can be of assistance here in providing echo cancellation.

Fig. 31.19. Practical example of a translator or gap-filler site; the 2 (log periodic) receiving antennas are located in the lower part of the extended pinnacle of the tower, the 3 transmitting antennas (8-element bays) are located in its upper part

Apart from the transmitting antenna and the receiving antenna being sufficiently well decoupled, the correct orientation of the receiving antenna is also of great importance. If possible, only one signal path, and not several as in a multi-path situation, should be forwarded from the SFN. Under no circumstances should pre-echo situations or a 0-dB echo path be radiated since this will lead to problems in many receivers as is well known. Otherwise, receiver problems are created not only over a small area at some locations but over a large area in the gap-filling region and possibly beyond. In the case of a frequency-converting transmitter, the approach via the IF can be selected as in the case of the gap filler, or one can choose a remodulation process. Remodulation is more expensive and means delay, of course. This is also the reason why remodulation is not possible in the gap filler because otherwise the SFN timing would be violated completely. However, remodulation is more stable and, above all, results in a better signal quality. When the transmitter powers are greater, however, the recommended approach is always that of remodulation or of using the retransmitter, respectively.

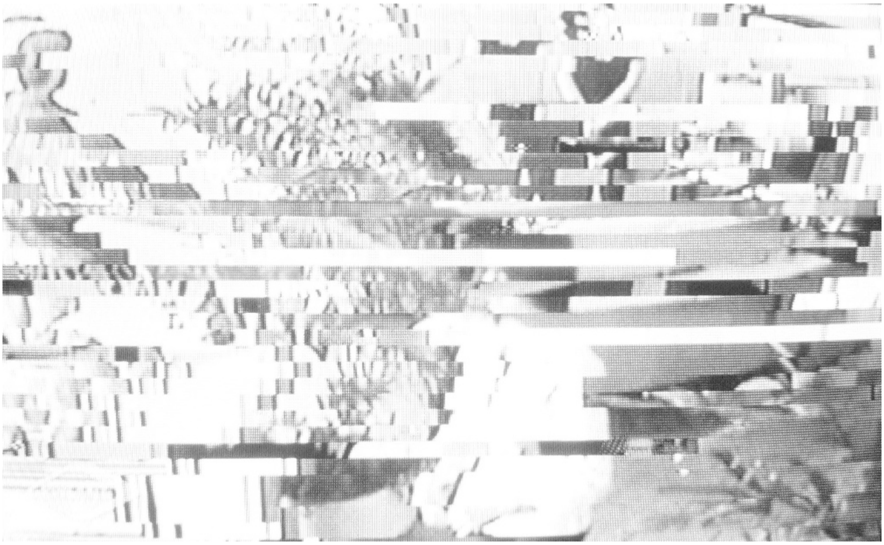


Fig. 31.20. „Fall off the Cliff" artifacts in digital television

31.7 Fall-off-the-Cliff

Blocking artifacts caused by the compression are too often mistaken for artifacts caused by the transmission link. An image at the output of a receiver which, due to bit errors, has been brought to the limit of decodability, i.e. the "fall-off-the-cliff" state, looks quite different from an image which has been rendered "unsightly" due to too much MPEG compression. In the case of bit errors, entire slices are missing or the entire image freezes or no image can be seen at all. Fig. 31.20. shows an image in which entire groups of blocks, so-called slices, are missing within a line.

31.8 Summary

The empirical values described in this chapter on the basis of DVB-T can also be applied to other terrestrial transmission standards. The differences to DAB, ISDB-T, DVB-T2 and other standards lie in the details of error correction and modulation, but the principle always remains the same. So while this chapter focuses on DVB-T based on the author's experience, the principles are not limited to DVB-T. This section presented experiences and problems of real networks in the hope that these experiences will help to identify and resolve most real-world problems and dispel the fear from the new digital television. Digital television is different from its analog counterpart, but not more mysterious if one has the experience.

Bibliography: [VIERACKER], [NorDig], [D-book], [LVGB]

32 DTMB

32.1 DMB-T, or now DTMB

DTMB - Digital Terrestrial Multimedia Broadcasting - is a Chinese standard which, like DVB-T - has the aim of broadcasting television economically terrestrially by digital means and with modern supplementary services. DMB-T was published in 2006 – at least in excerpts, as “GB20600-2006 – Framing Structure, Channel Coding and Modulation for Digital Terrestrial Broadcasting System”. It was renamed DTMB, having combined two proposals to form one standard in 2007. In one proposal, a multi-carrier method was stipulated, in the other one a single-carrier method is suggested. The favoured proposal of the multi-carrier method comes from Tsinghua University in Beijing and was called DMB-T for a long time. The single-carrier method is called ADTB-T and originates from Jiaotong University in Shanghai. DTMB has similarities with DVB-T whilst ADTB-T is derived from the North American ATSC.

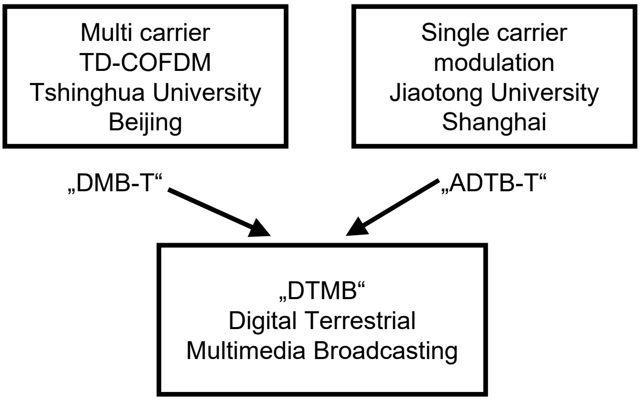


Fig. 32.1. Joining two proposals to form DTMB

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_32

32.2 Some more Details

It is used single carrier modulation and TD-COFDM (Time Domain Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex), among other things. In multicarrier mode the guard interval is here not filled with the end of the next symbol following but with a PRBS. This symbol preamble is called frame header and has a length of 56.6 µs, 78.7 µs or 125 µs with a channel bandwidth of 8 MHz. In multicarrier mode DTMB runs in 4K mode with 3780 used carriers which are spaced apart at 2 kHz in the 8 MHz channel. The symbol period is therefore 500 µs. 3744 of these 3780 carriers are modulated data carriers and 36 are signalling carriers, i.e. virtually TPS carriers. DTMB supports channel bandwidths of 8, 7 and 6 MHz. The useful spectrum is 7.56 MHz wide in the 8 MHz channel. The net data rate is between 4.813 Mbit/s and 32.486 Mbit/s. The spectrum is roll-off filtered with a roll-off factor of r=0.05. The transmission method is intended for SDTV and HDTV transmissions and should work both in stationary and in mobile operation. It is possible to implement both MFN and SFN networks.

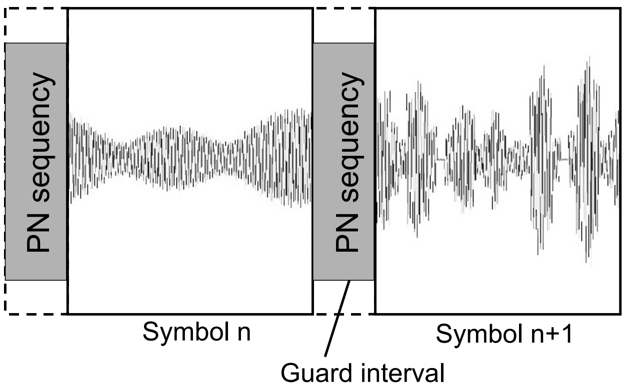


Fig. 32.2. DTMB TD-COFDM

The following can be selected as modulation methods on the 3744 data carriers:

- 64QAM
- 32QAM
- 16QAM
- 4QAM
- 4QAM=NR (Nordstrom Robinson)

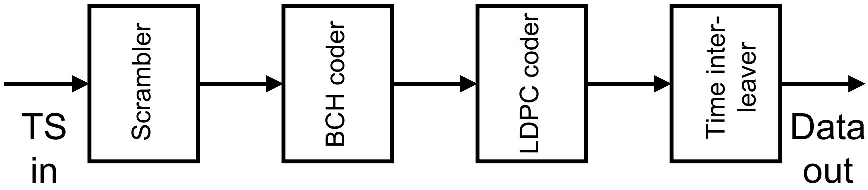


Fig. 32.3. DTMB Forward Error Correction

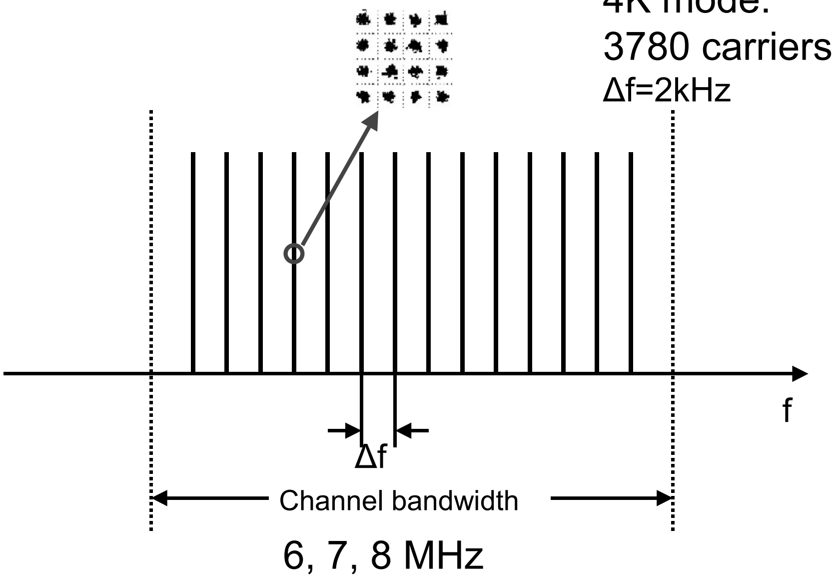


Fig. 32.4. Characteristics of the DTMB multi-carrier mode

The error protection in DTMB (Fig. 32.3.) consists of a

- Scrambler
- BCH coder
- LDPC coder
- Time interleaver

The DTMB signal is made up out of a

- Signal frame (frame header + frame body = virtually guard + symbol)
- Super frame = N1 · signal frame
- Minute frame = N2 · super frame
- Calendar day frame = N3 · minute frame

As in other transmission methods too, the input signal of a DTMB transmitter is the MPEG-2 transport stream.

Unfortunately, it is difficult to provide more details of DTMB. Not much has been published and not all of the published papers appear to agree with one another, either. At this stage it appears to be prudent to say nothing rather than to provide false information. It is not really clear what advantages are to be gained by a guard interval filled with a PN sequence. The only thing that is clear is that licensing rights have moved towards being less binding with regard to DVB and ATSC and that some details of standards may well have something to do with this. Neither is it clear from where and to what purpose the roll-off characteristic has been introduced. The roll-off characteristic in multi-carrier mode may well come from the guard interval filled with a PN sequence (single-carrier method in the guard interval?).

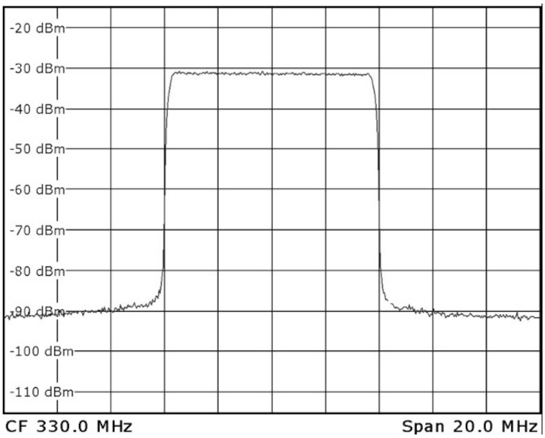


Fig. 32.5. DTMB spectrum

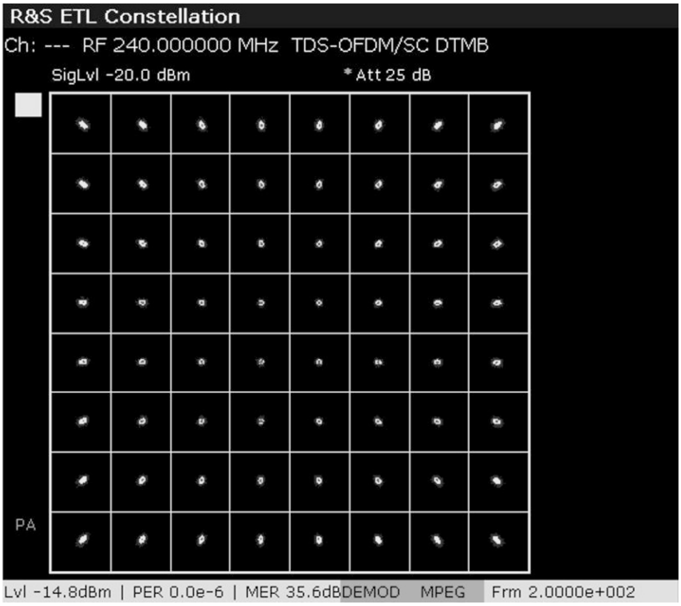


Fig. 32.6. DTMB constellation diagram [ETL]

Bibliography: [DTMB], [BTC], [ETL]

33 DOCSIS – Data over Cable Service Interface Specification

Broadband cable networks, so-called CATV networks have been used since about the mid-1980s for distributing broadcast signals as an alternative to terrestrial or satellite transmissions. The end of the 1990s saw the appearance of the first data and telephony services on cable networks. For this purpose, the DVB-C return channel was defined early on in the DVB project as DVB-RCC and identified as DVB-RCC/DAVIC; however, this standard never caught on. At the same time, work on DOCSIS (Data Over Cable Service Interface Specification) was already in progress in the USA. The purpose of DOCSIS was to specify a bidirectional data connection between cable modems (CM) and a CMTS (Cable Modem Termination System) in order to be able to offer telephony over IP as well as Internet access. These days, such solutions are called “triple play”, i.e. three applications from a single connector: broadcasting (radio and TV), Internet, and telephony. In Europe, a slightly modified version of the system was rolled out as “EuroDOCSIS”, with only the downstream changed to use a DVB-C signal instead of the J83B signal in the original DOCSIS. Fast Internet access over broadband cable networks is highly attractive and is practically the only service where cable network operators really make money. It has thus been prioritized over the classic distribution of broadcasting services only.

33.1 Downstream

Downstream (DS) is the flow of data to the subscribers. In the first DOCSIS systems, the service was about transferring MPEG-2 Transport Streams, however, without any MPEG or DVB tables. The data protocol itself is completely defined in the DOCSIS specification, and data are transmitted via a Transport Stream PID (e.g. 0x1FFE) using data piping. This is clearly shown by the fact that a connected MPEG analyzer does not recognize any protocols and at best refers to data piping. The physical carrier of this data stream in case of the US DOCSIS standard is a J83B signal

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_33

using 64QAM or 256QAM modulation. EuroDOCSIS uses DVB-C with 64QAM or 256QAM in the downstream. The downstream channel bandwidth in DOCSIS is 6 MHz, while the typical downstream bandwidth in EuroDOCSIS is 8 MHz.

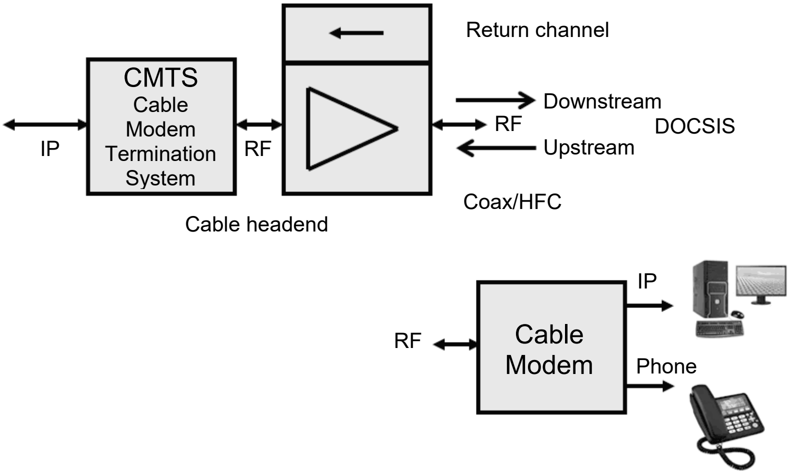


Fig. 33.1. CATV network with cable modem termination system (CMTS) and cable modem (CM)

Table 33.1. Downstream (DS) data rates

Standard	Data rate and symbol rate per downstream channel
DOCSIS, J83B, 64QAM, 6 MHz	26.97 Mbit/s, SR=5.057 Ms/s
DOCSIS, J83B, 256QAM, 6 MHz	38.81 Mbit/s, SR=5.361 Ms/s
EURO-DOCSIS, DVB-C, 64QAM, 8 MHz	38.44 Mbit/s, SR=6.952 Ms/s
EURO-DOCSIS, DVB-C, 256QAM, 8 MHz	51.25 Mbit/s, SR=6.952 Ms/s

In contrast to the upstream (US), the downstream (DS) is a continuous data flow. However, the downstream is also shared among multiple subscribers, using appropriate addressing. Several downstreams per CATV subscriber segment are possible. In DOCSIS 1.0 through 3.0, each subscriber, i.e. each cable modem also receives all packets of the other subscribers; packages of other subscribers must be discarded.

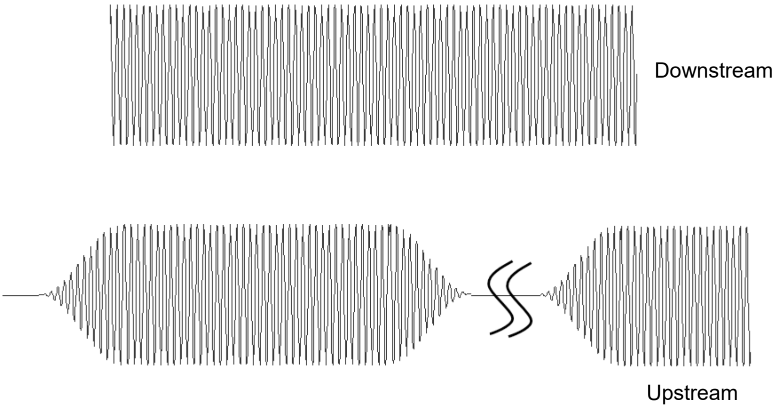


Fig. 33.2. Time domain downstream (DS) and upstream (US) in DOCSIS 1.0 through 3.0

33.2 Upstream

Upstream (US) is the data stream transferred from the cable modem (CM) to the CMTS. It is also called return channel. Physically, the return channel in the early DOCSIS versions is between 5 and 65 MHz. CATV networks shall be return channel capable; this means that all CATV network components must have a reverse signal path and the frequency range of the return channel has to be free of any other transmission. Additionally, the return channel shall also be free from interferences. Such disturbances, usually man-made, are called ingress noise. Coaxial cables and outlets must usually be replaced by better-shielded solutions to minimize ingress noise. Mostly the network layer at the subscriber premises is affected by this phenomenon. The upstream frequency range is shared among multiple subscribers using time slots (Time Division Multiple Access, TDMA). Slots are clocked by the CMTS. However, cable networks must also be appropriately divided into segments (clusters) to avoid excessive network load in the upstream and downstream. The cable modem sends burst packets to the CMTS within the allowed time slot, using single carrier QAM with a relatively robust modulation type, i.e. QPSK, 16QAM, etc. Of course, the data are also error-protected, not only by the mechanisms of DVB or J83B, but also using an error protection provided within the DOCSIS framework. The burst packets must meet certain timing conditions, i.e. the rise and fall times are defined. After logging in, the cable modem (CM) and the CMTS negotiate the time slots relevant to the CM; also, the upstream level is adjusted and the CM frequency is synchronized.

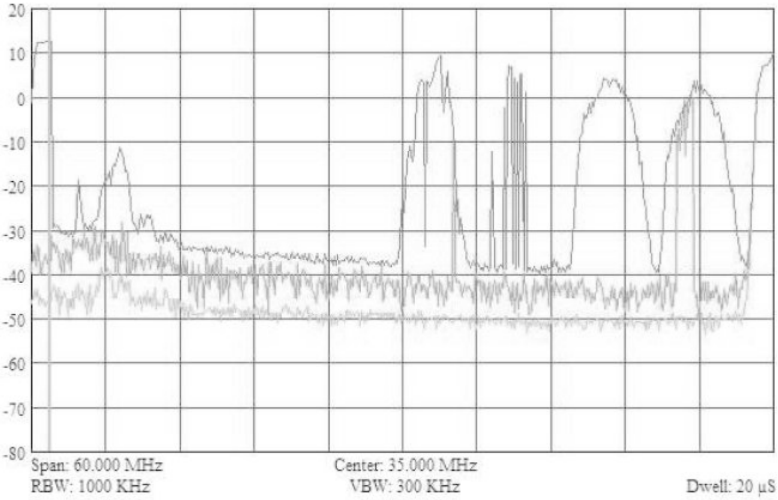


Fig. 33.3. Practical example of a DOCSIS 2.0 upstream range (5 to 65 MHz, displayed range: 5 to 65MHz), measured on the CMTS

33.3 CMTS and Cable Modem

The cable headend contains the "master", namely the CMTS (Cable Modem Termination System). One end of the CMTS is connected to an Internet backbone, the other end feeds to downstreams to the subscribers (cable modems, CM) and receives upstreams from them via the return channel. The CMTS as master specifies the time slots for the return channel of the cable modems. The CMTS measures the levels and quality of the return channels, and queries the quality of the received downstreams from the cable modems.

33.4 The Development of DOCSIS

The first broadband cable networks appeared already in the 1970s in regions where terrestrial broadcast coverage was poor; radio over satellite

did not exist then anyway. Around the mid-1980s, broadband cable networks began to spread using 75-Ohm coaxial technology to supply analog television and radio programs. In Germany, this was in the hands of the state-owned postal service back then, which resulted in the connection of about 40 percent of radio subscribers to the broadband cable network, with another approximately 40 percent using satellite coverage added later. From the 1990s, new networks were built using fiber-optic technology, and fiber-optics was also used in parts of the existing networks. This gave rise to the term “Hybrid Fiber Coax” (HFC) which refers to the hybrid usage of fiber and coax technologies. The “last mile” to and within the customer premises is mostly still implemented by copper cables.
With the deployment of broadband cable networks, the various physical network sections were divided into so-called network levels, namely

- Network Section 1: content creation and delivery to the cable headend
- Network Section 2: centralized CATV equipment like cable headend
- Network Section 3: CATV distribution (underground or above ground) using coaxial, fiber-optic, or HFC (hybrid fiber coax) technology from the cable headend to the building entry point
- Network Section 4: in-house distribution from the building entry point to the wall outlet
- Network Section 5: subscriber level after the wall outlet

The first DVB-C channels in the frequency range over 330 MHz were introduced from about 1996. This was the first step towards the digitization of broadband cable, but it was to take more than a decade for digital television to truly gain importance in broadband cable networks. 1997 saw the finalization of the first DOCSIS standard, DOCSIS 1.0 ratified as ”ITU-T J112”, aimed at providing IP and telephony over CATV networks. In contrast to today’s situation, Internet usage was not yet widespread at the end of the 1990s, and users at the time mostly had to cope with a modest 56 kbit/s or even less over the two-wire telephone line. DSL technology, although already defined, was also not really in use. DOCSIS 1.1 followed in 1999, then DOCSIS 2.0 as “ITU-T J222” shortly afterwards in 2001, and DOCSIS 3.0 in 2006 as "ITU-T J222". Today, DOCSIS 2.0 and DOCSIS 3.0 are in use in networks worldwide. DOCSIS 3.0 allows downstream data rates of 100 Mbit/s, in which case the end user receives the data rates of multiple downstream channels. Meanwhile, however, broadcasting services began to require significantly higher data rates as large flat screens prompted a desire for even more HDTV services. As a consequence, HD services were integrated into the cable technology by combining H.264 compression with the "old" DVB-C standard. Finally, DVB launched the new DVB-C2 standard in 2009. However, this latter system is still in the field trial phase, there are no C2 networks in operation. In response to the still increasing demand for even higher data rates, DOCSIS 3.1 incorporated a completely new method using OFDM techniques and channel bandwidths of up to 192 MHz. In the following, the most important milestones of the evolution of broadband cable technology in recent years from the "analog" broadcast broadband cable to the modern HFC network are listed:

- From 1996: introduction of DVB-C
- 1997: DOCSIS 1.0 (IP and telephone) as „ITU-T J.112“ (downstream: ITU-T J83B or DVB-C, upstream: TDMA)
- 1999: DOCSIS 1.1 (physical layer as in DOCSIS 1.0, but now also QoS)
- 2001: DOCSIS 2.0 as “ITU-T J.122” (now TDMA and CDMA upstream possible)
- 2006: DOCSIS 3.0 as “ITU-T J.122” (now TDMA and CDMA upstream possible)
- 2009: DVB-C2
- 2009: DOCSIS 3.0 as “ITU-T J.222” (now downstream channel bonding possible)
- 2009: HD services delivered by combining H.264 and DVB-C
- 2010: First commercially available DVB-C2 hardware
- 2013: DVB-C2 trials
- 2013 DOCSIS 3.1 (now OFDM in downstream and upstream, high downstream bandwidth)

Up to and including DOCSIS 3.0, single carrier modulation is used. The downstream for DOCSIS 1.0 through 3.0 is based on the corresponding digital TV service and thus uses either ITU-T J83B or DVB-C with MPEG-2 Transport Streams and data piping, without SI/PSI tables. Like DVB-C2, DOCSIS 3.1 uses OFDM technology; however, the approaches differ significantly in terms of carrier spacing and channel bandwidth. Modulation methods exceeding 1024QAM are used, 4094QAM or even 16384QAM, what is no longer a problem when using modern optics and state-of-the-art error protection. The time will come when there will be a fiber-optic cable in every house, and even the terminals will have a fiber-optic connection instead of today’s coax sockets. Already today, it is only a mechanical problem of reliably adapting an optical cable rather than a price issue. And, of course, replacing coaxial technology costs money – due to installation expenses, not due to material price. “Trench digging” and “slitting” costs money. A viable mechanical solution for optical connectors at the end user premises will be found.

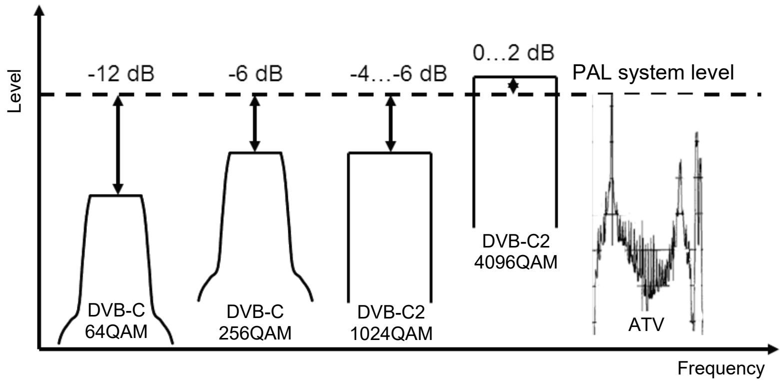


Fig. 33.4. Signal levels in the broadband cable

Of course, with higher-order modulation, the system level must be adapted accordingly and the amplifier cascades must be reduced due to the increased use of fiber.

The modulation methods used with DOCSIS 1.0 through 3.0 are as follows:

- in the downstream ITU-T J83B, which is a single carrier 64QAM/256QAM
- in EuroDOCSIS, ITU J83A/DVB-C in the downstream, which is a single carrier 64QAM/256QAM
- and in the upstream single carrier QPSK …64QAM, TDMA, CDMA

DOCSIS 3.1 uses OFDM in both directions, downstream and upstream. The table below compares the parameters of DOCSIS 3.1 and 3.0.

Table 33.2. Technical parameters of the DOCSIS downstream

Downstream parameter	DOCSIS 3.1	DOCSIS 1.0 … 3.0
Modulation type	OFDM 4K and 8K FFT	single carrier (J.83/B, DVB-C)
Frequency range	108 MHz … 1218 MHz (1794 MHz)	45 MHz … 1.002 MHz
Channel bandwidth	up to 192 MHz	6 MHz / 8 MHz
QAM systems	up to 4096 (8k, 16k)	up to 256
Cyclic prefix length (guard interval)	0.9375 µs to 5 µs	--
Pilots	scattered and continuous	--
Error protection	BCH-LDPC	Reed-Solomon
Data rate	8 Gbit/s (10 Gbit/s)	300 Mbit/s (1 Gbit/s)

Table 33.3. Technical parameters of the DOCSIS upstream

Upstream parameter	DOCSIS 3.1	DOCSIS 3.0
Modulation type	OFDM 2K and 4K FFT	single carrier TDMA, S-CDMA
Frequency range	5 MHz … 204 MHz	5 MHz … 85 MHz
Channel bandwidth	up to 96 MHz	up to 6.4 MHz
QAM systems	up to 4096	QPSK … 64QAM
Cyclic prefix length (guard interval)	0.9375 µs … 6.25 µs	--
Pilots	complementary and continuous	--
Error protection	LDPC	Reed-Solomon
Data rate	400 Mbit/s (1 Gbit/s ... 2.5 Gbit/s)	100 Mbit/s (300 Mbit/s)

33.5 Data Streams – Continuous and Time Slot-Based (TDMA)

Data signals in broadcasting are typically continuous streams directed to all receivers, irrespectively whether the sets are ready to process them or not. The data source does not "know" how many receivers are currently listening. One cable related example is the MPEG-2 Transport Streams fed to DVB-C modulators, delivering various TV programs to the users on the broadband cable network. DOCSIS downstreams also appear to be continuous streams in terms of their physics. However, analyzing their content shows that they carry IP and MAC addresses directed to different end users, i.e. the downstream data are shared among users as needed. However, a broadband cable network must be divided into segments (clusters) for bidirectional data services, ensuring that the total data volume of a segment does not cause an overload depending on the number of subscribers connected. Downstreams in DOCSIS 1.0 through 3.0 appear externally as DVB-C or J83B channels, but the internal data format of the transmitted MPEG-2 Transport Stream is different. However, the upstreams of the return channel (5 ... 65 MHz) are TDMA (Time Division Multiple Access) signals. The TDMA time slots, which appear as signal bursts, are used by the cable modems to transmit their data back to the headend and there to the CMTS.

33.6 Modulation – Single- and Multi-Carrier Schemes on the Cable

Since the first digital TV signals were switched on in CATV networks in the 1990s, single carrier modulation has been applied mostly using 64QAM or 256QAM, with data rates ranging from 40 to about 50 Mbit/s per channel. Also, the channel spacing was the same as for analog TV over cable. Analog TV technology over cable, in turn, was originally simply adapted from terrestrial broadcasting to the cable – the first CATV networks were just "long antenna cables" with many amplifiers for serving terrestrially uncovered areas. Now we are witnessing a change away from the original goals. In the new technologies, single carrier modulation is disappearing, and this also applies currently to all technologies, whether broadcasting or mobile communications; today, all these standards rely on OFDM modulation. In mobile communications (LTE), the term OFDMA (Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiple Access) is used, alluding to the large number of users. Something similar is happening in DOCSIS 3.1 on

cable: OFDM is introduced as OFDMA, both in the downstream and in the upstream. Additionally, the OFDMA upstream is divided into time slots. At the same time, the idea of the original cable channels in the downstream is all but relinquished. The bandwidth of a cable channel, however, is not only 6, 7, or 8 MHz any more; it may be up to 192 MHz. And in that range, there are now many OFDM carriers in a carrier spacing of either 25 or 50 kHz.
Any new data transmission standard developed for broadband cable, like DOCSIS, needs to address issues related to interference and special phenomena in broadband cables, including

- Linear distortions (amplitude response, group delay)
- Nonlinear distortions (amplifier cascades)
- Intermodulation (multi-channel load and nonlinearities)
- Short (“micro”) reflections of a few microseconds
- Noise (AWGN)
- Frequency-selective interferences
- Ingress noise (radiated noise)
- Cable leakage (in both directions, insufficient shielding)
- “roof slopes” in the frequency response (tilts) due to cable loss
- “forbidden” frequency ranges (e.g. air traffic control)

Since DOCSIS 3.1 systems now use OFDM, the types of echoes expected in broadband cable networks must be taken into consideration. The DOCSIS 3.1 standard describes these in the following tables.

Table 33.4. Maximum expected micro-reflections in the DOCSIS 3.1 downstream (dBc means dB relative to the carrier)

Time	Attenuation
≤0.5 µs	-20 dBc
≤1.0 µs	-25 dBc
≤1.5 µs	-30 dBc
>2.0 µs	-35 dBc
>3.0 µs	-40 dBc
>4.5 µs	-45 dBc
>5.0 µs	-50 dBc

Table 33.5. Maximum expected micro-reflections in the DOCSIS 3.1 upstream (dBc means dB relative to the carrier)

Time	Attenuation
≤0.5 µs	-16 dBc
≤1.0 µs	-22 dBc
≤1.5 µs	-29 dBc
>2.0 µs	-35 dBc
>3.0 µs	-40 dBc
>4.5 µs	-42 dBc
>5.0 µs	-51 dBc

33.7 DOCSIS 3.1

DOCSIS 3.1 is completely different from DOCSIS 3.0 and should have been better given a completely new version number. DOCSIS 3.1 relies on multi-carrier modulation, namely OFDMA (Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiple Access). It is a multi-carrier system serving many end users, so no longer OFDM for broadcast users where everyone receives the same signal. DOCSIS is similar to DVB-C2 but is completely different in its details, also regarding the basic OFDM parameters. The key features of DOCSIS 3.1 are

- OFDMA in the downstream
- OFDMA in the upstream
- 25 or 50 kHz subcarrier spacing
- Up to 192 MHz downstream bandwidth
- Short guard intervals (CP) of 0.9375 to 6.25 µs
- Guard intervals with "Tukey raised cosine" window before and after the payload symbol
- Downstream modulation up to 4096QAM, 16K-QAM
- Upstream modulation up to 256QAM
- BCH and LDPC error protection in the downstream
- LDPC error protection in the upstream

DVB-C2 is based on DVB-T2

- narrow band channel spacing (6 MHz, 8 MHz) with optional broadband channel bonding
- long time interleaver design for broadcast applications
- tight OFDM subcarrier spacings of 1.7/2.2 kHz (4K mode in 6 MHz and 8 MHz channels, respectively)
- only downstream; upstream not defined

DOCSIS 3.1 Properties

- broadband channel design (192 MHz) with narrow-band option (up to 24 MHz)
- optimized for fast response times, up to 1 ms
- tight OFDM subcarrier spacings of 25/50 kHz (4K- / 8K-mode in 192 MHz channels, respectively)
- downstream and upstream are defined

Let us first compare the OFDM implementations in DVB-C2 and DOCSIS 3.1. DVB-C2 uses narrow-band channels (e.g. 6 or 8 MHz bandwidth), with the ability to extend to broadband OFDM channels via channel bonding, i.e. DVB-C2 can be used to build up to 450 MHz wide channels starting with a 6 or 8 MHz channel. Technologically, DVB-C2 is based on the DVB-T2 standard. All a DVB-C2 receiver needs to do is cut out and demodulate a spectral width of about 8 MHz. DOCSIS 3.1 does the exact opposite, starting out from a spectrum of 192 MHz and narrowing it as needed. A DOCSIS 3.1 receiver must be able to demodulate a spectral width of 192 MHz. DVB-C2 specifies a relatively tight subcarrier spacing of 2.2 or 1.7 kHz, i.e. a bandwidth of about 6 or 8 MHz contains 3408 (4K) carriers. DOCSIS has the same number (4K) or double the number (8K mode) of OFDM carriers in about 192 MHz bandwidth, at a carrier spacing of 50 or 25 kHz, respectively.

In DVB-C2, the 594 µs or 448 µs long OFDM symbol is extended by a guard interval of 9.3 or 7 µs (long GI equal to 1/64) or 4.7 or 3.5 µs (short GI equal to 1/128).

In DOCSIS 3.1, there is a guard interval (Cyclic Prefix, CP) before and after the OFDM symbol. The CP preceding the payload symbol is longer than the one following it, and both are only a few microseconds long in accordance with the expected micro-reflections.

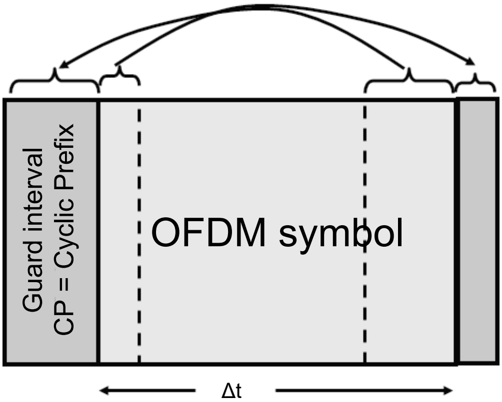


Fig. 33.5. Guard intervals before and after the payload symbol in DOCSIS 3.1

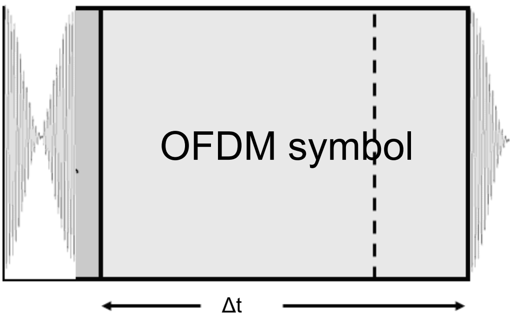


Fig. 33.6. Guard interval window in DOCSIS 3.1

However, the guard intervals are "windowed" by means of a cosine-square function ("Tukey raised cosine"), i.e. the CPs are gradually fading in and out. This makes it possible to better suppress the shoulders of the OFDM signal, i.e. the out of band parts before and after the useful spectrum. The possible CP lengths in the downstream and upstream are shown in the tables below.

Table 33.6. Upstream guard interval lengths

CP length in the upstream 2K/4K mode	CP length in elementary periods (T_{SU})
0.9376 µs	$96 \cdot T_{SU}$
1.25 µs	$128 \cdot T_{SU}$
1.5625 µs	$160 \cdot T_{SU}$
1,875 µs	$192 \cdot T_{SU}$
2.1875 µs	$224 \cdot T_{SU}$
2.5 µs	$256 \cdot T_{SU}$
2.8125 µs	$288 \cdot T_{SU}$
3,125 µs	$320 \cdot T_{SU}$
3.75 µs	$384 \cdot T_{SU}$
5.0 µs	$512 \cdot T_{SU}$
6.25 µs	$640 \cdot T_{SU}$

Table 33.7. Downstream guard interval lengths

CP length in the downstream 4K/8K	CP length in elementary periods (T_{SD})
0.9376 µs	$192 \cdot T_{SD}$
1.25 µs	$256 \cdot T_{SD}$
2.5 µs	$512 \cdot T_{SD}$
3.75 µs	$768 \cdot T_{SD}$
5 µs	$1024 \cdot T_{SD}$

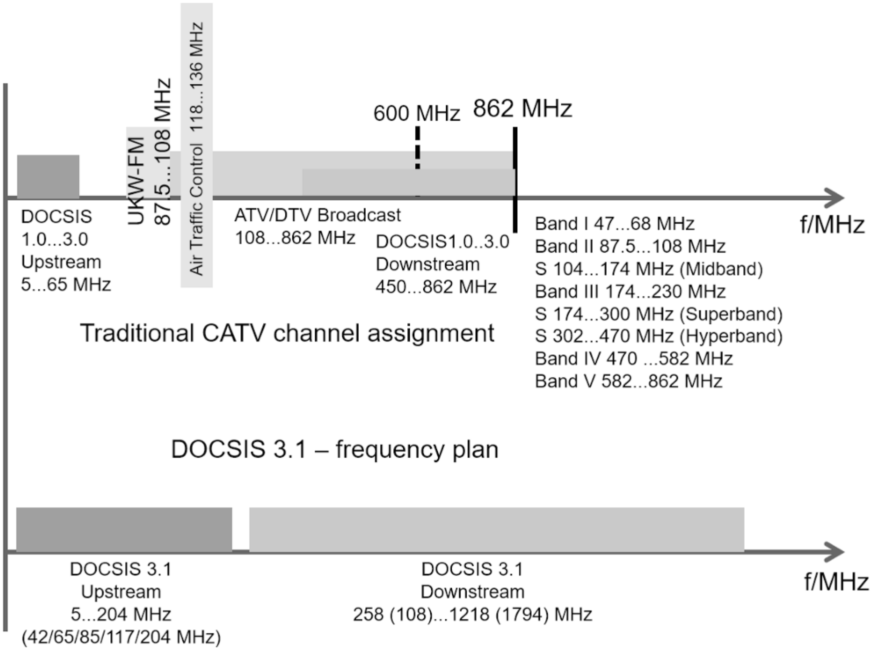


Fig. 33.7. CATV frequency plan up till now and for DOCSIS 3.1

The traditional CATV spectrum consists of an upstream range of 5 to 65 MHz, the V/UHF FM range of 87.5 to 108 MHz, and the frequency range for analog and digital TV channels that ends at 600 MHz or 862 MHz. The air traffic control band is protected and therefore not used. DOCSIS 3.1 divides the CATV spectrum into an upstream frequency range of 5 ... 204 MHz and a downstream frequency range of 258 to 1218 MHz. However, the upper limit of the upstream frequency range may end already at 42, 65, 85 or 117 MHz. The downstream frequency range may begin already at 108 MHz and end only at 1794 MHz. A gap is inserted between the downstream and upstream ranges due to the transition characteristics of duplex filters.

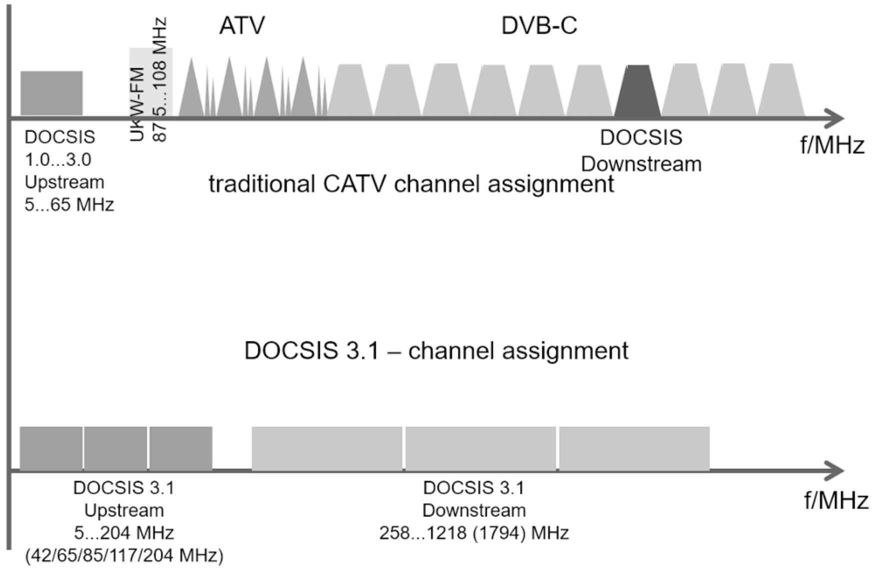


Fig. 33.8. The CATV spectrum up till now with gaps between the channels, and in DOCSIS 3.1

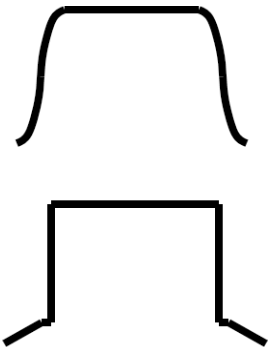


Fig. 33.9. Comparison of a single-carrier spectrum with roll-off filtering (top) and the OFDM spectrum (bottom)

The conventional CATV channel assignment has considerable frequency gaps between the channels. In contrast to the traditional channel utilization of CATV, DOCSIS 3.1 spectra are very wide and can be placed almost seamlessly. Single carrier signals (DVB-C, J83A, B, C) are roll-off filtered and hence appear as slowly settling and decaying spectra. In contrast, OFDM spectra have steep edges. Likewise, DOCSIS 3.1 features a steep-edged and wide OFDM spectrum. For this reason alone, the CATV frequency range can be utilized much more effectively.

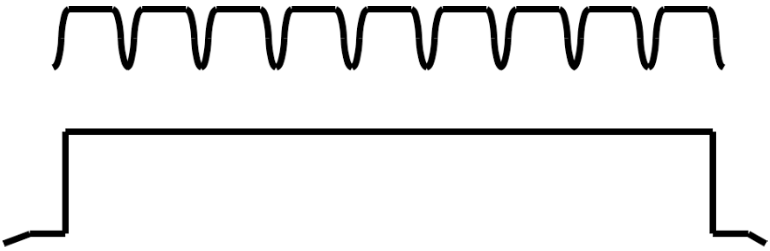


Fig. 33.10. Comparison of stacked single-carrier spectra (DVB-C) and the broadband steep-edged OFDM spectrum (DOCSIS 3.1)

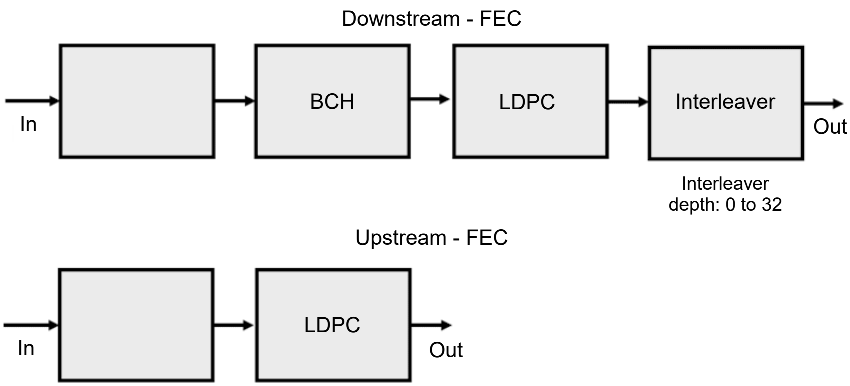


Fig. 33.11. DOCSIS 3.1 error protection in the upstream and downstream

The DOCSIS 3.1 upstream is even divided into so-called minislots, i.e. the stream is divided into units in both the time and the frequency domain, which of course must be synchronized. Cable modems are assigned certain minislots by the CMTS in the headend. The error protection used in DOCSIS 3.1 corresponds to the state-of-the-art correction methods applied in DVB-C2, DVB-S2 and DVB-T2: in the downstream it consists of concatenated BCH and LDPC coding with certain code rates and a subsequent interleaver. The upstream is only protected by LDPC.

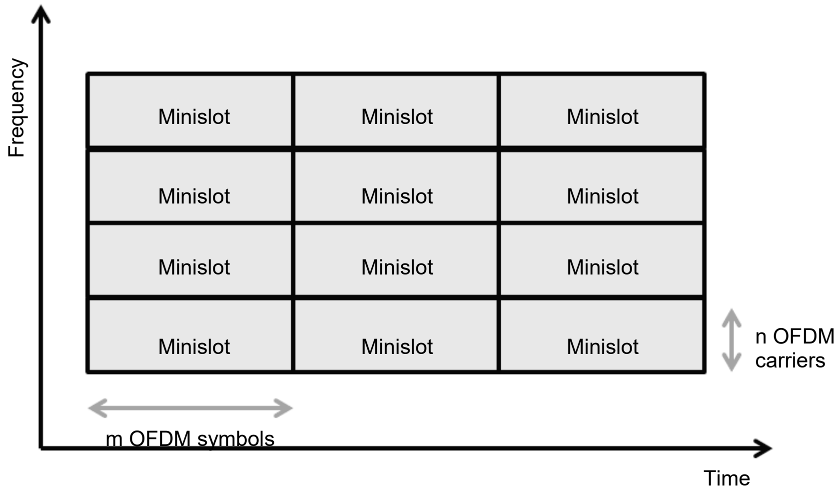


Fig. 33.12. Minislots in the DOCSIS 3.1 upstream

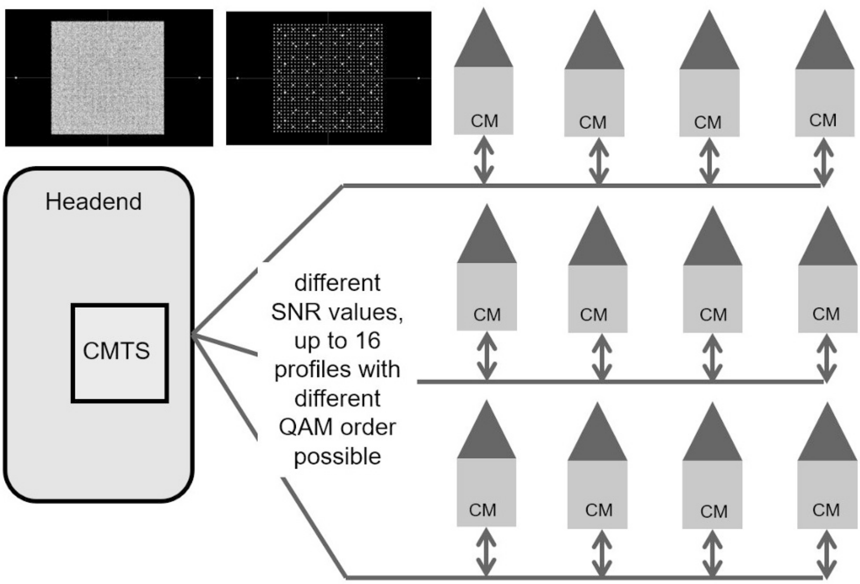


Fig. 33.13. Structure of a CATV network and the use of various profiles for various segments or subscriber distances in DOCSIS 3.1

The OFDM approach used in DOCSIS 3.1 is called OFDMA (Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiple Access). Certain carriers are assigned to certain networks. In the downstream, so-called profiles can also be formed; these are specific pairings of error protection and modulation order to provide sufficient robustness against individual SNR issues in different cable segments.

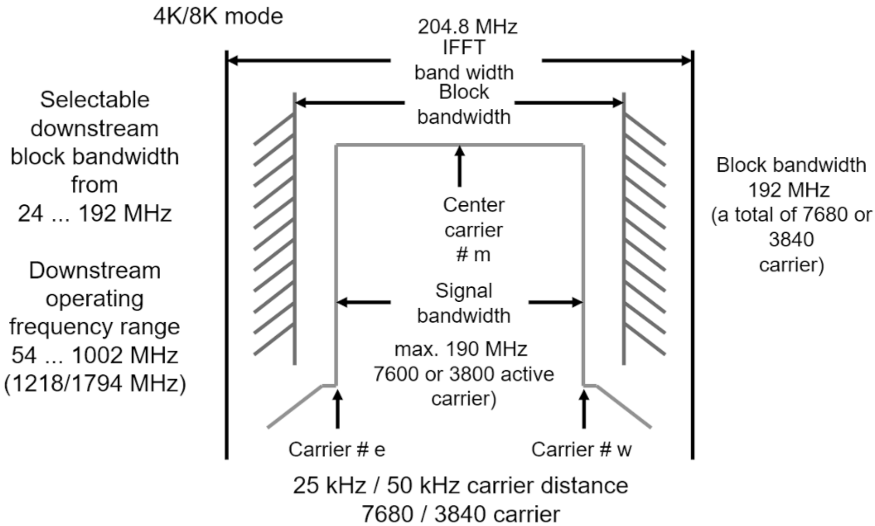


Fig. 33.14. Downstream signal and channel bandwidths in DOCSIS 3.1

The OFDM downstream spectrum in DOCSIS 3.1 has a maximal signal bandwidth of 190 MHz with 7600 or 3800 active carriers in this frequency range. The actual channel width is slightly wider, includes the OFDM guard bands, and has a width of 24 to 192 MHz. The 192 MHz wide channel contains 7680 or 3840 OFDM carriers, with the carriers in the guard bands turned off.

4K mode carrier conditions in DOCSIS3.1 downstream:

- 4096 carriers · 50 kHz = 204.8 MHz = IFFT bandwidth
- 3800 carriers · 50 kHz = 190 MHz = signal bandwidth
- 3840 carriers · 50 kHz = 192 MHz = block bandwidth

8K mode carrier conditions in DOCSIS3.1 upstream:

- 8192 carriers · 25 kHz = 204.8 MHz = IFFT bandwidth
- 7600 carriers · 25 kHz = 190 MHz = signal bandwidth
- 7680 carriers · 25 kHz = 192 MHz = block bandwidth

2K mode carrier conditions in DOCSIS3.1 upstream:

- 2048 carriers · 50 kHz = 102.4 MHz = IFFT bandwidth
- 3800 carriers · 50 kHz = 95 MHz = signal bandwidth
- 3840 carriers · 50 kHz = 96 MHz = block bandwidth

4K mode carrier conditions in DOCSIS3.1 upstream:

- 4096 carriers · 25 kHz = 102.4 MHz = IFFT bandwidth
- 3800 carriers · 25 kHz = 95 MHz = signal bandwidth
- 3840 carriers · 25 kHz = 96 MHz = block bandwidth

The DOCSIS 3.1 downstream spectrum contains:

- Data or payload carriers with various profile-dependent modulation parameters
- Continuous pilots (at fixed positions, used for AFC)
- Scattered pilots (at variable positions for channel measurement and correction)
- PLC (Physical Layer Link Channel) carriers
- Disabled carriers set to zero (guard band)

Payload information is transmitted from the CMTS to the CMs by data carriers with various modulations and error protection (profile-dependent, distributed over the useful frequency range). The continuous pilots are used for synchronization (AFC). The distributed scattered pilots are used for measuring and correcting the cable channel. The PLC carriers transmit signaling from the CMTS to the CMs. The PLC carriers, of which there are 8 in 4K mode and 16 in 8K mode, are BPSK modulated for the PLC preamble and 16QAM for the PLC data.
Downstream and upstream robustness is characterized by the required minimum CNR as listed tables 33.8. and 33.9.

.

Table 33.8. Minimum required downstream CNR

Modulation mode downstream	Minimum CNR (AWGN, 1 GHz)	Minimum CNR (AWGN, 1.2 GHz)
16QAM	15.0 dB	15.0 dB
64QAM	21.0 dB	21.0 dB
128QAM	24.0 dB	24.0 dB
256QAM	27.0 dB	27.0 dB
512QAM	30.5 dB	30.5 dB
1024QAM	34.0 dB	34.0 dB
2048QAM	37.0 dB	37.5 dB
4096QAM	41.0 dB	41.5 dB
8192QAM		
16384QAM		

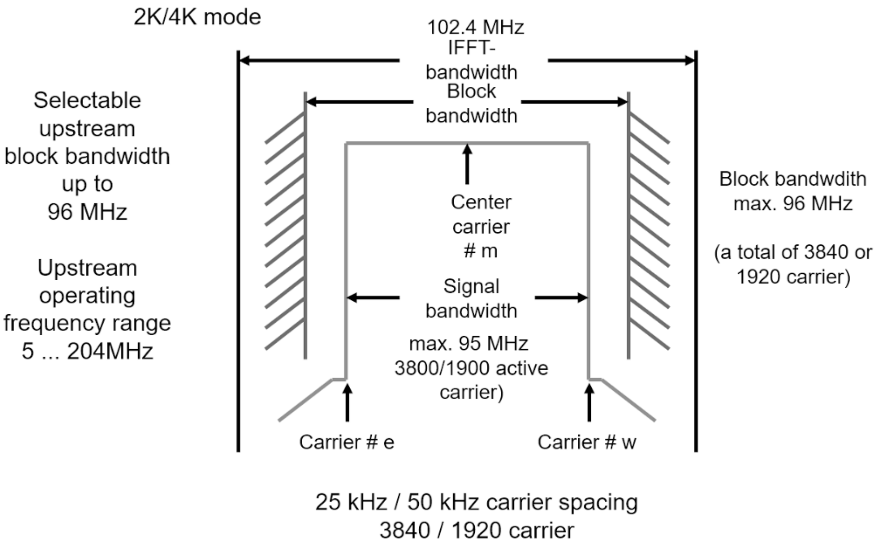


Fig. 33.15. Upstream signal and channel bandwidths in DOCSIS 3.1

Figure 33.16. and 33.21. shows a 190 MHz wide DOCSIS 3.1 spectrum. The boosted carriers jutting out are clearly visible. Fig. 33.17, 33.18, 33.19., 33.24. show some DOCSIS 3.1 constellation diagrams with and without payload, as well as modulation orders of up to 16KQAM (16384QAM).

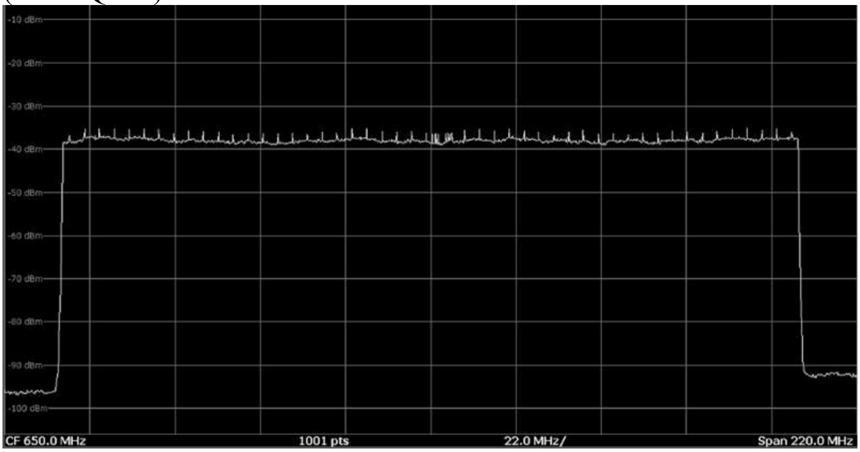


Fig. 33.16. The DOCSIS 3.1 downstream spectrum (span: 220 MHz)

Table 33.9. Minimum required upstream CNR

Modulation mode upstream	Minimum CNR (AWGN)
QPSK	11.0 dB
8QAM	14.0 dB
16QAM	17.0 dB
32QAM	20.0 dB
64QAM	23.0 dB
128QAM	26.0 dB
256QAM	29.0 dB
512QAM	32.5 dB
1024QAM	35.5 dB
2048QAM	39.0 dB
4096QAM	43.0 dB

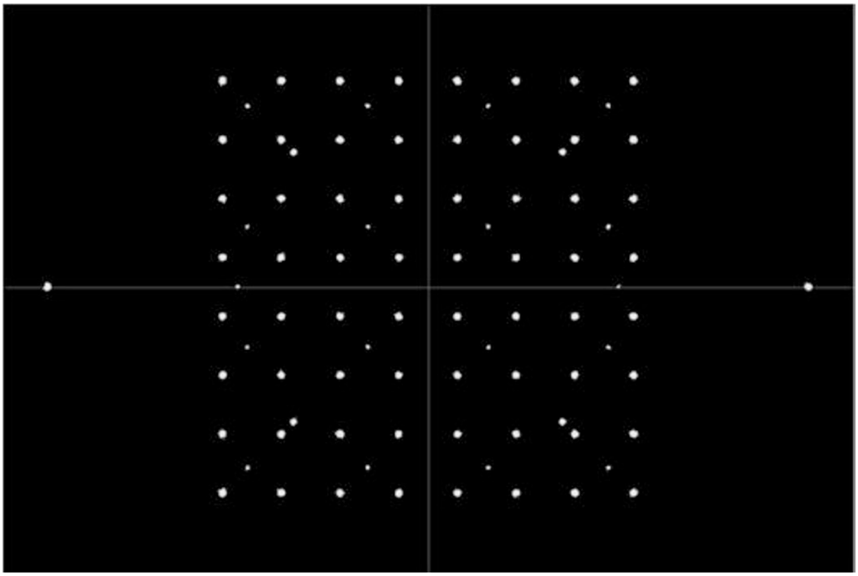


Fig. 33.17. Constellation diagram of a DOCSIS 3.1 downstream signal without payload, with only PLC and pilots

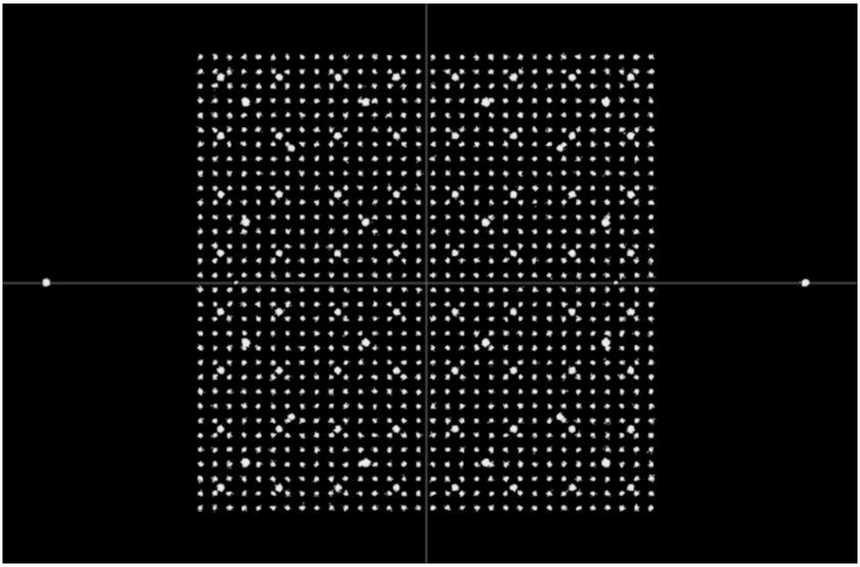


Fig. 33.18. Constellation diagram of a DOCSIS 3.1 downstream signal with payloads of various profiles up to 1024QAM

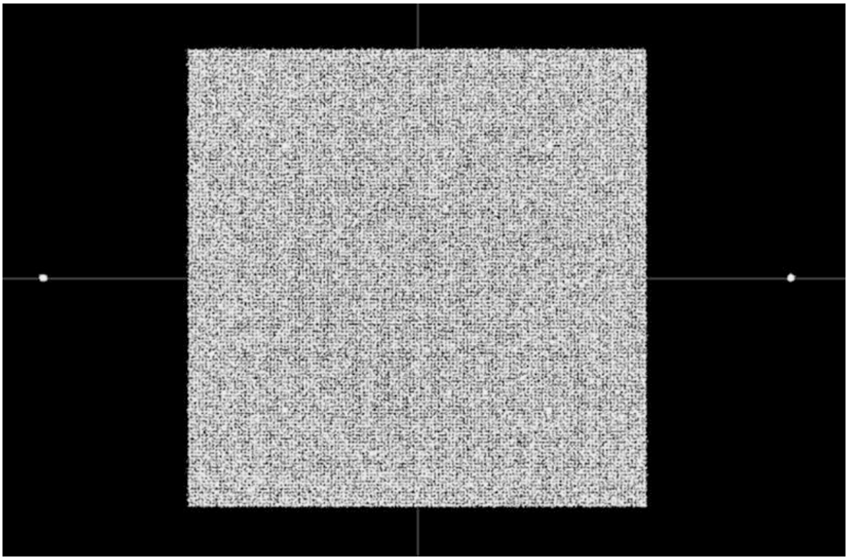


Fig. 33.19. Constellation diagram of a DOCSIS 3.1 downstream signal with payload of various profiles up to 16kQAM (16384QAM)

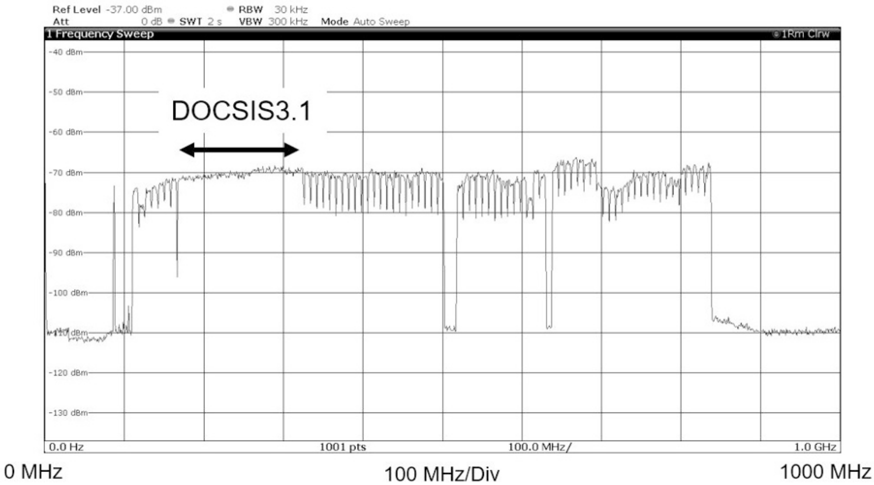


Fig. 33.20. CATV downstream spectrum containing DOCSIS3.1, DVB-C and DOCSIS3.0 (Germany, 2019)

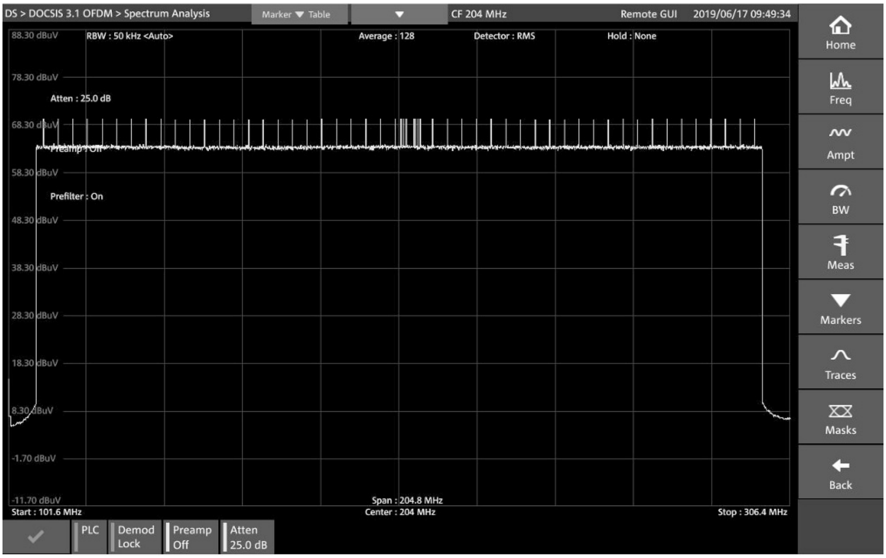


Fig. 33.21. DOCSIS3.1 downstream spectrum, DOCSIS Signal Analyzer DSA, Rohde&Schwarz[DSA]

Fig. 33.20. represents a "live" measurement of a CATV spectrum in a German CATV network from 2019, containing already a 160 MHz wide DOCSIS3.1 spectrum.

Fig. 33.22. shows the influence of windowing in DOCSIS3.1 at the shoulders of the downstream spectrum. No windowing corresponds to 0 µs which results in the highest shoulder; 1.25 µs windowing results in the highest shoulder attenuation. It is recommended to use a minimum windowing of 0.3123 or 0.625 µs.

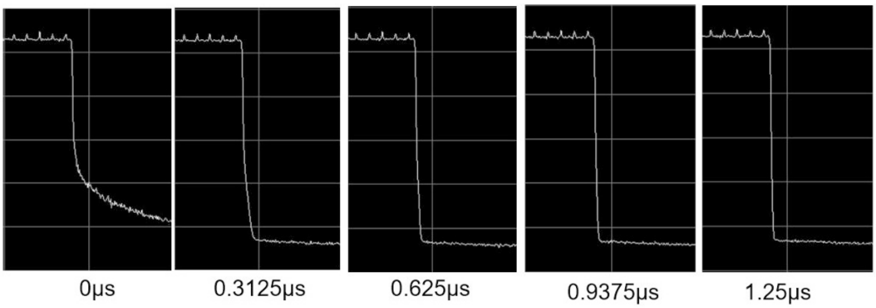


Fig. 33.22. DOCSIS3.1 shoulder vs windowing

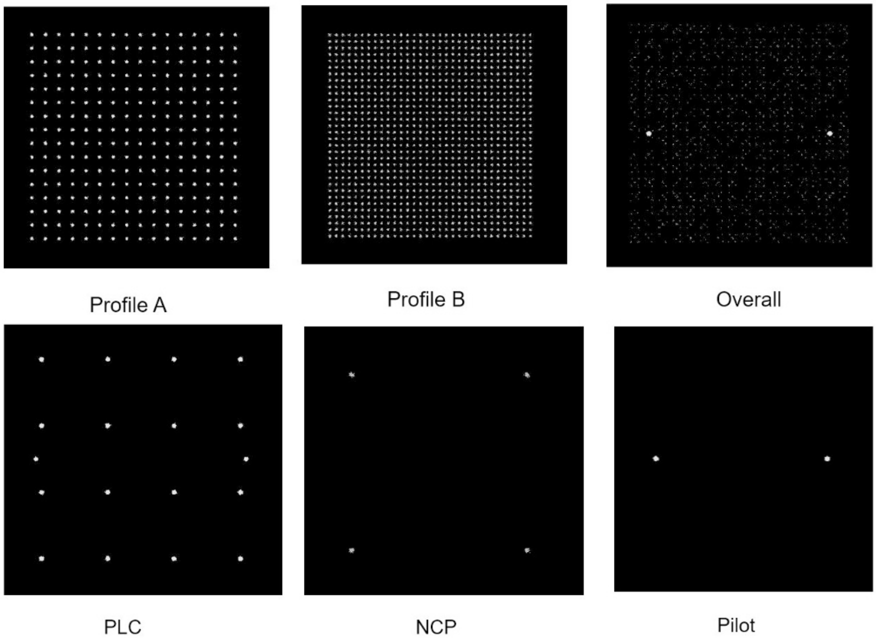


Fig. 33.23. DOCSIS3.1 downstream constellations [DSA]

Fig. 33.24. shows DOCSIS3.1 measurements performed by a DOCSIS3.1 analyzer [DSA]. The DOCSIS3.1 analyzer measures the total power level of the DOCSIS3.1 signal as well as the averaged power in a bandwidth of 6 MHz. This averaged power in a bandwidth of 6 MHz can be compared with a with the power of a DVB-C channel. If the total signal power of a 192 MHz wide DOCSIS3.1 spectrum would be used for the comparison to a DVB-C or DOCSIS3.0 channel a difference of about

$$10 \log (192/8) \text{ dB} = 13.8 \text{ dB}$$

would be recognized.

The best way to compare DVB-C or DOCSIS3.0 signal power with the DOCSIS3.1 signal power is to use the power density in a bandwidth of 1 Hz. Because of the better DOCSIS3.1 forward error correction a SNR gain of 4 dB in the downstream and 2 dB in the upstream can be expected in DOCSIS3.1. Practical experience is that a 1024QAM DOCSIS3.1 signal is typically powered with the same power density as a 256QAM DOCSIS3.0 signal.

Main DOCSIS3.1 measurements are

- Signal power
- Signal bandwidth per 6 MHz
- MER overall
- MER profile A, B, …
- MER pilot, PLC, NCP
- BER before LDPC
- BER before BCH
- BER after BCH

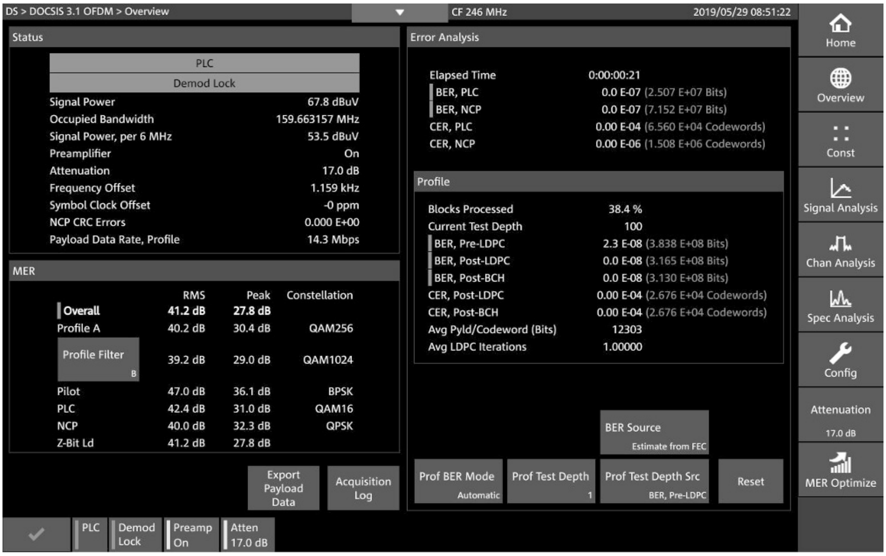


Fig. 33.24. DOCSIS3.1 downstream measurements using DOCSIS Signal Analyzer DSA [DSA]

33.8 Outlook

In the medium term, DOCSIS 3.1 will probably replace the older DOCSIS versions in cable-based data services. The demand for more data rate will keep growing. Many cable networks already offer 100 Mbps in the downstream, and DOCSIS 3.1 allows data rates significantly higher than that. But DOCSIS 3.1 will probably also be used in the long term for replacing cable-based broadcasting services, which means that DVB-C and J83A, B and C will then disappear. DVB-C2 will probably never be used, although this standard is also state-of-the-art in terms of performance. However, it is not known anyway how much broadcasting, i.e. point-to-multipoint services will still exist on the various distribution paths. This is heavily dependent on the end user behavior and can not as yet be estimated. In any case, a clear trend away from linear broadcasting is already recognizable. Linear broadcasting means the opposite of e.g. video on demand (VoD), i.e. seeing and hearing what the end user happens to be wanting to enjoy, and not what the program operator is currently transmitting. This is called “non-linear TV”.

Bibliography: [ETSI201488], [ETSI300800], [KELLER], [DOCSIS1.0], [DOCSIS2.0], [DOCSIS3.0], [DOCSIS3.1], [J83B], [DVB-C]

34 Display Technologies

The cathode ray tube (CRT) has long been dominant as an essential electronic component both on the recording side and on the reproduction side. It forms the basis for many parameters and characteristics of a video baseband signal (composite video signal) such as, e.g., the horizontal and vertical blanking interval and the interlaced scanning method for reducing flicker, none of which would have been necessary with the new technologies where, in fact, they prove to be troublesome.

Before the CRT, however, there had already been attempts, since 1883, in fact, to transmit images electronically from one place to another. Paul Nipkow had invented the rotating Nipkow disk which provided the stimulus for thinking about sending picture information - moving picture information, what's more - from place to place. The Nipkow disk already slices images into transmittable components which are basically lines. Present-day modern display technologies are pixel-oriented, in so-called progressive scanning, i.e. without line interlacing, and exhibit distinctly higher resolutions. Today, we have basically

- partly still the "old" cathode ray tube (CRT),
- the flat screen, and
- projection systems such as beamers and back-projectors.

The underlying technologies for these are:

- Cathode ray tube (CRT)
- Liquid crystal displays (LCD)
- Plasma displays
- Digital micro-mirror chips (DLP=Digital Light Processing chips)
- Organic light-emitting diodes (OLEDs)

Video compression methods such as MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 had still been developed for the cathode ray tube as reproduction medium at the beginning of the 90s. On a CRT, MPEG-2-coded video material still looks quite tolerable even at relatively low data rates (below 3 Mbit/s), whereas

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_34

it produces clearly visible blocking effects, blurring and so-called mosquito noise (visible DCT structures) on a large modern flat screen. MPEG-4 video, however, still looks clean on these modern displays, even at distinctly lower data rates. Interlaced material must be de-interlaced before being displayed on flat screens if it is not to result in disturbing "line feathering" (Fig. 34.10.). This can be seen most clearly in the case of continuous caption (text) inserts. New technologies result in new problems and artefacts. The new effects in image reproduction, caused by the reproduction system, are:

- Burn-in
- Resolution conversion problems
- Motion blur
- Appearance of compression artefacts
- Phosphor lag
- Dynamic false contours
- Rainbow effect

In this chapter, the operation of the various display technologies and their characteristics and the artefacts which occur, and the respective attempts at compensating for them, will be described.

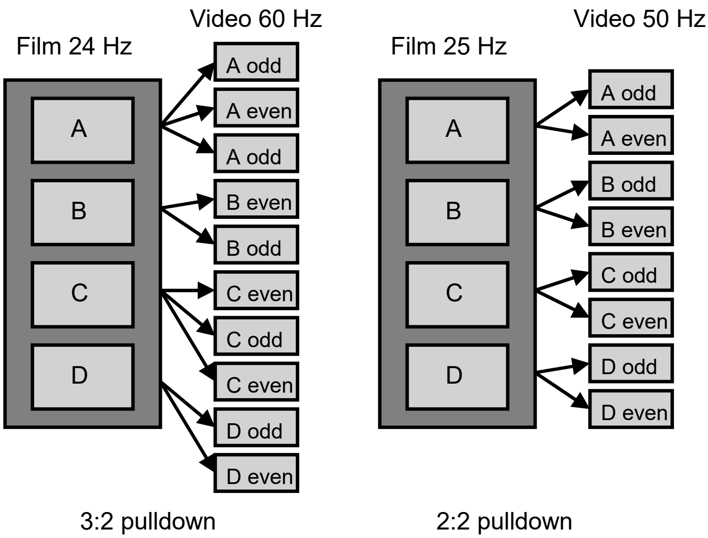


Fig. 34.1. Conversion from cinema-film to video (3:2 and 2:2 pulldown)

The source material for many films transmitted on television was, and still is, original cine-film. This is produced with 24 frames per second, independently of where it is produced. When it is reproduced in television, it must be adapted to the 25 or 30 frames per second used there and the frames must be converted into fields in the line interlace method (Fig. 34.1.). In the 25 frames/second technology, the films are simply run at 25 frames per second instead of at 24 frames per second and each frame is scanned twice by the film scanner, with half a video line offset in each case. The film is thus running imperceptibly slightly faster in television than in the cinema. This type of conversion does not present any problems and does not lead to any visible conversion artefacts. In the case of the 30 (59.94) frames/second standard, a so-called 3:2 pull-down conversion takes place (Fig. 34.1.). Instead of 24 frames per second, the film is here run at 23.976 frames per second, i.e. by 0.1 % more slowly, and 4 frames are then stretched to 5 frames using the line interlace method. For each frame, 2 or 3 fields are then generated alternately. Such converted image material can be juddery and is not easily converted again. A conversion from 30 to 25 frames/s is called an inverse 3:2 pull-down conversion. All this also affects the image processing in the respective TV displays.

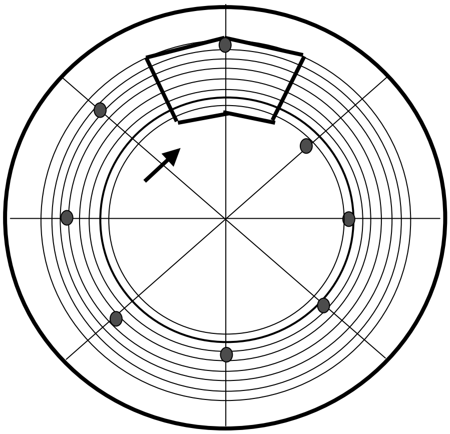


Fig. 34.2. Nipkow disk

34.1 Previous Converter Systems - the Nipkow Disk

Paul Nipkow had the idea of splitting images into "lines" back in 1883, using a rapidly rotating disk both as pickup and for replaying purposes. The

Nipkow disk had holes drilled spirally into the disk so that an original picture was scanned by the holes "line by line". In front of the Nipkow disk (Fig. 34.2.) there was an optical system which projected the original picture onto a selenium cell located behind the disk. This selenium cell was then supplied virtually line by line with the luminance variation of the original picture. At the receiving end, there was a reverse arrangement of a controllable light source and a replay disk, rotating in synchronism with the pickup disk, plus replay optics. Nipkow disks were used until well into the 1940s. The greatest problem was the synchronization of pickup and replay disks. The first trials were conducted with disks mounted on a common axis.

Televisors based on John Logie Baird's principles also used Nipkow disks and were used in so-called television rooms until the 30s. The narrow-band television signal was transmitted by wire or wirelessly by radio. Demonstration models still available today (see, e.g., NBTV - Narrow Band Television Association) show that the signals used then can be handled by narrow-band audio transmission channels. The devices used line numbers of about 30 lines per frame. To simplify synchronization, synchronous motors were used which virtually tied the system to the alternating mains frequency of 25 or 30 Hz. It is interesting to note that the link of the frame rate with the AC frequency of the respective national grid has been maintained to the present day. To synchronize transmitter and receiver, synchronization signals were additionally keyed into the narrow-band video signal which is similar to a current composite color video signal. Modern Nipkow disk demonstration models use black/white line patterns on the disks in conjunction with phase locked loops. The signals derived from these are compared with the synchronization pulses and the error signal is used for correcting the speed of rotation of the disk. Between the sync pulses there is a linearly modulated narrow-band video signal which controls the brightness of the replay element (an LED today, a neon tube in those days) while the respective associated hole in the Nipkow disk scans the visible screen area. The image quality of these simple systems does not require much comment but the principle employed is still fascinating even for the experienced video specialist. It simply illustrates the basics and the history of television technology. Nipkow disk equipment operates in accordance with the principle of stroboscopy, i.e. of a short-time display without image retention, just like its successor, the cathode ray tube.

34.2 The Cathode Ray Tube (CRT)

Cathode ray tubes (CRT) are based on the principle of the Braun tube in which an electron beam which is deflected by two orthogonal magnetic fields and the intensity of which can be controlled by a grid writes an image line by line onto a luminous phosphor coating on the back of the display screen (Fig. 34.3. and 34.4.). The first display tubes, but also the first camera tubes, were monochrome devices. The camera tubes operated inversely, i.e. the electron beam in these read out an optical storage layer line by line. On the pickup side, the cathode ray tubes have been replaced by charge-coupled devices, so-called CCD chips, back in the 1980s. On the display side, they have been dominant until about 2005. Today, there are virtually only the "new screen technologies" in existence. All the characteristics of an analog video baseband signal, the so-called composite colour video signal, are based on the cathode ray tube.

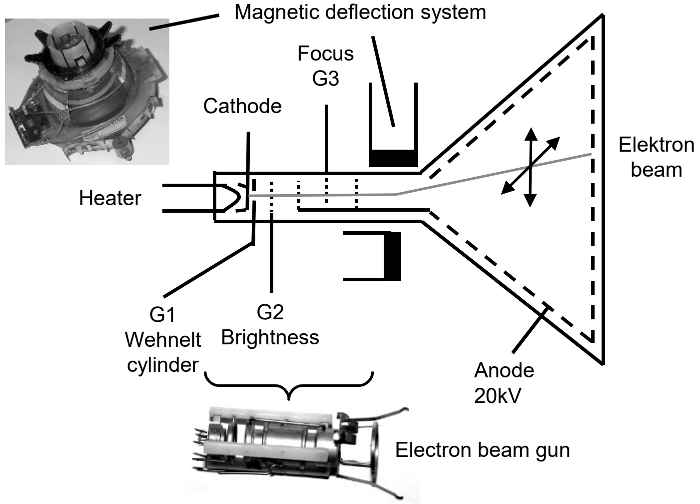


Fig. 34.3. Cathode ray tube with magnetic electron beam deflection

Horizontal and vertical blanking intervals provided for beam retrace blanking and this could only be done in finite time. This is because magnetic fields can only be re-polarized within a finite time with manageable energy consumption. To reduce the flickering effect, the frame was additionally split into fields, i.e. into odd- and even-numbered lines which were then reproduced with an offset. It was thus possible to create virtually a sequence of fields with twice the number of images (50 or 60 fields) from 25 frames or 30 frames per second. Persistence and filtering characteristics of the controllable deflected electron beam were significant components of the display characteristics. The first video compression methods (MPEG-1 and MPEG-2) used in most cases to the present day were developed with these reproduction technologies and for these reproduction technologies. However, the monochrome screens differed from the color CRTs in significant details. In the color CRTs, there is a so-called shadow mask located immediately behind the luminous phosphor coating; at the point where they pass through the slotted mask, the three Red, Green and Blue beams intersect if the convergence is set correctly.

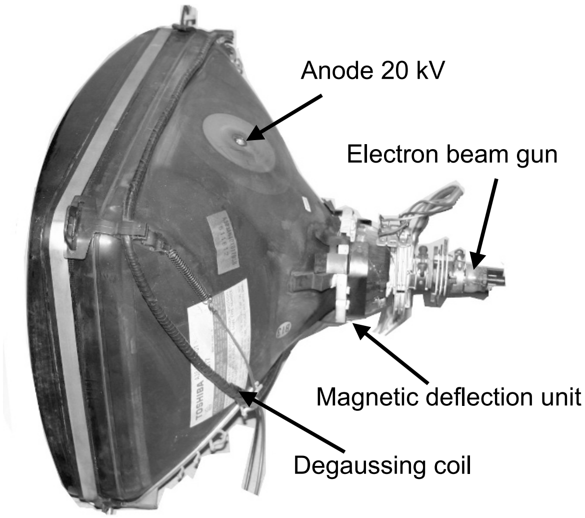


Fig. 34.4. Cathode ray tube (CRT)

I.e., in the case of the color CRT screens, there was already virtually a pixel structure in existence. This pixel structure can also be seen if one approaches a CRT-type monitor very closely (Fig. 34.5.). If it was still very complicated to establish convergence, i.e. the targeting precision of the three electron beams with the delta-type shadow mask, it was much simpler with the slotted-mask or in-line tube. The three electron guns were arranged here in one row (Fig. 34.6. right) so that the beam systems only had to be brought into convergence in the horizontal plane. From more than 30 controls in delta-type shadow mask systems, the convergence adjustments were reduced initially to just a few and later to none in slotted-mask or in-line tubes.

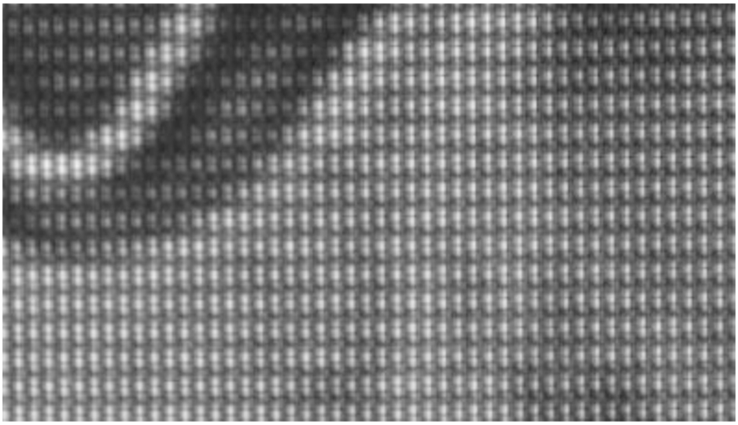


Fig. 34.5. Pixel structure of a slotted, in-line-type shadow mask tube

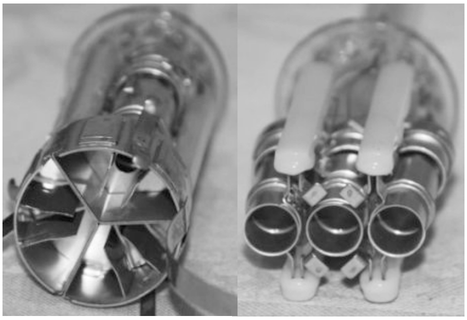


Fig. 34.6. Electron beam gun of a delta-type (left) and in-line-type (right) shadow mask tube

Picture tube monitors have completely different characteristics from modern flat displays. The CRT monitors operate

- with line interlace (fields and frames),
- with low-pass filtering due to their physics,
- stroboscopically, i.e. with short-time reproduction.

For these reasons, they do not show certain artefacts which become visible in connection with compressed image material on modern flat screens.

And these artefacts on modern flat displays are noticed not only by the experts; it is mainly the consumer, the viewer, who notices these unsightly image patterns which are now visible whereas they were not on picture tubes.

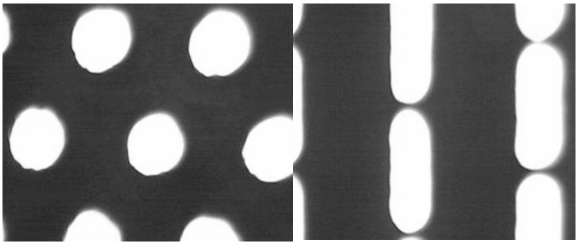


Fig. 34.7. Delta-type (left) and in-line-type (slotted) shadow mask (right)

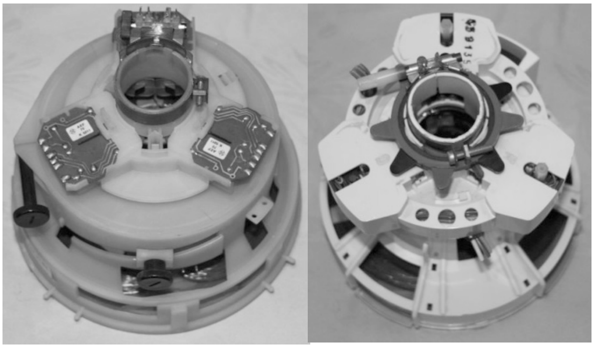


Fig. 34.8. Deflection systems with delta-type (left) and in-line-type (slotted) shadow mask (right)

This will increase the pressure on the program providers to progress more quickly towards HDTV, the high-resolution television which will be broadcast in any case in the new MPEG-4 AVC technology. In summary, it can be said that the picture tube was very tolerant - it did not show things which we can now see. It even filtered out most of the noise. But the picture tube had been developed for television with simple resolution, SDTV - standard definition television. And now it is to be hoped that we will soon really enter the age of high-definition television - HDTV. In the good old "picture tube TV", the power consumption depends on the active image content. The more light there is to be displayed, the more current is consumed.

34.3 The Plasma Screen

A plasma screen operates in accordance with the principles of a gas discharge in a more or less completely evacuated environment. A gas discharge of a so-called plasma - an ionised, rarefied air mixture such as, e.g. in a fluorescent tube, is ignited by a high voltage, producing ultraviolet light. Coloured light can be generated by converting this ultraviolet light of the gas discharge by means of the appropriate phosphors. Each pixel of a plasma screen consists of three chambers of the colours Red, Green and Blue. The three colours can be switched on or off by applying a high voltage and igniting the corresponding cell or can also be switched on or off simultaneously. The deciding factor is only that they can only be switched on or off and not incrementally more or less. To be able to achieve gradations in the respective brightness levels of the colours, a trick has to be used: the respective Red, Green or Blue cell is fired only for a certain length of time, i.e. applying pulse duration modulation. Short firing means darker, long firing means brighter. This principle can also lead to display artefacts (phosphor lag, wrong colours due to different response times of the phosphors). The plasma screen differs from the picture tube in this respect. They are very similar, however, in respect to their energy consumption. More light means more power and the energy consumption is thus dependent on the active picture content both in the picture tube TV and in the plasma screen TV. For a long time, large displays could only be implemented in plasma technology. This technology is faded into the background in favour of LCD screens. The essential characteristics of plasma screens are:

- Power consumption depends on image content
- Less weight than a CRT
- Less overall depth ("flat screen")
- High contrast
- Wide viewing angle
- Tendency to burn-in effects with static images (aging of phosphors)
- Progressive scanning, i.e. tendency to line feathering with interlaced material
- Service life used to be a problem, is 100,000 hours
- Retentive and non-stroboscopic system due to the drive system
- Insensitive to magnetic fields
- Possible short wave radiation with poor shielding

- Possible phosphor lag, wrong colour display due to phosphor characteristics
- Dynamic false contours

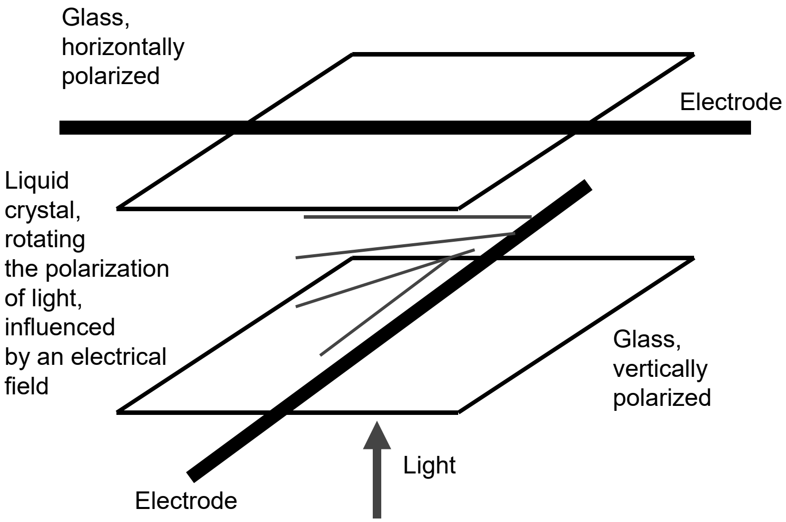


Fig. 34.9. Liquid crystal technology

34.4 The Liquid Crystal Display Screen

LCD displays (Fig. 34.9.) have been on the market for consumers since the 1970s. Today there are scarcely any applications in which LCDs are not found. Simple liquid crystal displays are cheap to produce and very energy-saving. If they are statically controlled they use virtually no energy, which is part of the reason why especially wrist watches have long been equipped with LCDs. Following the monochrome variant, the colour variant has also been in use since about the middle of the 1990s. Since this time, especially TFT - thin film transistor - displays have been increasingly used. Modern computer monitors are employing this technology almost without exception. The CRT monitor has virtually faded away since the beginning of the millenium and it no longer exists in the computer field. And the CRT monitor would not have any advantages there, either, neither in image quality nor in price, weight or size. In the computer field, the main reason for this is the technology used from the beginning - the frame-sequential scanning technique. Fields and line interlace are not used in computers and were never necessary since the images were relatively static and flickering was never a problem there. Computers and computer monitors have always operated with progressive scanning.

In LCD displays, the quantity of light through the display is controlled by more or less rotation of polarized light between two polarizing filters (Fig. 34.9.). The speed of control was a major item for discussion for a long time. As a result, these displays were initially very inert. In LCD displays, the quantity of light through the display can be controlled relatively linearly by the applied cell voltage by more or less rotation of the polarization of the light. If the polarizing filters in front of and behind the liquid crystal are identically polarized, the light will pass through unimpeded when no drive is applied and is attenuated only by applying a control voltage; if the polarizing filters are crossed, light will only pass when a control voltage is applied and the crystal thus rearranges itself and thus rotates the polarisation of the light. The power consumption of LCD displays essentially depends on the background illumination and is constant and thus independent of the active picture content. LCD displays belong to the category of retentive, i.e. non-stroboscopic display systems and may, therefore, exhibit so-called motion blur. The essential characteristics of an LCD screen are:

- Small overall depth ("flat screen")
- Less weight compared with previous screen technologies
- Less contrast compared with CRT and plasma displays
- Slower response times
- Constant, image-independent power consumption
- Possible motion blur
- Service life of approx. 100,000 hours
- Smaller, but now not inadequate viewing angle compared with CRT and plasma displays
- Retentive and non-stroboscopic system due to the drive system
- Insensitive to magnetic fields
- Progressive scanning, i.e. tendency to line feathering with interlaced material
- Faulty pixels
- Pixel response time depends on the step height (signal change)

34.5 Digital Light Processing Systems

At the beginning of the current millenium, Texas Instruments marketed a new display technology for projection systems called Digital Light Processing (DLP), involving so-called digital micro mirror chips - DMM chips. The concept itself goes back to the year 1987 (Dr. Larry Hornbeck, Texas Instruments). In this technology, the light intensity per pixel is controlled by infinitesimally small movable mirrors. Each pixel is a mirror which can be tilted by about 10 degrees. There is either one chip per colour or only one chip for all colours which is then divided for Red, Blue and Green in time-division multiplex via a rotating color disk. There are systems in use which have three mirror systems for Red, Green and Blue. A mirror can only be switched into or out of the beam path which is why pulse duration modulation is used here, too, for controlling the light intensity. When rotating color disks are used, a so-called rainbow effect occurs, i.e. a color spectrum appears, possibly due to the physiological perception characteristics of the human eye. DLP systems are used in projection systems such as beamers or back-projectors. They cannot be used for constructing real flat screens. They are applied in home cinema systems and may also be used in professional movie theatres because of their good light yield and high resolution and color rendition properties.

34.6 Organic Light-Emitting Diodes

Organic Light-Emitting Diodes (OLEDs) has become the most modern display technology. They are currently being offered even for big displays. Their stability or service life still is still not completely clear. However, they can be applied in very thin layers even to flexible material, thus making it possible to implement displays which can be rolled up. For each pixel, there are three OLEDs the intensity of which can be controlled linearly. OLED technology is now state of the art and is available for a reasonable price; but the price is higher in comparison to LCD technology.

34.7 Effects on Image Reproduction

For many years, cathode ray tube television was adapted relatively optimally to the characteristics of the human optical system of perception and had been developed further. But now there are new revolutionary technologies which are replacing the picture tube but have quite different characteristics. The decisive factor for image reproduction is the type of display technology in conjunction with the drive technology, i.e. the signal processing. And it must be said that new is not always better. A distinction can be made here between

- stroboscopic reproduction systems with short frame retention time, and
- hold-type (retention) systems with frame retention times within the range of one frame.

However, the perception characteristics of a moving picture depend not only on the physics of the display but also on the anatomy of the human optical perception system (eye, eye tracking and brain).

A distinction must also be made between the type of color reproduction where there are systems

- which share one reproduction element for all colors (e.g. via rotating color filters) or
- which have discrete color reproduction elements for RGB.

And, naturally, the response time of the screen plays an important role. This is greatly dependent on the display technology. LED systems and plasma screens have an inherently very short switch-over time between states of brightness. They also exhibit the largest ratio between light which is switched on and that which is switched off, and thus have the greatest contrast ratio.

In addition, there is a difference between display technologies which operate in

- line interlace scanning mode, and in
- progressive scanning mode.

All modern displays can be categorized as "progressive". When using a display operating with progressive scan it is absolutely necessary to carry out de-interlacing before the scan if unsightly line feathering known from the early 100 Hz TV technology is to be avoided. The reason can be found in the mismatch of fields due to movement between them. Pure cinematographic material is non-critical in this respect since there is no movement between the two fields.

Displays can also be classified as

- linearly driven display elements, and
- switchable display elements.

The display elements which can only be switched on and off are then intensity-controlled by pulse duration modulation.

The display technology thus gives rise to the following problems:

- Blurring due to display delay times
- Blurring due to interpolation of unmatched resolution of broadcast material and display system
- Motion blur with non-stroboscopic displays
- Blurring due to the display frame rate
- Line feathering (line tearing) due to poor de-interlacing (Fig. 34.10. left)
- Color shift (plasma, phosphor lag)
- Different contrast with different steps in brightness (LCD)
- Rainbow effect (chromatic separation)
- Obvious appearance of compression artefacts due to the high resolution
- Losses in contrast
- Power consumption depending on picture content
- Burn-in effects (plasma)

Fig. 34.10. Different picture quality after de-interlacing (e.g. feathering left)

34.8 Compensation Methods

In modern electronics, there are countermeasures to act as improvement for every shortcoming. Their effectiveness depends on the state of the art. All modern display technologies operate with progressive scanning technology. The simplest remedy for interlace artefacts is not to use interlaced material. This is the aim especially in HDTV - s. a. 720p. But in the SDTV field, interlaced material must be offered because there are still countless television sets with cathode ray tubes. And the archives still contain any amount of interlaced material. De-interlacing is, therefore, an absolute necessity with modern displays if unsightly line feathering effects are to be avoided. In de-interlacing, it is necessary to interpolate between the fields. This is not necessary with material which is inherently progressive such as, e.g., the good old cine-film which only has frames, the fields being produced by repeated scanning in the intermediate lines. In the cine-projector, the film is interrupted twice per frame by a rotating aperture wheel to reduce flicker. However, in material recorded with electronic cameras there is already movement between the two fields. From these fields, virtually motion-compensated interpolated frames must now be generated otherwise the lines will become "frayed". To counter motion blur due to non-stroboscopic displays there are so-called 100 Hz or 200 Hz systems which, in contrast to earlier 100 Hz CRT displays, do into need this for reducing flicker but virtually simulate for the human eye a movement of an object on the display by interpolating fewer or a greater number of intermediate images. Otherwise, the eye and the entire "human optical pickup system" will dwell on an intermediate state of the image display which, time and again, is virtually static which then leads to smearing or, in other words, blurring.

34.9 Test Methods

Video signal generators [DVSG] contain test sequences for detecting the problems caused by the display technology. These sequences deliberately generate stress signals for the displays in order to reveal , e.g., resolution, interpolation characteristics, motion blur, rainbow effect and line feathering. It is also of major interest to see how a display system behaves when it adjusts itself to a source resolution not corresponding to the system (e.g. a laptop with unmatched screen resolution), requiring interpolation between pixels (scaling up or down). It is also of interest to see how the display devices handle compression artefacts such as:

- Blurring,
- Blocking
- Mosquito noise

The good old picture tube (CRT) was relatively tolerant in this respect as can be seen impressively in demonstrations. But we are not concerned here with hanging on to a proven old system but are only comparing new systems with it and are correspondingly astonished or disappointed. Certain reproduction systems simply do not show some of the things because these are concealed by them. The normal Gaussian noise evident in analog TV channels, in particular, produces different effects in different display systems which causes viewers of analog TV with flat screens in broadband cable networks increasingly to protest even though the comfort of not requiring a special DVB-C receiver is appreciated so much in these quarters. But there are also screens which allow noise to be suppressed but this can only be done at the cost of image sharpness. Noise can only be eliminated by averaging between frames which again leads to blurring. New interfaces such as HDMI also exchange data between display and receiver, e.g. for determining the correct resolution from the possible features provided by the display. These things must also be tested. Another interesting test is how the various displays behave in a comparison of:

- 25/50 Hz interlaced material,
- 30/60 Hz material (3:2 pull-down) (Fig. 34.1.)
- Inverse 3:2 pull-down (material reconverted from 30 to 25 frames/s) (Fig. 34.1.).

34.10 Current State of the Technology

Conclusion: The quality of reproduction on displays is a matter not only of the installed display technology but mainly also of the type of compensation measures applied. Some consume a great amount of memory space and processing power.

Cathode ray tube systems have provided good service for many decades but their end has come by about 2008. After 2010 LCD and LED technologies displaced the plasma systems. In 2019 high end display technology has names like

- OLED – Organic Light Emitting Diodes
- QDOT – Quantum Dot Technology (Samsung©)

Between 2010 and 2012 many broadcast content provider replaced mostly their SDTV content by HDTV services. Since 2010 the bad artefacts on the flatscreens was very much reduced and the picture quality now is great. Big flatscreens with a diagonal plane of more than 40 inch are typically offered with:

- UHD-1 resolution (3840 x 2160 pixel)
- HDMI2.0 interfaces or higher
- Personal Video Recording (PVR) via external harddisk
- HbbTV/Smart TV functionality
- Integrated Triple Tuner (DVB-S/S2, DVB-T/T2, DVB-C, ATV).

In the living rooms more and more big screens with diagonals of even more than 55 inch can be found. A very typical screen size is minimum 42 inch up to 55 inch. External receivers – former “settop boxes“ can no longer be placed on top of a TV screen and typically they are replaced by integrated tuners in the TV screens.

Bibliography: [ERVER], [NBTV], [DVSG]

35 The New Generation of DVB Standards

In 2003, DVB-S2 appeared as the first new transmission standard for Digital Video Broadcasting - DVB. Because the transmission of High Definition Television (HDTV) now requires a much higher data rate, the transmission capacity, i.e. the net data rate per satellite transponder, had to be increased by at least 30% compared with DVB-S. On the other hand, the hardware now available is much more powerful in comparison with that of the early 90s. Both the memory capacity and the computing speed of the chips have increased significantly which made it possible to use Forward Error Correction (FEC) which, although it swallowed up an enormous amount of resources on the receiver side, also yielded a significantly higher net data rate (approx. 30%). This error protection has been known since 1963 and is based on Robert Gallager's work. Today, all the new transmission standards, either for mobile or for broadcasting applications, are using either turbo codes (1993) or LDPC (low density parity check) codes. DVB-S2 now enables 48 to 49 Mbit/s to be transmitted over a satellite transponder which previously provided a data rate of 38 Mbit/s via DVB-S. Using MPEG-4 Part 10 AVC (H.264) video coding, 4 HDTV programs will then fit into one satellite transponder. But with DVB-S2, the direct tie with the MPEG-2 transport stream as baseband input signal was also relinquished for the first time. The catchphrase is now GS - Generic Stream. I.e., apart from the MPEG-2 transport stream, quite general data streams such as, e.g. IP, are now also provided as the input signal for a DVB-S2 modulator, making it possible to feed either one or even several streams into the modulator. At present, this capability is not being exploited for DVB-S2, however, where only pure, standard MPEG-2 transport streams are currently being transmitted. As well, only parts of the capabilities provided in the Standard are currently utilized. The DVB-S2 Standard has already been discussed in Chapter 14 "Transmitting Digital TV Signals by Satellite - DVB-S/S2". In 2008, the new, very powerful standard DVB-T2 - "Second Generation Digital Video Broadcasting Terrestrial" was then published which also contains this new error protection, with Generic Streams - GS - and Multiple Inputs also being a subject. The possibility of having multiple input streams, either transport streams or generic streams, is here called Physical Layer Pipes (PLP) and will probably also be made

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_35

use of. The ability to chose between different modulation parameters (error protection and type of modulation) for different contents will probably be applied mainly with DVB-T2, the keywords being Variable Coding and Modulation (VCM). It will thus be possible to broadcast HDTV programs, e.g. less robustly but equipped with a higher net data rate than, e.g., SDTV programs. DVB-T2 was being promoted by the BBC; the first field trials in the so-called BBC mode have been running since 2008 as Single PLP, i.e. with one (transport stream) input. DVB-T2 is now in use in many countries all over the world; most of the DVB-T2 networks are operated as SFNs. In 2009, the new, also very powerful DVB-C2 cable standard then appeared. DVB-C2 is based on DVB-T2 and also has the capability of GSE and Multiple PLP with VCM. The LDPC coding is also used as FEC. The novel feature in DVB-C2 is the possibility of combining several 8- or 6-MHz-wide channels to form channel groups. This is intended to increase the effectiveness by avoiding gaps between the channels. Like DVB-T2, DVB-C2 uses COFDM, i.e. a multicarrier method, whereas DVB-S2 only uses a single-carrier method. DVB-C2 was tested in some CATV networks but is currently not in use.

35.1 Overview of the DVB Standards

The following DVB standards exist at present:

- DVB-S - first generation satellite transmission standard
- DVB-C - first generation cable transmission standard
- DVB-T - first generation terrestrial transmission standard
- DVB-SI - Service Information
- DVB-SNG - satellite transmission standard for professional applications
- DVB-H - extension for handheld mobiles in DVB-T
- DVB-IP - transport stream transmission via IP networks, e.g. VDSL,
- DVB-SH - hybrid method for handheld mobiles via terrestrial and satellite
- DVB-S2 - second generation satellite transmission standard
- DVB-C2 - second generation cable transmission standard
- DVB-T2 - second generation terrestrial transmission standard.

Naturally, there are numerous other DVB documents but those listed above are the ones which are most meaningful in the present context.

35.2 Characteristics of the Old and the New Standards

In this section, the essential characteristics of the old and new DVB standards are compared with one another. The essential factor is that the old DVB standards were firmly tied to the MPEG-2 transport stream as an input signal and a combination of Reed Solomon coding and convolutional coding was used as error protection. In the new DVB standards, the tie with the transport stream is relinquished and the error protection has been modernized.

Table 35.1. DVB standards

Standard	Application	Input signal	Forward Error Correction (FEC)	Modulation
DVB-S	Satellite	MPEG-2 TS	Reed-Solomon and convolutional coding	Single Carrier, QPSK
DVB-C	Cable	MPEG-2 TS	Reed-Solomon	Single Carrier, 64QAM, 256QAM, additional QAM orders below 256 are possible
DVB-T	Terrestrial	MPEG-2 TS	Reed-Solomon and convolutional coding	CODFM, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM
DVB-SNG	Satellite	MPEG-2 TS	Reed-Solomon and Trellis-coding	Single Carrier, QPSK, 8PSK, 16QAM
DVB-H	Terrestrial	MPEG-2 TS with MPE	Reed-Solomon and convolutional coding and additional Reed-Solomon over IP	like DVB-T
DVB-IP	Twisted pair lines or Ethernet	MPEG-2 TS	--	--
DVB-SH	Terrestrial and	MPEG-2 TS with MPE	Turbo coding	largely like DVB-T and

	satellite			DVB-S2
DVB-S2	Satellite	Single or multiple MPEG-2-TS or GS	BCH and LDPC	Single Carrier, QPSK, 8PSK, 16APSK, 32APSK
DVB-T2	Terrestrial	Single or Multiple MPEG-2-TS or GS	BCH and LDPC	COFDM, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM
DVB-C2	Cable	Single oder Multiple MPEG-2-TS or GS	BCH and LDPC	COFDM, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM, 1024QAM, 4096QAM
DVB-S2X	Satellite	Single or Multiple-MPEG-2 TS or GS	BCH and LDPC	Single carrier, as DVB-S2 plus additional constellations up to 256APSK, uniform and non-uniform

35.3 Capabilities and Aims of the New DVB Standards

It is especially the new error protection which provides about 30% increase in data rate from DVB-S2 onward. The Shannon limit is thus coming closer. DVB-S2 also enables several different input data streams to be radiated via one satellite. And it is intended to break the tie with the MPEG-2 transport stream. DVB-T2 additionally exploits other possibilities for gaining even more data rate compared with DVB-T. The symbols used are longer, thus reducing, e.g., the overhead in the guard interval; widening of the useful spectrum more in the direction of the adjacent channels is being offered etc. In addition, variable coding and modulation can be activated in the multiple PLP mode, i.e. contents can be transmitted with different degrees of robustness similar to DAB and ISDB-T. DVB-T2 provides for much more such as, e.g., the application of multi-antenna systems at the transmitting end, the active reduction of the crest factor and much else besides. The details are described in the "DVB-T2" chapter. DVB-C2 is based on DVB-T2 and uses similar "tricks" for raising the data rate. It provides multiple PLP as well as VCM. DVB-T2 and DVB-C2 provide for up to about 50% more data rate compared with the comparable old DVB standards. DVB/T2 and DVB/C2 also provide higher modulation types such as, e.g. 256QAM with DVB-T2 and up to 4096QAM with DVB-C2. DVB-S2X and DVB-C2 also supports channel bonding.

The essential features and capabilities of the new DVB standards are thus:

- 30 - 50% increase in net data rate
- Multiple inputs (TS or GS)
- With T2 and C2, the possibility of variable coding and modulation
- With DVB-C2 and DVB-S2X optional channel boning

With the change from SDTV to HDTV increased amounts of net data rate became necessary. UHDTV additionally need some more increase of data rate. DVB-S2 will replace all DVB-S transponders in the next few years. Many former DVB-T networks are now switched over to DVB-T2. DVB-C2 has been tested out in a few field trials but it was not realized in practical CATV networks.

In the chapters following, the baseband signals of DVB-x2 and then the DVB-T2 and DVB-C2 standards will be described. DVB-S2 and DVB-S2X has already been discussed in the chapter on DVB-S/S2 and the associated DVB-S2 test methods are already found in the joint chapter "DVB-S/S2 Measurements".

Bibliography: [EN302307], [TR102376]. [EN302755], [A138], [TS102773], [TS102606], [TS102771], [A133]

36 Baseband Signals for DVB-x2

In the first generation DVB standards (DVB-S, DVB-C and DVB-T), the format of the input data was confined only precisely to MPEG-2 transport streams where all the modulation and demodulation steps are firmly synchronously linked to the 188-bytes-long transport stream packet structure. An MPEG-2 transport stream packet begins with a 4-bytes-long header which, in turn, begins with a sync byte having the value 0x47. This limitation to the transport stream structure no longer exists in the new DVB-x2 standards. In the first generation DVB standards, it was also only possible to feed precisely one transport stream into the modulator, the only exception being DVB-T in its "hierarchical modulation" mode of operation where the modulator could be supplied with up to two transport streams. In the new DVB-x2 standards, up to 255 transport streams or generic streams, or both, can be fed into the modulator and transmitted. The present chapter deals with the input signals for the new DVB-x2 standards and how they are processed and conditioned in the input interfaces of the DVB-x2 modulators.

36.1 Input Signal Formats

The new DVB-x2 modulators can accept four different input signal formats, which are:

- MPEG-2 transport streams (TS)
- Generic Fixed Packetized Streams (GFPS)
- Generic Continuous Streams (GCS)
- Generic Encapsulated Streams (GSE)

At the time of publication of the DVB-S2 standards, the DVB-GSE standard did not yet exist. DVB-S2 only provided for GFPS streams and GCE streams as generic input streams, supporting both a single input stream (TS or generic) and multiple input streams. Multiple input streams

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_36

can also have different formats. The multiple input streams are called PLPs - Physical Layer Pipes - in DVB-T2 and DVB-C2.

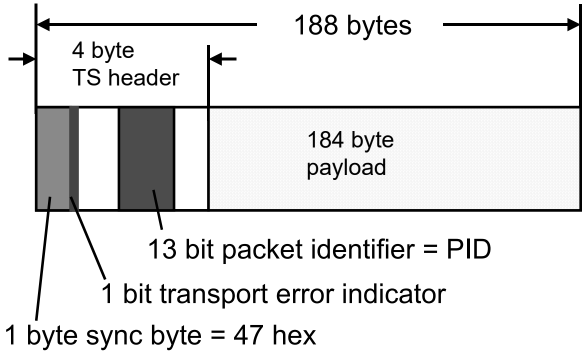


Fig. 36.1. MPEG-2 Transport Stream (TS)

36.1.1 MPEG-2 Transport Streams - TS

An MPEG-2 transport stream consists of packets having a constant length of 188 bytes (Fig. 36.1.). The packet itself is divided into a header component of 4 bytes length and a payload component of 184 bytes. The first byte of the header is the sync byte which has a constant value of 0x47. The next three bytes in the header are used for signalling important transport parameters. The rest is described in detail in Chapter 3.

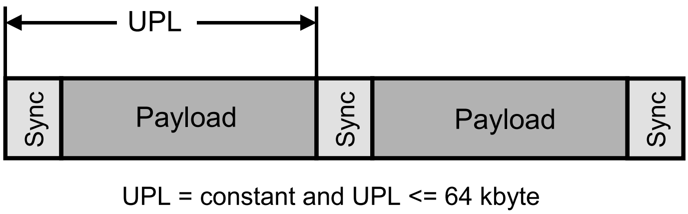


Fig. 36.2. Generic Fixed Packetized Stream (GFPS)

36.1.2 Generic Fixed Packetized Streams - GFPS

Generic Fixed Packetized Streams (GFPS) are data streams which have a packet structure and the packet length of which is known and is constant (Fig. 36.2.). The beginning of a packet is marked with a special sync byte. An example of a relevant application would be ATM data signals with a constant length of 53 bytes. The length of a GFPS must not exceed 64 kbytes for else it would be a Generic Continuous Stream - a GCE.

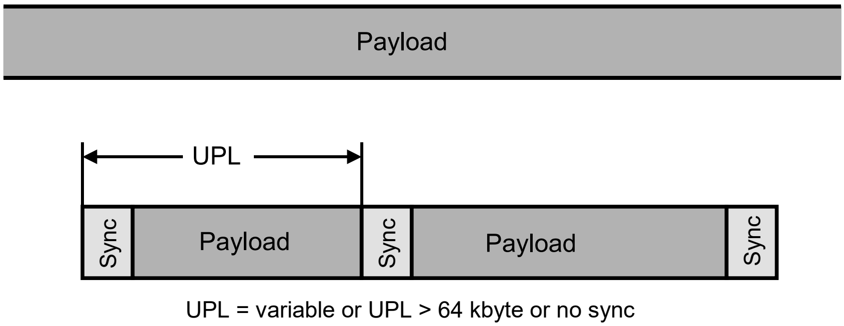


Fig. 36.3. Generic Continuous Stream (GCS)

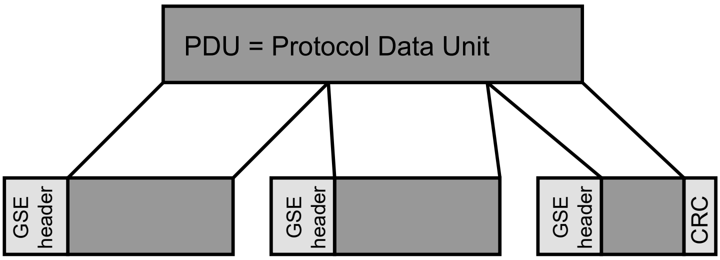


Fig. 36.4. Generic Stream Encapsulation (GSE)

36.1.3 Generic Continuous Streams - GCS

Generic Continuous Streams (GCS) do not have any packet structure (Fig. 36.3.). Thus, the modulator interface does not recognize any boundaries in the data stream. Generic continuous streams are the most generalized form of data streams. Generic continuous streams are also data streams which have a packet structure which don't differs from that of GFPS but the packet length of which varies or is longer than 64 kbytes.

36.1.4 Generic Encapsulated Streams - GSE

Generic Encapsulated Streams (GSE) have a packet structure the packet length of which varies. The beginning of the packet is provided with a special GSE header as defined in the DVB GSE standard [TS102606]. The user data packet is prefixed by a GSE header in the GSE encapsulator and a CRC is formed over the entire data packet, which CRC is then appended. The user data packets can also be divided into a number of packets where each packet starts with a GSE header (Fig. 36.4.). This type of data did not yet exist at the time when DVB-S2 became a standard.

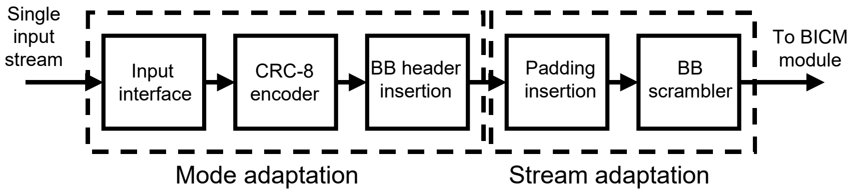


Fig. 36.5. Input Processing with a single input stream

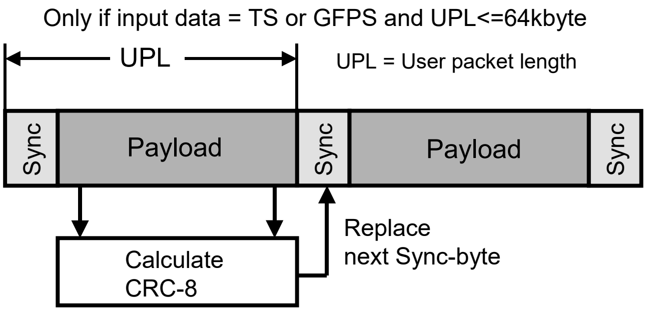


Fig. 36.6. CRC-8 encoding

36.2 Signal Processing and Conditioning in the Modulator Input Section

The following paragraphs describe how one or more DVB-x2 input streams are conditioned in the input section of the modulator. The difference lies in the conditioning of a single input stream in comparison with multiple input streams. Conditioning a single data stream, either a transport stream or a generic stream is clearly easier than conditioning a number of input streams.

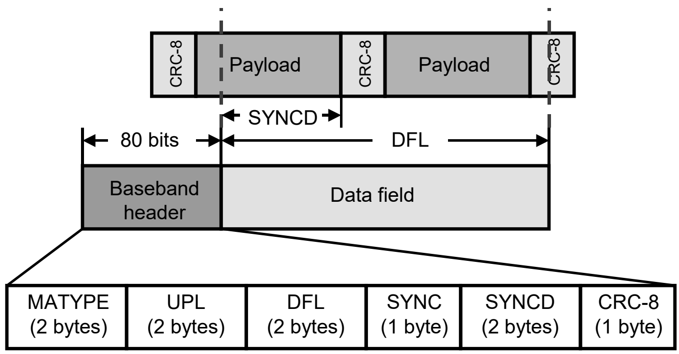


Fig. 36.7. Baseband header insertion with TS or GFPS

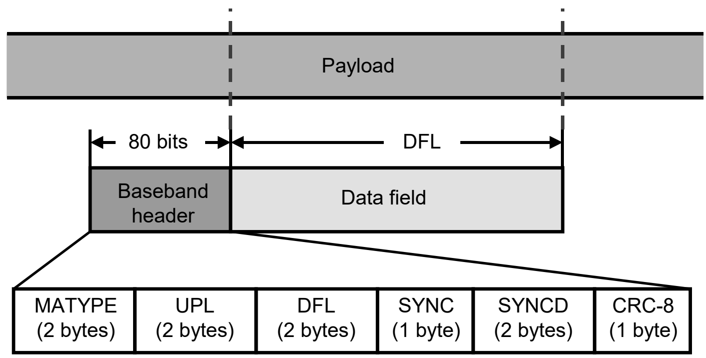


Fig. 36.8. Baseband header insertion with GCS

36.2.1 Single Input Stream

If only one data stream is fed into the DVB-x2 modulator, the modulator first synchronizes itself in the input interface to the data stream supplied (Fig. 36.5.). This is followed by the CRC-8 encoder (Fig. 36.6.) which inserts a checksum into the data stream at a particular point unless this is a continuous data stream. In the case of a transport stream, a CRC-8 is formed over the 187 bytes preceding the next sync byte and the subsequent sync byte is then replaced by this checksum. If it is a GFPS, the CRC-8 is formed over all data except the sync byte and the sync byte following the packet is also replaced by a CRC-8.

Following this, a piece of corresponding length is cut out of the data stream and a ten-byte-long, i.e. 80-bit-long, baseband header is placed in front (Fig. 36.7.). This is done continuously piece by piece and occurs completely asynchronously with the data steam supplied, whether this is a TS, GFPS, GCS or GSE. In the case of a TS or GFPS, the distance in bytes from the beginning of the packet cut out to the next sync byte is entered in the SYNCD part of the baseband header (Fig. 36.7.).

Components of the baseband header:

MATYPE (2 bytes) – Mode Adaptation Type

MATYPE-1

- TS/GS field (2 bits), input stream format: Generic Fixed Packetized Stream, Transport Stream, Generic Continuous Stream, Generic Encapsulated Stream
- SIS/MIS field (1 bit): Single or multiple input streams
- CCM/ACM field (1 bit): Constant coding and modulation or variable coding and modulation (or adaptive coding and modulation in DVB-S2)
- ISSY (1 bit): Input stream synchronization indicator
- NPD (1 bit): Null-packet deletion active/not active
- EXT (2 bits): media specific, reserved for future use

MATYPE-2

- If multiple input streams, MATYPE-2 = ISI = Input stream identifier (up to 255 input streams).

Other components of the baseband header:

- UPL (2 bytes): User packet length in bits (0…65535)
- DFL (2 bytes): Data field length in bits (0 …53760)
- SYNC (1 byte): A copy of the user packet sync-byte
- SYNCD (2 bytes): Distance between beginning of data field to the beginning of the first user packet which starts in the data field
- CRC-8 mode (1 byte): The XOR of the CRC-8 field with the MODE field
- CRC-8 is the CRC over the first 9 bytes of the baseband header
- MODE: 0 = Normal Mode (NM), 1 = High Effiency Mode (HEM)

- Other values reserved for future use

The first 3 blocks of input processing, namely input interface, CRC-8-encoding und baseband header insertion are called Mode Adaptation (Fig. 36.5.). This is followed by the stream adaptation (Fig. 36.5.) consisting of padding und baseband scrambler.

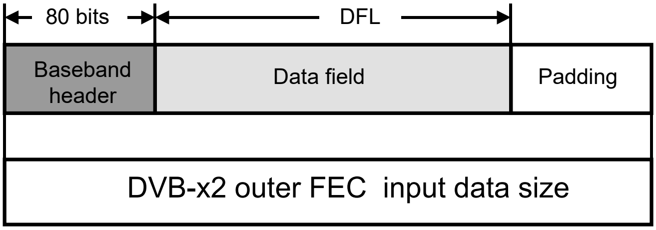


Fig. 36.9. Padding

Padding (Fig. 36.9.) means filling up or stuffing, i.e. if there are not sufficient user data available, a DVB-x2 FEC frame is filled up with stuffing or padding bytes until it is completely filled with data. This corresponds to an adaptation to the FEC frame structure of the outer DVB-x2 (BCH) error protection and is dependent on the code rate set for the error protection.

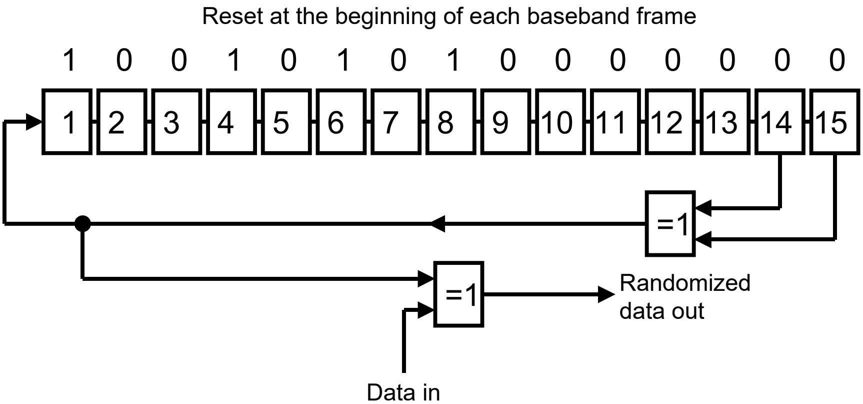


Fig. 36.10. Baseband scrambler

This is followed by the baseband scrambler (Fig. 36.10.) which has the task of randomizing the data as much as possible, i.e. adjacent long sequences of zeroes and ones are broken up and a pseudo-random data stream is generated. For this purpose, the data are Exclusive-ORed with a pseudo-random sequence. The PRBS generator has exactly the same structure as the energy dispersal stage of the first generation DVB standard and is always reset at the beginning of a baseband frame.

The DVB-x2 input data are now ready for the next signal processing steps which depend on the respective DVB-x2 standard.

36.2.2 Multiple Input Streams

In the sections following, the much more complex signal processing in the input stage of a DVB-x2 modulator in the case of multiple input streams is described. In DVB-T2, the operating mode with multiple input streams, whether they are transport streams or generic streams, is called Multiple PLP.

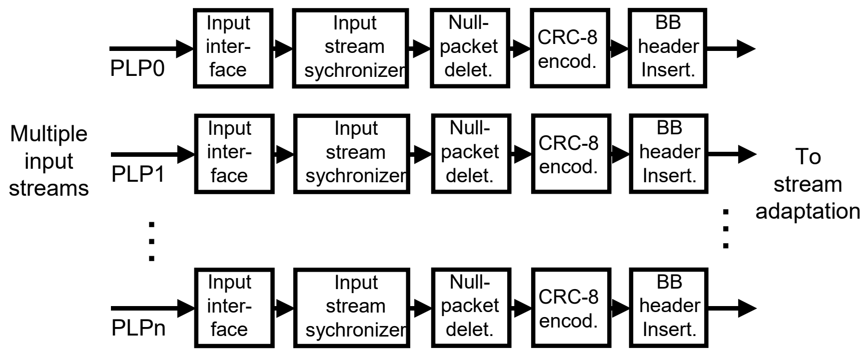


Fig. 36.11. Mode adaptation with multiple input streams

The multiple input streams (TS, GFPS, GCS or GSE) are present at the respective inputs of the input interface where synchronization to the input streams takes place. The input streams are then supplied to the further signal processing blocks of the mode adaptation section (Fig. 36.11.). The first one is the optional input stream synchronizer (ISSY) (Fig. 36.12.). The ISSY can be used for removing jitter from the input streams in the receiver; which is done via an internal clock similar to the STC/PCR in the case of the MPEG-2 transport stream. However, this clock is controlled via the modulator clock. The clock consists of a 22-bit counter the current value of which is continuously repeatedly written into optional ISSY fields which are appended to the end of the user packet (UP) and have a length of 2 or 3 bytes.

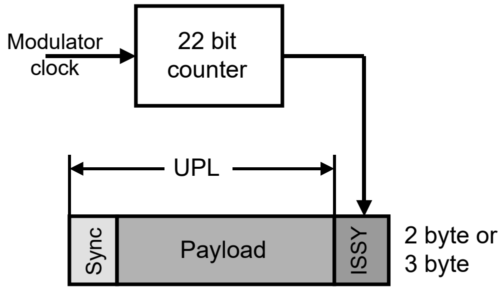


Fig. 36.12. Input stream synchronization (ISSY)

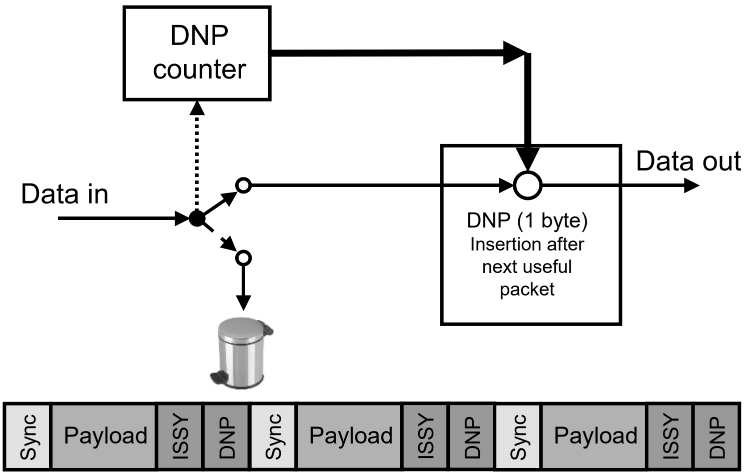


Fig. 36.13. Null Packet Deletion

The use of ISSY is signalled via the baseband header, followed by the "Null Packet Deletion" block (Fig. 36.13.). This block is optional and is only used if an MPEG-2 transport stream is present as input stream. An MPEG-2 transport stream contains null packets which run on PID=0x1FFF, i.e. on the highest PID. These packets do not carry any payload data but only pad the transport stream to a constant total data rate. The "Null Packet Deletion" processing block has the aim of removing these null packets from the transport stream. Null packets are unnecessary ballast which does not have to be transmitted. However, the null packets must be removed in such a way that the receiver is able to add them again to the transport stream in the correct number and at the correct position. For this purpose, a DNP byte (Fig. 36.14.) is inserted after each transport stream packet (after the ISSY field or, if there is none, directly after the transport stream packet). In the DNP (Delete Null Packet) field, the number of null packets removed from in front of this packet is entered. If the value in the DNP field is zero, no null packets have been removed from in front of this packet. To this end, the removal of the null packets is tracked in parallel by a null packet counter which is incremented with each removal. After the next transport stream packet which is not a null packet, the count is then entered in the DNP field of this transport stream packet carrying "real data" and the counter is reset. If the counter reaches its maximum of 255, this value is entered in the DNP field of the next transport stream packet and this is also transmitted even if it is a null packet. Following this, the DNP counter is also reset.

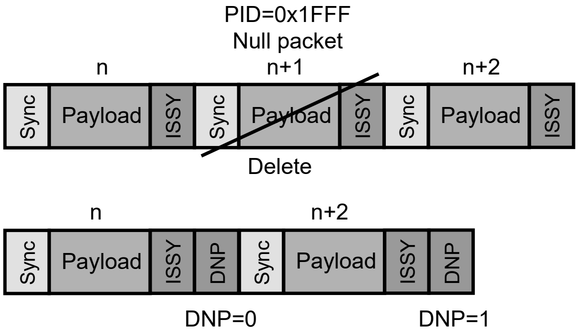


Fig. 36.14. Deletion of Null Packets

As in the case of the single input stream, too, the CRC-8 checksum and the baseband header are then inserted. The operation of these two blocks has already been described in the "Single Input Streams" section (Fig. 36.6.).

In the next block "Stream Adaptation" (Fig. 36.15.), all the streams prepared in the Mode Adaptation block are then combined. The block which combines the streams is called either merger or scheduler, depending on the standard, DVB-S2, DVB-T2 or DVB-C2. The "Stream Adaptation" block also differs slightly in detail with these standards. In the present section, only the common features of all standards will be discussed. The details and differences will be described later.

As in the case of the single input stream, this is followed by the padding and the baseband scrambler. These two blocks have also been described already in the "Single Input Stream" chapter,

The data streams are now ready for the "Bit Interleaved Coding and Modulation" signal processing block following, which, however, differs greatly in the different standards and will be explained in the respective chapter on DVB-S2, DVB-T2 and DVB-C2.

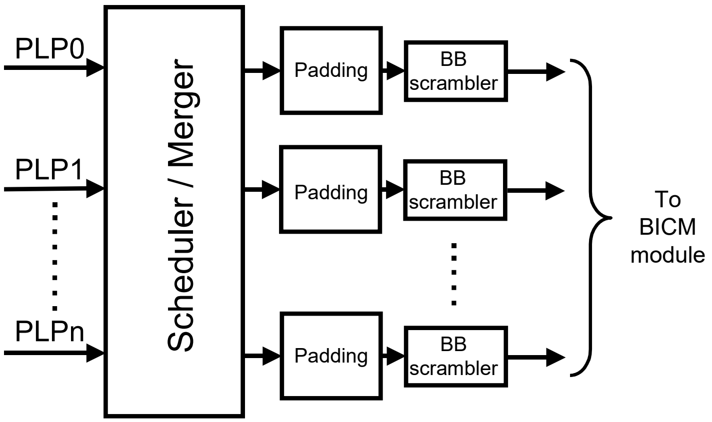


Fig. 36.15. Stream Adaptation in multiple PLP

36.3 Standard-related Special Features

We will now briefly discuss standard-related special features in the input signal processing of DVB-S2, DVB-T2 and DVB-C2.

36.3.1 DVB-S2

The signal processing in DVB-S2 corresponds very much to that already described in this chapter. At the time when the DVB-S2 standard was being fixed, the "Generic Encapsulated Stream" (GSE) data format had not yet been defined. Neither is there any mention of the term PLP (Physical Layer Pipe) in the DVB-S2 standard where simply multiple input streams are referred to. The signal processing section in the "Stream Adaptation" block is called "merger/slicer" in DVB-S2 and "Multiple Input Streams" has not as yet appeared as an operating mode in any DVB-S2 application.

36.3.2 DVB-T2

The term PLP (Physical Layer Pipe) was used for the first time in DVB-T2. And in DVB-T2, the Multiple Input Mode is called MPLP mode. It is especially the possibility of being able to use this standard for transmitting contents with different robustness and with different data rates which will be made use of and is here called VCM - Variable Coding and Modulation.

The Stream Adaptation block (Fig. 36.16.) contains further processing steps such as:

- Dynamic scheduling information,
- Frame delay
- In-band signalling

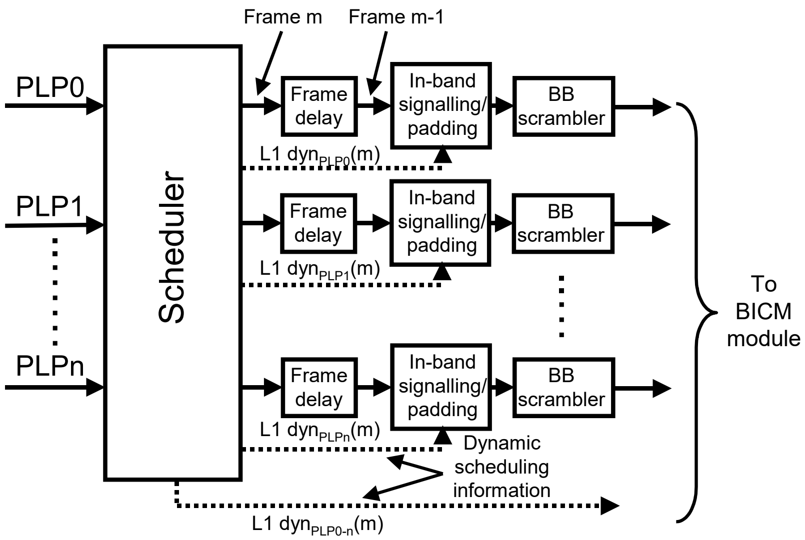


Fig. 36.16. Stream Adaptation Block in DVB-T2

Instead of padding data, the padding field can also contain in-band signalling data. This can be used for dynamic Layer-1 (L1) signalling for subsequent frames. I.e. it can be used for dynamically signalling and altering e.g. modulation parameters and error protection. Since the signalling information relates to subsequent frames, each PLP path will require a frame delay block.

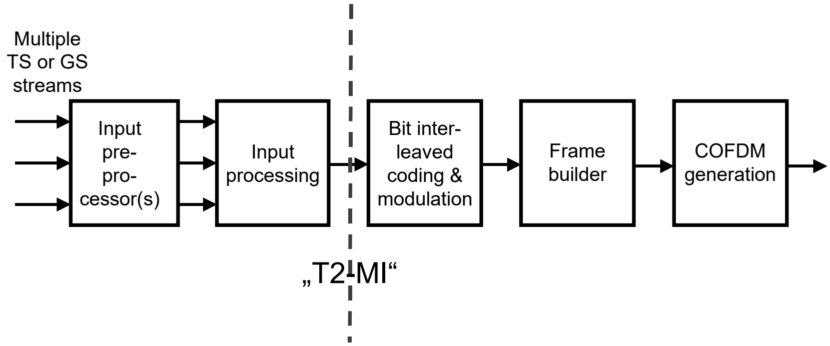


Fig. 36.17. Interface between DVB-T2 multiplexer and modulator

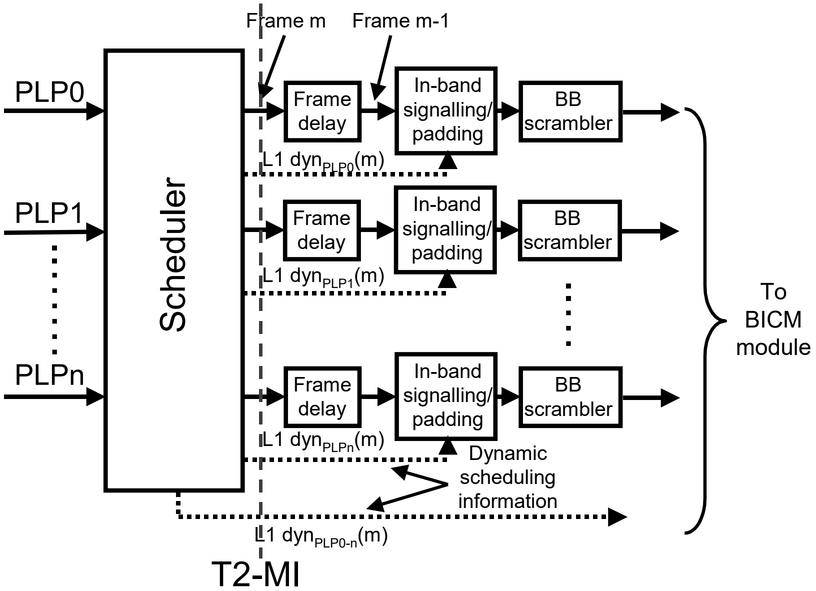


Fig. 36.18. Precise interface between DVB-T2 gateway and modulator (T2-MI)

Since DVB-T2 is also intended for forming single-frequency networks, these multiple input streams must be supplied completely synchronously to all modulators. This would never be possible over n feed lines which is why the PLPs are combined in the DVB-T2 multiplexer/DVB-T2 gateway outside the modulator, a separate interface, the DVB-T2 modulator interface, T2-MI in brief, being defined for this purpose (Fig 36.17.).

In principle, the interface between DVB-T2 multiplexer or DVB-T2 gateway and modulator is located between the input processing block and Bit Interleaved Coding and Modulation (Fig. 36.17.). The T2-MI signal contains all PLPs. The DVB-T2 modulator is only supplied with a single special input signal. In precise terms, the T2-MI interface is located after the scheduler (Fig. 36.18.). However, the padding is still carried out in the DVB-T2 gateway.

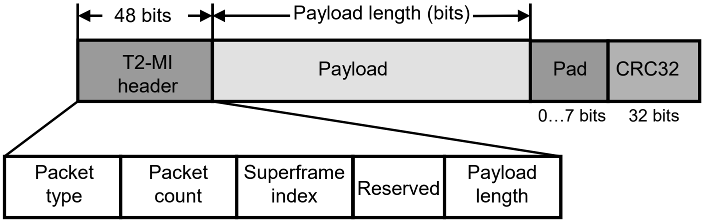


Fig. 36.19. T2-MI packet structure

Table 36.1. Packet Type in the T2-MI header

T2-MI Packet Type	Description
0x00	Baseband frame
0x01	Auxiliary stream I/Q data
0x10	L1 current
0x11	L1 future
0x20	DVB-T2 timestamp
0x21	Individual addressing
0x30	FEF part: Null
0x31	FEF part: I/Q data
All other values	Reserved for future use

For the T2-MI DVB-T2 modulator interface, a separate packet structure was defined, namely T2-MI packets (Fig. 36.19.) with header and payload. After the payload field, the frame is padded with bits to provide an integral number of bytes overall. This is followed at the end with a CRC-32 checksum. The T2-MI header contains the following components:

- Packet Type (8 bits)
- Packet Count (8 bits)
- Superframe Index (4 bits)
- Reserved for future use (12 bits)

- Payload Length (16 bits)

The Packet Type is used for signalling which data are currently being transmitted in the paylaod-field.

Packet count is a counter which is incremented by one continuously and independently of payload always from T2-MI packet to T2-MI packet. The counter runs from 00 to FF and then starts again at 00. Packet Count can be used to determine at the modulator input, e.g., if packets have been lost. The superframe index is constant for all T2-MI packets belonging to the same superframe. The "reserved for future use" bits are currently meaningless. "Payload length" signals the length of the payload component in bits.

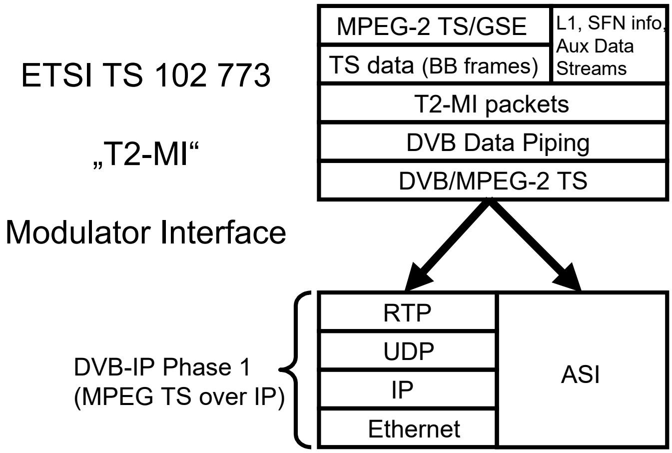


Fig. 36.20. Physical T2-MI interface

The T2-MI packets are physically packaged into MPEG-2 transport stream packets via DVB Data Piping (Fig. 36.21.). i.e. the T2-MI packets are cut into 184-byte-long pieces and then packaged into the payload component of the MPEG-2 transport stream packets. To utilize the transport stream interface particularly effectively, it is intended to work with a pointer field immediately after the transport stream header similar to MPEG-2 sections. If the transport error indicator in the TS header is set to One, it marks the beginning of a new T2-MI packet in the payload component of the transport stream packet when the T2-MI packet is embedded. However, it is also possible to transmit the rest of the preceding T2-MI packet at the beginning in the TS packet. The pointer then points to the beginning of the next T2-MI packet in the payload proportion of the TS packet. This saves stuffing in the transport stream packet containing the end part of the last T2-MI packet and thus gains transmission capacity on the feed link.

The interface type provided is then either TS-ASI or DVB-IP (Fig. 36.20.). The Gigabit Ethernet interface is becoming more and more popular as a TS interface and it makes sense, therefore, to provide both currently very popular TS interfaces TS-ASI and DVB-IP as the physical interface for T2-MI, making it possible to use the existing TS infrastructure also for the distribution of T2-MI signals.

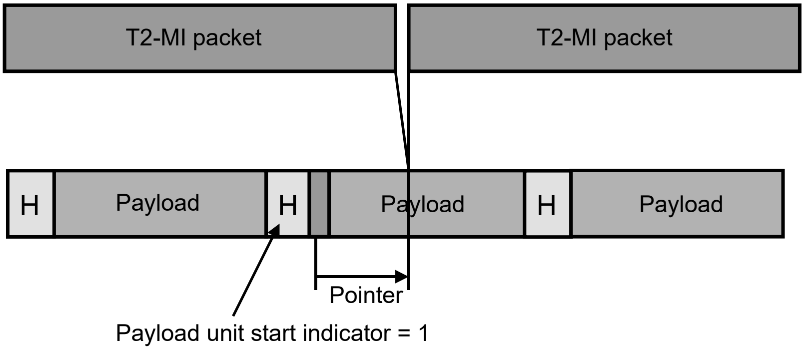


Fig. 36.21. Data piping – T2-MI packets are transmitted in MPEG-2 transport stream packets

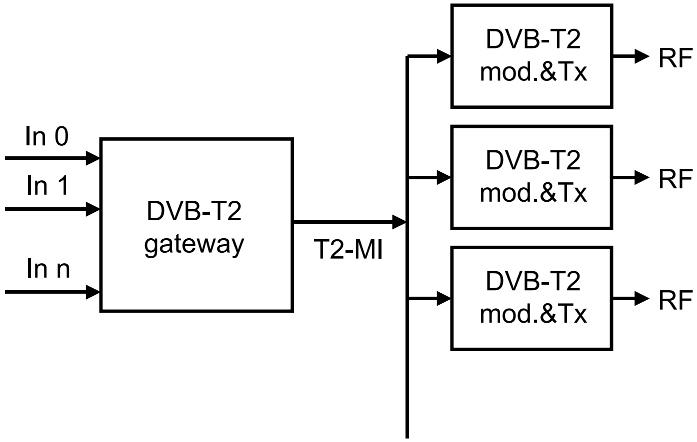


Fig. 36.22. DVB-T2 network with DVB-T2 gateway and DVB-T2 modulators and transmitters

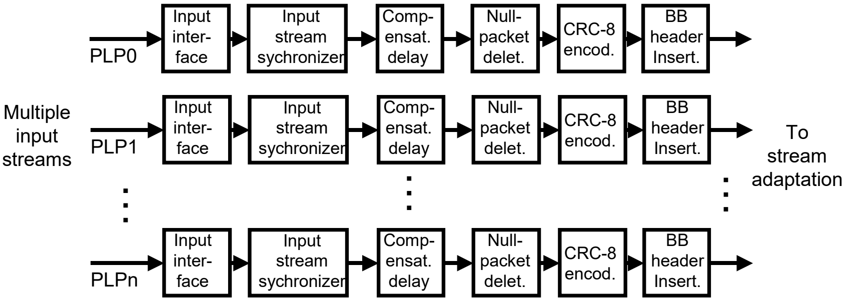


Fig. 36.23. Extended Mode Adaptation Block in DVB-T2

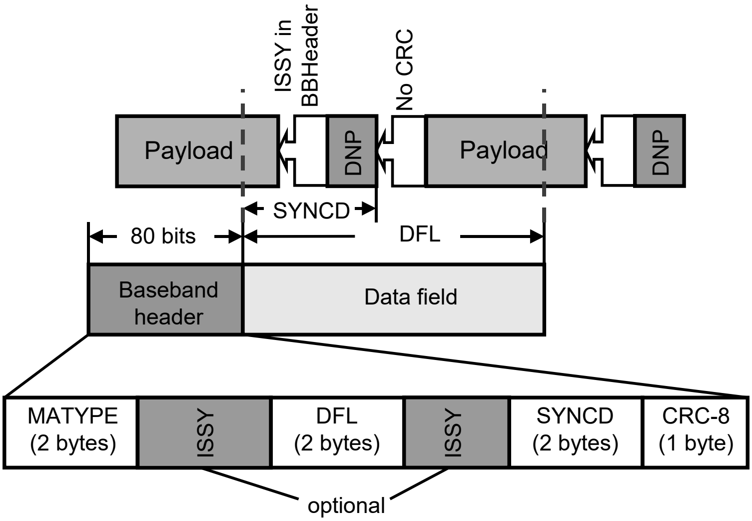


Fig. 36.24. High Efficiency Mode in DVB-T2 for TS

The DVB-T2 modulators are also configured (Layer-1 signalling) via special T2-MI packets over the T2-MI interface. Further details are described in the DVB-T2 chapter since this requires more prior DVB-T2 knowledge.

DVB-T2 contains more special features. Firstly, there is also the concept of a Common PLP. This is a physical layer pipe which carries information for several PLPs. The mode adaptation block also contains the compensating delay circuit section. In this section, delay differences between the PLPs are compensated for. Together with the ISSY block, a Common PLP can be synchronized here with the other PLPs. Although this also provides for synchronisation between the PLPs, this does not appear to be relevant from the current point of view. It can be expected that a receiver will demodulate exactly one PLP plus Common PLP at the same time.

Furthermore, a Normal Mode (NM) and a High Efficiency Mode (HEM) have also been defined in DVB-T2. These two modes only relate to the input signal processing. The Normal Mode actually does not require any further comment since it corresponds precisely to the subject matter discussed before. The NM is also the mode which is compatible with DVB-S2. It applies to all four input signal formats. The High Efficiency Mode is restricted to only TS and GSE. In this mode, no CRC-8 is formed and transmitted. In addition, the ISSY field is transported in the baseband header in the UPL and SYNC fields, which are now free. UPL and SYNC are both known in the signal formats TS (UPL = 188 bytes and SYNC = 0x47) and GSE (UPL signalled in the GSE header). It is thus possible to save a few more bytes at this point.

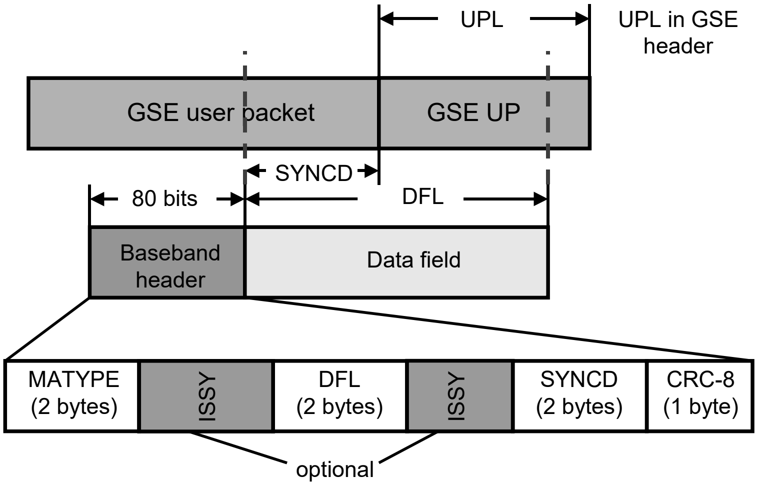


Fig. 36.25. High Efficiency Mode in DVB-T2 for GSE

36.3.3 DVB-C2

As far as DVB-C2 is concerned, no additional features can be currently reported. The signal processing is almost exactly the same as that discussed in the present chapter. DVB-C2 also mentions PLPs. At present, no modulator interface is defined. DVB-C2 also contains the Normal Mode (NM) and the High Efficiency Mode (HEM).

In 2014 the DVB document A169 [DVB-A169] describing a DVB-C2 modulator interface („C2-MI“) was published. C2-MI defines an interface between the C2 OFDM signal processing block and the signal processing blocks before. The C2-MI packets are of a similar structure like the T2-MI packets. They are also transported via data-piping over a MPEG-2 TS using a physical interface identical to T2-MI which is either TS-ASI or DVB-IP. In DVB-C2 there is also a Normal Mode (NM) and a High Efficiency Mode (HEM).

36.3.4 DVB-S2X

In DVB-S2X a “big“ input data stream - which is typically a MPEG transport stream containing some Ultra High Definition TV services in a statistical multiplex – is splitted into some data streams for up to three transponders (”channel bonding“).

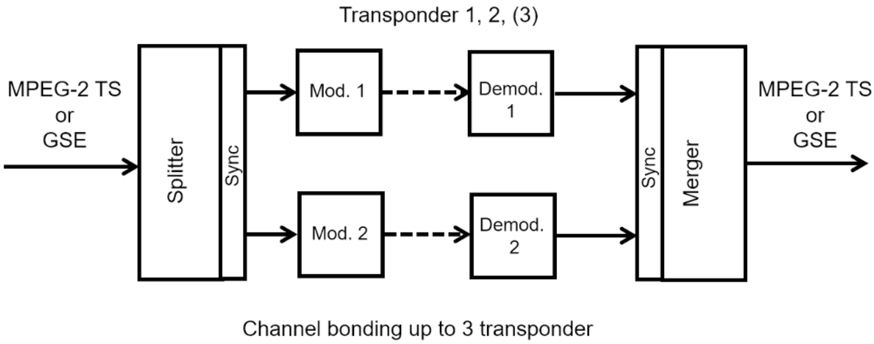


Fig. 36.26. Channel bonding option in DVB-S2X; splitting of a data stream for up to three transponders

It is necessary to generate such “small“ data streams for up to three DVB-S2X transponder in a way that the receiver is able to regenerate a synchronous “big“ data stream. For that reason synchronization signals are inserted before the signals are transported via satellite (see fig. 36.26.). Multiplexing some services together to a “big“ MPEG-2 transport stream is necessary for getting a reasonable statistical multiplex gain in UHDTV applications.

Bibliography: [EN303307], [TR102376], [EN302755], [A138], [TS102773], [TS102606], [TS102771], [A133] , [DVB-A83-2] [DVB-A169]

37 DVB-T2

DVB-T2, the Second Generation Digital Terrestrial Video Broadcasting norm [DVB A122r1], [ETSI EN 302755] is a completely new DVB-T standard. Like its predecessor, the BBC was the driving force behind the development of DVB-T2. The purpose was to force the UK to implement HDTV coverage together with MPEG-4 source coding. DVB-T2 was initially intended to increase the net data rate by at least 30 to 50 percent relative to DVB-T(1). In fact, nowadays these original goals can be exceeded.

37.1 Introduction

Similarly to DVB-T(1), DVB-T2 uses the COFDM modulation method, but with modified and extended constellation diagrams. Outer forward error correction is provided by BCH coding, as in DVB-S2, while LDPC coding and subsequent bit interleaving are applied as inner forward error correction.

The complete FEC frame structure corresponds to that of DVB-S2. LDPC coding has been known since the 1960s (Low Density Parity Check Codes), but requires huge calculation power in the receiver and has become viable only since about 2002, due to current chip technologies. From Spring 2006 to March 2008, seven multi-day DVB-T2 meetings took place. The one held in May 2008 adopted a preliminary paper that was published by the ETSI in May 2008 as a draft, and later elevated to standard. In autumn 2008 the implementation guidelines and the T2 modulator interface (T2-MI) were published. For many countries, DVB-T2 came too early or too late, depending on it is viewed, because these countries had already introduced DVB-T and a switch to DVB-T2 at the time of publication would not have been appropriate or would have found no acceptance. In 2010, the first DVB-T2 networks were put into operation in the UK, followed by Italy and many field trials. As of 2010, only DVB-T2 networks (with the exception of ISDB-T networks in many countries in South America or DTMB networks in China) went into operation, e.g. in South Africa, Russia, or latest in Germany in 2017. In many countries, the switch from

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_37

DVB-T(1) to DVB-T2 is imminent. The DVB-T2 rollout scenarios can be divided into

- Countries that are already operating DVB-T(1) with demand for more data rate
- Countries that still operate fully analog television

37.2 Theoretical Maximum Channel Capacity

However, before discussing the DVB-T2-standard in detail, the theoretical limits of the terrestrial transmission channel will first be considered on the basis of an 8-MHz-wide channel, looking at various receiving conditions from portable indoor antenna to fixed outdoor antenna, with characteristics known from DVB-T. The maximum possible data rate in theory is expressed in approximation by the Shannon-limit via the following formula if the signal-to-noise ratio is about or more than 10 dB:

$C = 1/3 \cdot B \cdot SNR;$

where
C = channel capacity (in bits/s);
B = bandwidth (in Hz);
SNR = signal/noise ratio (in dB);

An 8-MHz-wide terrestrial TV channel will then provide the following theoretical maximum channel capacity:

Table 37.1. Theoretical maximum channel capacity of an 8-MHz-wide TV channel

SNR[dB]	Theor. max. channel capacity [Mbit/s]	Comment
10	26.7	
12	32	Poor portable indoor reception
15	40	Portable indoor reception
18	48	Good portable indoor reception
20	53.3	Poor reception with outdoor antenna
25	66.7	Good roof antenna reception
30	80	Very good roof antenna reception

In DVB-T, the data rates in an 8-MHz channel in DVB-T networks designed for portable indoor-reception are frequently about

13.27 Mbit/s (16QAM, CR = 2/3, g= 1/4, SFN, limit SNR = 12 dB)

and in DVB-T networks designed for roof antenna reception they are in most cases about

22.39 Mbit/s (64QAM, CR = 3/4, g=1/4, SFN, limit SNR = 18 dB).

The aim in DVB-T2 is to achieve data rates which are higher by at least 30 to 50%. Without familiarity with the DVB-T2 Standard, it can thus be expected that, given comparable conditions, the following data rates can be achieved:

- Portable indoor-reception (SFN, long guard interval):
  17.3 to 19.9 Mbit/s

- Roof antenna reception (SFN, long guard interval):
  29.1 to 33.6 Mbit/s.

The error protection alone will bring 30 %. Additional features such as:

- 16K- and 32K-mode
- Extended carrier mode
- 256QAM modulation
- Flexible Pilot Pattern

will bring further improvements in the data rate.

37.3 DVB-T2 - Overview

The essential core parameters of DVB-T2 are:

- Several MPEG-2 transport stream inputs or possibly generic-streams as baseband signals (up to 255)
- Approx. at least 30% higher net data rate mainly due to the improved BCH+LDPC error protection already used in DVB-S2
- Compatibility with the Geneva 2007 Frequency Plan (8, 7, 6 MHz bandwidths)

- Additional bandwidths 1.7 MHz and 10 MHz
- Stationary, but also mobile applications
- COFDM
- 1K, 2K, 4K, 8K, 16K and 32K-Mode
- Guard interval 1/4, 1/8, 1/16, 1/32, 19/256 and 1/128
- Modulation scheme QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM and 256QAM
- Q-delayed ”rotated“ constellation diagrams
- RF frame-structure with P1 and P2-symbol at the beginning of the frame
- Flexible pilot structures with fixed and distributed pilots
- PAPR reduction (Peak to Average Power Ratio) reduction, i.e. reduction of the crest-factor (2 different methods)
- Variable coding and modulation (the transmission parameters can be changed in operation)
- Time interleaving
- Time slicing
- Optional MISO-principle (Multiple Input, Single Output)
- Inbuilt FEFs (Future Extension Frames) for later extensions
- Auxiliary data streams as an option
- Time frequency slicing (TFS) mentioned in the Appendix of the Standard.

The details of DVB-T2 will now be discussed in the following sections.

37.4 Baseband Interface

The DVB-T2 baseband interface handles one or more data inputs. DVB-T2 is not any more restricted to transfer only MPEG-2 Transport Streams, it also provides for so-called generic streams as possible input formats, being able to handle a maximum of 255 input streams. The place where these streams are to be multiplexed was initially undecided. The answer came with the T2-MI standard, the modulator interface for DVB-T2 (Fig. 37.1). Multiplexing is performed in the headend or in the Multiplex Center, with the DVB-T2 modulator being fed a single data stream via DVB-T2-MI. This data stream, similarly to the ETI stream in DAB, contains all the information necessary for the modulator (L1 signaling): it contains all PLP baseband frame data, besides the time stamp for synchronizing single frequency networks. The baseband interface has already been discussed in Chapter 36.

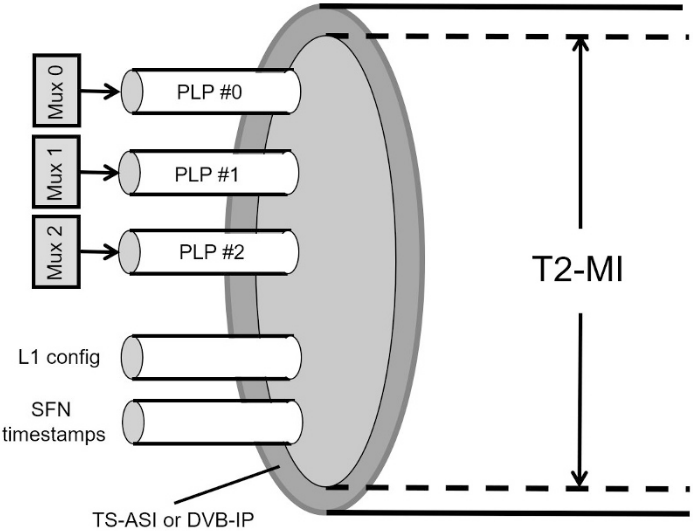


Fig. 37.1. The T2-MI interface protocol

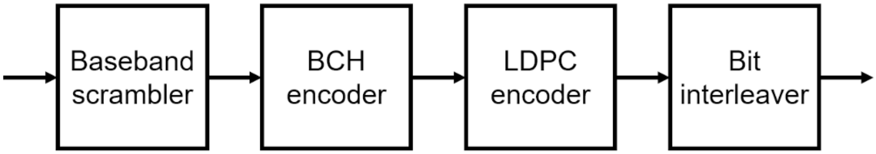


Fig. 37.2. DVB-T2 error protection (BCH stands for Bose-Chaudhuri-Hocquenghem, LDPC stands for Low Density Parity Check Code)

DVB-T2 has two modes: Mode A (Single PLP) and Mode B (Multiple PLPs). Only in Mode A are all the processing steps performed in the modulator itself; in Mode B, the T2-MI interface is right after the scheduler.

In Mode B, variable Coding and Modulation (VCM) can be used from PLP to PLP, and this can also be done dynamically, i.e. the transmission parameters for the next DVB-T2 frame may change, and this must be signaled dynamically. This is done in the Padding Field of the baseband header. There is also an optional Common PLP containing information for several or all PLPs. Mode B can be operated in

- HEM (High Efficiency Mode), in case of transferring MPEG-2 Transport Streams or GSEs, and
- NM (Normal Mode), which is compatible with DVB-S2.

For further details on signal processing in the baseband interface, refer to Chapter 36, “Baseband Signals for DVB-x2”.

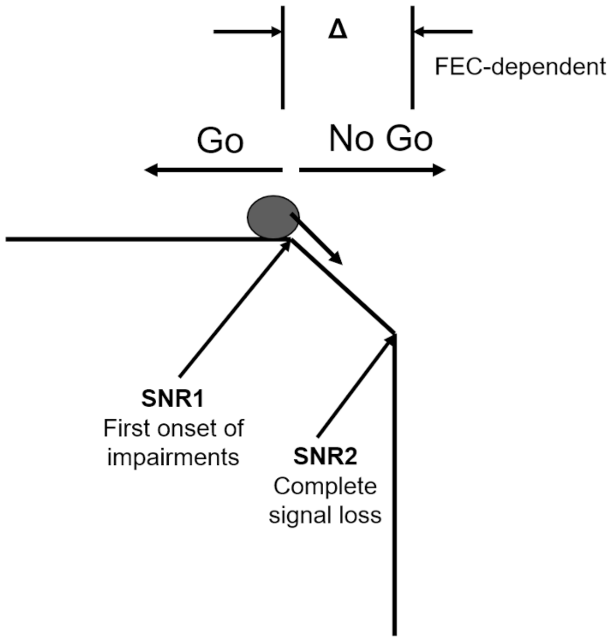


Fig. 37.3. “Fall-off-the-cliff”

37.5 Forward Error Correction

The improved forward error correction (Fig. 37.2.) results in an SNR gain, as in DVB-S2. All in all, the system gets closer to the Shannon limit with such an improvement. This measure alone increases the net data rate by 30 percent. Similarly to DVB-S2, error protection in DVB-T2 consists of a baseband scrambler, a BCH block coder, an LDPC block coder, and a subsequent bit interleaver. The DVB-T2 modulator first randomizes (baseband scrambler) the baseband frame, including the baseband header and the padding block, and then feeds this frame to the FEC block where the BCH code is added as a first step. Subsequently, the LDPC coder appends a further error protection with a length depending on the code rate selected. The selectable code rates are the following:

- 1/2 (highest)
- 3/5
- 2/3
- 3/4
- 4/5
- 5/6 (lowest)

Code rate 1/2 means maximum error protection and minimum net data rate, while code rate 5/6 corresponds to minimum error protection and maximum data rate.

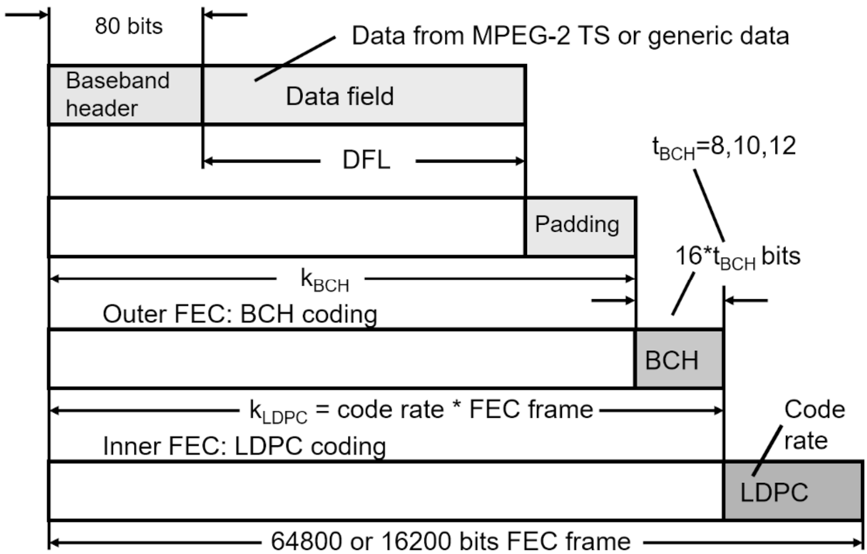


Fig. 37.4. DVB-T2 FEC frame

Just like DVB-S2, DVB-T2 can be operated using a short (16K) or a long (64K) FEC frame (Fig. 37.4.). The performance differences with respect to the SNR required are minimal and are in the range of a few tenths of a dB. The short FEC frame may be more favorable for low-data-rate data streams, and the long FEC in case of higher data rates. The data throughput now achievable in DVB-T2 is between 7.49 Mbit/s (QPSK, Code Rate=1/2) and 50.32 Mbit/s (256QAM, Code Rate=5/6). The necessary minimum SNR values are between 0.4 dB and 25.9 dB (Tables 37.2 and 37.3.). The “fall-off-the-cliff” effect (Fig. 37.3.) is significantly steeper compared to DVB-T: the transition from Go to No-Go occurs within a few steps of one hundredths of a dB. The reason is the cascading of two block codes. Data rate examples are listed in Table 37.4. for 8 MHz channel width, 32K mode, guard interval of 1/128 and PP7. Using other transmission parameters will, however, result in numerous other data rates. Listing all possible combinations would take up many pages.

Table 37.2. CNR limits for a BER of $1 \cdot 10^{-4}$ after LDPC, long 64K FEC frame

Modulation	Code rate	CNR Gaussian channel [dB]	CNR Rice channel [dB]	CNR Rayleigh channel [dB]	CNR 0dB echo channel @ 90% GI [dB]
QPSK	1/2	0.8	1.0	1.8	1.5
	3/5	2.1	2.4	3.4	3.0
	2/3	2.9	3.3	4.6	4.2
	3/4	3.9	4.3	5.9	5.5
	4/5	4.5	5.0	6.8	6.4
	5/6	5.0	5.6	7.2	7.2
16QAM	1/2	5.7	6.1	7.3	7.0
	3/5	7.4	7.7	9.1	8.8
	2/3	8.6	8.9	10.5	10.2
	3/4	9.8	10.3	12.2	11.9
	4/5	10.6	11.1	13.4	13.2
	5/6	11.2	11.8	14.4	14.2
64QAM	1/2	9.6	10.0	11.7	11.5
	3/5	11.7	12.1	13.8	13.6
	2/3	13.2	13.6	15.4	15.1
	3/4	14.9	15.3	17.5	17.3
	4/5	15.9	16.4	19.0	18.9
	5/6	16.6	17.2	19.9	20.1
256QAM	1/2	12.8	13.3	15.4	15.3
	3/5	15.6	16.0	18.1	18.2
	2/3	17.5	17.8	20.0	20.0
	3/4	19.7	20.2	22.5	22.5
	4/5	21.1	21.5	24.2	24.4
	5/6	21.8	22.3	25.3	25.7

Table 37.3. CNR limits for a BER of $1 \cdot 10^{-4}$ after LDPC, short 16K FEC frame

Modulation	Code rate	CNR Gaussian channel [dB]	CNR Rice channel [dB]	CNR Rayleigh channel [dB]	CNR 0dB echo channel @ 90% GI [dB]
QPSK	1/2	0.4	0.7	1.5	1.2
	3/5	2.2	2.4	3.5	3.2
	2/3	3.1	3.4	4.7	4.4
	3/4	4.0	4.5	6.0	5.7
	4/5	4.6	5.1	6.9	6.5
	5/6	5.1	5.7	7.8	7.4
16QAM	1/2	5.2	5.5	6.6	6.3
	3/5	7.5	7.9	9.3	9.0
	2/3	8.8	9.1	10.7	10.4
	3/4	10.0	10.5	12.4	12.1
	4/5	10.8	11.3	13.6	13.3
	5/6	11.4	12.0	14.6	14.4
64QAM	1/2	8.7	9.1	10.7	10.5
	3/5	12.0	12.4	14.2	14.0
	2/3	13.4	13.8	15.7	15.5
	3/4	15.2	15.6	17.8	17.6
	4/5	16.1	16.6	19.1	18.9
	5/6	16.8	17.4	20.3	20.3
256QAM	1/2	12.1	12.4	14.4	14.3
	3/5	16.5	16.9	18.8	18.8
	2/3	17.7	18.1	20.3	20.3
	3/4	19.9	20.4	22.6	22.7
	4/5	21.2	21.7	24.2	24.3
	5/6	22.0	22.5	25.6	25.9

Table 37.4. DVB-T2 channel capacity in the 8-MHz channel, 32K mode, g=1/128, PP7 (Source: DVB-T2 Implementation Guidelines, February 2009)

Modulation	Code rate	Bit rate [Mbit/s]	Frame length [symbols]	FEC blocks per frame
QPSK	1/2	7.44	60	50
	3/5	8.94	60	50
	2/3	9.95	60	50
	3/4	11.20	60	50
	4/5	11.95	60	50
	5/6	12.46	60	50
16QAM	1/2	15.04	60	101
	3/5	18.07	60	101
	2/3	20.11	60	101

	3/4	22.62	60	101
	4/5	24.14	60	101
	5/6	25.16	60	101
64QAM	1/2	22.48	60	151
	3/5	27.02	60	151
	2/3	30.06	60	151
	3/4	33.82	60	151
	4/5	36.09	60	151
	5/6	37.62	60	151
256QAM	1/2	30.08	60	202
	3/5	36.14	60	202
	2/3	40.21	60	202
	3/4	45.24	60	202
	4/5	48.27	60	202
	5/6	50.32	60	202

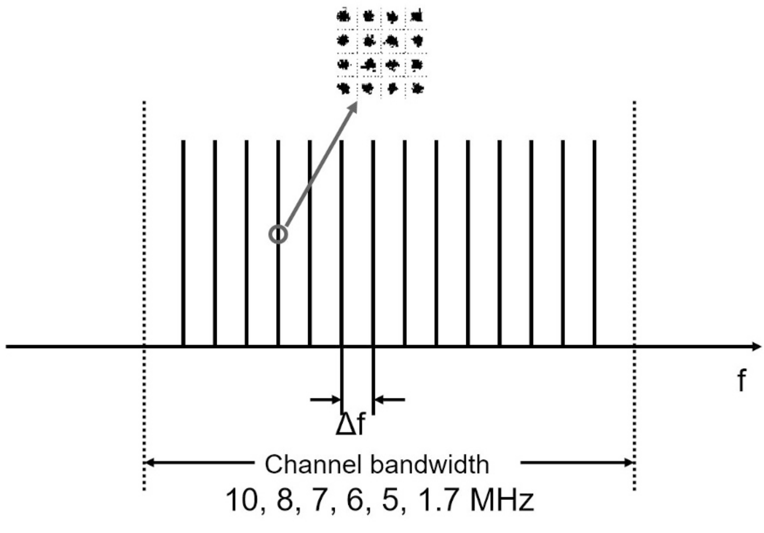


Fig. 37.5. DVB-T2 channel

37.6 COFDM Parameters

DVB-T2 supports channel bandwidths of 1.7, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 10 MHz (Fig. 37.3.). The actual signal bandwidth is slightly narrower because of the guard band at the upper and lower end of the DVB-T2 channel (Table 37.9.). Table 37.3. shows the CODFM parameters in the 8-MHz channel possible in DVB-T2. In the case of the 7- and 6-MHz and 1.7- and 10-MHz channel, respectively, (Fig. 37.5.), the parameters must be adapted correspondingly by a factor of 7/8 and 6/8 etc.. As can be seen in Table 37.6., not every guard interval is possible in every COFDM mode. Apart from one exception (P1 symbol), the guard interval (Fig. 37.6.) is also a cyclic prefix (CP) in DVB-T2, i.e. a repetition of the symbol end in the corresponding length.

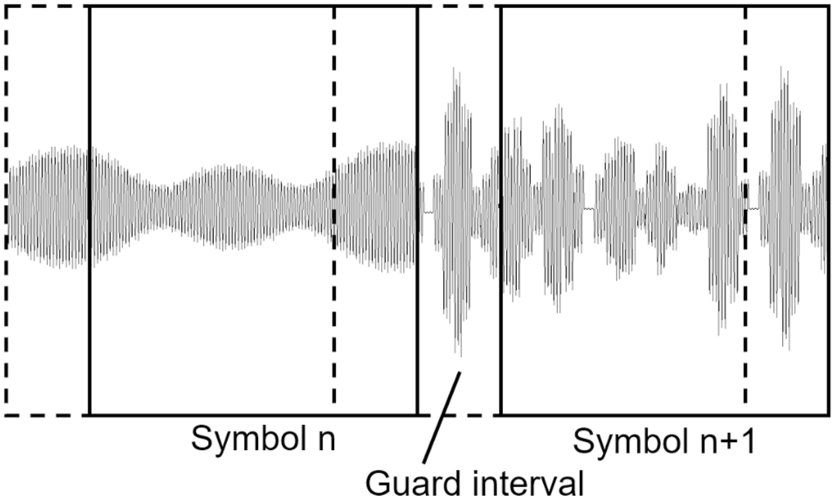


Fig. 37.6. Symbol and guard interval as a cyclic prefix (CP)

Table 37.5. DVB-T2 channel- and signal bandwidths

Bandwidth [MHz]	1.7	5	6	7	8	10
Elementary period [µs]	71/131	7/40	7/48	1/8	7/64	7/80
Signal band-width [MHz]	1.54	4.76	5.71	6.66	7.61	9.51

Table 37.6. DVB-T2 COFDM parameters in the 8-MHz channel

FFT	Symbol period [ms]	Carrier spacing [kHz] Δf	g = 1/128	g = 1/32	g = 1/16	g = 19/256	g = 1/8	g = 19/128	g = 1/4
32K	3.584	0.279	X	X	X	X	X	X	--
16K	1.792	0.558	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
8K	0.896	1.116	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
4K	0.448	2.232	--	X	X	--	X	--	X
2K	0.224	4.464	--	X	X	--	X	--	X
1K	0.112	8.929	--	--	X	--	X	--	X

A 16K and a 32K mode was provided in order to achieve less time overhead and thus a higher net data rate (6% overhead in the 32K mode, 25% in the 8K mode) with the same absolute guard interval length. The longest guard interval is now more than twice as long as the longest guard interval in DVB-T (0.224 ms); 0.532 ms in DVB-T2, 32K, g=19/128, correspond to a maximum transmitter distance of almost 160 km (Table 37.17.). Narrower signal bandwidths (7, 6, 5, 1.7 MHz) lead to even longer symbols and thus also lead to longer guard intervals. With these guard interval-lengths nationwide single-frequency networks can be implemented. The 32K mode is the mode providing the longest symbols and thus has the least overhead in the guard interval; at the same time it serves to implement the largest single frequency networks. However, the 32K mode, due to its much narrower subcarrier spacing, is the mode least suitable for mobile use. The mode most suitable for mobiles is the 1K mode which has the largest subcarrier spacing. But it thus also has the shortest symbols and is, therefore, the one least suitable for forming large SFNs.

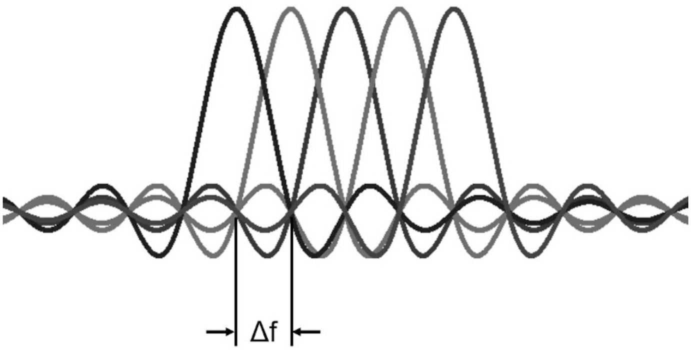


Fig. 37.7. Sin(x)/x-shaped spectra of the OFDM carriers

37.6.1 Normal Carrier Mode

In the DVB-T2 Normal Carrier Mode, the bandwidths of the useful signal approximately correspond to the bandwidths of DVB-T. Between the useful signal spectrum and the beginning of the adjacent channel there is at the lower and the upper end of the DVB-T2 channel the so-called guard band which has a width of up to about 200 kHz. The guard-band has several tasks, the most important of which is to protect the adjacent channels (Fig. 37.9.). The shoulders of the OFDM signal must decay within the guard band. One cause of the shoulders is the superimposition of the tails of the sin(x)/x-functions of each modulated single carrier (Fig. 37.5.). It can be demonstrated, however, that the more carriers are used, the more the resultant shoulders are suppressed; i.e. the 1K mode inherently has higher shoulders than the 32K mode. These shoulders are lowered as much as possible by digital filtering measures in the modulator. Nevertheless, it can also be demonstrated with a very good test transmitter that in the short range, the shoulders are much lower in the 32K mode than in the 1K-Mode (Fig. 37.6.). There are simple mathematical reasons for this. The more carriers are used, the better the sin(x)/x tails will cancel.

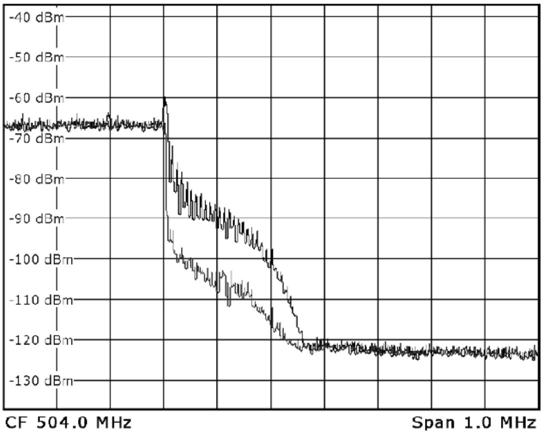


Fig. 37.8. Shoulders of the DVB-T2 signal in 32K and 1K mode in comparison

37.6.2 Extended Carrier Mode

Since the sin(x)/x tails, and thus the shoulders, drop more towards the adjacent channels in the modes having more carriers, it was provided in

DVB-T2 to support a wider spectrum above the 8K mode in the Extended Carrier Mode. The advantage is that this increases the data rate of the DVB-T2 signal.

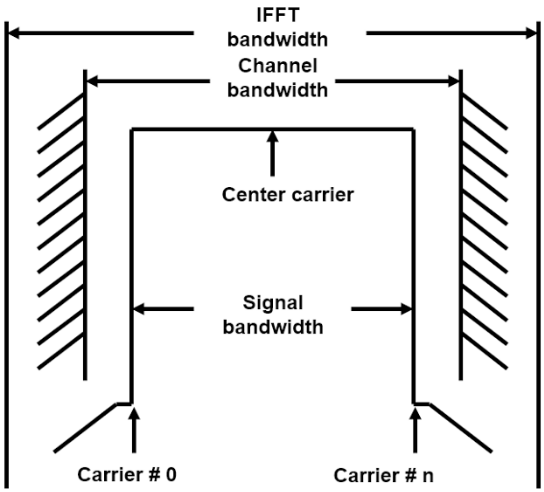


Fig. 37.9. DVB-T2 spectrum with upper and lower guard bands

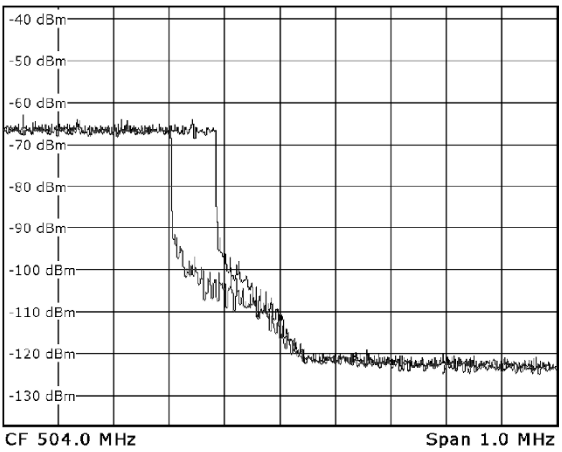


Fig. 37.10. DVB-T2 spectrum in normal and extended carrier mode (example data rates in 256QAM, CR=3/5, PP7 in 32K normal mode = 35.246 Mbit/s and in 32K extended carrier mode = 36.140 Mbit/s

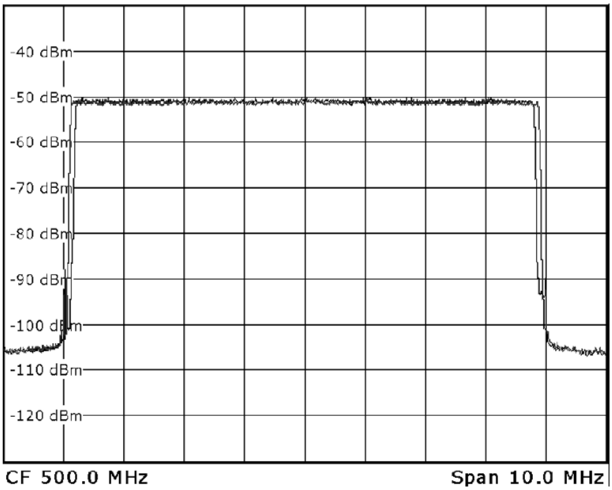


Fig. 37.11. Overall DVB-T2 spectrum in Normal and Extended Carrier Mode (32K)

Table 37.7. DVB-T2 OFDM parameters in the 8 MHz channel

Parameter	1K Mode	2K Mode	4K Mode	8K Mode	16K Mode	32K Mode
Number of carriers in Normal Mode	853	1705	3409	6817	13633	27265
Number of carriers in Extended Carrier Mode	--	--	--	6913	13921	27265
Additional carriers in Extended Carrier Mode	0	0	0	96	288	596
IFFT	1024	2048	4096	8192	16384	32768
Symbol period [µs]	112	224	448	896	1792	3584
Carrier spacing Δf [kHz]	8.929	4.464	2.232	1.116	0.558	0.279
Signal bandwidth in Normal Mode [MHz]	7.61	7.61	7.61	7.61	7.61	7.61
Signal bandwidth in Extended Carrier Mode [MHz]	--	--	--	7.71	7.77	7.77

Fig. 37.10. and 37.11. clearly show the wider DVB-T2 spectrum of the 32K mode in the Extended Carrier Mode compared with the Normal Carrier Mode. In the selected example, the difference in the net data rate is about 1 Mbit/s.

37.7 Modulation Patterns

The modulation patterns (Fig. 37.12.) used in DVB-T2 are coherent Gray-coded QAM orders. The constellations possible in DVB-T2 are:

- QPSK
- 16QAM
- 64QAM
- 256QAM

Differential modulation is not supported in DVB-T2. The first three QAM orders fully correspond to the mapping used in DVB-T. It is a special feature that the constellation diagrams can be either reversed or rotated ("flipped") to the left by a certain angle; so-called rotated, Q-delayed constellation diagrams (Fig. 37.14.).

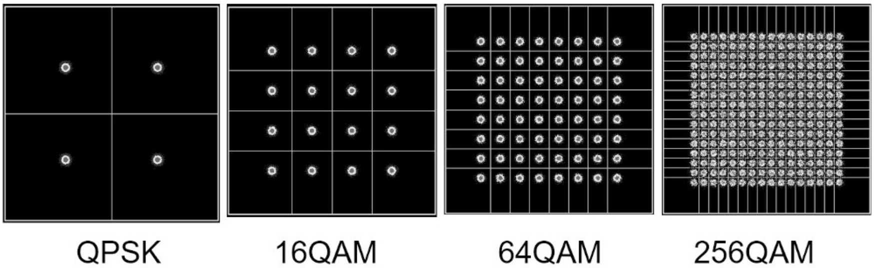


Fig. 37.12. Non-rotated "normal" constellation diagrams in DVB-T2 (QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM and 256QAM)

37.7.1 Normal Constellation Diagrams

In the case of QPSK, 16QAM and 64QAM, the normal non-rotated constellation diagrams exactly correspond to the constellation diagrams of DVB-T. In addition, 256QAM was also defined as a possible constellation in DVB-T2. 256QAM makes sense because of the improved error protection. Fig. 37.12. shows the non-rotated variants of the constellation diagrams possible in DVB-T2.

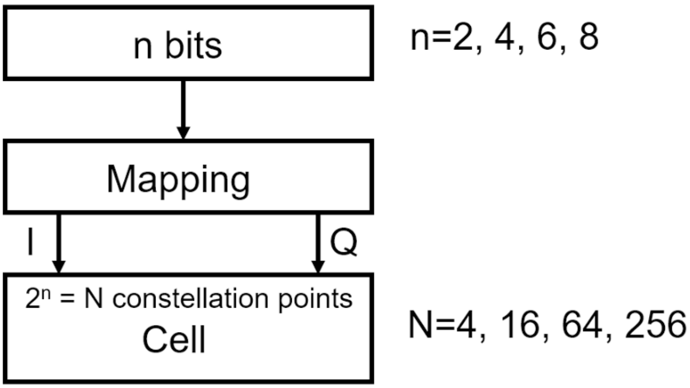


Fig. 37.13. Definition of a "cell"

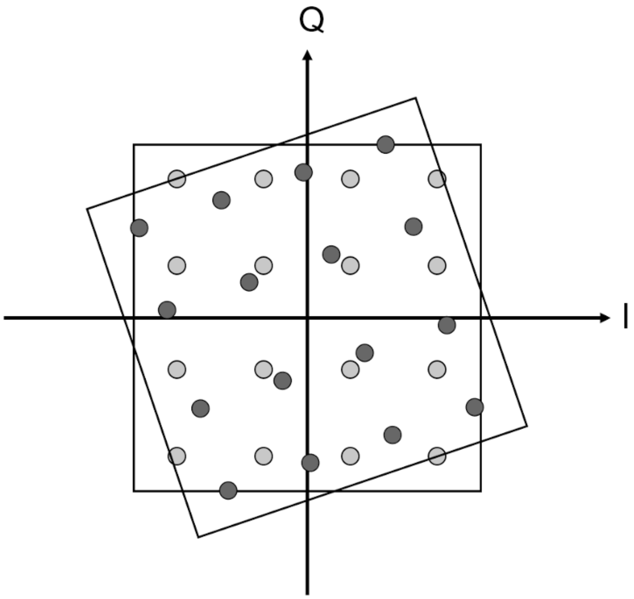


Fig. 37.14. Rotated and Q-delayed constellation diagram

37.7.2 Definition of 'Cell'

The term "cell" (Fig. 37.13.) will now have to be defined. This term is mentioned time and again in the DVB-T2 Standard. Thus, there is also, e.g. a so-called cell interleaver. A cell is simply the result of mapping a later carrier. In contrast to DVB-T, mapping is not carried out after all interleaving processes but relatively early, after the error protection and after the bit interleaver. However, this is still followed by the cell-interleaver, the time interleaver and the frequency interleaver which is why the mapping result cannot yet be allocated to a carrier and why the term "cell" was introduced. A cell is, therefore, a complex number consisting of an I-component and a Q-component, i.e. a real part and an imaginary part (Fig. 37.13.).

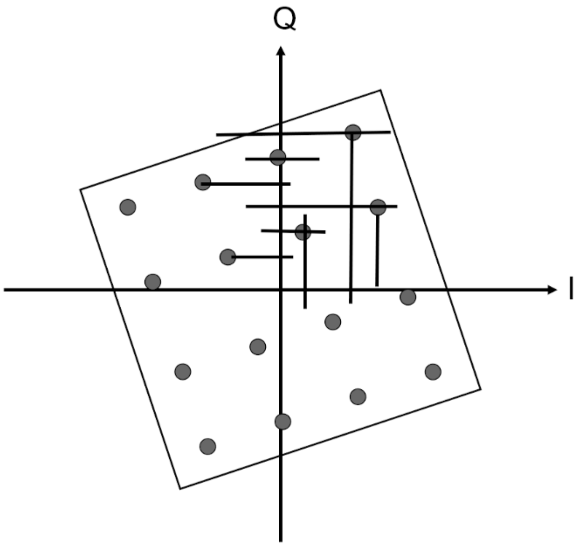


Fig. 37.15. Discrete mapping of constellation points on the I and Q axis with a rotated constellation diagram

37.7.3 Rotated Q-delayed Constellation Diagrams

If rotated constellation diagrams (Fig. 37.14., Fig. 37.15., Fig. 37.19.) are used, the information about the position of a constellation point is contained both in the I component and in the Q component of the signal (Fig. 37.16.). In a case of disturbance, this can be used for providing more reliable information about the position of the constellation point, in contrast to a non-rotated diagram (Fig. 37.16.), contributing to better decodability. In contrast to a non-rotated constellation diagram, the IQ information, which is now discrete, can be used for soft-decisions if necessary. Practice will show how much actual benefit can be derived from this. Table 37.5. lists the angles of rotation of the various DVB-T2-constellations as a function of the QAM mode.

Table 37.8. Angles of rotation of the constellation diagrams

Mod.	QPSK	16QAM	64QAM	256QAM
φ [degrees]	29.0	16.8	8.6	atan(1/16)

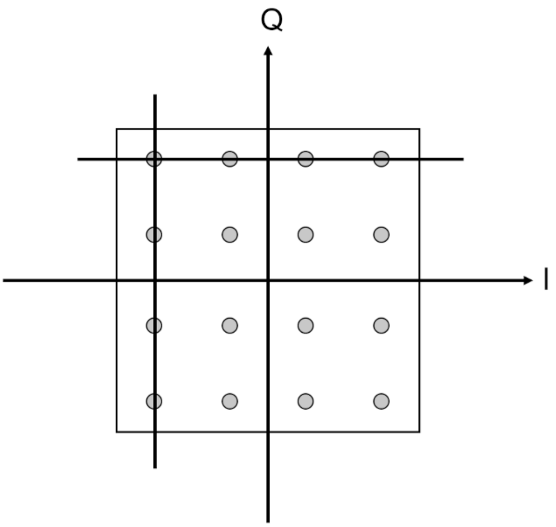


Fig. 37.16. The constellation points on the I and Q axis in a non-rotated constellation diagram

In reality, however, the whole process is slightly more complex. With a rotated diagram (Fig. 37.19.), the Q component is not transmitted on the same carrier, or more precisely in the same "cell“, but with delay on another carrier (Fig. 37.17. and 37.18.) or better in another cell. From one QAM, virtually two ASKs (Amplitude Shift Keying modulations) in the I and Q-direction are then produced which are then transmitted on independent carriers – "cells“ which are disturbed differently in practice and are thus intended to contribute to the reliability of demodulation. However, practice has shown that rotated constellation diagrams do not provide benefits for the current generation of DVB-T2 receiver chips.

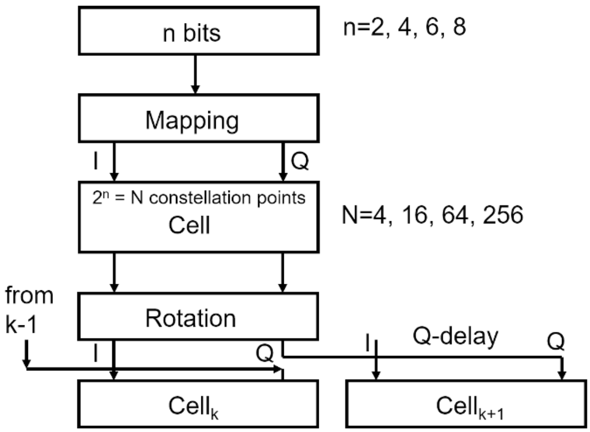


Fig. 37.17. Mapping, rotation and Q-delay

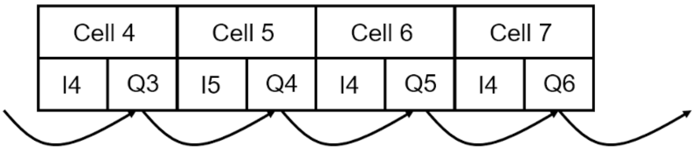


Fig. 37.18. Cyclic Q-delay between adjacent cells

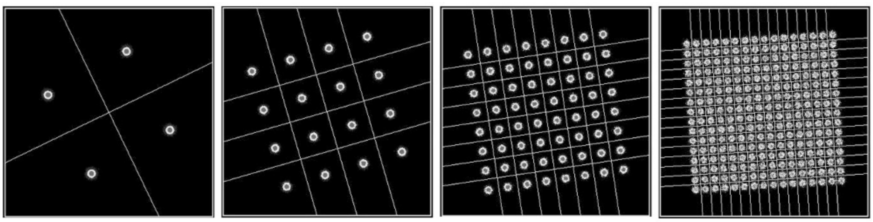


Fig. 37.19. Rotated constellation diagrams in DVB-T2

37.8 Frame Structure

A Physical Layer Frame (Fig. 37.20.) in DVB-T2 begins with a P1 symbol used for synchronization and frame-finding, followed by one or more P2-symbols containing Layer-1 (L1)-signalling data for the receiver. This is followed by symbols which carry the actual payload data. The theoretically up to 255 input data streams are transmitted in so-called Physical Layer Pipes (PLPs) in which the different contents can be transmitted with higher or lower data rate and more or less robustly (error protection and modulation). This is called Variable Coding and Modulation (VCM). In addition, the transmission parameters of the PLPs can also be changed dynamically from T2 frame to T2 frame. The current transmission parameters of all PLPs are signalled in the P2 symbols; dynamic L1 signalling for the receiver takes place in the padding-field of the baseband frame.

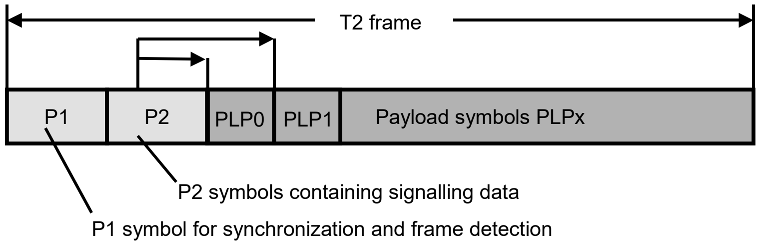


Fig. 37.20. Structure of a DVB-T2 frame

Table 37.9. Maximum length of a DVB-T2 frame in numbers of OFDM symbols

FFT	Symbol duration in a 8 MHz channel [µs]	g= 1/128	g= 1/32	g= 1/16	g= 19/256	g= 1/8	g= 19/128	g= 1/4
32K	3584	68	66	64	64	60	60	--
16K	1792	138	135	131	129	123	121	111
8K	896	276	270	262	259	247	242	223
4K	448	--	540	524	--	495	--	446
2K	224	--	1081	1049	--	991	--	892
1K	112	--	--	2098	--	1982	--	1784

Table 37.10. Number of P2 symbols per DVB-T2 frame as a function of the DVB-T2 FFT mode

FFT mode	Number of P2-symbols per DVB-T2 frame
1K	16
2K	8
4K	4
8K	2
16K	1
32K	1

Apart from the FFT mode, almost all transmission parameters can be changed from Physical Layer Pipe (PLP) to Physical Layer Pipe. As already mentioned, their signalling and the addressing of the PLP (Start, Length etc.) is handled via the P2 symbols; called L1-signalling. The number of P2 symbols depends on the FFT mode (Table 37.10.); the reason being simply the different data capacity of the symbols, depending on the FFT mode. The 1K mode has the shortest symbols and thus the lowest data capacity per symbol. In the 32K mode, it is possible to transmit more data per symbol due to the much longer symbols. This is possible to the extent that the data transmission can even begin in the P2 symbols due to unused capacity. Table 37.10. lists the number of P2-Symbols per DVB-T2 frame.

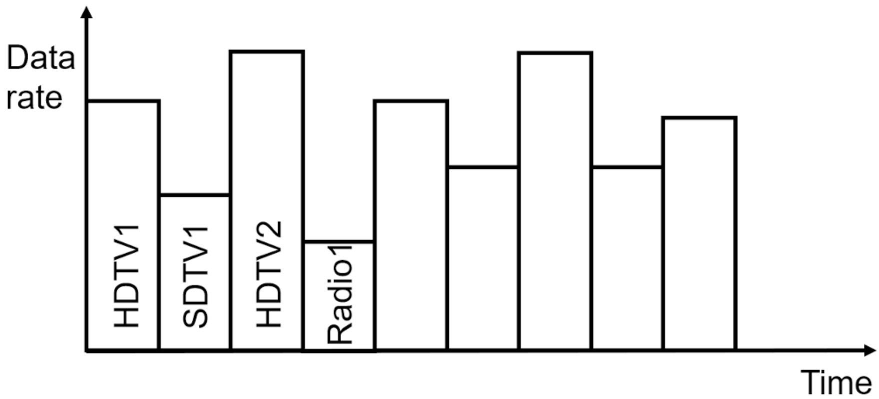


Fig. 37.21. Variable Coding and Modulation (VCM)

A DVB-T2 frame thus consists of

- a P1 symbol
- 1 … 16 P2 symbols (depending on FFT mode)
- N data symbols (PLP data, FEF, auxiliary data, dummy cells)

A frame can have a maximum length of 250 ms, resulting in a maximum number of data symbols which, in turn, is dependent on the FFT mode and the guard interval. The net data rate per PLP can fluctuate due to different transmission parameters. A data stream carrying HDTV services, e.g., requires a higher data rate than a data stream transporting SDTV services or a data stream transporting pure audio broadcasting services (Fig. 37.21.).

37.8.1 P1 Symbol

A P1 symbol (preamble symbol 1) marks the beginning of a frame, similar to the null symbol in DAB. Overall, the P1 symbol is used for:

- Marking the beginning of the DVB-T2 frame
- Time and frequency synchronization
- Signalling the basic transmission parameters (FFT mode, SISO/MISO)

The P1 symbol has the following characteristics:

- FFT mode = 1K
- 1/2 guard interval with frequency offset before and after the P1 symbol
- Carrier DBPSK modulated
- 7-bit signalling data (SISO/MISO/Future Use (3 bits), use of FEF (1 bit), FFT (3 bits))

So that the P1 symbol (Fig. 37.22.) could be identified easily and reliably, two guard intervals were appended – one in front and one behind. This results virtually in a double correlation during the autocorrelation. In addition, the carriers are all shifted upward in frequency in the cyclical pre- and post-fix. Pre- and post-fix are not exactly of the same length.

37.8.2 P2 Symbols

The Layer 1 signalling (L1 signalling) is transmitted from the modulator to the receiver in 1 ... 16 P2 symbols (preamble symbols 2) per DVB-T2 frame. Physically, a preamble symbol 2 has almost the same structure as later data symbols. The FFT mode corresponds to that of the data symbols and is already signalled in the P1 symbol. However, the pilot density is greater.

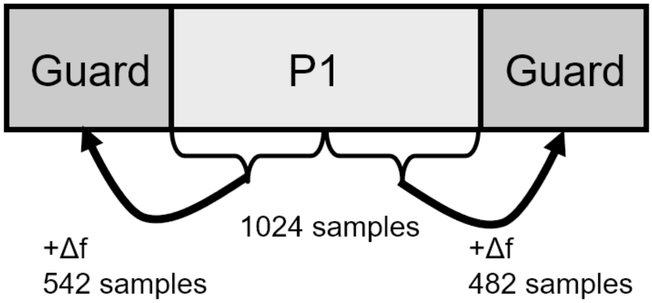


Fig. 37.22. P1 symbol

A P2 symbol (Fig. 37.23.) consists of a pre- and post-signalling component. Both components are differently modulated and error protected. The pre-signalling-component is permanently BPSK-modulated and protected with a constant error protection known to the receiver. The transmission parameters of the P2-pre-signalling component are:

- BSPK modulation
- FEC = BCH+16K LDPC
- LDPC code rate =1/2

The transmission parameters of the P2 post-signalling component are:

- BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM
- FEC = BCH+16K LDPC
- LDPC code rate =1/2 or 1/4 with BPSK
- LDPC code rate =1/2 with QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM

P2 data in part 1 (constant length, L1 pre-signalling):

- Guard interval
- Pilot pattern
- Cell ID
- Network ID
- PAPR use
- Number of data symbols
- L1 post-signalling parameters (FEC and mod. of L1 post)

P2 data in part 2 (variable length, L1 post-signalling):

- Number of PLPs
- RF frequency
- PLP IDs
- PLP signalling parameters (FEC and mod. of PLP)

In the higher FFT modes, not all the carriers are needed for the L1 signalling. This free capacity can then be used already for the actual data transmission. I.e., the transmission of the PLPs can start already in the P2 symbols. Although this sounds somewhat adventurous to someone with years of experience and probably doesn't simplify its implementation, either, it does bring additional capacity.

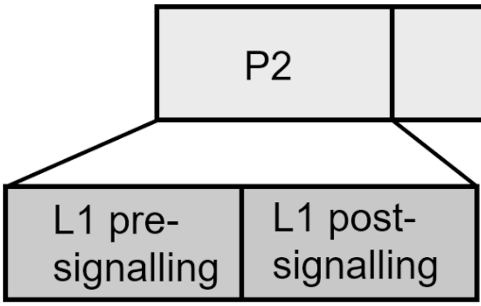


Fig. 37.23. P2-Symbols

37.8.3 Symbol, Frame, Superframe

A DVB-T2 frame is composed of a P1 symbol, 1 to 16 P2 symbols and N data symbols which can contain PLP data, Future Extension Frames and

Auxiliary Data, as well as dummy cells. Several frames, in turn, become one superframe.

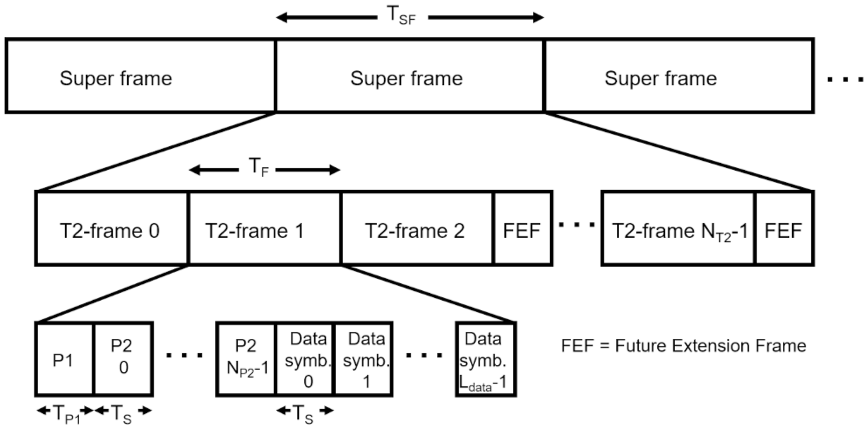


Fig. 37.24. Symbol, frame and superframe

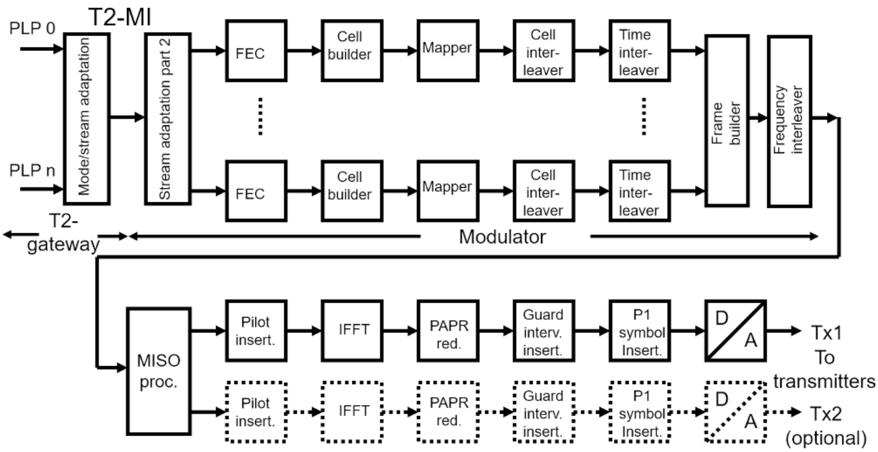


Fig. 37.25. Block diagram of the DVB-T2 modulator

37.9 Block Diagram

The complete block diagram of the DVB-T2 modulator (Fig. 37.25.), in comparison to that of the DVB-T(1) modulator (see Chapter 20), clearly reflects the comprehensive dimensions of the DVB-T2 standard. The left hand side shows the input signal processing block, divided into the T2 gateway function group and the function group belonging to the DVB-T2 modulator. These are followed by the various Physical Layer Pipe paths, each consisting of a FEC section, a Cell Builder, a Mapper, a Cell Interleaver and a Time Interleaver. All PLP branches then merge together in the Frame Builder block. Frequency Interleaving and MISO processing then complete the processing chain. Note the two possible outputs, MISO Mode 1 / SISO and MISO Mode 2; these processing groups will be explained later on.

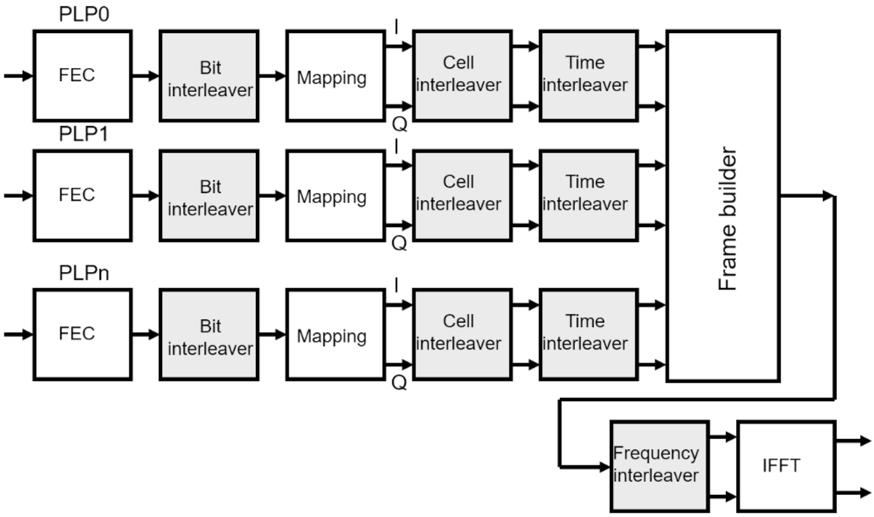


Fig. 37.26. Interleavers in DVB-T2

37.10 Interleavers

In DVB-T2, interleaving (Fig. 37.26.) is separated into:

- Bit interleaving
- Cell interleaving
- Time interleaving
- Frequency interleaving

The bit interleaver is a very short interleaver. It corresponds to the DVB-S2 bit interleaver and like that operates at the FEC frame level. The bit interleaver has the task of optimizing the characteristics of the error protection for immunity against burst errors, independently of the other interleavers. The cell interleaver also operates at FEC frame level and interleaves the cells already mapped, i.e. the IQ values. It improves the performance mainly in conjunction with the rotated and Q-delayed constellations. The time interleaver then distributes the information over a time which can be adjusted within wide ranges. The time interleaver is of assistance mainly with mobile reception, with long burst errors and with impulsive noise when the frequency interleaver distributes the information as randomly as possible to the various DVB-T2 OFDM carriers. Notches due to multipath reception will then lead to reduced losses.

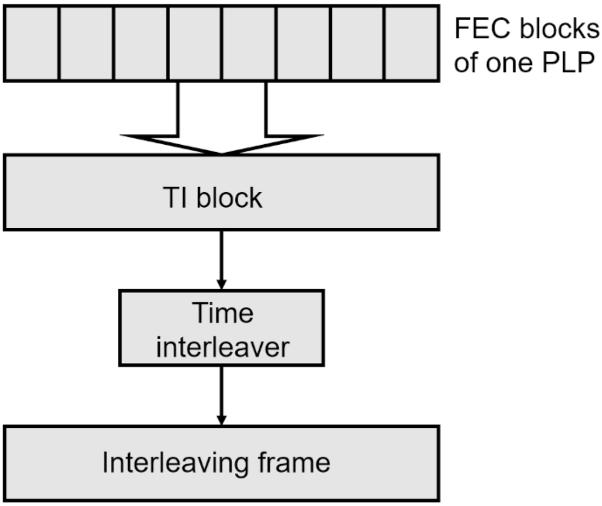


Fig. 37.27. DVB-T2 time interleaving

37.10.1 Types of Interleaver

Back in the 1960s, David Forney had the idea of improving error protection with regard to susceptibility to burst errors by applying time interleaving. Interleavers are intended to distribute a data stream in time or frequency during transmission as randomly as possible, but so as to be recoverable by receivers. There are:

- Block interleavers
- PRBS interleavers

The interleavers used in DVB-T2 are either block interleavers or PRBS interleavers.

Table 37.11. Interleaver types in DVB-T2

Interleaver	Interleaver type
Bit interleaver	Block interleaver
Cell interleaver	PRBS interleaver
Time interleaver	Block interleaver
Frequency interleaver	PRBS interleaver

A block interleaver will first read the data, e.g. line by line, into a block and then read them out again, e.g. column by column, or in zig-zag form. A PRBS interleaver is controlled by a pseudo random sequence and distributes the data even more randomly.

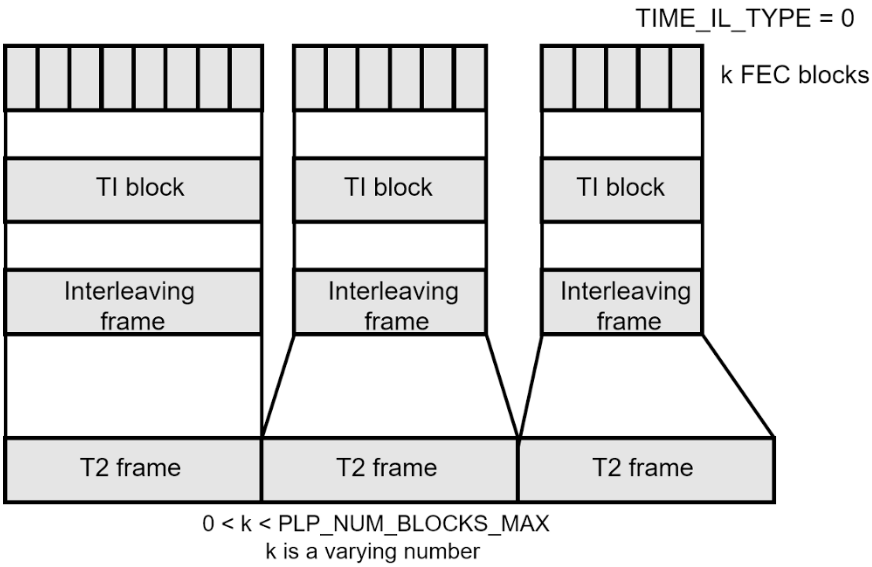


Fig. 37.28. Time interleaver, type 1

37.10.2 DVB-T2 Time Interleaver Configuration

The time interleaver (Fig. 37.27.) has the task of distributing the data of a PLP over a very long period if possible (several hundred milliseconds). This increases robustness against burst errors. Burst errors can occur mainly in mobile reception and with impulsive noise. In the DVB-T2 time interleaver, several FEC blocks are combined to form one or more time interleaving blocks and these are then interleaved and result in an interleaving frame. The time interleaver in DVB-T2 can be set by the following configuration parameters:

- TIME_IL_TYPE (1 Bit) 0 or 1
- TIME_IL_LENGTH (8 Bit) in blocks per interleaving frame
- FRAME_INTERVAL (8 Bit) in frames
- PLP_NUM_BLOCKS_MAX (10 Bit) in blocks 0 … 1023

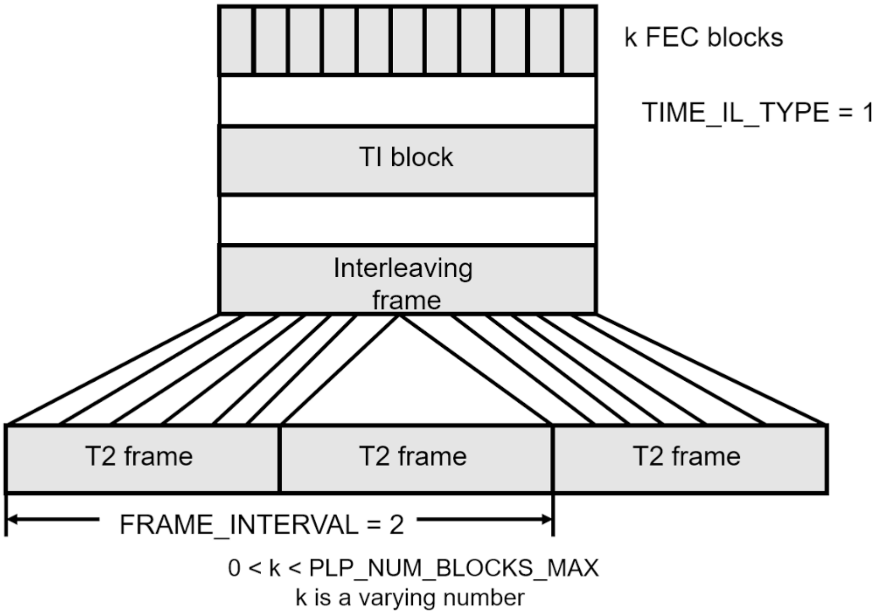


Fig. 37.29. Time interleaver, type 2

These enable the time interleaver to be set within wide ranges. The TI configuration parameters of each PLP are signalled via the L1 post-signalling part in the P2 symbols.

The TIME_IL_TYPE can be used for deciding whether the time interleaving is to take place within one T2 frame (TIME_IL_TYPE = 0) or distributed over several T2 frames (TIME_IL_TYPE = 1).

TIME_IL_LENGTH specifies the number of interleaving blocks per time interleaving frame.

FRAME_INTERVAL defines the interval between two frames carrying the time interleaving data of a PLP. I.e., gaps or T2 frames can now be inserted between interleaving data of PLPs and thus greater interleaving intervals can be achieved.

PLP_NUM_BLOCKS_MAX specifies how many FEC frames may be maximally combined to form one time interleaving block.

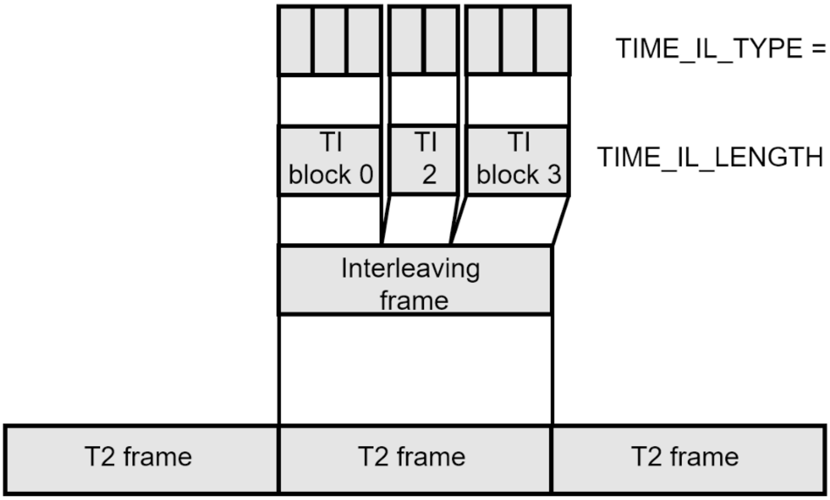


Fig. 37.30. Time Interleaver, Typ 3

Having selected these TI configuration parameters, 3 time interleaver types can now be implemented, namely

- Typ 1: a time interleaver block in one time interleaving frame, mapped in exactly one T2 frame (TIME_IL_TYPE=0, TIME_IL_LENGTH=1) (Fig. 37.28.)
- Typ 2: a time interleaver block in one time interleaving frame, mapped in several (n) T2 frames with a definable frame interval between them (TIME_IL_TYPE=1, FRAME_INTERVAL=n) (Fig. 37.29.)
- Typ 3: a definable number (m) in one time interleaving frame mapped in one T2 frame (TIME_IL_TYPE=0, TIME_IL_LENGTH=m) (Fig. 37.30.)

Each of these 3 time interleaver-types has different TI characteristics which are listed in Table 37.12.

Table 37.12. Characteristics of the TI types in DVB-T2

TI type	Characteristics/Application
1	Better interleaving at medium data rates than with type 3
2	Better interleaving at low data rates
3	Application at higher data rates, but less interleaving than with Type 1

Since most T2 applications only use one PLP at a very high data rate, usually Time Interleaver Type 3 (Fig. 37.30.) is selected with TI_Length = 3.

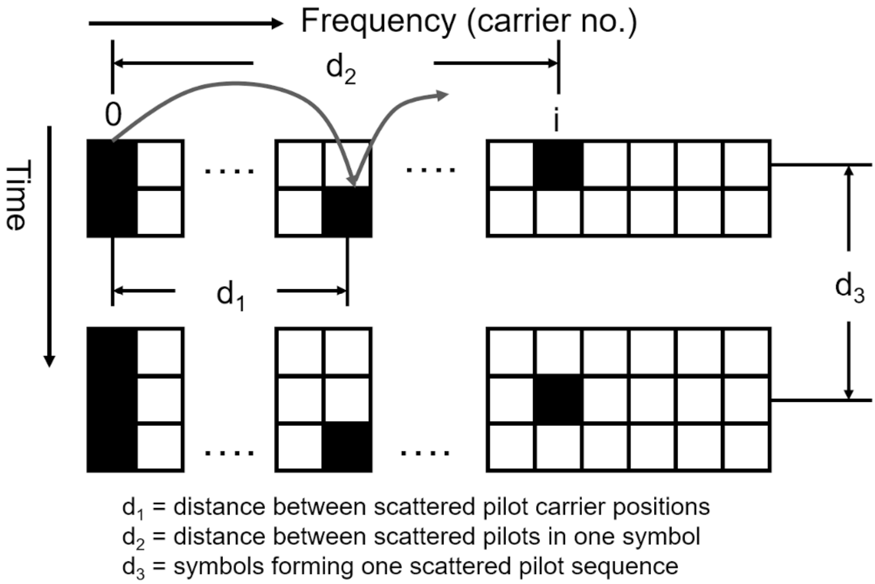


Fig. 37.31. Parameters for pilot pattern in DVB-T2

37.11 Pilots

In COFDM systems, the following tasks must basically always be implemented by special-carriers:

- Frequency lock (AFC = Automatic Frequency Control)
- Channel estimation – and channel correction
- Signalling of the transmission parameters

For this purpose, DVB-T has the following pilot signals, namely:

- Continual Pilots for the AFC
- Scattered Pilots for the channel estimation
- TPS carriers for the signalling

DVB-T2 has the following pilots, namely

- Edge pilots at the beginning and the end of the channel,
- Continual pilots,
- Scattered pilots,
- P2 pilots at every 3rd carrier position,
- Frame-closing pilots for cleanly closing a frame.

Table 37.13. Pilot pattern in DVB-T2

Pilot pattern	Distance d_1 between pilot carrier positions (dist. d_2 of pilots within a symbol)	Number of symbols d_3 forming a pilot sequence
PP1	3 (12)	4
PP2	6 (12)	2
PP3	6 (24)	4
PP4	12 (24)	2
PP5	12 (48)	4
PP6	24 (48)	2
PP7	24 (96)	4
PP8	6 (96)	16

Table 37.14. Scattered pilot pattern in SISO mode

FFT Mode	g=1/128	g=1/32	g=1/16	g=19/256	g=1/8	g=19/128	g=1/4
32K	PP7	PP4, PP6	PP2, PP8, PP4	PP2, PP8, PP4	PP2, PP8	PP2, PP8	--
16K	PP7	PP7, PP4, PP6	PP2, PP8, PP4, PP5	PP2, PP8, PP4, PP5	PP2, PP3, PP8	PP2, PP3, PP8	PP1, PP8
8K	PP7	PP7, PP4	PP8, PP4, PP5	PP8, PP4, PP5	PP2, PP3, PP8	PP2, PP3, PP8	PP1, PP8
4K, 2K	--	PP7, PP4	PP4, PP5	--	PP2, PP3	--	PP1
1K	--	--	PP4, PP5	--	PP2, PP3	--	PP1

In DVB-T2, the information of the previous TPS carriers is contained in the P2 symbols. There are no longer any TPS carriers, but there are continual pilots and scattered pilots. In addition, the term Edge Pilot was introduced; it is not actually a special feature and was already provided in DVB-T where it fell under the category of Continual Pilot. The edge pilots are simply the first and last pilot in the spectrum. The scattered pilots have several selectable, more or less dense, pilot patterns. Less dense pilot patterns means that there are more payload carriers, resulting in a higher net data rate. Denser pilot patterns (Fig. 37.31. and Tab. 37.13.), however, allow for a better channel estimation especially in the presence of difficult reception conditions such as multipath reception and mobile reception. When planning the network, the corresponding pilot pattern can then be selected in dependence on the planned coverage. Not all pilot patterns (called PP1 to PP8) can be used in all mode and guard interval configurations.

Table 37.15. Scattered pilot pattern in MISO mode

FFT Mode	g=1/128	g=1/32	g=1/16	g=19/256	g=1/8	g=19/128	g=1/4
32K	PP8, PP4, PP6	PP8, PP4	PP2, PP8	PP2, PP8	--	--	--
16K	PP8, PP4, PP5	PP8, PP4, PP5	PP3, PP8	PP3, PP8	PP1, PP8	PP1, PP8	--
8K	PP8, PP4, PP5	PP8, PP4, PP5	PP3, PP8	PP3, PP8	PP1, PP8	PP1, PP8	--
4K, 2K	--	PP4, PP5	PP3	--	PP1	--	--
1K	--	--	PP3	--	PP1	--	--

The pilots are called "boosted pilots" because they have a higher amplitude than the payload carriers. This makes pilot detection easier and channel estimation more accurate. However, the actual amplitude depends on the selected pilot pattern (see Table 37.16.).

Table 37.16. Amplitudes of the scattered pilots

Scattered pilot pattern	Amplitude	Equivalent boost [dB]
PP1, PP2	4/3	2.5
PP3, PP4	7/4	4.9
PP5, PP6, PP7, PP8	7/3	7.4

37.12 Sub-Slicing

Without sub-slicing (Fig. 37.32.), a PLP will arrive in the receiver in one piece in a timeslot in DVB-T2. I.e. the peak data rate may be relatively high for a PLP and then there may be no further reception of these data for a relatively long period. Sub-slicing divides the PLPs into smaller "morsels“ which are then transmitted synchronously from PLP to PLP in the DVB-T2 frame. A PLP can be divided into 2 to 6480 subslices in sub-slicing. The subslices of the various PLPs then follow one another synchronously within a T2 frame. More subslices means more time diversity and less buffer memory demand, and fewer subslices means less time diversity, but offers the possibility of saving more energy in the receiver.

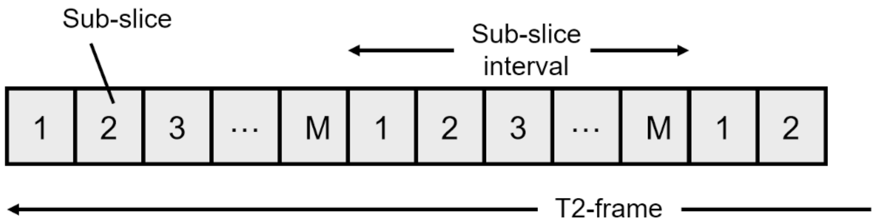


Fig. 37.32. Sub-slicing

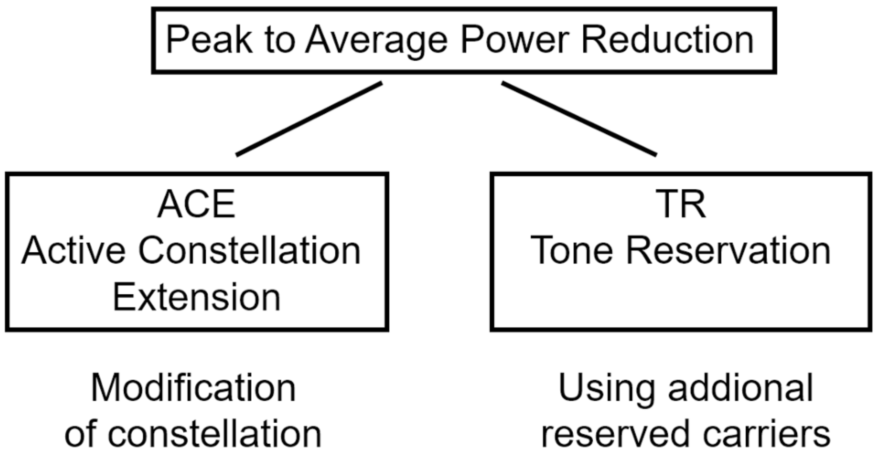


Fig. 37.33. PAPR (Peak to Average Power Ratio Reduction)

37.13 Time-Frequency-Slicing (TFS)

Time-Frequency-Slicing (TFS) is mentioned as an option in the Appendix to the DVB-T2 Standard. This would make it possible to radiate the PLPs or their subslices in up to 8 different RF channels. The complexity would be very high at the transmitting end since up to 8 transmitting trains would have to be implemented and the receiver would then require at least two tuners. It is questionable whether TFS will become reality, although this is already contained as a requirement in the first version of the NorDig-Spec for DVB-T2 receivers.

37.14 PAPR Reduction

PAPR reduction stands for Peak to Average Power Ratio Reduction (Fig. 37.33.) and means nothing else than the reduction of the crest factors. The crest factor is the ratio of the maximum peak voltage to the RMS value. In theory, the crest factor can assume very high values in COFDM systems. In practice it is maximally about 12 to 15 dB, clipped at about 12 to 13 dB in the power transmitter. There have been relevant discussions and contributions since the beginning of the applications of COFDM. In order to be able to limit this crest factor in DVB-T2, two methods of PAPR are provided, namely Active Constellation Extension (ACE) (Fig. 37.34.) and Tone Reservation (TR).

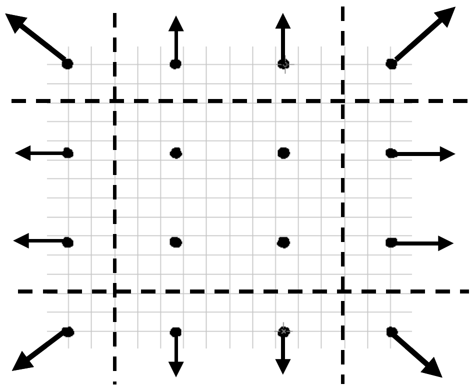


Fig. 37.34. PAPR – ACE – Active Constellation Extension

In the case of the Active Constellation Extension, the fact is used that the outermost constellation points could be shifted further out within certain limits, without restriction in the demodulation, in order to reduce the current crest factor by the summation of all carriers and by suitably adapting certain carrier amplitudes. However, the ACE is not possible with rotated constellation diagrams which is why this method will probably not be used in DVB-T2. In the case of the Tone Reservation, certain carrier bands are not intended for payload data transmission and also not for pilot tones. If necessary, these carriers, which are normally not switched on, can be activated so that they reduce the crest-factor. It is then up to the respective DVB-T2 modulator in its characteristics determined by the respective manufacturer to set these carriers in amplitude and phase in such a way that they really decisively reduce the crest-factor at the transmitter site. This is of minor importance in the interplay with neighboring sites in an SFN.

PAPR can be used mainly for increasing the efficiency of the transmitter output stages which would be a real cost saving for the operation. However, due to the crest factor, there has always been a great need for discussion with respect to the correct dimensioning especially in the case of the mask filters, the antenna combiner, the antenna cable and the antenna itself.

Fig. 37.35. SISO = Single Input – Single Output

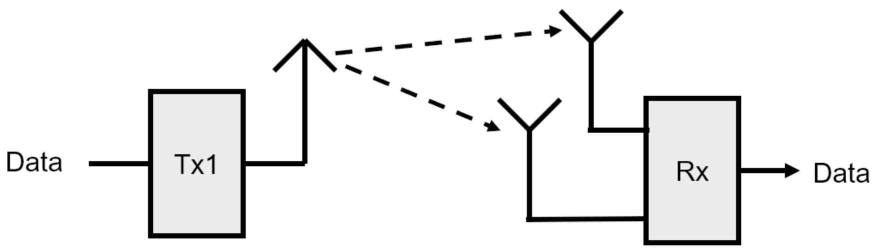


Fig. 37.36. SIMO = Single Input – Multiple Output

37.15 SISO/MISO Multi-Antenna Systems

DVB-T2 contains MISO (Multiple Input/Single Output) as an option. This means that possibly two transmitting antennas may be used which, however, do not radiate the same transmitted signal as in an SFN. Instead, adjacent symbols are transmitted repeatedly once by one and once by the other transmitting antenna in accordance with the modified Alamouti principle. This is an attempt to come closer to the Shannon limit, especially in the mobile channel. SISO (Single Input/Single Output) is the traditional case of a terrestrial transmission link (Fig. 32.35.).

This arrangement uses exactly one transmitting and receiving antenna (Fig. 32.36.). SIMO (Single Input/Multiple Output) corresponds to diversity-reception with one transmitting antenna and several receiving antennas (Fig. 32.37.) In motor vehicles, in some cases 2 – 4 receiving antennas bonded to the vehicle's windows are employed for mobile DVB-T reception.

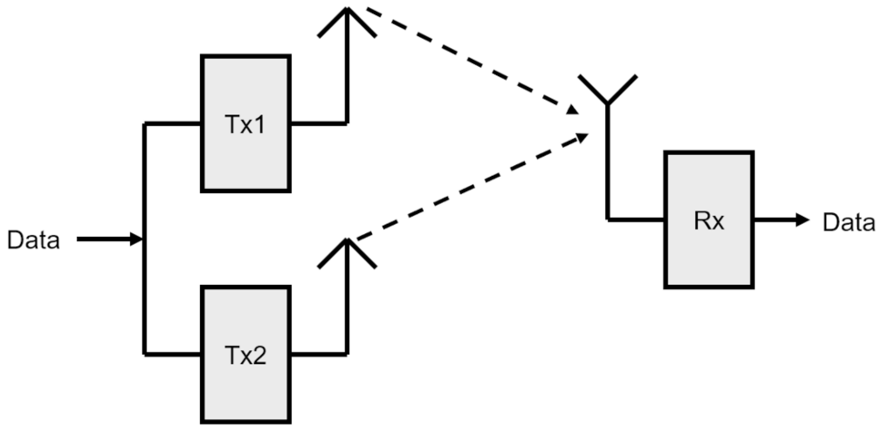


Fig. 37.37. MISO = Multiple Input – Single Output

37.15.1 MISO according to Alamouti

In the case of MISO according to Alamouti, however, two transmitting antennas and one receiving antenna are used. The aim is to save on antenna expenditure in the receiver by changing to transmit diversity (Fig. 37.37.). This is also called space/time diversity according to [ALAMOUTI]. A further possibility would also be MIMO (Multiple Input/ ultiple Output) with several transmitting and receiving antennas (Fig. 37.38.). The idea of the

MISO principle goes back to [ALAMOUTI], 1998. This principle is already being used in mobile radio (LTE) where adjacent symbols (COFDM symbols) are repeated at the two transmitting antennas. At the receiving antenna, a superimposed grouping of adjacent symbols always arrives which, without modification, would result in mutual interference and could thus no longer be separated in the receiver. In the case of the Alamouti principle, on the other hand. the adjacent symbols are not radiated unmodified at the various transmitting antennas, but in accordance with the Alamouti code (Fig. 37.39.). According to [ALAMOUTI], the two adjacent symbols s_n are first present at antenna 1 and s_{n+1} at antenna 2. Then symbol s_{n+1} is applied in negative conjugate complex form to antenna 1 and at the same time symbol s_n is radiated in conjugate complex form at transmitting antenna 2.

This will enable the receiver (Fig. 37.40.) to separate two adjacent symbols again by means of suitable complex mathematical operations on these symbols (Fig. 37.41.).

In addition, the channel transfer function from transmitting antenna 1 to the receiver and transmitting antenna 2 to the receiver must be known. I.e., it is necessary to perform a channel estimation over all transmitting and receiving paths.

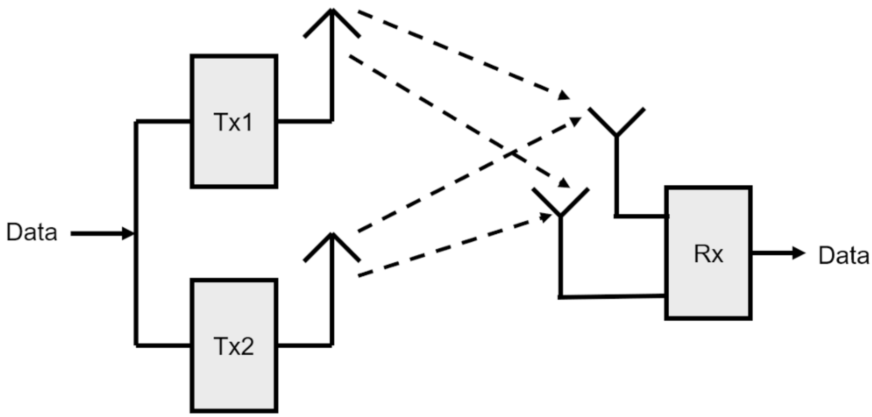


Fig. 37.38. MIMO - Multiple Input – Multiple Output

37.15.2 Modified Alamouti in DVB-T2

It is intended to employ the MISO principle both at only one site and distributed over SFN sites. Used at one site, this can be done by horizontal and vertical polarization. However, DVB-T2 uses a modified Alamouti coding (Fig. 32.42.). At antenna 1, the cells c_1, c_2, c_3, c_4, ... are present unchanged. It is only at antenna 2 that correspondingly changed cells are radiated. This has the advantage that the DVB-T2 system can be easily reduced to SISO by simply omitting the second transmitting path.

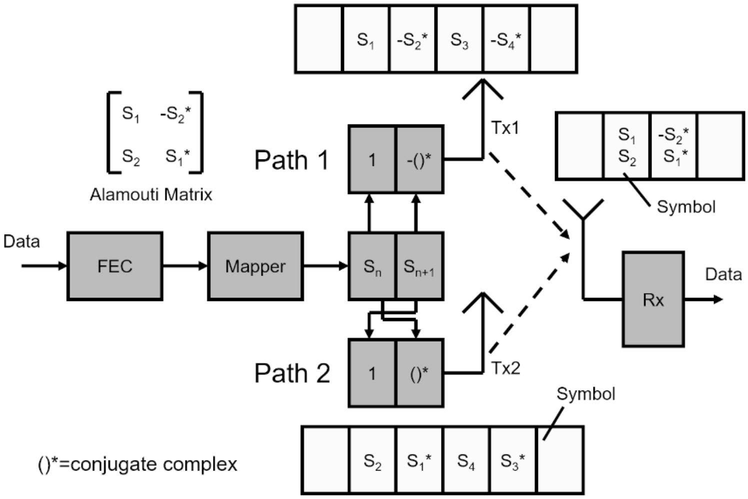


Fig. 37.39. MISO principle according to Alamouti

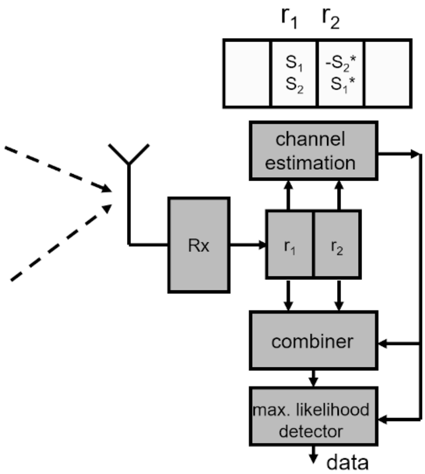


Fig. 37.40. MISO signal reception in the receiver

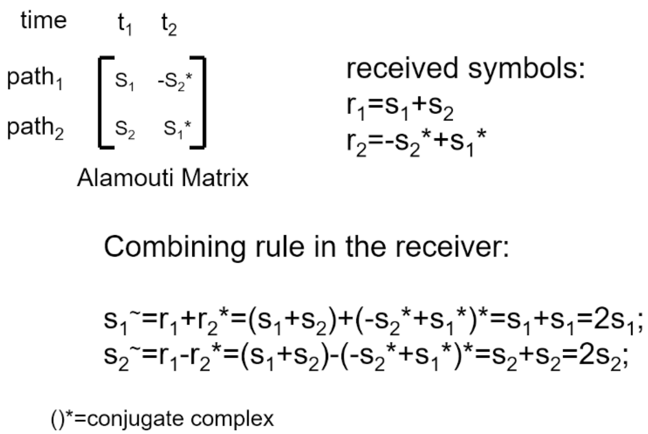


Fig. 37.41. MISO signal processing in the receiver

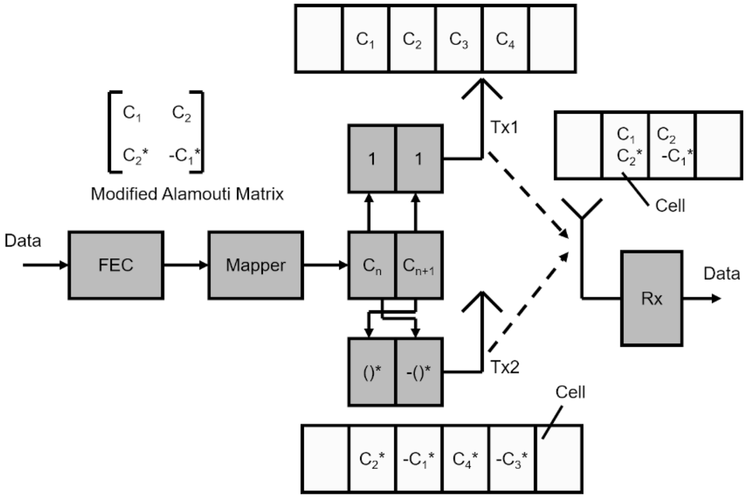


Fig. 37.42. Modified Alamouti in DVB-T2

This alone is not all, however. In DVB-T2, MISO is not applied via space/time diversity but via space/frequency diversity (based on adjacent cells in the spectrum). I.e. at transmitting antenna 2, adjacent pairs of carriers are radiated interchanged compared with those radiated at transmitting antenna 1. One great advantage of this modified Alamouti principle in

DVB-T2 is that the signals from transmitting antenna 1 and 2 are no longer correlated with one another. This makes it possible to avoid the notches prevalent in DVB-T and DAB, especially when using "distributed MISO" in an SFN (Fig. 37.43. and 37.44.). The principle of MISO by H- and V-polarization is called co-located MISO in DVB-T2.

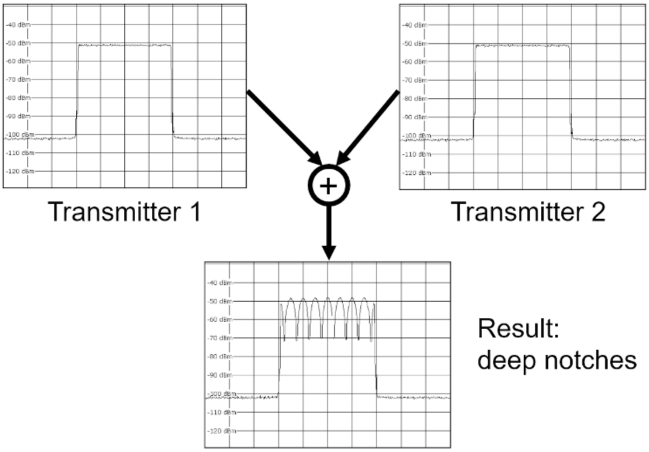


Fig. 37.43. Reception of two signal paths in an SFN without MISO, with fading notches

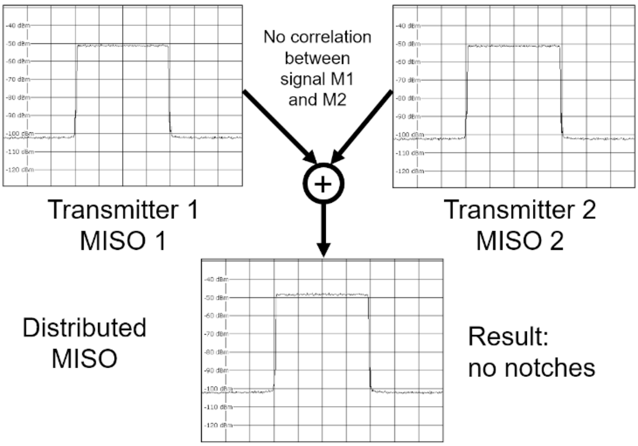


Fig. 37.44. Reception of two signal paths in a distributed DVB-T2-MISO, without fading notches

37.16 Future Extension Frames

DVB-T2 inherently already provides for possible expansion in so-called Future Extension Frames. These are special frames with as yet undefined transmission parameters which can be tied into the DVB-T2-frame structure. They are signalled via the P2 symbols.

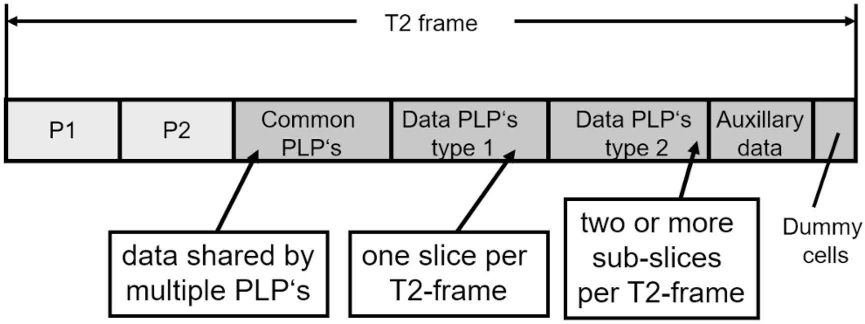


Fig. 37.45. DVB-T2 frame with auxiliary stream data

37.17 Auxiliary Data Streams

At the end of a DVB-T2 frame (Fig. 37.45.), auxiliary stream data can still be appended. These are customer-designed error-protected and mapped IQ values. A normal DVB-T2 receiver does not need to be able to evaluate these data.

37.18 DVB-T2-MI

In order to be able to conduct several (up to 255) data streams synchronously to the DVB-T2 modulators and transmitters in Mode B (Multiple Physical Layer Pipes), the T2-MI modulator interface was defined. Apart from supplying the data streams, it also handles the control and signalling. The DVB-T2-MI interfaces are described in Chapter 36.

37.19 SFNs in DVB-T2

Naturally, it should be possible to implement single frequency networks also in DVB-T2, the main reason being the economic use of frequencies. Frequencies are expensive and are becoming ever more scarce. Being able to reuse the same frequency is, therefore, important. Single frequency networks allow this at several adjacent transmitter sites in isolated, single-frequency networks. DVB-T2 additionally allows larger interference-free single frequency networks to be formed.

Single frequency networks must meet the following conditions:

- Frequency synchronism
- Time synchronism
- Data synchronism
- Guard interval condition, i.e. maximum transmitter spacing must not be exceeded (see table 37.17 for a 8 MHz wide DVB-T2 channel)

Table 37.17. Guard interval sizes in DVB-T2 (8 MHz-channel)

Mode	Symbol duration [ms]	g= 1/128 t [ms] d [km]	g= 1/32 t [ms] d [km]	g= 1/16 t [ms] d [km]	g= 19/256 t [ms] d [km]	g= 1/8 t [ms] d [km]	g= 19/128 t [ms] d [km]	g= 1/4 t [ms] d [km]
32K	3.584	0.028 8.4	0.112 33.6	0.224 67.2	0.266 79.7	0.448 134.3	0.532 159.5	--
16K	1.792	0.014 4.2	0.056 16.8	0.112 33.6	0.133 39.9	0.224 67.2	0.266 79.75	0.448 134.3
8K	0.896	0.007 2.1	0.028 8.4	0.061 16.8	0.067 19.8	0.112 33.6	0.133 39.89	0.224 67.2
4K	0.448	--	0.014 4.2	0.031 8.4	--	0.056 16.8	--	0.112 33.6
2K	0.224	--	0.07 2.1	0.016	--	0.028 8.4	--	0.056 16.8
1K	0.112	--	--	4.2	--	0.014 4.2	--	0.028 8.4

With d = t · 299792458 m/s;
correction factor for
10 MHz = 8/10, 8 MHz = 1, 7 MHz = 8/7, 6 MHz = 8/6,
5 MHz = 8/5 and 1.7 MHz = 8/1.7.

Frequency synchronism is achieved by frequency standards at the transmitter site, generally a professional GPS receiver providing a 10-MHz reference. Time and data synchronism is achieved by time stamps in the baseband feed signal. This is the T2-MI signal in DVB-T2. The DVB-T2 modulator synchronizes its frame structure to these time stamps. The guard interval condition is met by suitable network planning with planning software [LStelcom]. The new factor in DVB-T2 is the possibility of distributed MISO. There are transmitter sites which radiate either MISO Mode 1 or 2. The advantage of this method is that destructive fading no longer occurs between two adjacent transmitter sites. However, the appropriate choice and simulation of the MISO modes is also a new challenge for the network planning.

37.20 Transmitter Identification Information in DVB-T2

There is a DVB document describing options for DVB-T2 transmitter signatures to be able to identify a T2-transmitter in a SFN. But that algorithms are not implemented in DVB-T2 transmitters. DAB has the TII signal in the Null symbol for this purpose. Transmitter identification was not possible in DVB-T since this would have violated synchronism and would have led to severe disturbances in an SFN. The cell ID in DVB-T only allowed an SFN cell to be identified. The cell ID is here built into reserved TPS bits.

DVB-T2 has the capability of inserting Auxiliary Streams and FEFs (Future Extension Frames) into a T2-frame. Normal DVB-T2 receivers will ignore the Auxiliary Streams and FEFs. DVB-T2 provides for such transmitter identifiers or transmitter signatures to be inserted into the T2 frames either via the Auxiliary Streams or via the FEFs. Similar to DAB, these would be certain active carriers which are activated only at individual carriers within the Auxiliary Streams and would be switched off at all other transmitters in an SFN. By this means, the signals of the channel impulse response in an SFN can then be correlated with the individual transmitters. The signalling of the transmitter identification via the FEFs provides for broadcasting certain different signatures or sequences over the transmitters which can be identified by correlation and thus also enable the individual transmitters in an SFN to be recognized. The additional signalling of the transmitter identification is an overhead which, however, should occupy only very little payload data rate. In DVB-T, transmitter identification has always been wished for by the maintenance technicians who had to perform the coverage tests, but it had been a wish which could not be fulfilled. DVB-T2 transmitter identification information is currently not implemented in DVB-T2 transmitters and DVB-T2 test receivers. Important is that the Cell ID must not be used for transmitter identification!

37.21 Performance

The goal was to achieve a 30 percent higher performance compared to DVB-T. In some cases, data rates can be increased by a factor of 1.5 to almost 2 under comparable conditions. On the flip side, this standard is about 150% more complex than DVB-T. Combined with the new video and audio compression standards like MPEG-4 H.264 / AVC and MPEG-4 AAC, this new standard brings a tremendous performance increase in terms of program variety and quality. DVB-T2 is so far ahead of its time in that it will take a while until a new standard possibly replaces it, especially considering that it has come very close to the Shannon limit. In 2017, Germany switched to DVB-T2 and the new video codec H.265/HEVC. This also means, however, that existing TV terminals with an already integrated DVB-T2 receiver do not necessarily meet the preconditions for reception, because only a certain group of receiver sets support HEVC.

37.22 T2-Lite

A few years after DVB-T2 was released, a technical variant described in the T2 document annex appeared under the name T2 Lite. The targeted devices were once again mobile TV terminals. The technical parameters of a T2 Lite receiver were constrained in terms of memory requirements, and additional specific code rates were defined. T2 Lite signals will be transmitted in Future Extension Frames (FEF) of DVB-T2. As a significant feature, the OFDM mode in the FEF frames can and may be different from that in the rest of the DVB-T2 signal. This means that mobile receivers can be offered lower-order OFDM modes that are easier to receive on a mobile device than the signals transmitted for stationary DVB-T2 receivers. Normal DVB-T2 receivers will simply ignore the DVB-T2 Lite signal.

37.23 Outlook

At present (as of 2019), alongside ATSC3.0, DVB-T2 is the most modern digital terrestrial television standard. Since the technology became available in 2010, more and more DVB-T2 networks are being built worldwide or existing DVB-T networks are converted to DVB-T2. Germany switched from DVB-T(1) to DVB-T2 between March 2017 and April 2019, with a "preliminary multiplex" put into operation already in May 2016. Simultaneously, a new video source coding system, H.265/HEVC has also been introduced. The two methods make it possible to broadcast 5 to 6 HDTV programs per 8 MHz channel instead of the previous 4 SDTV programs. The number of programs depends on the technical broadcasting parameters that are not the same in all regions of Germany. The switchover from DVB-T(1) to DVB-T2 in all regions in Germany will last until 2019.

Fig. 37.46. Broadcast Test Center BTC; used for simulation of complex SFN and SFN-MISO DVB-T2 reception scenarios for receiver tests [BTC]

Bibliography: [DVB A122r1], [ETSI302583], [ALAMOUTI], [ETSI302755], [FKTG2008_GUNKEL], [IRT2008_KUNERT], [LStelcom], [T2-Lite], [BTC]

38 DVB-C2

It has been apparent for some time that after DVB-T2, there would also be a new DVB broadband cable standard, the "Call for Papers" having been issued at the end of 2007. At the IBC 2008, rough outlines were then published on a DIN A4 sheet. The DVB-C2 standard was published in Spring 2009. Ten years later in 2019 - DVB-C2 was only tested in some field trials and is practically not in use.

38.1 Introduction

There are many formulations in DVB-C2 which are derived straight from DVB-T2. And it is also true that it is relatively easy to find one's way around DVB-C2 if one knows DVB-T2. Like DVB-T2, DVB-C2 uses COFDM as a modulation method, the only difference being that the guard intervals are very short and there is only a 4k mode. And the constellation diagrams extend from QPSK up to 4096QAM. At first glance, it appears to be surprising that up to 4096QAM is provided but rough estimates of parameters known from DVB-T2 show that 4096QAM is possible with signal-to-noise ratios which are easily achieved in modern broadband cables. Such high-level types of modulation are possible mainly because of the error protection used in DVB-C2, which corresponds to the error protection used in DVB-S2 and DVB-T2. DVB-C2 thus also uses BCH and LDPC coding. And modern broadband cable networks are continuously improving with respect to the signal-to-noise ratio. Fiber optics are coming closer and closer to the end user terminal, i.e. only the last few meters up to perhaps 1000 meters are still run in coaxial cable technology. Even in purely coaxial cable networks, signal-to-noise ratios within a range of more than 30 dB are easily possible in most cases and modern broadband cable networks provide signal-to-noise ratios within a range of up to 40 dB. The "old" DVB-C standard operates with a single-carrier modulation method and normally uses either 64QAM or 256QAM. However, modulation schemes down to QPSK would also be possible but are not normally used.

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_38

In DVB-C, the "fall-off-the-cliff" occurs at pre-Reed Solomon bit error ratios of more than $2 \cdot 10^{-4}$, corresponding to a signal-to-noise-ratio of about

- 25dB with 64QAM or
- 31dB with 256QAM.

Before considering a new standard which replaces another one, it is always of interest to know the limitations of the previous standard. Broadband cable networks operate within a frequency range of about 30 to 860 MHz. However, the range below 65 MHz is in most cases used for the return channel (Internet, telephony) today. The upper end of the broadband-channel frequency band is followed closely by the GSM900 band. To protect other radio services, certain frequency bands in the cable must be kept free due to possible leaks in the cable. There are currently attempts in the terrestrial domain to utilize 20 previous TV channels for mobile radio applications (LTE, 5G) at the upper end of the terrestrial TV frequency band ("Digital Dividend I and II"). This will correspond to a bandwidth of about 80 MHz. However, investigations have shown that it may then no longer be possible to use this frequency band in the cable since even fractions of the transmitting powers provided for these mobile radio applications will have such severe effects, especially on the receivers, thus making reception impossible. But there have previously been frequency bands in the cable which could be disturbed by other services. The reason could be especially radiation-induced interference on the final meters at the end user but the broadband cable also produces its own interference. Multi-channel allocation and non-linear amplifiers generate intermodulation products. And the end user's wiring can also be quite eccentric at times. Wrong terminations and simple T-junctions are no rarities. Amplifiers which are overdriven or set at the wrong level can be frequently found at the end user's. The cable network operator does not always have a compulsory influence on the correct state of the network at level 4, i.e. the end user, and this especially is the main cause of the limitations of DVB-C. The reason for this is the relatively simple error protection (only Reed-Solomon block coding) and the single-carrier modulation method used. Fitted with a channel equalizer, DVB-C receivers can only compensate for frequency response errors to a limited extent. It is easier to detect and compensate for frequency response errors with the aid of a multi-carrier modulation method and the assistance of pilot carriers which is why COFDM is also the correct approach in cable applications. At the moment it appears in any case that the majority of modern transmission standards back COFDM and will continue to do so. This also applies more and more to the mobile radio field. And it is clear, therefore, that COFDM will also be used in DVB-C2 where a single-carrier modulation method is not provided for. It can be said that the DVB-T2 standard was taken as the basis for DVB-C2, modes and features irrelevant for DVB-C2 were initially deleted from it and then new applications were implemented for broadband cable applications and the modulation schemes were also adapted to the world of cable.

38.2 Theoretical Maximum Channel Capacity

Before considering the DVB-C2 standard in greater detail, the theoretical limits of broadband cable will first be discussed. The Shannon Limit specifies that with signal-to-noise ratios from 10 dB, approximately the following formula for the theoretical maximum channel capacity applies:

$C = 1/3 \cdot B \cdot SNR$;
where
C = channel capacity (in bit/s);
B = bandwidth (in Hz);
SNR = signal/noise ratio (in dB);

A 8-MHz-wide broadband channel then provides the following theoretical maximum channel capacity:

Table 38.1. Shannon-Limits in a broadband cable

SNR[dB]	Theoretical max. channel capacity [Mbit/s]	Remarks
25	69.3	Fall off the cliff with DVB-C at 64QAM
30	80	Poor coax cable system
31	85.3	Fall-off-the-cliff with DVB-C at 256QAM
35	93.3	
40	106.7	Good HFC
45	120	In the headend

Assuming that a symbol rate of 6.9 MS/s is used, the data rates in an 8-MHz channel in DVB-C were in most cases:

- 38.15 Mbit/s with 64QAM
- 50.87 Mbit/s with 256QAM

In DVB-C2, the minimum aim was to achieve a 30% higher data rate. Without having any knowledge of the DVB-C2 standard, it can be expected, therefore that, instead of the data rates shown above, either at least about 50 Mbit/s should be achieved with signal/noise ratios of around 26 dB, or 66 Mbit/s with a signal/noise ratio of around 32 dB, in an 8-MHz-wide channel. The aims were even exceeded. The reasons for the increase in channel capacity in DVB-C2 are:

- Better forward error correction
- Higher-order types of modulation
- Channel bundling and, as a result, no use of guard bands

38.3 DVB-C2 – An Overview

In the following section, an overview of the most important DVB-C2 details will be given briefly.

- Based on DVB-T2
- COFDM (4K Mode, 2 short guard intervals)
- FEC based on LDPC (… DVB-S2, DVB-T2, …)
- Multiple TS (transport streams) and GS (generic streams)
- Single and multiple PLPs (physical layer pipes)
- Data slices (fixed mapping of certain PLPs onto certain fixed carrier groups)
- QPSK … 4096QAM (16K QAM under discussion)
- Variable Coding and Modulation
- Channel-raster bandwidth of 6 or 8 MHz
- Channel bundling up to approx. 450 MHz bandwidth
- Supports notches (notching out disturbed or interfering frequency bands)
- Reserved carriers for PAPR reduction (Peak to Average Power Ratio reduction)

38.4 Baseband Interface

The DVB-C2 input interface allows use of a simple MPEG-2 transport stream, to feed in several transport streams, a generic stream and several generic streams. The input signal formats fully correspond to those of

DVB-T2 and have already been described in Chapter 36 and 37. Like DVB-T2, DVB-C2 supports the Normal Mode and High Efficiency Mode (HEM). The term Physical Layer Pipe (PLP) is also used in DVB-C2 and corresponds to the physical transport of one of these input signals. There is provision for common PLPs for a group of PLPs in order to save on signalling. A group of up to 255 PLPs can be combined to form data slices.

38.5 Forward Error Correction

The forward error correction in DVB-C2 corresponds to that of DVB-S2 and DVB-T2. It consists of a baseband scrambler, a BCH-block coder, an LDPC block coder followed by a bit interleaver. The error protection in DVB-C2 can be adjusted by selecting one of 5 code rates, listed in Table 38.2.

Table 38.2. Code rates in DVB-C2

Long frame (64800 bits)	Short frame (16200 bits)
Code rate	Code rate
2/3	2/3
3/4	3/4
4/5	4/5
5/6	5/6
8/9	8/10

38.6 COFDM Parameters

In DVB-C, only the 4k mode is possible, corresponding to 3408 carriers used (Fig. 38.1.). However, the IFFT operates with carriers to a power of two, i.e. 4096 carriers overall. The channel raster bandwidths are 6 or 8 MHz. The subcarrier spacings and the actual signal bandwidths are then:

Table 38.3. COFDM parameters in DVB-C2

Channel raster bandwidth [MHz]	Subcarrier spacing [kHz]	Signal bandwidth [MHz]
6	1.674	5.71
8	2.232	7.61

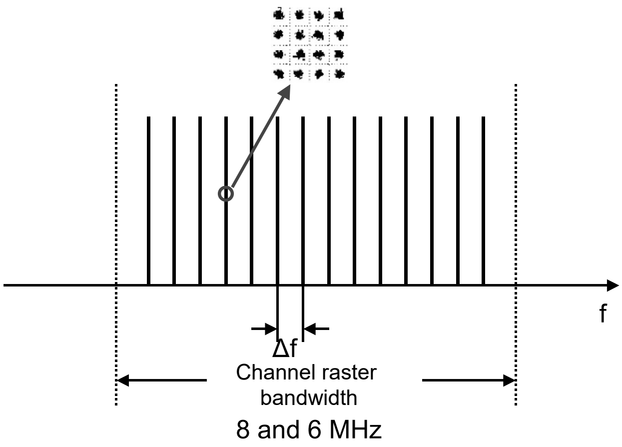


Fig. 38.1. COFDM parameters

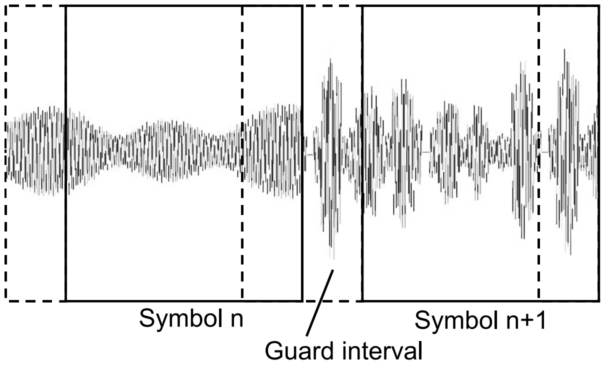


Fig. 38.2. COFDM symbol and guard interval

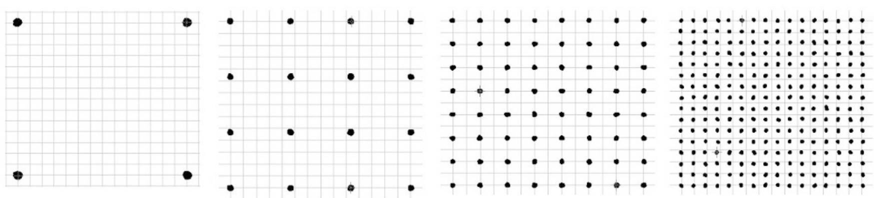


Fig. 38.3. QAM orders QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM and 256QAM in DVB-C2 (simulated)

Only very short guard intervals (Fig. 38.2.) will be used since only very short reflections can be expected in a broadband cable. The selectable guard intervals are 1/64 or 1/128 of the symbol period. The guard interval is a cyclic prefix, i.e. a prefixed copy of the symbol end.

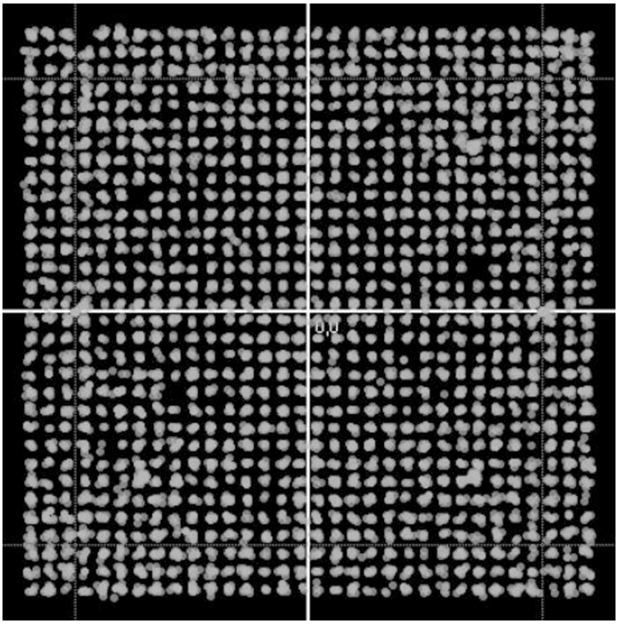


Fig. 38.4. QAM order 1024 in DVB-C2

38.7 Modulation Pattern

DVB-C2 operates with coherent Gray-coded modulation. The following QAM orders (Fig. 38.3., 38.4. and 38.5.) are supported:

- QPSK
- 16QAM
- 64QAM
- 256QAM
- 1024QAM
- 4096QAM

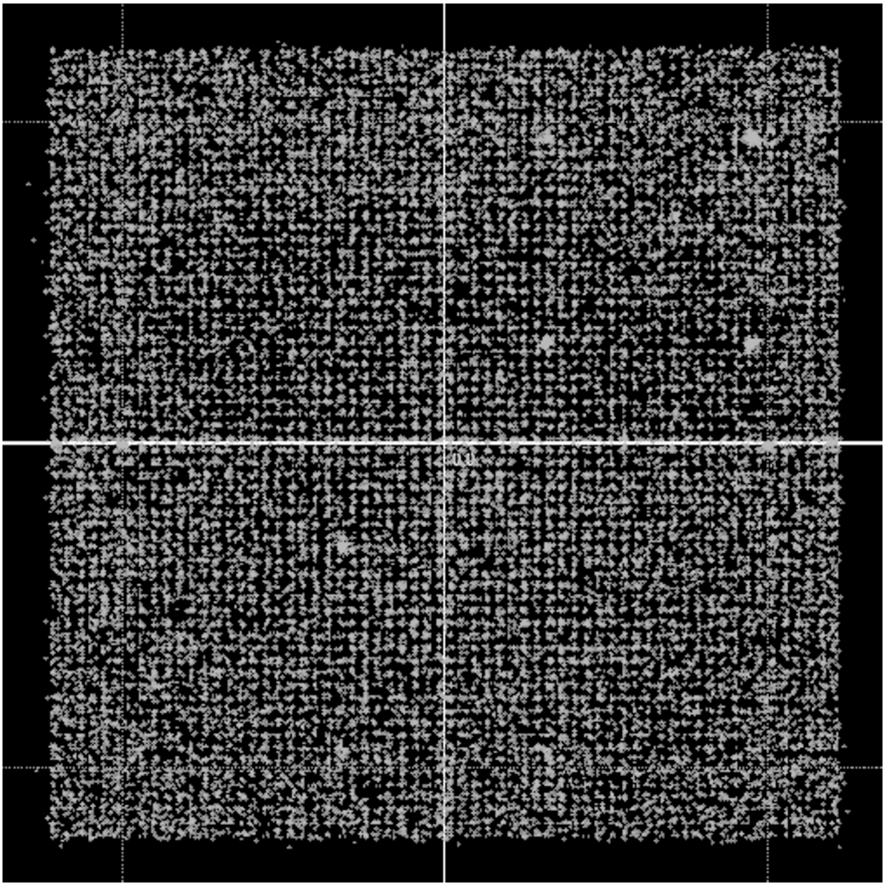


Fig. 38.5. 4096QAM

Although 4096QAM (Fig. 38.5.) initially appears to be an interesting or eccentric choice, it is quite practicable when considered more closely and compared with the minimum signal/noise ratios necessary known from DVB-T2. Although no tables about the minimum signal/noise ratios necessary with DVB-C2 have been publishes as yet, a minimum SNR of about 30 dB can be expected with 4096QAM on the basis of estimates from parameters of the DVB-T2 standard. Such QAM orders are made possible by the signal/noise ratios of 30 dB up to almost 40 dB in cables which have become quite good in the meantime. DVB-C2 mentions even modulation methods of up to 16k QAM.

38.10 Definition of a Cell

Similar to DVB-T2, the term "cell" (Fig. 38.6.) was introduced in DVB-C2. The reason is that bit groups are combined relatively early to form later carriers which are mapped, i.e. modulated, but some interleaving processes still have to be carried out. In DVB-T2, a cell is an IQ value whereas in DVB-C2 a cell corresponds to a 2-, 4-, 8-, 10- or 12-bit-wide bit group depending on the selected QAM order transported later on a carrier.

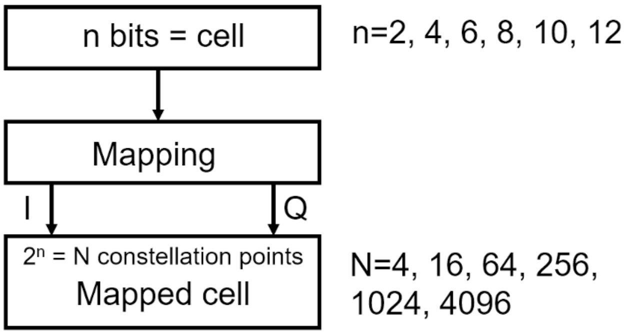


Fig. 38.6. Definition of a cell in DVB-C2

38.11 Interleavers

There are altogether 3 interleavers (Fig. 38.7.) in DVB-C2, which are:

- Bit interleaver which belongs directly to the FEC
- Time interleaver
- Frequency interleaver

There is no cell interleaver here as there is in DVB-T2.

The bit interleaver operates at FEC level and optimizes the characteristics of the error protection. Exactly as in DVB-S2 and DVB-T2, however, it is a short interleaver. The time interleaver makes DVB-C2 more robust against relatively long burst errors. The time interleaver is adjustable in its interleaving depth deep time interleaving as in DVB-T2 is thus not necessary here. And the frequency interleaver distributes the data as randomly as possible over many COFDM carriers. Time and frequency interleaving takes place in DVB-C2 within a data slice to which a certain number of PLPs are allocated.

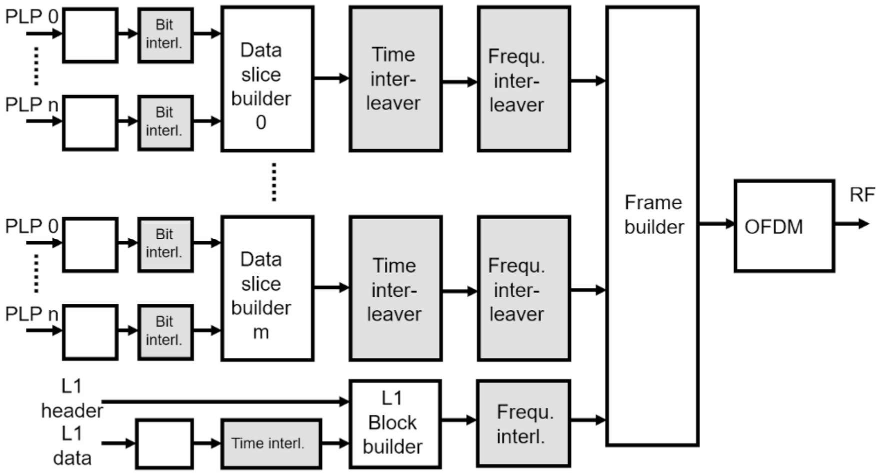


Fig. 38.7. Interleavers in DVB-C2

38.12 Variable Coding and Modulation (VCM)

In DVB-C2, each input stream is transmitted in its own Physical Layer Pipe (PLP). All interleaving-processes are restricted not to a PLP but to a group of PLPs which are combined to form a data slice. Within each PLP, however, various transmission parameters such as error protection and modulation method can be selected. This is called Variable Coding and Modulation (VCM), a term which is also known from DVB-T2. However, due to the uniformity of the broadband cable, it must be assumed that VCM, i.e. the selection of different transmission parameters in different frequency bands or PLPs in the cable will not be used so intensively.

38.13 Frame Structure

Just like other standards, DVB-C2, too, has the concept of a frame. A DVB-C2 frame begins with preamble symbols which are repeated every 7.61 MHz and have a width of 3408 carriers each. These are followed by the data symbols, a total of 448 data symbols. The preamble symbols are used both for time and frequency synchronization and for signalling of the Layer-1 (L1) parameters. The preamble symbols are arranged with respect to frequency in such a way that a receiver with a receiver bandwidth of 7.61 MHz will get all the data necessary for finding the Layer-1 parameters.

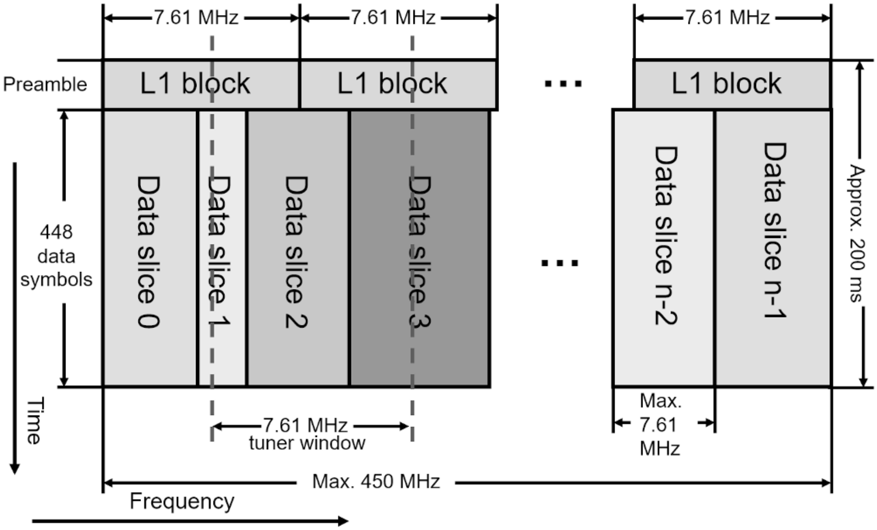


Fig. 38.8. Framing and channel bundling

38.14 Channel Bundling and Slice Building

There are actually no longer any channels in DVB-C2 but only two channel rasters of either 6 or 8 MHz. Channels can be bundled together to form a channel with a total width of approx. 450 MHz (Fig. 38.8.). There are then no longer any gaps between the original channels. The lack of any more gaps (guard bands) then enables the frequency spectrum to be used more effectively and allows a higher data rate overall. However, there are very frequently also disturbed frequency bands in the cable or frequency bands which could interfere with other radio services (e.g. aircraft radio). These can be notched out in DVB-C2 by simply switching off certain OFDM carriers (Fig. 38.10.). This is called nothing which produces gaps in the frequency spectrum. The channel bundling leads to increased demands on the modulator but not on the receiver. The receiver bandwidth is limited to 7.6 MHz in DVB-C2, i.e. the receiver only needs to be capable of demodulating channel rasters with a maximum width of 7.6 MHz. In DVB-C2, frequency slices with a maximum width of up to 7.6 MHz are formed for this purpose in which a whole number of Physical Layer Pipes

(PLPs) are mapped. During the demodulating, the receiver selects the frequency slice containing the data stream to be demodulated, i.e. the relevant PLP. Every 7.6 MHz there is a Layer-1 signalling so that the receiver will find the slices and know the transmission parameters in the slices. I.e., every 7.6 MHz, special signalling symbols are inserted at every beginning of a DVB-C2 frame. Since the symbols are repeated every 7.6 MHz, the receiver can arbitrarily locate itself over the bundled DVB-C2 channel within the 7.6-MHz receiver-bandwidth.

The first L1 block begins mathematically at 0 MHz; and this L1 block is repeated every 7.6 MHz at the beginning of a DVB-C2 frame. Regardless of where the receiver, having a bandwidth of at least 7.6 MHz, places itself it will capture the complete signalling of the Layer-1 parameters.

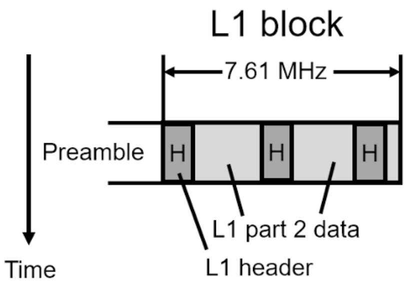


Fig. 38.9. Preamble symbols

38.15 Preamble Symbols

The preamble symbols (Fig. 38.9.) are used for:

- Time synchronization
- Frequency synchronization
- Signalling the Layer-1 parameters (guard -interval, modulation, error protection etc.)

They are located at the beginning of a DVB-C2-frame in the L1 block and also mark the beginning of the frame. The preamble symbols consist of a header and an L1 time interleaving block. The header contains over 32 bits, consisting of 16 data bits and error protection, the basic signalling of the most important basic L1 parameters.

The preamble header is 32 OFDM cells wide. The following are transmitted in the header:

- L1_INFO_SIZE (14 bits)
- L1_TI_MODE (2 bits)

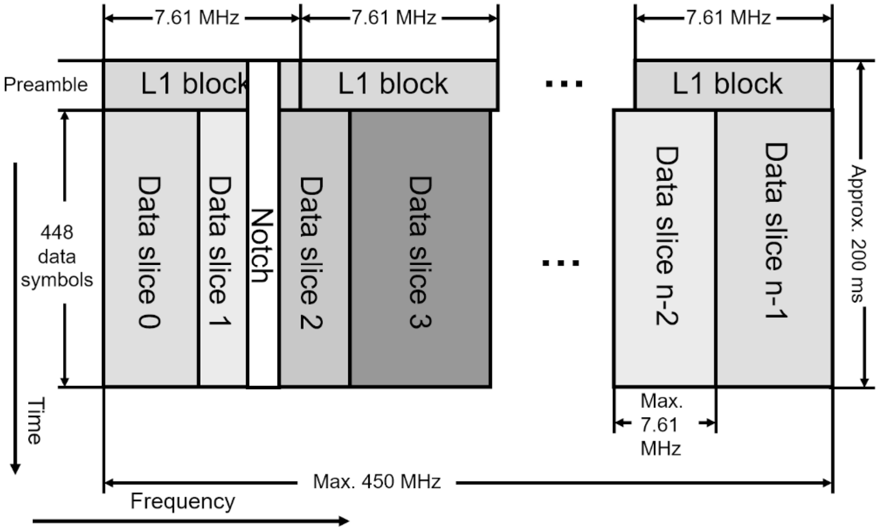


Fig. 38.10. Forming of notches (carrier bands switched off) in DVB-C2

Altogether, the preamble header consists of 32 bits which are composed of the 16 payload data bits and additional 32 FEC bits (Reed-Mueller-coded). The 32 OFDM carriers of the preamble header are QPSK-modulated.

L1_INFO_SIZE signals in 14 bits half the width of L1-Part 2 (L1 time interleaving block, consisting of data and stuffing bits).

L1_TI_MODE provides information about the Time Interleaving Mode of L1 Part 2 (Layer 1 Time Interleaving Block) used. These are 2 bits which convey the following:

- 00 = no time interleaving
- 01 = best fit
- 10 = 4 OFDM symbols
- 11 = 8 OFDM symbols

The OFDM data carriers in the Layer-1 Part 2 block are 16QAM-modulated; the error protection consists of BCH and 16K-LDPC coding with a code rate of ½.

In Part 2, the following L1 parameters are then signalled:

- Network ID
- C2 system ID
- Start frequency
- Guard interval
- C2 frame length
- No. of bundled channels
- No. of data slices
- No. of notches
- Data slice parameters in the data slice loop
- PLP parameters in PLP parameter loops
- Notch parameters

All data slices are described by the following parameters in the data slice loop:

- Data slice ID
- Data slice tune position
- Data slice offset left
- Data slice offset right
- Data slice time interleaver depth
- Data slice type
- No. of PLPs per data slice
- PLP loop with all PLP descriptions per data slice

All PLPs of a data slice are described in PLP loops. These loops contain the following parameters:

- PLP ID
- PLP bundled
- PLP type
- PLP payload type
- PLP start
- PLP FEC type
- PLP modulation

L1 signalling header and L1 time interleaving block can be repeated several times within 7.6 MHz in the direction of frequency depending on the length of the L1 time interleaving blocks.

38.16 Pilots in DVB-C2

Like DVB-T2, DVB-C2 has:

- Edge pilots
- Continual pilots
- Scattered pilots

Edge-pilots and continual pilots are used for frequency synchronization (AFC). Additionally, denser pilot structures are formed by inserting jumping scattered pilots (Fig. 38.11.) for channel estimation and channel correction. In DVB-C2, the pilot structures do not need to be as dense as in DVB-T2 due to the cable channel being physically simpler for the receiver. DVB-C2 supports a pilot structure for each of the two guard interval lengths. All DVB-C2 pilots are boosted by 7/3 compared with the data carriers.

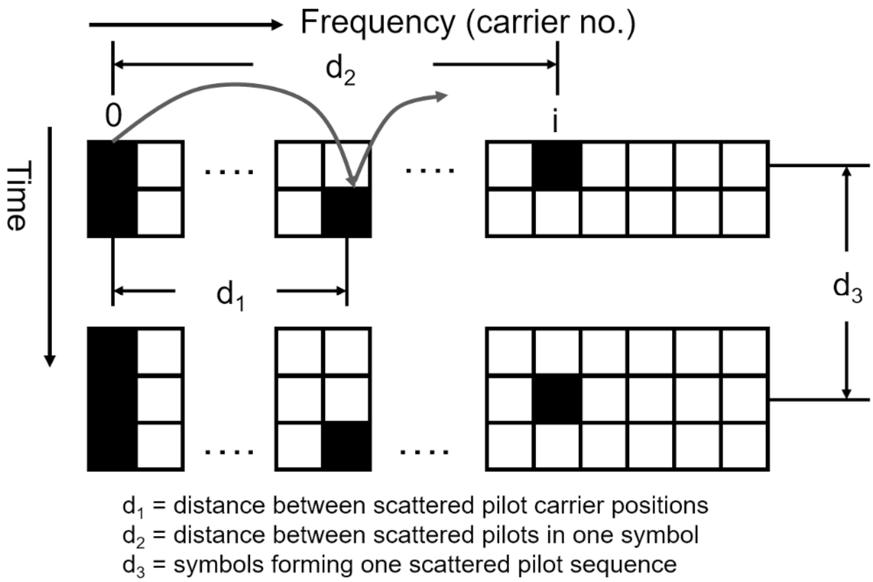


Fig. 38.11. Pilot structures in DVB-C2

Table 38.4. Scattered pilot structures in DVB-C2

Guard interval	Distance between carriers carrying pilot carriers (and distance between the pilot carriers within a COFDM symbol	Number of symbols forming one pilot sequence
1/64	12 (48)	4
1/128	24 (96)	4

Table 38.5. Continual pilot positions in DVB-C2

Continual Pilot No.
96 216 306 390 450 486 780 804
924 1026 1224 1422 1554 1620 1680 1902
1956 2016 2142 2220 2310 2424 2466 2736
3048 3126 3156 3228 3294 3366

38.17 PAPR

Like DVB-T2, DVB-C2 also provides for the reservation of carriers in order to reduce the crest factor. If needed, these carriers can then be switched on by the modulator and set in such a way that they reduce the current crest-factor of the signal. This method corresponds to the tone reservation in DVB-T2.

38.18 Block Diagram

The DVB-C2-block diagram is much more powerful than that of DVB-C but still less complex than that in DVB-T2 although some parts correspond to those of DVB-T2 (Fig. 38.12.).

38.19 Levels in Broadband Cables

The levels in DVB-C channels (Fig. 38.13.) are usually adjusted in such a way that 64QAM-modulated channels are 12 dB below the analog TV reference level (vision carrier - sync peak power) and 256QAM-modulated channels are 6 dB below that (RMS), in order to obtain sufficient distance from interfering noise in the broadband cable. DVB-C2 channels with

1024QAM-modulation will probably be 4 ... 6 dB below the ATV reference level and with 4096QAM, the level is then approx. 0 ... +2 dB above the analog-TV-reference level.

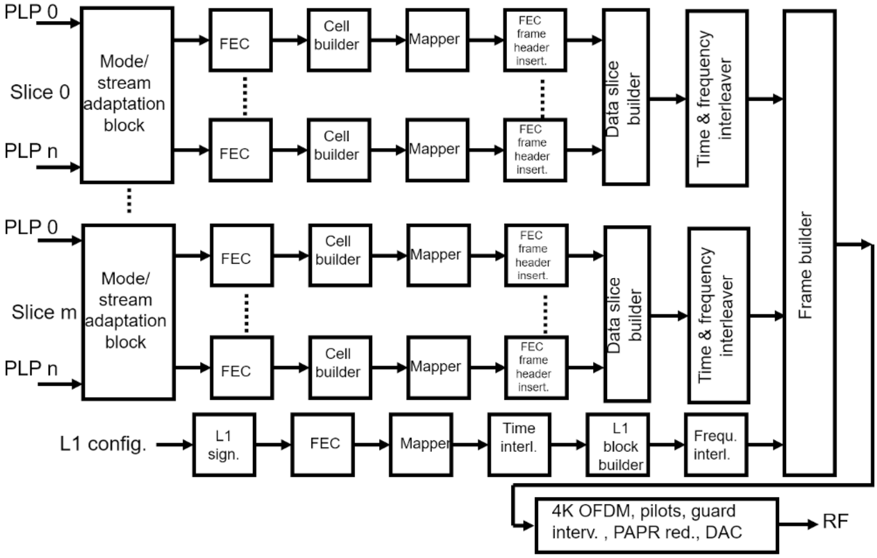


Fig. 38.12. DVB-C2 block diagram

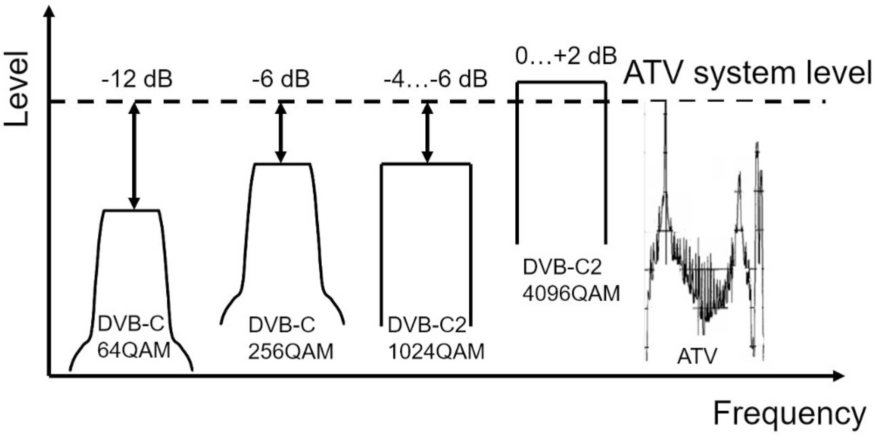


Fig. 38.13. Levels in broadband cables

38.20 Capacity

DVB-C2 can now handle up to more than 70 Mbit/s in an former 8-MHz channel which could previously handle only 51 Mbit/s. The reason for this is mainly the modern LDPC forward error correction which can now be applied, in conjunction with channel bundling, i.e. the avoidance of gaps between the channels. Using COFDM modulation, the broadband cable can now be used even more effectively, since frequency-selective problems can be eliminated more easily. It is intended to bundle up to approx. ca. 450-MHz-wide channels. This will result in about 380000 individually usable carriers in 862 MHz bandwidth.

38.21 Outlook

With DVB-C2, as with DVB-T2 and DVB-S2, a very modern, high-capacity new DVB transmission standard has been created. Its applications will lie in the field of HDTV and fast downstreams for broadband Internet via broadband cable. In the last years in many CATV networks analog TV services was switched off. This resulted in about 30% more capacity. DOCSIS3.1 is being introduced in many cable networks. And the physical bandwidth of CATV networks will be shifted up from 860 MHz to 1.2 GHz and above. DVB-C2 was tested out in some field trial but it seems to be that it is not the candidate for replacing DVB-C(1). DVB-C2 is currently not in use.

Bibliography: [DVB_A138], [EN302769], [TS102991],
[DVB Blue Book A147]

39 DVB-T2 Measurement Technology

Although DVB-T2 is a significantly more complex standard than other norms and hence requires more computing power in the DVB-T2 measuring receiver, the parameters measured are essentially the same, namely:

- RF level
- Bit Error Ratios (BER)
- Modulation Error Ratios (MER)
- Constellation diagram (appearance, shape)
- Shoulder attenuation
- Impulse response, channel impulse response
- Amplitude response and group delay

The parameters to be measured depends essentially on what is being investigated, i.e. whether the measurement takes place

- at the transmitter output before or after the mask filter, before or after the antenna combiner,
- in the field (coverage measurement, SFN measurement),
- at the customer's premises (viewers) on the antenna connector,

or at any other point of the transfer chain.

However, the most important measurement parameters are always:

- RF level, measured mostly in dBµV or dBm
- BER (dimensionless)
- MER in dB

These three parameters determine the signal quality. RF level and BER are routinely displayed in the settings menu of every commercial receiver, but in a form that is comprehensible for technically less experienced users (as signal strength and signal quality between 0 and 100 percent). The major differences between DVB-T2 and DVB-T and thus important for DVB-T2 measurement technology, are as follows:

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_39

- Multi-PLP capability of DVB-T2
- Optional “rotated constellations”
- Other pilot types
- P1, P2, and data symbols
- Other error protection codes (BCH, LDPC)
- Optional MISO mode

For further details and explanations see chapter “DVB-T2”.

39.1 Measuring the RF Level

The definition and measurement of the RF level are exactly the same as for DVB-T. As a voltage value, it is simply the root mean square (RMS) of the voltage of the DVB-T2 source; as a power value, it is the average power of the signal ($P_{AVG}=V_{RMS}\cdot R_{Load}$). A DVB-T2 measuring receiver detects the RMS value of the voltage over a 50 or 75-Ohm impedance, and displays this directly or converts it to

- V
- mV
- µV
- dBm
- dBµV
- W, kW

When the level of a DVB-T2 signal is measured by a spectrum analyzer, the following instrument settings are recommended:

- Center frequency set to the channel center of the DVB-T2 channel
- SPAN of 20 MHz
- RMS detector (if available, otherwise SAMPLE detector)
- Resolution bandwidth (RBW) to 30 kHz
- Video bandwidth (VBW) to 300 kHz
- Sweep time of about 2 s
- Noise Marker set to channel center

If the DVB-T2 spectrum is flat, the Noise Marker reading at the channel center – i.e. the signal power in a 1 Hz wide window – can be used to easily calculate the power in the total DVB-T2 channel (1.7, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 10 MHz). Of course the actual bandwidth of the DVB-T2 signal must be taken into consideration, which also depends on whether the selected DVB-T2 mode is Normal or Extended.

Example:

DVB-T2 system with 8 MHz bandwidth, 32k extended Carrier Mode,
Noise Marker value = - 100 dBm/Hz

The signal bandwidth is 7.77 MHz in this case instead of 7.6 MHz (normal mode).

Correction value for calculating the power in dBm from the power density for 1 Hz:

$10 \log(7.77 \cdot 10^6) = 68.9$ dB

Actual power in this example:

- 100 dBm/Hz + 68.9 dB = - 31.1 dBm.

In order to obtain the results in dBµV, the dBm value has to be increased by 107 dB for an impedance of 50 Ohms, and by 108.8 dB for 75 Ohms. Thus, in this example the following values are obtained:

75.9 dBµV over an impedance of 50 Ohms and
77.7 dBµV over an impedance of 75 Ohms.

"Reasonable" receiver input levels are roughly between 50 and 70 dBµV. Depending on the modulation type, a receiver needs at least 25 to 35 dBµV input level in a Gaussian channel and 10 to 20 dB more depending on the actual channel. Above 70 dBµV, most receivers limit the level.

39.2 Measuring Bit Error Ratios (BER)

The definition of the bit error ratio is the same for all transmission methods:

Bit Error Ratio =
BER = number of erroneous bits / number of received bits;

DVB-T2 uses a different error protection method than DVB-T, namely BCH (Bose-Chaudri-Hoquenhem) coding and LDPC (Low Density Parity Check) coding. This results in three bit error ratios:

- BER before LDPC, which corresponds to the channel bit error rate
- BER before BCH
- BER after BCH (typically replaced by a packet error ratio)

BER is a dimensionless value.

A BCH block error rate and a transport stream packet error rate are also defined. These usually specify the number of erroneous BCH blocks or transport stream packets per time unit, i.e. the dimension is usually 1/s.

Up to a certain BER value, error-free message decoding is possible. For LDPC, this depends on the selected code rate, i.e. on the error protection overhead. With DVB-T2, six different code rates can be selected, namely:

- 1/2 (maximum FEC)
- 3/5
- 2/3
- 3/4
- 4/5
- 5/6 (minimum FEC)

Code rate of 1/2 ensures the lowest error ratio, but also adds the largest overhead and hence provides the lowest net data rate. Usually a code rate of 2/3 or 3/4 is selected. The error protection method used in DVB-T2 – a combination of two block codes – results in a very abrupt collapse of the transmission in a borderline case compared to DVB-T. The difference between “Go” and “No Go” is only a few hundredth of a dB in the SNR.

With DVB-T2, a different code rate and modulation order can be selected for each Physical Layer Pipe (PLP). This leads to the fact that each PLP has a different BER value, i.e. the BER must be measured separately for each PLP, so the appropriate PLP must be selected when measuring the

BER. L1 data and P2 symbols are also protected separately, using BCH and LDPC, but with a different code rate. For this reason, an additional BER measurement is performed on the L1 data.

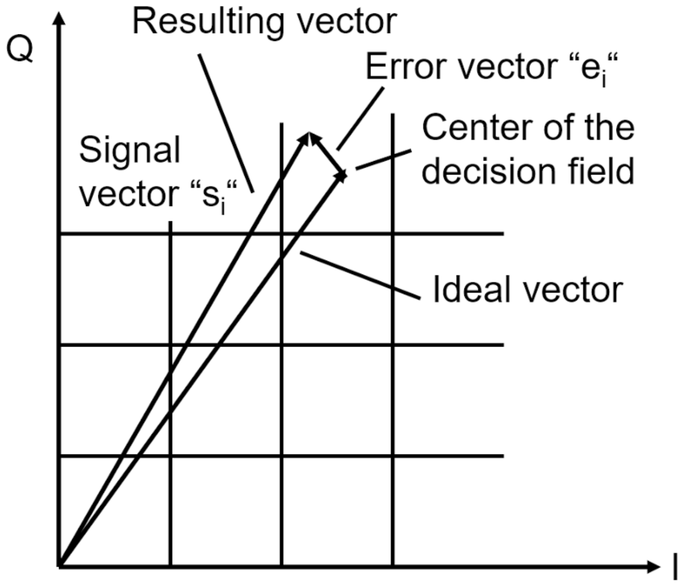


Fig. 39.1. Vectors for measuring the MER (Modulation Error Ratio)

39.3 Measuring the Modulation Error Ratio (MER)

Just like in case of the DVB-T and other digital broadcast transmission standards, the Modulation Error Ratio (MER) can be used to express the total modulation error of DVB-T2 caused by:

- Noise,
- Jitter,
- Reflection,
- Linear distortions
- Nonlinear distortions

Ideally, the QAM-modulated signal vectors should be centered in the decision fields. Each deviating signal state in the constellation diagram can be described by a displacement vector, the error vector “e”. The modulation error ratio (MER) can be determined by detecting the signal vectors s_i and error vectors e_i over a longer period, calculating the quadratic mean value S for all signal vectors and E for all error vectors, and applying the following formula:

MER [dB] = 20 log (S/E);

The best possible MER value is infinite, while the worst is zero. Realistic values are around 35 dB at the transmitter output and 10 ... 30 dB at the receiver input. In terms of network planning, the values used for the fall-off-the-cliff point are defined as

- approximately 18 dB when planning for outdoor (rooftop) antenna reception, or
- approximately 12 dB when planning for indoor reception.

In the case of DVB-T2, the MER can be measured separately for each PLP, and for the L1 and P2 symbols. MER measurements should take into account that the constellation diagrams may be rotated. When determining the MER of a given signal, it is also important to re-sort the data by the various interleavers. Another significant means of characterizing the signal quality in DVB-T2 is plotting the MER versus the carriers (MER(f)).

A frequently asked question is how high the MER value of a transmitter should be, so we hereby present a short consideration on how the MER influences the receiver behavior and hence the size of the coverage area of a DVB-T2 transmitter. To begin with the field strength uncertainty in coverage measurements, it is about a few dB – let’s assume for now ±3 dB just to get the order of magnitude. We can assume that the influence of the transmitter can only be neglected if it contributes less than 0.5 dB to the deterioration of the MER. All digital TV transmitters have Class AB amplifiers. The efficiency of these and hence that of the transmitter depends on the operating point (the bias current of the transistors). However, the more linear an output stage and the higher the margin in the dynamic range, the worse the efficiency, i.e. higher MER values mean lower efficiencies. A good compromise needs therefore to be found between a good MER and good efficiency, especially these days when energy costs keep increasing. An MER of about 35 dB is considered as very good for both DVB-T and DVB-T2, and also for other standards like ISDB-T. We’ll also see in a minute that more wouldn’t make much sense and wouldn’t allow any measurable enlargement of the coverage area. Now to what degree does the transmitter's MER affect the receiver's MER? While this seems to be a difficult question, in reality it is pretty easy to answer. A transmitter with a low MER value of e.g. 20 dB means simply that a noise signal is superimposed onto the useful transmission (in this case the DVB-T2 wave), i.e. the transmitter also broadcasts noise. Let us also assume that the influence of this internal noise of the transmitter is negligible if its influence on the receiver MER is below 0.5 dB. Digital broadcasting is trouble-free up to the "fall-off-the-cliff" point which depends on the chosen network planning parameters. The network planning scenarios are as follows:

- "Portable Indoor"
- "Outdoor"
- "Fixed outdoor", meaning a roof antenna with gain

The difference is simply the required minimum SNR or MER. These SNR and MER values are about:

- 12 dB for "Portable Indoor"
- 18 dB for "Outdoor"
- 20 dB for reception with a roof antenna

The MER value measurable at a receiver which is located close to the transmitter can be almost equal to the MER detectable at the transmitter output. Let's assume that the expected MER values at the receiver are at the "fall-off-the-cliff" points when the transmitter's undesired noise "source" representing the low transmitter MER values degrades reception to the limit. Two noise sources affect the receiver: N1 corresponding to the reception conditions, and N2 equivalent to the transmitter's "noise source". To add up the power of both noise sources, we first need to change from the logarithmic dB scale to linear range, then add the two power values, and finally change back to the logarithmic dB scale:

$$N3 = 10\log\left(\frac{1}{10^{-0.1N1} + 10^{-0.1N2}}\right);$$

where N3 is the resulting MER in the receiver in dB,
N1 is the MER at the fall-off-the-cliff in dB
N2 is the transmitter MER in dB.

The result is shown in the following graph:

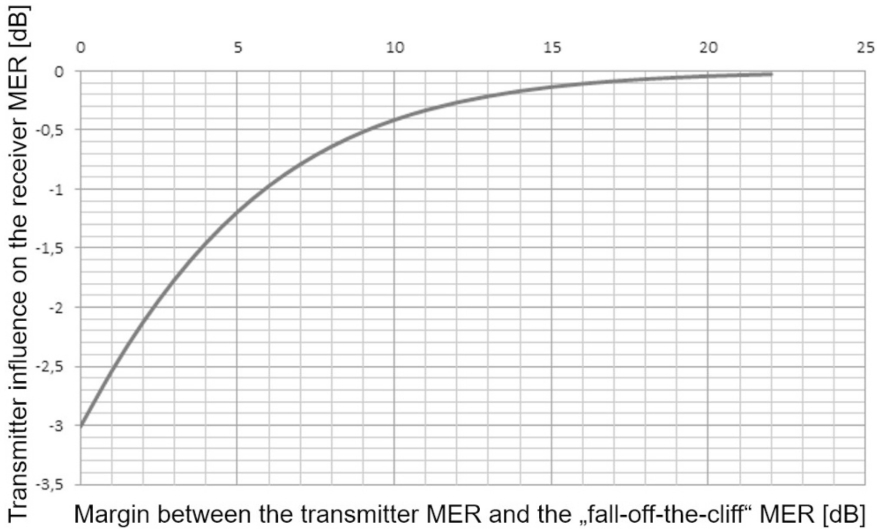


Fig. 39.2. Influence of the transmitter's MER on the receiver MER at the fall-off-the-cliff point

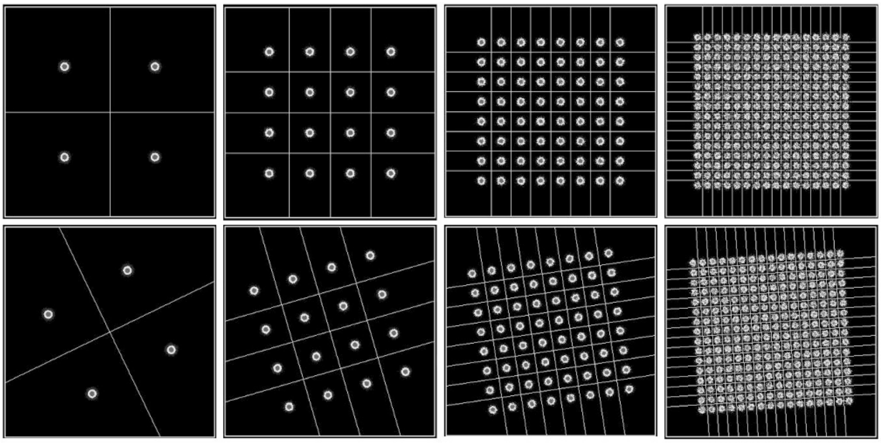


Fig. 39.3. DVB-T2 constellation diagrams

The graph shows the influence of the transmitter's MER on the receiver MER at the "fall-off-the-cliff" point. As can be seen, if the transmitter's MER is about 10 dB above this threshold, the influence of the transmitter is below 0.5 dB, i.e. the influence on the size of the coverage area in this case is no longer measurable. If the transmitter's MER is about 15 dB above the critical value, the influence of the transmitter is about 0.2 dB, and only 0.05 dB if the margin is 20 dB. If, for example, a MER of 18 dB is assumed for the "fall-off-the-cliff" point (outdoor reception), a transmitter MER of 18 + 10 = 28 dB would be sufficient to consider its influence on the coverage area hardly detectable. All this is not just theory: practical measurements show comparable values, meaning that a MER of 35 dB at the transmitter output is already a very good value, and any additional dB would be a waste of energy.

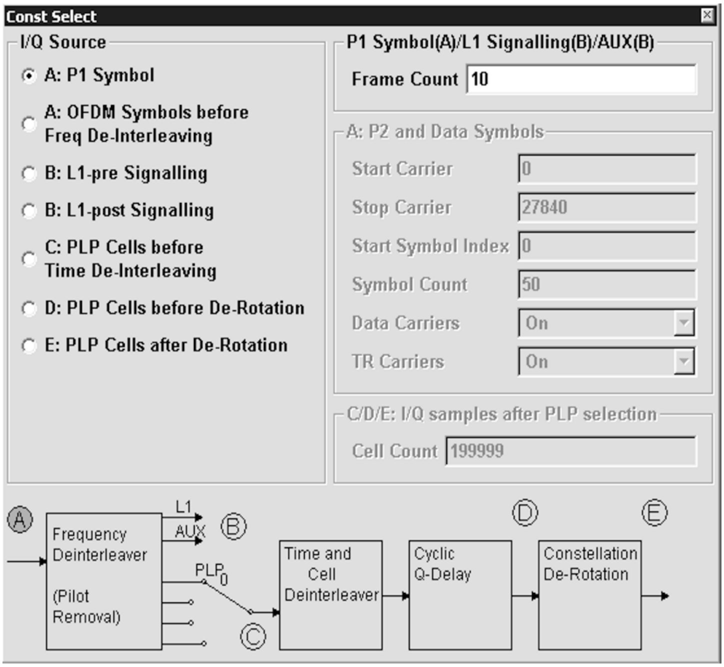


Fig. 39.4. Choice of constellation diagram representation in the TV measurement receiver R&S ETL [ETL]

39.4 Constellation Analysis of DVB-T2 Signals

Of course, the purely visual assessment of constellation diagrams also plays a role in DVB-T2. Superimposing the states of all carriers onto each other in one diagram or displaying the constellation of individual carriers helps to draw conclusions about the patterns and causes of defects. In an ideal constellation diagram, all states are in the middle of the decision fields, while noisy signals have large round “clouds”. DVB-T2 measuring receivers often indicate the probability of occurrence of the states by colors assigned to the probabilities (R&S ETL). For the interpretation of the various types of errors in the constellation diagram see the chapters on DVB-C and DVB-T.

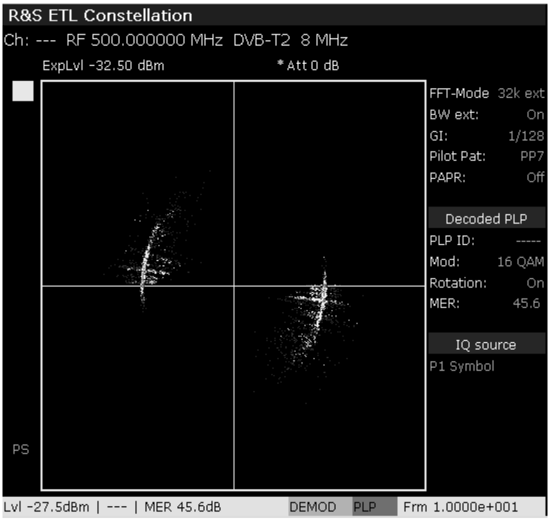


Fig. 39.5. The P1 symbol

In case of DVB-T2, it makes sense to view the constellation diagram at various points along the signal flow in the measuring receiver (see Fig. 39.4). For instance, the R&S ETL can be used to represent the following constellation diagrams:

- P1 symbol
- OFDM symbols prior to frequency interleaving
- P2 symbol: L1 pre-signaling
- P2 symbol: L1 post-signaling
- PLP cells prior to time de-interleaving
- PLP cells prior to de-rotation
- PLP cells after de-rotation

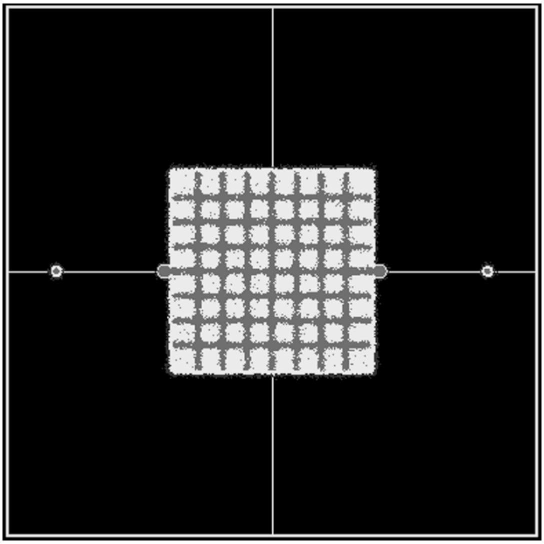


Fig. 39.6. DVB-T2 constellation diagram, P2 and data symbols shown superimposed

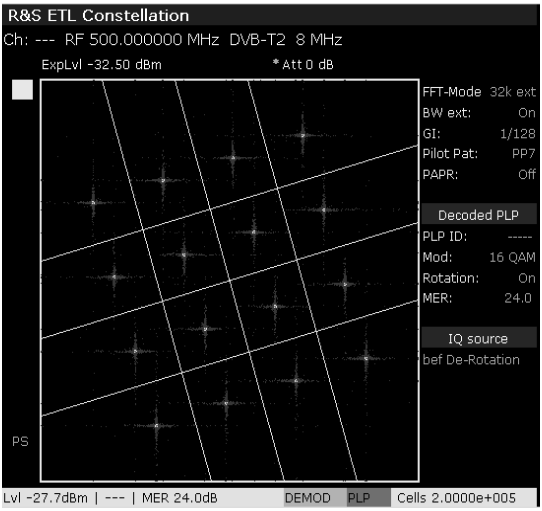


Fig. 39.7. "Cruciform" constellation points in a rotated constellation diagram in the presence of fading

A special feature of DVB-T2 in the presence of distinct multipath-reception situations is a cruciform shape in the "rotated constellations", caused by different distortions of the I and Q values in the constellation diagram due to the delay and cell-interleaving of the I and Q values (see Fig. 39.7).

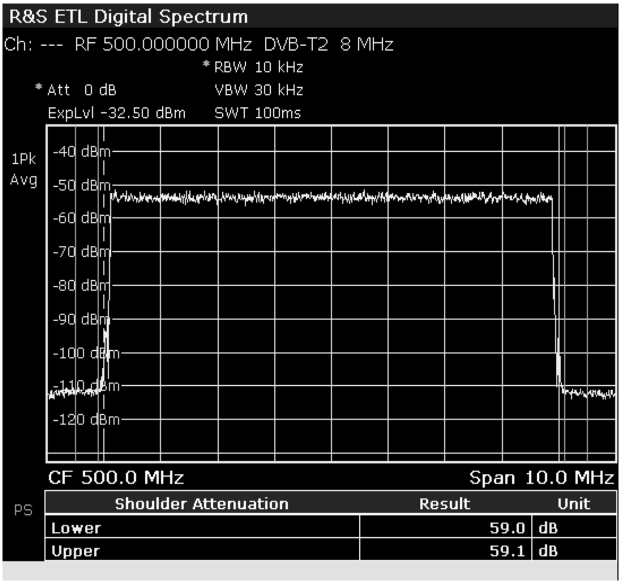


Fig. 39.8. Spectrum of a DVB-T2 signal with shoulders

39.5 Measuring the Shoulder Distance

The interference products close to the useful band, appearing in the lower and upper adjacent channels of a DVB-T2 signal are called the shoulders of the DVB-T2 spectrum. They are measured to determine their distance, i.e. their suppression relative to the useful signal in the band center of the DVB-T2 transmission. Although the bandwidth of DVB-T2 in extended carrier mode is somewhat broader than that of DVB-T, the measurement points are typically the same in case of both standards, e.g. ±4.2 MHz in 8 MHz wide channels. The shoulder distance is measured at the transmitter only, both before and after the mask filter. Its level before the mask filter is an adjustment criterion for equalizing the transmitter stages. At this point the shoulder distance is just below 40 dB, while its value after the mask filter depends on the filter used (critical or non-critical mask), and is also specified by the respective regulatory authorities. The measurement of the shoulder distance in the field, i.e. outside the transmitter site, wouldn't make much sense and can only be used to characterize the noise floor due to the various additive disturbances.

Table 39.1. Typical measurement points for investigating DVB-T2 shoulder distance

Channel bandwidth [MHz]	Signal bandwidth [MHz] Normal	Measurement points [MHz] Normal	Signal bandwidth [MHz] Extended	Measurement points [MHz] Extended
10	9.51	Tbd.	9.71	Tbd.
8	7.6	± 4.2	7.77	± 4.2
7	6.6	± 3.7	6.74	± 3.7
6	5.7	± 3.2	n/a	Tbd.
5	4.76	Tbd.	n/a	Tbd.
1.7	1.536	± 0.97	n/a	±0.97

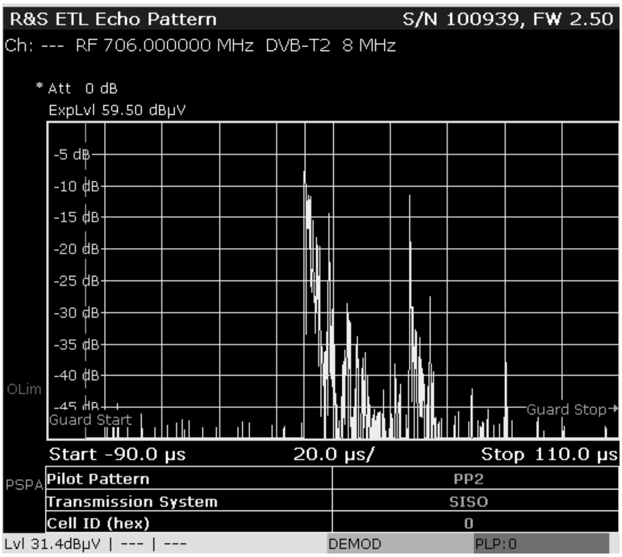


Fig. 39.9. DVB-T2 channel impulse response

39.6 Measuring the Channel Impulse Response

The channel impulse response is calculated from the evaluated pilots of the DVB-T2 signal by inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT). It shows how many signal paths reach the DVB-T2 receiver. The channel impulse response can also be used to measure a DVB-T2 single-frequency network, and reveal whether the network is synchronous and all signal paths arrive to the receiver within the guard interval (cyclic prefix). A special case is impulse response measurement for MISO mode when the impulse responses of both MISO components (modes 1 and 2) of a DVB-T2 signal must be represented separately, e.g. by using different colors (R&S ETL).

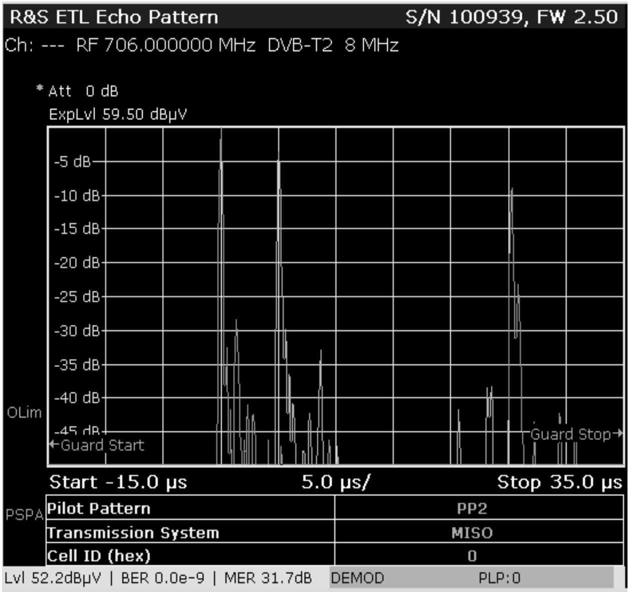


Fig. 39.10. DVB-T2 channel impulse response in MISO mode (the impulses of MISO modes 1 and 2 are shown in different colors)

39.7 Measuring the Amplitude Response and Group Delay

The amplitude response and the group delay of a channel or a DVB-T2 transmitter can be measured just as easily as in case of DVB-T by using the pilots of the DVB-T2 signal. However, the same applies as for the

DVB-T: these parameters do not significantly impact the DVB-T2 reception because they are compensated in the receiver by pilot evaluation and channel correction.

Table 39.2. Guard interval lengths for DVB-T2 in the 8 MHz channel

FFT mode	Symbol duration in 8 MHz	GI = 1/128	GI = 1/32	GI = 1/16	GI = 19/256	GI = 1/8	GI = 19/128	GI = 1/4
32K	3.584 ms	28 µs 8.4 km	112 µs 33.6 km	224 µs 67.2 km	266 µs 79.7 km	448 µs 134.3 km	532 µs 159.5 km	--
16K	1.792 ms	14 µs 4.2 km	56 µs 16.8 km	112 µs 33.6 km	133 µs 39.9 km	224 µs 67.2 km	266 µs 79.7 km	448 µs 134.3 km
8K	0.896 ms	7 µs 2.1 km	28 µs 8.4 km	56 µs 16.8 km	67 µs 19.9 km	112 µs 33.6 km	133 µs 39.9 km	224 µs 67.2 km
4K	0,448 ms	--	14 µs 4.2 km	28 µs 8.4 km	--	56 µs 16.8 km	--	112 µs 33.6 km
2K	0,224 ms	--	7 µs 2.1 km	14 µs 4.2 km	--	28 µs 8.4 km	--	56 µs 16.8 km
1K	0.112 ms	--	--	7 µs 2.1 km	--	14 µs 4.2 km	--	28 µs 8.4 km

39.8 Measuring the Crest Factor (PAPR)

The crest factor (also called PAPR, which stands for ”Peak to Average Power Ratio”) is defined in DVB-T2 just as in DVB-T, but theoretically can assume even higher values due to the even higher number of carriers. DVB-T2 also defines measures for reducing the crest factor (PAPR reduction). As with other standards, two different definitions exist which differ by 3 dB: the ratio of the peak voltage to the rms value of the voltage, and the definition of PEP (Peak Envelope Power). Measurement instruments like spectrum analyzers normally use the 3 dB lower PEP definition where a sine wave has a crest factor of 0 dB (see also R&S ETL).

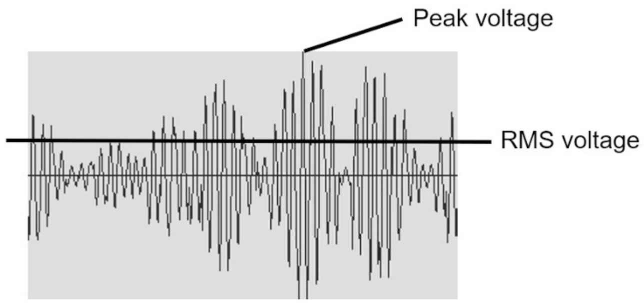


Fig. 39.11. Definition of the crest factor

The crest factor of a DVB-T2 transmitter is a design parameter and is usually only documented during transmitter factory acceptance tests (FAT).

39.9 Pre- and Post-Signaling Data

DVB-T2 measuring receivers can also be used to display various DVB-T2 system parameters broadcast by the transmitter to the receiver as pre- and post-signaling data in the P2 symbols.

39.10 Practical Experiences and Measurement Results

Numerous measurements have been conducted in recent years in DVB-T2 field trials and DVB-T2 networks. Some of the DVB-T2 properties and features studied were as follows:

- Single and multiple PLPs
- Code rates and modulation methods
- Comparison of non-rotated and rotated constellations
- Single-frequency networks and their synchronization
- SISO/MISO transmissions
- Suitability of the OFDM modes of DVB-T2 for mobile use

L1-pre signalling			
Bandwidth Extension	On	S1 (binary)	001
Guard Interval	1/16	S2 (binary)	1010
Pilot Pattern	PP2	System ID (hex)	0x0
Transmission System	MISO	Cell ID (hex)	0x0
Data Symbols/Frame	59	Network ID (hex)	0x0
L1-post Constellation	16 QAM	Frames/Superframe	2
L1-post Size	376	Tx ID Availability (hex)	0x0
L1-post Extension	Off	L1-post Info Size	318
L1 Repetition	Off	Regeneration Flag	0
L1-post Code Rate	1/2	Frequencies	1
L1-post FEC Type	Short	RF Index	0
PAPR	L1-ACE & P2-TR	CRC32 (hex)	0xDADD45C
Stream Type	TS only	Reserved (hex)	0x0
T2 Version	1.2.1		

PLP Data (Decoded PLP ID 0)			
PLP Constellation	64 QAM	Num Blocks Max	140
PLP Rotation	Off	Static Flag	On
PLP FEC Type	Normal	Static Padding Flag	On
PLP Code Rate	2/3	Fixed Freq Flag	Off
PLP Type	Type 1	PLP Group ID	1
PLP Payload Type	TS	First RF Index	0
Time Intlv Type	Single	In Band A Signalling	Off
Time Intlv Length	3	In Band B Signalling	Off
First Frame Index	0	Reserved_1 (hex)	0x000
Frame Interval	1	PLP Mode	High Efficiency

Fig. 39.12. Pre- and post-signaling data

The world's first DVB-T2 experimental networks were built in Northern Germany (Braunschweig region, Hanover), Southern Germany (Munich, Bayerischer Rundfunk), Berlin, and Singapore. The first operational networks started in the UK, Italy, and South-Africa. From 2011, DVB-T2 spread worldwide, and most countries that have newly entered digital television and have replaced analog terrestrial broadcasts are using DVB-T2. The only alternative standards are ISDB-T (primarily in South Africa), ATSC (USA, Canada, Mexico), and DTMB (China).

Most DVB-T2 networks currently operate using the following parameters:

- Mode B (MPLP with T2-MI feed signal)

- SFN operation
- MPLP with only one used PLP
- 32K extended carrier mode
- Guard interval of 1/16
- Rotated constellations
- 64QAM or 256QAM
- Code rate = 2/3 or 3/4.

39.10.1 Single and Multiple PLP

DVB-T2 input processing has two modes: Mode A (Single PLP) and Mode B (Multiple PLP). Classical single-frequency networks (SFN) for DVB-T2 transmission can only be implemented using Mode B (MPLP mode), apart from special cases (proprietary methods). This is simply due to the fact that

- Mode A (SPLP) operates with an MPEG-2 transport stream, and
- Mode B (MPLP) operates with a T2-MI feed signal,

and SFN control information is transmitted via T2-MI only. This means that apart from MFN networks in the UK, almost every DVB-T2 network worldwide uses Mode B and the associated SFN capability. Hardly any DVB-T2 network transmits more than a single PLP. Accordingly, it is sufficient to transmit all DVB-T2 information with the same robustness, i.e. using the same error protection and modulation method. There are only a few known exceptions (South Africa, distinction between local and national content) where multiple PLPs are used, and even there, the possibility of applying VCM (Variable Coding and Modulation) in MPLP exploited. It is hence safe to say that most DVB-T2 networks worldwide are SFN networks and therefore use Mode B, but only broadcast a single PLP because applications for MPLP are missing. One possible application could be e.g. the simultaneous broadcast of PLPs of varying robustness for

- Audio broadcast (low data rate, high robustness, deep-indoor reception),
- SDTV (medium data rate, medium robustness, indoor reception),
- HDTV (high data rate, low robustness, indoor reception).

39.10.2 Code Rates and Modulation Methods of DVB-T2

Code rates and modulation methods for common planning scenarios were tested in field trials. The code rate / modulation pairings for two common network planning scenarios are as follows:

- Indoor coverage with 64QAM modulation, code rate = 2/3 or 3/4 at a fall-off-the-cliff of about 12 dB SNR
- Outdoor / roof antenna coverage with 256QAM, code rate = 2/3 or 3/4 at a fall-off-the-cliff of about 18 dB SNR

The approximate data rates practically achievable in DVB-T2:

- ~22 … 27 Mbit/s for single-frequency networks, indoor coverage
- ~28 … 35 Mbit/s for single-frequency networks, outdoor coverage
- ~40 … 45 Mbit/s for multi-frequency networks (Mode A).

The maximum net data rate of DVB-T2 is over 50 Mbit/s.

39.10.3 Comparison of Non-rotated and Rotated Constellations

Rotated constellations are a special form of constellation diagrams defined only for DVB-T2, in which the constellation diagram is rotated counter-clockwise by a few degrees, depending on the modulation order (QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM). The idea here is to separate the projection points of the constellation states on the horizontal and vertical axes in order to provide the receiver additional information and support its decoding mechanism when it performs soft decision. This assistance improves the decoding process under difficult and special reception conditions. This has been studied in depth by the author himself, among others in the Munich field trial (Bayerischer Rundfunk) and on laboratory setups with numerous DVB-T2 receivers. One of the special focus areas was the investigation of fading scenarios with strong fading notches as they occur on single-frequency networks. It has been found that, for the current generation of DVB-T2 receivers, rotated constellations, however interesting they seem, do not observably improve reception. In some cases it was even unclear whether rotated constellations did not even degrade the SNR sensitivity by a few tenths of a dB, but measurement accuracies make this difficult to prove, especially in field measurements. The behavior of future DVB-T2 chip generations in this respect remains to be seen. It is a fact that almost all DVB-T2 networks operate with rotated constellations, even though currently this brings no discernible advantages.

39.10.4 Time Interleaver Parameters and Data Symbols per Frame

The choice of DVB-T2 parameters is only partially free. The time interleaver in a PLP can be freely set to active or not active, but the number of time interleaver blocks depends on the data rate of the PLP. A buffer overflow must be avoided. The number of blocks to be chosen can be looked up in the standard or the implementation guidelines, or determined using the software tools of the user interface of the DVB-T2 gateway. Often the following values are used:

- Time Interleaver type = 0
- Time Interleaver length = 3
- Jump = 1
- Max Blocks = 140

Also, the number of data symbols per frame and the number of frames per superframe can not be chosen arbitrarily. When dealing with data symbols, they are sometimes meant to only include the data symbols, and sometimes the P2 symbols plus the data symbols. The number of P2 symbols depends on the mode. The most frequently used setting in 32K mode is the following:

- Data symbols per frame = 59
- Data symbols plus P2 symbols = 60

39.10.5 DVB-T2 Based Single Frequency Networks

Frequency is an increasingly scarce resource. For this reason, DVB-T2 is mostly used to build single frequency networks: a couple of transmission sites are used to implement single frequency network cells in order to cover the largest possible area with the same frequency. Although there are interference zones between the transmitters, they can be kept under control in OFDM, provided the guard interval condition is met. With DVB-T2, significantly longer guard intervals (GI, also called Cyclic Prefix, CP) and hence larger transmission distances are possible. Single frequency networks in DVB-T2 can only be established in Mode B (Multiple Physical

Layer Pipe, MPLP), because that is the only operating mode which uses a T2-MI feed signal. SFN transmitters can only be synchronized by the T2-MI signal because the control signals necessary for this are only transmitted there. DVB-T2 single frequency networks are checked by channel impulse response measurements, and adjusted if needed (static delay of transmission sites).

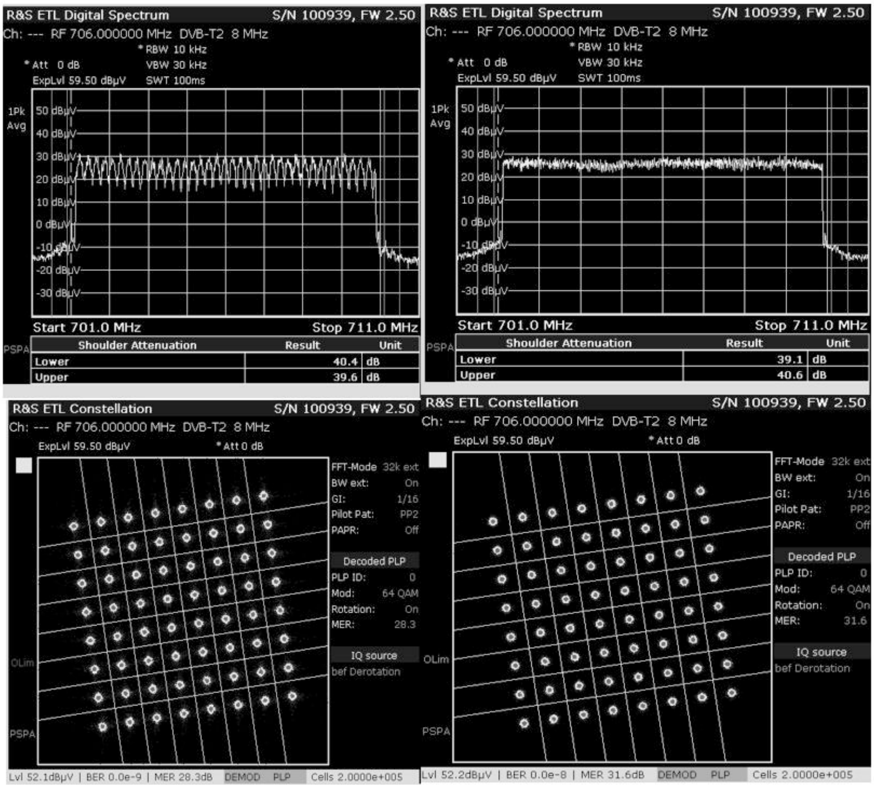


Fig. 39.13. Studying SISO/MISO in DVB-T2 single frequency networks (left: spectrum and constellation diagram in SISO mode; right: MISO mode)

39.10.6 SISO/MSO in DVB-T2

Both SISO and MISO operation is possible in DVB-T2, but in practice, all DVB-T2 networks worldwide currently use SISO mode. SISO, which stands for “Single Input / Single Output”, is the "normal operating mode" of a radio network with one transmit antenna per site and one receive antenna per receiver. SIMO (Single Input / Multiple Output) corresponds to diversity reception and is in principle not DVB-T2 specific. "Multiple Input / Single Output" in DVB-T2 is equivalent to using two different transmit antennas with a different T2 mode on each. Distributed MISO refers to a DVB-T2 single frequency network with adjacent transmitters radiating different DVB-T2 MISO modes to improve the T2-SFN behavior at the interference zones. It is known from DVB-T that so-called fading notches (selective spectral suppressions) may occur in the overlap zones between adjacent transmitter locations in an SFN. This can have a destructive effect on the behavior of receivers. MISO can be used to minimize or partially eliminate these fading notches. It could be proved in the DVB-T2 field trial in Munich and also under laboratory circumstances that the fading notches disappear when SISO is switched over to MISO, as it was expected, but, in addition, it was also discovered that in many zones of a DVB-T2 single frequency network significantly lower reception levels (e.g. 0.5 ... 2.5 dB at 64QAM and a code rate of 2/3) are sufficient for stable reception. This has been studied with multiple DVB-T2 receivers (set-top-boxes). The above values were also confirmed in another field trial in Norway by the local network operator. Parameters for roof antenna coverage (e.g. 256QAM and a code rate of 3/4) were also tested, showing that in SFN overlapping zones (0 dB echo zones, etc.), MISO modes were even better compared to SISO. These trials resulted in values close to the theoretical figures. The disadvantage of MISO mode is the somewhat lower net data rate (a few hundred kbit/s), due to its higher pilot density (limitation on the choice of the pilot pattern).

39.10.7 Suitability of DVB-T2 for Mobile Use

In Germany, the mobile receivability of DVB-T2 is a returning discussion subject, probably partly driven by the local automotive industry and the lack of speed limits on certain parts of the highways. The factor that essentially determines mobile suitability is the OFDM carrier density, represented by the OFDM mode (1K, 2K, 4K, 8K, 16K, 32K). The higher the mode, the tighter the carriers are to each other and the higher the susceptibility of DVB-T2 is to the Doppler effect. This means that the most suitable mode for mobile use would be 1K, and the 32K mode would be the least usable. However, SFN networks require the higher modes which feature larger guard intervals, hence allowing longer transmitter distances. During the DVB-T2 field trial in Munich, the mobile usability of receivers was also studied with only standard receivers in 8K, 16K, and 32K modes. During the measurements conducted on various test routes at speeds of about 60 to

100 km/h, the performance of the receivers was measured in these three modes using a stopwatch, and the results compared. Interestingly, the 8K and 16K modes behaved almost identically; mobile reception in the 32K mode was of course worse, but even so, reception probability was mostly between 30 to 70 percent. So it's not like the 32K mode "calls it quits" as soon as the receiver starts moving. Basically, no theoretical speed limits can be specified for DVB-T or DVB-T2. Mobile receivability is heavily dependent on the actual multi-path reception circumstances. Regarding DVB-T2, it is to be expected that receivers optimized for mobile reception (for the automotive industry) will also work quite well in 32K mode.

39.11 Summary

The measurements on the DVB-T2 signal are comparable to those on a DVB-T signal. The most important measurement parameters are RF level, CNR, SNR, BER and MER (see Fig. 39.14.). However, the features unique to DVB-T2 – like multi-PLP, MISO, rotated constellations and the new LDPC error protection, the DVB-T2 frame with P1, P2 and data symbols and other pilots – require modified algorithms and representations to process and display the measurement values. Meanwhile, tests on real DVB-T2 networks have also been conducted to check and prove the theories, including that

- rotated constellations currently don't bring any advantages in the receivers,
- distributed MISO broadcasts in single frequency networks offer an opportunity to minimize interference zones on such networks,
- 8K and 16K modes are very similar in terms of mobile behavior,
- mobile reception of the 32K mode is possible within the limits of even non-optimized receivers, and
- certain modulation type / code rate pairs are suitable for practical use.

From 2017 to 2019, Germany moved from DVB-T to DVB-T2. The decision was also been made to introduce the new video source coding standard HEVC (High Efficiency Video Coding) or H.265 / MPEG-H Part 2. This once again decreases the necessary video rates by a factor of two, i.e. a HDTV program will only require about 5 Mbit/s. For portable indoor coverage with 23 to 26 Mbit/s total data rate per DVB-T2 channel relevant for Germany, this allows about five HD programs on one physical channel, which means at least one more HDTV program compared to DVB-T using SDTV.

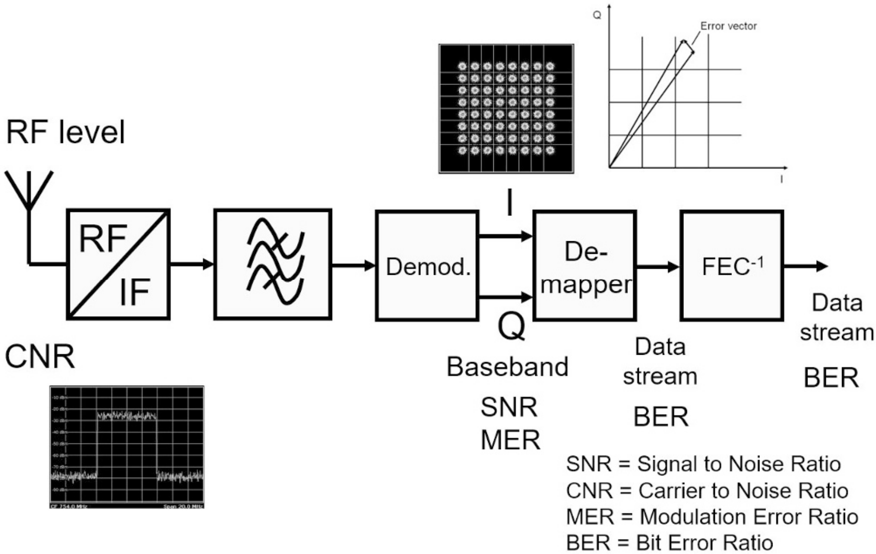


Fig. 39.14. The most important DVB-T2 measurement parameters and their measuring points in the measuring receiver

Bibliography: [SFU], [ETL], [BTC]

40 VHF FM Radio

While digital radio has been around for many years now, for a long time it has only represented "unknown energy" in the air. Radio listeners in many countries only use VHF FM radio, a technology that has been with us since the 1940s. This will probably remain unchanged for a few more years. Even many old VHF radio transmitters are/were replaced with new ones since the legacy generations of transmitters based on tube technology are/were no longer economically viable. With its quality and efficiency, the good old VHF FM still makes penetration difficult for digital radio that has also other problems to contend with. This chapter will briefly describe the essential features of VHF FM radio and the fundamental measurements of the FM signal. The standard applicable to VHF FM radio is [ITU-R BS.450-3].

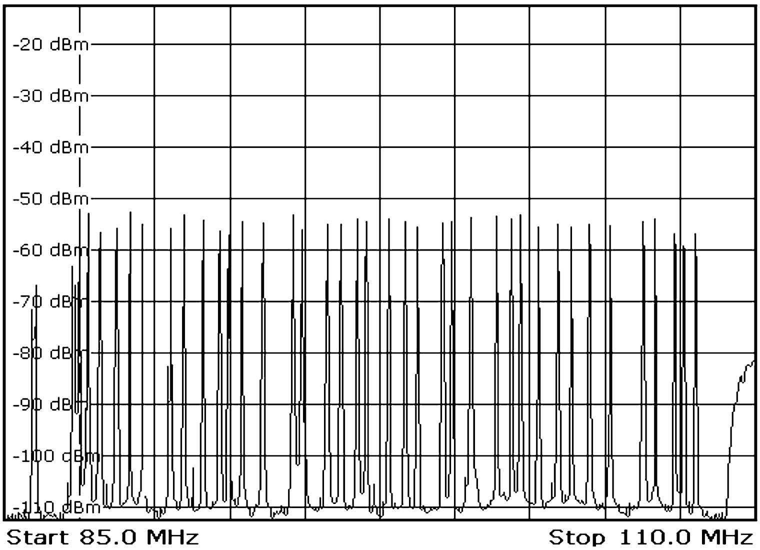


Fig. 40.1. VHF band (87.5 – 108 MHz); example taken from a broadband cable network

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_40

In Germany VHF FM radio was the result of frequency scarcity after the 2nd World-War . The Allies allowed war-ravaged Germany only a few frequencies in the long and medium wave range. The first European VHF FM radio transmitter was switched on on February 28, 1949 in Munich by Dr. Lothar Rohde for Bayerischer Rundfunk (called "Radio München" at the time). He reportedly personally brought a suitable transmitting tube from the US. Rohde & Schwarz then developed and manufactured the first European VHF receivers (type ESF BN15061) to foster FM radio. The manufacturing of these devices was then continued by Max Grundig. In comparison with MW AM radio with a bandwidth of 5 kHz, VHF FM radio brought a significant quality improvement: it had a 15 kHz bandwidth and FM is practically unaffected by atmospheric disturbances. In the 1960s, VHF FM stereo was rolled out, further increasing the listening pleasure.

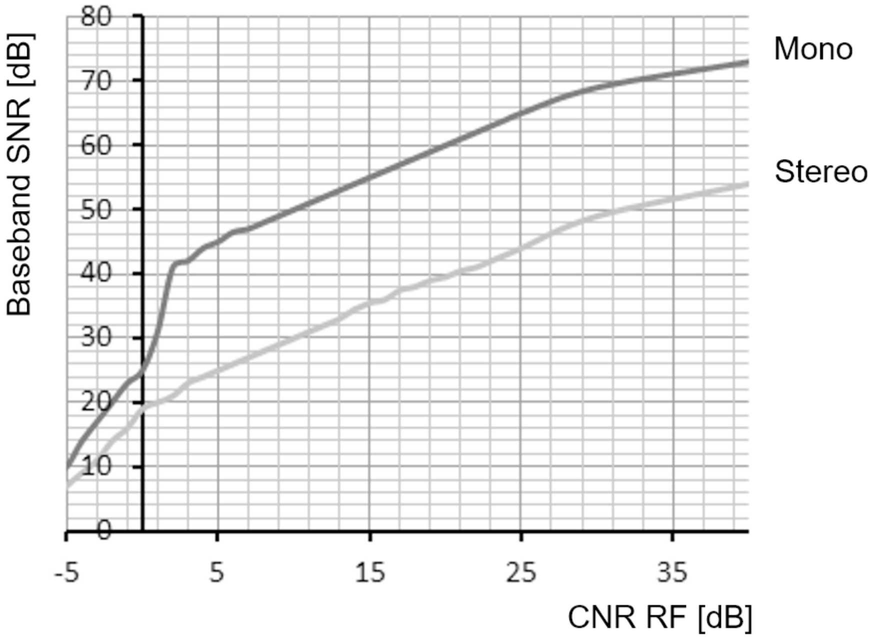


Fig. 40.2. Measured baseband SNR as a function of RF SNR (CNR) between mono and stereo at a deviation of 40 kHz and a pre-emphasis and de-emphasis of 50 µs

40.1 Channel Spacing and Modulation Method

VHF FM radio programs are aired in the VHF band II (Fig. 40.1.) between 87.5 and 108 MHz, so this VHF band has a width of about 20 MHz. The channel spacing is 300 kHz, but this doesn't mean that each adjacent channel is actually in use. The modulation method used is FM, which, when operated beyond the FM threshold, exhibits a clearly higher interference voltage gain in the baseband than AM at the same RF interference voltages. The baseband bandwidth is 15 kHz. Initially only mono signals were transmitted, but for many years now, a stereo multiplex signal is used that can be decoded both in mono and in stereo mode. Clear stereo reception requires a better RF signal-to-noise ratio (SNR), which is why quality VHF FM receivers are equipped with a "Mono/Stereo" switch. A better RF signal-to-noise ratio simply means a higher RF-level. The resulting baseband SNR for stereo reception is about 20 dB better than for mono reception (Fig. 40.2).

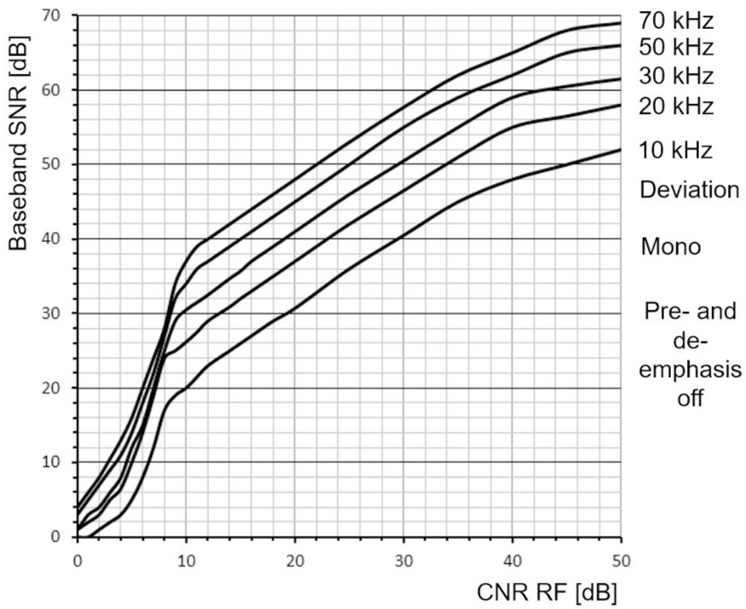


Fig. 40.3. Baseband SNR measured as a function of RF SNR (CNR) (with pre- and de-emphasis switched off, a measurement frequency of 1 kHz, RF noise bandwidth of 300 kHz, baseband bandwidth of 15 kHz; measured at a high RF level and FM deviation values of 10, 20, 30, 50, and 70 kHz); the FM threshold causing the bend in the curve at a CNR of about 10 dB is clearly recognizable

The FM threshold, normally at an SNR of about 10 dB, can be further lowered (to about 7 dB) using a PLL demodulator. This PLL FM demodulator technology was used in, among others, analog TV transmission over satellite ("broadband FM"); in VHF radio applications with an analog receiver circuitry, a coincidence demodulator was normally used. The bends in the curves in Fig. 40.3 clearly show the location of the FM threshold. This figure depicts the actual measured values of the baseband SNR (y axis) against the RF SNR (x axis).

The maximum FM deviation for VHF radio is 75 kHz. Specifically, the maximum FM deviation is an important and often monitored measurement parameter in practice. Radio operators want to utilize the maximum FM deviation to the fullest extent to be as loud as possible, and apply a deviation setting to approach the limit of e.g. ± 75 kHz. However, a too high deviation causes interference in the adjacent channels. The CEPT/ERC/REC 54-04 recommendation defines a relevant measurement method. In practice, however, various measured external interferences are easy to confuse with effects of excessive deviation.

A "real-life" spectrum of a single VHF FM channel is shown in Fig. 40.4, while Fig. 40.5 depicts multiple adjacent VHF channels. In contrast, an "artificial" FM spectrum generated by a test transmitter using simple sinusoidal modulation looks symmetrical and “lumpy” (Fig. 40.6). At sufficient resolution, discrete spectrum lines are also visible. The physical background is explained in Chapter 13 and in the next section.

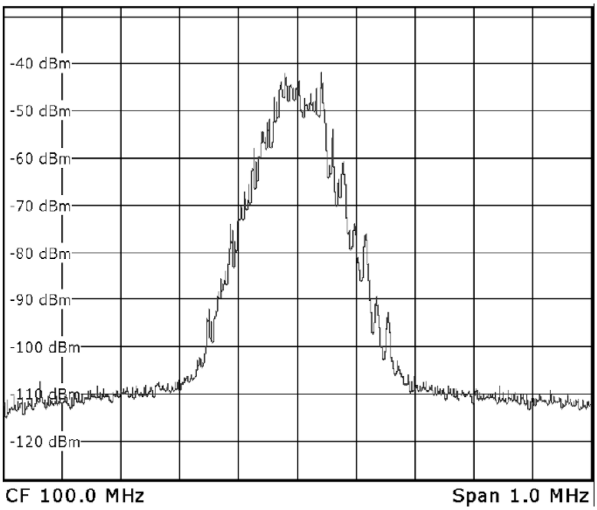


Fig. 40.4. Spectrum of a VHF FM channel

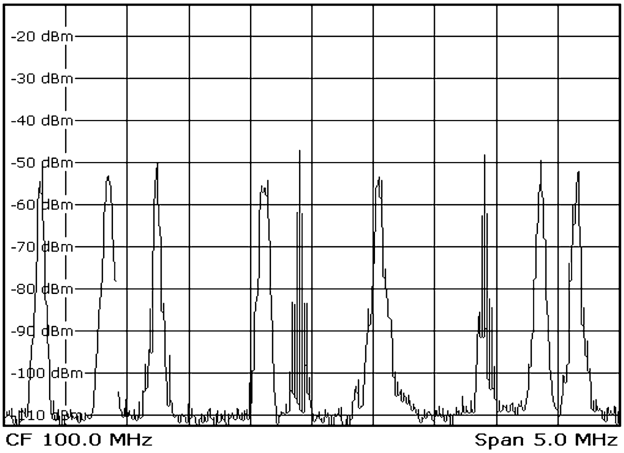


Fig. 40.5. Spectra of multiple adjacent VHF FM channels in use

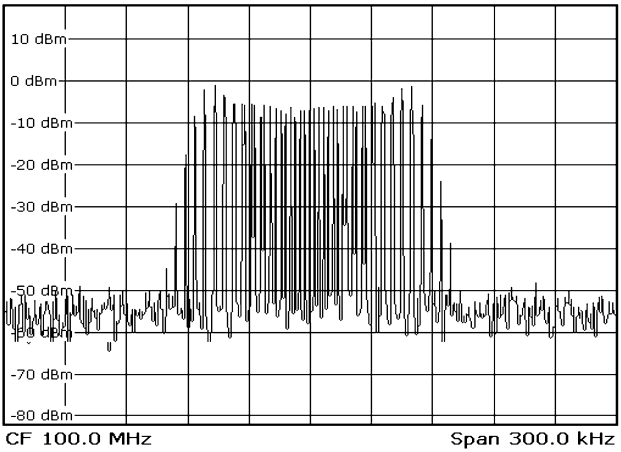


Fig. 40.6. Spectrum of an FM signal at a relatively high modulation index (carrier frequency: 100 MHz; modulating frequency: 1 kHz; deviation: 50 kHz) [SFU], [ETL]

40.2 Spectrum of an FM-Modulated Signal

The essential characteristics of AM and FM modulation have already been described in Chapter 13. The greatest advantage of FM is the baseband

SNR gain achieved relative to the RF SNR above the FM threshold. The frequency spectrum of a frequency modulated signal is, however, also broader than that of an AM signal. The spectral components of an FM signal can be calculated using Bessel functions (Fig. 47.7.).

Bessel functions are named after Friedrich Wilhelm Bessel, a contemporary of Carl Friedrich Gauss (18th and 19th century). Significant contributions to the application of Bessel functions in FM modulation were added by J. R. Carson [Carson] already in the 1920s. He calculated the 1% and 10% bandwidth of an FM modulated signal (with spectral components of the FM modulated signal attenuated below 1% and 10%, resp.) at a predefined modulation index $m=\Delta\varphi=\Delta f/f_T$; (see Chapter 13). Bessel functions are solutions to the Bessel differential equations.

$$x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + \frac{dy}{dx} + (x^2 - n^2) y = 0;$$

It is a normal second-order differential equation with n normally an integer. Bessel was a mathematician, astronomer and geodesist. Bessel functions are used in circular, spherical and cylindrical functions. Bessel's primary area of interest was planetary orbits. For graphical plottings of Bessel functions see Fig. 40.7. The spectrum of an FM modulated carrier can be described mathematically as

$$\begin{aligned}
&u(t) = U \cdot (J0(\Delta\varphi)\cos(\omega_T t) \\
&- J1(\Delta\varphi)\sin((\omega_T - \omega_s)t) - J1(\Delta\varphi)\sin((\omega_T + \omega_s)t) \\
&- J2(\Delta\varphi)\sin((\omega_T - 2\omega_s)t) - J2(\Delta\varphi)\sin((\omega_T + 2\omega_s)t) \\
&- J3(\Delta\varphi)\sin((\omega_T - 3\omega_s)t) - J3(\Delta\varphi)\sin((\omega_T + 3\omega_s)t) \\
&- \ldots\ldots
\end{aligned}$$

J0, J1, J2, J3, etc. are Bessel functions like the ones shown in Fig. 40.7. ω_T is the carrier frequency and ω_S the signal frequency used to modulate the carrier. Hence an FM signal has spectral lines at the carrier frequency itself and at multiples of the modulating signal frequency around the carrier. The amplitudes of these spectral lines depend on the modulation index $m=\Delta\varphi=\Delta f/f_T$. Fig. 40.6. shows the spectrum of a frequency modulated signal at a relatively high modulation index.

Bessel functions are frequently used in FM measurements to determine the accurate value of FM deviation, based on the zero values of the Bessel functions at specific values of deviation/signal frequency. Examples for this are given in Figs. 40.8. and 40.9.. For example, a deviation of 2.41 kHz and a 1 kHz modulation signal frequency yields a modulation index of m=2.41. Here the fundamental, i.e. the zero-order Bessel function (J0) has a zero value (Fig. 40.8.). Similar applies to e.g. a deviation of 5.13 kHz at a signal frequency of 1 kHz; here, J2, i.e. the second-order Bessel function has a zero value (Fig. 40.9.).

In order to compensate for the increasing noise level (called triangular noise, see Chapter 13) of the baseband signal relative to its bandwidth, the transmitter increases the level of the modulating signal's higher frequency components (pre-emphasis) from a specified cutoff frequency $f_c=1/2\pi\tau$ (where τ=50µs or 75 µs). A reciprocal circuitry in the receiver reverses this frequency response (de-emphasis, see Fig. 40.10.). De-emphasis will also lower the noise level.

The above also result the essential parameters of VHF FM mono radio:

- Frequency modulation at a max. deviation of 75 kHz or 50 kHz
- Audio (mono) signal bandwidth of 15 kHz
- Pre-emphasis of 50 µs or 75 µs (USA)
- Channel raster of 300 kHz or 400 kHz

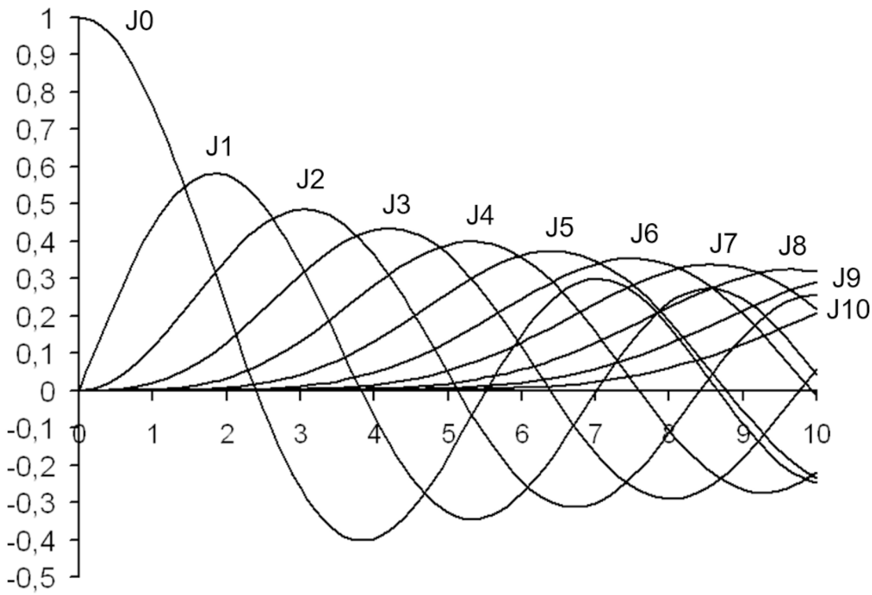


Fig. 40.7. Bessel functions (x axis: modulation index; y axis: relative amplitudes of spectral lines)

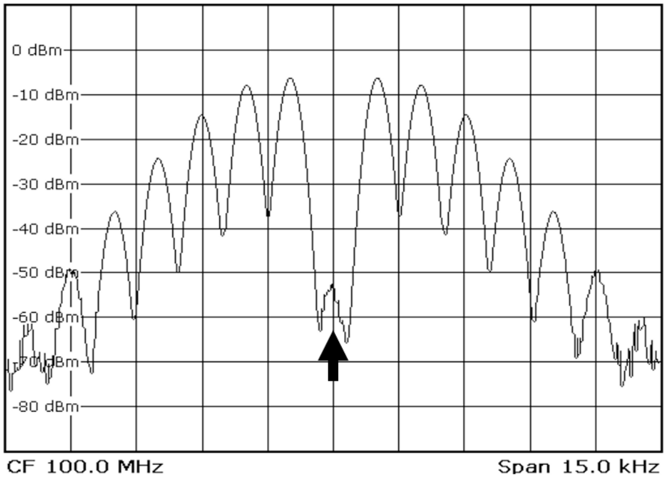


Fig. 40.8. Carrier frequency 100 kHz, modulation signal frequency 1 kHz, deviation 2.41 kHz and a resulting modulation index of m = 2.41 (the carrier has a minimum, see arrow)

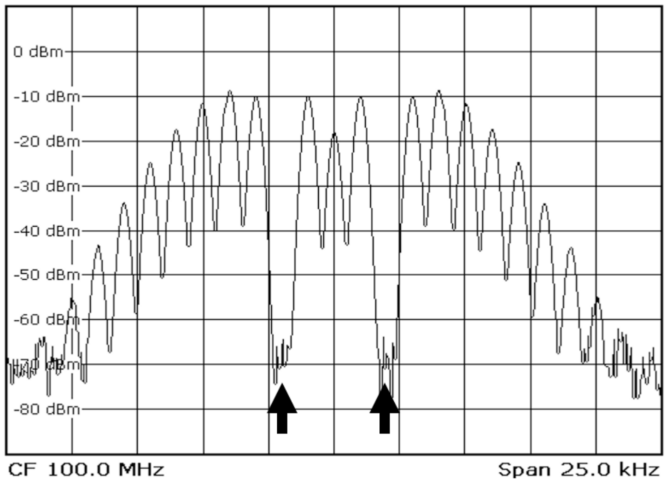


Fig. 40.9. Carrier frequency 100 kHz, modulation signal frequency 1 kHz, deviation 5.13 kHz and a resulting modulation index of m = 5.13 (the second-order spectral lines have minima, see arrows)

40.3 Stereo Multiplex Signal

The stereo multiplex signal (Figs. 40.11. and 40.12.) of VHF FM radio consists of the L+R summed signal (M = (L+R)/2), whose spectrum extends from 0 to 15 kHz, a 19 kHz pilot signal, and an AM modulated L-R difference signal (S = (L-R)/2), modulated onto a 38 kHz carrier. The 38 kHz carrier itself is suppressed in order to save deviation and hence bandwidth. The AM modulated L-R baseband signal of the VHF multiplex signal has a spectrum starting from 23 kHz and ending at 53 kHz. The purpose of the 19 kHz pilot is to enable the receiver to recognize the stereo transmission and restore the 38 kHz carrier. The L+R and the L-R signals are formed in the modulator by matrix encoding, and the receiver uses matrix decoding to restore the original left (L) and right (R) signals.

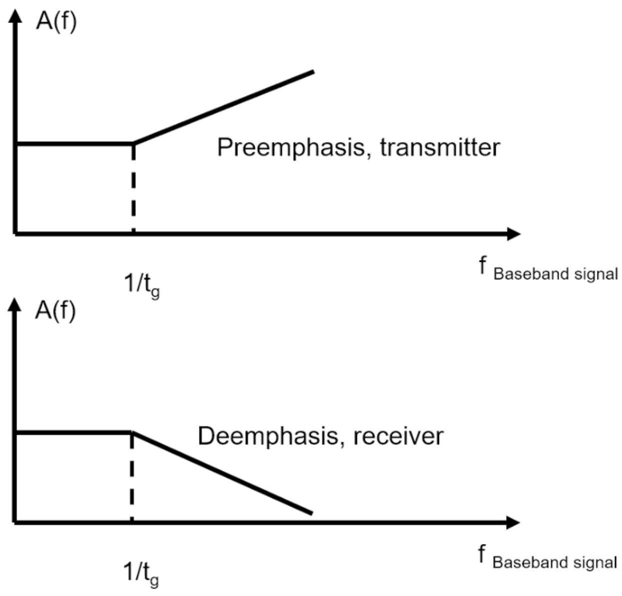


Fig. 40.10. FM pre-emphasis and de-emphasis

The reason to construct the FM stereo multiplex signal this way was to remain compatible with the original VHF FM mono technology introduced in the 1940s, enabling VHF FM mono receivers to reproduce the stereo transmissions as mono signals without interference. This is comparable to the switchover from black-and-white to color television. Millions of VHF mono receivers are still around in the form of good old "kitchen radios". The spectrum above the stereo multiplex signal still contains the RDS (Radio Data System) signal and in some cases the so-called SCA (Subsidiary Communications Authorization) signals. The addition of RDS and SCA is already shown in the block diagram of Fig. 40.13.. The SCA signal, i.e. the frequency range between 60 and 100 kHz, is used in some countries for special applications (e.g. Munich uses it for transmitting the DARC signal, information for tram and bus stops).

Stereo VHF FM radio has the following main specifications:

- Channel raster: 300/400 kHz (mostly not used any more in many countries)
- Maximum deviation: 75 kHz or 50 kHz (in many Eastern European countries)
- Audio bandwidth: 15 kHz
- Pre-emphasis and de-emphasis: 50 µs or 75 µs (USA), corresponding to a cutoff frequency of 3.18 kHz and 2.12 kHz, resp.
- Pilot frequency: 19 kHz
- Pilot deviation: 6.75 kHz
- RDS deviation: 2 kHz

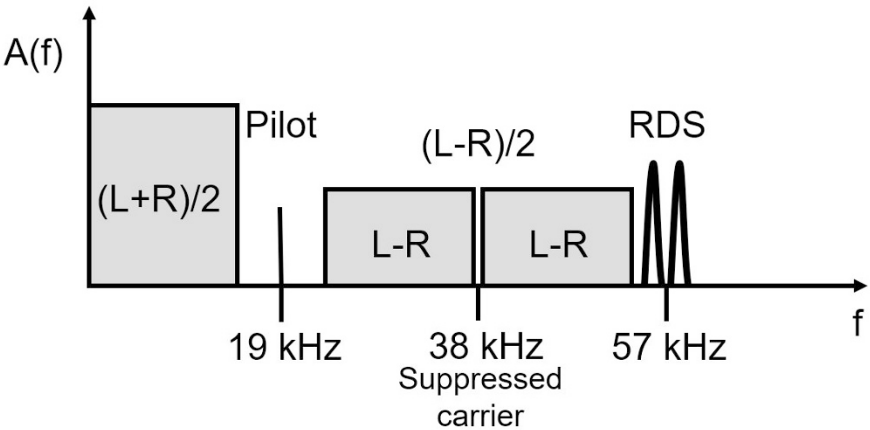


Fig. 40.11. Structure of the stereo multiplex signal spectrum

Fig. 40.14., 40.15. and 40.16. show the time-domain components of a stereo multiplex signal, which is a superposition of the M=(L+R)/2 signal, the 19 kHz pilot signal and the S=(L-R)/2 signal. The figures are reminis-

cent of the modulated 20T pulse of the analog television signal, and this also means there are similarities in the measurement technology. If the M and S components of the stereo multiplex signal are not properly balanced due to amplitude and group delay errors, this will result in stereo crosstalk that can be measured and in extreme cases even heard, degrading the stereo experience.

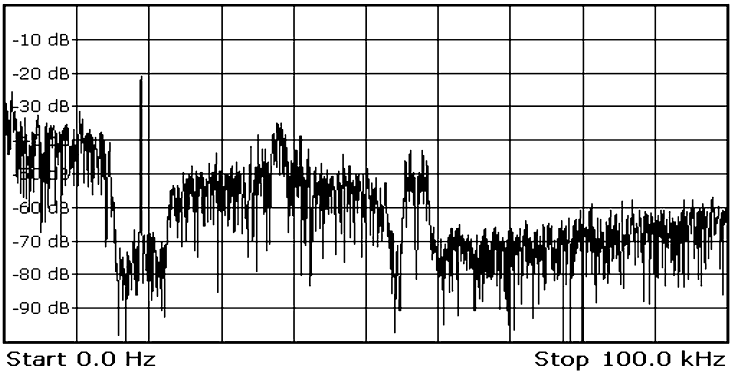


Fig. 40.12. Spectrum of a stereo multiplex signal (see also Fig. 40.11. for the signal components)

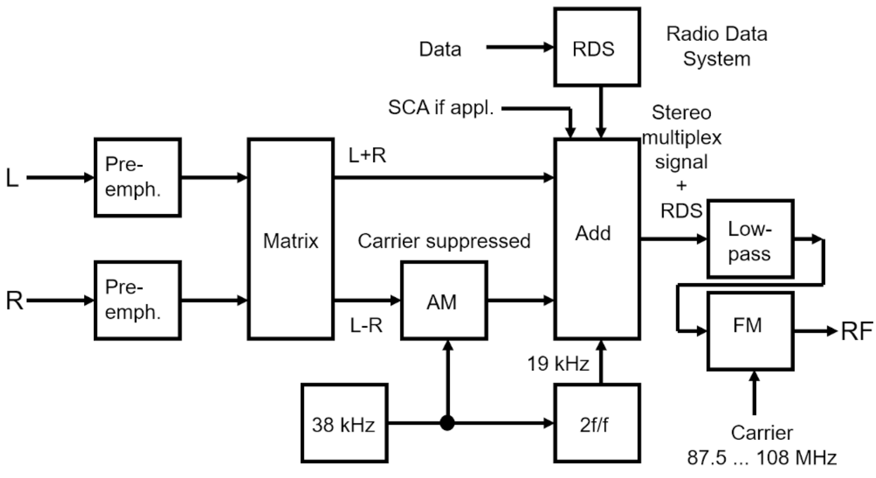


Fig. 40.13. Block diagram of a VHF FM stereo modulator

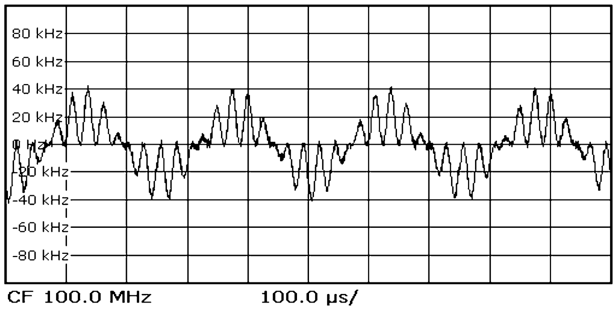


Fig. 40.14. Multiplex time-domain signal (L: 4 kHz; R: off; pilot: off)

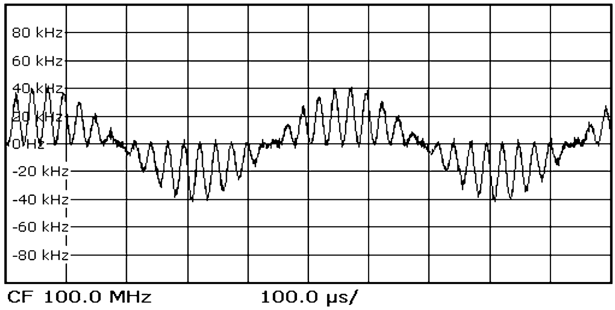


Fig. 40.15. Multiplex time-domain signal (L: off; R: 2 kHz; pilot: off)

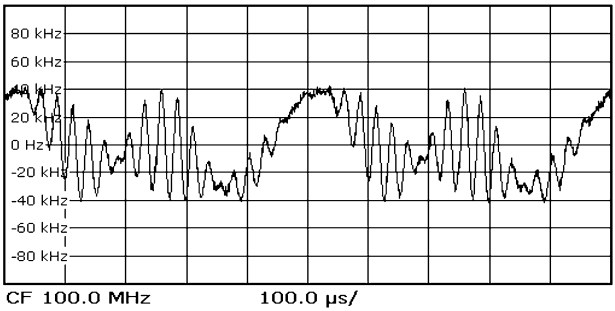


Fig. 40.16. Multiplex time-domain signal (L: 4 kHz; R: 2 kHz; deviations equal; pilot: off)

The maximum MPX power as a separately defined parameter must not exceed +0 dBr, as specified in ITU-R BS.412-9 Section 2.5. 0 dBr corresponds to the modulation power of a sinusoidal signal (without pilot frequency and without additional signals) that generates a peak deviation of 19 kHz. The 0 dBr reference can be set accurately using Bessel functions.

Stereo decoders in integrated circuits are often implemented as PLL switching decoders, with a 38 kHz oscillator using the PLL circuitry to lock onto the 19 kHz pilot signal, and the 38 kHz carrier is then added to the stereo multiplex signal. The positive and negative envelope of the summed signal so obtained corresponds to the Left and Right signal, respectively.

Current receiver circuits can be implemented in a single tiny chip and operate purely digitally once the RF signal has been sampled. Chip manufacturers usually keep the actual circuitry and the details of its operation secret.

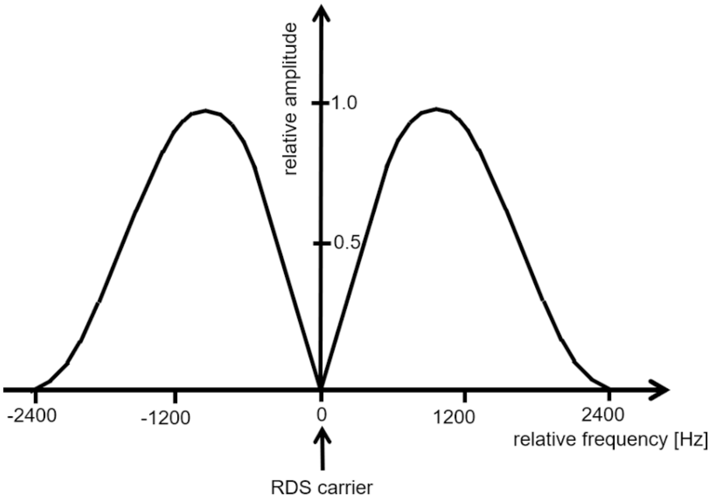


Fig. 40.17. RDS spectrum

40.4 Radio Data System (RDS)

RDS (Radio Data System) was developed in the 1980s and is described in the standard [ETSI EN 62106]. RDS uses a 57 kHz subcarrier that was previously used primarily for ARI (car radio information). ARI is not in operation any more. RDS is used to broadcast the following information:

- Transmitter ID
- Alternative frequencies
- TMC (Traffic Message Channel)
- Numerous other information

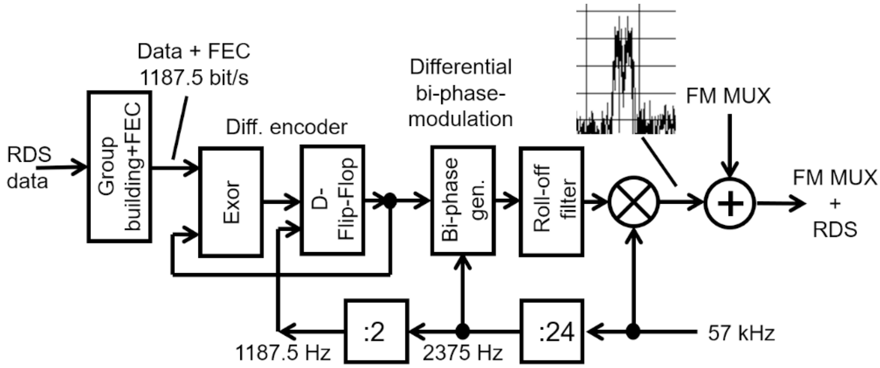


Fig. 40.18. Block diagram of the RDS encoder

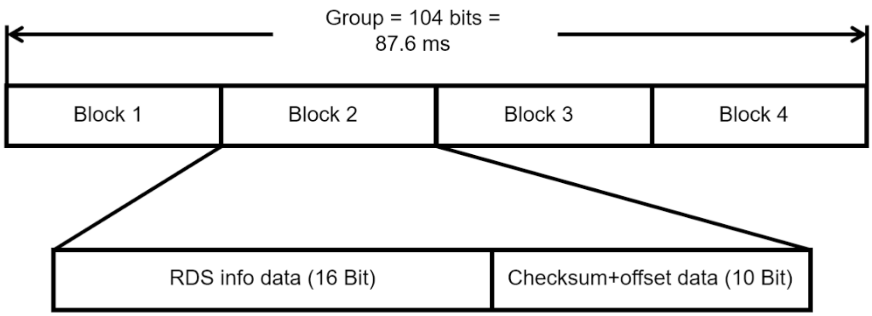


Fig. 40.19. RDS data structure – groups and blocks

The most important RDS information is the Transmitter ID, followed by the signaling of alternative frequencies and the associated automatic channel switching when leaving the coverage area of a transmitter.

TMC is currently used by on-board vehicle navigation systems for suggesting detour routes in case of congestions. The RDS carrier is digitally modulated using 2-phase differential phase shift keying. The data stream has a symbol rate of 1187.5 Hz, with error-protection provided by a shortened cyclic block code that allows a specific number of bit errors to be corrected. Fig. 40.11. shows the spectrum of a stereo multiplex signal including the RDS subcarrier.

The RDS spectrum (Fig. 40.18.) shows that the carrier is suppressed by the selected modulation method as the DC signal component is missing. The signal occupies a bandwidth of +/- 2400 Hz around the 57 kHz RDS carrier.

The RDS signal is generated as follows: the data stream, divided into four 104-bit error-protected blocks (4 · (16 bits data +10 FEC) = 104 bits), is fed into the differential encoder that doubles its data rate, and is then modulated onto the RDS carrier by a bi-phase modulator. Differential encoding cancels out the DC component and the low-frequency signal components, resulting later in the suppression of the RDS carrier. The bi-phase clock and the bit clock are derived from 57 kHz through division by 24 and then again by 2. The RDS signal is roll-off filtered, then added to the stereo multiplex signal.

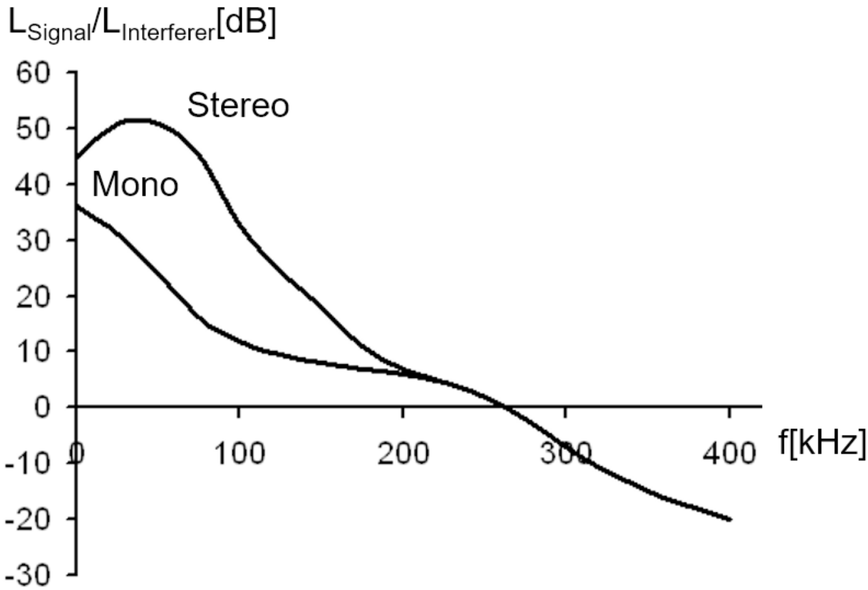


Fig. 40.20. Protection ratios specified in ITU-R BS.412-9 for 75 kHz deviation in mono and stereo at "steady interference"; further protection ratios are defined for tropospheric interference and a deviation of 50 kHz.

40.5 Minimum Field Strength and Adjacent-Channel Protection Ratios

The minimum field strength of VHF FM radio and the protection ratios for adjacent channels are regulated in the standard [ITU-R BS.412-9]. Table 40.1. lists the minimum field strengths required for VHF FM reception. Also, signal components from adjacent channels must not exceed specific limit values, which depend on the FM mode (mono/stereo), to avoid the perceivable degradation of the audio quality of the transmission channel (see Fig. 40.20.).

Table 40.1. ITU minimum field strengths for VHF FM reception

Coverage area	Mono [dBμV/m]	Stereo [dBμV/m]
Rural	48	54
Urban	60	66
Large cities	70	74

The protection ratios required by ITU-R BS.412-9 depend on the distance to the center of the VHF FM channel, the deviation, and the operation mode (mono/stereo), as well as the type of interference (steady/tropospheric). Fig. 40.20. shows the required conditions for steady interference and a deviation of 75 kHz. The protection distances shown apply to the regions above and below the center frequency of the VHF FM radio channel. At distances of about 260 kHz and beyond, interferers (i.e. adjacent channels) are allowed to exceed also the power of the transmission channel.

40.6 Interferences Along the VHF FM Transmission Path

In addition to the out-of-band components described in the previous section, there are also other interferences along the VHF FM stereo radio transmission path, including:

- Noise
- Interferers (narrow-band and broadband)
- Amplitude response
- Group delay
- Multi-path reception
- Nonlinearities

These apply to all transmission paths, and each acts differently. Frequency modulation is relatively insensitive to nonlinearities, allowing FM transmitters to operate with class C amplifiers which, while being relatively nonlinear, are significantly more efficient (about 60%) than class AB amplifiers (about 20%). In contrast to the amplifiers of AM-based transmitters (analog TV, DVB-T, etc.), the amplifiers of FM transmitters are not equalized and their power is regulated partly through controlling their supply voltage. Amplitude response and group delay are also less of a concern. However, linear distortions in the RF channel (amplitude and group delay response) cause distortion products in the baseband signal. Multipath reception may lead to fading. Below the FM threshold, phase jumps occur in the carrier, causing primarily low-frequency noise components. This is clearly visible in Fig. 40.21 (left: above the FM threshold; right: below the FM threshold).

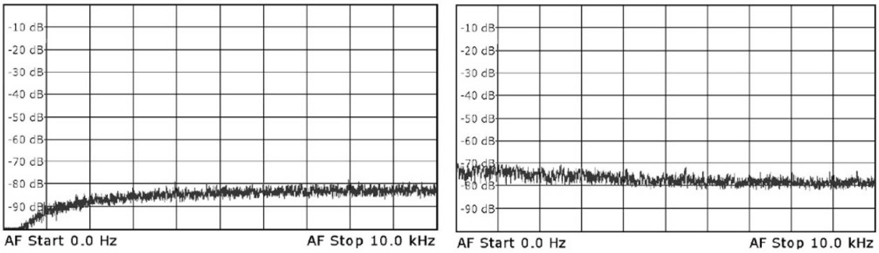


Fig. 40.21. Noise behavior above (left) and below (right) of the FM threshold

Linear distortions (amplitude response and group delay imperfections) in the stereo multiplex signal result in stereo crosstalk. This is simply explained by the fact that amplitude response distortion causes imbalance between the M and the S signal, and group delay distortions cause time delays between the M and the S signal.

40.7 Minimum Receiver Input Level

As with all other discussed transmission standards, the minimum receiver input level is of importance also in the case of VHF FM radio. The signal level on the receiver input is measured at a specified deviation and audio signal, with pre-emphasis and de-emphasis activated. The audio SNR of the demodulated signal in both mono and stereo mode is measured to check whether it falls below a defined threshold. This is often not simple because commercially available VHF FM receivers are usually not any more equipped with a switch to force them manually to mono/stereo mode, although it could be used to ensure a more satisfactory sound quality for a "kitchen radio" when reception conditions are bad or vary. Stereo mode requires significantly higher RF SNR values.

For the receivers' pure inherent noise in the RF frontend, the following noise power density is obtained using Boltzmann's constant k ($k=1.38 \cdot 10^{-23}$ W/K/Hz):

$$N_0 = -228.6 \frac{dBW}{K \cdot Hz} = -198.6 \frac{dBm}{K \cdot Hz};$$

Substituting room temperature, i.e. (273.15 + 20) K or 20 degrees Celsius for the absolute temperature K, yields a thermal noise power density of

$$N_{0\_Ambient} = -173.9 \frac{dBm}{Hz};$$

This value can be left as is, or converted to a dBµV figure usually applied for receiver input signals. For an accurate calculation, dBm can be converted to dBµV by adding

- +107 dB for 50 Ohm inputs, or
- +108.8 dB for 75 Ohm inputs.

Table 40.2. Thermal noise power N at the receiver input

Bandwidth	Ratio in dB	N in dBm	N in dBµV at 50 Ohms	N in dBµV at 75 Ohms	Typical application
1 Hz	0	-173.9	-66.9	-65.1	
5 kHz	37	-136.9	-29.9	-28.1	AM radio / DRM
10 kHz	40.0	-133.9	-26.9	-25.1	DRM
180 kHz	52.6	-121.3	-14.3	-12.5	FM radio
300 kHz	54.8	-119.1	-12.1	-10.3	FM radio
1.536 MHz	61.9	-112.0	-5.0	-3.2	DAB/DAB+
6 MHz	67.8	-106.1	0.9	2.7	TV
7 MHz	68.5	-105.4	1.6	3.4	TV
8 MHz	69.0	-104.9	2.1	3.9	TV
10 MHz	70.0	-103.9	3.1	4.9	
33 MHz	75.2	-98.7	8.3	10.1	Sat TV
36 MHz	75.6	-98.3	8.7	10.5	Sat TV

We have discussed various receiver bandwidths in this book; in order to simplify further comparisons, Table 40.2. lists the thermal noise power densities for various receiver bandwidths in units normally used in practice.

The usual channel raster for FM radio is 300 kHz; the actual receiver bandwidth is smaller, but not normally specified. Old data sheets (e.g. for ceramic IF filters) mostly list a passband width of 180 kHz, so let us use 180 kHz for investigating the sensitivity of FM receivers. This yields a purely thermal noise power of -12.5 dBµV for a 75 Ohm receiver input impedance normally found in consumer devices. Car radios have an antenna input impedance of 50 Ohm, yielding a thermal noise power of -14.3 dBµV. This is increased by the noise generated by active components in the receiver. This latter is characterized by the noise figure F in dB, and is normally in the range of 6 to 8 dB. The actual ambient temperature, however, varies significantly and the receiver's input impedance can also vary, but since it is sufficient to provide a raw value for the receiver sensitivity, the following assumption is used for simplicity: a noise figure of 6.5 dB for a 75 Ohm system yields a noise power of about

$$N_{VHF\,FM} = -6\ \mathrm{dB\mu V}$$

at the input of the VHF FM receiver.

The following considerations do not take into account the input impedance, nor the actual receiver bandwidth or eventual temperature fluctuations.

Let us first look at where the already discussed FM threshold will roughly be. This depends on the implementation of the FM demodulator, which can be one of the followings:

- Ratio detector
- Coincidence demodulator
- PLL demodulator
- Optimized digital FM demodulator (e.g. CORDIC process).

Ratio detectors are found only in very old systems; modern systems use coincidence demodulators, or, primarily, PLL demodulators. Analog satellite TV would not even have been possible without the PLL demodulator. All FM demodulators in contemporary VHF receivers are implemented digitally. What's more, the demodulator chip that measures only a few square millimeters also houses all the signal processing components of the RF frontend, including the stereo decoder and the RDS decoder. The only components to be added are the audio power amplifier, and of course, the processor and the display.

Let us first assume that the FM threshold for the carrier/noise ratio (CNR) of the RF signal is about 10 dB; this is the FM threshold around and beyond which the sensitivity limit of a VHF FM receiver must be. Taking the assumed N = - 6 dBμV and adding the 10 dB FM threshold, we obtain an input level of

$$U_{M\ \mathrm{threshold}} = \text{approx. } +4\ \mathrm{dB\mu V}.$$

This is the value around which the minimum sensitivity of a VHF FM radio in mono mode must lie. When investigating different consumer radios, we often encounter how difficult it is to properly reach the receiver input. Many consumer devices have a telescopic antenna or even a wire antenna. In such cases, the receiver would need to be in a shielded chamber in order to then expose it to a defined field strength. For raw investigations for the purposes of this chapter, a few "kitchen radios" were modified. Even then, impedance matching is of course also an open issue. These receivers equipped with a telescopic or wire antenna should be matched to the relatively high impedance of these antennas, and their impedance definitely won't be 50 or 75 Ohms. Car radios are a simpler matter because the impedance of the available antenna interface is definitely 50 Ohm. The actual values measured using a test transmitter [SFU] were between 0 and 20 dBμV with the receiver sensitivity limit set to an audio SNR of e.g. 26 dB in mono mode.

The minimum receiver input levels for VHF FM reception are usually determined using the SINAD method. SINAD is an acronym for "Signal to Noise and Distortion". The useful signal, e.g. a 1 kHz tone is suppressed using a notch filter, and the level of the remaining signal is measured. The SINAD value is obtained by dividing the amplitude of the useful signal by the measured level of the spurs, and ultimately corresponds to the baseband SNR.

Concerning the baseband SNR values, the usual criteria for receiver sensitivity measurements are as follows:

- in mono mode 26 dB unweighted
- in stereo mode 48 dB unweighted

The signal level at the antenna connector can be converted to electric field strength using the following relationships:

$$E[\mathrm{dB\mu V/m}] = U[\mathrm{dB\mu V}] + k[\mathrm{dB/m}];$$

$$k[dB/m] = (-29.8 + 20 \bullet \log(f[MHz]) - g[dB]);$$

where
E = electric field strength
V = antenna output level
k = antenna k factor
f = reception frequency
g = antenna gain

In order to estimate the necessary minimum field strength, let us assume a 100 kHz receive bandwidth and an antenna gain of 0 dB. In reality, antenna gain will mostly be negative, but this can be taken into account by combining it with other losses. The value of the k factor at 100 MHz will be

$$k = -29.8 + 20 \cdot \log(f[MHz]) - 0)\ dB/m = 10.2\ dB/m;$$

Adding the 10.2 dB/m to the estimated minimum receive input level of 4 dBμV, the rounded value of

$$E_{min} = 15\ dB\mu V/m$$

is obtained for the minimum field strength at the receive antenna.

Considering the usual locations of "kitchen radios", attenuation losses between the interior of buildings and the outside (building attenuation) will amount to 20 dB or more. An extreme example for this is concrete office buildings with metal coated windows. Assuming a level difference of 25 dB between the interior of the ground floor and the exterior, we need, at a measurement height of about 2 m, a field strength of 15 dBμV/m + 25 dB = 40 dB uV/m. However, the measurement is normally performed using a measuring antenna placed on a telescopic mast extended to 10 m, i.e. the level will suffer height losses between 10 m and 2 m. Calculating with height losses of about 10 dB, the field strength at a height of 10 m will need to be about 50 dBuV/m. This yields the values described in the ITU specifications as coverage levels (see Table 40.1). Stereo mode requires somewhat higher receive levels, since the stereo multiplex signal contains more baseband noise. This means that the stereo mode requires a 6 dB higher receive level than mono mode, as can be seen in Table 40.1.

40.8 Comparison with DAB/DAB+

VHF FM radio will be replaced by digital radio systems. The question is only when, or when completely. DAB has been floating around for many years, DAB+ in Germany since about 2011. Comparing the two systems is a plausible exercise. Meanwhile more and more combined DAB/DAB+/FM receivers become commercially available. Lest us compare the minimum receiver input levels and the required bandwidths of a stereo program for both systems. Let us first deal with the bandwidth of a stereo program:

For VHF, the bandwidth is taken as 300 kHz per program. In the case of DAB (see Chapter 26 in this book), 6 programs can be transmitted in a DAB bandwidth of 1.536 MHz (or actually 1.75 MHz if we take into account the guard bands to the adjacent channels). In the case of DAB+, the number of programs can be doubled or tripled compared to DAB, depending on the data rate defined as "broadband quality". This means that the 1.536 or 1.75 MHz bandwidth of a DAB/DAB+ channel can now contain 12–18 programs.

Table 40.3. VHF FM and DAB/DAB+ comparison

System	Channel bandwidth [MHz]	Data rate per stereo program [kbit/s]	Stereo programs per channel	Bandwidth per channel [kHz]	Comparison with VHF	Baseband SNR [dB]
VHF FM	0.3	--	1	300	1 : 1	50
DAB	1.75	196	6	292	1 : 1.03	90
DAB+	1.75	64 - 98	12-18	97-145	1 : 2.06-3.1	90

For a realistic comparison of the two systems, an honest consideration of the baseband SNR is also necessary, and the DAB/DAB+ baseband SNR must of course correspond to CD quality. Here, VHF has a disadvantage of a few orders of magnitude compared to the digital systems, which can be expressed logarithmically as an SNR of 40 dB. Viewed realistically, the gain of digital radios in terms of SNR does not, unfortunately, play a role in many applications like "kitchen radio" or car radio (car entertainment system). This gain is only really experienced in the "living room", and primarily for classical music. Modern music tends to mask the noise.

Another comparison of VHF FM systems with digital radio systems can be made in terms of minimum receiver level: for VHF FM in mono mode, we have estimated a minimum receiver input level of 4 dBµV. Good VHF FM receivers actually operate even at 0 dBµV, and deliver a mono SNR of 26 dB unweighted. This 0 dBµV can also be found among the relevant manufacturer data. Goof DAB+ receivers mostly require a minimum receiver input level of 6 … 10 dBµV. The values are mostly specified in dBm and are easy to remember because they are in the neighborhood of -100 dBm.

40.9 Measurements on VHF FM Stereo Signals

The following parameters are measured on VHF FM signals:

- RF level
- FM deviation
- Multiplex power
- SNR
- Stereo crosstalk
- Balance
- Frequency response
- Total Harmonic Distortion – THD
- Evaluation of out-of-band components

Maximum FM peak deviation and multiplex power are often watched closely by regulators to make sure that transmitters don't interfere with adjacent transmitters.

There are less and less modern measurement instruments suitable for measuring these parameters of FM signals. Since in many countries VHF FM radio is still predominant and digital radio continues to play a subordinate role, the Rohde & Schwarz ETL [ETL] test receivers contain the essential measurement functions for VHF FM radio. Similarly to Chapter 2 –Analog Television –, where measurement parameters and procedures are discussed in detail, this chapter will likewise cover the most important parameters. Many screenshots used in this chapter are taken from the ETL test receiver.

	Fail	Limit <	Results	< Limit	Unit
	Level	-47.0	0.1	20.0	dBm
	Carrier Freq Offset	-0.500	-0.020	0.500	kHz
	AM Depth	-----	0.06	1.00	%
	MPX Deviation	0.000	46.915	75.000	kHz
	L Deviation	0.000	40.159	67.500	kHz
	R Deviation	0.000	40.178	67.500	kHz
	M Deviation	0.000	40.170	67.500	kHz
	S Deviation	0.000	0.036	67.500	kHz
	Pilot Deviation	6.000	6.767	7.500	kHz
	Pilot Freq Offset	-2.00	0.00	2.00	Hz
	Pilot Phase	-3.0	-----	3.0	°
PS	RDS Deviation	1.500	* 0.009	7.500	kHz
	RDS Freq Offset	-2.00	-----	2.00	Hz
	RDS Phase	87.0	-----	93.0	°

Lvl 0.1dBm |Freq Offs -0.020 kHz |MPX Dev 46.915 kHz STEREO

Fig. 40.22. Measurement of various FM parameters using the ETL test receiver (Rohde & Schwarz)

40.9.1 Measuring the RF Level

The RF level is determined by measuring the RMS value of the FM signal. This is performed at the transmitter output by a thermal power sensor, connected to the directional coupler. The reflected power can also be determined at this point. The transmitter output power ranges typically from a few Watts for low-power gap fillers to about 10 or 20 kW. Class C amplifiers are used because their relatively nonlinear behavior does not impact the FM transmission, while they exhibit a significantly higher efficiency compared to analog or digital TV transmitters operating in AB mode.

40.9.2 Level Adjustment

Prior to measurements on the FM signal, the level of the device under test (FM transmitter and receiver) must be adjusted, i.e. it must be checked whether e.g. an audio input level of +6 dBu actually results in an FM deviation of e.g. 40 kHz on the transmitter. This should typically be done prior to a transmitter measurement as follows:

Mono mode:

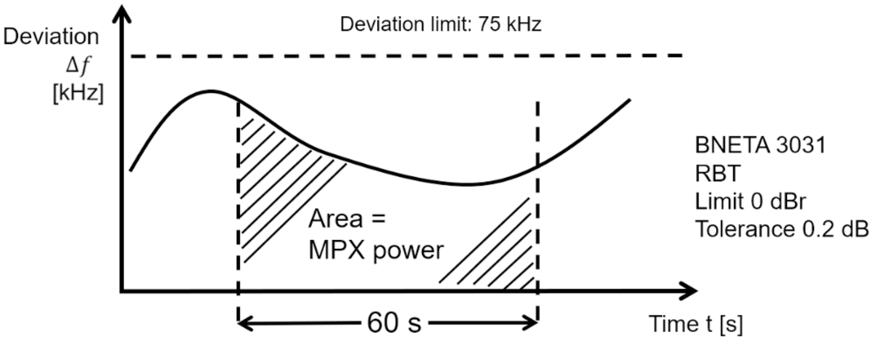
- Turn off pre-emphasis on the transmitter
- Feed a +6dBu (0 dBu equals to 1mW on 600 Ohm, i.e. 0.7746 V_{RMS}), 500 Hz audio signal
- Measure the FM deviation and set it to 40 kHz (adjusting the transmitter's deviation factor if necessary)

Transmitter with integrated stereo encoder:

- Turn off pre-emphasis
- Feed a +6 dBu, 500 Hz signal into the Left channel, short-circuit the Right channel
- Measure deviation on the Left and adjust it to 40 kHz
- Feed a +6 dBu, 500 signal into the Right channel, short-circuit the Left channel
- Measure deviation on the Right and adjust it to 40 kHz

Transmitter with external stereo encoder:

- Feed a +6 dBu, 500 Hz signal into the transmitter's baseband input
- Measure the deviation and adjust it to 40 kHz
- Connect the stereo encoder to the transmitter, feeding a +6 dBu, 500 Hz signal into the transmitter's Left and Right channels, and adjust the deviation to 40 kHz with pre-emphasis switched off



$$P_{MUX} = 10\log(\frac{2}{60s}\int_{T}^{T+60s}(\frac{\Delta f(t)}{19kHz})^2 dt); dBr$$

Fig. 40.23. Definition of the multiplex power

40.9.3 Measuring the FM Deviation and the Multiplex Power

Demodulation makes it possible to determine the FM deviation and from that also the multiplex power. Deviation means the current deviation of the FM signal from its center position in the channel. The peak deviation must not exceed certain values (typically 75 kHz or 50 kHz) and is strictly monitored by the authorities. Excessive deviation causes interferences in the adjacent channels. After the appearance of dynamic compressors, a further measurement parameter, the multiplex power was defined. It is derived from the deviation and is defined as follows: multiplex power is measured in a 60-second measurement window as a sliding integral over the FM peak deviation, and is referenced to a deviation of 19 kHz. That is, operating an FM transmitter with a constant 19 kHz deviation would result in exactly 0 dB_r multiplex power. The lowercase “r” after dB means "relative", i.e. relative to 19 kHz.

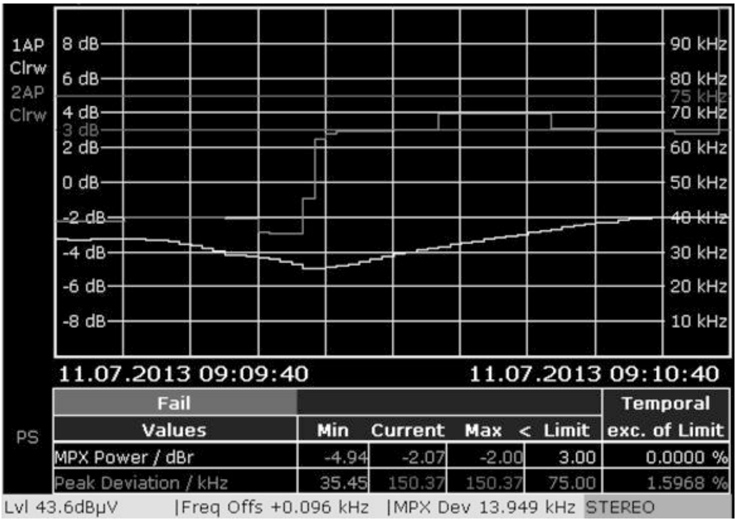


Fig. 40.24. Measuring the FM deviation and the multiplex power on a live signal

40.9.4 Measuring the Signal/Noise Ratio (SNR)

The audio SNR can be measured in different ways. First, a specific deviation and audio measurement frequency, e.g. 40 kHz and 1 kHz, respectively, are selected for driving the transmitter. Then the level after demodulation is measured. Traditionally, this is followed by turning off the useful signal and once again measuring the level after demodulation, yielding the noise level. This is traditionally preceded by filtering using a weighting filter. Level S (signal) of the useful signal and level N (noise) of the weighted noise signal can be used to obtain the SNR, a logarithmic value expressed in dB. Fig. 40.26. shows various defined noise weighting filters. The weighting curve usually used is A, ITU468, or IEC315/tuner. An SNR value without specifying a weighting filter is meaningless.

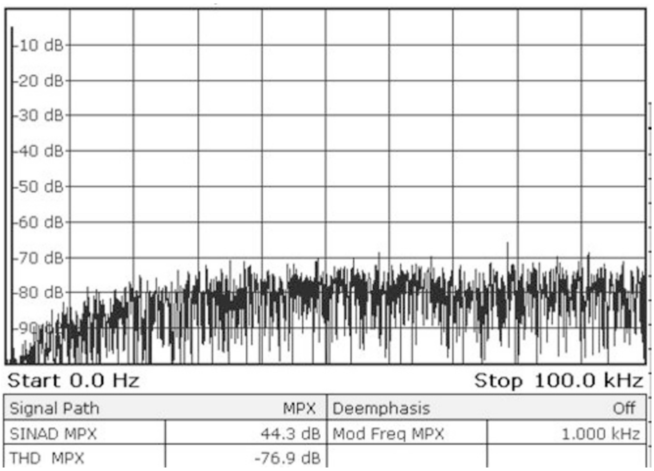


Fig. 40.25. Measuring the interference voltage according to the SINAD procedure, using a 1 kHz measuring tone

Modern audio analyzers are suitable for SINAD measurements. SINAD is an acronym for “Signal to Noise and Distortion”. The test signal is applied to the DUT, then automatically detected and measured, then passed through a notch filter to suppress it before measuring the noise signal component. In the audio segment, this SINAD method, combined with digital signal processing using FFT and digital filtering, can be performed with the utmost precision and practically in real time. The following options are available for measuring the baseband SNR:

- Reference deviation, e.g. 40 kHz
- Baseband measuring frequency, e.g. 1 kHz
- Weighting filter, e.g. tuner filter IEC315

Before measuring a transmitter, the baseband input signal level should be adjusted to ensure the desired resulting deviation, e.g. a +6 dBu input level should mostly result in an FM deviation of 40 kHz.

When measuring a receiver, care should be taken to prevent disturbances caused by overdriving the audio branch.

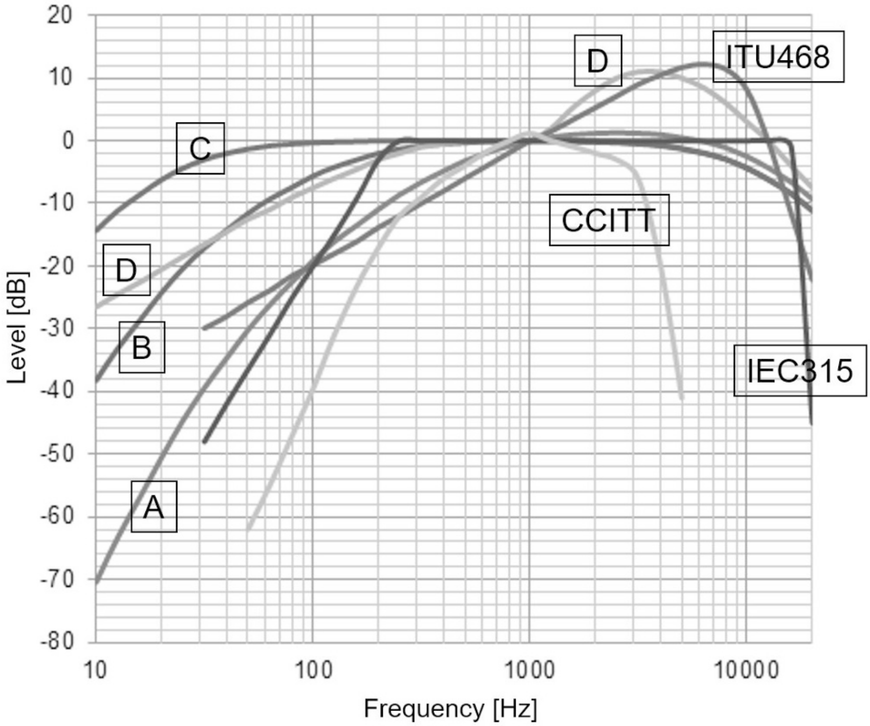
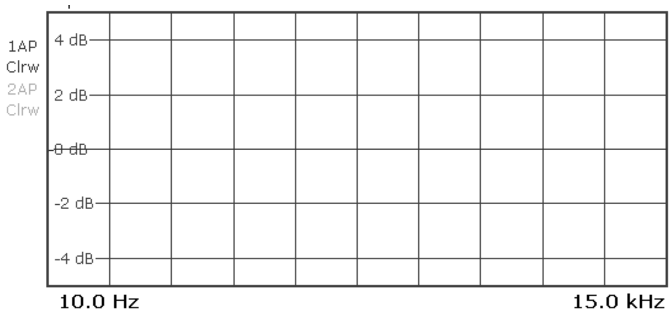


Fig. 40.26. Audio noise weighting filters

Interference voltage on the FM transmitter is typically measured without modulation, i.e. with the input signals turned off. The test receiver will then measure the remaining spurious modulation noise after de-emphasis filtering (i.e. with de-emphasis switched on), and evaluate it as per ITU468, with the transmitter level properly set previously.

40.9.5 Frequency Response of the Left and Right Audio Channels

The frequency responses of the left and right audio channels are determined by alternating a 0–15 kHz sinusoidal wobble signal between the channels. While audio technology mostly only cares about the amplitude response, the phase response and group delay can also be measured. This is performed with the pre-emphasis and de-emphasis turned off. During wobbling, the transmitter input is fed a test signal with a constant amplitude but a varying frequency ramped up from 0 to 15 kHz. The signal amplitudes are measured after the transmission path, on the demodulator output of the test receiver. The ratio between the output and input amplitudes is then usually displayed graphically in dB.



Pass	Deemphasis: Off		Ref Freq: 500 Hz			
Signal	Response	Frequency	Limit <	Results <	Limit	Unit
L	pos Ampl	190 Hz		0.00	1.00	dB
L	neg Ampl	10 Hz	-1.00	-0.08		dB
R	pos Ampl	340 Hz		0.00	1.00	dB
R	neg Ampl	10 Hz	-1.00	-0.08		dB

PS

Fig. 40.27. Measuring the Frequency Response of the Left and Right Audio Channels

40.9.6 Measuring the Stereo Crosstalk

To determine the Stereo Crosstalk, the left and right channels of the DUT (transmitter or receiver) are alternately fed a sinusoidal wobble signal. The level of the currently mute (left or right) channel is then measured at the given measuring frequency, and stereo crosstalk is obtained by relating this level to the level of the driven (left or right) channel. This results in pairs of measurement values and two measured curves for stereo crosstalk:

- left on right, and
- right on left.

Stereo crosstalk is usually specified in dB. In analog signal processing during FM transmission, crosstalk appears due to disturbances in the amplitude and group delay responses along the path of the multiplex signal. If digital signal processing is also applied, the digital section is considered ideal, i.e. stereo crosstalk is caused only in the analog paths in the initial and final part of the transmission chain. Measurement is performed with pre-emphasis and de-emphasis turned off.

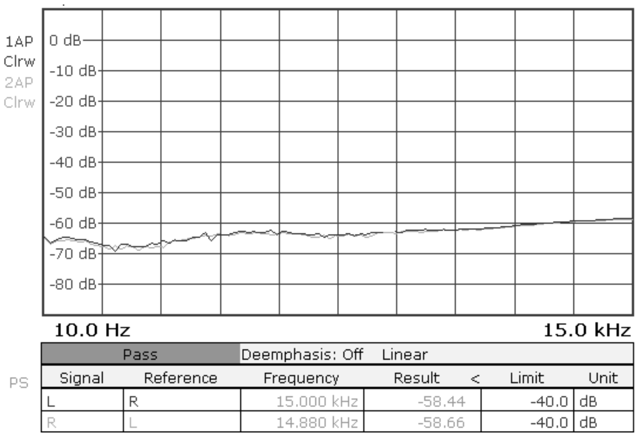


Fig. 40.28. Stereo crosstalk measurement

40.9.7 Measuring the Total Harmonic Distortion (THD)

Nonlinearities in the path of the audio or multiplex signal cause harmonics of the signal to appear in addition to the desired fundamental. The ratio of energy in the harmonics and energy in the fundamental is called total harmonic distortion, THD. When measuring THD, the device under test is fed a defined measuring signal, just like in the case of the baseband SNR measurement, e.g. 1 kHz at a deviation of 40 kHz. The level at the output of the DUT is then measured, the fundamental filtered out, and the remaining signal is measured in its entirety or only the levels at the locations where harmonics are expected, i.e. at multiples of the fundamental. This will yield the THD+N or THD value. THD can be expressed in dB or as a percentage. Modern audio analyzers use the SINAD method also for measuring THD. Measurement is performed with pre-emphasis and de-emphasis turned off.

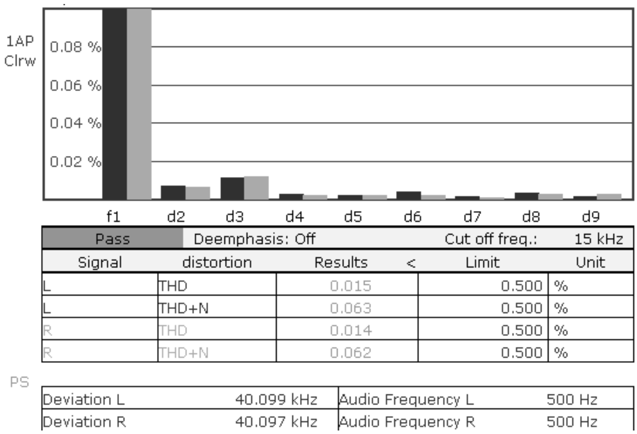


Fig. 40.29. Measuring the THD

40.9.8 Stereo Balance

The left and right audio channels must have the same amplification, i.e. they must be in balance relative to each other. This is the responsibility of the stereo encoder in the transmitter branch and the stereo decoder in the receiver. The R-L balance is tested e.g. during transmitter quality measurement or receiver measurement, and is determined by alternately wobbling the left and right channels with a sinusoidal measurement signal. This measurement is performed with the pre-emphasis and de-emphasis turned off.

40.9.9 Dual-Tone Factor

During dual-tone measurement, two measuring tones are applied alternately and independently to the left and right audio channels, and the amplitudes of the mixed products are measured. The "dual-tone factor" is the difference between the levels of the intermediate (interference) products and the levels of the identically driven two tones at e.g. 1 kHz and 2 kHz. This measurement is performed with the pre-emphasis and de-emphasis turned off.

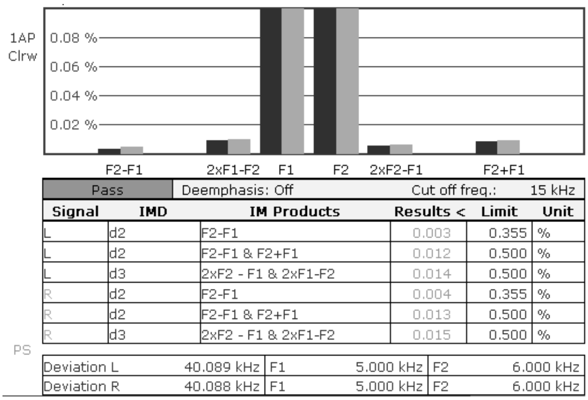


Fig. 40.30. Measuring the Dual-Tone Factor

40.9.10 MPX Baseband Frequency Response

MPX baseband frequency response is the frequency response of the stereo multiplex signal up until 100 kHz. A wobbled sinusoidal measuring signal is applied to measure both the amplitude and phase response of the baseband signal. Such linear distortions of the baseband signal, if found, may cause stereo crosstalk.

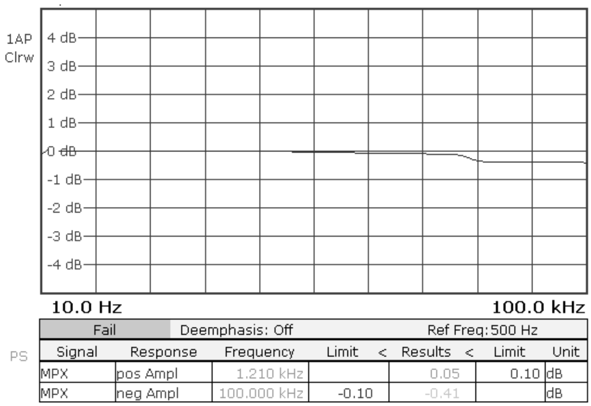


Fig. 40.31. Measuring the MPX frequency response

40.9.11 Asynchronous and Synchronous AM

If the envelope of the FM carrier is not constant, the amplitude modulation of the FM signal is said to be asynchronous or synchronous, depending on the cause. Amplitude modulation by other than the modulating signal (also known as asynchronous AM) is mostly caused by power supply ripple due to defective electrolytic capacitors. If the envelope of the FM carrier follows the modulating signal, the modulation is said to be synchronous AM, which is caused, for instance, by the linear distortions of the filters in the RF path. FM test receivers use appropriate circuitry to measure the amplitude of the FM carrier in the time domain, making it possible to measure the asynchronous and synchronous AM of the FM signal.

40.9.12 Measuring Out-of-Band Components

During the measurements of FM transmitters, a spectrum analyzer with sufficient dynamic range is used to measure the levels around the transmission channel, as well as at multiples of the transmission channel. These out-of-band components must not exceed certain limits. Harmonics are usually suppressed in the FM transmitter using appropriate filters in the amplifier modules.

Bibliography: [SFU], [CISPR20], [MAEUSL1], [ITU-R BS.450-3], [ITU-R BS.412-9], [ETS300384], [ETL], [MAEUSL7], [KIRCHNER]

41 Other Transmission Standards

In addition to the standards for digital video and audio broadcasting as well as mobile TV, already described in detail, there are other norms that are partially explained in this chapter.

These further standards are as follows:

- MediaFLO
- IBOC/HD radio
- FMextra
- CMMB

41.1 MediaFLO

MediaFLO stands for Media Forward Link Only and is a proprietary US standard for mobile TV developed by Qualcomm.

The technical parameters of MediaFLO are:

- COFDM
- 4k mode, QPSK or 16QAM
- Guard interval = 1/8
- Channel bandwidth = 5, 6, 7 or 8 MHz
- Concatenated Reed-Solomon(16, k = 12, 14 or 16) and turbo code forward error correction (code rate = 1/3, 2/3 1/2)
- Net data rate (6 MHz, CR_{Inner}=2/3, CR_{Outer}=12/16, 16QAM) = 8.4 Mbit/s
- Data rates of up to 11.2 Mbit/s
- Source encoding: MPEG-4 Part 10 AVC Viddeo, MPEG-4 AAC+ Audio or IP

Unfortunately MediaFLO was not a market success and is now completely switched off.

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_41

41.2 IBOC - HD Radio

IBOC (In Band on Channel) or HD Radio (Hybrid Radio) (iBiquity Digital Coporation, US) are synonymous terms for digital radio in combination with analog FM radio COFDM-modulated bands (Fig. 41.1 and 41.2.), in which digital audio signals are transmitted, are here added above and below an FM carrier. IBOC has its origin in the US and is currently also being tested in some regions in Europe. It represents a current possibility of operating FM and digital radio adjacently to one another.

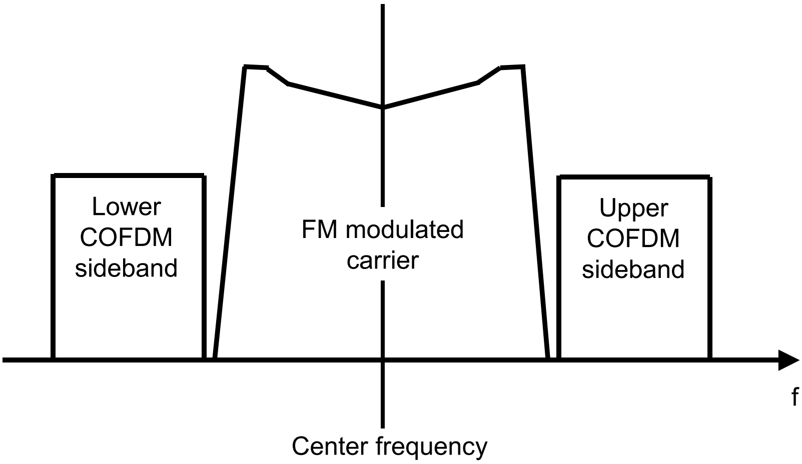


Fig. 41.1. IBOC spectrum

In VHF sound broadcasting, the channel spacing is 300 kHz, or 200 kHz (US), and the frequency deviation is typically 75 kHz. The VHF multiplex signal consists of the L+R signal with a width of 15 kHz, the pilot with 19 kHz and the L-R component in two sidebands around a suppressed AM carrier at 38 MHz, and a modulated auxiliary carrier at 57 kHz (RDS, previously ARI); the baseband bandwidth is thus 57 kHz. According to Carson's formula, the required RF bandwidth is a little over 250 kHz with a deviation of 75 kHz; the gaps towards the adjacent channels can be filled up with COFDM-modulated signals. It is also possible here to play with the deviation of the FM carrier, i.e. it may be possibly reduced in order to be able to widen the COFDM spectra. In this context, channel spacing does not necessarily imply available RF bandwidth. The baseband bandwidth actually available in VHF sound broadcasting, too, is up to 100 kHz and is being utilized in the FMextra standard described later.

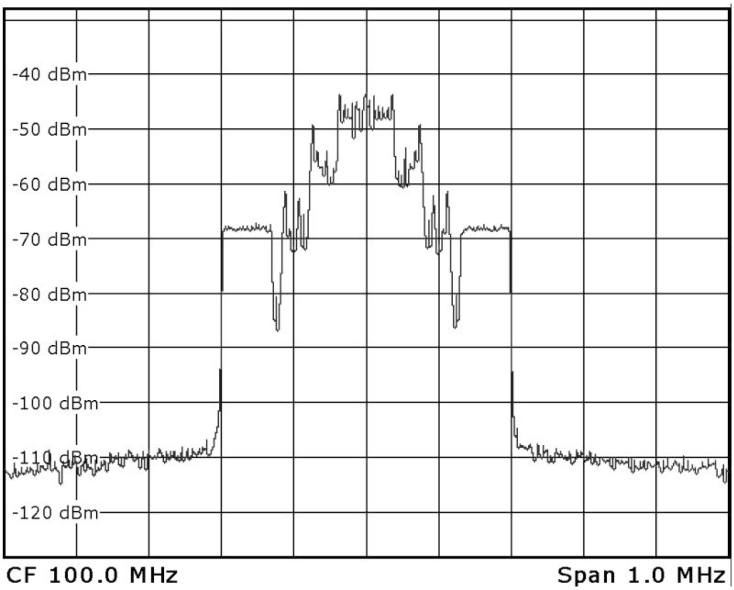


Fig. 41.2. Real HD-Radio spectrum

41.3 FMextra

The baseband bandwidth of a VHF FM channel is 100 kHz, of which about 60 kHz are currently being utilized. In the US, the range between 60 and 100 kHz is partly being used for additional information. VHF transmitters have SCA inputs which allow for a spectrum occupancy between 60 and 100 kHz. This is where FMextra comes into play and enables this range to be used in the baseband. The channel spacing in the RF band remains unchanged.

41.4 CMMB – Chinese Multimedia Mobile Broadcasting

CMMB – Chinese Multimedia Mobile Broadcasting is another mobile TV standard. As a hybrid system which supports terrestrial as well as satellite coverage, it is comparable to DVB-SH. Similarly to DVB-SH, gap fillers are used in this system, which are fed over satellite. CMMB has nothing to do with DTMB, nor is the baseband signal in this case the MPEG-2 transport stream. The transmitted data signal can consist of up to 39 service channels and one logical control channel. They are radiated in up to 40 time slots. The modulation method is OFDM, the modulation types are BPSK, QPSK and 16QAM. The error protection is a combination of Reed-Solomon coding, LDPC coding, and bit interleaving. The standard has only been published partially. The supported channel bandwidths are 8 MHz and 2 MHz, with signal bandwidths of 7.512 MHz and 1.536 MHz, respectively. The 8 MHz channel is filled up with actually 3077 carriers in 4K mode, while 1K mode is applied in the 2 MHz channel with 629 carriers. The subcarrier spacing is 2,441 kHz. As with other OFDM-based systems, there are continual pilots, scattered pilots, and data carriers. The radiated content is guaranteed to be MPEG-4 AVC and AAC signals.

Bibliography: [SFU], [ETL], [BTC]

42 Digital Dividend

Due to the switchover from analog terrestrial television to digital terrestrial television (DVB-T) in Europe, much fewer frequencies are needed for propagating the same number of programs since DVB-T can accommodate at least 4 SDTV programs per channel. At the last World Radiocommunication Conference (WRC07, Geneva, October/November 2007), the upper TV channels 61 – 69 (790 – 862 MHz) were therefore reserved for mobile radio applications (UMTS, LTE, 5G) under the heading of "Digital Dividend“. Naturally, this has effects on applications operating in the same frequency band like DVB-T-broadcasts in these channels, but also broadband cable networks using the full frequency band from 5 to 862 MHz. The effects differ and have now also been verified in practice by trials. The author was actively involved in some of the first investigations. In the following sections, the influences of the use by mobile radio of channels 61 – 69 (“Digital Dividend I”, 800 MHz band) and channels 50 – 60 (“Digital Dividend II”, 700 MHz band) on DVB-T/T2 networks and on broadband cable networks will be discussed.

42.1 Anatomy of the Mobile Radio Signals

One might think at first that the anatomy of the mobile radio signals, i.e. the modulation methods used, which with the digital dividend are now creating interference signals for DVB-T and DVB-C networks, would play a role, but this is not the case. All mobile radio standards use digital modulation methods, just like digital television. And these are not much different from one another. Regardless of whether it is a single-carrier modulation method, WCDMA (Wide-Band Code Division Multiple Access) or OFDM which is used, the signals all look like band-limited noise signals with a more or less large crest factor. GSM uses a single-carrier modulation method, UMTS uses WCDMA, and LTE and 5G operate with OFDM methods. And the general trend in all areas is in any case towards multi-carrier methods. Anatomically, these signals can be distinguished by the following parameters:

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_42

- Bandwidth
- Envelope shape (rectangular, or roll-off or Gaussian filtering),
- Crest factor.

The main influence on applications in the same frequency band is produced by the bandwidth of these mobile radio signals. And only the uplink, i.e. the return channel from the mobile radio to the base station, can have an interfering effect. As far as the power budget is concerned, the downlink is too weak to have any interfering effect at the location where terrestrial and cable receivers are used. Neither does a dense cable network exert any interfering effect on uplink or downlink. DVB-T transmitters and mobile radio applications cannot coexist in the same channel; a DVB-T transmitter would displace a mobile radio downlink and a mobile radio uplink would radiate into a DVB-T antenna and make it impossible to receive DVB-T channels in the same frequency band. There are, therefore, effects which do not even need to be investigated since their interactions with applications in the same frequency band can be explained or estimated simply by physics, mathematics and experience.

The permissible transmitting power in the uplink of mobile radios is up to 24 dBm (250 mW) in this frequency band. This needs to be taken into consideration.

42.2 Terrestrial TV Networks and Mobile Radio

Co-channel operation of mobile radio and DVB-T/T2 is not possible. DVB-T/T2 would interfere with the mobile radio downlink since the DVB-T/T2 field strength is much higher than the field strength of the mobile radio channel at the receiving location. This applies especially to DVB-T/T2 networks which are designed for portable indoor reception. The mobile radio uplink would interfere with the DVB-T/T2 reception since the uplink channel would radiate either directly into the DVB-T/T2 receiving antenna; and the DVB-T/T2 receivers are also certainly leaky and would admit stray radiation. Neither is there any need to confirm this by investigations since the characteristics of DVB-T/T2 receivers are well known. The extent to which a mobile radio uplink is noticed in the adjacent channel greatly depends on the characteristics of the DVB-T/T2 receiver. Virtually all DVB-T/T2 receivers can handle adjacent channels which are up to 20 dB higher, but many can also handle adjacent channels which are up to 40 dB and more higher. The greater the separation from the frequency of an adjacent channel the easier it becomes for the DVB-T/T" receiver. An adjacent mobile radio channel is virtually like an adjacent DVB-T/T2 channel for a DVB-T/T2 receiver. Analyses and investigations of the interference effects between mobile radio network and analog terrestrial television network are no longer required since there will soon be no more analog terrestrial television (ATV) networks in Europe.

42.3 Broadband Cable TV Networks and Mobile Radio

The situation is quite different in the case of broadband cable networks. Broadband cable networks currently handle the following three applications:

- Analog television
- Digital television (DVB-C)
- Fast Internet access (Euro-DOCSIS with DVB-C signals in the downlink), including telephony

Analog television is no going to be switched off. But many CATV customers loved especially this simple type of reception without additional equipment apart from the actual screen with integrated analog TV tuner. A broadband provider will have to think long and hard before he switches off the last analog TV channels even if it would be more economical for him to do so.

It was found in trials that up to network section 4 (= subscriber network level), a broadband cable network using modern multi-shielded cables, modern amplifiers and termination boxes is leakproof to such an extent that only slight or no influences were detectable with an external irradiation of up to approx. 24 dBm (250 mW) power. It was also found that most of the terminals were not leakproof enough with co-channel irradiation. And this applies to all types of broadband reception. In the adjacent channel, up to 20 dB more interfering radiation can be accepted in some cases which was shown in tests of modern DVB-C receivers. I.e., the problem is mainly the terminals themselves and naturally also the cables from the socket to the terminal.

42.3.1 Influence of Co-channel Mobile Radio on DVB-C Reception

Tests have shown that with a modern network level 4, the terminals are the only problem. Virtually all the DVB-C receivers showed symptoms of interference from about 8 to 15 dBm irradiated power from 1 to 2 meters distance and displayed slicing, freezing and picture loss. The plane of polarization (horizontal or vertical) played a great part in this and amounts to between 3 and 10 dB. Naturally, the quality of the transmitting antenna in the mobile unit also plays a great role and easily accounts for another 5 dB difference. From about 5 to 10 m distance and with properly attenuating walls, no further interference effects can be expected for the co-channel mobile radio downlink. However, the variance of immunity from interference of the terminals is very great and lies within a range of around 10 dB. The quality of the connecting cables used is always decisive and does not need to be investigated. The immunity of the plugs is also a problem. The starting point of the disturbances depends on the type of QAM (64QAM or 256QAM) and on the RF level present. The worst-case constellation is 256QAM with a level of 54 dBμV (minimum level) and the best is 64QAM and a level of 74 dBμV (maximum level). The standard should be assumed to be 256QAM with a level of 64 dBμV (usual average level).

42.3.2 Influence of Co-channel Mobile Radio on Analog TV Reception

Analog TV reception in the broadband cable network also showed that the only leakage is to be expected at the terminal or in the terminal wiring. Terminals show symptoms of interference more or less from about 1 to 2 m distance and depending on polarization. The interference is visible as noise or moire in the picture. At more than 5 m distance or with sufficiently leakproof walls, there will be no further detectable interference but this, too, depends on the terminal.

42.3.3 Influence of Co-channel Mobile Radio on Other Digital Broadband Services

The influence of co-channel interferences of mobile radio leakages in the broadband cable network on the other digital broadband cable services can be seen as being particularly dramatic. Depending on polarization, transmitting powers of approx. 10 to 15 dBm here lead to shorter dropouts or lower data rates, respectively, and, in addition, to resynchronization pauses of the cable modem lasting minutes. The end user will not especially enjoy the resynchronization pauses, in particular. The major leakage in co-channel reception corresponds to that experienced in pure DVB-C reception. It is the downlink which is affected and this is also pure DVB-C with Euro-DOCSIS. A similar effect will be experienced in telephony via broadband cable.

42.4 Electromagnetic Field Immunity Standard for Sound and Television Broadcast Receivers

The electromagnetic field immunity of sound and television broadcast receivers and related terminals is regulated in standards EN 55020 and CISPR 20, resp. [CISPR20]. Such receiving units must not display any symptoms of interference at noise field intensities of up to 3 V/m, apart from the operating frequency itself ("tuned frequency excluded“). Naturally, this is appropriate for terrestrial receivers but this standard is also applied to broadband cable receivers.

42.5 Summary

The broadband cable networks are leakproof – both with respect to the power radiated and to the incident power - as long as they are of the correct and modern design. Naturally, this will not apply to all networks, especially the older ones of network section 4. Only new networks have been tested. DVB-C receivers and cable modems have also been identified as particular leakage points. And this also applies to analog TV receivers. DVB terminals already show symptoms of interference at a radiated interference of 10 dB less than what a mobile receiver is allowed to radiate in the uplink. This should not be understood to be a wholesale opposition against the "Digital Dividend“ but simply represents the current problems and facts. The electromagnetic field immunity standard for broadcast receivers explicitly allows susceptibility to interference in the operating channel set. The co-existence of broadband cable networks or DVB-T/T2 networks with mobile radio networks in the same frequency band was never intended or planned. If the broadband cable terminals are made leakproof, this will not be a problem for broadband cable networks of the more modern type. To achieve this, however, a corresponding electromagnetic field immunity in the operating channel should be backed up with a corresponding electromagnetic field immunity standard. If only adjacent channels are occupied in DVB-T/T2 and mobile radio networks, this will not be a problem, either.

Bibliography: [LESNIK], [CISPR20]

43 3DTV – Three-Dimensional Television

Three-dimensional photography has been in use for more than 100 years. Simple examples could be found already at the end of the 19th century. Since the great success of the movie "Avatar" in 2009 3D has been widely talked about. There are more and more 3D cinemas and 3D displays (example Fig. 43.1.). In this chapter basics and the principle of 3D technology are explained beginning with the human anatomy and continuing with camera-, transmission- and presentation technology.

Fig. 43.1. 3D-picture shown on a flat screen without using 3D glasses; top left 3D shutter glasses which are necessary to generate the 3D effect for the eyes.

43.1 Anatomical Basics of 3D

If both are presented with identical pictures, we will perceive those pictures in a two-dimensional manner. But this does not correspond with reality in a "real ambience". Only photos and displays show such 2D-pictures. In reality the human brain detects with the left eye a slightly shifted picture in comparison to the right eye, if objects anywhere in a space are observed.

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_43

The human eyes have a mean distance of about 6.5 cm; thus we see a slightly different picture with the left eye in comparison to the right eye (Fig. 43.2.). The visual stimuli from the eyes are transported via the visual nerve system to the human brain; the left and right visual nerve system are crossed in the brain. The stimulus from the left eye is transported to the right visual brain center and the stimulus from the right eye is transported to the left visual brain center. The visual brain center is located in the rear portion of the brain. Together with both stimuli the brain forms a three-dimensional picture, if both stimuli are not identical.

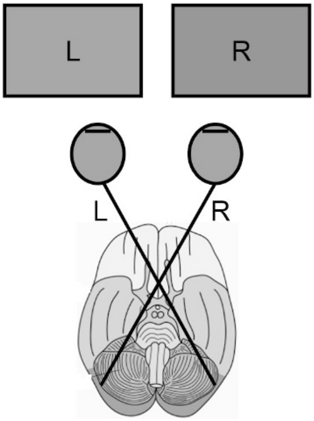


Fig. 43.2. 3D-principle; different stimuli perceived with left and right eye; the mean human eye distance is approx. 6.5 cm.

Fig. 43.3. 3D camera (Source: Internet)

43.2 The 3D Principle

If three-dimensional pictures need to be presented there must be differently processed pictures for both human eyes (Fig. 43.2.). In order to do so, still or moving pictures are recorded with two cameras using a twin lens and recording camera system (Fig. 43.3.). The distance between both recording systems corresponds to the mean human eye distance. Both recording systems simulate both human eyes and generate pictures which are slightly shifted against each other. This shifting distance D is called deviation or disparity (Fig. 43.4.). Depending on D the picture will be recognized two-dimensionally on the display area or visually located before or behind it (Fig. 43.4.):

- D = 0, the object seems to be on the display area and appears two-dimensionally
- D = positive, the object seems to be behind the display area
- D = negative, the object seems to be before the display area

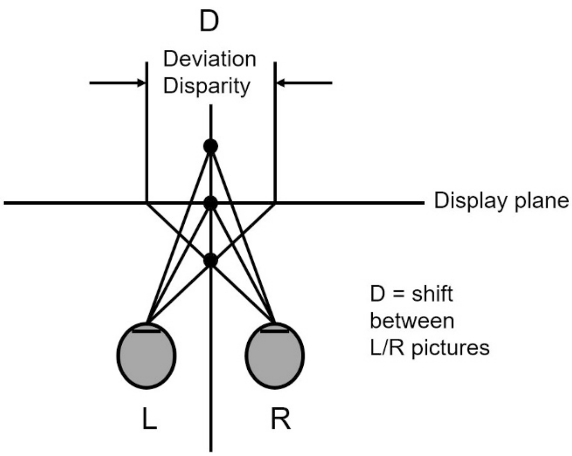


Fig. 43.4. Left-right-shift of 3D-pictures

That means if the stimulus for both eyes has its origin in the same point, the object seems to be placed on the display area. If the information for the left eye comes from left and the information for the right eye comes from right, then we perceive the object behind the display area. The object seems to be before the display area if the information for the left eye is detected from right and the information for the right eye is detected from left. Thus the left-right deviation or disparity of the display objects determines their three-dimensional perception. Important for 3D-technology is, that we have to be very careful with negative deviations. Objects which appear too much in front of the display area are unnatural, unpleasant, tiring, surprising or even frightening. But sometimes moviemakers work with those effects.

43.3 Presentation of 3D Material

If the recorded 3D-material needs to be presented, the picture for the left eye and the picture for the right eye have to be transported on different channels. For that reason special presentation media or techniques are necessary. At the moment there are more or less three principles which can be used for the presentation of still and moving pictures:

- Anaglyphic glasses
- Polar filter glasses
- Shutter glasses
- Autostereoscopic displays
- Color-notch-filter technology

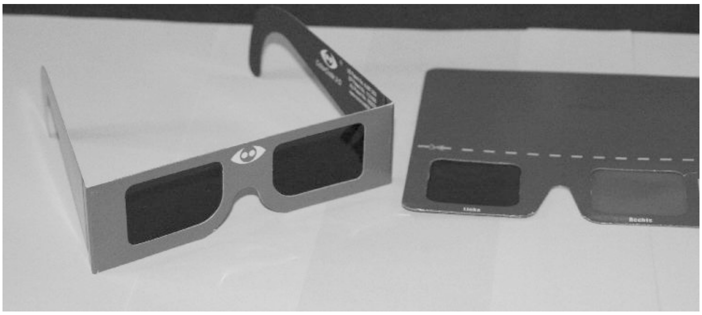


Fig. 43.5. Analglyphic glasses

The anaglyphic glasses technology is old and simple. Typically in front of the left eye there is a red filter and in front of the right eye there is a blue or cyan filter (Fig. 43.5.). The left and right pictures are also colored in the same way. Of course the color effect is no longer as brilliant but the

3D-effect is already visible. A cyan filter produces a better color effect than a blue filter because cyan is the opposite color of red in the color circle and does not only consist of one color. In the internet a lot of good examples for the anaglyphic principle can be found. Some demo examples for TV are also coded for anaglyphic glasses.

Fig. 43.6. Polar glasses

Fig. 43.7. Shutter glasses; infra-red transmitter mounted on a TV display

Polar glasses (Fig. 43.6.) mostly use circular polarized filters, left and right turning. Correspondingly, the projectors also need those polar filters in front of the lense system. The glasses are cheap, one-way glasses can be used; this is very interesting for cinemas. The price for the glasses of approx. 3.-- Euro is added to the cinema ticket. This technology is mostly used in cinemas at the moment. But in this case cinemas need two convergent projectors and an expensive special projection display area - which is not changing the polarization. Movie presentations like "Avatar" were using this technology.

Shutter glasses (Fig. 43.7.) are using an active technology blanking the left and right eye picture alternately. They are controlled via infrared transmitter from the display unit. The display - the TV set - presents the picture for the left and the right eye alternately. The glasses are fully synchronized for this process. At the moment nearly all 3D-ready displays are using this technology. Unfortunately these glasses are rather expensive (approx. 100.-- Euro), quite often not compatible between different manufacturers, heavy, uncomfortable and tiring. Additionally, glasses might be a problem for spectacle wearers. Autostereoscopic displays (Fig. 43.8.) are using a technology which is known from special effect pictures ("shaking pictures"), formerly found e.g. on special 3D-like postal cards. Special lens systems separate the picture information for the left and right eye. These so-called prism raster systems are placed in front of the LCD screen. A big disadvantage is the viewing angle which is limited. However, no special glasses are needed. For the projection technology (e.g. cinemas) there is a further technology, the so-called color notch filters for both projectors and the glasses. In this case red, green and blue are limited to small spectral ranges but differently for the left and right picture, that means they are spectrally shifted left different to right. This technology has advantages as well as disadvantages. Polar filters need expensive special silver presentation display areas which are not necessary in case of the color notch filter technology. But color notch filter glasses are much more expensive than polar filter glasses.

43.4 3DTV Transmission

Now some words about how those different left and right pictures are transported and recorded. In case of a cinema this can be answered quite easily. There is simply one data stream for the left and the right projector, both fully synchronized together. Circular polarization filters are much more uncritical against a wrong position of the human head in comparison to horizontal and vertical polarization filters. Polar filters have been successfully in use for a long time, e.g. for each LCD display for its basic function principle and are very easy to handle. At first sight, this principle seems similar and feasible with 3DTV as well. But at present a HDTV picture is divided either in a vertical or in a horizontal direction into two pictures to transport the 3D left and right picture part. Either the vertical or the horizontal resolution of the picture will be reduced by a factor of two. But this is a compatible way - no special new MPEG decoder chip is necessary. This technology is either called top/bottom or side by side principle (Fig. 43.9.).

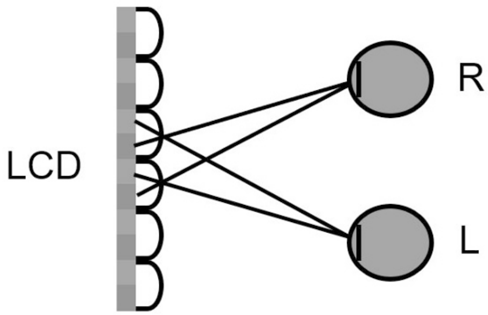


Fig. 43.8. Autostereoscopic display

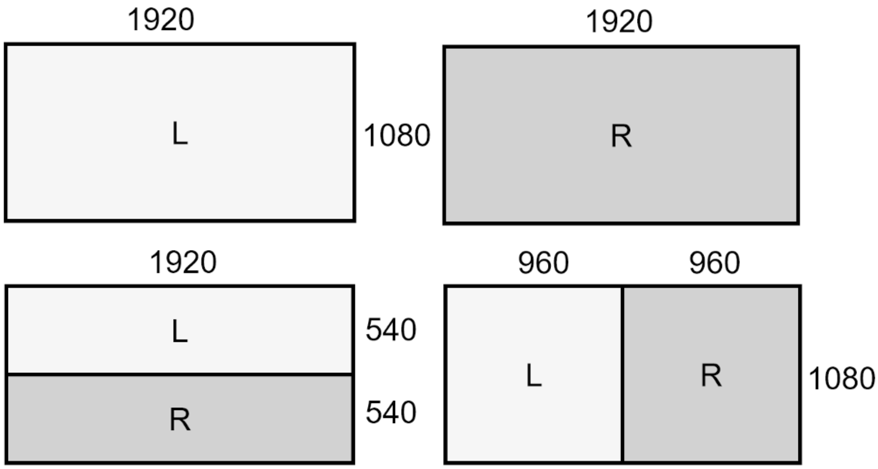


Fig. 43.9. Side by side (left) and top/bottom transmission of left and right pictures; top original L/R pictures.

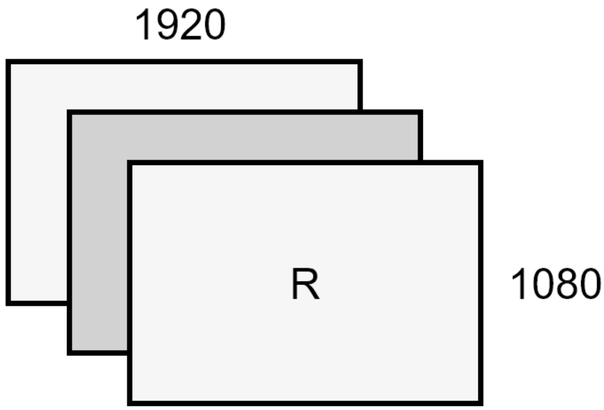


Fig. 43.10. Left and right picture in serial transmission

Fig. 43.11. Practical example for side by side transmission (Sky 3D), display in normal mode

In principle there are the following possibilities for 3D picture transmission:

- Anaglyphic principle (Fig. 43.5.)
- Left and right top/bottom (Fig. 43.9.)
- Left and right side by side (Fig. 43.9., 43.11., 43.12.)
- Left and right serial transmission (fig. 43.10.)

In the last case of serial transmission of the left and right pictures a new codec was developed in the year 2008 in the MPEG-4 AVC standard. This codec is called Multiview Coding (MVC). It encodes a 2D picture and some differential 3D information for the calculation of stereoscopic pictures. The coding is done in a way that a normal MPEG-4 AVC decoder can present a 2D picture.

Fig. 43.12. Display in 3D mode, without shutter glasses (Sky 3D), disparity (left-/ right shift) well visible

43.5 Current 3D Technology Status and Outlook

Presently, cinemas are using polar filters. Two projectors with polar filters and cheap polar filter glasses for the viewers are necessary. For simple demos the anaglyphic principle can be used both for still and moving pictures. TV displays and the corresponding transmission technology are presently dividing a full picture either top/bottom or side by side. This reduces the resolution either in a vertical or in a horizontal direction. The future will be a serial transmission of left and right pictures using specialy adapted compression and autostereoscopic displays without special glasses. But even in the future not each picture will be 3D. 3D is exhausting and mostly 2D will be sufficient. Some display manufacturers even warn some viewer groups due to medical reasons. More and more 3D movies for the cinemas are coming out, and even cinemas in smaller cities offer 3D technology. However, in the TV domain there is not so much material available and presented; mostly pay-TV offers those movies. In the Blue-Ray disc market there are also not too many 3D movies available. 3D is still not really a boom factor in the home-TV market. A lot of flatscreens are 3D-ready, but not too many people seem to be using 3D at home. The newest generations of TV flatscreens are even no longer supporting 3D capability.

Bibliography: [HDMI2.0]

44 Broadcast over Internet, HbbTV, OTT, Streaming

44.1 Introduction

Even the first edition of this book discussed already the convergence of broadcasting and the Internet. Works on the first English edition began in the year 2001, when access to the Internet from the home was fairly slow and was not suitable for television broadcast applications. In addition, the performance of the codecs of the time was far from what we experience today. The typical Internet data rate available in households around the year 2000 was approx. 55 kbit/s. Then simple telephone modems or in best case bonded ISDN channels were available. Even the professional company data links did not exceed data rates of about 2 Mbit/s. This situation changed drastically in urban areas especially from 2004. Twisted pair telephone lines enabled the use of ADSL [ITU-T G.992] (Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line) systems with data rates of 2 Mbit/s and beyond, while VDSL links [ITU-T G.993] (Very High Speed Digital Subscriber Line) allowed data rates of 10 to 16 Mbit/s. Nowadays these figures reach up to 100 Mbit/s and beyond. However, ADSL and especially VDSL provide such transfer rates on only relatively short distances, ranging from some 100 m up to some km from the DSL access point (DSLAM — Digital Subscriber Line Access Multiplexer). VDSL-DSLAMs are installed in street cabinets along pedestrian walkways, fed by fiber optic cables, while the homes are still supplied by classic twisted pair telephone cables.

In parallel with these, high-speed Internet access via broadband cable was developed. CATV/DOCSIS systems offer data rates of 50 to some 100 Mbit/s. In urban areas this allows Internet access at home with speeds comparable to the data rates in professional environment in offices. In rural areas the offered data rates are much lower and are quite often still in the range of about 5 Mbit/s, what makes multimedia applications via Internet unrealistic. By using the newest video and audio codecs, online distribution of TV or sound broadcast programs is a sensible alternative. Inter-

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_44

net is, however, always a point-to-point connection, which means that each subscriber needs to have its own link to the source (e.g. broadcast playout point) and gets its sound or TV broadcast service via a quasi "leased line". But the classic term "broadcast" stands originally for a point-to-multipoint-connection. An audio or television broadcast transmitter serves many receivers without having any knowledge about the quantity of the terminal devices. This means that classical broadcasting is still the cheapest version for those applications. More to the point, in many countries (like in Germany) we are still far away from providing high speed Internet links in rural areas, which would be the basis of sound and TV broadcasts over the Internet.

44.2 Internet Applications in TV and Sound Broadcast

An Internet link with sufficient data rate can be used for:

- Accessing the World Wide Web (WWW)
- Emails
- Audio- and video streaming
- Telephoning

But let us now concentrate again on sound and television applications. Common examples for that are:

- Internet radio via PC, dedicated Internet radios or mobile phones
- Video- and audio streaming (YouTube, etc.)
- IPTV- television via Internet
- Convergence of broadcasting and Internet in one device
- Firmware download for broadcast end-user-devices

The young generation enjoys audio and video streaming rather than listening to traditional radio or watching linear TV. The broadcast service providers support this new distribution network, though real mobile TV did achieve success in the past years.
IPTV is offered by traditional “twisted-pair” telephone providers, which is especially interesting for single households in the big cities.

Many DVB TV receivers now also support Internet connectivity via LAN or wireless link. This applies for both external receivers and flatscreens.

The receiver can be connected to a storage medium (network disk) or a PC to watch or record movies. Firmware can be updated and streaming applications directly accessed from the web, limited only by the available speed of the Internet access point and the supported features of the receiver. Broadcasters offer nowadays more and more additional streaming services; “Mediathek” is such a unique Germany-specific service. Instead of recording the programs, the videos can be watched via the broadcaster’s database from the Internet. End user equipment supporting such applications are called “smart TVs“ or “HbbTV ready” devices. In such “smart TVs” these web-based video services can be accessed with the help of the remote controller.

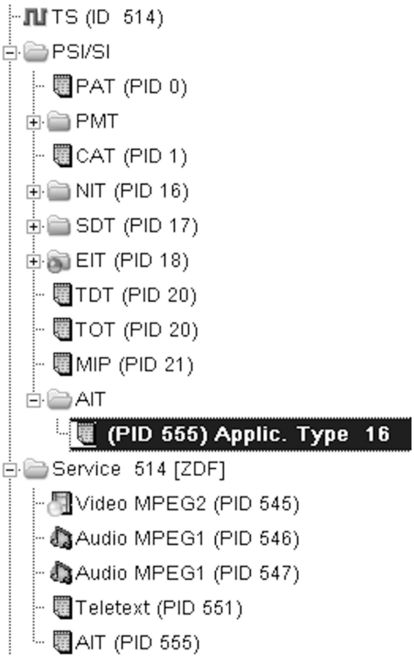


Fig. 44.1. PSI/SI tables including AIT for referencing HbbTV

44.3 HbbTV - Hybrid Broadcast Broadband TV

“HbbTV“ – Hybrid Broadcast Broadband TV [TS102796, HbbTV] is a standardized convergence between digital television and the Internet. This

term has been in use since about 2010, and many DVB receivers and flat screens are now equipped with this feature. The idea is to combine digital TV and Internet in a non-proprietary but standardized way. Live movies can be watched via the traditional standards DVB-C/T/T2/S/S, while the Internet services of the broadcasters can be accessed directly via the TV set by using the standard TV remote controller. Another term for this feature used by some receiver manufacturer is “Smart TV”. If a service offers HbbTV, the receiver displays it as a hint in the right bottom of the TV screen like “Press red button for HbbTV access …”. By pressing the corresponding color function button on the TV remote controller, the respective HbbTV application will be started on the TV set.
The link to the Internet service can be found in an entry in the Program Map Table (PMT). First of all, the Application Information Table (AIT) is referenced in the PMT like in case of MHP (Fig. 44.1.). The AIT contains some descriptors (Fig. 44.2.) to HbbTV services addressed by a www entry, e.g. www.ard.hbbtv.

HbbTV offers applications like “modern“ teletext, direct access to the broadcasters’ movie data bases, etc. Some examples from German television broadcasters are shown in the next pages.

```
Application Information Section
 Table id                                   8 bit   0x74 (116)
 Section syntax indicator                   1 bit   1
 reserved (future use)                      1 bit   0x1
 reserved                                   2 bit   0x3
 Section length                            12 bit   275
 Application type                          16 bit   0x0010 (16) HbbTV application
 reserved                                   2 bit   0x3
 Version number                             5 bit   1
 Current/next indicator                     1 bit   1           sub_table is currently applicable
 Section number                             8 bit   0
 Last section number                        8 bit   0
 reserved (future use)                      4 bit   0xF
 Common descriptors length                 12 bit   0
 Common Descriptors
  Descriptors                                 none
 reserved (future use)                      4 bit   0xF
 Application loop length                   12 bit   262
 Application Loop
 1st Application
  Organisation identifier                  32 bit   0x00000011 (17)
  Application identifier                   16 bit   0x0001 (1)
  Application control code                  8 bit   0x01 (1)    AUTOSTART
  reserved (future use)                     4 bit   0xF
  Application descriptors loop length      12 bit   73
  Transport Protocol Descriptor
   Descriptor tag                           8 bit   0x02 (2)
   Descriptor length                        8 bit   34
   Protocol id                             16 bit   0x0003 (3)  Transport via HTTP over the interaction channel
   Transport protocol label                 8 bit   0x00 (0)
   URL base length                          8 bit   29
   URL base byte                           29 char  http://hbbtv.zdf.de/zdfstart/
```

Fig. 44.2. AIT = Application Information Table with HbbTV entries.

The following conditions must be fulfilled to get access to HbbTV:

- End user equipment (receiver or flatscreen) is HbbTV-ready

- End user equipment is connected to the Internet
- HbbTV is enabled
- Broadcast service offers HbbTV

If all these conditions are met, then the message “Press red button to HbbTV …” (Fig. 44.4.) is displayed if the service is changed by e.g. zapping. By pressing the color function keys, the HbbTV applications can be started like

- Broadcasters movie data base
- Teletext
- Electronic Program Guide
- Games, etc.

Fig. 44.3. Message „Press red button …“ to get access to HbbTV services

HbbTV is bidirectional, meaning that a return channel is also available which can be used for various purposes. One is to select a movie out of a list of films. But this link can also be used by the broadcast service provider to collect information about what the end user is watching. HbbTV services are applications which are written in Java or HTML, downloaded from the Internet and started on the DVB receiver. The applications can use a certain part of the screen or they can be run in full-screen mode.

Fig. 44.6. shows a HbbTV version of an electronic program guide. This version can be used in parallel with the DVB EPG version (activated by the EPG-key, Info-key, etc.). The color function keys (red, green, yellow, blue) on the remote controller can be used to navigate between the HbbTV applications.

Traditional broadcasting is a so-called “linear broadcast” service (Fig. 44.7.). In this case the end user watches TV in the order displayed in the broadcast content provider’s program guide. The only way to change to another content is “zapping”, which means changing the service.

Fig. 44.4. Example of HbbTV services (access via color function keys on the TV remote control)

Non-linear broadcasting (Fig. 44.7.) is the case when the end user directly controls what he/she wants to see. The terms like VoD (Video on Demand), streaming, OTT (Over-the-Top TV), etc. refer to such non-linear broadcasting. Watching movies via HbbTV by selecting from a movie library is also a kind of non-linear broadcast.

Fig. 44.5. Example of HbbTV services (Bayerischer Rundfunk, 2013)

Fig. 44.6. Electronical Program Guide via HbbTV

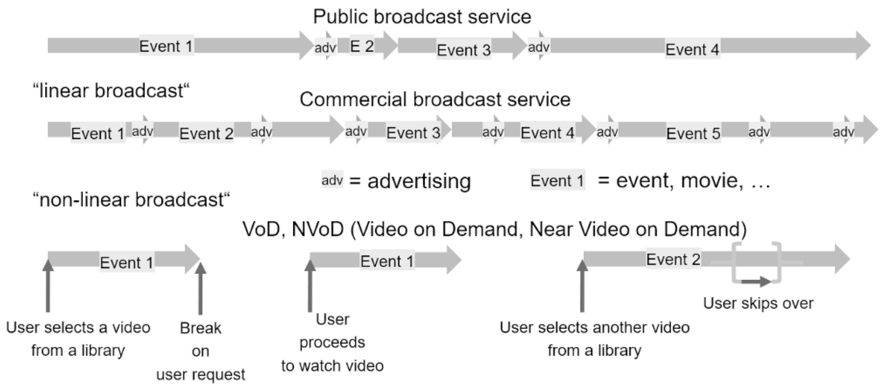


Fig. 44.7. Linear and non-linear broadcasting

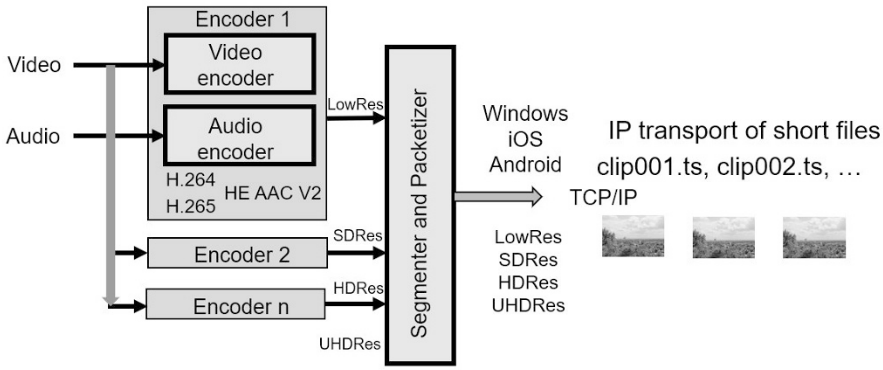


Fig. 44.8. Block diagram of an OTT headend

44.4 OTT – Over the Top TV

Some years ago the new term “OTT“ appeared on the horizon, which stands for “Over the Top TV“, meaning nothing more than video streaming. In parallel to satellite, cable, terrestrial or IPTV broadcast links, a broadcast service provider can offer streaming services via the Internet. Those OTT services are point-to-point connections between the end user and an OTT Internet access point. Such OTT services are offered in parallel

- for different end user devices (Apple© iOS©, Microsoft© Windows or Android©),
- with various data rates and quality (QVGA, SD, HD, UHD).

In the form of MPEG-DASH (Dynamic Adaptive Streaming over HTTP), a standard [ISO/IEC 23009] is now available for such dynamic adaptive video- and audio streaming applications via the Internet to fixed, portable and mobile devices.An OTT headend (Fig. 44.8.) encodes the video and audio input signals to be broadcasted to several streams of different qualities (QVGA, SD, HD, UHD) and container formats (Windows©, iOS©, Android©, etc.). Consequently an OTT headend has one service input (including video and audio) and several streaming outputs. The OTT headend is located typically in the environment of the broadcast service content provider (content provider domain). The output streams are transferred to a CDN (content delivery network) provider. The CDN is connected to different Internet service providers (ISP) via edge servers. The end users' home network domain has access to an ISP network. This means that the total OTT network (Fig. 44.9.) consists of four network domains, such as:

- Content provider network domain
- Content delivery network domain (CDN)
- Internet service provider domain (ISP)
- Device and home network provider domain

An end user device can be

- a TV receiver,
- a flatscreen,
- a PC,
- a Tablet PC,
- a Smart Phone,
- an Internet radio receiver, etc.

Please note that OTT streaming is not IPTV! In the IPTV technology a so-called SPTS (Single Program Transport Stream) is distributed (please refer to the chapter on IPTV), whereas in OTT short movie files (Fig. 44.10.) are sent out. OTT uses handshake via TCP, while IPTV applies UDP protocol without handshake. Depending on the available network quality, the data rate of the OTT service can vary between the different quality movie streams (Fig. 44.10.). At the present time (2019) more than 90% of the viewers watch TV via traditional broadcast distribution networks, and the OTT market is much below 10%. This, however, is expected to change in the coming years. How quick this process will be depends on how the high speed Internet coverage outside urban areas will develop and on how the end users want to watch TV and listen to sound broadcasts.

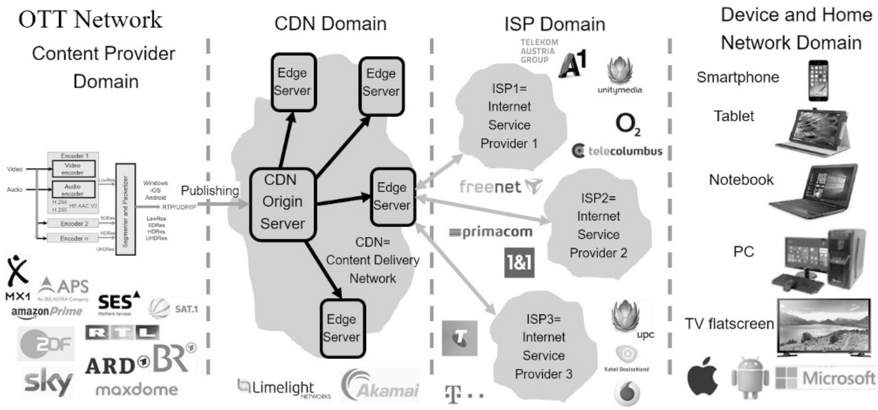


Fig. 44.9. OTT network overview

Fig. 44.10. OTT streaming

44.5 Summary and Outlook

Traditional broadcasting is still the common, traditional and cheapest way to deliver audio and video broadcast content from a single point to multiple points. However, the broadcasting world is changing and streaming is already nowadays (in 2019) very popular with the young generation. It will be very interesting to see what will happen in the next decade and how audio and video services will be watched.

Bibliography: [TS102796], [HbbTV], [OTT], [ISO/IEC23009],
[ITU-T G.992], [ITU-T G.993]

45 Studio, Playout, Headend and Distribution Network

Video and audio signals are originated in a studio or some other shooting location to then find their way to the consumers, whether viewers or listeners. This chapter is concerned less with the technology and very much with the concept of the path from the studio to the living rooms. The technology itself, presented in various chapters, has already been discussed extensively.

Initially, the programs aired by radio and television were mostly live broadcasts of films viewed from the film scanner; in contrast, the proportion of live programs today makes up less than 10 percent of all transmissions. Also, up until the mid-1980s, there had been only a handful of physical channels that could be received on radios or TVs. Today, terrestrial channels are still few (due to the scarcity of free frequencies regulated by the Geneva frequency conferences), but satellite and cable offer a wealth of content. In analog broadcasting, a program by definition also meant a physical channel. Digital broadcasting has changed this paradigm: many programs or services are transmitted in a location what used to be called as “channel”. Today, “channel” must be defined to make it clear whether it means a physical channel or a program (virtual channel). Nowadays, a service - equivalent to a program - starts on a server; if it is TV, the server is a video server. This is called “channel playout.” One or normally more video servers of a channel playout will then play a program sequence from a playlist in a controlled manner. Most programs originate only from these video servers. However, some services also contain regular live contents from the studio in topics like news, quiz, cooking, talk shows, etc. After leaving the studio and the channel playout, the transmission signal reaches the headend where it gets bundled - multiplexed - with other programs to form a single data stream called a multiplex stream, or MUX for short. Before multiplexing, the services, i.e. programs, must first be encoded; this may be a first MPEG encoding to reduce the data to be transferred, or a repeated encoding to provide the required data rate and quality (SDTV, HDTV, etc.). The headend also contains multiple encoders and a multiplexer. From the headend, the transmission signal is fed to the modula-

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_45

tor(s) and the transmitter(s), i.e. to one or more multiplexed signals or to one or more transmitters on the terrestrial single-frequency network. Currently, there are multiple possible transmission paths:

- Terrestrial
- Satellite
- Cable
- 2-wire cable (xDSL) as IPTV
- IP/OTT in general (Internet Protocol, Over-the-Top TV).

The multiplexed signals differ for the various transmission paths.

45.1 Playout

The term "playout" should be used with caution: it does not clearly say what it is about. The term is also used in a TV studio, but obviously in the meaning of "studio playout." Studio playout means the equipment formerly known as magnetic recording device. The magnetic recording device has since become history, except for old material. Studio workflow used to be based on film production, then on tape production; it is now just called "workflow" and is file-based. Even home video cameras or mobile phone cameras produce files that, deep down, are mostly based on H-264-like compression algorithms. A studio playout is a video server in a TV studio and is responsible for playing out the recorded materials which then are transmitted immediately or used as a background image in case of chroma keying.

Channel playout inserts recorded program components between live transmissions. These replace the former film scanners used to play 35 mm films. Until just a couple of years ago, channel playouts were cassette tape players, so a full transmission day could be loaded as a stack of tapes onto a transport truck. Today, play lists consist of files and are simply started. The films to be played are stored as files on a server and belong to a channel playout. The channel playouts generating the services for a common multiplex do not necessarily have to be at the same location when they are combined: they can be distributed over the whole country.

This means that today we have:

- So-called "studio playouts" in the studio as materials to be inserted or as background video in case of chroma keying (see news broadcasts, weather map, etc.)

- So-called “channel playouts” as film sources.

Immediately after the video and audio signals exit the studio or the channel playout, their very high data rates (e.g. 1485 Gbit/s or 270 Mbit/s) are decreased, i.e. compressed, to still relatively high but manageable data rates. This process, called source encoding, is performed according to the MPEG or Dolby standard.

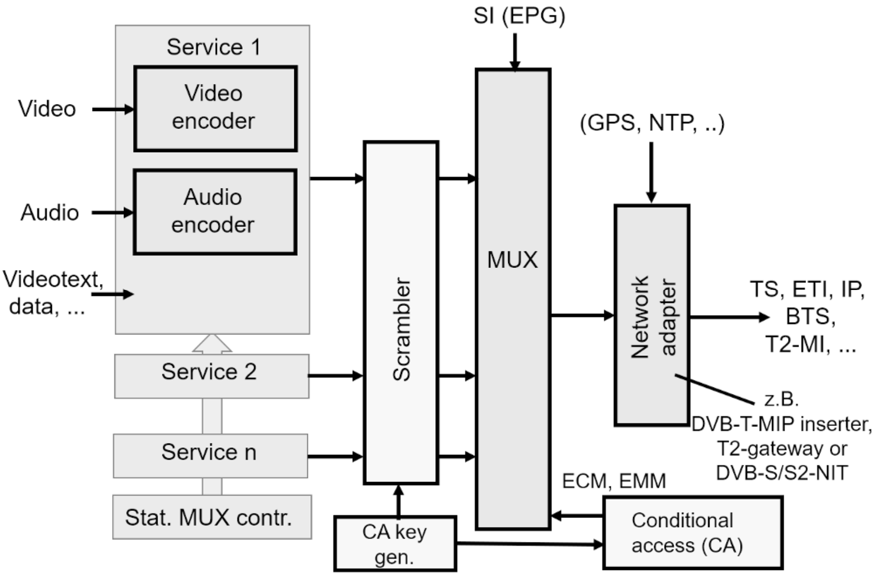


Fig. 45.1. Block diagram of a headend (e.g. for DVB-T or DVB-T2)

45.2 Headend

“Headend” is another term understood differently by broadcasting people. In terrestrial or satellite distribution, headend (Fig. 45.1) is mostly understood as a series of source encoders or “transcoders” followed by a multiplexer. All services originating from the studio or the channel playouts are combined in the multiplexer. The services also contain additional data like teletext, or information for HbbTV, electronic program guide, etc. The stream is matched to the distribution path at the multiplexer output, for instance by adding the appropriate NIT (Network Information Table), and this is where the SFN adapter for controlling a single-frequency network (Fig. 45.1) is found. The output signal is, depending on the standard used, an MPTS stream (Multi Program Transport Stream), i.e. a usual, standard-compliant MPEG-2 transport stream with many programs, or in the case of DAB/DAB+ an ETI (Ensemble Transport Interface) signal, or in the case of DVB-T2 a T2-MI (T2 Modulator Interface) signal, or in the case of ISDB-T a BTS (Broadcast Transport Stream) signal.

Cable network operators, however, use the term “headend” in a broader sense. Cable networks prepare hundreds of channels, so a cable headend includes the following:

- Encoder, transcoder
- Multiplexer
- Modulators
- Combiner for combining all cable channels
- Amplifier transferring the signal to the transmission path
- Electrical/optical conversion

A new method for getting broadcasting content to end users at home or on the move is Over the Top TV, or OTT for short. OTT means the streaming of content over IP to various terminals.

45.3 Distribution Network

The headend feeds the signal to the distribution network. The broadcasting distribution channels used today are terrestrial, broadband, satellite, IPTV over xDSL, and OTT/IP. In a terrestrial distribution network, the multiplexed data signals at the headend are fed to the terrestrial broadcasting stations where the antennas transform them into electromagnetic waves. Transmission power ranges from a few Watts to a few kilowatts. In the case of satellite distribution networks, the headend is usually immediately followed by the uplink equipment consisting of a satellite modulator, a frequency converter to the Ku band, a power amplifier to about 100 W, and the satellite antenna. Terms like “satellite farm,” “earth station”, or “teleport” refer to the places where the signals are radiated to the satellite.

Broadband cable networks use many bundled physical channels to get content to the households, mostly over fiber-optic cables, coax cables, and cascade amplifiers.

xDSL uses twisted pairs known from PSTN to get so-called SPTS streams (Single Program Transport Streams) to the households in parallel with phone or Internet signals, or also via data rate splitting. An SPTS is an MPEG-2 transport stream, but it contains only one program and the tables it requires. The data rate usually varies, and the SPTS time stamps are mostly not corrected (causing PCR jitter).

OTT targets Internet-connected devices like Windows PCs, Apple iOS devices, or Android devices. Accordingly, an OTT headend has one service input and multiple outputs for broadcasting the same content in various streaming formats and at various data rates.

45.4 Summary

Broadcasting refers to the way content consisting of purely music, music and speech, or music, speech and data combined is distributed from one point to a multitude of users in a point-to-multipoint scheme. The transmitter is at the center of this star-like topology, with the receivers around it. The transmitter has no information about the number of devices receiving its signal, except for IPTV and OTT. The medium between the transmitter and the receivers is the distribution network. Digital broadcasting has introduced new terms discussed in this chapter, like

- Studio playout
- Channel playout
- Headend
- IPTV
- OTT (Over the Top TV)
- SFN adapter.

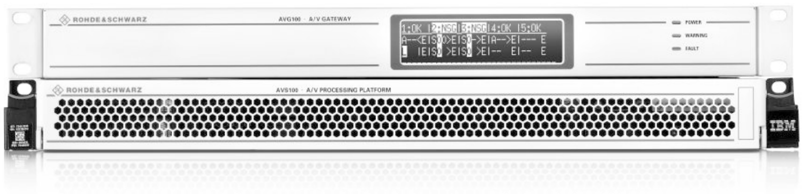


Fig. 45.2. Example for a modern compact broadcast headend (DVB-T, DVB-T2, DVB-S/S2, ISDB-T, MPEG-2, MPEG-4/AVC/H.264, H.265/HEVC, MPEG-1-LII-Audio, Dolby AC-3, etc.). Rohde&Schwarz AVHE100 [AVHE100], [R&S]

Bibliography: [AVHE100], [R&S], [OTT]

46 Terrestrial Broadcasting Transmitters and Transmitter Stations

This chapter describes the design and operation of terrestrial broadcasting and transmitting stations. The geographical location of a terrestrial broadcasting station is always chosen to suit its coverage area. The exact location depends on the

- Coverage service contract
- Frequency range (longwave, medium wave, shortwave, V/UHF, etc.)
- Topography and geography of the site

$$d = \sqrt{2rh + h^2} \approx \sqrt{2rh} \approx \sqrt{12800km \cdot h}$$

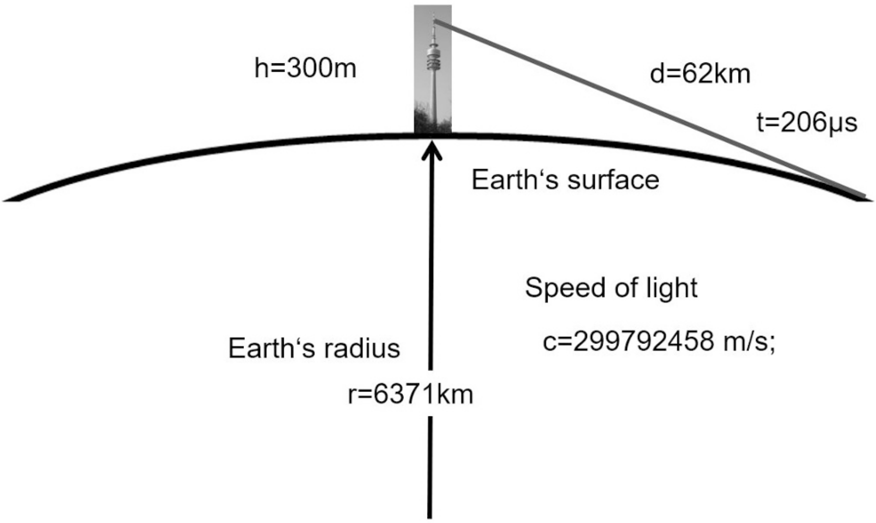


Fig. 46.1. Optical horizon of a 300 m tall transmit tower

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_46

In the case of longwave, medium wave, and shortwave transmitters, the properties and hence the conductivity of the soil are of great importance. This is why these transmitters are usually located at sites with a high groundwater level. From a certain frequency upwards (beyond shortwave, i.e. about 30 MHz), the waves exhibit mainly line-of-sight propagation. For this reason, band I, II, III, IV, and V transmitters, i.e. VHF FM radio and TV transmitters are mostly located at geographically elevated sites (hills, mountains). Accordingly, tall transmission masts are needed at low elevations (e.g. 300 m). Many conventional directional radio towers are spaced 50 to 70 km from each other since this is the horizon distance under quasi-optical propagation conditions. Most of these towers, initially used for analog telephony, were also used to accommodate additional V/UHF and TV broadcasting antennas on their top. On level terrain and with a tower height of 300 m, the horizon is at about 60 km, which, based on the speed of light, yields a propagation time for the electric signal of 3.3 µs per km, i.e. approx. 200 µs at 60 km. This is the guard interval found in terrestrial OFDM.

46.1 Modulation Signal Feed

The modulating signal or distribution signal is fed from the source (studio, headend, etc.) to the transmitters over

- Directional microwave radio link
- Fiber
- Satellite
- Wire

via redundant paths. The distribution signal is generated in the so-called headend, understood in digital broadcasting as the source encoder (MPEG encoder, Dolby encoder, etc.), the multiplexer and the SFN adapter (also called MIP inserter in DVB-T). For single-frequency networks, a time stamp must be added (e.g. to the MIP in the case of DVB-T) to the distribution signal before it is passed to the distribution network at the output of the headend. Burying a cable is costly, and in mountains it is not even advisable due to avalanches, so the signal is mostly passed "over the air" via directional radio links. Satellite connections, while highly reliable, are costly because transponder renting is expensive. Also, SFN synchronization when using satellite feed requires dynamic propagation time compensation due to the varying satellite orbit positions, especially since the satellites used for such purposes are often near their end of life due to cost considerations. Transmitter buildings typically have a dedicated area (rack, room, etc.) for receiving the distribution signal coming from the distribution path. It is common to have redundant distribution paths (e.g. a second microwave link, directional reception from other stations in the case of VHF FM radio, etc.). The modulating signals are also often monitored (distribution signal monitoring) and then fed to the modulators in the transmitter racks.

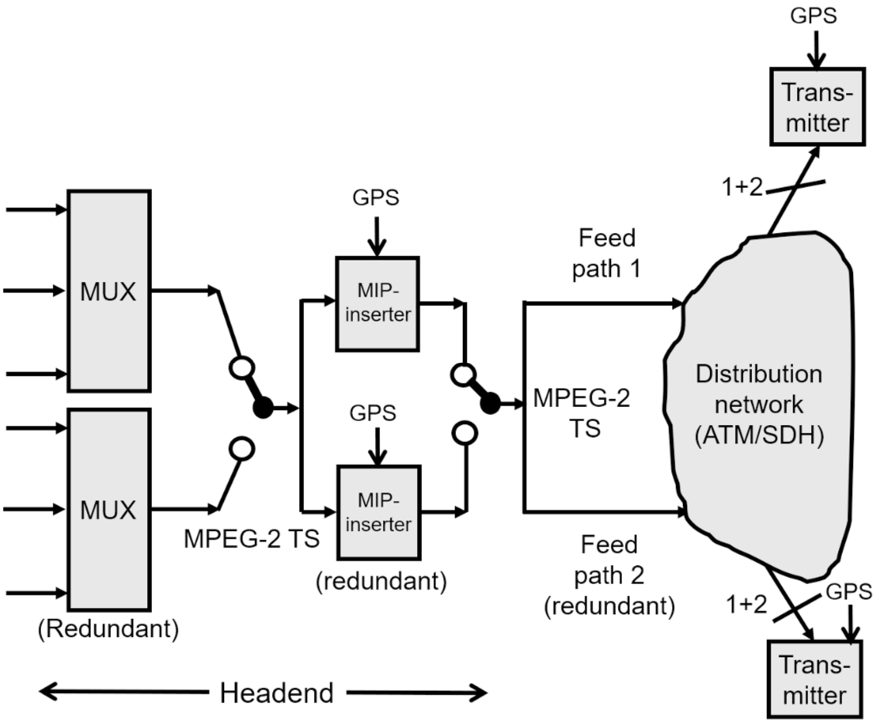


Fig. 46.2. DVB-T distribution network: headend (encoder, multiplexer, MIP inserter), feed path with redundant path, transmission network (single-frequency network, SFN) with GPS synchronization

46.2 Terrestrial Broadcast-Transmit Station

A terrestrial broadcast-transmit station consists of the following parts and rooms:

- Signal distribution section (incoming modulating signals)

- Transmitter room
- Cooling
- Antenna combiner/filter
- Transmitter control room
- Power supply, diesel generator / generator
- Social rooms, and
- Broadcasting antenna

Fig. 46.3. Transmission station Wendelstein, Bayerischer Rundfunk, directional radio antennas and cable duct for the transmission cable clearly recognizable

Large transmitter sites have separate rooms (see Fig. 46.4.) for the various technical segments, while some have all the technical facilities housed in one or more containers. Many transmit stations used to be manned around the clock, but currently on-site personnel is increasingly rare. Many transmitters are remotely monitored and controlled. The components and the technology of the transmitter site are detailed in the following chapters.

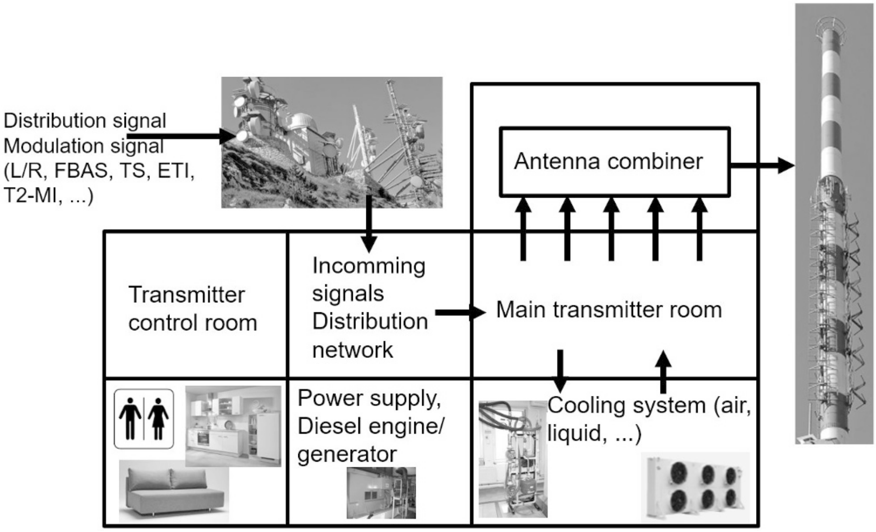


Fig. 46.4. Structure of a terrestrial transmit station: entry point of the modulating signals (distribution), main transmit room, antenna combiner with mask filters, cooling system, control room, power supply, transmission antenna system, lounges in manned stations

46.3 Modulator, Exciter

The modulator, the main functional unit of the exciter receives the signal to be transferred and modulates it onto the RF signal. The format of the modulating signal depends on the transmission standard: V/UHF FM, analog TV, digital TV such as DVB-T, DVB-T2, ISDB-T, etc. Consequently, it can be one of the following:

- Analog audio signal, mono
- Analog audio signal, stereo L/R
- V/UHF FM stereo multiplex signal
- Analog FBAS signal with associated analog audio signal

- MPEG-2 transport stream
- DAB ETI signal
- T2 MI signal
- ISDB-T BTS signal, etc.

Fig. 46.5. DVB-T transmitter racks, transmitter station Wendelstein, Bayerischer Rundfunk

The RF signal at the modulator output is already in the correct frequency range but with a very low power of a few milliwatts or watts; it is, however, sufficient for driving the transmit amplifier. This latter one is mostly preceded by a power splitter that divides the modulator's output signal into two branches with correct power and phasing for the amplifiers.

In addition to the above, the OFDM modulator of a single-frequency network (DVB-T, DVB-T2, DAB/DAB+, ISDB-T, etc.) also gets a high-precision 1 PPS clock signal and a 10 MHz reference signal from a GPS reference frequency source.

The exciter includes further functions in addition to modulation, and consists of the following components (see Fig. 46.8.):

- Input interface for the modulating input signals on the main and redundant signal path
- Modulator
- Interface for the time and frequency reference
- Optional integrated GPS receiver
- Synthesizer/frequency locking/reference frequency source
- Nonlinear predistortion stage
- Linear predistortion stage
- Output amplifier

Nonlinear predistortion serves to compensate as much as possible the remaining nonlinearities of the subsequent power amplifiers. This is typically done in the IQ path by using correction tables, which are set during the adjustment of the transmitter. Predistortion itself is performed in DTV/DAB systems by observing the shoulders and lowering them to a good shoulder distance. This was initially performed manually in the transmitter test facility, but is being increasingly replaced by automatic equalization. In analog television, equalization criteria are obtained by observing special measurement parameters like luminance nonlinearity, differential gain, differential phase, and ICPM. Manual linear predistortion serves to compensate the amplitude response and group delay response of the subsequent band pass filters (mask filter, antenna combiner).

46.4 GPS Time/Frequency Reference

Transmitter frequencies used to be derived from highly precise frequency sources like rubidium references or via a time signal transmission (DCF77); currently, this is performed exclusively by using GPS time and frequency references (Fig. 46.6.). These GPS receivers use the Global Positioning System to provide time information, a 1PPS clock, and a usually highly precise 10 MHz reference signal. These GPS reference sources normally consist of a GPS antenna, a GPS receiver with a 1 PPS (1 pulse per second) output signal and a 10 MHz VCO (Voltage Controlled Oscillator) locked to the 1PPS signal by a phase locked loop (PLL). The "trick" here is to lock on as fast as possible in order to provide a stable 1PPS time reference and a 10 MHz clock signal, and to maintain them for as long as possible even if the GPS signal is lost.

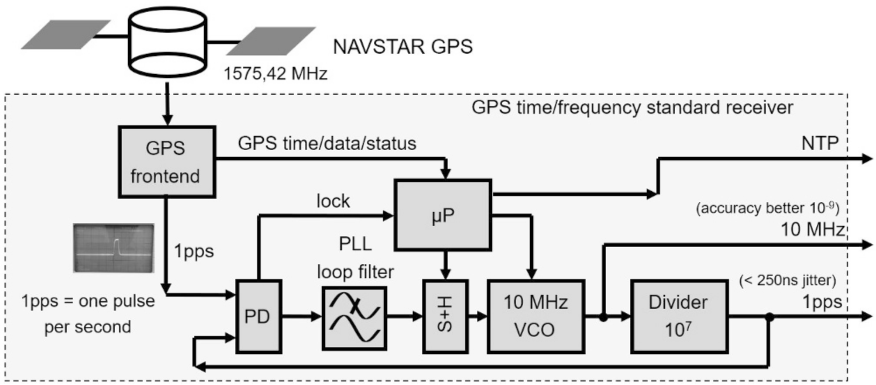


Fig. 46.6. GPS time/frequency reference source

46.5 Transmitter Power Amplifiers

This section describes the fundamentals of power amplifiers, their implementation, and their properties when used in terrestrial transmission facilities. Until recently, tube power amplifiers have occasionally appeared in V/UHF radio, but have completely disappeared by now with the advent of digital TV broadcasting standards. Since the 90s, all new development work in the entire terrestrial broadcasting area has been based on semiconductors only. The only survivors are traveling wave tube amplifiers in satellite broadcasting used in ground (uplink) stations and on board of satellites. In the terrestrial segment, the devices types based on vacuum tube technology were

- Triode
- Klystron
- IOT

with impressive dimensions and implementations. Their drawbacks were primarily their size, waste heat, the need for a high voltage power supply as well as limited lifecycles of a few tens of thousands of hours, and the related necessity to have a redundant transmitter on hot standby. For a long time, using transistors for high power applications seemed unimaginable due to the initially small power capability of transistors and the lack of power amplifiers suitable for the required frequency ranges of VHF and UHF. This has changed primarily thanks to the appearance of MOSFET technology. In contrast to the tube power amplifier, a solid state amplifier contains many active components in parallel, and the failure of a single transistor does not cause the entire power amplifier to fail, only the transmission power drops in accordance with the following formula:

$$P = P_{nom} \left((m-n)/m\right)^2;$$

where m is the number of combined sources, and
n is the number of failed sources.

The output power is reduced by more than the power delivered by the failed elements because part of the remaining power is absorbed by load balancing resistors due to unbalanced coupling. The following tables show the power remaining after failure of one or more transistors or amplifiers.

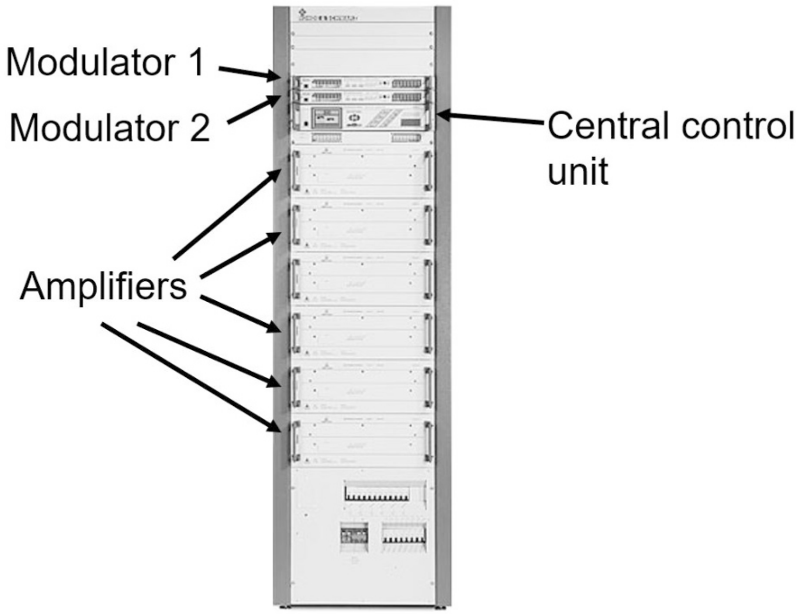


Fig. 46.7. Design of a terrestrial transmitter (example: R&S NV8000) [R&S]; 19 inch rack with control transmitter (exciter, modulator), redundant control transmitter, control unit/central operating unit (CCU), amplifier modules, power distribution

Table 46. 1. Example: amplifier with 16 power transistors of which N have failed

N	P [%]	P [dB]
0	100	0
1	88	-0.6
2	77	-1.2
3	66	-1.8
4	56	-2.5
5	47	-3.2
6	39	-4.1

Table 46.2. Example: remaining output power of a transmitter with 6 amplifier modules of which N have failed

N	P [%]	P [dB]
0	100	0
1	69	-1.6
2	44	-3.5
3	25	-6.0
4	11	-9.5
5	3	-16
6	0	---

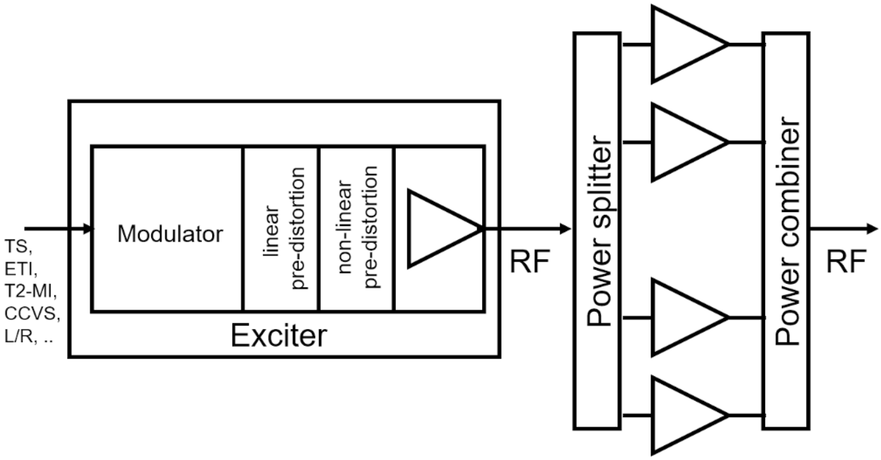


Fig. 46.8. Block diagram of a terrestrial broadcasting station; modulating signal input, exciter with predistortion, power splitter, amplifier, power combiner, RF output

This means that, in contrast to tube technology, expensive redundant systems are mostly not necessary. Power amplifiers are divided into many single-transistor amplifier stages combined via a power couplers (0 degree and 90 degree couplers, hybrid couplers). The following section describes the characteristics of a solid state power amplifier, specifically

- the transistor technology used,
- the amplifier classes,
- the splitter and coupler technology,
- the RF circuit design (stripline, coax), and
- the cooling technology.

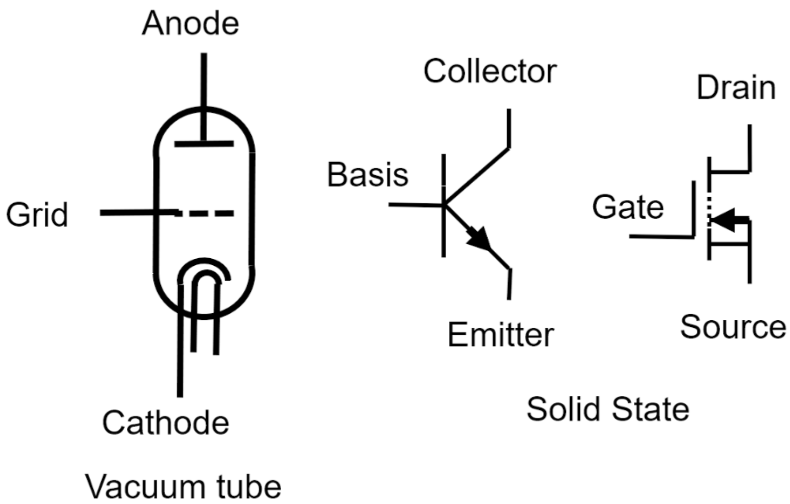


Fig. 46.9. Active electronic component types

46.5.1 Transistor Technology

Although the transistor, actually the field effect transistor, was already invented in the 1920s, real use only began with the appearance of the first bipolar transistor in the 1950s, developed by the Bell Laboratories (Shockley, Pearson, 1947). It began to spread widely in the 1960s and then gradually displaced electron tubes. Its advantages compared to tubes were much less waste heat, primarily low-voltage operation, and significantly smaller size requiring much less space. The transistors are categorized into (Fig. 46.10.)

- Bipolar transistors (NPN, PNP)
- Junction field-effect transistors (junction FETs, NJFET, PJFET)
- Metal-oxide semiconductor MOS-FETs (NMOS-FET, PMOSFET)

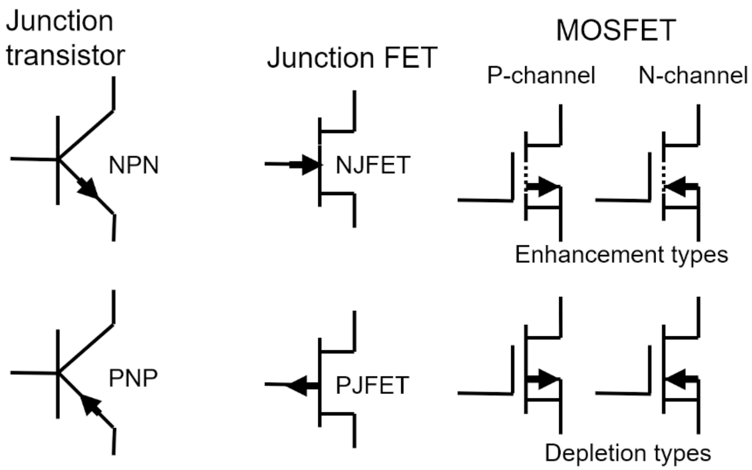


Fig. 46.10. Overview of transistor technologies

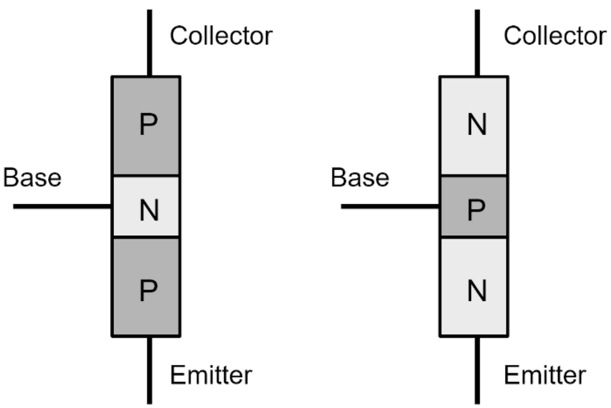


Fig. 46.11. Structure of bipolar and junction transistors (PNP and NPN)

The semiconductor materials used are categorized into

- Silicon technology
- Gallium arsenide technology
- (and the earlier) Germanium technology

The material most used today is silicon (i.e. sand, silicon dioxide), the most abundant material found on the Earth's surface.

Transistors are currently mostly manufactured on a silicon wafer which serves as the substrate for building various n-doped and p-doped thin films (Fig. 46.11.) as well as layers of metals or metal oxides. This technology can be used to produce bipolar devices as well as MOSFETs, depending on the layers built on the wafer.

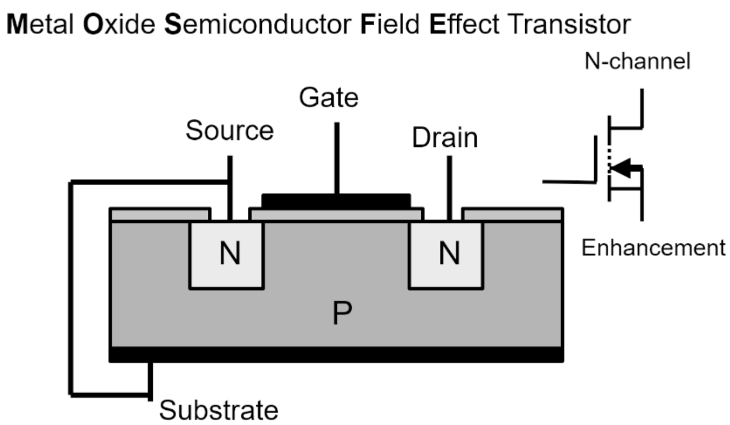


Fig. 46.12. Structure of an Enhancement MOSFET

Bipolar transistors come in two types: NPN and PNP. For instance audio output stages are constructed of NPN-PNP transistor pairs to build push-pull amplifiers. However, the applications discussed in this chapter use MOSFET transistors. There are two kinds of field effect transistors (FETs): junction FETs and MOSFETs (Metal Oxide Semiconductor). A junction FET can be an N-JFET or a P-JFET, but only N-JFETs are used in practice. Since JFETs are practically only used for small signal levels, they won't be discussed here either. We will limit this discussion to MOSFETs, of which there are two types: N-channel and P-channel. If a MOSFET has an N-doped or P-doped channel that is non-conductive when no gate voltage is present, then it is called enhancement MOSFET (Fig. 46.12.), while if it has an N-doped or P-doped channel that is conductive when no gate voltage is present, then it is a depletion MOSFET. One end of the channel is the source, the other end is the drain. The source connection is also the connection for the reference potential of the third connection called the gate. The gate is an isolated electrode located on a metal oxide island between the source and drain, and is used to control (increase or decrease) the conductivity between the source and the drain. Depending on the type of doping (N or P), the control voltage to be applied to the gate is positive or negative. The control voltage applied to the gate opens the channel between source and drain for an enhancement MOSFET, or closes it for a depletion MOSFET. The applications discussed here typically use N-channel devices, i.e. a positive control voltage applied to the gate will close the channel; in the absence of control voltage, the MOSFET is open, i.e. non-conductive. The metal oxide isolation results in high resistance between gate and source; this is a major advantage in terms of input impedance, but has a drawback: high voltages caused by static electricity may break through the gate isolation and thereby destroy the MOSFET. For this reason, ESD protection equipment must be used (appropriate clothing, ESD shoes, ESD grounding bracelets) to avoid or ground accumulated charges on the body when handling such circuitry.

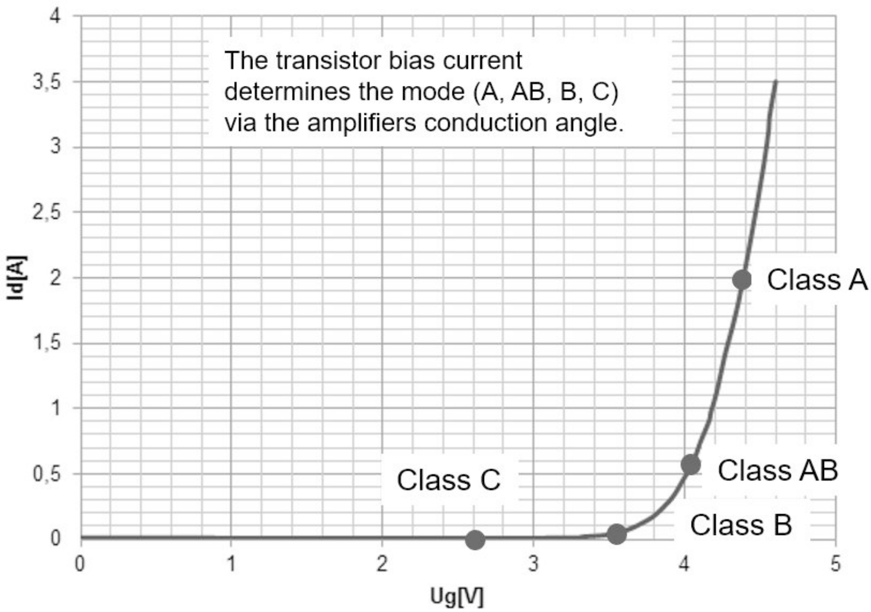


Fig. 46.13. Characteristic of a MOSFET transistor with operating points for Class A, AB, B, and C marked (drain current vs. gate voltage)

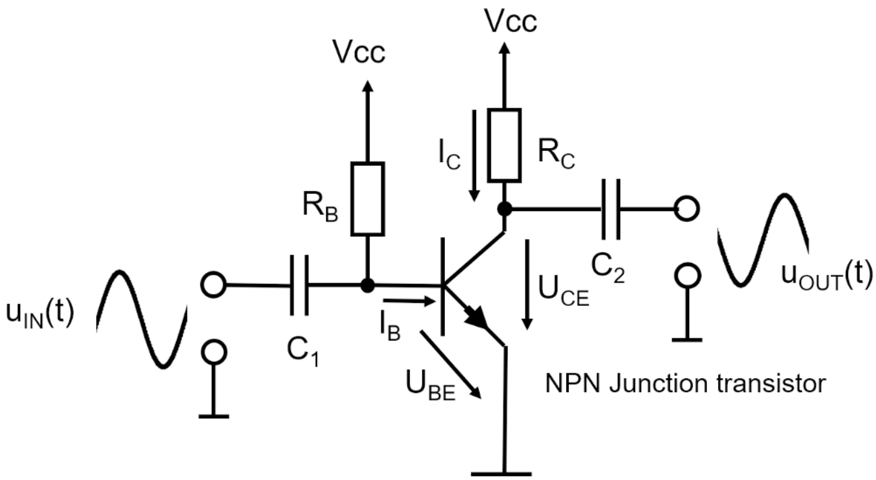


Fig. 46.14. RF amplifier implemented with an NPN transistor

46.5.2 Power Amplifier Classes

The class of a transistor amplifier depends on the transistor's bias current (Fig. 46.13). This is independent of the transistor technology, i.e. it applies to both bipolar and MOSFET devices. The amplifier class determines the fundamental properties of the amplifier, including the following important parameters:

- Bandwidth
- Linearity
- Output power
- Signal gain
- Efficiency

The amplifier class (Figs. 46.15, 46.16, 46.17) can be

- Class A
- Class B
- Class AB
- Class C)

The amplifier classes are distinguished from each other by their so-called conduction angle. This is determined by the operating point on the transistor characteristics, which is dependent on the bias current flowing through the transistor as set by the circuit design. There are further amplifier classes – D, E, etc. – that belong to the category of switching mode amplifiers. However, since these are only used in longwave, medium wave and shortwave broadcasting that are not the focus of this book, they will not be further dealt with. Just a brief description on a nutshell: in Class D power amplifiers, e.g. in high-power medium wave transmitters, the voltage of the output stage is controlled by the modulating signal in the form of pulse width modulation. The RF carrier fully closes and opens the transistors of the output stage, "chopping" the supply voltage. This method yields efficiencies of around 90 percent. The subsequent sections explain amplifier classes A, B, C, and AB. Let us start with the basic circuit of a simple transistor amplifier.

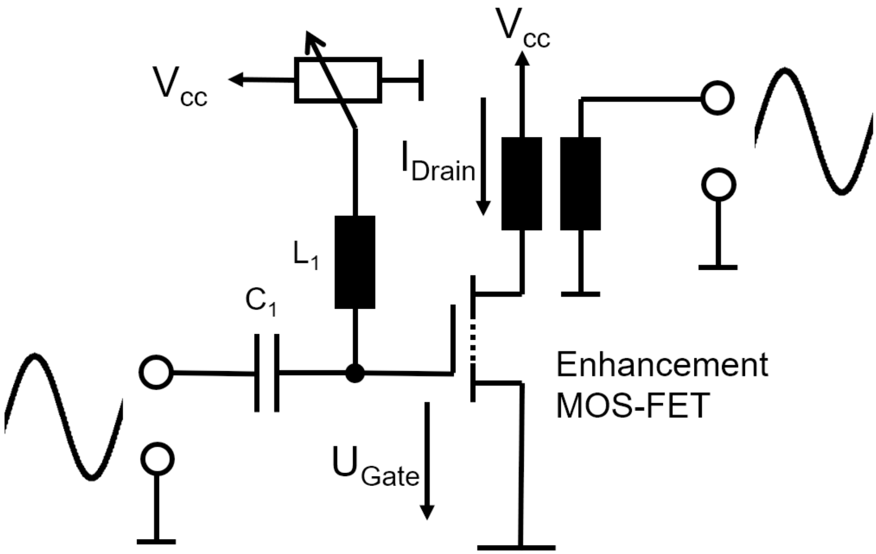


Fig. 46.15. Basic circuit of a MOSFET amplifier

46.5.2.1 Basic Circuit of a Transistor Amplifier

For the basic circuit of a transistor amplifier (Fig. 46.15.), let us first consider an RF amplifier using bipolar technology in a common emitter circuit. Instead of a resistive load impedance, we have an RF transducer in the collector circuit; the base is connected to the operating voltage via a resistor R_B; the RF input signal is injected into the base via the coupling capacitor C_1. The resistor R_B sets a specific bias current I_{Bias} (as a DC mean current value of I_C) in the transistor's collector circuit. In the RF amplifier design, an RF frequency transformer is used instead of the collector resistance R_C. A comparable circuit can be also implemented using a MOSFET transistor by simply replacing the bipolar transistor with a MOSFET (in this case an N-channel enhancement type) (Fig. 46.15.). The drain circuit contains the RF transformer; the gate is biased via a voltage divider (in this case a potentiometer) to ensure a specific bias voltage that causes a specific bias current I_{Bias} through the drain circuit. The RF control signal is once again injected via the coupling capacitor C1. The bias voltage (DC voltage) is AC-decoupled via the coil L_1. The output signal for both the bipolar and the MOSFET circuit appears on the output winding of the RF transformer. The winding ratio of the output transformer can be used to match the circuit's the output impedance (e.g. 50 Ohms). In RF amplifiers, 50 Ohm impedance matching to the transistor connections is required in both the gate and the drain circuit.

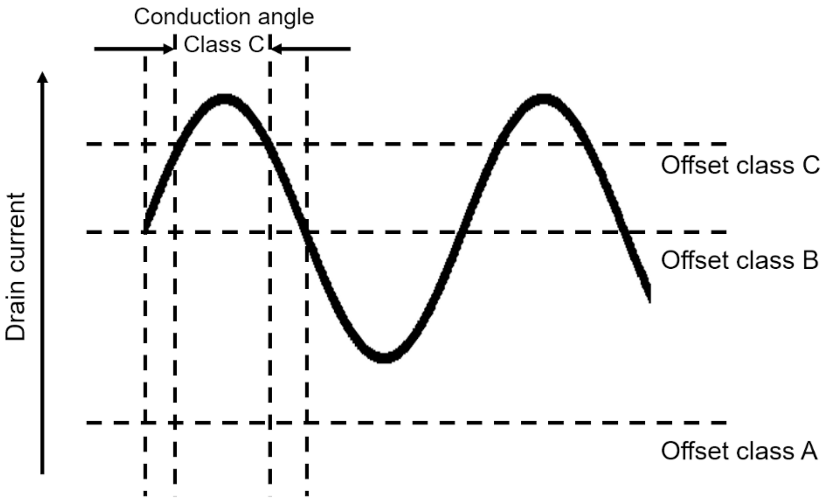


Fig. 46.16. Bias currents and conduction angles

46.5.2.2 Class A Amplifiers

The core circuit of a transistor RF amplifier is called a Class A amplifier if the bias current of the transistor is set such that the transistor is in the linear part of its characteristics (Fig. 46.13.). In this case, the bias current I_{Bias} is relatively high even if the circuit is not driven with any RF signal, which in turn means that the efficiency is relatively low. When an RF input signal drives the transistor, the amplified output signal appears on the output RF transformer. This concludes the discussion of the basic RF amplifier circuit. A Class A amplifier is highly linear, i.e. its harmonics content is relatively small. In a Class A amplifier, current flows through the transistor in each half-wave of the input signal; in this case, the so-called conduction angle is 360 degrees (Figs. 46.16., 46.17.).

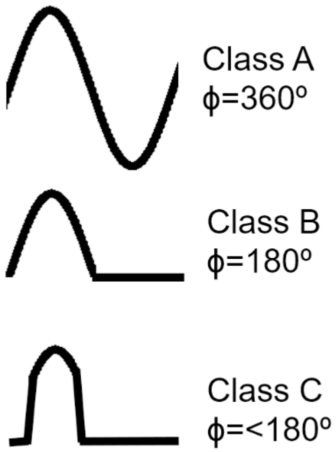


Fig. 46.17. Conduction angles for Classes A, B, and C

46.5.2.3 Class C Amplifiers

In a Class C amplifier, the bias current is very low or practically zero, i.e. the transistor amplifier stage operates in the nonlinear part of the transistor characteristics and conducts only when an RF signal drives it. The transistor is fully opened only during a certain part of the half wave. The conduction angle is less than 180 degrees. A Class C amplifier is highly nonlinear, it has a relatively high efficiency, and practically always needs an output filter to suppress the harmonics.

46.5.2.4 Class B Amplifiers

A Class B amplifier differs from a Class C amplifier only in that it has a somewhat higher bias current and a conduction angle of more than 180 degrees. Its operating point is slightly closer to the linear part of the transistor's characteristics.

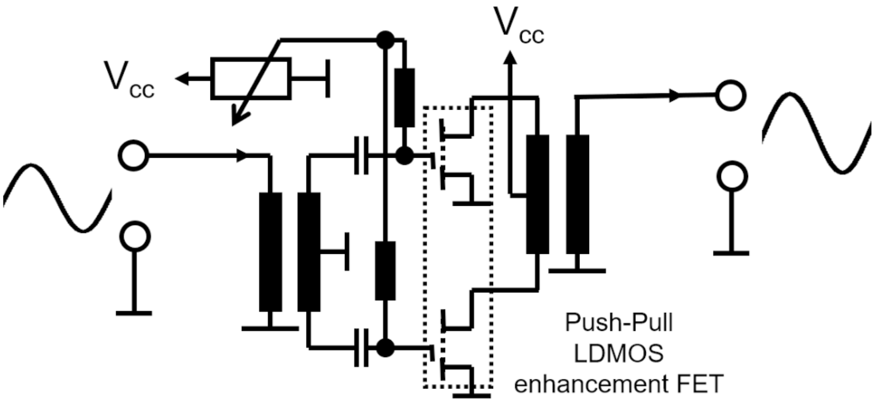


Fig. 46.18. MOSFET Class AB amplifier with a transistor pair in push-pull configuration

46.5.2.5 Class AB Amplifiers

Class AB amplifiers are better known as push-pull amplifiers (Fig. 48.18). They comprise two complementary transistors in push-pull configuration, i.e. they are alternately active. If bipolar transistors are used, e.g. in audio output stages, then one part of the pair is NPN, the other is PNP. The bias current of both transistors is set such that each operates at the lower end of its own linear characteristics. The load characteristics of both transistors of the push-pull pair are overlapped with appropriate bias currents to achieve optimum linearity for the entire circuit. This can also be done with MOSFETs. In this case, so-called double transistors of the same type in a common package are used. Push-pull operation is achieved using an input transformer with a common input winding and two opposite-phase output windings. Similar output transformers are found in the drain circuits of the transistors. The efficiency of class AB amplifiers is higher than that of Class A amplifiers, but worse than in case of Class C amplifiers. Typical applications of Class AB amplifiers in broadcasting include

- Output stages for analog television transmitters
- Output stages of DVB-T, DVB-T2, ISDB-T, ATSC, DAB, DTMB transmitters

Typical DTV output stages implemented with Class AB amplifiers have an efficiency of about 20 percent (or slightly higher). Although Class AB amplifiers are highly linear, they still need predistortion and a harmonics filter in DTV and DAB applications to meet the specified requirements.

46.5.3 Power Combiners and Power Dividers

Power dividers are used to split the amplifier driver power between various amplifier blocks, while power combiners combine the output powers of the individual amplifier blocks with as little losses as possible. Dividers come as:

- Zero degree combiners (Wilkinson power splitters) (Fig. 46.19)
- 90 degree combiners (Fig. 46.20)

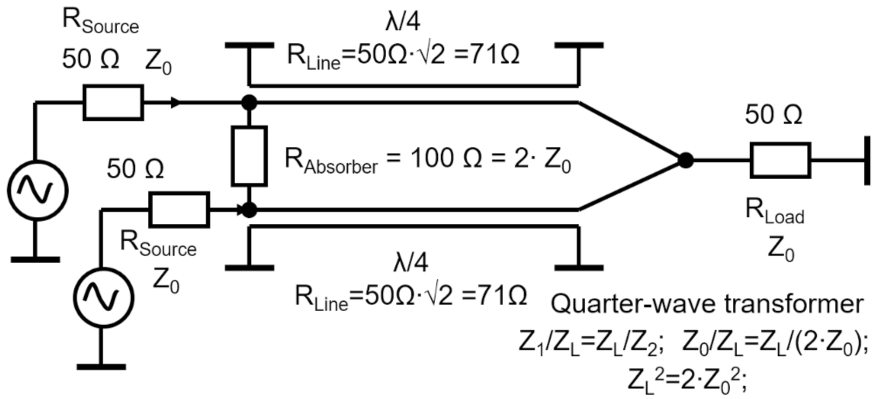


Fig. 46.19. Wilkinson power splitter

46.5.3.1 Wilkinson power splitter

A Wilkinson power splitter (Fig. 46.19.), consisting of several series-connected (approximately λ / 4-long) cable segments of different impedances, some of which are connected to a Y node, is used to combine input signals with the correct characteristic impedances (power combiner) or split output signals (power divider). There are also so-called load balancing resistors "floating" between the inputs or outputs. This arrangement can be used to divide a signal into two or more paths, delivering half or a fraction of the input power. The divided signals are in phase (0 degrees difference). The same arrangement in reverse can be used as a power combiner. The advantage of the Wilkinson splitter/combiner is that the split/combined signals are in phase; its drawback is the floating load balancing resistor that can be technologically difficult to implement. The operation of the Wilkinson power splitter is easily explained through the quarter-wave transformer (see Fig. 46.19.). In our example, two 50 Ω branches need to be transformed to 100 Ω using a λ/4 long cable. The cables, each with a characteristic impedance of $\sqrt{2} \cdot 50\Omega = 71\Omega$ are combined in the Y junction. The two impedances, each transformed to 100 Ω, yield a combined impedance of 50 Ω.

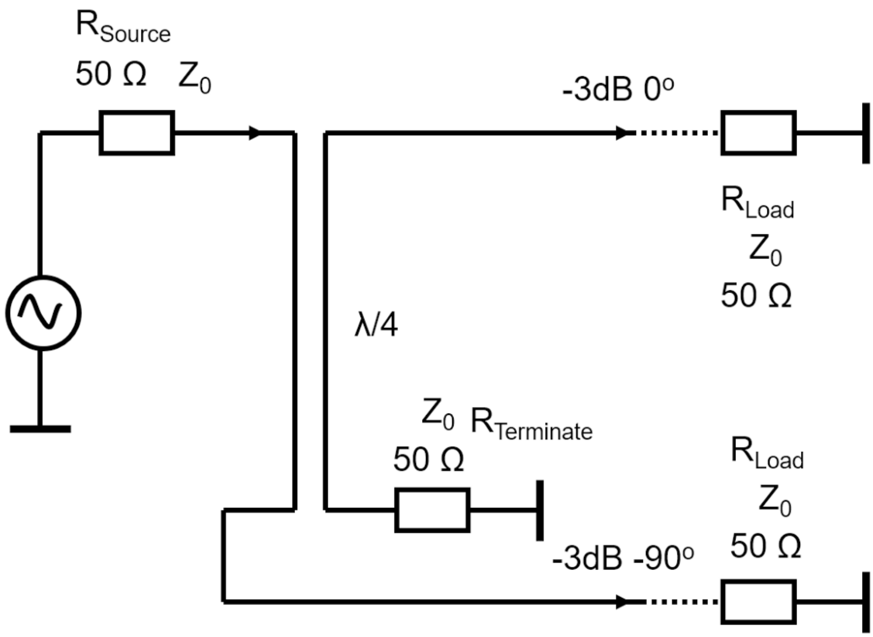


Fig. 46.20. 90 degree splitter

46.5.3.2 90 Degree Combiner

A 90 degree combiner (Figs. 46.20., 46.21., 46.22. (diagram icon), 46.23.) consists of two parallel wire segments (each about λ/4 long) coupled by running parallel to each other. A signal fed into one end of these parallel wires, where it can also be tapped (Fig. 46.20.). Additionally however, part of the signal is coupled onto the parallel wire, so a certain proportion of the signal appears also on the parallel wire. The other end of the coupled wires must be terminated with the characteristic impedance. The energy that appears on the output of the coupled wires depends on the geometry of the device (coupling length, distance between the two coupled wires). An arrangement which delivers 3 dB smaller level on the two output ports than the input power, i.e. half the input power, is called a 3 dB 90 degree combiner. One signal is phase-shifted by 90 degrees relative to the output signal, the other is in phase with the input signal, i.e. it has a phase shift of 0 degrees. This arrangement can be used to divide a signal into two equal proportions (power divider, Fig. 46.20.). The same arrangement can also be used in reverse mode to combine two signals (power combiner., Fig. 46.21.). The advantage of the 90 degree combiner is that the load balancing resistance is connected to the earth and is hence easy to implement; the disadvantage is that there is a phase difference of 90 degrees between the signals to be combined or divided.

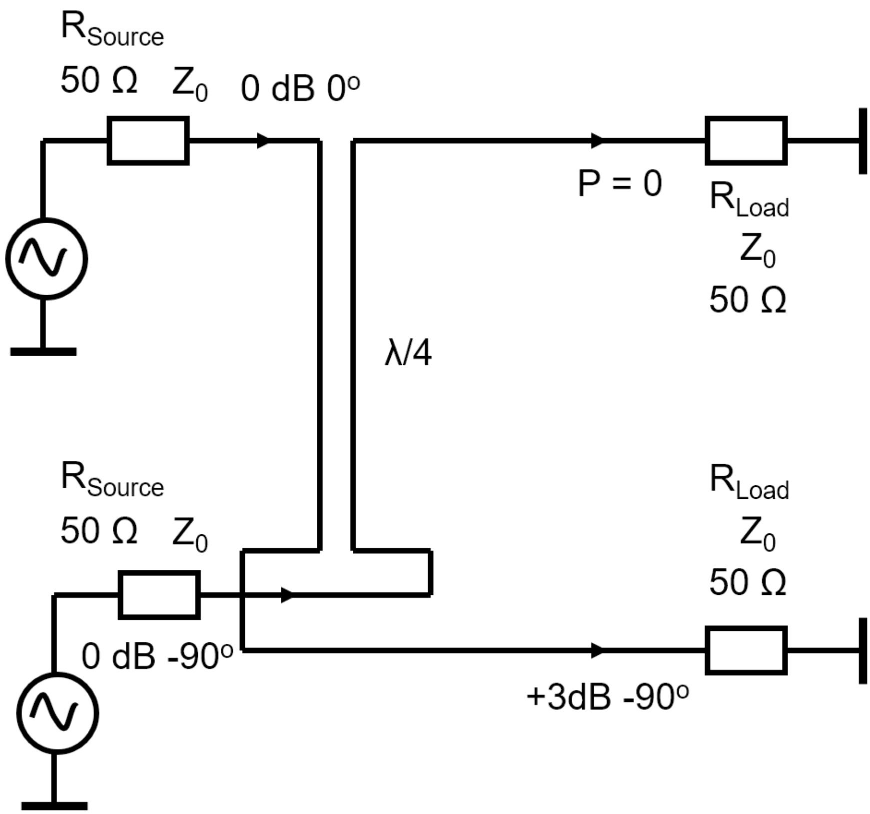


Fig. 46.21. 90 degree 3 dB power combiner

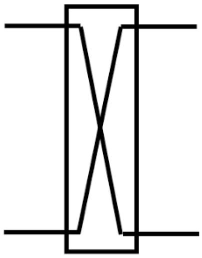


Fig. 46.22. Diagram icon of a 90 degree 3 dB combiner

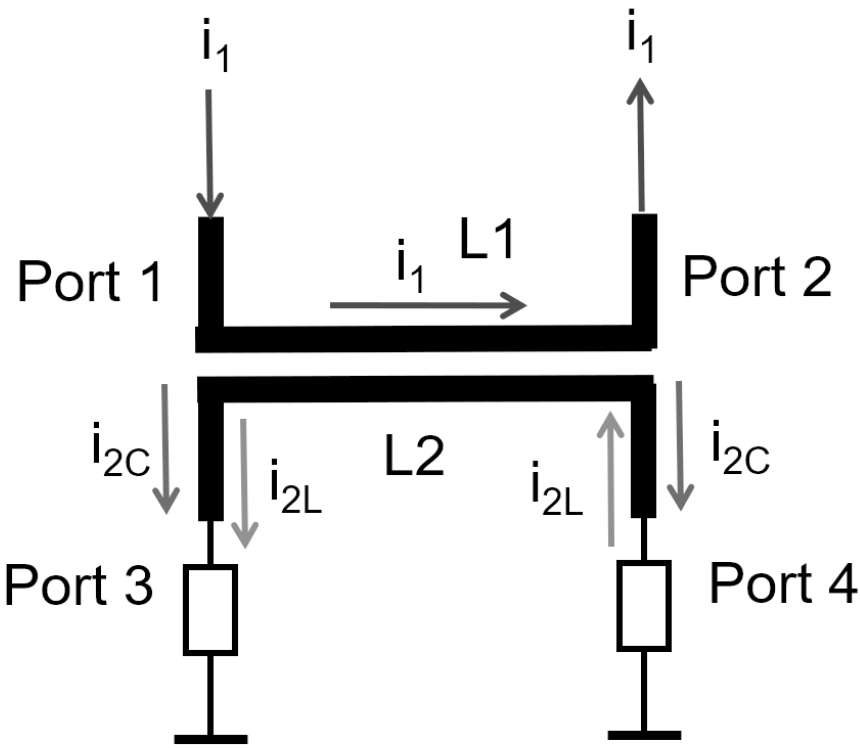


Fig. 46.23. Principle of operation of the 90 degree directional coupler

46.5.3.3 Principle of Operation of the 90 Degree Directional Coupler

When examining the physical operation of a 90 degree directional coupler (Fig. 46.23.), it is important to understand that the energy coupled between the two parallel lines consists of a capacitive and an inductive component. The main line is the line between ports 1 and 2; the coupled line is the line between ports 3 and 4. Port 1 and port 3 are exactly opposite to port 2 and port 4, respectively. The current i_1 in the main wire causes a capacitive crosstalk current of i_{2c} and an inductive crosstalk current of i_{2L}, both flowing in the coupled line. Current i_{2c} is directed out of the port into both line terminations. In contrast, current i_{2L} flows into one port and out of the other. When designing the device, care must be taken to ensure that i_{2c} and i_{2L} have the same absolute value; this can be achieved by the appropriately choosing the cable length, the line width and the distance between the lines; i.e. the current caused by inductive crosstalk must be the same as the current caused by capacitive crosstalk. If this condition is met, then the currents i_{2c} and i_{2L} add up on port 3 opposite to the feed port 1, and cancel each other out on port 4. The two parallel lines now form a directional coupler that exhibits the same coupling properties regardless of which port is used for feeding.

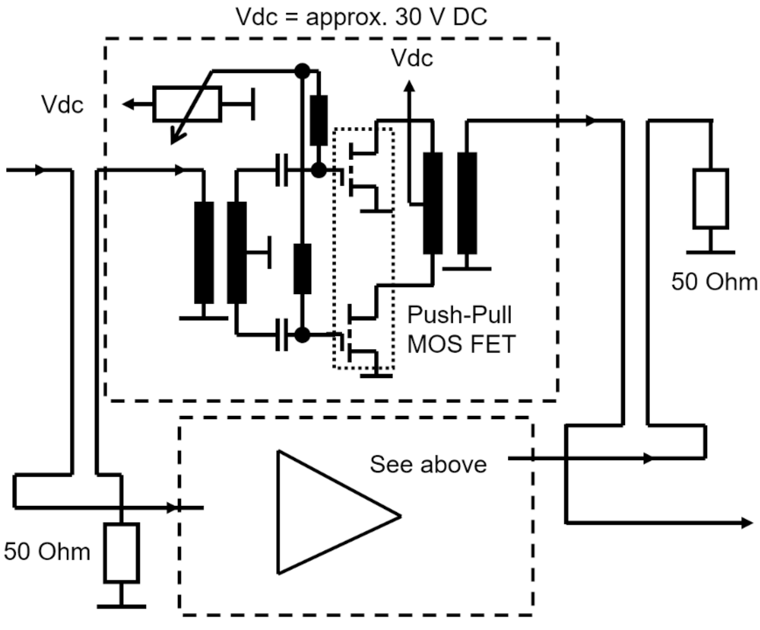


Fig. 46.24. Double amplifier stage using coupler technology

46.5.3.4 Practical Application of Power Combiners

Both the Wilkinson power splitter and the 90 degree combiner are used to divide and add signals in power amplifiers. The phase relationships and power of the signals to be added or divided must be set accurately, otherwise the arrangement won't function as expected. Mainly 90 degree couplers and dividers are used on the power amplifier boards. RF power amplifiers typically amplify the approximately 0 dBm input signal to a few watts, then divide the amplified signal among many paths, ensuring the same time delay and power for each. These signals are then fed to many individual single-stage amplifiers. The parallel amplifier stages amplify the signals to a few hundred Watts, after which all the output signals with equal power are added up in-phase by power combiners (Figs. 46.24., 46.25.).

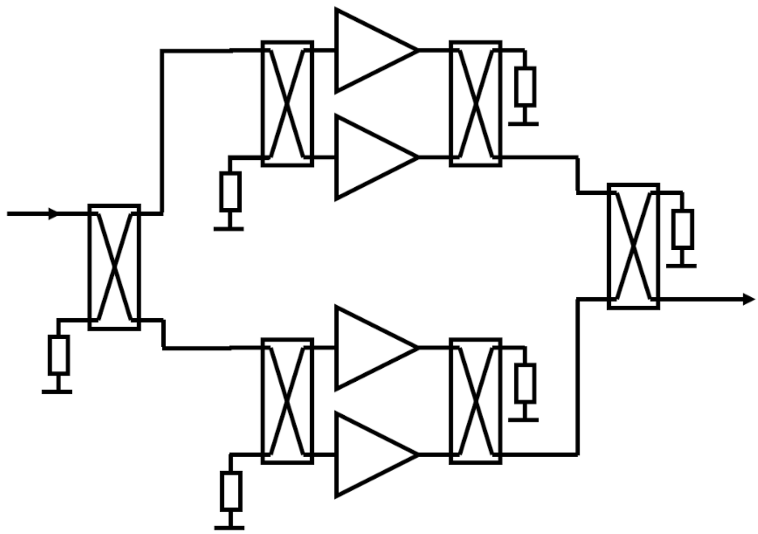


Fig. 46.25. Using couplers to add amplifier signals

46.5.4 Transmission Lines

Amplifier stages route the RF signals by transmission lines of different types depending on the requirements:

- Coaxial lines (Fig. 46.26.)
- Stripline (Fig. 46.27.)

- Microstrip line (Fig. 46.28.)
- Suspended Substrate (Fig. 46.29.)

The rated impedance is mostly 50 Ohm; exceptions are transformer parts, transformer cables, and capacitors and inductors implemented by transmission lines. They type of transmission line used in the amplifier depends on the requirements. Coaxial cables can be used to transfer practically any power and voltage levels; they are used at the input and output of the amplifier. The amplifier input receives the RF signal (a few mW, e.g. 0 dBm) via thin and flexible 50 Ohm coaxial cables. The amplified output signal, ranging from a few Watts to several kWatts, is then routed through thick flexible coaxial cables or a so-called rigid line, 50 Ohm in both cases, to filters, combiners, and finally to the antenna. The higher the power to transmit, the larger the cross section required for the core of the coaxial cable or the central conductor of the stripline. The higher the voltage to be transmitted, the larger the distance required between the coax shield and core, or between the ground plane and the central conductor. The diameter of the coax core, or the width (and hence the surface) of the stripline depend on the design, the distance to ground, and the dielectric used. Accordingly, huge coax cross sections and also special stripline forms are used in RF power amplifiers. The coax diameters may reach several inches, or rigid lines might be applied, or striplines with a far-off ground surface (suspended substrate lines).

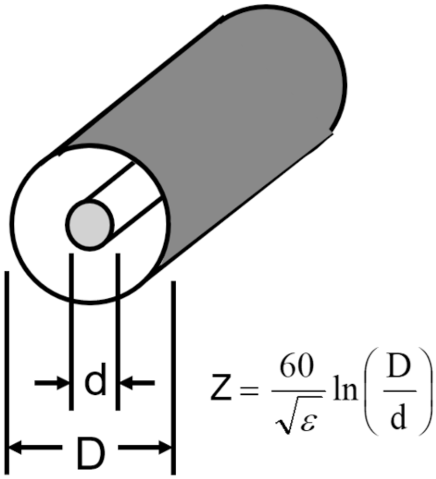


Fig. 46.26. Coax technology

Fig. 46.27. Stripline technology

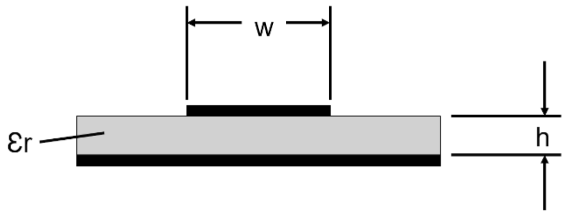


Fig. 46.28. Microstrip technology

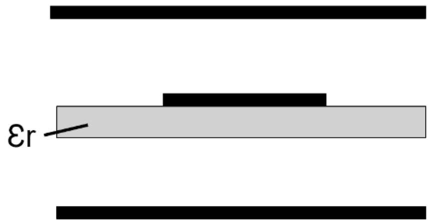


Fig. 46.29. Suspended substrate line technology

46.5.5 Cooling Technology

The task of amplifier cooling is to dissipate the heat loss and convey it to the environment in an appropriate manner. The amount of waste heat generated depends on the power rating and the amplifier class, and is determined by the efficiency of the amplifier, obtained as the ratio of the RF power generated and the DC power consumed from the supply rail. The efficiency is a percentage value and is hence between 0 and 100 percent. In broadcasting, the usual efficiencies are as follows:

- Approx. 20 percent for analog and digital terrestrial television (Class AB),
- Approx. 60 percent for V/UHF FM radio (Class C amplifier)
- Approx. 20 percent for digital radio (Class AB)
- Approx. 30...40 percent for modern amplifier technologies as well as for digital TV and radio (Doherty)
- Approx. 90 percent for Class D amplifiers (e.g. high-power medium-wave transmitters)

The remaining 60..80 percent generate waste heat that is removed from the amplifier using convection, forced air, or liquid cooling. The most effective of these is liquid cooling. Accordingly, the cooling systems of broadcast transmitters use

- Air cooling
- Liquid cooling

The infrastructure is similar also in transmitter buildings. Those that use air cooling have dedicated rooms for the cooling units (fans, air mixing chambers, air filters); these rooms, usually as large as the transmitter rooms themselves, are located on the floor above or below the transmitter room. Air cooling systems are large and often very noisy. Air cooling in electronics is, however, mostly easier to control because air has no adverse effect on the circuits. In case of liquid cooling coolant channels have to be routed through the electronic units, and good care must be taken to avoid any liquid getting into the circuits. Electronics must not come into contact with water, so liquid cooling has a bad reputation. Also, the coolant must be routed to and through the modules via special separable connections. Liquid cooling systems consist of the following units:

- Cooling hoses and tubes
- Pumps and standby pumps (comparable to heating pumps)
- Shutoff valves
- Surge tanks (pressure equalization like in heating systems; in the transmitter rack and in the amplifier modules themselves)
- Venting device
- Filling and discharge device
- Re-cooling systems (see air conditioning)

Liquid cooling significantly decreases the footprint of a transmitter; also, these cooling systems are extremely silent. The heat loss can be used e.g. to heat the transmitter building. This, however, requires a heat pump because the outlet temperature is only around 30 °C. The coolant used is a mixture of water and higher-grade alcohol (glycol or similar).

46.5.6 Amplifier Technologies for Improving Efficiency

A signal is usually amplified by an active component – earlier an electron tube, in these days a transistor –, changing its conductivity in response to the input signal. In extreme cases, the component becomes an open or closed switch, or a more or less large Ohmic resistance with a voltage drop V at a current flow I, corresponding to a power of $P = V \cdot I$ converted to heat. This is the heat loss or power loss of the circuit configuration. A circuit with high bias current will generate (undesirable) heat even when it is not driven by any signal. Only a certain part of the consumed power will flow into the intended load, in our case the antenna – a large part will be converted to useless heat. For this reason, the arrangement has to be cooled. Heat is conveyed to the environment by air or liquid cooling. Efficiency is defined as

efficiency = useful power / consumed power;

Efficiency is normally expressed as a percentage and is between 0 and 100 percent. The following sections describe technologies that improve the efficiency of the amplifier over conventional concepts.

Most of the power loss in an amplifier is due to

- DC power loss on the transistors caused by the bias current I_{Bias}
- the losses of the transistor while driven dynamically

The first loss component could be eliminated by applying zero bias current; this is the case in a Class C amplifier. If the transistor was always either fully open or fully closed, the second loss component would also be eliminated, resulting in a so-called "switching amplifier". One drawback of both concepts is the lack of a linear operating range. If only very weak output signals were required at a given point in time, a small operating voltage at that time would suffice and would result in correspondingly low losses. If, however, the amplitude of the output signal is comparable to the operating voltage, then a correspondingly high operating voltage is required. One possible concept is to vary the operating voltage depending on the driving voltage; this is the so-called envelope tracking technique. Another possibility for Class AB and Class C amplifiers is to vary the load impedance. Let us assume an amplifier configuration which can operate in specific modes, i.e. AB or C, depending on the driving voltage. Studying the effect of the load on the waste power teaches us that for small driving voltages, a smaller load impedance results in smaller losses and a higher driving voltage with correspondingly large load impedances results in better efficiency. This idea led from the normally constant (50 Ohm) load resistances to the concept of load impedance modulation, resulting the design of the Doherty amplifier.

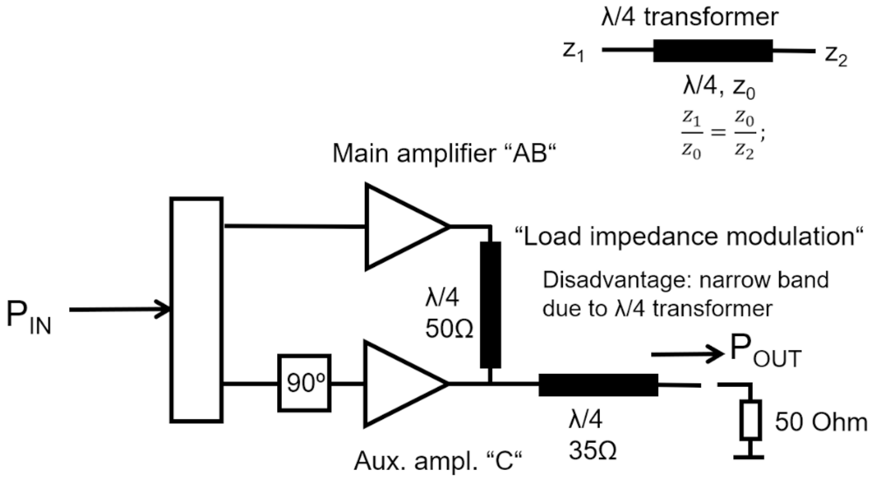


Fig. 46.30. Amplifier implemented using the Doherty technique

46.5.6.1 The Doherty Technique

The term "Doherty amplifier" comes from the 1930s and is named after William H. Doherty, Bell Laboratories. Doherty used this technique in high-power AM tube transmitters to save energy. A Doherty amplifier (Fig. 46.30) consists of a main and a peak amplifier. The main one is set to AB operating mode and the peak amplifier works in class C. Both amplifiers are fed by an input network which ensures that the main amplifier operates at small to medium driving levels, with the peak amplifier contributing from a given driving level upwards (approx. 6 dB below full scale). Once the peak amplifier starts operating, the main amplifier slowly goes into saturation. The input network ensures that the driving signals are appropriately phase-shifted relative to each other (90 degrees) in accordance with the coupling network at the output of the amplifier stages. A λ/4 transformation line (Fig. 46.31.) between the outputs of the main and peak amplifier also provides a 90 degree phase shift and simultaneously acts as an impedance transformer. After the coupling point of the two amplifiers there is an impedance transformer circuit that reduces the 50 Ohm impedance of the output load (antenna) to 25 Ohms. While the peak amplifier is idle, the main amplifier only senses this 25 Ohm impedance, but transformed again via the quarter wave transformer which is located between the two amplifiers. However, this transformer increases the 25 Ohm impedance to 100 Ohms. When the peak amplifier starts operating, the 25 Ohm impedance will increase to seemingly higher impedances depending on the driving level. But the quarter wave transformer then inverts this increasing impedance in accordance with the transformation ratio

$$Z_1/Z_L = Z_L/Z_2;$$

At full driving level, the main amplifier will sense 50 Ohms. This yields a circuit that modulates the load impedance for the main amplifier. The efficiency of the complete circuit is between that of a Class AB and a Class C amplifier, approximately 40 percent. The drawback of the Doherty amplifier, however, is the limited operating frequency bandwidth due to the λ/4 transformer circuits at the output. The Doherty technique can also be used in the V/UHF range relevant for classical broadcasting.

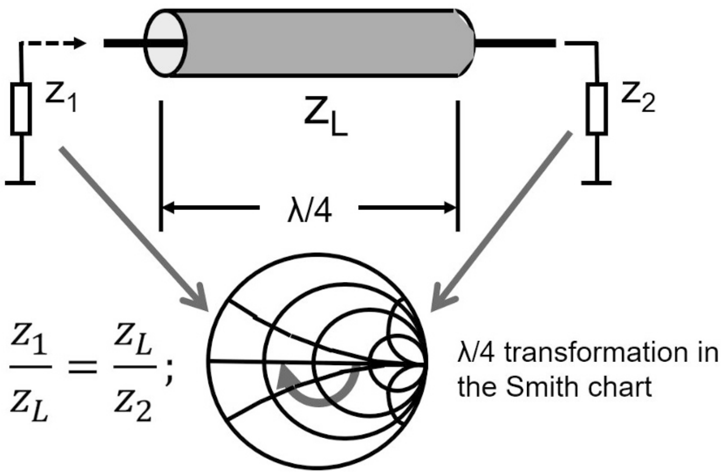


Fig. 46.31. Quarter wave transformer

46.5.6.2 Envelope Tracking Technique

An envelope tracking amplifier is a power amplifier with a non-constant supply voltage adjusted in accordance with the envelope of the signal to be amplified. The purpose is to reduce losses using the so-called "headroom", a range between medium and maximum power, reserved for power peaks. Envelope tracking is nowadays used primarily in the mobile sector. In case of envelope tracking, the amplifier output stage gets two control signals: the actual useful signal, and a control signal for setting the supply voltage of the output stage. Envelope tracking can also be used in the V/UHF range relevant for broadcasting.

46.5.6.3 Switching Mode Amplifiers

Switching mode amplifiers, also called Class D amplifiers, have efficiencies of over 90 percent. The transistors of these circuits are either fully open or fully closed, controlled by pulse width modulation. The input signal is fed into a converter circuit that generates the pulse width modulation. At the output, a low pass filter is needed for converting the PWM signal back into a linear waveform. This amplifier technology is used primarily in modern high-power (100 kW ... 1000 kW) LW and MW transmitters. Similar technologies for the VHF and UHF ranges are still missing.

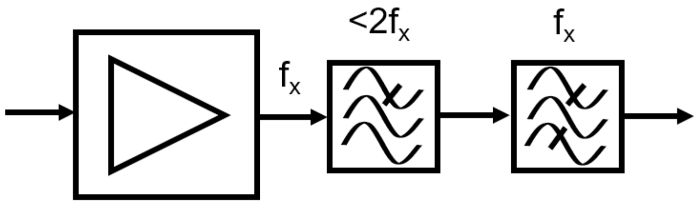


Fig. 46.32. Transmitter output filter

46.6 Transmitter Output Filter

The amplified signal must be sufficiently clean to avoid disturbances to other broadcasting services. Also, the transmitters must be isolated from each other so that no transmitter can "radiate into" another one. For this purpose, corresponding filters (Fig. 46.31.) are inserted in the path of the output signal after the amplifiers. The following filter types are used, depending on the task:

- Harmonics filters (low-pass filter)
- Mask filters (bandpass filters)
- Antenna combiners (combining multiple bandpass filters)

The harmonics filter (Figs. 46.33., 46.34., 46.35.) eliminates multiples of the carrier, the so-called harmonics. The mask filter (Fig. 46.36.) is a highly selective bandpass filter that does not allow notable out-of-band spectrum parts to appear in adjacent channels. The antenna combiner isolates transmitters from each other and allows to merge multiple signals into one antenna signal.

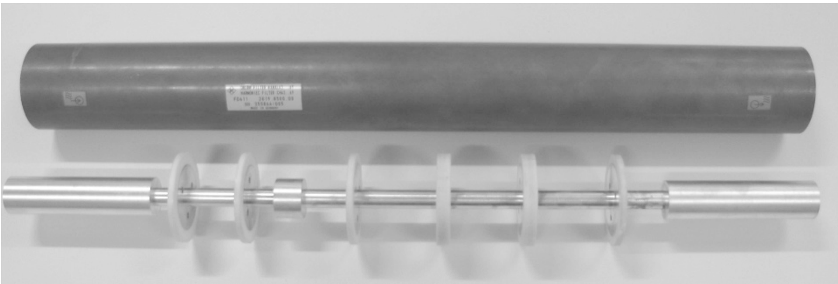


Fig. 46.33. Harmonics filter

Fig. 46.34. Low pass filter implemented in a "distributed element" structure

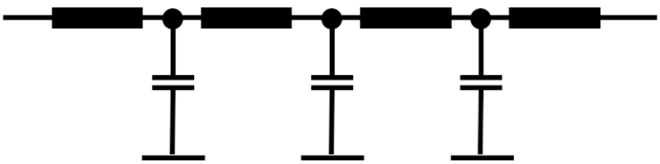


Fig. 46.35. Chebyshev low-pass filter with "lumped elements"

46.6.1 Harmonics Filter

The harmonics filter (Figs. 46.33., 46.34., 46.35.) is a regular low pass filter that passes the useful signal only while suppressing the harmonics. The useful band (passband) is broad enough to pass all selectable transmission frequencies without adjustment, and its stop band starts before the first harmonic. It is adapted to the power and frequency range requirements. It is often implemented as a Chebyshev filter using a simple C-L-C-L-C ladder network. Instead of lumped components (L and C), cable segments of different lengths and impedances are used in the VHF/UHF range, e.g. with the rigid line technique.

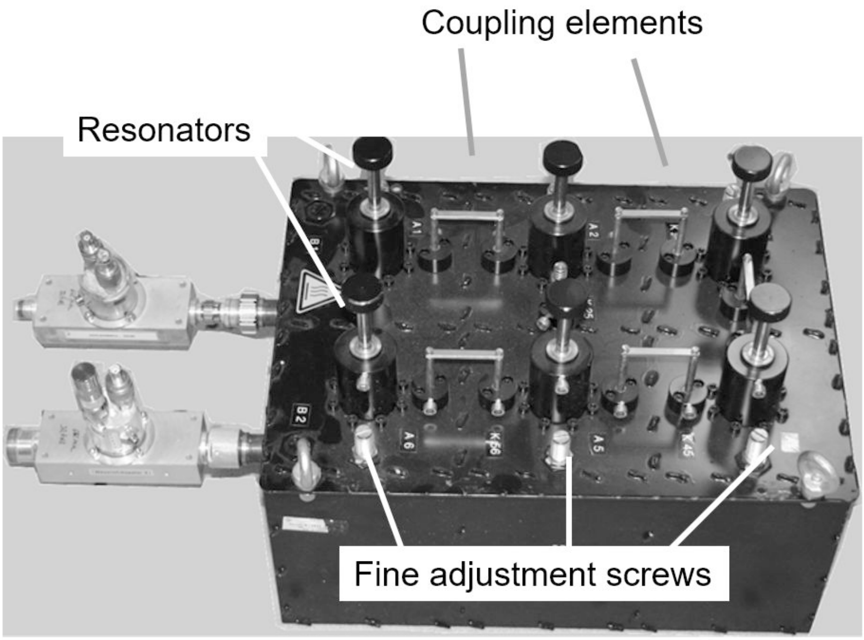


Fig. 46.36. Mask filter implemented with coaxial technique (manufactured by Spinner)

46.6.2 Mask Filters

Mask filters (Fig. 46.36.) are highly selective bandpass filters intended to provide sufficient protection for the adjacent channels. In the VHF/UHF range, they are usually implemented as coaxial or cavity filters.

A mask filter can be realized as a critical or non-critical mask filter, as required by the relevant regulatory authority. In a critical mask filter, the shoulder in the adjacent channel of the DTV signal must be suppressed by more than 52 dB. Such filters have an attenuation in the passband of about 0.3 to 0.6 dB, which also causes heat and hence losses.

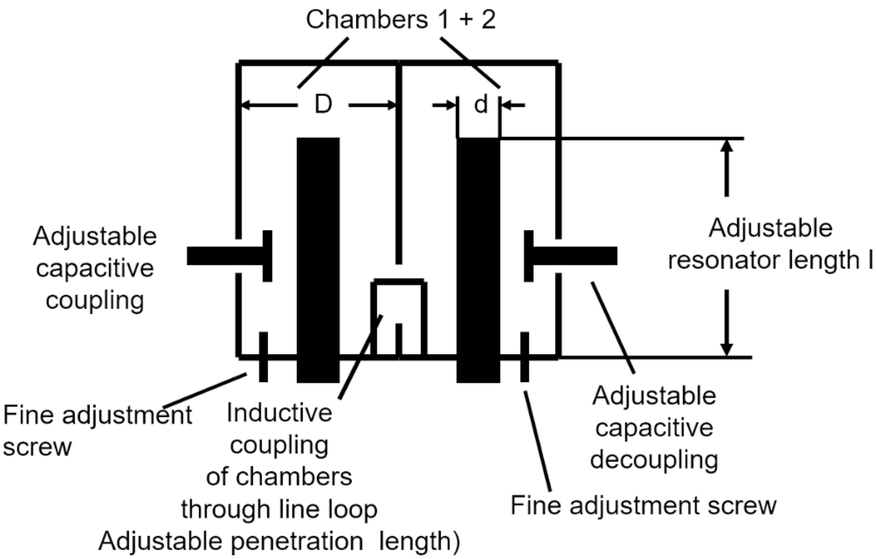


Fig. 46.37. Coaxial filter

The bandpass filters used in this field can be classified into coaxial and cavity filters, based on their technology. In both cases, 3- to 10-circuit bandpass filters are built according to the actual requirements. Both technologies have their pros and cons. Coaxial filters have the following properties:

- Tunable in the complete band III or IV / V
- Higher attenuation (e.g. 0.31 dB in the center of the band)
- Good temperature stability

Cavity filters have the following properties:

- Lower attenuation (e.g. 0.17 dB in the center of the band)
- Poorer temperature stability
- Tunable in a few channels only (5–6 channels)
- Larger dimensions

Antenna combiners are built using 3- or 4-circuit filters. Mask filters require 6-circuit filters for the non-critical mask and 8- circuit filters for the critical mask. Mask filters are often integrated into the antenna combiner, in which case the antenna combiner must use higher order filters for both bandpass filters.

46.6.2.1 Coaxial Filters

Coaxial filters (Figs. 46.36., 46.37.) are actually quarter wave coaxial lines shorted on one end and open on the other. They can be used to build resonators. The resonance frequency of the resonator can be changed by varying the line length. The characteristic impedance of a coaxial cable with round inner and outer conductor is

$$z_L = 377\Omega \cdot \ln(D/d)(2\pi\sqrt{\varepsilon_r}) = 60\Omega \cdot \ln(D/d)/\sqrt{\varepsilon_r};$$

where

d is the diameter of the inner conductor
D is the diameter of the outer conductor
ε_r is the relative dielectric constant

The characteristic impedance of the combination of a round inner conductor and a rectangular outer conductor is

$$z_L \approx 60\Omega \cdot \ln(1.07 \cdot D/d)/\sqrt{\varepsilon_r};$$

For coaxial systems the followings apply:

- minimum attenuation at $z_L = 77\ \Omega / \sqrt{\varepsilon_r}$
- maximum dielectric strength at $z_L = 60\ \Omega / \sqrt{\varepsilon_r}$
- maximum transferable power at $z_L = 30\ \Omega / \sqrt{\varepsilon_r}$.

The main requirement for mask filters and antenna combiners is low attenuation to keep the losses to a minimum. The dielectric is air, yielding ε_r=1. The selected characteristic impedance is about 77 Ω as this is where the attenuation is minimal.

The wavelength is

$$\lambda = c_0 / (f \sqrt{\varepsilon_r});$$

where

c_0 is the speed of light ($3 \cdot 10^8$ m/s);
f is the frequency
ε_r is the relative dielectric constant

Using the above, the length of the quarter wave resonator line obtained for the 200 MHz ... 900 MHz frequency range is about 36 cm ... 8 cm if the dielectric is air. The chamber diameter depends on the power class. The chamber can be round or quadratic. The line can also be shortened by applying a capacitive load on the open line end. The coupling and decoupling into the chamber can be capacitive or inductive. Fig. 46.37. shows the basic structure of a two-circuit coaxial filter, with capacitive signal coupling into the chamber by a stub with variable immersion depth. The resonator lengths l can be adjusted by inserting shorted stubs more or less deeply into the chamber. The resonator length determines the resonant frequency which can then be additionally influenced by fine adjustment screws.

Chamber 1 is coupled to chamber 2 by a coupling element which can be inserted deeper or less deep, allowing to control the interaction between the two resonator chambers. The degree of coupling determines the bandwidth of the filter. Coupling out of chamber 2 is also capacitive and can also be adjusted. The transitional range of multi-circuit filters can be made steeper by establishing adjustable coupling between non-adjacent chambers as well.

The length expansion of the resonators must be carefully compensated for by suitably selecting the materials, otherwise the resonance frequency gets mistuned.

46.6.2.2 Cavity Filters

A cavity filter (Figs. 46.38., 46.39.) is a hollow metal chamber without an inner conductor, where cavity modes are generated. Resonators can also be created from such chambers whose resonance frequency ultimately depends on the volume of the cavity. The filter has a cylindrical design and is used in mask filters; the two parameters, D (diameter) and h (cylinder height), determine the resonance frequency but also the quality factor. The coupling and decoupling can be capacitive or inductive. In the cylindrical cavity, two orthogonal modes – with a 90-degree phase difference – can be excited which do not interfere with each other. This practically makes it possible to double the use of the cavity resonator and hence to save space. This is called a dual-mode filter, i.e. one chamber can be used to implement two circuits. Accordingly, 3 chambers are needed for a 6-circuit filter and 4 for an 8-circuit filter. Fig. 46.37. shows the basic structure of a dual-mode cavity filter.

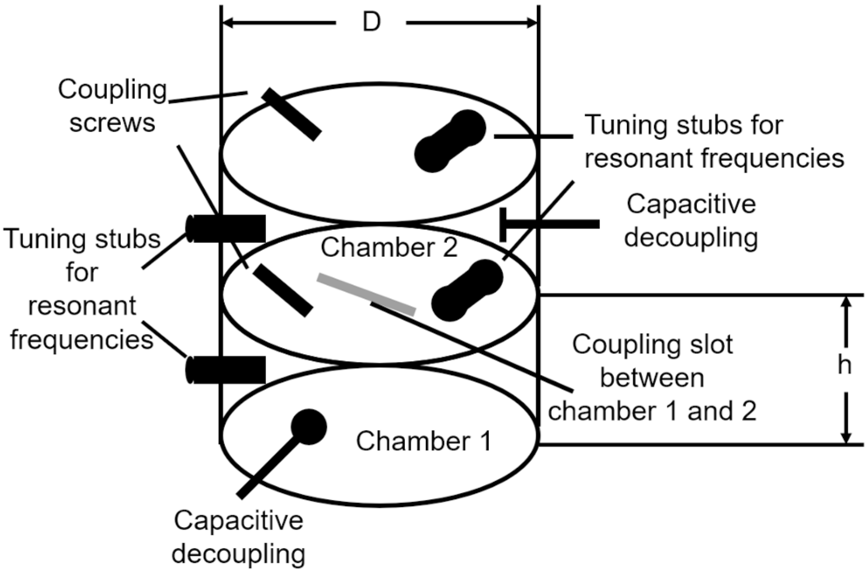


Fig. 46.38. Structure of a dual-mode cavity filter

The signal is coupled into chamber 1 capacitively by a stub whose immersion depth can be varied. Opposite to it is a tuning stub that can be screwed in deeper or less deep, serving for tuning the resonance frequency. At an angle of 45 degrees, a coupling screw is attached which rotates the field and creates an orthogonal cavity mode at an angle of 90 degrees to the field. There is another tuning stub for this cavity mode arranged perpendicularly to the other stub. Between chambers 1 and 2, there is a coupling slot with adjustable length that couples the two chambers. The second chamber once again has a coupling slot and also a coupling screw. The immersion depths of the coupling screws determine the degree of coupling between the orthogonal cavity modes. If the cavity filter is heated, the chambers expand, lowering the resonant frequency. In order to avoid this, metal alloys (invar) are used which have a particularly low expansion coefficient. Cavity filters are larger than the coaxial ones: the half-wavelength must fit both in the diameter and in the chamber height. The excited cavity mode is called the H_{111} wave.

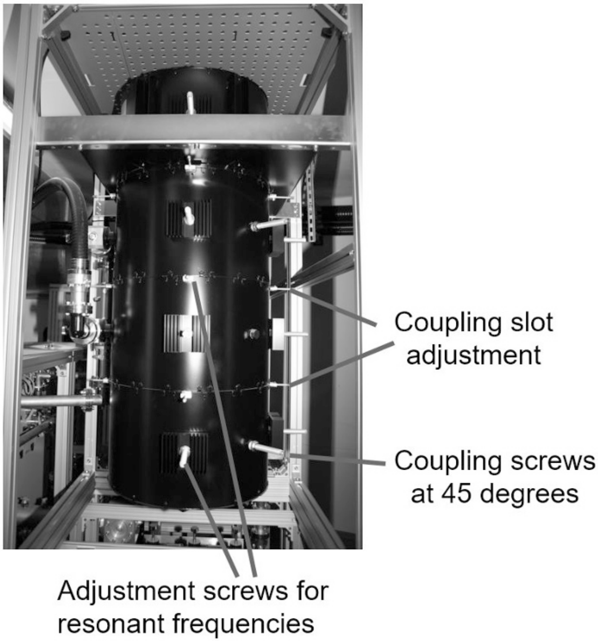


Fig. 46.39. Dual-mode waveguide filter

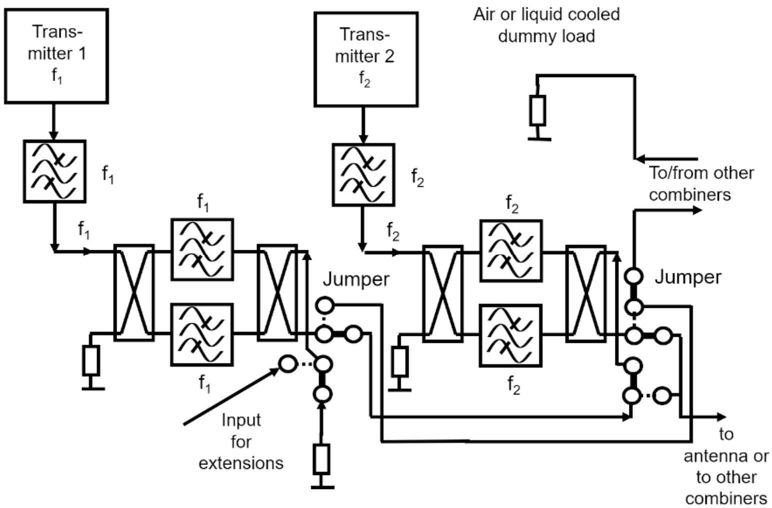


Fig. 46.40. Antenna combiner

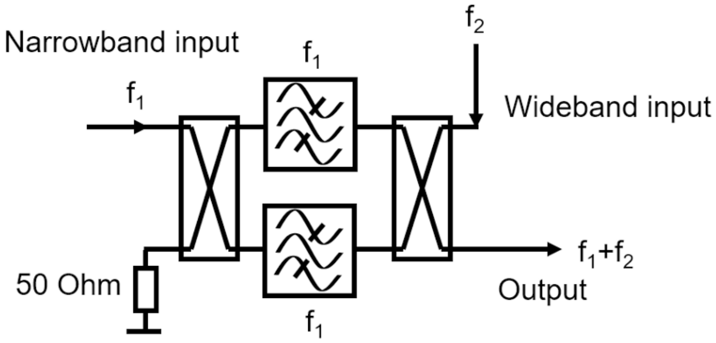


Fig. 46.41. Operational principle of the antenna combiner (lumped elelement)

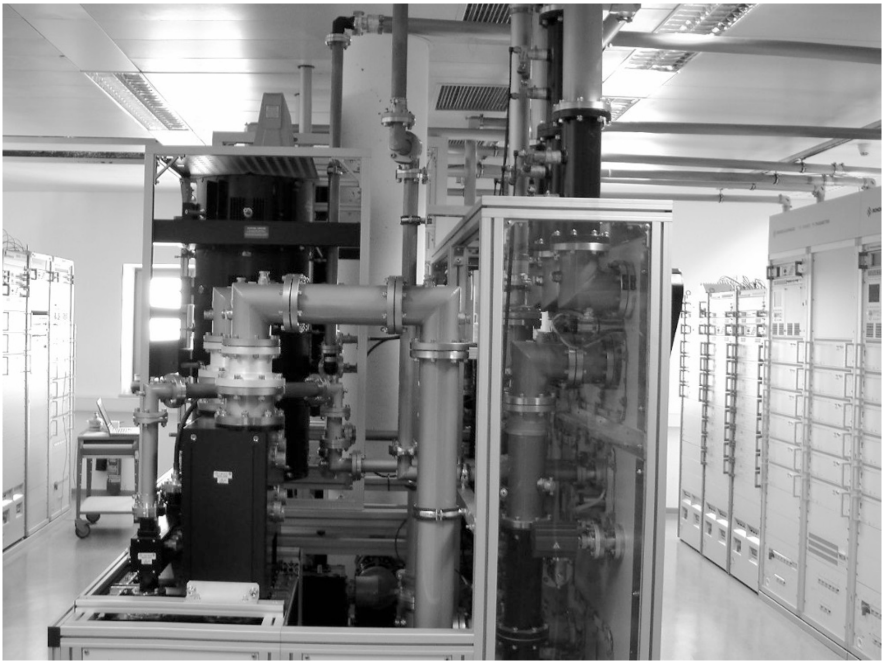


Fig. 46.42. Antenna combiner, transmit station Wendelstein

46.7 Antenna Combiner

The antenna combiner (Figs. 46.40., 46.41., 46.42.) has the task to combine the various broadcasting channels into a single signal and feed it to the corresponding TV transmit antenna via a cable in the VHF range and another cable in the UHF range. The transmitters must be well decoupled from each other, what is ensured by the filters of the antenna combiner. The antenna combiner has an insertion loss of about a few tenth dB (e.g. 0.3 dB per channel).

Each channel switch of the antenna combiner consists of two channel filters tuned to the given TV channel they feed. Before and after it there is a 3 dB coupler. To understand the functionality, let us first consider two 3 dB couplers connected in series.

A signal fed to the first coupler is split in two branches: one with a phase of 0 degrees and the other with a phase of 90 degrees. The second coupler adds up these signals, delivering an output signal phase-shifted by 90 degrees relative to the input signal. There are bandpass filters between the two couplers of the channel switch, which has a narrowband input and a broadband input, and has basically the same structure as an audio-vision signal combiner in analog television. The channel to be supplied passes through the switch at 0 and 90 degrees, and the signal of the other transmitters on the broadband input is immediately totally reflected by the filters after the coupler, arriving to the broadband output and added to the supplied channel. Both filters of the channel switch must be matched at least relatively equally. Fig. 46.40 shows an antenna combiner with two transmitters, two mask filters, two antenna combiners, as well as a patch panel enabling to bridge the antenna combiner when needed and connect the transmitter output to a dummy load to perform tuning and measurements without feeding the signal to the antenna.

46.8 Antenna Feed and Transmit Antenna

From the antenna combiner in the transmitter building, the signal to be broadcasted passes over a sufficiently thick coaxial cable to the transmit antenna (Fig. 46.43). This antenna is usually located at some distance in a tower, so the feed cable can be a few hundred meters long. For reasons of redundancy, the antenna itself consists of an upper and a lower half-antenna to be supplied via separately routed feed lines. Often there is also at least one redundant cable from the transmitter building to the antenna. Some transmitting cables have a diameter of 20 cm (6 1/8").

Fig. 46.43. Transmitting cable (Heliflex, manufactured by RFS) [RFS]

The corresponding coaxial cables have the following attenuations per 100 m:

Table 46.3. Technical data of a Heliflex coaxial cables [RFS]

Coax diameter	Maximal avg. power on 500 MHz	d [dB] on 200 MHz	d [dB] on 500 MHz	d [dB] on 800 MHz
4-1/8’’	35 kW	0.4 dB	0.7 dB	0.9 dB
5’’	55 kW	0.3 dB	0.5 dB	0.7 dB
6-1/8’’	75 kW	0.3 dB	0.4 dB	0.6 dB
8’’	120 kW	0.2 dB	0.4 dB	0.5 dB

Either in a dedicated antenna building or in the transmitter building, there is a patch panel for the selective routing of the signals between the various antenna sections, and also for enabling the upper and lower half-antenna of the transmit antenna system. This is done with 200 to 30 cm jumper cables in coaxial technology. The antenna itself often consists of components housed in a reinforced fiberglass plastic cylinder (example: transmitter Wendelstein, Bayerischer Rundfunk, antenna manufactured by Kathrein, Rosenheim), constructed foe example as follows:

- Lower part: VHF antenna (half-antennas 1 & 2)
- Middle: UHF antenna (half-antennas 1 & 2)
- Upper part: mechanical vibration damper
- Top: lightning arrester

In the example of the Wendelstein transmitter (Bayerischer Rundfunk), the fiberglass reinforced plastic cylinder (Figs. 46.44., 46.45.) is about 24 m high and the length of the entire antenna system is about 65 m; the antenna tip is at about 1900 m above sea level. The VHF antenna consists of six levels, with six vertically polarized band III dipole antenna arrays in each. The lower three and upper three levels form the lower VHF half-antenna and the upper VHF half-antenna, respectively. Each half-antenna is driven by its own transmission cable. The UHF antenna consists of 12 levels with 8 band IV/V antenna arrays in each, forming a lower and upper half-antenna just like in the case of the VHF antenna (but in this case with 6 levels per half-antenna). Again, each half-antenna is driven by its own coaxial cable. The mechanical vibration damper above the UHF antenna is intended to prevent swinging up under wind load.

The signal reaches the receivers from the broadcast antenna. Broadcasting means that a signal reaches many receivers in a point-multipoint arrangement, i.e. the number of receivers does not matter. Which receivers can access this signal depends on the coverage area. Broadcast operators have network planning departments that use planning software to determine the supplied areas and plan their broadcasting facilities accordingly, including power, antenna gain and pattern.

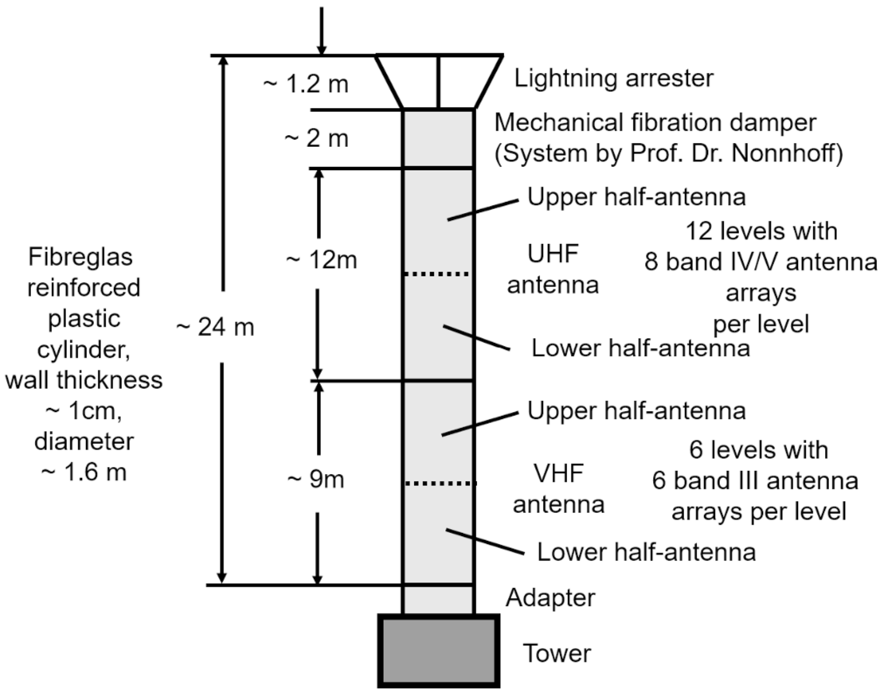


Fig. 46.44. Structure of a VHF/UHF broadcast antenna

UHF broadcast antennas, often composed of so-called antenna panels or arrays (with an input power of approx. 2 kW) mostly consisting of four whole wave dipoles behind a weatherproof cladding (Fig. 46.46), are built directly on a mast tube. The individual arrays/panels are recognizable as white boxes directly on the mast (Fig. 46.46.). Each array/panel is powered in phase by a power divider. The antenna pattern can be influenced via the phase.

Transmit power can be specified in various ways:

- Power on the transmitter output before the mask filter
- Power after the mask filter
- Equivalent radiated power (ERP) (including antenna gain and losses in the antenna feed network)

Fig. 46.45. Wendelstein transmit antenna, Bayerischer Rundfunk [Kathrein]

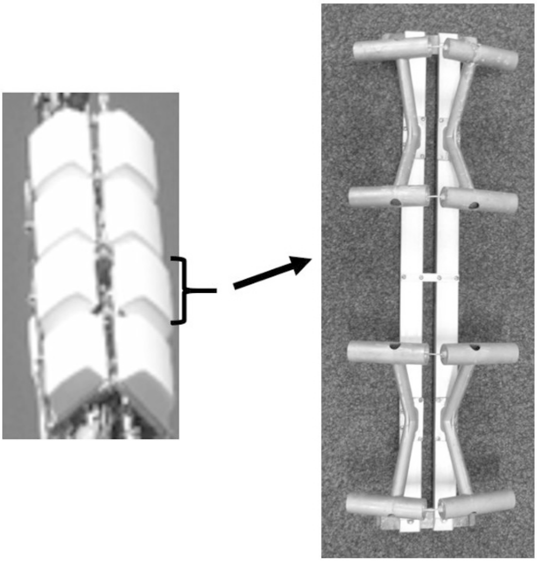


Fig. 46.46. UHF antenna array/panel, open (horizontally polarized) [Kathrein]

In broadcasting, the most often used and specified parameter is ERP (equivalent radiated power, i.e. transmit power weighted with the antenna gain relative to the half-wave dipole) rather than EIRP (equivalent isotropic radiated power, which is the transmit power weighted with the antenna gain relative to an isotropic spherical radiator).

The equivalent radiated power (ERP) can be calculated from the input power of the transmission antenna and the antenna gain relative to a half-wave dipole:

$ERP = g \cdot P_{Ant}$ [kW]

where P_{Ant} is the input power of the antenna in kW
and g is the (linear) gain of the antenna relative to a half-weave dipole.

Broadcast transmitters and transmission stations have redundancies in order to ensure the highest possible availability even in the event of a failure. This redundancy extends from the usually at least doubled modulation signal transfer paths to the transmission antennas divided into half-antenna segments. Even the transmitter racks have redundancies like dual modulators (dual drive), dual GPS signal distribution, and inherent redundancies in the modules of the output stages as well. Additionally, N+1 solutions are often also used, like full hot standby transmitters for a given number of transmitters. The typical transmitter redundancy concepts are as follows:

- Single Transmitter: no redundancy
- Dual Drive: two modulators for one output stage
- 1+1: passive transmitter standby
- N+1: standby
- Active Power Amplifier Standby and Dual Drive
- Passive Power Amplifier Standby and Dual Drive

Cooling also has redundancy in the form of doubled pump systems. Antenna combiners are usually designed to allow the bridging of sections in case of an emergency. As regards power supplies, many stations have emergency generators, and microprocessor-based units have battery-backed shunting systems as is usual with servers in the data processing industry. Everything is implemented to make sure that if something fails, the systems continue to operate in emergency mode, eventually at reduced power. If all this doesn't help, human intervention is required if someone is still there. In earlier days, terrestrial broadcasting was given very high priority, so most stations were manned. This has changed with the advent of other distribution paths like satellite, broadband cable, and IP streaming. Nevertheless, terrestrial broadcasting systems, especially the proven VHF radio, will ensure that the audience can be provided with important information even in case of a disaster, as has been proven several times also in Europe during past major floods.

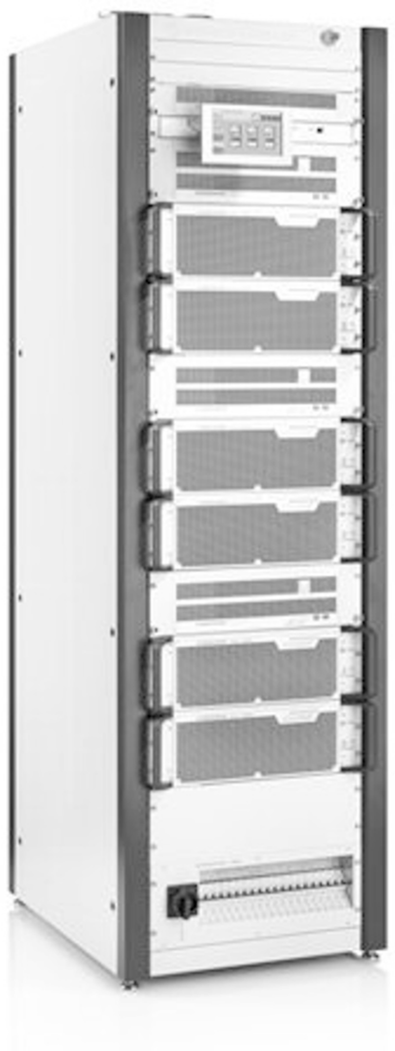


Fig. 46.47. Air-cooled medium-power transmitter [R&S] (TMU9)

Fig. 46.48. Liquid-cooled high-power transmitter [R&S] (THU9)

Fig. 46.49. Liquid-cooled, 6-circuit mask filter, non-critical mask, 7.5 kW, (3.75 kW without liquid cooling), 6, 7, or 8 MHz bandwidth, manufactured by Spinner [SPINNER]

Fig. 46.50. Example for an antenna combiner for 3 channels (5 kW each); each combiner module can be bridged, each combiner input can be connected to a dummy antenna; manufactured by Spinner [SPINNER]

Bibliography: [RFS], [R&S], [Kathrein], [KATHREIN_ANTENNEN_1], [KATHREIN_ANTENNEN_2], [SPINNER]

47 ATSC3.0

The term “ATSC” stands for Advanced Television System Committee and refers to digital television standards developed in the US. The digital ATSC norms extend to three main versions, namely V1.0, V2.0 and V3.0, from which V1.0 and V2.0 are based on a single carrier modulation called 8VSB – 8-level vestigial sideband. ATSC V1.0 allows only MPEG-2/H.262 video coding and Dolby AC3 audio, while ATSC2.0 permits also MPEG-4/H.264 video coding and some other new features.
ATSC3.0 is a completely new standard based on DVB-T2. It applies OFDM and supports constellations up to 4096QAM with non-uniform patterns. The multiplex format for ATSC1.0 and ATSC2.0 is the MPEG-2 transport stream, while the ATSC3.0 multiplex format is the STL, i.e. “Studio Transmitter Link” signal. STL is a completely new multiplex format based on IP packets.
Table 47.1. shows the differences between the digital ATSC versions.

Table 47.1. ATSC versions

Standard	Video	Audio	Multiplex signal	Modulation
ATSC 1.0	MPEG-2, HD and SD	Dolby Digital AC-3	MPEG-2 transport stream	Single carrier 8VSB
ATSC 2.0	MPEG-2 and MPEG-4/AVC/H.264	Dolby Digital AC-3 and MPEG-4 AAC	MPEG-2 transport stream	Single carrier 8VSB
ATSC 3.0	AVC, HEVC	AC3, AC4, HE AAC	STL	OFDM

47.1 ATSC3.0 goals and system design

ATSC3.0 is based on DVB-T2, aiming to

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_47

- Provide higher data rates than ATSC1.0 and 2.0 by using a modern LDPC-based FEC, which allows to get closer to the Shannon limit
- Provide net data rates from 1 to 57 Mbit/s
- Use the spectrum flexibly and efficiently
- Allow services up to UHDTV
- Build single-frequency networks (SFN)
- Use modern IP-based input multiplex formats
- Apply multicarrier modulation (OFDM) with 8K, 16K and 32K modes
- Apply time division multiplexing (TDM), frequency division multiplexing (FDM) and layer division multiplexing (LDM)
- Support 6, 7 and 8 MHz wide channels
- Apply a state-of-the-art, efficient modulation pattern (NUC — non-uniform constellations) from QPSK up to 4096QAM

47.2 ATSC3.0 input formats

The input data format is called STL ("Studio Transmitter Link") and it is fully based on IP technology. The former ATSC1.0 and ATSC2.0 standards strictly allowed only MPEG-2 transport stream input multiplex signals with PSI/PSIP tables. ATSC3.0 now applies an IP based input multiplex format which can contain several input streams (PLPs — Physical Layer Pipes), modulator control information and SFN time stamps. Source coding has also been improved in this new standard: its video coding technology is H.265/HEVC and the audio coding technology can be AC4 or MPEG-H 3D Audio. The STL signal contains ATSC link protocol packets (APL), which consist of a header and a payload part of flexible length. Several so-called PLPs (Physical Layer Pipes) are transported via this APL. Each PLP follows a concept similar to that of DVB-T2 and each PLP can carry its own input stream multiplex format (transport stream, IP), and can be FEC-encoded and modulated in a different way to allow for various robustness levels and net data rates. See also Fig. 47.11. and Fig. 47.12.

47.3 ATSC3.0 forward error correction (FEC)

With its concatenated BCH and LDPC block coding, the forward error correction (FEC) of ATSC3.0 is similar to that of DVB-T2, DVB-S2 or the Chinese DTMB standard. BCH stands for "Bose-Chaudhuri-

Hocquenghem" coding and was developed in the 1960s. This is the outer coding algorithm of ATSC3.0 and it adds 192 bits (long FEC frame) or 168 bits (short FEC frame) to each input data packet. In ATSC3.0, instead of a BCH code a CRC can also be used. Invented by Robert Gallager, the history of LDPC ("Low Density Parity Check") coding also goes back to the 1960s. For a long time there had been no chance to realize it in practical designs, but nowadays it is applied in most of the state-of-the-art data transmission standards like DVB-S2, DVB-T2, DOCSIS3.1 and now even 5G. LDPC is very powerful, allowing to achieve data rates very close to the Shannon limit.

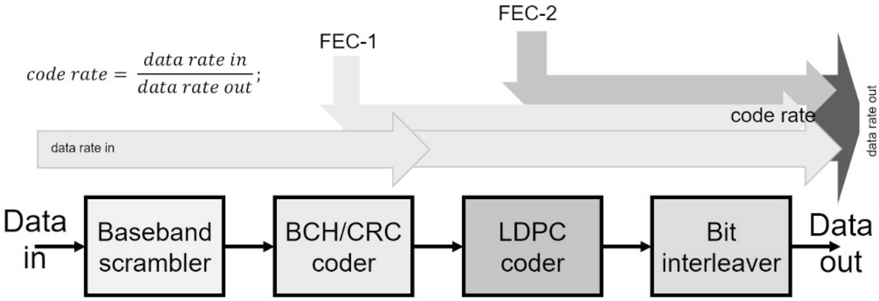


Fig. 47.1. The FEC mechanism of ATSC3.0

In ATSC3.0, "long" or "short" FEC frames are supported. The former is 64800 bit long, while the latter one has a length of 16400 bits. Long FEC frames are typically applied in high data rate streams, while short frames are the right choice for lower data rate streams.

The relation between the input data rate and the output data rate of the FEC stage is characterized by the so-called FEC code rate. This parameter refers to the performance of the error correction, indicating the robustness of the FEC and the overhead thereof. In ATSC3.0 several code rates are defined and some of them are directly assigned to a non-uniform QAM order.

The principle of the ATSC3.0 FEC mechanism is that first a part of the payload data stream is cut out, a BCH code is calculated for it and added to it, and then this block comprising the cut-out payload data and the BCH code is further extended in a second step with an LDPC codeword.

Prior to performing the BCH coding, the data packet is passed thru a scrambler, and after the LDPC process a bit interleaving stage follows.

ATSC3.0 applies several interleaving processes, which are

- Bit interleaving, performed immediately after the FEC

- Time interleaving in the IQ cell domain, after cell building
- Frequency interleaving which is part of the OFDM block

47.4 Modulation scheme

ATSC3.0 supports both low and high order QAM shemes from QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM and 1024QAM up to even 4096QAM. The highest QAM order that makes sense in a terrestrial broadcast channel is 256QAM due to the expected carrier-to-noise ratio (CNR).
ATSC3.0 uses only non-uniform QAM patterns, so-called NUC QAM (Figs. 47.2. to 47.4.). Non-uniform (NUC) arrangement means that the distance between the constellation points is not constant – like in DVB-S2x. Only specific code rates are permitted for each NUC QAM constellation.

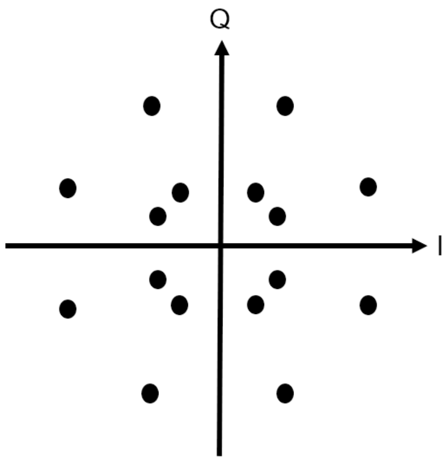


Fig. 47.2. Principle of 16QAM NUC (non-uniform constellation) diagram

Table 47.2. QAM orders and code rates for long FEC frames (64800 bit)

Code rate, constellation	2/15	3/15	4/15	5/15	6/15	7/15	8/15	9/15	10/15	11/15	12/15	13/15
QPSK	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x		
16QAM			x	x		x	x	x		x		
64QAM		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
256QAM			x	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x
1024QAM				x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4096QAM						x		x		x	x	x

Table 47.3. QAM orders and code rates for short FEC frames (16200 bit)

Code rate, constellation	2/15	3/15	4/15	5/15	6/15	7/15	8/15	9/15	10/15	11/15	12/15	13/15
QPSK	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x				
16QAM				x	x	x	x			x		
64QAM				x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
256QAM				x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x

During the modulation process groups of n bits are mapped into N possible QAM states; the result is not a modulated OFDM carrier but a so-called „cell“. A „cell“ is nothing more than a dedicated pair of a real and an imaginary part, or better say an IQ-value pair described by its x- and y-coordinates (real and imaginary). Before a cell is modulated onto an OFDM carrier, many further signal processing steps need to be performed (please refer also to the DVB-T2 chapter).

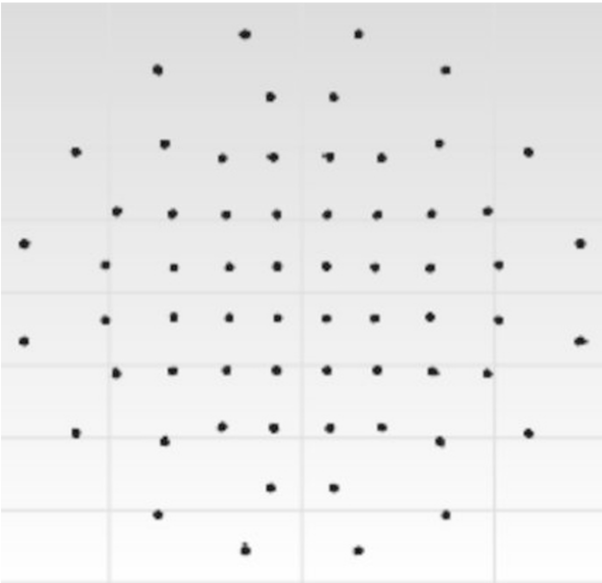


Fig. 47.3. Constellation of 64QAM NUC at a code rate of 11/15 (DekTec Atsc3Xpert©)

Non-uniform constellations (NUC) are based on investigations [Zöllner] conducted at the Technical University of Braunschweig. The goal was to optimize the robustness and efficiency of the data transmission to bring the data rate closer to the Shannon limit. This was achieved by using no longer

constant distances in amplitude and phase but varying distances between the constellation points in a constellation diagram (Figs. 47.2 to 47.4). The investigation optimized the constellation patterns of different QAM orders for different target signal-to-noise ratios (SNRs). Such a NUC constellation pattern is always assigned some dedicated FEC code rates.
How such a non-uniform QAM patter looks like can be seen on live constellation diagrams captured on the output of an ATSC3.0 transmitter, as shown in Fig. 47.3. (64QAM NUC) and Fig. 47.4. (256QAM NUC).

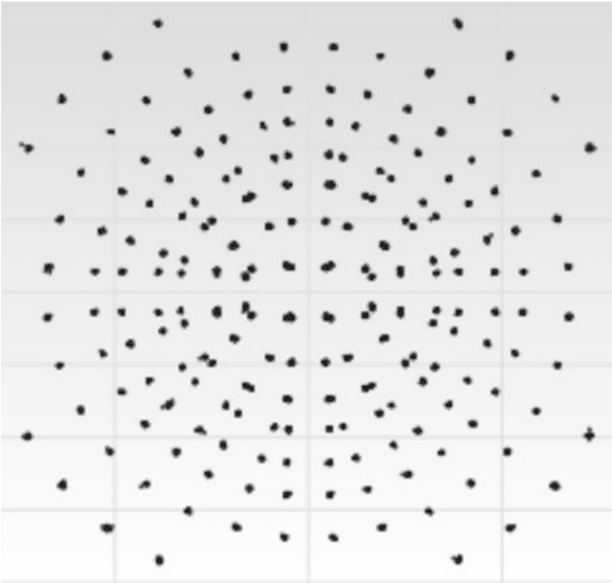


Fig. 47.4. Constellation of 256QAM NUC at a code rate of 11/15 (DekTec Atsc3Xpert©)

47.5 Layer Division Multiplexing

In addition to the above mentioned, ATSC3.0 also defines a so-called layer division multiplexing (LDM) process. LDM means that the PLPs can be divided into two different layers of input streams. One is named "core layer" and the other is called "enhanced layer". The former one is the more robust layer and it is assigned to the quadrants of the QAM scheme. The enhanced layer determines the modulation state within a quadrant of the

QAM diagram (Figs. 47.5. and 47.6.). This means that LDM is similar to the hierarchical modulation principle in the good old DVB-T(1) system (please refer also to the DVB-T chapter).

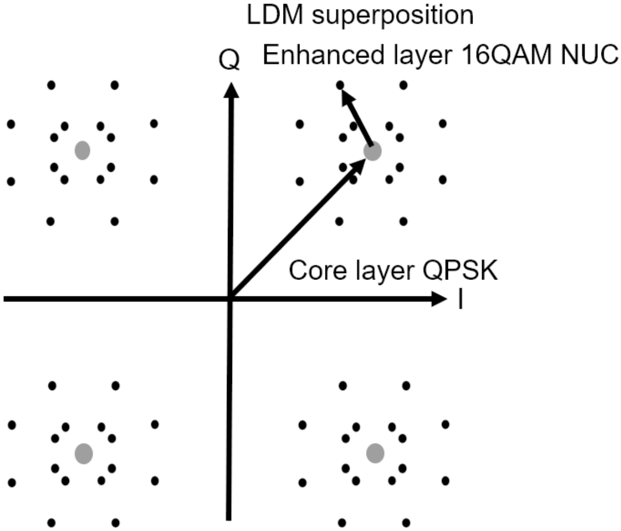


Fig. 47.5. The principle of LDM, shown in a constellation diagram

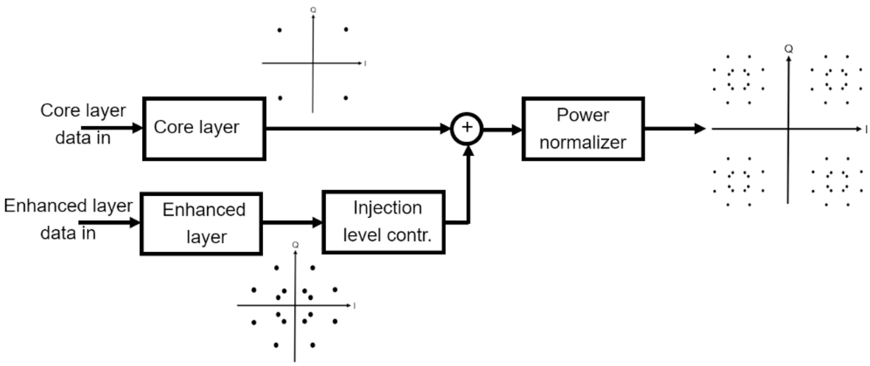


Fig. 47.6. The principle of LDM, the mapping process

47.6 Time Interleaving

Error correction coding (FEC) and modulation, together with additional data processing steps (i.e. interleaving) are collectively called as Bit Interleaved Coding and Modulation (BICM). Different BICM mechanisms are applied on different PLPs. After the coding and mapping processes, each PLP is time-interleaved. ATSC3.0 supports two different time-interleaving modes, such as

- Convolutional Time Interleaver (CTI) mode
- Hybrid Time Interleaver (HTI) mode

The time interleaver spreads the modulated IQ-cells over time, thus making the PLPs more resistant to burst errors.

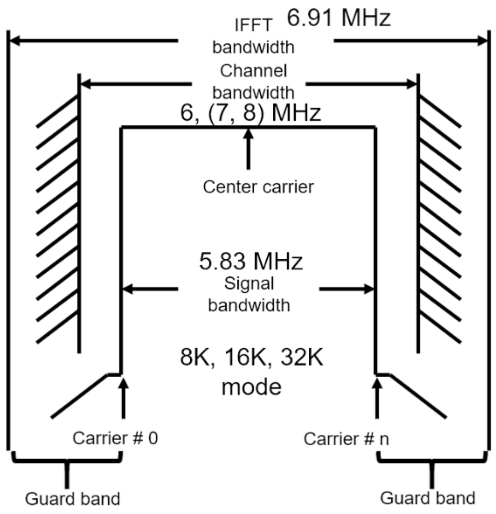


Fig. 47.7. The structure of an OFDM channel

47.7 OFDM implementation in ATSC3.0

After time interleaving all the cells end up in an OFDM frame building block (see also Fig. 47.12.). In contrast to ATSC1.0/2.0, the ATSC3.0 standard does no longer use single carrier modulation but multicarrier modulation – OFDM. ATSC3.0 supports three OFDM modes, which are

- 8K mode
- 16K mode
- 32K mode

OFDM has many advantages especially in terrestrial transmission networks. It can cope very efficiently with multipath reception, and, in addition, so-called single-frequency networks can easily be implemented by using OFDM. This is highly important today, because the amount of frequencies available for broadcasting has recently been severely reduced due to the digital dividend I and II.

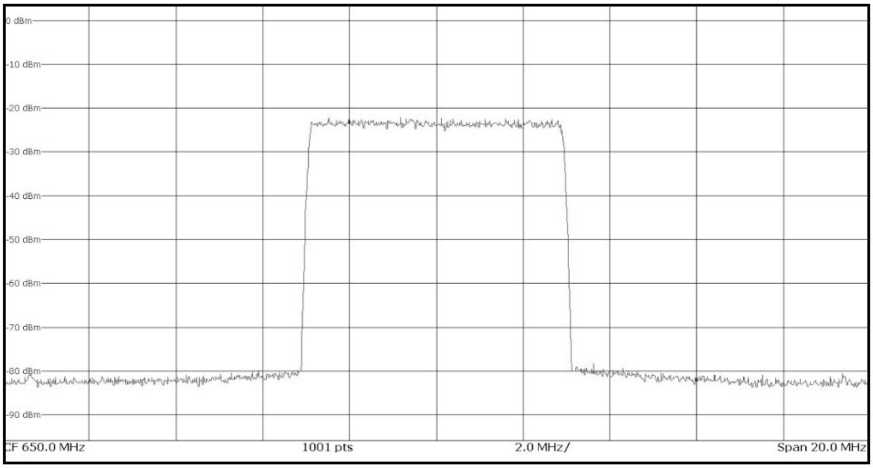


Fig. 47.8. The ATSC3.0 spectrum

The supported channel bandwidths (see Fig. 47.7.) in ATSC3.0 are:

- 6 MHz
- 7 MHz
- 8 MHz

Mainly the 6 MHz system will be in use, because ATSC3.0 was launched in South Korea and in the United States. The IFFT bandwidth in OFDM systems is wider, while the signal bandwidth or occupied bandwidth is smaller than the channel bandwidth (see Tables 47.4. and 47.6.).
The IFFT bandwidths (see Fig. 47.7.) of ATSC3.0 are the reciprocal of the ATSC3.0 elementary periods, resulting in three possibilities:

- 6.91 MHz
- 8.06 MHz
- 9.22 MHz

As in other OFDM-based transmission standards, not all subcarriers serve as data carriers. OFDM carriers are also used as

- “Dummy” carriers for building the guard band (these carriers are switched off, see Fig. 47.7.)
- Continual pilots for frequency synchronization purposes
- Scattered pilots for channel estimation and correction
- Subframe boundary pilots
- Edge pilots.

The pilots are boosted compared to the payload symbols, i.e. their amplitude is higher.
The pilots are inserted just before the IFFT block. The IFFT block transforms the OFDM carriers into the time domain, resulting an OFDM symbol. The length of such a symbol depends on the OFDM mode, according to the following formula:

$$\Delta t_{symbol} = 1/\Delta f_{carrier\ spacing}$$

This equation is also called “orthogonality condition”.

The spectrum of an ATSC3.0 signal in a 6 MHz wide channel is shown in Fig. 47.8.
In the time domain (see Fig. 47.9.), a guard interval is inserted cyclically in front of each OFDM symbol. This cyclical prefix (CP) is nothing more than a repetition of the end of the OFDM symbol concerned. Serving for protecting the OFDM signal against inter-symbol-interferences in the presence of multipath propagation, the duration of the guard interval corresponds to the maximum length of an echo path an OFDM system can handle.
ATSC 3.0 supports four different guard interval lengths in the 8K mode and six in the 16K and 32K modes. The higher the OFDM mode is, the more OFDM carriers are used and the closer the carriers are spaced. Consequently, the more carriers are in use, the longer the OFDM symbols are due to the orthogonality condition. Longer symbols also result in longer cyclical prefixes. To allow long transmitter station distances in single-frequency networks, long guard intervals are required.

In all OFDM systems, the guard interval is inserted typically always in front of every OFDM symbol as a cyclic repetition of the final part of the corresponding symbol, hence the name “Cyclic Prefix” (CP). In ATSC3.0, however, a postfix after the useful part of an OFDM symbol is also inserted. This serves for frame closing in ATSC3.0. In addition, also some “extra“ IFFT samples precede the cyclical prefix to help to optimize signal-processing in the receiver.

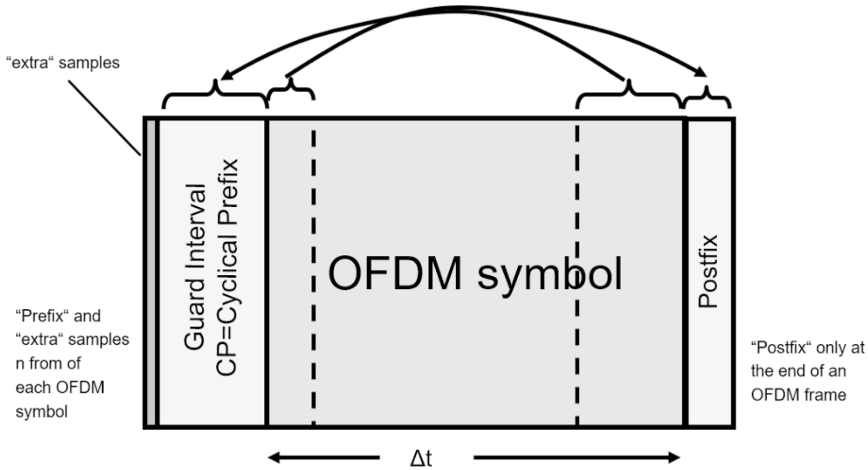


Fig. 47.9. Symbol and Guard Interval in ATSC3.0

Table 47.4. Supported OFDM modes in ATSC3.0 and physical OFDM parameters

$C_{red\ coeff}$	Number of OFDM carriers			Occupied bandwidth		
	8K FFT	16K FFT	32K FFT	6 MHz channel	7 MHz channel	8 MHz channel
0	6913	13825	27649	5.832844	6.804984	7.777125
1	6817	13633	27265	5.751844	6.710484	7.669125
2	6721	13441	26881	5.670844	6.615984	7.561125
3	6625	13249	26497	5.589844	6.521484	7.453125
4	6529	13057	26113	5.508844	6.426984	7.345125

Table 47.5. Guard Interval (GI) lengths in ATSC3.0

FFT size	GI length (samples)	GI (relative)	GI [µs]	GI [km]
8K	2048	25 %	296	89
8K	1536	18.75 %	223	67
8K	1024	12.5 %	148	44

8K	768	9.4 %	111	33
16K	4096	25 %	593	178
16K	3648	22.2 %	526	158
16K	2432	14.8 %	351	105
16K	1536	9.4 %	223	67
16K	1024	6.25 %	148	44
16K	768	4.7 %	111	33
32K	4864	14.8 %	702	211
32K	3648	11.1 %	526	158
32K	2432	7.4 %	351	105
32K	1536	4.7 %	222	67
32K	1024	3.1 %	147	44
32K	768	2.3 %	110	33

Table 47.5. shows the guard interval (GI) relative to the useful symbol duration (8192, 16384 or 32768 samples), as well as the calculated GI lengths in time and in distance (important for SFN planning). The guard interval length in km can be calculated from the duration of the guard interval, using the speed of light (299 792 458 m/s which means that 1 µs = 0.3 km).

Table 47.6. OFDM carrier spacing and symbol duration in ATSC3.0

Mode	Carrier spacing in a 6 MHz channel	Symbol duration in a 6 MHz channel	Carrier spacing in a 7 MHz channel	Symbol duration in a 7 MHz channel	Carrier spacing in an 8 MHz channel	Symbol duration in an 8 MHz channel
8K	843.75 Hz	1.185 ms	984.37 Hz	1.015 ms	1125 Hz	0.888 ms
16K	421.9 Hz	2.370 ms	492.22 Hz	2.032 ms	562.5 Hz	1.777 ms
32K	210.94 Hz	4.740 ms	281.28 Hz	4.063 ms	281.25 Hz	3.555 ms

All the physical parameters of ATSC 3.0 can be derived from the elementary periods of the corresponding ATSC modes:

- 0.1447 µs (for 6 MHz bandwidth)
- 0.1240 µs (for 7 MHz bandwidth)
- 0.1085 µs (for 8 MHz bandwidth)

Based on these elementary periods, the symbol durations are as follows:

- For the 8K mode, the elementary period multiplied by 8192
- For the 16K mode, the elementary period multiplied by 16384
- For the 32K mode, the elementary period multiplied by 32766

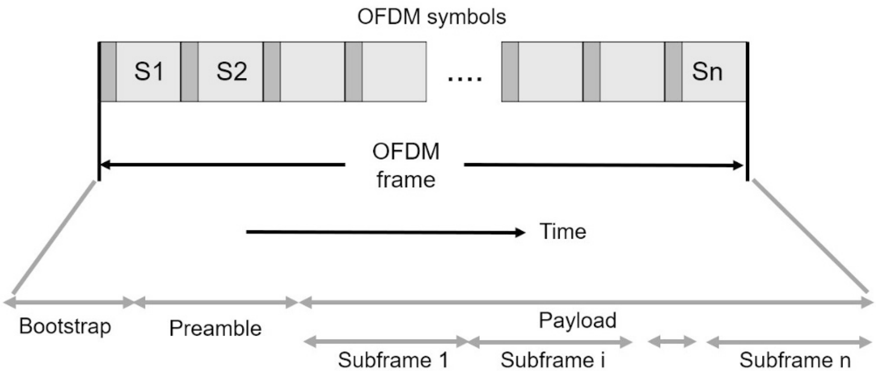


Fig. 47.10. OFDM frame structure in ATSC3.0

Several ATSC3.0 OFDM symbols (S_n in the above example in Fig. 47.10.)) form an OFDM frame. An ATSC3.0 OFDM frame starts with a bootstrap and preamble sequence for the ATSC3.0 receiver, followed by the data payload symbols which carry the PLP data. The bootstrap identifies the beginning of the frame and the preamble serves for layer 1 signaling for the receiver. The last OFDM symbol S_n has two guard periods – one at its beginning (prefix) and one at its end (postfix).
After the bootstrap and preamble, the OFDM frame is divided into subframes. Inside a subframe the OFDM mode (8K, 16K or 32K) and the guard interval size are constant, but these can vary from subframe to subframe.

47.8. PAPR, SISO, MISO

In OFDM-based systems the crest factor is always the subject of heavy debates. The crest factor is nothing more than the ratio of the highest possible peak voltage in a system to the root mean square voltage, converted into power. This quotient is also referred to as PAPR (Peak-to-Average Power Ratio). ATSC3.0 allows to reduce the PAPR by using either TR (Tone Reservation) or ACE (Active Constellation Extension) techniques (see also the DVB-T2 chapter). The exact mechanism of TR and ACE must be implemented by the modulator and exciter manufacturers.
The traditional SISO (Single Input – Single Output) transmission principle has been in use in broadcasting applications for many years. MISO (Multiple Input – Single Output) supports multi-antenna systems, while MIMO

(Multiple Input – Multiple Output) supports multiple receiver inputs. ATSC 3.0 supports both SISO, MISO and MIMO modes (see also chapter 37 “DVB-T2”).

47.9 Single-Frequency Networks

In ATV and ATSC1.0 only multi-frequency networks (MFN) were in use, where all transmitters were operating on different frequencies.
However, the demand for using the same frequency over a big coverage area is very much growing. One main reason is that many original terrestrial TV channels are lost and converted into mobile communication channels (see „Digital Dividend I and II“). OFDM is the right modulation for establishing single-frequency networks (SFN) and thus ATSC3.0 allows to create SFNs.
In the SFNs

- All the transmitters run on the same frequency
- Transmit the same data
- At the same time
- Fulfill the guard interval criterion (SFN network planning)

All transmitters get the same STL signal which needs to contain

- Control information for the physical transmission parameters
- SFN time stamps
- All PLP data streams

Single-Frequency Networks can be established by using long guard intervals (see table 47.5.). The guard interval expressed in distance specifies the maximal distance between adjacent transmitter stations in an SFN.

47.10 TDM, FDM and LDM

ATSC3.0 supports three ways of multiplexing the data to be transmitted as follows:

- Time Division Multiplexing (TDM)
- Frequency Division Multiplexing (FDM)

- Layer Division Multiplexing

Time Division Multiplexing means that the PLPs are distributed and multiplexed over time. But the PLPs could also be multiplexed and distributed over frequency or by using a combination of both which is referred to as TFDM (Time and Frequency Division Multiplexing). It is only a question of the choice of the physical ATSC3.0 parameters. Layer division multiplexing could additionally be used because it is only a special way of mapping.

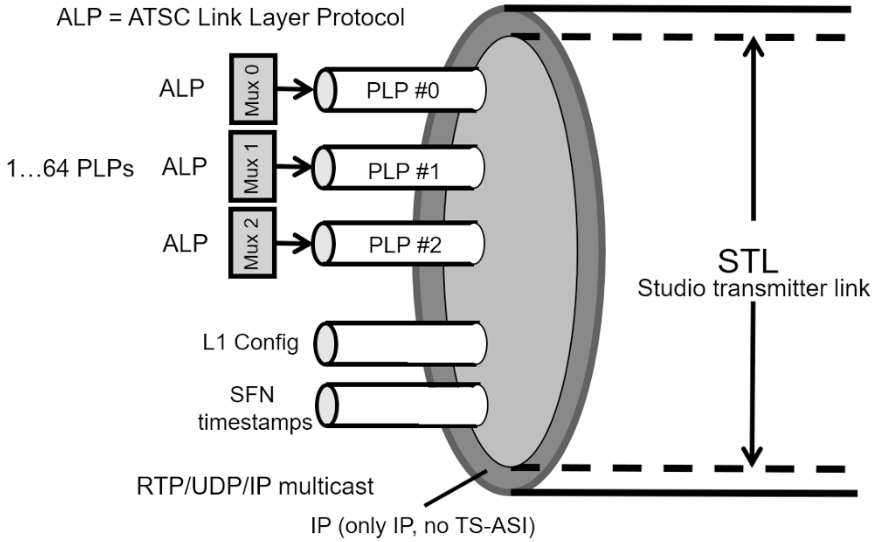


Fig. 47.11. STL multiplex signal structure principle

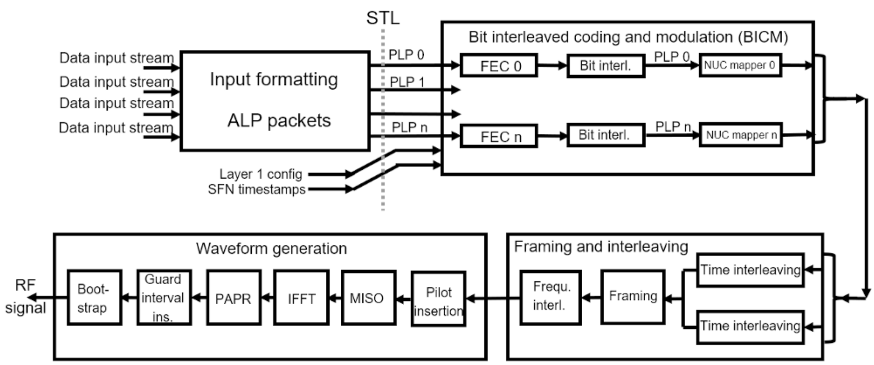


Fig. 47.12. ATSC3.0 modulator block diagram

47.11 Summary

ATSC3.0 is a powerful new terrestrial television broadcast standard. It is based on technologies like DVB-S2 and DVB-T2, using the same powerful LDPC forward error correction coding which allows 30% higher data rates than the earlier transmission systems. ATSC3.0 uses OFDM, yielding a much better performance than the old single-carrier modulation scheme from ATSC1.0. In addition, ATSC 3.0 also allows the establishment of SFNs (Single-Frequency Networks). This system has been in operation in South Korea since the 2018 Winter Olympics for UHDTV services, and there are also some ATSC3.0 field trials in the United States.

Bibliography: [A/300], [A/322], [A/324], [Zöllner]

48 LTE/5G-Based Broadcast

Since DVB-H/T and T-DMB appeared in 2004 to 2006, there have been several trials to introduce TV and sound broadcast services for mobile handheld devices. Until now these mobile broadcast services have been specified in independent functions, separately from the mobile handheld standards. Since 3GPP LTE release 9 was published in 2009 with eMBMS (evolved Multimedia Broadcast Multicast Services), LTE has offered operating modes which allow the transfer of broadcast services via a mobile handheld network without any extra specification. This chapter aims to describe a possible migration from the traditional video and audio broadcasting to hybrid mobile communication networks providing also video and audio broadcast services.

48.1 Mobile Broadcast Standards

Since 2006 several mobile broadcast standards have been developed, such as:

- DVB-H as an extension to DVB-T(1)
- DVB-SH
- DVB-T2 lite as an extension to a DVB-T2
- DVB-NGH (next generation handheld)
- MediaFLO
- ATSC-MH as an extension to ATSC1.0

All these standards have been technically described in this book. They have not been a market success, not for their technical capabilities but rather for the following possible reasons:

- They are all individual transmission standards.
- They require an extra receiver inside a mobile communication device.
- Missing business models

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_48

- Missing applications
- Missing end user equipment
- Separate network providers for the mobile communication and broadcast networks
- They appeared just too early.

We learned that separate standards and networks for mobile communications and broadcasts for handheld devices will have no chance to be accepted. And it doesn't matter which standard it is. Many people, especially the young generation (the so-called "Millenium Generation") watches videos and listens to radio services via mobile phones and portable devices. The idea now is to implement a broadband broadcast mode within the LTE and 5G standards. The terms behind these initiatives are:

- MBMS (Multimedia Broadcast Multicast Services – 3GPP Release 6)
- eMBMS (evolved Multimedia Broadcast Multicast Services – 3GPP Release 9)
- FeMBMS (Further evolved Multimedia Broadcast Multicast Services – 3GPP Release 14)
- Further technical improvements to MBMS in 3GPP Release 16

The next step comes with 3GPP Release 16, expected in October 2019. All these modes are realized in the framework of LTE (Long Term Evolution). The reasons of introducing a broadcast mode in LTE and 5G are:

- Increasing data rates for video streams
- Saving channel capacity
- Convergence between broadcast and mobile networks

Applications for MBMS are:

- Broadcast of video streams (e.g. public television services, big sports events)
- Broadcast of audio streams (public and commercial radios)
- Software/firmware downloads (e.g. automotive infotainment update)
- Live traffic/navigation data
- Information systems for trains, buses, etc.

48.2 Mobile Communication Standards

From the first generation mobile telephone standard, which was an analog FM system, via 2G/GSM, 3G/UMTS and LTE up to 5G mobile communication, there has been a significant improvement in the capabilities of the end user devices, as well as in the applications and data rates as shown in Fig. 48.1. Even in 2G/GSM (Global System for Mobile Communication) the main focus was already the bidirectional transfer of voice and some text. GSM-EDGE enabled faster data services, though still in the range of some 10 kbit/s.

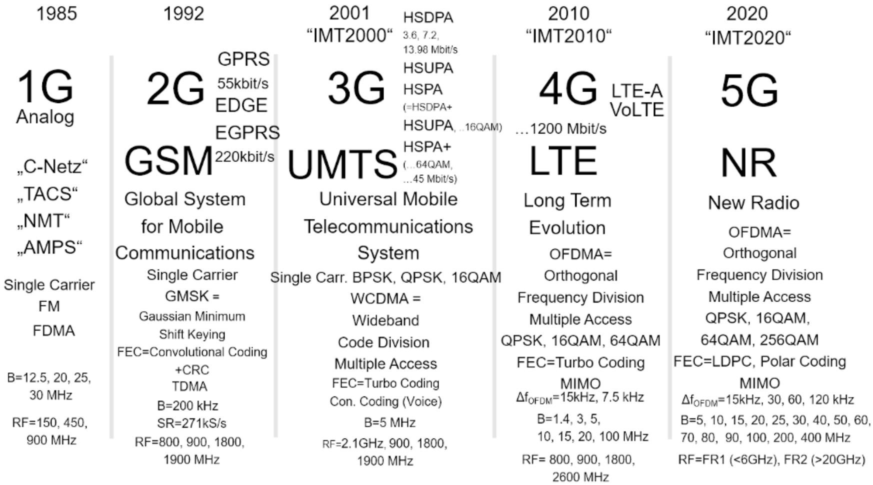


Fig. 48.1. Overview of mobile communication standards from 2G to 5G

GSM/EGPRS data rates reached up to 220 kbit/s. After 2000, the data rate increased to 10 Mbit/s with UMTS (Universal Mobile Telecommunications Systems), allowing faster Internet applications via mobile and portable handheld devices. LTE (Long Term Evolution) now offers data rates in the 100 Mbit/s range, which is necessary because after the introduction of the smart phone in 2007 many users decided to rely on high speed web-based applications. 5G-NR “New Radio” is under development and this next generation standard will offer even higher data rates and enable considerably more applications.

GSM and UMTS use single-carrier modulation. From LTE on OFDMA (Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiple Access) is applied. In broadcasting OFDM was identified to be the right choice more than three decades ago.

Table 48.1. Overview of the mobile communication standards and their technical parameters.

Standard	Year of Introduction	Type of Modulation	FEC	Data Rates
GSM	1992	Single Carrier, GMSK	Convolutional Coding	up to 220kbit/s
UMTS	2001	Single Carrier, WCMDA	Turbo Coding	3 … 45 Mbit/s
LTE	2010	OFDMA QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM	Turbo Coding	up to 1200 Mbit/s
5G-NR	2020	OFDMA QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM	LDPC, Polar Coding	

The Forward Error Correction in GSM is convolutional coding from the 1960s which was also adopted in the first generation DVB standards. UMTS and LTE use Turbo Coding which was developed in the 1990s. 5G-NR “New Radio” applies the LDPC (Low Density Parity Check) FEC, and Polar Coding for signaling. The latter one is very new, it was published in 2009 by Erdal Arikan.

GSM started in the 900 MHz frequency band, and later extended additionally to the 1800/1900 MHz range. UMTS operated in parallel with these on 2.1 GHz. The same frequency bands are used by the LTE, though this can also be operated in the new Digital Dividend I and II frequency bands from terrestrial broadcasting, i.e. in the range from 700 to 860 MHz.

5G-NR mentions frequency ranges FR1 and FR2, which are frequencies from 450 MHz to 6 GHz and 24.250 GHz to 52.600 GHz respectively. FR1 is for longer distances and bigger cells. FR2 works only “quasi-optically”, therefore it is suitable only for short distances without any reflections, and provides complete isolation between indoor and outdoor propagation.

Table 48.2. The 5G-NR frequency ranges

Range designation	Covered frequencies
FR1	450 MHz – 6000 MHz (7125 MHz)
FR2	24250 MHz – 52600 MHz

The LTE downlink allows channel bandwidths from 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, 5 MHz, 10 MHz and 15 MHz up to 20 MHz using OFDM with FFT sizes of 128, 256, 512, 1K and 2K points. Standard LTE OFDM carrier spacing is 15 kHz which gives a symbol duration of 1/15kHz, equivalent to 66.7 µs. Normal guard interval (Cyclic Prefix – CP) size is 4.7 µs. The first symbol of a subframe starts with a CP of 5.2 µs, while extended LTE-CPs last 16.7 µs and 33.3 µs. The OFDM subcarriers in the LTE downlink can be QPSK, 16QAM or 64QAM modulated.

The LTE uplink channel bandwidth is also 1.4 MHz, 3, 5, 10, 15 or 20 MHz. Carrier spacing in the uplink is 15 kHz, modulation ranges from BPSK, QPSK or 16QAM up to 64QAM. The signal processing in the uplink slightly differs from that in the downlink because the uplink modulator comprises the combination of a DFT and an IFFT block. This principle is sometimes called as SC-OFDM, and is expected to reduce the LTE-UE uplink crest factor to certain degree.

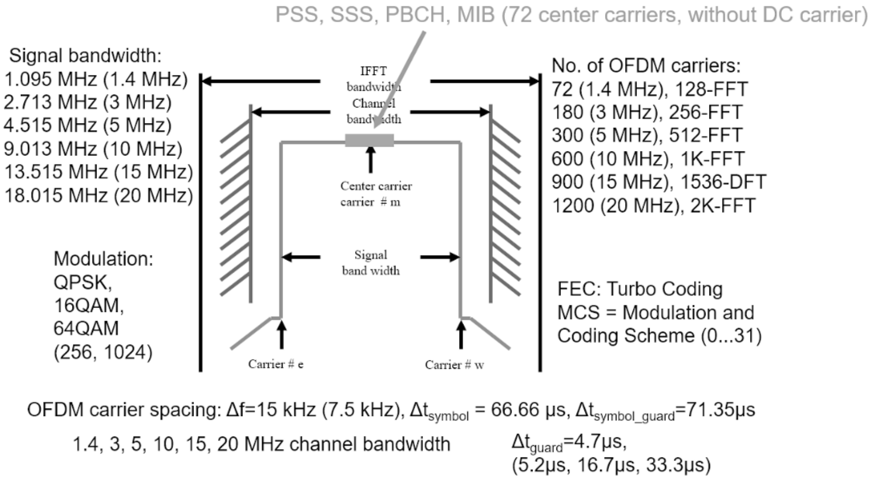


Fig. 48.2. The LTE downlink spectrum

The 5G spectrum supports bandwidths from 5 MHz, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100 and 200 MHz up to 400 MHz. The 5G-carrier spacing is 15 kHz or wider, i.e. 15 kHz, 30 kHz, 60 kHz, 120 kHz or 240 kHz. The modulation order is either QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM or 256QAM.

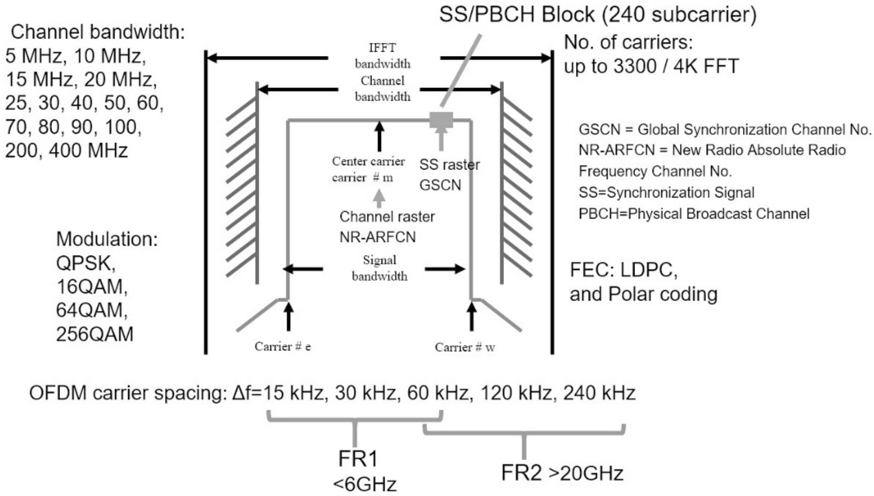


Fig. 48.3. The 5G downlink spectrum

LTE and 5G are OFDM-based and the symbols in both standards are extended by a cyclic prefix (CP). The standard carrier spacing in LTE is 15 kHz, resulting an OFDM symbol duration of 66.7 µs (the reciprocal of 15 kHz). Standard guard interval length is 4.7 µs, while the first OFDM symbol in an LTE subframe starts with a longer guard interval of 5.2 µs. Extended cyclic prefixes of 16.7 µs and 66.7 µs are defined for MBMS modes (Multimedia Broadcast Multicast Services).

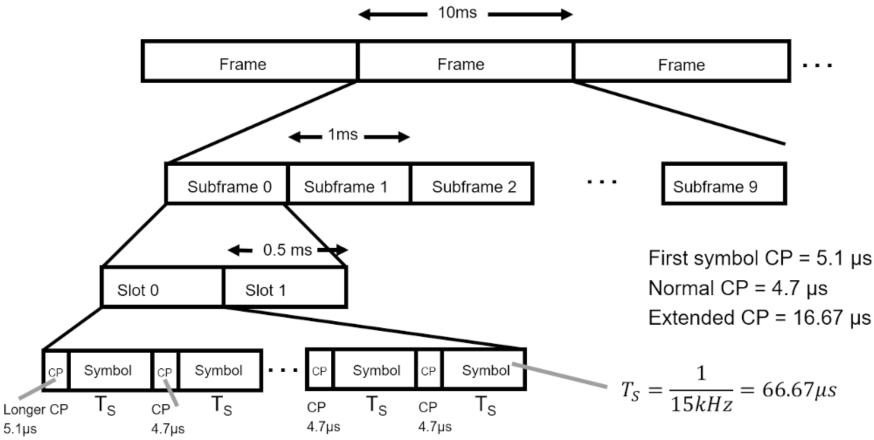


Fig. 48.4. LTE OFDM frame structure

LTE timing consists of 10 ms long radio frames which are divided into subframes of 1ms. Two 0.5 ms long slots build up a subframe. Several OFDM symbols with CP construct an LTE slot. The first symbol in a slot starts with a longer CP of 5.1 µs.

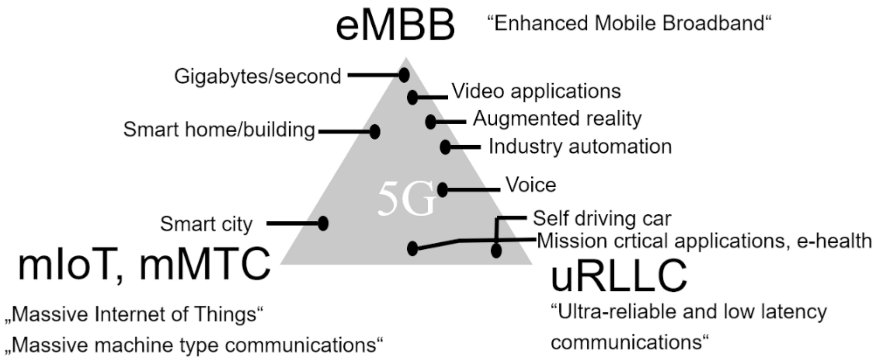


Fig. 48.5. The three pillars of 5G

5G-NR – fifth generation new radio – is not only one application. It supports eMBB (very high speed enhanced Mobile Broadcast) applications as well as uRLLC (Ultra-reliable and low-latency communications), along with mIoT and mMTC (massive Internet of Things and massive Machine Type Communications).

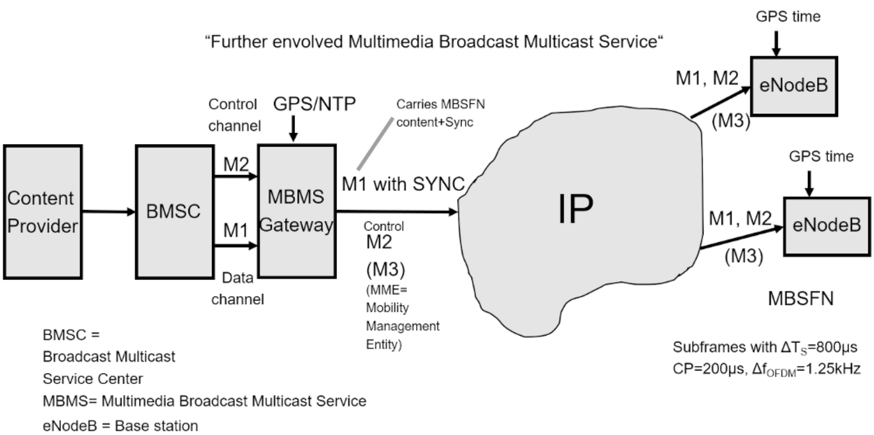


Fig. 48.6. The concept of FeMBMS

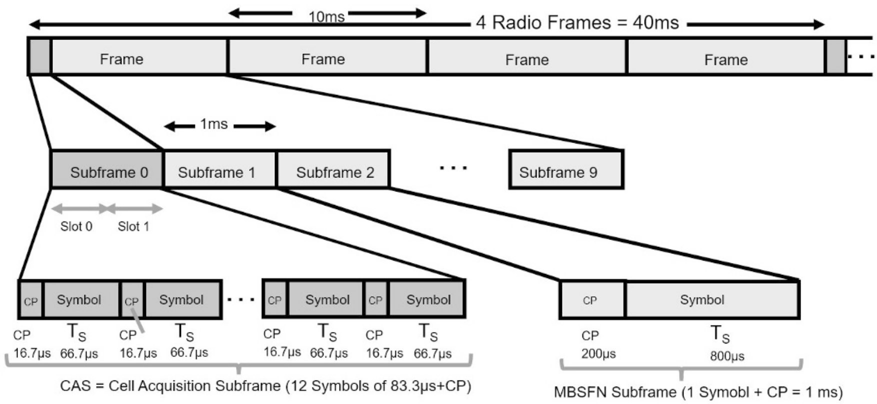


Fig. 48.7. FeMBMS framing

48.3 MBMS – Multimedia Broadcast Multicast Services

Cellular phone communication is a point-to-point data transmission. By introducing MBMS (Multimedia Broadcast Multicast Services) in 3GPP release 8, point- to-multipoint broadcasting to multiple devices was made possible. 3GPP release 9 defined MBSFN (Multimedia Broadcast SFN) in 2014, allowing a CP of up to 16.7 µs (5km). Bigger Single-Frequency Networks cannot be established in this mode. Field trials like “IBM5” (Munich, Bavaria, Germany, IRT, Nokia, Bayerischer Rundfunk, Rohde&Schwarz in 2016) resulted in inputs to 3GPP release 14 related to the FeMBMS/enTV-mode. FeMBMS (“Further evolved Multimedia Broadcast Multicast Services”) specifies Single-Frequency Networks with a carrier spacing of 1.25 kHz (800 µs symbol duration) and a CP of 200 µs (60 km). Fig. 48.6 shows an MBSFN network; the content provider delivers video/audio streams and feeds a Broadcast Multicast Service Center (BMSC), which is connected to the MBMS gateway via a control and data channel. The MBMS gateway also receives GPS time information to be able to control a Single-Frequency Network (SFN). The M1 and an M2 signals from the MBMS gateway are distributed to the SFN transmitters via IP. Each transmitter (LTE eNodeB) receives the M1 and M2 signals and is also synchronized by the GPS time information.

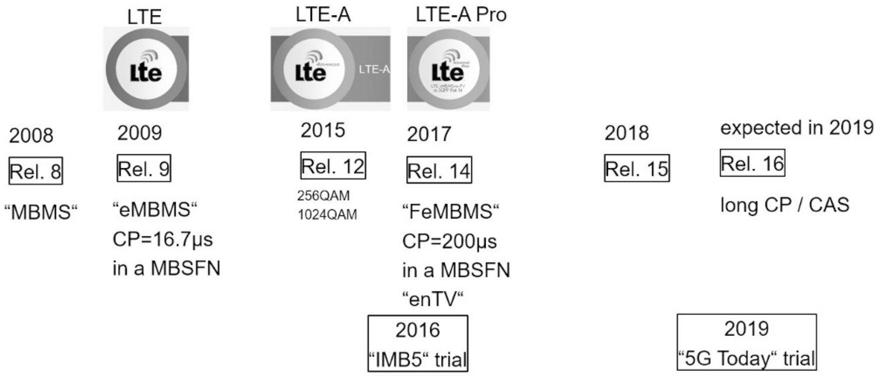


Fig. 48.8. LTE releases providing "MBMS"

Fig. 48.7. shows the FeMBMS timing. In FeMBMS four radio frames, each 10 ms long, build up an FeMBMS frame. The first subframe in an FeMBMS frame is the CAS (Cell Acquisition Subframe), which is the signaling and sync channel for the receivers. In 3GPP release 14 this CAS has a symbol duration of 66.7 µs and a CP of 16.7 µs (5 km). This CAS timing will foreseeably change in 3GPP release 16, which is expected to be released by the end of 2019. The subframes after the CAS contain the MBSFN subframes with a correct SFN timing and a symbol duration of 800µs combined with a CP of 200µs (60 km). The 800µs symbol duration corresponds to an MBSFN OFDM carrier spacing of 1.25 kHz. This means that if the symbols and CPs of the CAS will also be extended in 3GPP release 16, it will be possible to build bigger single-frequency networks with the FeMBMS technology, like in DVB-T/T2.

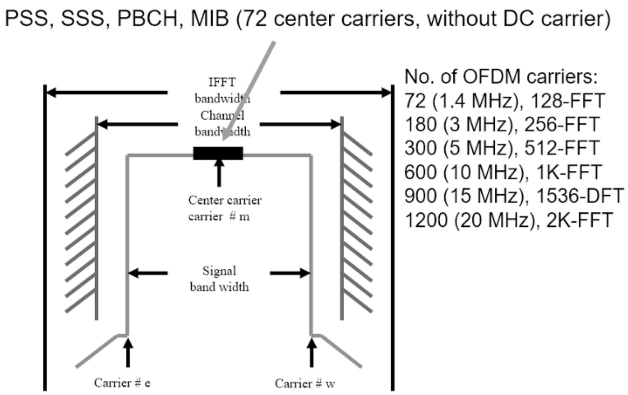


Fig. 48.9. Position of the PSS, SSS and PBCH in the LTE downlink spectrum

Synchronization signals PSS, SSS and PBCH are transmitted at the beginning of a subframe (Fig. 48.10.), which are located in the central 72 OFDM carriers in an LTE channel (see Fig. 48.9.). The purpose of the PSS and SSS is to inform the UE (User Equipment) about the main physical LTE parameters like the channel bandwidth. The PSS and the SSS serve for time and frequency synchronization. LTE and 5G-NR use pilots for channel estimation, but the term Reference Signal (RS) is used instead of "pilot". LTE uses two RSs per RB (Resource Block, equivalent to 12 carriers), and the position of these reference signals is continually shifted so that every 3rd carrier becomes a reference signal over time.

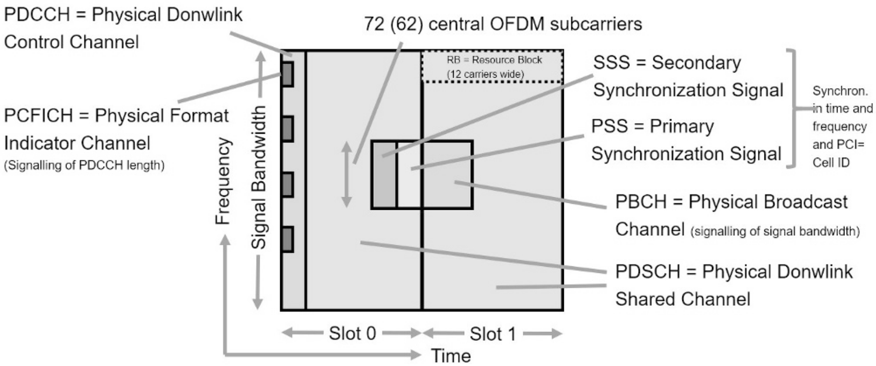


Fig. 48.10. CAS structure in the first subframe in every four radio frames in FeMBMS

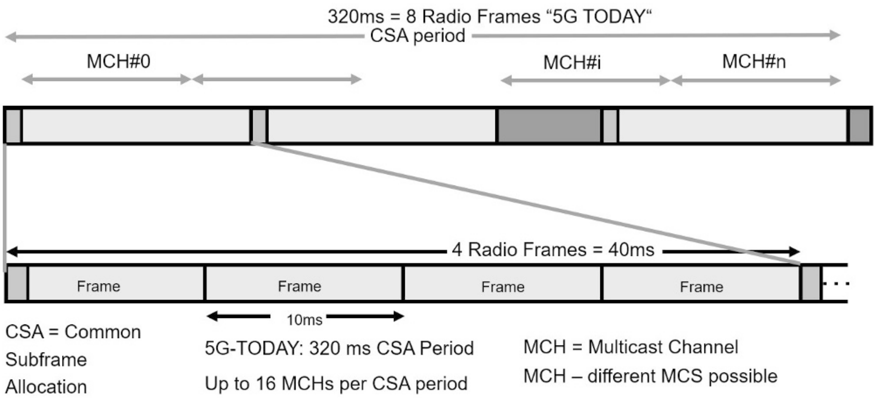


Fig. 48.11. MCH (Multicast Channels) inside a CSA period in FeMBMS

Another term is also distinguished: CSA (not to be confused with CAS). CSA stands for “Common Subframe Allocation”. Several groups of four FeMBMS radio frames, each 40 ms long, form a CSA-period which can last e.g. 320 ms (project “5G TODAY”). Several MCH (Multicast Channels) can be placed inside such a CSA period. Each Multicast Channel can be transferred with a different MCS (Modulation an Coding Scheme), which means that different MCHs can have a different robustness and data rate settings. Up to 16 MCHs can be transmitted. The MCH model is similar to the concept of PLPs in DVB-T2 and ATSC3.0. Each MCH can transport, for example, different DVB-IP-based MPEG-2 transport streams (MPTS).

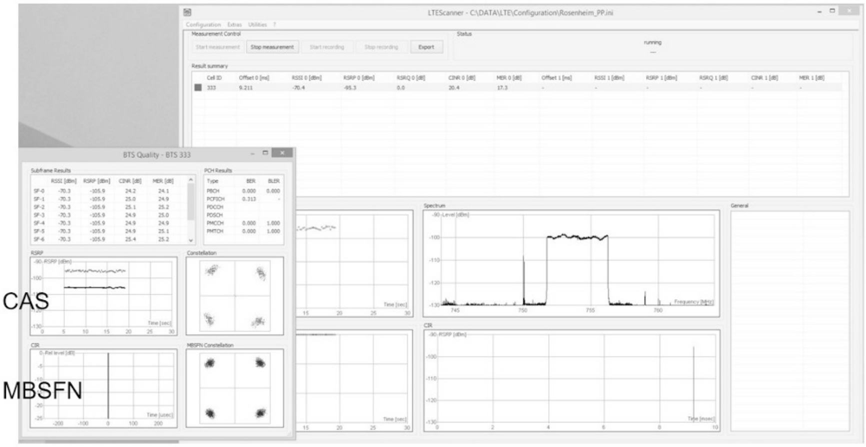


Fig. 48.12. Measurement screen of the Kathrein FeMBMS signal analyzer system in the “5G TODAY” project

A field trial called “5G TODAY” (Fig. 48.13.) was performed in 2019: two transmitter stations of the Bayerischer Rundfunk (transmitter station Wendelstein/BR and Ismaning/BR) using Rohde & Schwarz transmitters and Kathrein antennas ran in 3GPP release 14 FeMBMS mode with the following parameters:

- Frequency = 754 MHz
- Bandwidth = 5 MHz
- Power = 5 kW
- ERP = 100 kW
- MCS = 9 (QPSK, CR = 0.6)
- Data rate = 3.9 Mbit/s

During the field trial there were no UEs (User Equipment, Mobile Handheld Devices) available. Receive tests were performed by software-defined-radio devices developed by the Technical University of Braunschweig and another solution by Kathrein, Rosenheim (see Fig. 48.12., based on R&S TSMW). The QPSK constellation diagrams of the CAS signal and the MBSFN signal are clearly visible in Fig. 48.12.

Table 48.3. MCS (Modulation and Coding Scheme) in LTE

MCS	QAM	Code Rate
0	QPSK	0.108
1	QPSK	0.143
2	QPSK	0.174
3	QPSK	0.224
4	QPSK	0.285
5	QPSK	0.351
6	QPSK	0.412
7	QPSK	0.493
8	QPSK	0.554
9	QPSK	0.635
10	16QAM	0.317
11	16QAM	0.348
12	16QAM	0.393
13	16QAM	0.454
14	16QAM	0.511
15	16QAM	0.572
16	16QAM	0.612
17	64QAM	0.408
18	64QAM	0.422
19	64QAM	0.483
20	64QAM	0.523
21	64QAM	0.564
22	64QAM	0.604
23	64QAM	0.664
24	64QAM	0.714
25	64QAM	0.745
26	64QAM	0.806
27	64QAM	0.836
28	64QAM	0.968

The MCS (Modulation and Coding Scheme) parameter indicates the currently used Forward Error Correction code rate and modulation pattern (see table 48.3.). MCS 9 was set in the South Bavarian "5G-TODAY" field trial mentioned above, which means QPSK modulation combined with a code rate of 0.635. In FeMBMS the MCS parameter is only controlled by the eNodeB, i.e. by the FeMBMS transmitter. Different multicast channels with different MCS settings can be on air simultaneously, which means that the MCS can be changed over time like VCM (Variable Coding and Modulation) in DVB-T2.

In a standard LTE network the eNodeB (base station) and the UE (mobile device) communicate with each other, where the UE signals back the channel quality via the so-called CQI (Channel Quality Index). The eNodeB selects the appropriate MCS parameter, allowing to cover a robustness range in terms SNR between about -5dB and +20dB. MCS=0 corresponds to the maximum robustness and a minimum net data rate, while MCS=28 represents the minimal robustness and maximal net data rate. Newer LTE releases also allow a modulation order of 256QAM and 1024QAM. However, it is questionable whether 1024QAM makes sense on an air interface.

LTE contains various MCS tables. Table 48.3. shows a very commonly used one.

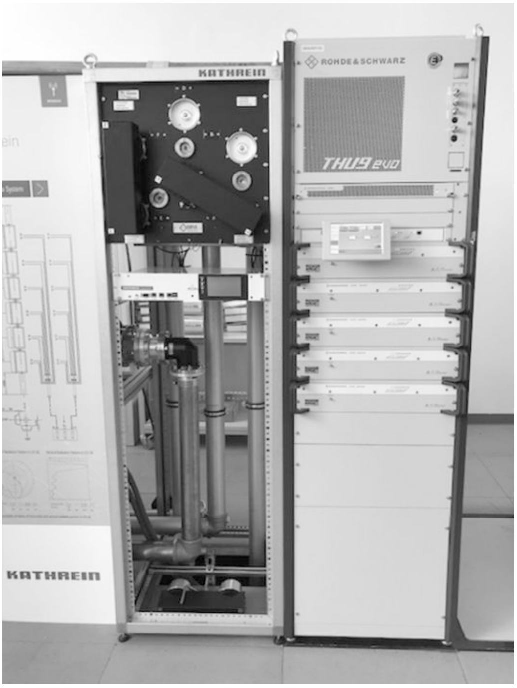


Fig. 48.13. A “5G TODAY“ transmitter in the Ismaning transmitter station (Bayerischer Rundfunk)

48.4 Summary

5G rollout has just started. Further technical developments on FeMBMS are expected to be published in 3GPP release 16 by the end of 2019, aiming to optimize the broadcast network modes. The current broadcast networks (DVB-T2, DAB+, ATSC, ISDB-T, etc.), however, will continue to be on air for the next years or decade(s). Even a switch-off scenario for the good old VHF FM sound broadcast systems is not visible on the horizon. The data rates of LTE/5G-based broadcasting cannot be expected to exceed those of DVB-T2 or ATSC3.0 due to the similarity of the technologies. OFDM and LDPC are applied in DVB-T2, ATSC3.0 and also 5G; the latter two systems are both based on the DVB-T2 technology.

Bibliography [LTE], [5G-NR], [Polar Coding], [5G TODAY], [DAHLMAN 5G], [JOHNSON LTE], [GESSNER LTE], [OSSEIRAN], [ZAIDI], [STUHLFAUT HSPA], [KOTTKAMP], [DAHLMAN 4G]

49 Outlook

In the mid-1990s, broadcasting was switched over from analog to digital. Analog terrestrial television currently (2019) only exists in a few Asian, African, and South-American countries, all other regions have rolled out digital television in the form of DVB-T, DVB-T2, ATSC, ISDB-T, or DTMB. Currently, so-called “re-analogized” TV channels in CATV networks will be switched off, finishing now a long analog TV history. Europe switched off analog TV over satellite already in April 2012. There are now a number of SDTV and HDTV channels available over satellite, cable, or terrestrially, and also over 2-wire phone lines as IPTV. Many endpoint devices and broadcast contents support “HbbTV” or “SmartTV” functionality, adding value to the broadcasting service as compared to competing offerings over the Internet like media libraries, modern videotext, etc. While 3DTV technologies and offerings have been viable for years now, it looks like 3DTV was just a fad. It was supported by a lot of terminal devices, but content is only available on Blu-ray disks (BD), if at all. The next few years will see the appearance of UHDTV offerings, and suitable endpoint equipment are available. In many regions, DVB-T(1) will be superseded by DVB-T2; for example, Germany switched to HEVC/H.265 video encoding from 2017 to 2019. Digital radio comes in the form of DAB or DAB+, or in the USA as HD radio / IBOC. VHF FM radio will be around for many years in most countries worldwide. The new DOCSIS 3.1 standard with OFDM technology for broadband transmission has been available for some years now, and promises higher data rates for Internet access over broadband cable. With ATSC 3.0 there is a new standard that is OFDM-based and based on DVB-T2. New technologies like OTT and LTE/5G-based broadcast will be competition to “traditional” broadcast. In 2020 a further new video coded – nickname H.266/VVC - is expected to be published, again reducing the video rates by 50%.

Bibliography: [DVB], [DOCSIS 3.1], [ATSC]

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7_49

Bibliography

[ALAMOUTI] Alamouti, S.: A Simple Transmit Diversity Technique for Wireless Communications, IEEE Journal, October 1998

[ARIB] Association of Radio Business and Industries, Arib Std.-B10 Version 3.2, Service Information for Digital Broadcasting System, 2001

[ATSC-MH] ATSC-M/H Standard, Part 1, A/153, 2009

[AVHE100] Rohde&Schwarz AVHE100, Headend Solution for Encoding and Multiplexing, 2015

[A53] ATSC Doc. A53, ATSC Digital Television Standard, September 1995

[A65] ATSC Doc. A65, Program and System Information Protocol for Terrestrial Broadcast and Cable, December 1997

[A133] Implementation Guidelines for a Second Generation Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting System (DVB-T2), DVB Document A133, February 2009

[A138] Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB), Frame Structure Channel Coding and Modulation for a Second Generation Digital Transmission System for Cable Systems (DVB-C2), April 2009

[A/300] ATSC3.0: ATSC3.0 System Overview

[A/322] ATSC3.0: Physical Layer Protocol

[A/324] ATSC3.0: Scheduler/Studio to Transmitter Link

[BEST] Best, R.: Handbuch der analogen und digitalen Filterungstechnik. AT Verlag, Aarau, 1982

[BOSSERT] Bossert, M.: Kanalcodierung. Teubner, Stuttgart, 1998

[BRIGHAM] Brigham, E. O.: FFT, Schnelle Fouriertransformation. Oldenbourg, München 1987

[BRINKLEY] Brinkley, J.: Defining Vision - The Battle for the Future of Television. Harcourt Brace, New York, 1997

[BTC] Rohde&Schwarz, Broadcast Test Center BTC, Handbuch

[KWS_VAROS109] KWS Electronic VAROS109, Digitaler Satelliten-Messempfänger

[BUROW] Burow, R., Mühlbauer, O., Progrzeba, P.: Feld- und Labormessungen zum Mobilempfang von DVB-T. Fernseh- und Kinotechnik 54, Jahrgang Nr. 3/2000

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7

[CHANG] Robert W. Chang, Orthogonal Frequency Data Transmission System, United States Patent Office, 1970
[CISPR20] International Electrotechnical Commission, Sound and Television Broadcast Receivers and Associated Equipment – Immunity Characterstics, 2006
[COOLEY] Cooley, J. W., and Tukey J. W.: An Algorithm for Machine Calculation of Complex Fourier Series, Math. Computation, Vol. 19, pp. 297-301, April 1965
[DAB-XPlorer] Ingenieurbüro Mulka, info@ib-mulka.de
[DAHLMAN 4G] Dahlman, E., Parkvall, S., Sköld, J, 4G LTE-Advanced, Academic Press, Elsevier, 2016
[DAHLMAN 5G] Dahlman, E., Parkvall, S., Sköld, J., Academic Press, Elsevier, 2019
[DAMBACHER] Dambacher, P.: Digitale Technik für Hörfunk und Fernsehen. R. v. Decker, 1995
[DAVIDSON] Davidson, G., Fielder, L., Antill, M.: High-Quality Audio Transform Coding at 128 kBit/s, IEEE, 1990
[D-book] www.dtg.org.uk
[DIBCOM] Kabelnetzhandbuch, 4. Auflage, Mai 2007
[DOCSIS1.0] Recommendation ITU-T J112, International Telecommunication Union, 1998
[DOCSIS2.0] Recommendation ITU-T J122, International Telecommunication Union, 2007
[DOCSIS3.0] Recommendation ITU-T J222.0, International Telecommunication Union, 2007
[DOCSIS3.1] Cable Television Laboratories, Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specification – DOCSIS 3.1, 2014
[DREAM] DREAM; Version 1.5 cvs, Open-Source Software Implementation of a DRM Receiver, Darmstadt University of Technology, 2005
[DSA] DOCSIS Signal Analyzer, Rohde&Schwarz
[DVB_A122r1] Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB), Frame Structure Channel Coding and Modulation for a Second Generation Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting System (DVB-T2), DVB, June 2008
[DVB-A169] DVB Blue Book A169, C2-Modulator Interface, ETSI, 2014
[DVB-A83-2] Digital Video Broadcasting, DVB Document A-83-2, DVB-S2X DVB-S2X Extensions, 2014
[DVB Blue Book A147] Digital Video Broadcasting, DVB-C2 Implementation Guidelines, ETSI, 2013
[DVB-T2] Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Frame Structure Channel Coding and Modulation for a Second Generation Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting System (DVB-T2), January 2008

[DVB-C2] Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Frame Structure Channel Coding and Modulation for a Second Generation Digital Transmission System for Cable Systems (DVB-C2), DVB Document A138, April 2009
[DVB-T2-MI] ETSI TS 102773, Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Modulator Interface (T2-MI) for a Second Generation Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting System (DVB-T2), 2009
[DVM] MPEG-2 Analyzer DVM, Documentation, Rohde&Schwarz, Munich, 2005
[DVMD] Digital Measurement Decoder DVMD, Documentation, Rohde&Schwarz, Munich, 2001
[DVMS] Rohde&Schwarz, Digital TV Monitoring System DVMS1, DVMS4
[DVSG] Digital Video Signal Generator, Rohde&Schwarz, Documentation, 2009
[DVQ] Digital Picture Quality Analyzer DVQ, Documentation, Rohde&Scharz, München, 2001
[DVG] Digital Video Generator DVG, Documentation, Rohde&Schwarz, München, 2001
[EFA] TV Test Receiver EFA, Documentation, Rohde&Schwarz, München, 2001
[EIA608A] EIA-608-A, Recommended Practice for Line 21 Data Service, December 1999
[EIA708B] EIA-708-B, Digital Television Closed Captioning, December 1999
[ERVER] Erver, M.: Mess-Sequenzen für TV-Displays, Diplomarbeit TU-Dortmund, 2008
[ETL] TV Analyzer ETL, Documentation, Rohde&Schwarz, 2009
[ETS101812] Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Multimedia Home Platform (MHP) Specification 1.1.1., ETSI 2003
[ETS101980] Digital Radio Mondiale (DRM); System Specification, ETSI, 2001
[ETS102006] ETSI TS 102 006, Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Specifications for System Software Update in DVB Systems, ETSI, 2004
[ETR290] ETSI Technical Report ETR 290, Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB), Measurement Guidelines for DVB systems, Sophia Antipolis, 2000
[ETS300401] Radio Broadcasting Systems ; Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) to mobile, portable and fixed receivers, ETSI May 2001
[ETS300472] ETS 300472 Digital broadcasting systems for television, sound and data services; Specification for conveying ITU-R System B Teletext in Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB) bitstreams, ETSI, 1995

[ETS301192] ETSI EN 301 192, Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); DVB specification for data broadcasting
[ETS301234] Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) ; Multimedia Object Transfer (MOT) protocol, ETSI 1999
[ETS300421] ETS 300421, Digital broadcasting systems for television, sound and data services; Framing structure, channel coding and modulation for 11/12 GHz satellite systems, ETSI, 1994
[ETS300429] ETS 300429, Digital Video Broadcasting; Framing structure, channel coding and modulation for cable systems, ETSI, 1998
[ETS300468] ETS 300468 Specification for Service Information (SI) in Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB) Systems, ETSI, March 1997
[ETS300744] ETS 300744, Digital Video Broadcasting; Framing structure, channel coding and modulation for digital terrestrial television (DVB-T), ETSI, 1997
[ETS300797] Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB); Distribution Interfaces ; Service Transport Interface (STI), ETSI 1999
[ETS300799] Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB); Distribution Interfaces ; Ensemble Transport Interface (ETI), ETSI, Sept. 1997
[EN301210] ETSI EN 301 210 ; Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB), Framing Structure, Channel Coding and Modulation for Digital Satellite News Gathering (DSNG) and other Contribution Applications by Satellite, ETSI, 1999
[EN302769] Digital Video Broadcasting, ETSI EN302769, Frame Structure, Channel Coding and Modulation for the Second Generation Digital Transmission System for Cable System (DVB-C2), ETSI, 2011
[ETS302304] Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Transmission Systems for Handheld Terminals (DVB-H), ETSI 2004
[EN302583] Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Framing Structure, Channel Coding and Modulation for Satellite Services to Handheld Divices (SH) below 3 GHz, 2008
[ETS302307] ETSI EN 301 307; Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB), Second Generation of Framing Structure, Channel Coding and Modulation for Broadcasting, Interactive Services, News Gathering and other Broadcast Satellite Operations, ETSI, 2006
[FASTL] Fastl, H., Zwicker, E.: Psychoacoustics, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, 2006
[FISCHER1] Fischer, W.: Die Fast Fourier Transformation - für die Videomesstechnik wiederentdeckt. Vortrag und Aufsatz Fernseh- und Kinotechnische Gesellschaft, FKTG, Mai 1988
[FISCHER2] Fischer, W.: Digital Terrestrial Television: DVB-T in Theory and Practice, Seminar Documentaion, Rohde&Schwarz, Munich, 2001

[FISCHER3] Fischer, W.: DVB Measurement Guidelines in Theory and Practice, Seminar Documentation, Rohde&Schwarz, Munich, 2001
[FISCHER4] Fischer, W.: MPEG-2 Transport Stream Syntax and Elementary Stream Encoding, Seminar Documentation, Rohde&Schwarz, Munich, 2001
[FISCHER5] Fischer, W.: Picture Quality Analysis on Digital Video Signals, Seminar Documentation, Rohde&Schwarz, Munich, 2001
[FISCHER6] Fischer, W.: Digital Television, A Practical Guide for Engineers, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, 2004
[FISCHER7] Fischer, W.: Einführung in DAB, Seminardokumentation, Rohde&Schwarz München, 2004
[FITZEK] Fitzek, F., Katz, M., Cooperation in Wireless Networks: Principles and Applications, Springer, 2006
[FKT_2013_HEVC] B. Bross, D. Marpe, H. Schwarz, High-Efficiency Video Coding – (HEVC) Standard, Fernseh- und Kinotechnik, FKT 1-2, 2013
[FKTG_GUNKEL] Gunkel, G.: Presentation DVB-T2, Fernseh- und Kinotechnische Gesellschaft, Jahrestagung Mai 2008, München
[GB20600] GB20600-2006, Framing Structure, Channel Coding and Modulation for Digital Television Terrestrial Broadcasting System, China, 2006
[GESSNER LTE] Geßner, C., Long Term Evolution, Technical book, Rohde&Schwarz, 2011
[GIROD] Girod, B., Rabenstein, R., Stenger, A.: Einführung in die Systemtheorie. Teubner, Stuttgart, 1997
[GRUNWALD] Grunwald, S.: DVB, Seminar Documentation, Rohde&Schwarz, Munich, 2001
[HARRIS] Harris, Fredrik J.: On the Use of Windows for Harmonic Analysis with the Discrete Fourier Transform, Proceedings of the IEEE, Vol. 66, January 1978
[HbbTV] HbbTV Specification 2.00, www.hbbtv.org
[HDMI1.4] High-Definition Multimedia Interface Specification, Version 1.4b, 2011
[HDMI2.0] High-Definition Multimedia Interface Specification, Version 2.0a, 2015
[HEVC] Recommendation ITU-T H.265, High Efficiency Video Coding, International Telecommunication Union, 2013
[HEVC_IEEE_Overview] G.J. Sullivan, J.R. Ohm, W.J. Han, T. Wiegand, Overview of the High Efficiency Video Coding (HEVC) Standard, IEEE Transactions, Vol. 22, No. 12, Dec. 2012
[HEVC_IEEE_Comparison] J.R. Ohm, G.J. Sullivan, H. Schwarz, T.K Tan, T. Wiegand, Comparison of the Coding Efficiency of Video Coding

Standards – Including High Efficiency Video Coding (HEVC), IEEE Transactions, Vol. 22, No. 12, Dec. 2012
[HOEG_LAUTERBACH] Hoeg W., Lauterbach T.: Digital Audio Broadcasting, Principles and Applications of Digital Radio, Wiley, Chichester, UK, 2003
[HOFMEISTER] Hofmeister, M.: Messung der Übertragungsparameter bei DVB-T, Diplomarbeit Fachhochschule München, 1999
[H.264] ITU-T H.264 Advanced video coding for generic audiovisual services, International Telecommunication Union, 2005
[IRT2008_KUNERT] Kunert, C.: Presentation DVB-T2, April 2008, IRT, Institut für Rundfunktechnik, München
[ISO/IEC13522.5] Information technology – Coding of multimedia and hypermedia information – part 5: Support of base-level interactive applications. ISO/IEC 13522-5, 1997
[ISO13818-1] ISO/IEC 13818-1 Generic Coding of Moving Pictures and Associated Audio: Systems, ISO/IEC, November 1994
[ISO13818-2] ISO/IEC 13818-2 MPEG-2 Video Coding
[ISO13181-3] ISO/IEC 13818-3 MPEG-2 Audio Coding
[ISO/IEC13818-6] Digital Storage Media Command and Control (DSM-CC), ISO/IEC 13818-6, 1996
[ISO14496-2] ISO/IEC 14496-10 AVC
[ISO/IEC23008] ISO/IEC23008, High Efficiency Coding and Media Delivery in Heterogeneous Environments, MPEG-H, 2014
[ISO/IEC23009] ISO/IEC23009, Dynamic Adaptive Streaming over HTTP (DASH), MPEG-DASH, 2012
[ITU205] ITU-R 205/11, Channel Coding, Frame Structure and Modulation Scheme for Terrestrial Integrated Services Digital Broadcasting (ISDB-T), ITU, March 1999
[ITU500] ITU-R BT.500 Methology for Subjective Assessment of Quality of Television Signals
[ITU601] ITU-R BT.601
[ITU709] ITU-R BT.709-5, Parameter values for the HDTV standards for production and interactive programme exchange, ITU, 2002
[ITU1120] ITU-R BT.1120-3, Digital interfaces for HDTV studio signals, ITU, 2000
[ITU-T G.992] ITU-T G.992 Asymmetrical Digital Subscriber Line (ADSL), ITU, 1999
[ITU-T G.993] ITU-T G.993 Very High Speed Digital Subscriber Line (VDSL), ITU, 2007
[ITUJ83] ITU-T J83: Transmission of Television, Sound Programme and other Multimedia Signals; Digital Transmission of Television Signals, April 1997

[ITU-R BS.412-9] ITU Recommendation ITU-R BS.412-9, Planning standards for terrestrial FM sound broadcasting at VHF, 1998
[ITU-R BS.450-3] ITU Recommendation ITU-R BS.450-3, Transmission Standard for FM sound broadcastingn at VHF, 2001
[JACK] Jack, K.: Video Demystified, A Handbook for the Digital Engineer, Elsevier, Oxford, UK, 2005
[JAEGER] Jaeger, D.: Übertragung von hochratigen Datensignalen in Breitbandkommunikationsnetzen, Dissertation. Selbstverlag, Braunschweig, 1998
[JOHNSON LTE] Johnson, C., Long Term Evolution, In Bullets, 2nd Edition, 2012
[KAMMEYER] Kammeyer, K.D.: Nachrichtenübertragung. Teubner, Stuttgart, 1996
[KATHREIN] Kathrein-Werke KG, www.kathrein.de
[KATHREIN1] Kathrein, Broadcast Antennas for FM, TV, MMDS, DAB and DVB, Cathalogue, Rosenheim, 2005
[KATHREIN_ANTENNEN_1] O. Gotthard, FM- und TV-Sendeantennensysteme, Fa. Kathrein, 1989
[KATHREIN_ANTENNEN_2] Professional Broadcast Antennas, Katalog, 2011
[KELLER] Keller, A.: Datenübertragung im Kabelnetz, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, 2005
[KIRCHNER] Kirchner, J.: UKW-Stereo-Rundfunkversorgung, Funkschau, 1981
[KORIES] Kories, R.: Schmidt-Walter, H.: Taschenbuch der Elektrotechnik. Verlag Harri Deutsch, Frankfurt, 2000
[KOTTKAMP] Kottkamp, M., Pandey A., Raddino, D., Roessler, A., Stuhlfaut, R., 5G New Radio, Technical book, Rohde&Schwarz, 2019
[KUEPF] Küpfmueller, K.: Einführung in die theoretische Elektrotechnik. Springer, Berlin, 1973
[KWS] KWS Electronic GmbH, www.kws-electronic.de
[LASS] Lassalle, R., Alard, M.: Principles of Modulation and Channel Coding for Digital Broadcasting for Mobile Receivers. EBU Review no. 224, August 1987
[LEFLOCH] Le Floch, B.: Halbert-Lassalle, R., Castelain, D.: Digital Sound Broadcasting to Mobile Receivers. IEEE Transactions on Consumer Electronics, Vol. 35, No. 3, August 1989
[LESNIK] Lesnik, F.: Messtechnische Untersuchung über Einfluss der Belegung in den UHF-Kanälen K61 – 69 mit UMTS/3G FDD oder WIMAX-Signalen und Auswirkungen auf die Übertragung in Kabel-TV-Netzen, Februar 2009

[LOCHMANN] Lochmann, D.: Digitale Nachrichtentechnik, Signale, Codierung, Übertragungssysteme, Netze. Verlag Technik, Berlin, 1997
[LStelcom] LStelcom, CHIRplus BC, Lichtenau, 2009
[LTE] 3GPP LTE
[LVGB] Landesamt für Vermessung und Geoinformation Bayern, TOP50 and DTK500 Maps, 2006
[MAEUSL1] Mäusl, R.: Digitale Modulationsverfahren. Hüthig, Heidelberg, 1985
[MAEUSL2] Mäusl, R.: Modulationsverfahren in der Nachrichtentechnik. Huethig, Heidelberg, 1981
[MAEUSL3] Mäusl, R.: Refresher Topics - Television Technology, Rohde&Schwarz, Munich, 2000
[MAEUSL4] Mäusl, R.: Von analogen Videoquellensignal zum digitalen DVB-Sendesignal, Seminar Dokumentation, München, 2001
[MAEUSL5] Mäusl, R.: Fernsehtechnik, Von der Kamera bis zum Bildschirm. Pflaum Verlag, München, 1981
[MAEUSL6] Mäusl R.: Fernsehtechnik, Vom Studiosignal zum DVB-Sendesignal, Hüthig, Heidelberg, 2003
[MAEUSL7] Mäusl R.: Geschichtsbuch zum Hörfunk und Fernsehen, 2007, private Veröffentlichung
[NBTV] Narrow-Bandwidth Television Association, www.nbtv.org, Wikipedia, 2015
[NELSON] Nelson, M.: Datenkomprimierung, Effiziente Algorithmen in C. Heise, Hannover, 1993
[NEUMANN] Neumann, J.: Lärmmeßpraxis. Expert Verlag, Grafenau, 1980
[NorDig] www.nordig.org,
[NX7000] Rohde&Schwarz, High Power Transmitters, Documentation, Munich, 2007
[OSSEIRAN] Osseiran, A., Monserrat, J.F., Marsch, P., 5G Mobile and Wireless Communications Technology, Cambridge University Press, 2016
[OTT] Over the Top TV, Wikipedia
[Polar Coding] Gazi, O. Polar Codes, Springer, 2019
[PRESS] Press, H. W.: Teukolsky, S. A., Vetterling, W. T., Flannery, B. P.: Numerical Recipes in C. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1992
[RAUSCHER] Rauscher, C.: Grundlagen der Spektrumanalyse. Rohde&Schwarz, München, 2000
[REIMERS] Reimers, U.: Digitale Fernsehtechnik, Datenkompression und Übertragung für DVB. Springer, Berlin, 1997
[REIMERS1] Reimers U.: DVB, The Family of International Standards for Digital Video Broadcasting, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, 2004

[REIMERS2] Reimers U.: DVB-Digitale Fernsehtechnik, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, 3. Auflage, 2007
[RFS] RFS, Radio Frequency Systems, www.rfsworld.com
[R&S_APPL_1MA91] Test of DVB-H Capable Mobile Phones in Development and Production, Application Note, Rohde&Schwarz, April 2005
[RICHARDS] Richards, J.: Radio Wave Propagation, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, 2008
[R&S] Rohde&Schwarz GmbH & Co. KG, www.rohde-schwarz.com
[SIGMUND] Sigmund, G.: ATM - Die Technik. Hüthig, Heidelberg, 1997
[SMPTE2022], SMPTE2022, "SDI over IP", Transport of High Bit Rate Media Signals over IP, SMPTE, 2015
[SPINNER] Spinner GmbH, www.spinner-group.com
[STEINBUCH] Steinbuch K., Rupprecht, W.: Nachrichtentechnik. Springer, Berlin, 1982
[SFN1] System Monitoring and Measurement for DVB-T Single Frequency Networks with DVMD, DVRM and Stream Explorer®, Rohde&Schwarz, April 2000
[T-DMB] Levi, S.: DMB-S/DMB-T Receiver Solutions on TI DM342, May 2004
[TEICHNER] Teichner, D.: Digitale Videocodierung. Seminarunterlagen, 1994
[THIELE] Thiele, A.N.: Digital Audio for Digital Video, Journal of Electrical and Electronics Engineering, Australia, September 1993
[TODD] Todd, C. C.: AC-3 The Multi-Channel Digital Audio Coding Technology. NCTA Technical Papers, 1994
[TOZER] Tozer E.P.J.: Broadcast Engineer's Reference Book, Elsevier, Oxford, UK, 2004
[TR101190] TR101190, Implementation Guidelines for DVB Terrestrial Services, ETSI, 1997
[TR101496] Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) ; Guidelines and rules for implementation and operation, ETSI 2000
[TS102796] ETSI TS102796, European Broadcasting Union, Hybrid Braodcast Broadband TV, 2010
[TS102991] Digital Video Broadcasting, TS102991, DVB-C2 Implementation Guidelines, ETSI, 2011
[T2-Lite] Digital Video Broadcasting, ETSI EN302755, DVB-T2 Annex I - T2-Lite, ETSI, 2012
[RFS] RFS, Documentation, Heliflex Cable, www.rfsworld.com, 2007
[SFQ] TV Test Transmitter SFQ, Gerätehandbuch, Rohde&Schwarz, München, 2001

[STUHLFAUT HSPA] High Speed Packet Access, Stuhlfaut, R., High Speed Packet Access, Technical book, Rohde&Schwarz, 2012 [UHDTV] ITU-R BT.2020, ITU, 2014

[VIERACKER] Vieracker, T.: Analyse von DVB-T-Empfänger-Synchronisationsproblemen in DVB-T-Gleichwellennetzen, Diplomarbeit Berufsakademie Ravensburg, Sept. 2007

[WATKINSON] Watkinson, J.: The MPEG Handbook, Elsevier, Oxford, UK, 2004

[WEINSTEIN] Weinstein, S. B., Ebert, P. M.: Data Transmission by Frequency-Division Multiplexing Using the Discrete Fourier Transform. IEEE Transactions and Communication Technology, Vol. Com. 19, No. 5, October 1971

[WOOTTON] Wootton C.: A Practical Guide to Video and Audio Compression, From Sprockets and Rasters to Macro Blocks, Elsevier, Oxford, UK, 2005

[ZAIDI] Zaidi, A., Athley F., Medbo, J., 5G Physical Layer, Academic Press, Elsevier, 2018

[ZEIDLER] Zeidler, E., Bronstein, I.N., Semendjajew K. A.: Teubner-Taschenbuch der Mathematik, Teubner, Stuttgart, 1996

[ZIEMER] Ziemer, A.: Digitales Fernsehen, Eine neue Dimension der Medienvielfalt. R. v. Decker, Heidelberg, 1994

[Zöllner] J. Zöllner, Optimierung der Robustheit und Effizienz der Datenübertragung in terrestrischen Broadcast-Netzen, Dissertation, Technische Universität Braunschweig, 2015

[ZWICKER] Zwicker, E.: Psychoakustik. Springer, Berlin 1982

[5G-NR] 3GPP 5G-NR, 5G New Radio

[5G TODAY] 5G TODAY Project, IRT Press Release, 2019

[7BM85_0E] Application Note 7BM85_05, Rohde&Schwarz, „Compliance Testing, Functional Testing and Debugging on HDMI Interfaces“, 2014

[7EB01_APP] Application Note, ATSC Mobile DTV, Rohde&Schwarz, 2009

[802.AVB], IEEE 802.1BA Audio Video Bridging (AVB) 2011

Definition of Terms

AAL0	ATM Adaptation Layer 0
AAL1	ATM Adaptation Layer 1
AAL5	ATM Adaptation Layer 5
ASI	Asynchronous Serial Interface
ATM	Asynchronous Transfer Mode
ATSC	Advanced Television Systems Committee
BCH	Bose-Chaudhuri-Hocquenghem Code
BAT	Bouquet Association Table
CA	Conditional Access
CAT	Conditional Access Table
CI	Common Interface
COFDM	Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check
CVCT	Cable Virtual Channel Table
DAB	Digital Audio Broadcasting
DDB	Data Download Block
DII	Download Information Identification
DMB-T	Digital Multimedia Broadcasting Terrestrial
DOCSIS	Data over Cable Service Interface Specification
DRM	Digital Radio Mondiale
DSI	Download Server Initializing
DSM-CC	Digital Storage Media Command and Control
DTS	Decoding Time Stamp
DVB	Digital Video Broadcasting
ECM	Entitlement Control Messages
EIT	Event Information Table
EMM	Entitlement Management Messages
ES	Elementary Stream
ETT	Extended Text Table
FEC	Forward Error Correction
FeMBMS	Further Evolved Multimedia Broadcast Multicast Service
HDTV	High Definition Television
IRD	Integrated Receiver Decoder
ISDB-T	Integrated Services Digital Broadcasting Terrestrial

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7

J83	ITU-T J83
LDPC	Low Density Parity Check Code
LTE	Long Term Evolution
LVDS	Low Voltage Differential Signalling
MGT	Master Guide Table
MHEG	Multimedia and Hypermedia Information Coding Experts Group
MHP	Multimedia Home Platform
MIP	Megaframe Initialization Packet
MP@ML	Main Profile at Main Level
MPEG	Moving Picture Experts Group
NIT	Network Information Table
OFDM	Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex
OTT	Over the Top TV
PAT	Program Association Table
PCR	Program Clock Reference
PCMCIA	PCMCIA
PDH	Plesiochronous Digital Hierarchy
PES	Packetized Elementary Stream
PID	Packet Identity
PMT	Program Map Table
Profile	MP@ML
PS	Program Stream
PSI	Program-Specific Information
PSIP	Program and System Information Protocol
PTS	Presentation Time Stamp
QAM	Quadrature Amplitude Modulation
QPSK	Quadrature Phase Shift Keying
RRT	Rating Region Table
SDH	Synchronous Digital Hierarchy
SDT	Service Description Table
SDTV	Standard Definition Television
SI	Service Information
SONET	Synchronous Optical Network
SSU	System Software Update
ST	Stuffing Table
STL	Studio Transmitter Link
STD	System Target Decoder
STT	System Time Table
T2-MI	DVB-T2-Modulator Interface
T-DMB	Terrestrial Digital Multimedia Broadcasting
TDT	Time and Date Table

TOT	Time Offset Table
TS	Transport Stream
TVCT	Terrestrial Virtual Channel Table
VSB	Vestigial Sideband Modulation
UHDTV	Ultra High Definition Television
5G-NR	5th Generation – New Radio

Adaptation Field

The adaptation field is an extension of the TS header and contains ancillary data for a program. The program clock reference (PCR) is of special importance. The adaptation field must never be scrambled when it is to be transmitted (see Conditional Access).

Advanced Television Systems Committee (ATSC)

The North American Standards Committee which determined the standard of the same name for the digital transmission of TV signals. Like DVB, ATSC1.0 is also based on MPEG-2 systems as far as transport stream multiplexing is concerned and on MPEG-2 video for video compression. However, instead of MPEG-2, standard AC-3 is used for audio compression. ATSC specifies terrestrial transmission and transmission via cable while transmission via satellite is not taken into account. There is now ATSC1.0, ATSC2.0 and ATSC3.0. ATSC3.0 is OFDM based.

Asynchronous Serial Interface (ASI)

The ASI is an interface for the transport stream. Each byte of the transport stream is expanded to 10 bits (energy dispersal) and is transmitted with a fixed bit clock of 270 MHz (asynchronous) irrespective of the data rate of the transport stream. The fixed data rate is obtained by adding dummy data without information content. Useful data is integrated into the serial data stream either as individual bytes or as whole TS packets. This is necessary to avoid PCR jitter. A variable buffer memory at the transmitter end is therefore not permissible.

Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM)

Connection-oriented wideband transmission method with fixed-length 53-byte cells. Both payload and signalling information is transmitted.

ATM Adaptation Layer 0 (AAL0)

The ATM AAL0 Layer is a transparent ATM interface. The ATM cells are forwarded here directly without having been processed by the ATM Adaptation Layer.

ATM Adaptation Layer 1 (AAL1)

The ATM Adaption Layer AAL1 is used for MPEG-2 with and without FEC. The payload is 47 bytes, the remaining 8 bytes are used for the header with the forward error correction and the sequence number. This makes it possible to check the order of incoming data units and the transmission. The FEC allows transmission errors to be corrected.

ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5)

The ATM Adaption Layer AAL5 is basically used for MPEG-2 without FEC. The payload is 48 bytes, the remaining 7 bytes are used for the header. Data with transmission errors cannot be corrected on reception.

Bose-Chaudhuri-Hocquenghem Code (BCH)

Cyclic block code used in the FEC of the DVB-S2 satellite transmission standard.

Bouquet Association Table (BAT)

The BAT is an SI table (DVB). It contains information about the different programs (bouquet) of a broadcaster. It is transmitted in TS packets with PID 0x11 and indicated by table_ID 0x4A.

Cable Virtual Channel Table (CVCT)

CVCT is a PSIP table (ATSC) which comprises the characteristic data (eg channel number, frequency, modulation type) of a program (= virtual channel) in the cable (terrestrial transmission → TVCT). TVCT is transmitted with the PID 0x1FFB in TS packets and indicated by the table_id 0xC9.

Channel Coding

The channel coding is performed prior to the modulation and transmission of a transport stream. The channel coding is mainly used for forward error correction (FEC), allowing bit errors occurring during transmission to be corrected in the receiver.

Coded Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex (CODFM)

COFDM is basically OFDM with error protection (coding - C), which always precedes OFDM.

Common Interface (CI)

The CI is an interface at the receiver end for a broadcaster-specific, exchangeable CA plug-in card. This interface allows scrambled programs from different broadcasters to be de-scrambled with the same hardware despite differences in CA systems.

Conditional Access (CA)

The CA is a system allowing programs to be scrambled and for providing access to these programs at the receiver end only to authorized users. Broadcasters can thus charge fees for programs or individual broadcasts. Scrambling can be performed at one of the two levels provided by an MPEG-2 multiplex stream, e.g. the transport stream or the packetized elementary stream level. The relevant headers remain unscrambled. The PSI and SI tables also remain unscrambled except for the EIT.

Conditional Access Table (CAT)

The CAT is a PSI table (MPEG-2) and comprises information required for descrambling programs. It is transmitted in TS packets with PID 0x0002 and indicated by table_ID 0x01.

Continuity Counter

A continuity counter for each elementary stream (ES) is provided as a four-bit counter in the fourth and last byte of each TS header. It counts the TS packets of a PES, determines the correct order and checks whether the packets of a PES are complete. The counter (fifteen is followed by zero) is incremented with each new packet of the PES. Exceptions are permissible under certain circumstances.

Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)

The CRC serves to verify whether data transmission was error-free. To this effect, a bit pattern is calculated in the transmitter based on the data to be monitored. This bit pattern is added to the data in such a way that an equivalent computation in the receiver yields a fixed bit pattern in case of error-free transmission after processing of the data. Every transport stream contains a CRC for the PSI tables (PAT, PMT, CAT, NIT) as well as for some SI tables (EIT, BAT, SDT, TOT).

Decoding Time Stamp (DTS)

The DTS is a 33-bit value in the PES header and represents the decoding time of the associated PES packet. The value refers to the 33 most significant bits of the associated program clock reference. A DTS is only available if it differs from the presentation time stamp (PTS). For video streams this is the case if delta frames are transmitted and if the order of decoding does not correspond to that of output.

Digital Audio Broadcasting

A standard for digital radio in VHF band III, and the L band, defined as part of the EUREKA Project 147. The audio is coded to MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 Layer II. The modulation method used is COFDM with DSPSK modulation.

Digital Multimedia Broadcasting Terrestrial (DMB-T)

Chinese standard for digital terrestrial television.

Digital Radio Mondiale

Digital standard for audio broadcasting in the medium- and short-wave bands. The audio signals are MPEG-4 AAC coded. The modulation method used is COFDM.

Digital Storage Media Command and Control (DSM-CC)

Private sections according to MPEG-2 which are used for the transmission of data services in object carousels or for datagrams such as IP packets in the MPEG-2 transport stream.

Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB)

The European DVB project stipulates methods and regulations for the digital transmission of TV signals. Abbreviations such as DVB-C (for transmission via cable), DVB-S (for transmission via satellite) and DVB-T (for terrestrial transmission) are frequently used as well.

Data Download Block (DDB)

Data transmission blocks of an object carousel, logically organized into modules.

Data Over Cable Service Interface Specification (DOCSIS)

High speed data transmission standards for broadband cable networks (CATV).

Download Information Identification (DII)

Logical entry point into modules of an object carousel.

Download Server Initializing (DSI)

Logical entry point into an object carousel.

Elementary Stream (ES)

The elementary stream is a ‘continuous’ data stream for video, audio or user-specific data. The data originating from video and audio digitization are compressed by means of methods defined in MPEG-2 Video and MPEG-2 Audio.

Entitlement Control Messages (ECM)

ECM comprise information for the descrambler in the receiver of a CA system providing further details about the descrambling method.

Entitlement Management Messages (EMM)

EMM comprise information for the descrambler in the receiver of a CA system providing further details about the access rights of the customer to specific scrambled programs or broadcasts.

Event Information Table (EIT)

EIT is defined both as an SI table (DVB) and a PSIP table (ATSC). It provides information about program contents like a TV guide.

In DVB the EIT is transmitted in TS packets with PID 0x0012 and indicated by a table_ID from 0x4E to 0x6F. Depending on the table_ID, it contains different information:

Table_ID 0x4E	actual TS / present+following
Table_ID 0x4E	actual TS / present+following
Table_ID 0x4F	other TS / present+following
Table_ID 0x50...0x5F	actual TS / schedule
Table_ID 0x60...0x6F	other TS / schedule

EIT-0 to EIT-127 are defined in ATSC. Each of the EIT-k comprises information on program contents of a three-hour section where EIT-0 is the current time window. EIT-4 to EIT-127 are optional. Each EIT can be transmitted in a PID defined by the MGT with table_id 0xCB.

Extended Text Table (ETT)

ETT is a PSIP table (ATSC) and comprises information on a program (channel ETT) or on individual transmissions (ETT-0 to ETT-127) in the form of text. ETT-0 to ETT-127 are assigned to ATSC tables EIT-0 to EIT-127 and provide information on the program contents of a three-hour section. ETT-0 is with reference to the current time window, the other ETTs refer to later time sections. All ETTs are optional. Each ETT can be transmitted in a PID defined by MGT with table_id 0xCC.

FeMBMS

Further Evolved Multimedia Broadcast Multicast Service,

Part of LTE, Release 14, broadcast multicast services in LTE.

Forward Error Correction (FEC)

Error protection in data transmission, channel coding.

Integrated Receiver Decoder (IRD)

The IRD is a receiver with integrated MPEG-2 decoder. A more colloquial expression would be set-top box.

Integrated Services Digital Broadcasting Terrestrial (ISDB-T)

Japanese standard for digital terrestrial television. The modulation method used is OFDM. The baseband signal is an MPEG-2 transport stream.

ITU-T J83

Collection of various standards for digital television over broadband cable.

J83A = DVB-C

J83B = North American standard for digital television over broadband cable (64QAM, 256QAM).

J83C = Japanese standard for digital television over broadband cable (6-MHz variant of DVB-C)

J83D = ATSC variant for digital television over broadband cable (16VSB); not used.

High Definition Television (HDTV)

High resolution television (typ. 1920 x 1080 pixel).

Long Term Evolution

4th Generation Mobile Communication Standard.

Low Density Parity Check Code

Block code used in the FEC of the DVB-S2 satellite transmission standard.

Low Voltage Differential Signalling (LVDS)

LVDS is used for the parallel interface of the transport stream. It is a positive differential logic. The difference voltage is 330 mV into 100 Ω.

Master Guide Table (MGT)

MGT is a reference table for all other PSIP tables (ATSC). It lists the version number, the table length and the PID for each PSIP table with the exception of the STT. MGT is always transmitted with a
Section in the PID 0x1FFB and indicated by the table_ID=0xC7.

Main Profile at Main Level (MP@ML)

MP@ML is a type of source coding for video signals. The profile determines the source coding methods that may be used while the level defines the picture resolution.

Megaframe Initialization Packet (MIP)

The MIP is transmitted with the PID of 0x15 in transport streams of terrestrial single frequency networks (SFNs) and is defined by DVB. The MIP contains timing information for GPS (Global Positioning System) and modulation parameters. Each megaframe contains exactly one MIP. A megaframe consists of n TS packets, n being dependent on the modulation parameters. The transmission period of a megaframe is about 0.5 seconds.

Moving Picture Experts Group (MPEG)

MPEG is an international standardization committee working on the coding, transmission and recording of (moving) pictures and sound.

MPEG-2

MPEG-2 is a standard consisting of three main parts and written by the Moving Picture Experts Group (ISO/IEC 13818). It describes the coding and compression of video (Part 2) and audio (Part 3) to obtain an elementary stream, as well as the multiplexing of elementary streams to form a transport stream (Part 1).

Multimedia Home Platform (MHP)

Program-associated DVB data service. HTML files and JAVA applications are broadcast via object carousels for MHP-enabled receivers and can then be started in the receiver.

Multimedia and Hypermedia Information Group (MHEG)

Program-associated data service in MPEG-2 transport streams, based on object carousels and HTML applications Broadcast in the UK as part of DVB-T.

Network Information Table (NIT)

The NIT is a PSI table (MPEG-2/DVB). It comprises technical data about the transmission network (eg orbit positions of satellites and transponder numbers). The NIT is transmitted in TS packets with PID 0x0010 and indicated by table_ID 0x40 or 0x41.

Null Packet

Null packets are TS packets with which the transport stream is filled to obtain a specific data rate. Null packets do not contain any payload and have the packet identity 0x1FFF. The continuity counter is undefined.

Over the Top TV (OTT)

Term in use for “streaming” services over IP networks.

Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex (OFDM)

The modulation method is used in DVB systems for broadcasting transport streams with terrestrial transmitters. It is a multicarrier method and is suitable for the operation of single-frequency networks.

Packet Identity (PID)

The PID is a 13 bit value in the TS header. It shows that a TS packet belongs to a substream of the transport stream. A substream may contain a packetized elementary stream (PES), user-specific data, program specific information (PSI) or service information (SI). For some PSI and SI tables the associated PID values are predefined (see 1.3.6). All other PID values are defined in the PSI tables of the transport stream.

Packetized Elementary Stream (PES)

For transmission, the "continuous" elementary stream is subdivided into packets. In the case of video streams one frame constitutes the PES, whereas with audio streams, the PES is an audio frame which may represent an audio signal between 16 ms and 72 ms. Each PES packet is preceded by a PES header.

Payload

Payload signifies useful data in general. With reference to the transport stream all data except for the TS header and the adaptation field are payload. With reference to an elementary stream (ES) only the useful data of the ES without the PES header are payload.

Payload Unit Start Indicator

The payload unit start indicator is a 1 bit flag in the second byte of a TS header. It indicates the beginning of a PES packet or of a section of PSI or SI tables in the corresponding TS packet.

PCMCIA (PC Card)

PCMCIA is a physical interface standardized by the Personal Computer Memory Card International Association for the data exchange between computers and peripherals. A model of this interface is used for the common interface.

PCR Jitter

The value of a PCR refers to the exact beginning of a TS packet in which it is located. The reference to the 27 MHz system clock yields an accuracy of approx. ±20 ns. If the difference of the transferred values deviates from the actual difference of the beginning of the packets concerned, this is called PCR jitter. It can be caused, for example, by an inaccurate PCR calculation during transport stream multiplexing or by the subsequent integration of null packets on the transmission path without PCR correction.

PES Header

Each PES packet in the transport stream starts with a PES header. The PES header contains information for decoding the elementary stream. The presentation time stamp (PTS) and decoding time stamp (DTS) are of vital importance. The beginning of a PES header and thus also the beginning of a PES packet is indicated in the associated TS packet by means of the set payload unit start indicator. If the PES header is to be scrambled, it is scrambled at the transport stream level. It is not affected by scrambling at the elementary stream level.

PES Packet

The PES packet (not to be confused with TS packet) contains a transmission unit of a packetized elementary stream (PES). In a video stream, for example, this is a source-coded image. The length of a PES packet is normally limited to 64 kbytes. It may exceed this length only if a video image requires more capacity. Each PES packet is preceded by a PES header.

Plesiochronous Digital Hierarchy (PDH)

The Plesiochronous Digital Hierarchy was originally developed for the transmission of digitized voice calls. In this method, high-bit-rate transmission systems are generated by time-interleaving the digital signals of low-bit-rate subsystems. In PDH, the clock rates of the individual subsystems are allowed to fluctuate and these fluctuations are compensated for by appropriate stuffing methods. The PDH includes E3 and DS3, among others.

Presentation Time Stamp (PTS)

The PTS is a 33 bit value in the PES header and represents the output time of the contents of a PES packet. The value refers to the 33 most significant bits of the associated program clock reference. If the order of output does not correspond to the order of decoding, a decoding time stamp (DTS) is additionally transmitted. This is the case for video streams containing delta frames.

Program and System Information Protocol (PSIP)

PSIP is the summary of tables defined by ATSC for sending transmission parameters, program descriptions etc. They contain the structure defined by MPEG-2 systems for 'private' sections. The following tables exist:

Master Guide Table (MGT),
Terrestrial Virtual Channel Table (TVCT),
Cable Virtual Channel Table (CVCT),
Rating Region Table (RRT),
Event Information Table (EIT),
Extended Text Table (ETT),
System Time Table (STT).

Program Association Table (PAT)

The PAT is a PSI Table (MPEG-2). It lists all the programs contained in a transport stream and refers to the associated PMTs containing further information about the programs. The PAT is transmitted in TS packets with PID 0x0000 and indicated by table_ID 0x00.

Program Clock Reference (PCR)

The PCR is a 42-bit value contained in an adaptation field and helps the decoder to synchronize its system clock (27 MHz) to the clock of the encoder or TS multiplexer by means of PLL. In this case, the 33 most significant bits refer to a 90 kHz clock while the 9 least significant bits count from 0 to 299 and thus represent a clock of 300 x 90 kHz (= 27 MHz). Each program of a transport stream relates to a PCR which is transmitted in the adaptation field by TS packets with a specific PID. The presentation time stamps (PTS) and decoding time stamps (DTS) of all the elementary streams of a program refer to the 33 most significant bits of the PCR. PCRs have to be transmitted at intervals of max. 100 ms according to MPEG-2 and at intervals of max. 40 ms according to the DVB regulations.

Program Map Table (PMT)

The PMT is a PSI table (MPEG-2). The elementary streams (video, audio, data) belonging to the individual programs are described in a PMT. A PMT consists of one or several sections each containing information about a program. The PMT is transmitted in TS packets with a PID from 0x0020 to 0x1FFE (referenced in the PAT) and indicated in table_ID 0x02.

Program Stream (PS)

Like the transport stream, the program stream is a multiplex stream but only contains elementary streams for a program and is only suitable for the transmission in ‘undisturbed’ channels (e.g. recording in storage media).

Program Specific Information (PSI)

The four tables below defined by MPEG-2 are summed up as program specific information:

Program Association Table (PAT),
Program Map Table (PMT),
Conditional Access Table (CAT),
Network Information Table (NIT).

Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (QAM)

QAM is the modulation method used for transmitting a transport stream via cable. The channel coding is performed prior to QAM.

Quadrature Phase Shift Keying (QPSK)

QPSK is the modulation method used for transmitting a transport stream via satellite. The channel coding is performed prior to QPSK.

Rating Region Table (RRT)

The RRT is a PSIP table (ATSC). It comprises reference values for different geographical regions for the classification of transmissions (e.g. 'suitable for children older than X years'). RRT is transmitted with a section in the PID 0x1FFB and indicated by the table_ID=0xCA.

Running Status Table (RST)

The RST is an SI table (DVB) and contains status information about the individual broadcasts. It is transmitted in TS packets with PID 0x0013 and indicated by table_ID=0x71.

Section

Each table (PSI and SI) may comprise one or a number of sections. A section may have a length of up to 1 kbyte (for EIT and ST up to

4 Kbytes). Most of the tables have 4 bytes at the end of each section for the CRC.

Service Description Table (SDT)

The SDT is an SI table (DVB) and contains the names of programs and broadcasters. It is transmitted in TS packets with PID 0x0011 and indicated by table_ID 0x42 or 0x46.

Service Information (SI)

The following tables defined by DVB are called service information. They have the structure for 'private' sections defined by MPEG-2 systems:

Bouquet Association Table (BAT),
Service Description Table (SDT),
Event Information Table (EIT),
Running Status Table (RST),
Time and Date Table (TDT),
Time Offset Table (TOT).

Sometimes, the Program Specific Information (PSI) is also included.

Source Coding

The aim of source coding is data reduction by eliminating redundancy to the greatest possible extent whilst affecting the relevance in a video or audio signal as little as possible. The methods to be applied are defined in MPEG-2. They are the precondition for the bandwidth required for the transmission of digital signals being narrower than that for the transmission of analog signals.

Standard Definition Television (SDTV)

Standards resolution television (typ. 720 x 576 pixel).

Studio Transmitter Link (STL)

Interface between broadcast headend and modulators/transmitters; term STL is in use in ISDB-T and in ATSC3.0, but different physical structure.

Stuffing Table (ST)

The ST is an SI table (DVB). It has no relevant content and is obtained by overwriting tables that are no longer valid on the transmission path (eg at cable headends). It is transmitted in TS packets with a PID of 0x0010 to 0x0014 and indicated by table_ID 0x72.

Sync byte

The sync byte is the first byte in the TS header and thus also the first byte of each TS packet. Its value is 0x47.

Synchronous Digital Hierarchy (SDH)

The Synchronous Digital Hierarchy (SDH) is an international standard for the digital transmission of data in a uniform frame structure (containers). All bit rates of the PDH can be transmitted, like ATM, by means of SDH. Although SDH differs due to the pointer management, it is compatible with the American PDH and SONET standards.

Synchronous Optical NETwork (SONET)

The Synchronous Optical NETwork (SONET) is an American standard for the digital transmission of data in a uniform frame structure (containers). All bit rates of the PDH can be transmitted, like ATM, by means off SONET. SONET differs due to the pointer management and is thus not compatibel with the European SDH standard.

System Software Update (SSU)

Standardized system software update for DVB receivers according to ETSI TS102006.

System Target Decoder (STD)

The system target decoder describes the (theoretical) model for a decoder of MPEG-2 transport streams. A 'real' decoder has to fulfil all the conditions based on STD if it is to be guaranteed that the contents of all transport streams created to MPEG-2 are decoded error-free.

System Time Table (STT)

STT is a PSIP table (ATSC). It comprises date and time (UTC) as well as the local time difference. STT is transmitted in TS packets with the PID 0x1FFB and indicated by the table_ID 0xCD.

T2-Modulator Interface (T2-MI)

Multiplex signal format structure for DVB-T2 networks; interface between DVB-T2 gateway and DVB-T2 modulators.

Table_ID

The table_identity defines the type of table (eg PAT, NIT, SDT, etc) and is always located at the beginning of a section of the table. The table_ID is necessary especially because different tables can be transmitted with one PID in one substream (eg BAT and SDT with PID 0x11, see Table 1-3).

Terrestrial Digital Multimedia Broadcasting (T-DMB)

South Korean standard for digital TV reception for mobile receivers, based on DAB and MPEG-4 AVC and AAC

Terrestrial Virtual Channel Table (TVCT)

TVCT is a PSIP table (ATSC) comprising the characteristic data of a program (eg channel number, frequency, modulation method) for terrestrial emission (transmission in cable → CVCT). TVCT is transmitted in TS packets with the PID of 0x1FFB and indicated by the table_id 0xC8.

Time and Date Table (TDT)

The TDT is an SI table (DVB) and contains date and time (UTC). It is transmitted in TS packets with PID 0x0014 and indicated by table_ID 0x70.

Time Offset Table (TOT)

The TOT is an SI table (DVB) and contains information about the local time offset in addition to date and time (UTC). It is transmitted in TS packets with PID 0x0014 and indicated by table_ID 0x73.

Transport Error Indicator

The transport error indicator is contained in the TS header and is the first bit after the sync byte (MSB of the second byte). It is set during channel decoding if channel decoding could not correct all the bit errors generated in the corresponding TS packet on the transmission path. As it is basically not possible to find the incorrect bits (e.g. the PID could also be affected), the errored packet must not be processed any further. The frequency of occurrence of a set transport error indicator is not a measure of the bit error rate on the transmission path. A set transport error indicator shows that the quality of the transmission path is not sufficient for an error-free transmission despite error control coding. A slight drop in transmission quality will quickly increase the frequency of occurrence of a set transport error indicator and finally transmission will cease.

Transport Stream (TS)

The transport stream is a multiplex data stream defined by MPEG-2 which may contain several programs that may consist of a number of elementary streams. A program clock reference (PCR) is carried along for each program. Multiplexing is done by forming TS packets for each elementary stream and by stringing together these TS packets originating from different elementary streams.

TS Header

The TS header is provided at the beginning of each TS packet and has a length of four bytes. The TS header always begins with the sync byte 0x47. Further important elements are the PID and the continuity counter. The TS header must never be scrambled when it is to be transmitted (see Conditional Access).

TS Packet

The transport stream is transmitted in packets of 188 bytes (204 bytes after channel coding). The first four bytes form the TS header which is followed by the 184 payload bytes.

Vestigial Sideband Modulation (VSB)

The vestigial sideband amplitude modulation method is used in ATSC systems. For terrestrial transmission, 8VSB with 8 amplitude levels is used while 16VSB is mainly for cable transmission.

Ultra High Definition Television (UHDTV)

Ultra high resolution television (typ. 3840 x 2180 pixel).

5G-NR

5G-New Radio, 5th Generation Mobile Communication Standard.

Channel Tables

The channels listed in the following tables are possible examples for analog television and for DVB-C, DVB-T, ATSC and J83B.

Analog TV:
Vision carrier at 7 MHz bandwidth 2.25 MHz below center frequency,
vision carrier at 8 MHz bandwidth 2.75 MHz below center frequency,
vision carrier at 6 MHz bandwidth 1.75 MHz below center frequency.

ATSC:
Pilot carrier at ATSC (6 MHz bandwidth) 2.69 MHz below center frequency.

Europe, Terrestrial and Cable

Table 52.1. TV channel occupancy, Europe

Channel	Band	Center frequency [MHz]	Bandwidth [MHz]	Remarks
2	VHF I	50.5	7	
3	VHF I	57.5	7	
4	VHF I	64.5	7	
	VHF II			FM 87.5...108.0 MHz
5	VHF III	177.5	7	
6	VHF III	184.5	7	
7	VHF III	191.5	7	
8	VHF III	198.5	7	
9	VHF III	205.5	7	
10	VHF III	212.5	7	
11	VHF III	219.5	7	
12	VHF III	226.5	7	
S 1	special channel	107.5	7	not in use (FM)

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7

S 2	special channel	114.5	7	cable, midband
S 3	special channel	121.5	7	cable, midband
S 4	special channel	128.5	7	cable, midband
S 5	special channel	135.5	7	cable, midband
S 6	special channel	142.5	7	cable, midband
S 7	special channel	149.5	7	cable, midband
S 8	special channel	156.5	7	cable, midband
S 9	special channel	163.5	7	cable, midband
S 10	special channel	170.5	7	cable, midband
S 11	special channel	233.5	7	cable, superband
S 12	special channel	240.5	7	cable, superband
S 13	special channel	247.5	7	cable, superband
S 14	special channel	254.5	7	cable, superband
S 15	special channel	261.5	7	cable, superband
S 16	special channel	268.5	7	cable, superband
S 17	special channel	275.5	7	cable, superband
S 18	special channel	282.5	7	cable, superband
S 19	special channel	289.5	7	cable, superband
S 20	special channel	296.5	7	cable, superband
S 21	special channel	306	8	cable, hyperband
S 22	special channel	314	8	cable, hyperband
S 23	special channel	322	8	cable, hyperband
S 24	special channel	330	8	cable, hyperband
S 25	special channel	338	8	cable, hyperband
S 26	special channel	346	8	cable, hyperband
S 27	special channel	354	8	cable, hyperband
S 28	special channel	362	8	cable, hyperband
S 29	special channel	370	8	cable, hyperband
S 30	special channel	378	8	cable, hyperband
S 31	special channel	386	8	cable, hyperband
S 32	special channel	394	8	cable, hyperband
S 33	special channel	402	8	cable, hyperband
S 34	special channel	410	8	cable, hyperband
S 35	special channel	418	8	cable, hyperband
S 36	special channel	426	8	cable, hyperband
S 37	special channel	434	8	cable, hyperband
S 38	special channel	442	8	cable, hyperband
S 39	special channel	450	8	cable, hyperband
S40	special channel	458	8	cable, hyperband
S41	special channel	466	8	cable, hyperband
21	UHF IV	474	8	
22	UHF IV	482	8	
23	UHF IV	490	8	
24	UHF IV	498	8	
25	UHF IV	506	8	
26	UHF IV	514	8	

27	UHF IV	522	8
28	UHF IV	530	8
29	UHF IV	538	8
30	UHF IV	546	8
31	UHF IV	554	8
32	UHF IV	562	8
33	UHF IV	570	8
34	UHF IV	578	8
35	UHF IV	586	8
36	UHF IV	594	8
37	UHF IV	602	8
38	UHF V	610	8
39	UHF V	618	8
40	UHF V	626	8
41	UHF V	634	8
42	UHF V	642	8
43	UHF V	650	8
44	UHF V	658	8
45	UHF V	666	8
46	UHF V	674	8
47	UHF V	682	8
48	UHF V	690	8
49	UHF V	698	8
50	UHF V	706	8
51	UHF V	714	8
52	UHF V	722	8
53	UHF V	730	8
54	UHF V	738	8
55	UHF V	746	8
56	UHF V	754	8
57	UHF V	762	8
58	UHF V	770	8
59	UHF V	778	8
60	UHF V	786	8
61	UHF V	794	8
62	UHF V	802	8
63	UHF V	810	8
64	UHF V	818	8
65	UHF V	826	8
66	UHF V	834	8
67	UHF V	842	8
68	UHF V	850	8
69	UHF V	858	8

Australia, Terrestrial

Table 52.2. TV terrestrial channel occupancy, Australia (terrestrial)

Channel	Band	Center frequency [MHz]	Bandwidth [MHz]	Remarks
0	VHF I	48.5	7	
1	VHF I	59.5	7	
2	VHF I	66.5	7	”ABC Analog“ Sydney
3	VHF II	88.5	7	
4	VHF II	97.5	7	
5	VHF II	104.5	7	
5A	VHF II	140.5	7	
6	VHF III	177.5	7	s.t. “Seven Digital“
7	VHF III	184.5	7	s.t. ”Seven Analog“
8	VHF III	191.5	7	s.t. ”Nine Digital“
9	VHF III	198.5	7	s.t. ”Nine Analog“
9A	VHF III	205.5	7	
10	VHF III	211.5	7	s.t. “Ten Analog“
11	VHF III	219.5	7	s.t. “Ten Digital“
12	VHF III	226.5	7	s.t. “ABC Digital“
28	UHF IV	529.5	7	“SBS Analog“ Sydney
29	UHF IV	536.5	7	
30	UHF IV	543.5	7	
31	UHF IV	550.5	7	
32	UHF IV	557.5	7	
33	UHF IV	564.5	7	
34	UHF IV	571.5	7	“SBS Digital“ Sydney
35	UHF IV	578.5	7	
36	UHF V	585.5	7	
37	UHF V	592.5	7	
38	UHF V	599.5	7	
39	UHF V	606.5	7	
40	UHF V	613.5	7	
41	UHF V	620.5	7	
42	UHF V	627.5	7	
43	UHF V	634.5	7	
44	UHF V	641.5	7	
45	UHF V	648.5	7	

46	UHF V	655.5	7	
47	UHF V	662.5	7	
48	UHF V	669.5	7	
49	UHF V	676.5	7	
50	UHF V	683.5	7	
51	UHF V	690.5	7	
52	UHF V	697.5	7	
53	UHF V	704.5	7	
54	UHF V	711.5	7	
55	UHF V	718.4	7	
56	UHF V	725.5	7	
57	UHF V	732.5	7	
58	UHF V	739.5	7	
59	UHF V	746.5	7	
60	UHF V	753.5	7	
61	UHF V	760.5	7	
62	UHF V	767.5	7	
63	UHF V	774.5	7	
64	UHF V	781.5	7	
65	UHF V	788.5	7	
66	UHF V	795.5	7	
67	UHF V	802.5	7	
68	UHF V	809.5	7	
69	UHF V	816.5	7	

North America, Terrestrial

Table 52.3. TV terrestrial channel occupancy, North America

Channel	Band	Center frequency [MHz]	Bandwidth [MHz]	Remarks
2	VHF	57	6	
3	VHF	63	6	
4	VHF	69	6	
5	VHF	79	6	
6	VHF	85	6	
7	VHF	177	6	
8	VHF	183	6	
9	VHF	189	6	
10	VHF	195	6	
11	VHF	201	6	
12	VHF	207	6	

13	VHF	213	6
14	UHF	473	6
15	UHF	479	6
16	UHF	485	6
17	UHF	491	6
18	UHF	497	6
19	UHF	503	6
20	UHF	509	6
21	UHF	515	6
22	UHF	521	6
23	UHF	527	6
24	UHF	533	6
25	UHF	539	6
26	UHF	545	6
27	UHF	551	6
28	UHF	557	6
29	UHF	563	6
30	UHF	569	6
31	UHF	575	6
32	UHF	581	6
33	UHF	587	6
34	UHF	593	6
35	UHF	599	6
36	UHF	605	6
37	UHF	611	6
38	UHF	617	6
39	UHF	623	6
40	UHF	629	6
41	UHF	635	6
42	UHF	641	6
43	UHF	647	6
44	UHF	653	6
45	UHF	659	6
46	UHF	665	6
47	UHF	671	6
48	UHF	677	6
49	UHF	683	6
50	UHF	689	6
51	UHF	695	6
52	UHF	701	6
53	UHF	707	6
54	UHF	713	6
55	UHF	719	6
56	UHF	725	6
57	UHF	731	6
58	UHF	737	6

59	UHF	743	6	
60	UHF	749	6	
61	UHF	755	6	
62	UHF	761	6	
63	UHF	767	6	
64	UHF	773	6	
65	UHF	779	6	
66	UHF	785	6	
67	UHF	791	6	
68	UHF	797	6	
69	UHF	803	6	
70	UHF	809	6	
71	UHF	815	6	
72	UHF	821	6	
73	UHF	827	6	
74	UHF	833	6	
75	UHF	839	6	
76	UHF	845	6	
77	UHF	851	6	
78	UHF	857	6	
79	UHF	863	6	
80	UHF	869	6	
81	UHF	875	6	
82	UHF	881	6	
83	UHF	887	6	

North America, Cable

Especially in the cable the current occupancy can not be guaranteed.

Table 52.4. Channel occupancy North America, Cable

Channel	Band	Center frequency [MHz]	Bandwidth	Remarks
2		57	6	
3		63	6	
4		69	6	
5		79	6	
6		85	6	
7		177	6	
8		183	6	
9		189	6	

10	195	6
11	201	6
12	207	6
13	213	6
14	123	6
15	129	6
16	135	6
17	141	6
18	147	6
19	153	6
20	159	6
21	165	6
22	171	6
23	219	6
24	225	6
25	231	6
26	237	6
27	243	6
28	249	6
29	255	6
30	261	6
31	267	6
32	273	6
33	279	6
34	285	6
35	291	6
36	297	6
37	303	6
38	309	6
39	315	6
40	321	6
41	327	6
42	333	6
43	339	6
44	345	6
45	351	6
46	357	6
47	363	6
48	369	6
49	375	6
50	381	6
51	387	6
52	393	6
53	399	6
54	405	6
55	411	6

56	417	6
57	423	6
58	429	6
59	435	6
60	441	6
61	447	6
62	453	6
63	459	6
64	465	6
65	471	6
66	477	6
67	483	6
68	489	6
69	495	6
70	501	6
71	507	6
72	513	6
73	519	6
74	525	6
75	531	6
76	537	6
77	543	6
78	549	6
79	555	6
80	561	6
81	567	6
82	573	6
83	579	6
84	585	6
85	591	6
86	597	6
87	603	6
88	609	6
89	615	6
90	621	6
91	627	6
92	633	6
93	639	6
94	645	6
95	93	6
96	99	6
97	105	6
98	111	6
99	117	6
100	651	6
101	657	6

102	663	6
103	669	6
104	675	6
105	681	6
106	687	6
107	693	6
108	699	6
109	705	6
110	711	6
111	717	6
112	723	6
113	729	6
114	735	6
115	741	6
116	747	6
117	753	6
118	759	6
119	765	6
120	771	6
121	777	6
122	783	6
123	789	6
124	795	6
125	801	6
126	807	6
127	813	6
128	819	6
129	825	6
130	831	6
131	837	6
132	843	6
133	849	6
134	855	6
135	861	6
136	867	6
137	873	6
138	879	6
139	885	6
140	891	6
141	897	6
142	903	6
143	909	6
144	915	6
145	921	6
146	927	6
147	933	6

148	939	6
149	945	6
150	951	6
151	957	6
152	963	6
153	969	6
154	975	6
155	981	6
156	987	6
157	993	6
158	999	6

DAB Channel Tables

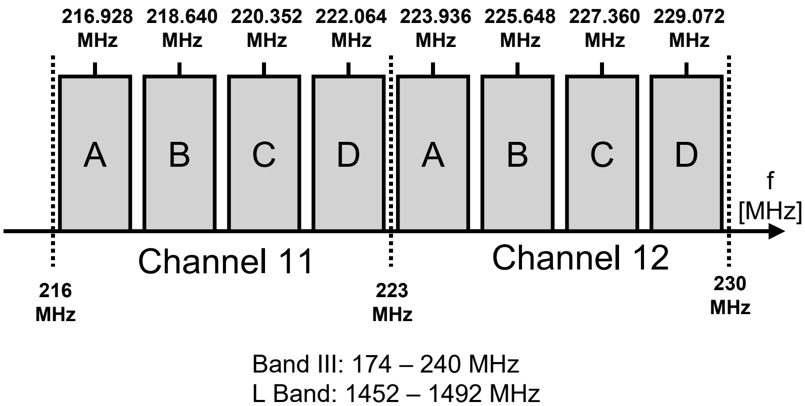


Fig. 52.1. DAB channel raster, example: channel 11 and 12

Table 52.5. DAB channel table VHF Band III

Channel	Center frequency [MHz]
5A	174.928
5B	176.640
5C	178.352
5D	180.064
6A	181.936
6B	183.648

6C	185.360
6D	187.072
7A	188.928
7B	190.640
7C	192.352
7D	194.064
8A	195.936
8B	197.648
8C	199.360
8D	201.072
9A	202.928
9B	204.640
9C	206.352
9D	208.064
10A	209.936
10N	210.096
10B	211.648
10C	213.360
10D	215.072
11A	216.928
11N	217.088
11B	218.640
11C	220.352
11D	222.064
12A	223.936
12N	224.096
12B	225.648
12C	227.360
12D	229.072
13A	230.784
13B	232.496
13C	234.208
13D	235.776
13E	237.488
13F	239.200

Table 52.6. DAB channel table, L-Band

Channel	Center frequency [MHz]
LA	1452.960
LB	1454.672
LC	1456.384
LD	1458.096
LF	1461.520
LG	1463.232
LH	1464.944

LI	1466.656
LJ	1468.368
LK	1470.080
LL	1471.792
LM	1473.504
LN	1475.216
LO	1476.928
LP	1478.640
LQ	1480.352
LR	1482.064
LS	1483.776
LT	1485.488
LU	1487.200
LV	1488.912
LW	1490.624

Table 52.7. DAB channel table, L-Band Canada

Channel	Center frequency [MHz]
1	1452.816
2	1454.560
3	1456.304
4	1458.048
5	1459.792
6	1461.536
7	1463.280
8	1465.024
9	1466.768
10	1468.512
11	1470.256
12	1472.000
13	1473.744
14	1475.488
15	1477.232
16	1478.976
17	1480.720
18	1482.464
19	1484.464
20	1485.952
21	1487.696
22	1489.440
23	1491.184

Europe, Satellite

Fig. 52.2. shows the occupancy of the Ku band for direct broadcasting TV satellite–reception.

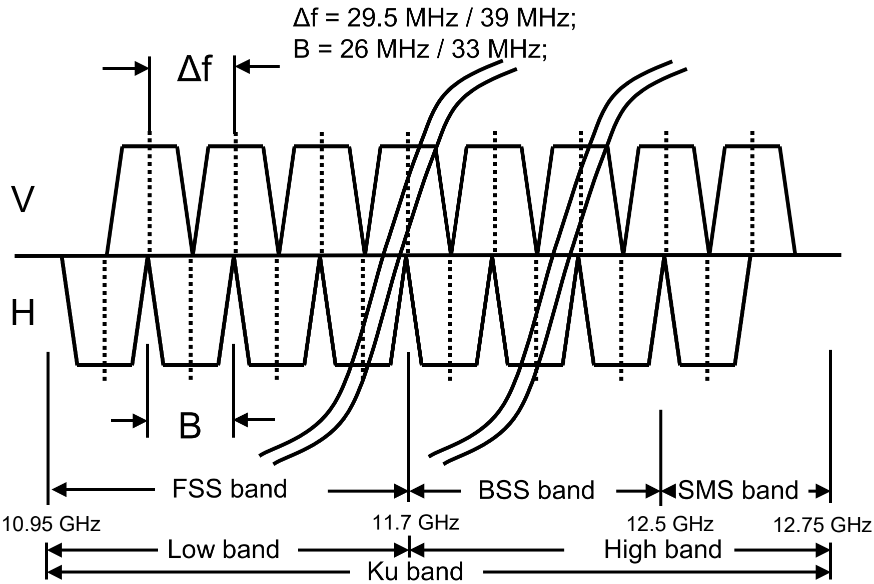


Fig. 52.2. Ku band for direct broadcasting TV satellite-reception

Bibliography:

Index

W. Fischer, *Digital Video and Audio Broadcasting Technology*,
Signals and Communication Technology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-32185-7